

unfoldingWord® Translation Notes

v92

Numbers

unfoldingWord® Translation Notes

Copyright © 2022 by unfoldingWord

This work is made available under the Creative Commons Attribution-ShareAlike 4.0 International License. To view a copy of this license, visit https://creativecommons.org/licenses/by-sa/4.0/ or send a letter to Creative Commons, PO Box 1866, Mountain View, CA 94042, USA.

unfoldingWord® is a registered trademark of unfoldingWord. Use of the unfoldingWord name or logo requires the written permission of unfoldingWord. Under the terms of the CC BY-SA license, you may copy and redistribute this unmodified work as long as you keep the unfoldingWord® trademark intact. If you modify a copy or translate this work, thereby creating a derivative work, you must remove the unfoldingWord® trademark.

On the derivative work, you must indicate what changes you have made and attribute the work as follows: “The original work by unfoldingWord is available from unfoldingword.org/utn”. You must also make your derivative work available under the same license (CC BY-SA).

If you would like to notify unfoldingWord regarding your translation of this work, please contact us at unfoldingword.org/contact/.

Table of Contents

unfoldingWord® Translation Notes **10**
Numbers 10
Numbers Introduction 10
Numbers 1 13
Numbers 2 47
Numbers 3 86
Numbers 4 144
Numbers 5 204
Numbers 6 253
Numbers 7 299
Numbers 8 399
Numbers 9 436
Numbers 10 471
Numbers 11 514
Numbers 12 574
Numbers 13 596
Numbers 14 632
Numbers 15 702
Numbers 16 763
Numbers 17 837
Numbers 18 854
Numbers 19 904
Numbers 20 932
Numbers 21 969
Numbers 22 1010
Numbers 23 1056
Numbers 24 1087
Numbers 25 1127
Numbers 26 1150
Numbers 27 1186
Numbers 28 1207
Numbers 29 1238
Numbers 30 1256
Numbers 31 1274
Numbers 32 1309
Numbers 33 1344
Numbers 34 1373
Numbers 35 1388
Numbers 36 1426
Appendix: Translation Academy **1442**
First, Second or Third Person 1442
Abstract Nouns 1443
Active or Passive 1446
Apostrophe 1449
Statements — Other Uses 1450
Distinguishing Versus Informing or Reminding 1451
Doublet 1454
Ellipsis 1455
Euphemism 1457
Order of Events 1458
Exclamations 1460
Exclusive and Inclusive ‘We’ 1462
Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information 1464
Making Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information Explicit 1468
When to Keep Information Implicit 1470
When Masculine Words Include Women 1471
Generic Noun Phrases 1473
Go and Come 1474
Hendiadys 1476
Hyperbole 1478
Hypothetical Situations 1481
Idiom 1483
Imperatives — Other Uses 1486
Information Structure 1488
Litotes 1490
Merism 1491

Metaphor 1492
Metonymy 1498
Nominal Adjectives 1501
Parallelism 1502
Predictive Past 1504
Personification 1506
Possession 1507
Direct and Indirect Quotations 1511
Quote Markings 1513
Quotes within Quotes 1515
Reduplication 1518
Reflexive Pronouns 1519
Rhetorical Question 1521
Simile 1524
Synecdoche 1526
Forms of You 1527
Forms of 'You' — Dual/Plural 1528
Forms of 'You' — Singular 1530
Collective Nouns 1531
Connect — Contrary to Fact Conditions 1534
Connect — Factual Conditions 1536
Connect — Hypothetical Conditions 1538
Connect — Exception Clauses 1539
Connect — Contrast Relationship 1541
Connect — Goal (Purpose) Relationship 1542
Connect — Reason-and-Result Relationship 1544
Connect — Background Information 1546
Connect — Sequential Time Relationship 1549
Connect — Simultaneous Time Relationship 1550
Connecting Words and Phrases 1552
Alternative Readings 1555
Biblical Distance 1557
Blessings 1559
Biblical Money 1561
Biblical Volume 1563
Biblical Weight 1565
Fractions 1567
Hebrew Months 1569
Kinship 1571
How to Translate Names 1573
Numbers 1576
Ordinal Numbers 1578
Unusual Uses of the Plural 1579
Symbolic Action 1581
Irregular Use of Tenses 1582
Textual Variants 1585
Copy or Borrow Words 1587
Translate Unknowns 1589
Verse Bridges 1591
Background Information 1593
End of Story 1595
Foreground Information 1597
Introduction of a New Event 1599
Oath Formulas 1602
Introduction of New and Old Participants 1605
Poetry 1607
Politeness 1610
Pronouns — When to Use Them 1612
Quotations and Quote Margins 1615
Appendix: Translation Words 1618
Almighty 1618
altar 1619
amen, truly 1620
angel, archangel 1621
anoint, anointed, anointing 1622
appoint, appointed 1623
ark of the covenant, ark of Yahweh, box, Box of the Testimony, Box of the Covenant of Yahweh 1624
atonement, atone, atoned 1625
atonement lid 1626
believe, believer, belief, unbeliever, unbelief 1627

blasphemy, blaspheme, blasphemous 1629
bless, blessed, blessing 1630
bind, bond, bound 1631
call, called, call out, called out 1632
call, called 1633
call, called 1633
confess, confession 1634
consecrate, consecrated, consecration 1635
covenant 1636
covenant faithfulness, covenant loyalty, covenant love 1638
curse, cursed, cursing 1638
dominion 1639
chosen, choose, chosen people, Chosen One, elect 1640
eternity, everlasting, eternal, forever 1641
evil, wicked, wickedness, unpleasant 1642
exalt, exalted, exaltation 1644
faithful, faithfulness, trustworthy 1644
faithless, unfaithful, unfaithfulness 1645
god, false god, goddess, idol, idolater, idolatrous, idolatry 1646
favor, favorable, favoritism 1648
fear, afraid, frighten 1649
forgive, forgiven, forgiveness, pardon, pardoned 1650
fulfill, fulfilled, carried out 1651
glory, glorious, glorify 1652
God 1653
God the Father, heavenly Father, Father 1655
good, right, pleasant, better, best, goodness 1656
guilt, guilty 1657
Hades, Sheol 1658
holy, holiness, unholy, sacred 1659
Holy One 1661
holy place 1661
Holy Spirit, Spirit of God, Spirit of the Lord, Spirit 1662
honor 1663
house of God, your house, his house, Yahweh's house, a house for my name, the house for my name, the house, a house, a house of Yahweh 1664
humble, humbled, humility 1665
I am Yahweh 1666
inherit, inheritance, heir 1668
iniquity 1669
innocent 1670
Israel, Israelites 1671
jealous, jealousy 1673
judge, judgment 1674
just, justice, unjust, injustice, justify, justification 1675
lamb, Lamb of God 1677
law, law of Moses, law of Yahweh, law of God 1678
lord, Lord, master, sir 1679
manna 1681
to minister, ministry 1681
miracle, wonder, sign 1682
Most High 1684
Nazirite, Nazirite vow 1684
parable 1685
Passover 1685
perish 1686
pray, prayer 1687
priest, priesthood 1688
prophet, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess 1690
pure, purify, purification 1691
ransom, ransomed 1692
redeem, redeemer, redemption 1693
restore, restoration 1694
Sabbath 1695
sanctuary 1696
save, saved, safe, salvation, rescue 1697
sign, proof, reminder 1699
sin, sinful, sinner, sinning 1700
soul, self 1701
spirit, wind, breath 1702

stone, stoning 1703
tabernacle 1704
temple, house, house of God 1705
testimony, testify, witness, eyewitness, evidence 1706
transgress, transgression 1708
unleavened bread 1709
woe 1710
word of God, word of Yahweh, word of the Lord, word of truth, scripture 1711
prostrate, bow down, worship 1712
wrath, fury 1713
Yahweh, Yah 1714
Aaron 1717
Abraham, Abram 1718
Amalek, Amalekite 1719
Ammon, Ammonite 1719
Amorite 1720
Anak, Anakites 1721
Asher 1721
Assyria, Assyrian, Assyrian Empire 1722
Baal 1723
Balaam 1724
Bashan 1725
Benjamin, Benjaminite 1725
Cain 1726
Caleb 1726
Canaan, Canaanite 1727
Dan 1728
Edom, Edomite, Idumea 1729
Egypt, Egyptian 1729
Eleazar 1730
Enoch 1731
Ephraim, Ephraimite 1731
Euphrates River, the River 1732
Gad 1732
Gilead, Gileadite 1733
Hamath, Hamathites, Lebo Hamath, Hamath Rabbah 1733
Hebron, Kiriath Arba 1734
Heshbon 1734
Hittite 1735
Hoshea 1735
Isaac 1736
Issachar 1737
Jacob, Israel 1737
Jebus, Jebusite 1738
Jericho 1739
Jethro, Reuel 1739
Jordan River, Jordan 1740
Joseph (OT) 1741
Joshua 1742
Judah 1743
Judea, Judah 1743
Kadesh, Kadesh Barnea, Meribah Kadesh 1744
Korah, Korahite 1745
Levi, Levite 1745
Manasseh 1746
Midian, Midianite 1747
Miriam 1748
Moab, Moabite 1749
Moses 1749
Naphtali 1751
Negeb, Negev 1752
Nephils, Nephilim, Nephilites 1752
Og 1753
Paran 1753
Peor, Mount Peor, Baal Peor 1754
Phinehas 1754
Sea of Reeds, Red Sea 1755
Reuben 1755
Salt Sea, eastern sea 1756
Seir, sons of Seir, Mount Seir, mountains of Seir, land of Seir 1756

Seth 1757
Sihon 1757
Simeon 1758
Sinai, Horeb 1758
Succoth 1759
the sea, the Great Sea, the western sea 1760
Tirzah 1760
Zebulun 1761
adversary, enemy 1761
afflict, affliction, distress 1762
age, aged, old, old age, years old 1763
age, era, time 1763
alarm, alarmed 1764
assembly, assemble, congregation, meeting, gather, community 1764
avenge, avenger, revenge, vengeance 1766
barley 1767
barren, dry 1767
bear, bearer, bore, borne, produce, produced 1768
bear, bears, bore, borne, bearer, bearing, carry 1768
bear, bore, borne 1769
beast 1769
day 1770
hour, moment 1771
month, monthly 1771
week 1772
year 1773
blemish, unblemished, defect 1774
bow, bow down, kneel, bend, bend the knee 1774
bread 1775
bronze 1776
burnt offering, offering by fire 1777
bury, buried, burial 1777
captive, captivate, captivity, catch 1778
cast out, driving out, throw out 1779
cedar, cedarwood 1780
cherub, cherubs 1780
chief, leader 1781
clan 1782
conceive, conceived, conception 1783
consume, devour 1784
advice, advise, advisor, counsel, counselor, counsels 1785
court, courtyard 1785
cow, bull, calf, cattle, heifer, ox 1786
create, created, creation, creator 1787
cry, cry out, outcry 1788
curtain 1789
deceive, lie, deception, illusion 1790
declare, proclaim, announce 1791
dedicate, dedication, established, devoted 1792
delight 1792
deliver, deliverer, deliverance, delivered 1793
descend, descendant 1794
desert, wilderness 1795
desolate, desolated, desolation, deserted, desolator 1795
destroy, destruction, annihilate 1796
devour 1797
disperse, dispersion, scatter, distributed 1798
divination, diviner, soothsaying, soothsayer 1798
doctrine, teaching, belief, beliefs, instruction, knowledge 1799
donkey, mule 1799
dove, pigeon, turtledove 1800
dream 1800
drink offering 1801
drunk, drunkard 1802
dung, manure 1802
earth, land 1803
elder 1804
family, household 1804
festival, feast, celebrate 1805
fig 1806

firstborn 1806
firstfruit, firstfruits 1807
flock, herd 1808
alien, foreigner, sojourn 1809
sexual immorality, immorality, immoral, fornication 1809
forsake, forsaken, leave 1810
frankincense 1811
free, freed, freedom, freeman, freewill, liberty 1812
freewill offering 1813
fruit, fruitful, unfruitful 1813
gate, gate bar, gatekeeper, gatepost, gateway 1814
generation 1815
generation 1816
generation 1816
goat, goatskin, scapegoat, kid 1817
gold, golden 1818
grain, grainfields 1819
grain offering 1819
grape, grapevine 1820
guilt offering 1820
hang, hung 1821
harvest, reap 1821
high place 1822
honey, honeycomb 1823
horn, horned, shofar 1823
house 1824
house, household, house of Israel, house of David 1824
household, house 1825
image, carved image, cast metal image, figure, carved figure, statue 1826
incense 1827
iron 1828
joy, joyful, rejoice, glad 1828
king, kingship 1830
kingdom 1831
know, knew, knowledge, known, unknown, distinguish 1832
know, knew, knowledge, unknown 1833
labor, labors, labored, laboring, laborer, work, hard work 1833
lamp 1834
lampstand 1834
skin disease, leper, leprosy 1835
lion, lioness 1836
livestock, animals 1837
lots, casting lots 1837
memorial, memorial offering 1838
messenger 1839
might, mighty, mighty works 1839
mind, mindful, remind, reminder, likeminded 1840
mourn, mourner, weeping 1841
nation 1842
noble, nobleman, royal official 1843
oath, vow, swear, swearing, swear by, sworn 1843
oil 1844
ordinance, regulation, requirement, strict law, custom 1845
palace, house 1845
palm 1846
peace, peaceful, peacemaker 1846
peace offering 1847
perfect, complete 1848
column, pillar 1848
plague 1849
plea, plead, please, beg, implore 1850
plunder, plundered, spoil, spoils 1850
pomegranate 1851
possess, possessed, possession, dispossess 1851
prey, prey on 1852
prince, princess, governor, provincial governor, official, nobleman, noblemen, nobility 1853
profane, profaned 1854
prosper, prosperity, prosperous 1854
prostrate 1855
punish, punished, punishment, unpunished 1856

purple 1857
rebel, rebellion, rebellious, rebelliousness 1857
receive, welcome, taken up, acceptance 1858
refuge, refugee, shelter, sheltered 1859
reject, rejected, rejection 1860
report, reported, tell, reputation 1861
rule, reign, ruler, prefect, official, leader 1862
sacrifice, offering 1863
scepter 1864
seed 1865
seek, search, look for 1866
seize, seizure, capture 1866
serpent, snake, viper 1867
servant, serve, maidservant, young man, young women 1868
shame, ashamed, disgrace, humiliate, reproach 1869
ewe, ram, sheep, sheepfold, sheepshearer, sheepskin 1871
shepherd, herder, pastor 1872
silver 1873
sin offering, purification offering 1874
slay, slain, slaughter, kill, murder 1874
slaughter, slaughtered 1875
snow 1875
sow, sower, plant, planted, replanted, transplanted 1876
spear, spearmen 1877
splendor 1877
staff, clubs 1878
statute 1878
strife, disputes, quarrel, arguing, conflict 1879
stronghold, fortification, fortress, citadel 1879
sweep 1880
sword, swordsmen 1881
tent, tentmaker 1882
tenth, tithe 1883
tent of meeting 1883
terror, terrorize, terrify, dread, panic 1884
thorn, thorn bush, thistle 1885
thresh 1885
grave, gravedigger, tomb, burial place 1886
tribe, tribal, tribesmen 1887
tribulation, distress, distresses, trouble 1887
tribute, contribution 1888
trouble, disturb, stir up, distress, hardship, calamity 1888
trumpet, trumpeter 1889
veil, veiled, unveiled 1890
vine 1891
vineyard 1891
vision, envision 1892
wadi 1893
waste, wasted, wasteland, becomes weak 1893
watch, guard, take heed, beware 1894
cistern, well 1895
wine, wineskin, new wine 1896
winepress 1897
winnow, sift 1897
womb 1898
yoke, yoked, tied 1899

unfoldingWord® Translation Notes

Numbers

Numbers Introduction

Introduction to Numbers

Part 1: General Introduction

Outline of Numbers

1. Preparing to leave Sinai (1:1–10:10)
    1. Counting and assembling the tribes (1:1–4:49)
    2. Regulations (5:1–6:27)
    3. Dedicating the altar (7:1–89)
    4. Setting up the lampstand (8:1–4)
    5. Setting apart the Levites (8:5–29)
    6. Second Passover; the cloud to lead them; trumpets (9:1–10:10)
2. Sinai to Moab, through the wilderness (10:11–17:13)
    1. Complaining and murmuring (10:11–11:15)
    2. The quails (11:16–35)
    3. Miriam’s leprosy (12:1–16)
    4. The spies selected and sent (13:1–14:45)
    5. Commands (15:1–41)
    6. Korah’s rebellion (16:1–17:13)
3. The Priests and purifying (18:1–19:22)
    1. Priests and Levites (18:1–32)
    2. The law about purifying (19:1–22)
4. Conflicts (20:1–21:35)
    1. Miriam’s death (20:1–13)

2. Edom's refusal and Aaron's death (20:14–29)
3. Journey to Moab (21:1–35)

5. The Plains of Moab (22:1–36:13)
    1. Balaam (22:1–24:25)
    2. Baal Peor (25:1–18)
    3. The second counting (26:1–65)
    4. Inheritance rights for daughters (27:1–11)
    5. Joshua succeeds Moses (27:12–23)
    6. Offerings and women's vows (28:1–30:16)
    7. Midianite war (31:1–54)
    8. Across the Jordan (32:1–42)
    9. The people set up camp (33:1–56)
    10. Land west of the Jordan; cities for Levites and cities of refuge (34:1–35:34)
    11. Female heirs marry (36:1–13)

What is the book of Numbers about?

The book of Numbers tells about the people of Israel as they traveled from Mount Sinai in the wilderness to the Jordan River. While traveling, the Israelites became discouraged. So they rebelled against the leaders whom God had given them. At the Jordan River, the people of Israel refused to enter the Promised Land. Because the Israelites were afraid and did not trust God, he delayed their entry into the Promised Land for 40 years (13:1–14:45).

How should the title of this book be translated?

The title of this book, "Numbers," refers to when the number of the Israelites was counted. The people of the project language may already be familiar with the name "Numbers" from other Bible versions. If not, the translator could consider a clearer name for the book, such as "The Counting of the People of Israel."

Who wrote the book of Numbers?

The writers of both the Old and New Testaments present Moses as being very involved with writing the book of Numbers. Since ancient times, both Jews and Christians have thought that Moses wrote Genesis, Exodus, Leviticus, Numbers, and Deuteronomy.

Part 2: Important Religious and Cultural Concepts

How does Numbers present the idea of the whole community being responsible when only a few people sinned?

The people understood and assumed that God would punish the whole community of Israel if some of the people rebelled against him. God did often punish the entire nation when some of them sinned. All of the people in the ancient Near East would have understood and expected this. However, Moses and Aaron prayed for God to punish only those who were guilty.

Part 3: Important Translation Issues

Why does Moses speak using third-person pronouns about himself?

When an author wrote about something he was involved in, it was common for him to use the pronoun “he” instead of “I,” or “they” instead of “we.” The translator may decide to use the project’s normal pronouns instead.

“Shall” and “Shall not”

In this book, “shall” is used to give a command and “shall not” is used to give a prohibition. While the form itself is not a command or prohibition, it can be interpreted and translated as such. If it would be helpful in your language, you could translate these words using a command or instruction form.

Sons of Israel and Israel

Throughout this book, “sons of Israel” and “Israel” usually refer to the Israelite nation or people group as if all of them were the sons of their ancestor Israel, who is also called Jacob. If it would be helpful in your language, you could use an equivalent expression or plain language.

Numbers 1

Numbers 1 Introduction

Numbers 1 Chapter Introduction

Structure and Formatting

This chapter is intended to form a smooth transition from the last chapter of the book of Leviticus. It describes the counting of Israelite men who are able to fight in the army.

1. Yahweh commands Moses to take a census of Israel's fighting men (1–46)
2. Yahweh sets apart the Levites for service of the tabernacle (47–53)
3. Israel obeys Yahweh's commands concerning the census (54)

Religious and Cultural Concepts in This Chapter

Census

In this chapter, Yahweh commands Moses and Aaron to count how many men of military age were in each tribe of Israel. Some of these men were also called to lead their family groups.

Translation Issues in This Chapter

"Fathers"

Throughout this chapter, the author uses "fathers" to refer more generally to ancestors. The UST translates this word with "ancestor" or "ancestral." Consider how you would most naturally refer to male ancestors in your language.

"A son of 20 years and upward"

Throughout the chapter, this phrase refers to a man who is at least 20 years old. The man could be significantly older than 20 years old. Consider how you would naturally refer to an age limitation of this kind in your language.

Possession with tribal names in 1:5–16

In 1:5–16, the author consistently uses the word "of" followed by the name of a tribe. In these cases, the possessive form indicates that the named person is a member of that specific tribe. Consider how you would indicate that someone belongs to a specific group.

“One who goes out to war”

Throughout the chapter, this phrase refers to a man who is able to fight in a war. It indicates that the man is fit and able, not that he is already a soldier. Be sure that your translation indicates the ability to fight.

Does Yahweh also speak 1:16?

The words in 1:16 could be a summary provided by the narrator, or they could be the final words spoken by Yahweh to Moses in this section. If these are words spoken by Yahweh to Moses, they should be translated in the present tense (“are”) instead of the past tense (“were”). The ULT and UST indicate that Yahweh’s words end in 1:15, since it is common for the narrator to include a conclusion of this type.

The list of the tribes in 1:20–43

The list of tribes in 1:20–43 includes the exact same wording for most of the tribes. The exceptions are Reuben (which includes “the firstborn of Israel” and “according to their skulls”), Simeon (which includes “his counted ones” and “according to their skulls”), and Naphtali (which omits the opening “Of” to indicate that the list is ending). Notes on these variations are included at the verses where they appear. Notes on the repeated elements are listed here. It can be helpful to decide how to translate the consistently repeated phrases first and then translate the variations with Reuben, Simeon, and Naphtali.

- Sequence. Some languages would naturally arrange the data about each tribe in a different sequence. The UST models this by creating verse bridges in order to include the number earlier. Consider what would be a natural order in your language.
- Metaphor: “sons of.” The word “sons” refers to male descendants in general. Consider how you would naturally refer to male descendants in your language.
- Metaphor: “house of their fathers.” Here, the word “house” refers to a group of people who are related to each other. It does not refer to a building. The word “fathers” refers to male ancestors, not just male parents. So, the phrase “house of their fathers” refers to a group of people who are related to each other because they have the same male ancestors. Consider how you might refer to a group of related people like this in your language.
- Metaphor: “a son of 20 years and upward.” See the discussion of this phrase above.
- Implicit: “everyone who goes out to war.” See the discussion of this phrase above.
- Passive: “their counted ones.” The expression “counted ones” is a passive verbal form. If your language would not use that form, you could express the idea in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. If you need to say who does the action, the context indicates that it is Moses and Aaron with the help of the 12 leaders.
- Possession: “of the tribe of.” The possessive form indicates that “the counted ones” belong to “the tribe,” and the following phrase “of [tribe name]” defines which tribe. Consider how you would indicate that people belong to a specific, named tribe.

- Large numbers. The numbers in this section are all over 10,000. Consider how you would express large numbers in your language and use that form consistently in this chapter.

Numbers 1:1

ULT	UST
And Yahweh spoke to Moses in the wilderness of Sinai in the tent of meeting on one of the second month in the second year of their going out from the land of Egypt, saying,	*It was the first day of the second month of the year after the Israelite people had left Egypt. While the Israelite people were in the desolate area around Sinai, Yahweh spoke to Moses in the sacred tent. Yahweh told him,*

ULT **in the wilderness of Sinai**

UST While the Israelite people were in the desolate area around Sinai

A **wilderness** is a kind of dry, remote, uncultivated area. If your readers would not be familiar with what a wilderness is, you could use the name of a similar thing that your readers would recognize, or you could use a more general term. Alternate translation: [in the barren region of Sinai] or [in the remote desert of Sinai]

Support Reference: Translate Unknowns

ULT **on one**

UST It was the first day

The implication is that **one** means "the first day" of the second month. You could include this information if that would be helpful to your readers. Alternate translation: [on the first day]

Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

ULT **on one**

UST It was the first day

The word **one** here means "first." Hebrew sometimes uses cardinal numbers (1, 2, 3) where other languages would use ordinal numbers (first, second, third). If your language does not use cardinal numbers this way, you can use an ordinal number instead.

Support Reference: Ordinal Numbers

ULT **of the second month**

UST of the second month

The **second month** of the Hebrew calendar includes the last half of April and the first half of May on Western calendars. You could convert the Hebrew day and month into an approximate date on the calendar that your culture uses. However, the Jews used a lunar calendar, so if you use a solar calendar, the date will be different every year and the translation will not be entirely accurate. So you may just want to give the number of the day and the name of the month on the Hebrew calendar, which is "Iyar" here, then say in a footnote approximately what time of year that is on your calendar.

Support Reference: Hebrew Months

ULT **of the second month in the second year**

UST of the second month of the year after

The words **second month** and **second year** use ordinal numbers (first, second, third). Some languages use cardinal numbers (1, 2, 3) in these situations. If your language does not use ordinal numbers this way, you can use cardinal numbers instead.

Support Reference: Ordinal Numbers

> ULT **saying**
> UST Yahweh told him

Here and throughout this chapter, the term **saying** introduces a direct quotation. In your translation, use a natural way of introducing direct quotations in your language. It may not be necessary to represent this term explicitly. For more information, see the book introduction.

Support Reference: Quotations and Quote Margins

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Yahweh	Yahweh
Moses	Moses
wilderness	While the Israelite people were in the desolate area around
Sinai	Sinai
tent of meeting	in the sacred tent
month	month
year	year
land	Egypt
Egypt	Egypt

Numbers 1:2

ULT	UST
"Lift up the head of all the congregation of the sons of Israel, according to their clans, according to the house of their fathers, by the number of the names, every male according to their skulls,	*"Count all the men among the whole Israelite community, one by one. List them by name by their tribal groups and ancestral families.*

ULT **Lift up the head of**
UST Count all the men among

The phrase **Lift up the head of** is a common expression of this culture to mean "count" or "take a census of." If this phrase does not have that meaning in your language, you could use a comparable expression from your language that does have that meaning, or you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [count the number of] or [record the total of]
Support Reference: Idiom

ULT **Lift up**
UST Count

The command **Lift up** is plural here because God is speaking to both Moses and Aaron. So use the plural form in your translation if your language marks that distinction.
Support Reference: Forms of 'You' — Singular

ULT **all**
UST whole

The implication is that **all** refers specifically to the men, as shown later in the verse by "every male." You could include this information if that would be helpful to your readers. Alternate translation: [all the men of]
Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

ULT **the congregation of the sons of Israel**
UST the … Israelite community

Yahweh is using the possessive form to describe a **congregation** that is characterized by being **the sons of Israel**. If your language would not use the possessive form for this, you could express this idea in another way. Alternate translation: [the congregation that consists of the sons of Israel]
Support Reference: Possession

ULT **of the sons of Israel**
UST Israelite

This is the first of many times in this book that **sons of Israel** refers to the Israelite nation or people group who descended from **Israel**. See the discussion of how to translate this phrase in the Introduction to Numbers.
Support Reference: Metaphor

ULT **according to their clans, according to the house of their fathers**
UST by their tribal groups and ancestral families

Here and throughout this chapter, the phrase **house of their fathers** refers to largest divisions within a single tribe. The word **clans** refers to the largest divisions of each **house of their fathers**. Alternate translation: [according to their clans, according to the house of their fathers made up of those clans]
Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

ULT **according to the house of their fathers**
UST and ancestral families

Here, **house** refers to people who are related. If it would be helpful in your language, you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [according to the family groups of]
Support Reference: Metaphor

ULT **their fathers**
UST ancestral

Yahweh is using the term **fathers** to mean "ancestors." If it would be helpful in your language, you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [their ancestors]
Support Reference: Metaphor

ULT **by the number of the names**
UST List … by name

The implication is that Moses was to write down the name of each man as he counted them, creating a list or record. You could include this information if that would be helpful to your readers. Alternate translation: [by listing the names of each one counted]
Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

ULT **according to their skulls**
UST one by one

Yahweh is using **skulls** to represent whole persons. He means that each person should be counted only one time. If it would be helpful in your language, you could use an equivalent expression from your culture or state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [counting each person] or [one by one]
Support Reference: Synecdoche

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
congregation	community
Israel	Israelite
clans	by their tribal groups
house	and … families

Numbers 1:3

ULT	UST
from a son of 20 years and upward, everyone who goes out to war in Israel. Count them, you and Aaron, according to their armies.	*Only include the men who are at least 20 years old and can be soldiers. You and Aaron must list them by their army divisions.*

ULT **from a son of 20 years and upward**
UST Only include the men who are at least 20 years old

Yahweh is using **from a son of 20 years and upward** as a common expression of his culture to mean "any male who is at least 20 years old." If this phrase does not have that meaning in your language, you could use a comparable expression from your language that does have that meaning, or you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [who are twenty years old or older] or [aged twenty and above]
Support Reference: Idiom

ULT **who goes out to war**
UST and can be soldiers

The implication is that these men are able to serve as soldiers and fight in battle. You could include this information if that would be helpful to your readers. Alternate translation: [who is able to serve in the army] or [who is fit for military service]
Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

ULT **in Israel**
UST and can be soldiers

Here, **Israel** refers to the Israelite nation or people group. See the discussion of how to translate **Israel** in the Introduction to Numbers.
Support Reference: Metonymy

ULT **you**
UST You

The word **you** is singular here because Yahweh is speaking to Moses. So use the singular form in your translation if your language marks that distinction.
Support Reference: Forms of 'You' — Singular

ULT **according to their armies**
UST by their army divisions

The implication is that each tribe was organized and arranged into military units or divisions. You could include this information if that would be helpful to your readers. Alternate translation: [by their military divisions]
Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
years	who are … 20
Israel	and can be soldiers
Aaron	Aaron

Numbers 1:4

ULT	UST
And with you will be a man, a man of the tribe. He will be the head man of the house of his fathers.	*One man from each tribe will help you and Aaron do this. These men must already be leaders of their ancestral families.*

ULT **And with you**
UST you and Aaron

The implication is that these men will be helping Moses and Aaron with the task of counting the people. You could include this information if that would be helpful to your readers. Alternate translation: [To assist you in this task] or [Working together with you]
Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

ULT **And with you**
UST you and Aaron

Since Yahweh is speaking to both Moses and Aaron, the form of **you** would be dual here, if your language uses that form. Otherwise, the word would be plural.
Support Reference: Forms of 'You' — Dual/Plural

ULT **will be a man**
UST One man … will help … do this

Here, the phrase **will be** is plural, but **man** is singular. The implication is that one man from each tribe will assist Moses and Aaron. You could include this information if that would be helpful to your readers. Alternate translation: [must each be represented by one man] or [will each send one man]
Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

ULT **a man of the tribe**
UST from each tribe

Yahweh is using the possessive form to describe a **man** who belongs to each **tribe**. If your language would not use the possessive form for this, you could express this idea in another way. Alternate translation: [a man who represents each tribe] or [a man who belongs to each tribe]
Support Reference: Possession

ULT **the head man**
UST leaders

Here, Yahweh is speaking as if the tribal leader were the **head** of a body. If it would be helpful in your language, you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [the chief leader] or [the principal leader]
Support Reference: Metaphor

ULT **of the house**
UST of … families

Here, **house** means all the people descended from a particular person. It envisions them as if they were one household living together. So the house of the ancestors figuratively means all the people descended from the tribal patriarchs. Alternate translation: [from the clan] or [from the extended family]

Support Reference: Metaphor

ULT **of his fathers**
UST their ancestral

Yahweh is using the term **fathers** to mean "ancestors." If it would be helpful in your language, you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [of his ancestors] or [of his forefathers]

Support Reference: Metaphor

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
tribe	tribe
house	of … families

Numbers 1:5

ULT	UST
And these are the names of the men who will stand with you: of Reuben, Elizur, the son of Shedeur,	*Here are the names of these men who will help you and Aaron: Shedeur's son Elizur, who is from the tribe of Reuben;*

ULT **will stand with you**
UST will help you and Aaron

Here, Yahweh is speaking as if helping with the census were actually **standing** with Moses and Aaron. If it would be helpful in your language, you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [will help you count the people] or [will assist you with the census]
Support Reference: Metaphor

ULT **with you**
UST you and Aaron

Since Yahweh is speaking to two people, Moses and Aaron, the form of **you** would be dual here, if your language uses that form. Otherwise, the word would be plural.
Support Reference: Forms of 'You' — Dual/Plural

ULT **of Reuben**
UST who is from {the tribe of} Reuben

Here and in 1:6–15, **of** indicates that the named person (here **Elizur**) is a member of the tribe (in this case, **Reuben**). See the chapter introduction for more information. If it would be helpful in your language, you could use a different expression. Alternate translation: [from the tribe of Reuben]
Support Reference: Possession

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Reuben	Reuben

Numbers 1:5-15

In this list, the name after **son of** is always the name of a man.
Support Reference: How to Translate Names

Numbers 1:15

ULT	UST
of Naphtali, Ahira, the son of Enan.”	*and Enan’s son Ahira, who is from the tribe of Naphtali.”*

ULT **of Enan**
UST and Enan’s

The direct speech that began in 1:2 could: (1) end at the end of this verse. (2) end at the end of 1:16.

Support Reference: Quote Markings

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Naphtali	Naphtali

Numbers 1:16

ULT	UST
These were the called ones of the congregation, the leaders of the tribes of their fathers. They were the heads of the thousands of Israel.	*Yahweh chose these men from the community. They were already leaders of their ancestral tribes, and they led the clans of the Israelite people.*

ULT **were the called ones of the congregation**
UST Yahweh chose … from the community

The expression **called ones** is a passive verbal form. If your language would not use that form, you could express the idea in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. If you need to say who does the action, it could be: (1) God. Alternate translation: [were the ones whom God called from the congregation]; or (2) the congregation. Alternate translation: [were the ones whom the congregation called]
Support Reference: Active or Passive

ULT **were the called ones of**
UST Yahweh chose

The implication is that these men were appointed or chosen by God for leadership in Israel. You could include this information if that would be helpful to your readers. Alternate translation: [were the chosen ones of]
Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

ULT **their fathers**
UST their ancestral

See how you translated the same use of this phrase in 1:2.
Support Reference: Metaphor

ULT **They {were} the heads of the thousands of**
UST and they led the clans of

See how you translated the same use of "head" in 1:4.
Support Reference: Metaphor

ULT **the thousands of Israel**
UST the clans of the Israelite people

Here, the author is speaking as if Israel's tribal divisions were actually **thousands**. If it would be helpful in your language, you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [the divisions within Israel]
Support Reference: Metaphor

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
called	Yahweh chose
congregation	community
leaders	leaders
tribes	tribes
Israel	Israelite

Numbers 1:17

ULT	UST
And Moses and Aaron took these men, who were designated by names.	*Moses and Aaron summoned these men whose names Yahweh had listed.*

ULT **And Moses and Aaron took these men**
UST Moses and Aaron summoned these men

Here, the author is speaking as if these men were objects that Moses and Aaron physically **took**. He means that Moses and Aaron gathered these men together. If it would be helpful in your language, you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [Then Moses and Aaron summoned these men] or [Then Moses and Aaron gathered these men together]
Support Reference: Metaphor

ULT **who were designated**
UST whose … Yahweh had listed

The expression **were designated** is a passive verbal form. If your language would not use that form, you could express the idea in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. If you need to say who does the action, the context indicates that it is God. Alternate translation: [whom Yahweh had designated]
Support Reference: Active or Passive

ULT **by names**
UST names

The author is leaving out some of the words that in many languages a sentence would need in order to be complete. You can supply these words from the context if that would be clearer in your language. Alternate translation: [by their names]
Support Reference: Ellipsis

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Moses	Moses
Aaron	Aaron

Numbers 1:18

ULT	UST
And they assembled all the congregation on one of the second month. And they recorded their ancestry in accordance with their clans, according to the house of their fathers, by the number of the names, from a son of 20 years and upward, according to their skulls,	*Moses and Aaron gathered the whole Israelite community on that same day, the first day of the second month. Then the men who were at least 20 years old registered themselves by name, one by one. They registered themselves according to their tribal groups and ancestral families.*

ULT **on one of the second month**

UST on {that same day}, the first day of the second month

See how you translated this phrase in 1:1.

Support Reference: Ordinal Numbers

ULT **And they recorded their ancestry**

UST Then … registered themselves

Here, **they** could refer to: (1) all the Israelite men who were 20 years old or older. Alternate translation: [And the Israelites recorded their ancestry]; or (2) Moses and Aaron, while **their** refers to all the Israelites. Alternate translation: [And Moses and Aaron recorded the Israelites' ancestry]

Support Reference: Pronouns — When to Use Them

ULT **in accordance with their clans, according to the house of their fathers, by the number of the names**

UST by name … They registered themselves according to their tribal groups and ancestral families

See how you translated the similar phrases in 1:2.

Support Reference: Metaphor

ULT **according to their skulls**

UST one by one

See how you translated this phrase in 1:2.

Support Reference: Synecdoche

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
assembled	gathered
congregation	community
month	month
clans	their tribal groups
house	and ancestral families
years	20

Numbers 1:20

ULT	UST
And they were the sons of Reuben, the firstborn of Israel, their generations according to their clans, according to the house of their fathers, by the number of the names, according to their skulls, every male from a son of 20 years and upward, everyone who goes out to war,	

ULT **And they were**
UST who were

The phrase **and they were** introduces the whole list of names and numbers that follows. You could include this information if that would be helpful to your readers. Alternate translation: [Here is what Moses recorded:]
Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

ULT **of Israel**
UST who was Jacob's

The word **Israel** is the name of a man, the son of Isaac. The word **Israel** does not refer to the Israelites here. Alternate translation: [Isaac's son Israel]
Support Reference: How to Translate Names

ULT **according to their skulls**
UST one by one

The author is using **skulls** to represent whole persons. He means that each person should be counted only one time. If it would be helpful in your language, you could use an equivalent expression from your culture or state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [individually]
Support Reference: Synecdoche

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Reuben	Reuben
firstborn	oldest son
Israel	who was Jacob's
generations	descendants
clans	by their tribal groups
house	and ancestral families
years	years

Numbers 1:20-43

These verses list the number Israelites from each tribe who were above 20 years old and able to fight. See the chapter introduction for information on how to translate these repetitive verses. The following notes give information on verses that include unique elements.
Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

Numbers 1:22

ULT	UST
Of the sons of Simeon, their generations according to their clans, according to the house of their fathers, his counted ones by the number of the names, according to their skulls, every male from a son of 20 years and upward, everyone who goes out to war,	

ULT **according to their skulls**
UST one by one

See how you translated this phrase in 1:20.
Support Reference: Synecdoche

ULT **his counted ones**
UST They listed … these men

It might seem that the expression **his counted ones** contains extra information that would not be natural to express in your language, especially since a similar phrase appears in the next verse. If so, you can omit it.
Support Reference: Making Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information Explicit

ULT **his counted ones**
UST They listed … these men

The expression **counted ones** is a passive verbal form. If your language would not use that form, you could express the idea in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: [those whom Moses and Aaron counted]
Support Reference: Active or Passive

ULT **his counted ones**
UST They listed … these men

The author is using the possessive form to mean the counted ones who came from Simeon's tribe. It may be helpful to clarify this for your readers. Alternate translation: [the counted ones from Simeon]
Support Reference: Possession

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Simeon	Simeon
generations	who were descendants of Simeon
clans	by their tribal groups
house	and ancestral families
years	years

Numbers 1:34

ULT	UST
Of the sons of Manasseh, their generations according to their clans, according to the house of their fathers, by the number of the names, from a son of 20 years and upward, everyone who goes out to war,	

ULT **Of the sons of Manasseh**

UST who were descendants of {Joseph's son} Manasseh

The implication is that Manasseh, along with Ephraim, was one of Joseph's sons. You could include this information if that would be helpful to your readers. Alternate translation: [Also of the sons of Joseph: of the sons of Manasseh]

Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Manasseh	Manasseh
generations	who were descendants of {Joseph's son} Manasseh
clans	by their tribal groups
house	and ancestral families
years	years

Numbers 1:42

ULT	UST
Of the sons of Naphtali, their generations according to their clans, according to the house of their fathers, by the number of the names, from a son of 20 years and upward, everyone who goes out to war,	

ULT **Of the sons of Naphtali**

UST who were descendants of Naphtali

Here, the preposition translated **Of** is omitted to indicate that this is the last tribe in the list. You could include this information if that would be helpful to your readers. Alternate translation: [Lastly, of the sons of Naphtali]

Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Naphtali	Naphtali
generations	who were descendants of Naphtali
clans	by their tribal groups
house	and ancestral families
years	years

Numbers 1:44

ULT	UST
These were the counted ones, whom Moses and Aaron had counted, and the leaders of Israel, 12 men. They were one man for the house of his fathers.	*Moses and Aaron listed all these men. The 12 men who led the Israelite people, one from each ancestral family, helped them list the men.*

ULT **were the counted ones, whom Moses and Aaron had counted**
UST Moses and Aaron listed … men

It might seem that the expression **counted ones whom Moses and Aaron had counted** contains extra information that would not be natural to express in your language. If so, you can shorten it. Alternate translation: [were the people whom Moses and Aaron had counted]
Support Reference: Making Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information Explicit

ULT **and the leaders of Israel, 12 men**
UST The 12 men who led the Israelite people … each

Here Moses implies that these **12 men** helped **Moses and Aaron** count the people, as stated in 1:5. If it would be helpful in your language, you could state this explicitly. Alternate translation: [with the 12 leaders of Israel helping them]
Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

ULT **They were one man for the house of his fathers**
UST one from each ancestral family, helped them list the men

The author is using **one man for the house of his fathers** as a common expression of his culture to mean "each person represented his ancestral house." If this phrase does not have that meaning in your language, you could use a comparable expression from your language that does have that meaning, or you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [Each one of them was from the house of his fathers]
Support Reference: Idiom

ULT **for the house**
UST from … family

Here, **house** means all the people descended from a particular person. It envisions them as if they were one household living together. Alternate translation: [of the household]
Support Reference: Metaphor

ULT **of his fathers**
UST ancestral

The author is using the term **fathers** to mean "ancestors." If it would be helpful in your language, you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [of his ancestors] or [of his family line]
Support Reference: Metaphor

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Moses	Moses
Aaron	Aaron
leaders	The … men who led
Israel	Israelite
house	from … family

Numbers 1:45

ULT	UST
And they were all the counted ones of the sons of Israel according to the house of their fathers, from a son of 20 years and upward, everyone who goes out to war in Israel.	*These men were all the Israelites whom Moses, Aaron, and the 12 leaders listed by their ancestral families. These men were at least 20 years old and could be soldiers for the Israelite people.*

ULT **the counted ones of the sons**
UST the Israelites whom Moses, Aaron, and the 12 leaders listed

The expression **counted ones** is a passive verbal form. If your language would not use that form, you could express the idea in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: [the ones whom Moses, Aaron, and the 12 leaders counted]
Support Reference: Active or Passive

ULT **according to the house of their fathers**
UST by their ancestral families

See how you translated the similar phrase in 1:44.
Support Reference: Metaphor

ULT **from a son of 20 years and upward, everyone who goes out to war**
UST These men were at least 20 years old and could be soldiers

See how you translated these phrases in 1:20–43.
Support Reference: Metaphor

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Israel	Israelites
house	by … families
years	years
Israel	Israelite

Numbers 1:46

ULT	UST
And all the counted ones were 603, 550.	*They listed 603, 550 men in total.*

ULT **the counted ones**
UST They listed … men

The expression **counted ones** is a passive verbal form. If your language would not use that form, you could express the idea in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: [the ones whom Moses, Aaron, and the 12 leaders counted]
Support Reference: Active or Passive

ULT **were 603,550**
UST 603,550

See how you translated the large numbers in 1:20–43.
Support Reference: Numbers

Numbers 1:47

ULT	UST
And the Levites according to the tribe of their fathers were not counted in the midst of them.	*However, they did not list the Levites by their ancestral tribe along with the other tribes.*

ULT And the Levites
UST However … the Levites

The author uses the word **And** here to indicate a contrast between what was expected (that the Levites would be counted along with the other tribes) and what actually happened (they were not counted). In your translation, indicate this contrast in a way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: [But the Levites]
Support Reference: Connect — Contrast Relationship

ULT according to the tribe of their fathers
UST by their ancestral tribe

See how you translated the similar phrase “tribes of their fathers” in 1:16.
Support Reference: Metaphor

ULT were not counted
UST they did not list

The expression **were not counted** is a passive verbal form. If your language would not use that form, you could express the idea in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: [were those whom Moses, Aaron, and the 12 leaders did not count]
Support Reference: Active or Passive

ULT in the midst of them
UST along with the other tribes

Here, the author is speaking as if including the Levites in the census count meant counting the Levites **in the midst of** the other tribes. If it would be helpful in your language, you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [together with them]
Support Reference: Metaphor

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Levites	Levites
tribe	tribe

Numbers 1:48

ULT	UST
And Yahweh spoke to Moses, saying,	*That was because Yahweh had told Moses,*

ULT **And Yahweh spoke**
UST That was because Yahweh had told

The word **And** indicates that what follows is a reason for what came before. Use a connector in your language that makes it clear that what follows is a reason for what came before. Alternate translation: [The reason for this is that Yahweh spoke]
Support Reference: Connect — Reason-and-Result Relationship

ULT **And Yahweh spoke**
UST That was because Yahweh had told

The previous verse describes how the Levites were not included in the census. If it is helpful in your language, you might want to make it clear that the account that starts in this verse happened before the census was taken. The UST does that by using the phrase “had told.” Alternate translation: [And Yahweh previously spoke]
Support Reference: Order of Events

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Yahweh	Yahweh
Moses	Moses

Numbers 1:49

ULT	UST
"Only the tribe of Levi you shall not count, and you shall not lift up their heads in the midst of the sons of Israel.	*"Do not list the Levites. Do not count them along with the other Israelites.*

ULT **you shall not count … you shall not lift up**
UST Do not list … Do not count them

The word **you** is singular here because God is speaking directly to Moses. So use the singular form in your translation if your language marks that distinction.
Support Reference: Forms of 'You' — Singular

ULT **and you shall not lift up their heads**
UST Do not count them

See how you translated the similar phrase in 1:2.
Support Reference: Idiom

ULT **in the midst of the sons**
UST along with the {other} Israelites

See how you translated the similar phrase in 1:47.
Support Reference: Metaphor

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
tribe	the Levites
Levi	Levites
Israel	Israelites

Numbers 1:50

ULT	UST
And you, appoint the Levites over the Dwelling of the Testimony and over all its vessels and over all that belongs to it. They themselves shall carry the Dwelling and all its vessels, and they themselves shall minister to it, and they shall camp around the Dwelling.	*Moses, order the Levites to manage the sacred tent, its equipment, and everything that goes with it. They must be the ones who transport the sacred tent and its equipment. They must be the ones who take care of it. They must set up their tents around it.*

ULT **And you**
UST Moses

The word **you** is singular here because God is speaking directly to Moses. So use the singular form in your translation if your language marks that distinction.
Support Reference: Forms of 'You' — Singular

ULT **the Dwelling of the Testimony**
UST the sacred tent

The implication is that **the Testimony** refers to the Ten Commandments that were kept in the ark inside this tent. You could include this information if that would be helpful to your readers. Alternate translation: [the tent holding the ark containing the Ten Commandments]
Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

ULT **belongs to it**
UST with it

Yahweh is using this possessive form to mean "the items that are used in the Dwelling." If your language would not use the possessive form for this, you could express this idea in another way. Alternate translation: [is used in it]
Support Reference: Possession

ULT **They themselves shall carry … and they themselves shall minister to it**
UST They must be the ones who transport … They must be the ones who take care of it

The intensive pronouns **themselves** represent emphasis in what Yahweh is saying. If your language uses explicit pronouns for emphasis, you may want to use that construction in your translation. Other languages may have other ways of bringing out this emphasis. Alternate translation: [It is they who shall carry … and it is they who shall minister to it]
Support Reference: Reflexive Pronouns

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
appoint	order
Levites	Levites
the Dwelling	the … tent
Testimony	sacred
carry	must be the ones who transport
the Dwelling	the sacred tent
shall minister to it	must be the ones who take care of it
the Dwelling	their tents

Numbers 1:51

ULT	UST
And when the Dwelling sets out, the Levites shall take it down, and when the Dwelling camps, the Levites shall raise it up. And the stranger who comes near shall be put to death.	*The Levites must disassemble the sacred tent whenever the Israelites leave a place. The Levites must set it up whenever the Israelites set up their tents in a new place. If anyone who is not a Levite approaches the sacred tent, someone must execute that person.*

ULT **And when the Dwelling sets out … and when the Dwelling camps**
UST the sacred tent whenever the Israelites leave a place … whenever the Israelites set up their tents in a new place

Yahweh is speaking of **the Dwelling** as if it were a living thing that **sets out** and **camps**. If it would be helpful in your language, you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [And when the Israelites set out with the Dwelling … and when the Israelites camp with the Dwelling]
Support Reference: Personification

ULT **shall take it down … shall raise it up**
UST must disassemble the sacred tent … must set it up

Here, Yahweh is speaking as if disassembling and assembling the Dwelling were lowering and raising it. If it would be helpful in your language, you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [must take it apart … must put it back together]
Support Reference: Metaphor

ULT **And the stranger**
UST If anyone who is not a Levite

The implication is that a stranger refers to anyone who is not a Levite, even another Israelite. You could include this information if that would be helpful to your readers. Alternate translation: [And anyone other than a Levite]
Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

ULT **shall be put to death**
UST must execute that person

The expression **shall be put to death** is a passive verbal form. If your language would not use that form, you could express the idea in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. If you need to say who does the action, the context indicates that it is one or several Israelites. Alternate translation: [the Israelites must put that person to death]
Support Reference: Active or Passive

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
the Dwelling	the sacred tent
Levites	Levites
the Dwelling	whenever the Israelites set up their tents in a new place
Levites	Levites

Numbers 1:52

ULT	UST
And the sons of Israel shall camp, a man at his camp and a man at his banner, according to their armies.	*When the Israelites set up their tents, they must do so by their army divisions, with the rest of their tents and near their own tribal flags.*

ULT **a man at his camp and a man at his banner**
UST with the rest of their tents and near their own tribal flags

Here the masculine term **man** has a generic sense that includes both men and women. If it would be helpful to your readers, you could use language in your translation that is clearly inclusive of both men and women. Alternate translation: [each person at his or her camp and each person at his or her banner]
Support Reference: When Masculine Words Include Women

ULT **a man … and a man**
UST with the rest of their tents and

Yahweh is not referring to a specific **man**. He means each person in general. If it would be helpful to your readers, you could use an expression that would be more natural in your language. Alternate translation: [each man … each man]
Support Reference: Generic Noun Phrases

ULT **his banner**
UST their own tribal flags

A **banner** is a kind of flag made of cloth attached to a pole that identifies a group. If your readers would not be familiar with what a banner is, you could use the name of a similar thing that your readers would recognize, or you could use a more general term. Alternate translation: [his flag]
Support Reference: Translate Unknowns

ULT **according to their armies**
UST by their army divisions

The implication is that armies refers to the organized military divisions of Israel. You could include this information if that would be helpful to your readers. See how you translated this phrase in 1:3. Alternate translation: [by their military divisions]
Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Israel	Israelites

Numbers 1:53

ULT	UST
And the Levites shall camp around the Dwelling of the Testimony, and wrath will not be on the congregation of the sons of Israel. And the Levites shall keep the keeping of the Dwelling of the Testimony."	*The Levites must set up their tents around the sacred tent. That way, Yahweh does not become angry with the Israelite community. The Levites must guard the sacred tent."*

ULT **the Dwelling of the Testimony … of the Dwelling of the Testimony**
UST the sacred tent … the sacred tent

See how you translated this phrase in 1:50.
Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

ULT **and wrath will not be on the congregation of the sons of Israel**
UST That way, Yahweh does not become angry with the Israelite community

Here, Yahweh is speaking as if **wrath** were actually an object that could be placed on people. If it would be helpful in your language, you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [and the congregation of the sons of Israel will not experience wrath]
Support Reference: Metaphor

ULT **and wrath will not be**
UST That way, Yahweh does not become angry

The word **and** introduces the result of obeying the instructions stated in the previous clause. Use a connector in your language that makes it clear that what follows is a result of what came before. Alternate translation: [which will result in wrath not being]
Support Reference: Connect — Reason-and-Result Relationship

ULT **and wrath will not be**
UST That way, Yahweh does not become angry

If your language does not use an abstract noun for the idea of **wrath**, you could express the same idea in another way. Alternate translation: [and Yahweh will not be wrathful]
Support Reference: Abstract Nouns

ULT **the congregation of the sons of Israel**
UST the Israelite community

Yahweh is using the possessive form to describe a **congregation** that is characterized by being **the sons of Israel**. If your language would not use the possessive form for this, you could express this idea in another way. See how you translated this phrase in 1:2. Alternate translation: [the congregation, that is, the sons of Israel]
Support Reference: Possession

ULT **And the Levites shall keep the keeping**
UST The Levites must guard

God is using a construction in which a verb and its object come from the same root. You may be able to use the same construction in your language to express the meaning here. Alternatively, your language may have another way of saying this. Alternate translation: [The Levites shall carefully keep] or [The Levites must be fully responsible for keeping]

Support Reference: Poetry

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Levites	Levites
the Dwelling	the … tent
Testimony	sacred
wrath	does … become angry
congregation	community
Israel	Israelite
Levites	Levites
of the Dwelling	the … tent
Testimony	sacred

Numbers 1:54

ULT	UST
And the sons of Israel did according to all that Yahweh commanded Moses, so they did.	*So the Israelites did exactly everything that Yahweh had ordered Moses to tell them to do.*

ULT **And the sons of Israel did according to all that Yahweh commanded Moses, so they did**

UST So the Israelites did exactly everything that Yahweh had ordered Moses to tell them to do

The expressions **the sons of Israel did according to all that Yahweh commanded Moses** and **so they did** mean similar things. The author is using them together to emphasize that the Israelites did exactly what Yahweh had commanded. If it would be clearer in your language, you could combine these into a single phrase.

Support Reference: Making Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information Explicit

ULT **Yahweh commanded Moses**

UST Yahweh had ordered Moses to tell them to do

The implication is that Yahweh commanded Moses to command the people to do these things. You could include this information if that would be helpful to your readers. Alternate translation: [Yahweh commanded Moses to command them to do]

Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

ULT **so they did**

UST So … did

Here, **so they did** is a comment about what happened after the story as a result of the events within the story itself. This signals the end of a story. Use the natural form in your language for expressing the conclusion of a story. Alternate translation: [and that is exactly what they did]

Support Reference: End of Story

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Israel	Israelites
Yahweh	Yahweh
Moses	Moses

Numbers 2

Numbers 2 Introduction

Numbers 2 Chapter Introduction

Structure and Formatting

This chapter describes how the tribes are to camp around the tabernacle. It also establishes the order in which they are to travel.

1. Yahweh assigns the tribes their camp positions and order of travel (1–31)
2. Israel camps and travels according to Yahweh's commands (32–34)

Religious and Cultural Concepts in This Chapter

Cardinal directions

Yahweh explains how the Israelites will camp in relation to the sacred tent and does so using cardinal directions: north, east, south, and west. These terms describe a person's orientation in relation to the sunrise. The sun rises in the east and sets in the west. If one faces the direction of the sunrise and then turns to his right, he is facing south. If, when facing the sunrise, he turns left, he is facing north.

Banners

Each of the four camps (each made up of three tribes) would have its own "banner." A banner is a type of flag that has images and sometimes words on it. In this case, the specific images and possibly words would indicate which tribes would camp near that banner. The banner was most closely connected with the tribe that was the leader of the camp: Judah, Reuben, Ephraim, and Dan.

The order of the tribes

Here is a diagram of the tribes around the tent of meeting. Note the groups of three on each of the four cardinal directions.

```
          Asher Dan Naphtali


Benjamin Levites Issachar


Ephraim Tent of Meeting Judah
```

```
Manasseh Zebulun


          Gad Reuben Simeon
```

Translation Issues in This Chapter

“The sons of [tribe]”

Throughout this chapter, Yahweh uses the phrase “the sons of [tribe name].” He speaks of the people who belong to the tribe as if they were the direct “sons” of the man whom the tribe was named after. Consider how you would naturally refer to the members of a tribe. The UST uses the phrase “the descendants of [tribe name].”

“According to their armies”

The phrase “according to their armies” indicates that each tribe and camp was organized and arranged into military units or divisions. The people in each military unit would camp together, and their names were listed together when the census was recorded. The UST expresses this idea with the phrase “by their army divisions.”

Names repeated from chapter 1

In this chapter, the leaders of the tribes are the same as the leaders listed in 1:5–15. The only difference is that the name Reuel in 2:14 is spelled Deuel in 1:14. See the note on 2:14 for more information. For the rest of the names, translate them in this chapter as you did in chapter 1.

Verses with total numbers

The description of each tribe’s army ends with a phrase that is almost identical in each case. The only variation is whether “his” or “their” goes with the phrase “counted ones.” Translate these verses in the same way, changing only the numbers. Notes on the first instance of this phrase 2:4 provide guidance for several translation issues that it presents.

Repeated structure for the sides of the tent of meeting

This chapter repeats the same basic structure for each of the four sides of the tent of meeting. For the first occurrence of each structure, there are notes that give guidance on specific issues. For the following verses that use the same structure, there is just a single note that points back to a previous verse and that lists any major differences from that verse. Besides those differences, translate the verses with the same structure in the same way.

Numbers 2:1

ULT	UST
And Yahweh spoke to Moses and to Aaron, saying,	*Then Yahweh told Moses and Aaron,*

> ULT **saying**
> UST Then … told

Here and throughout the chapter, the word **saying** introduces a direct quotation. See how you translated **saying** in 1:1.

Support Reference: Quotations and Quote Margins

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Yahweh	Yahweh
Moses	Moses
Aaron	Aaron

Numbers 2:2

ULT	UST
"The sons of Israel will camp, a man at his banner, with the sign of the house of their fathers. They will camp from the front, around the tent of meeting.	*"The Israelites must set up their tents near their own tribal flags and the emblems that represent their ancestral families. They must set up their tents around the sacred tent at a distance from it.*

ULT **a man at his banner**
UST near their own tribal flags

See how you translated this phrase in 1:52.
Support Reference: Generic Noun Phrases

ULT **with the sign**
UST and the emblems that represent

A **sign** is a kind of identifying mark or symbol. It is different from the "banner" referred to elsewhere in the chapter. The "banner" seems to represent each camp, while the **sign** identifies just one tribe or a portion of a tribe. If your readers would not be familiar with what a sign is, you could use the name of a similar thing that your readers would recognize, or you could use a more general term. Alternate translation: [with the symbol]
Support Reference: Translate Unknowns

ULT **of the house of their fathers**
UST their ancestral families

See how you translated **the house of their fathers** in 1:2.
Support Reference: Metonymy

ULT **from the front, around the tent of meeting**
UST around the sacred tent at a distance from it

Yahweh is using **from the front** as a common expression of his culture to mean "at a distance from." If this phrase does not have that meaning in your language, you could use a comparable expression from your language that does have that meaning, or you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [around but far away from the tent of meeting]
Support Reference: Idiom

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Israel	Israelites
sign	and the emblems that represent
house	families
tent of meeting	the sacred tent

Numbers 2:3

ULT	UST
And the ones camping to the east, from the sunrise, will be the banner of the camp of Judah according to their armies, and the leader of the sons of Judah is Nahshon, the son of Amminadab,	*Those Israelite tribes who set up their tents on the eastern side of the sacred tent must be together near the tribal flag that belongs to the descendants of Judah. They must set up their tents by their army divisions. Amminadab's son Nahshon leads the descendants of Judah.*

ULT **And the ones camping**

UST Those {Israelite tribes} who set up their tents

The implication is that these are the tribes of Judah, Issachar, and Zebulun, as shown in verses 3–9. You could include this information if that would be helpful to your readers. Alternate translation: [And the three tribes of Judah, Issachar, and Zebulun, who are camping]

Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

ULT **to the east, from the sunrise**

UST on the eastern side of the sacred tent

It might seem that the expression **to the east to the sunrise** contains extra information that would not be natural to express in your language. If so, you can shorten it. Alternate translation: [to the east]

Support Reference: Making Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information Explicit

ULT **to the east**

UST on the eastern side of the sacred tent

This implies that this direction is in relation to the tent of meeting. You could include this information if that would be helpful to your readers. Alternate translation: [to the east of the tent of meeting]

Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

ULT **will be the banner of the camp of Judah**

UST must be together near the tribal flag that belongs to the descendants of Judah

Here, Yahweh is speaking as if the tribes that will camp to the east were actually **the banner of the camp of Judah**. If it would be helpful in your language, you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [will be located near the banner of the camp of Judah]

Support Reference: Metaphor

ULT **will be the banner of the camp of**

UST must be together near the tribal flag

See how you translated **banner** in 1:52.

Support Reference: Translate Unknowns

ULT **the camp of Judah**
UST must be together near … that belongs to the descendants of Judah

Here, **the camp of Judah** represents the combined tribes of Judah, Issachar, and Zebulun who camp together under Judah's leadership. If it would be helpful in your language, you could use an equivalent expression or plain language. Alternate translation: [the camp of Judah, which includes Issachar and Zebulun]

Support Reference: Metonymy

ULT **according to their armies**
UST They must set up their tents by their army divisions

This is the first of many times in this chapter that Yahweh uses the phrase **according to their armies**. See the chapter introduction for more information.

Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

ULT **of the sons of Judah**
UST the descendants of Judah

This is the first of many times in this chapter that Yahweh uses the phrase **the sons of** followed by a tribe name to refer to the men who belong to that tribe. See the chapter introduction for more information.

Support Reference: Metaphor

ULT **is Nahshon, the son of Amminadab**
UST Amminadab's son Nahshon

For these and the other names in this chapter, translate them as you did in chapter 1. See the chapter introduction for more information.

Support Reference: How to Translate Names

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Judah	Judah
leader	leads
Judah	Judah

Numbers 2:4

ULT	UST
and his army and their counted ones are 74, 600.	*The soldiers he leads are the 74, 600 men from his tribe whom you listed.*

ULT **and his army and their counted ones**
UST The soldiers he leads are the … men {from his tribe} whom you listed

The phrase **his army and their counted ones** expresses a single idea. The phrase **their counted ones** tells more about **his army**. If it would be more natural in your language, you could express this meaning in a different way. Alternate translation: [as for his army, their counted ones] or [his army of counted ones]
Support Reference: Hendiadys

ULT **and their counted ones**
UST are the … men {from his tribe} whom you listed

The pronoun **their** refers to the army. It may be helpful to clarify this for your readers. Alternate translation: [and the army's counted ones]
Support Reference: Pronouns — When to Use Them

ULT **and their counted ones**
UST are the … men {from his tribe} whom you listed

The expression **counted ones** is a passive verbal form. If your language would not use that form, you could express the idea in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. If you need to say who does the action, the context indicates that it is Moses and Aaron with the help of the 12 leaders. Alternate translation: [and those of them whom you and the 12 leaders counted]
Support Reference: Active or Passive

ULT **are 74,600**
UST 74,600

Translate this number according to the conventions of your own language and culture. See how you translated this number in 1:27.
Support Reference: Numbers

Numbers 2:5

ULT	UST
And the ones camping beside him will be the tribe of Issachar, and the leader of the sons of Issachar is Nethanel, the son of Zuar,	*The people of Issachar tribe must set up their tents next to the tents of the descendants of Judah. Zuar's son Nethanel leads the descendants of Issachar.*

ULT **beside him**

UST next to {the tents of} the descendants of Judah

The pronoun **him** refers to the tribe of Judah. It may be helpful to clarify this for your readers. Alternate translation: [beside the tribe of Judah]

Support Reference: Pronouns — When to Use Them

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
tribe	tribe
Issachar	Issachar
leader	leads
Issachar	Issachar

Numbers 2:6

ULT	UST
and his army and his counted ones are 54, 400.	*The soldiers he leads are the 54, 400 men from his tribe whom you listed.*

ULT and his army and his counted ones

UST The soldiers he leads are the … men {from his tribe} whom you listed

See how you translated the similar phrase in 2:4.

Support Reference: Hendiadys

Numbers 2:7

ULT	UST
The tribe of Zebulun: and the leader of the sons of Zebulun is Eliab, the son of Helon,	*The people of Zebulun tribe must also set up their tents next to the tents of the descendants of Judah. Helon's son Eliab leads the descendants of Zebulun.*

ULT **The tribe of Zebulun**

UST The people of Zebulun tribe must also set up their tents next to the tents of the descendants of Judah

The implication is that the tribe of Zebulun would camp beside Judah, likely on the side opposite from Issachar. You could include this information if that would be helpful to your readers. Alternate translation: [The tribe of Zebulun will camp on the other side of the tribe of Judah]

Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
tribe	tribe
Zebulun	Zebulun
leader	leads
Zebulun	Zebulun

Numbers 2:8

ULT	UST
and his army and his counted ones are 57, 400.	*The soldiers he leads are the 57, 400 men from his tribe whom you listed.*

ULT **and his army and his counted ones**

UST The soldiers he leads are the … men {from his tribe} whom you listed

See how you translated the similar phrase in 2:4.

Support Reference: Hendiadys

Numbers 2:9

ULT	UST
All the counted ones of the camp of Judah are 186, 400 according to their armies. They will set out first.	*For Judah tribe and the two tribes that set up their tents near Judah tribe, you listed 186, 400 men in total by their army divisions. These three tribes will start walking first whenever the Israelites leave a place.*

ULT **the counted ones**
UST you listed … men

See how you translated the same use of **counted ones** in 2:4.
Support Reference: Active or Passive

ULT **of the camp of Judah**
UST For Judah tribe and the two tribes that set up their tents near Judah tribe

See how you translated this phrase in 2:3. Alternate translation: [the camp of Judah, which includes Issachar and Zebulun,]
Support Reference: Metonymy

ULT **are 186,400**
UST 186,400

See how you translated the large number in 1:46
Support Reference: Numbers

ULT **They will set out first**
UST These three tribes will start walking first {whenever the Israelites} leave a place

The implication is that when the Israelites travel from one location to another, these tribes will begin moving first. You could include this information if that would be helpful to your readers. Alternate translation: [When traveling to a new location, the camp of Judah will start walking first]
Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

ULT **first**
UST These three tribes will start walking first

If your language does not use ordinal numbers, you could use a cardinal number here or an equivalent expression. Alternate translation: [before the other tribes]
Support Reference: Ordinal Numbers

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Judah	Judah

Numbers 2:10

ULT	UST
The banner of the camp of Reuben will be to the south according to their armies, and the leader of the sons of Reuben is Elizur, the son of Shedeur,	*The tribal flag that belongs to the descendants of Reuben must be on the southern side of the sacred tent. The tribes that set up their tents on this side must do so by their army divisions. Shedeur's son Elizur leads the descendants of Reuben.*

ULT **The banner of the camp of**

UST The tribal flag that belongs to the descendants of

See how you translated this word in 2:3.

Support Reference: Translate Unknowns

ULT **The banner of the camp of Reuben**

UST The tribal flag that belongs to the descendants of Reuben

Here Yahweh implies that these instructions refer to three tribes, Reuben, Simeon, and Gad, camping together under the **banner** of **Reuben**, as indicated in 2:10–16. If it would be helpful in your language, you could state this explicitly. See how you translated the similar expression in 2:3. Alternate translation: [The three tribes of Reuben, Simeon, and Gad will unite themselves under the banner of the camp of Reuben]

Support Reference: Metonymy

ULT **will be to the south**

UST must be on the southern side of the sacred tent

The implication is that these tribes will camp to the south of the tent of meeting. You could include this information if that would be helpful to your readers. Alternate translation: [to the south of the tent of meeting]

Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Reuben	Reuben
leader	leads
Reuben	Reuben

Numbers 2:11

ULT	UST
and his army and his counted ones are 46, 500.	*The soldiers he leads are the 46, 500 men from his tribe whom you listed.*

ULT **and his army and his counted ones**

UST The soldiers he leads are the … men {from his tribe} whom you listed

See how you translated the similar phrase in 2:4.

Support Reference: Hendiadys

Numbers 2:12

ULT	UST
And the ones camping beside him will be the tribe of Simeon, and the leader of the sons of Simeon is Shelumiel, the son of Zurishaddai,	*The people of Simeon tribe must set up their tents next to the tents of the descendants of Reuben. Zurishaddai's son Shelumiel leads the descendants of Simeon.*

ULT **And the ones camping beside him {will be} the tribe of Simeon, and the leader of the sons of Simeon {is} Shelumiel, the son of Zurishaddai**

UST The people of Simeon tribe must set up their tents next to {the tents of} the descendants of Reuben. Zurishaddai's son Shelumiel leads the descendants of Simeon

This verse is identical in structure with 2:5. Translate this verse in the same way, changing only the names.

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
tribe	tribe
Simeon	Simeon
leader	leads
Simeon	Simeon

Numbers 2:13

ULT	UST
and his army and their counted ones are 59, 300.	*The soldiers he leads are the 59, 300 men from his tribe whom you listed.*

ULT **and his army and their counted ones**

UST The soldiers he leads are the … men {from his tribe} whom you listed

See how you translated the similar phrase in 2:4.

Support Reference: Hendiadys

Numbers 2:14

ULT	UST
And the tribe of Gad: and the leader of the sons of Gad is Eliasaph, the son of Reuel,	*The people of Gad tribe must also set up their tents next to the tents of the descendants of Reuben. Reuel's son Eliasaph leads the descendants of Zebulun.*

ULT **And the tribe of Gad: and the leader of the sons of Gad {is} Eliasaph, the son of Reuel**
UST The people of Gad tribe {must also set up their tents next to the tents of the descendants of Reuben}. Reuel's son Eliasaph leads the descendants of Zebulun

This verse is identical in structure with 2:7. Translate this verse in the same way, changing only the names.

ULT **Reuel**
UST Reuel's

In 1:14, this man's name is spelled "Deuel." In Hebrew, the letters for "R" and "D" look very similar. So, it is likely that the name is misspelled here or in 1:14. However, it is not clear which spelling is correct. You could standardize the spelling, or you could include a footnote indicating that the name can be spelled either way.
Support Reference: Textual Variants

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
tribe	tribe
Gad	Gad
leader	leads
Gad	Zebulun
Reuel	Reuel's

Numbers 2:15

ULT	UST
and his army and their counted ones are 45, 650.	*The soldiers he leads are the 45, 650 men from his tribe whom you listed.*

ULT **and his army and their counted ones**

UST The soldiers he leads are the … men {from his tribe} whom you listed

See how you translated the similar phrase in 2:4.

Support Reference: Hendiadys

Numbers 2:16

ULT	UST
All the counted ones of the camp of Reuben are 151, 450 according to their armies. And they will set out second.	*For Reuben tribe and the two tribes that set up their tents near Reuben tribe, you listed 151, 450 men in total by their army divisions. These three tribes will start walking second whenever the Israelites leave a place.*

ULT **All the counted ones of the camp of Reuben {are} 151,450 according to their armies. And they will set out second**

UST For Reuben tribe and the two tribes that set up their tents near Reuben tribe, you listed 151,450 men in total by their army divisions. These three tribes will start walking second {whenever the Israelites} leave a place

This verse is identical in structure with 2:9. Translate this verse in the same way, changing only the names and numbers. Note that this camp sets out “second.”

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Reuben	Reuben

Numbers 2:17

ULT	UST
And the tent of meeting will set out with the camp of the Levites in the midst of the camps. As they camp, so they will set out, a man on his hand, according to their banners.	*Whenever the Israelites leave a place, the descendants of Levi must carry the sacred tent. They must travel in the middle, between the other tribes. The Israelites must leave in the exact same order in which they set up their tents. All the people must be in their correct places near their tribal flags.*

ULT **And the tent of meeting will set out {with} the camp of the Levites**
UST Whenever the Israelites leave {a place}, the descendants of Levi must carry the sacred tent

Here Yahweh refers to the Israelites changing locations along with **the tent of meeting** as if **the tent of meeting** were a person who **will set out with** them. See how you translated the same use of "sets out" in 1:51. Alternate translation: [And when the Israelites set out, the camp of the Levites will take the tent of meeting]
Support Reference: Personification

ULT **with the camp of the Levites**
UST the descendants of Levi

Here, **the camp of the Levites** represents "the people who descended from Levi." If it would be helpful in your language, you could use an equivalent expression or plain language. Alternate translation: [with the people who descended from Levi]
Support Reference: Metonymy

ULT **in the midst of the camps**
UST They must travel in the middle, between the other tribes

This phrase means that **the tent of meeting** and **the camp of the Levites** will travel between the **camps** described in 2:3–16 and the **camps** described in 2:18–31. You could say that explicitly if that would be helpful to your readers. Alternate translation: [between one group of camps and the other group of camps]
Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

ULT **As they camp, so they will set out … according to their banners**
UST The Israelites must leave in the exact same order in which they set up their tents … near their tribal flags

Here, **they** and **their** refer to all the Israelite tribes. If it would be helpful in your language, you could state this explicitly. Alternate translation: [As all the Israelites camp, so they will set out … according to the banners of their tribes]
Support Reference: Pronouns — When to Use Them

ULT **a man on his hand**
UST All the people must be in their correct places

The phrase **a man on his hand** was a common expression meaning each person in his own position. If this phrase does not have that meaning in your language, you could use a comparable expression from your language that does have that meaning, or you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [each person in his or her own position]
Support Reference: Idiom

> ULT **according to their banners**
> UST near their tribal flags

See how you translated “banner” in 2:3.

Support Reference: Translate Unknowns

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
tent of meeting	the sacred tent
Levites	Levi

Numbers 2:18

ULT	UST
The banner of the camp of Ephraim according to their armies will be to the west, and the leader of the sons of Ephraim is Elishama, the son of Ammihud,	*The tribal flag that belongs to the descendants of Ephraim must be on the western side of the sacred tent. The tribes that set up their tents on this side must do so by their army divisions. Ammihud's son Elishama leads the descendants of Ephraim.*

ULT **The banner of the camp of Ephraim according to their armies {will be} to the west, and the leader of the sons of Ephraim {is} Elishama, the son of Ammihud**

UST The tribal flag that belongs to the descendants of Ephraim must be on the western side {of the sacred tent}. {The tribes that set up their tents on this side must do so} by their army divisions. Ammihud's son Elishama leads the descendants of Ephraim

This verse is almost identical in structure with 2:10. The only difference is that this verse includes the direction ("to the west") after "according to their armies." Translate this verse in the same way you translated 2:10, changing only the names and the direction.

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Ephraim	Ephraim
leader	leads
Ephraim	Ephraim

Numbers 2:19

ULT	UST
and his army and their counted ones are 40, 500.	*The soldiers he leads are the 40, 500 men from his tribe whom you listed.*

> ULT **and his army and their counted ones**
> UST The soldiers he leads are the … men {from his tribe} whom you listed

See how you translated the similar phrase in 2:4.

Support Reference: Hendiadys

Numbers 2:20

ULT	UST
And beside him will be the tribe of Manasseh, and the leader of the sons of Manasseh is Gamaliel, the son of Pedahzur,	*The people of Manasseh tribe must set up their tents next to the tents of the descendants of Ephraim. Pedahzur's son Gamaliel leads the descendants of Manasseh.*

ULT **And beside him {will be} the tribe of Manasseh, and the leader of the sons of Manasseh {is} Gamaliel, the son of Pedahzur**

UST The people of Manasseh tribe {must set up their tents} next to {the tents of} the descendants of Ephraim. Pedahzur's son Gamaliel leads the descendants of Manasseh

This verse is almost identical in structure with 2:5. The only difference is that this verse does not include the phrase "the ones camping." However, that phrase may be implied, and the UST models how to include it. Translate this verse in the same way you translated 2:5, changing only the names.

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
tribe	tribe
Manasseh	Manasseh
leader	leads
Manasseh	Manasseh

Numbers 2:21

ULT	UST
and his army and their counted ones are 32, 200.	*The soldiers he leads are the 32, 200 men from his tribe whom you listed.*

> ULT **and his army and their counted ones**
>
> UST The soldiers he leads are the … men {from his tribe} whom you listed

See how you translated the similar phrase in 2:4.

Support Reference: Hendiadys

Numbers 2:22

ULT	UST
And the tribe of Benjamin: and the leader of the sons of Benjamin is Abidan, the son of Gideoni,	*The people of Benjamin tribe must also set up their tents next to the tents of the descendants of Ephraim. Gideoni's son Abidan leads the descendants of Benjamin.*

> ULT **And the tribe of Benjamin: and the leader of the sons of Benjamin {is} Abidan, the son of Gideoni**
>
> UST The people of Benjamin tribe {must also set up their tents next to the tents of the descendants of Ephraim}. Gideoni's son Abidan leads the descendants of Benjamin

This verse is identical in structure with 2:7. Translate this verse in the same way, changing only the names.

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
tribe	tribe
Benjamin	Benjamin
leader	leads
Benjamin	Benjamin

Numbers 2:23

ULT	UST
and his army and their counted ones are 35, 400.	*The soldiers he leads are the 35, 400 men from his tribe whom you listed.*

ULT **and his army and their counted ones**

UST The soldiers he leads are the … men {from his tribe} whom you listed

See how you translated the similar phrase in 2:4.

Support Reference: Hendiadys

Numbers 2:24

ULT	UST
All the counted ones of the camp of Ephraim are 108, 100 according to their armies. And they will set out third.	*For Ephraim tribe and the two tribes that set up their tents near Ephraim tribe, you listed 108, 100 men in total by their army divisions. These three tribes will start walking third whenever the Israelites leave a place.*

> ULT **All the counted ones of the camp of Ephraim {are} 108,100 according to their armies. And they will set out third**
>
> UST For Ephraim tribe and the two tribes that set up their tents near Ephraim tribe, you listed 108,100 men in total by their army divisions. These three tribes will start walking third {whenever the Israelites} leave a place

This verse is identical in structure with 2:9. Translate this verse in the same way, changing only the names and numbers. Note that this camp sets out “third.”

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Ephraim	Ephraim

Numbers 2:25

ULT	UST
The banner of the camp of Dan will be to the north according to their armies, and the leader of the sons of Dan is Ahiezer, the son of Ammishaddai,	*The tribal flag that belongs to the descendants of Dan must be on the northern side of the sacred tent. The tribes that set up their tents on this side must do so by their army divisions. Ammishaddai's son Ahiezer leads the descendants of Dan.*

ULT **The banner of the camp of Dan {will be} to the north according to their armies, and the leader of the sons of Dan {is} Ahiezer, the son of Ammishaddai**

UST The tribal flag that belongs to the descendants of Dan must be on the northern side {of the sacred tent}. {The tribes that set up their tents on this side must do so} by their army divisions. Ammishaddai's son Ahiezer leads the descendants of Dan

This verse is identical in structure with 2:10. Translate this verse in the same way, changing only the names and the direction.

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Dan	Dan
leader	leads
Dan	Dan

Numbers 2:26

ULT	UST
and his army and their counted ones are 62, 700.	*The soldiers he leads are the 62, 700 men from his tribe whom you listed.*

ULT **and his army and their counted ones**

UST The soldiers he leads are the … men {from his tribe} whom you listed

See how you translated the similar phrase in 2:4.

Support Reference: Hendiadys

Numbers 2:27

ULT	UST
And the ones camping beside him will be the tribe of Asher, and the leader of the sons of Asher is Pagiel, the son of Okran,	*The people of Asher tribe must set up their tents next to the tents of the descendants of Dan. Okran's son Pagiel leads the descendants of Asher.*

ULT **And the ones camping beside him {will be} the tribe of Asher, and the leader of the sons of Asher {is} Pagiel, the son of Okran**

UST The people of Asher tribe must set up their tents next to {the tents of} the descendants of Dan. Okran's son Pagiel leads the descendants of Asher

This verse is identical in structure with 2:5. Translate this verse in the same way, changing only the names.

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
tribe	tribe
Asher	Asher
leader	leads
Asher	Asher

Numbers 2:28

ULT	UST
and his army and their counted ones are 41, 500.	*The soldiers he leads are the 41, 500 men from his tribe whom you listed.*

ULT **and his army and their counted ones**

UST The soldiers he leads are the … men {from his tribe} whom you listed

See how you translated the similar phrase in 2:4.

Support Reference: Hendiadys

Numbers 2:29

ULT	UST
And the tribe of Naphtali: and the leader of the sons of Naphtali is Ahira, the son of Enan,	*The people of Naphtali tribe must also set up their tents next to the tents of the descendants of Dan. Enan's son Ahira leads the descendants of Naphtali.*

ULT **And the tribe of Naphtali: and the leader of the sons of Naphtali {is} Ahira, the son of Enan**

UST The people of Naphtali tribe {must also set up their tents next to the tents of the descendants of Dan}. Enan's son Ahira leads the descendants of Naphtali

This verse is identical in structure with 2:7. Translate this verse in the same way, changing only the names.

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
tribe	tribe
Naphtali	Naphtali
leader	leads
Naphtali	Naphtali

Numbers 2:30

ULT	UST
and his army and their counted ones are 53, 400.	*The soldiers he leads are the 53, 400 men from his tribe whom you listed.*

ULT **and his army and their counted ones**

UST The soldiers he leads are the … men {from his tribe} whom you listed

See how you translated the similar phrase in 2:4.

Support Reference: Hendiadys

Numbers 2:31

ULT	UST
All the counted ones of the camp of Dan are 157, 600. They will set out last, according to their banners."	*For Dan tribe and the two tribes that set up their tents near Dan tribe, you listed 157, 600 men in total. These three tribes will start walking last, near their tribal flags, whenever the Israelites leave a place."*

ULT **All the counted ones of the camp of Dan {are} 157,600**

UST For Dan tribe and the two tribes that set up their tents near Dan tribe, you listed 157,600 men in total

This part of the verse is identical in structure with the first part of 2:9. Translate this part of the verse in the same way, changing only the names and numbers.

Support Reference: Numbers

ULT **They will set out last**

UST These three tribes will start walking last … whenever the Israelites leave a place

The implication is that when the Israelites travel from one location to another, the tribe of Dan will be the last group to start walking. You could include this information if that would be helpful to your readers. Alternate translation: [When traveling to a new location, the camp of Dan will start walking last]

Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

ULT **last**

UST These three tribes will start walking last

If your language does not use ordinal numbers, you could use a cardinal number here or an equivalent expression. Alternate translation: [after the other tribes]

Support Reference: Ordinal Numbers

ULT **according to their banners**

UST near their tribal flags

See how you translated this phrase in 2:17.

Support Reference: Translate Unknowns

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Dan	Dan

Numbers 2:32

ULT	UST
These are the counted ones of the sons of Israel according to the house of their fathers. All the counted ones of the camps according to their armies are 603, 550.	*These are the Israelites whom Moses and Aaron listed by their ancestral families. They listed 603, 550 men in total who set up their tents by their army divisions.*

ULT **the counted ones of the sons … the counted ones of the camps**
UST the Israelites whom Moses and Aaron listed … They listed … men … who set up their tents

See how you translated the same use of **counted ones** in 1:46.
Support Reference: Active or Passive

ULT **according to the house of their fathers**
UST by their ancestral families

See how you translated this phrase in 1:2.
Support Reference: Metaphor

ULT **are 603,550**
UST 603,550

See how you translated this number in 1:46.
Support Reference: Numbers

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Israel	Israelites
house	by … families

Numbers 2:33

ULT	UST
And they did not count the Levites in the midst of the sons of Israel, just as Yahweh had commanded Moses.	*However, they did not list the Levites along with the other Israelites. That is what Yahweh had ordered Moses to do.*

ULT And they did not count the Levites
UST However, they did not list the Levites

The author uses the word **And** here to indicate a contrast between counting all the other tribes and not counting the Levites. In your translation, indicate this contrast in a way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: [But they did not count the Levites]
Support Reference: Connect — Contrast Relationship

ULT they did not count
UST they did not list

The pronoun **they** refers to Moses and Aaron. It may be helpful to clarify this for your readers. Alternate translation: [Moses and Aaron did not count]
Support Reference: Pronouns — When to Use Them

ULT in the midst of
UST along with

See how you translated the same use of **in the midst of** in 1:47. Alternate translation: [together with]
Support Reference: Metaphor

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Levites	Levites
Israel	Israelites
Yahweh	Yahweh
Moses	Moses

Numbers 2:34

ULT	UST
And the sons of Israel did according to all that Yahweh commanded Moses. Thus they camped according to their banners, and thus they set out, a man according to his clans, in accordance with the house of his fathers.	*So the Israelites did exactly everything that Yahweh had ordered Moses to tell them to do. They set up their tents by their own tribal flags, and they left each campsite by their tribal groups and ancestral families.*

ULT **And the sons of Israel did according to all that Yahweh commanded Moses**
UST So the Israelites did exactly everything that Yahweh had ordered Moses to tell them to do

This sentence is a comment about what happened after the story as a result of the events within the story itself. This signals the end of a story. Use the natural form in your language for expressing the conclusion of a story. See how you expressed the similar idea in 1:54. Alternate translation: [And that is exactly what the sons of Israel did]
Support Reference: End of Story

ULT **according to their banners**
UST by their own tribal flags

See how you translated this phrase in 2:17.
Support Reference: Translate Unknowns

ULT **a man according to his clans, in accordance with the house of his fathers**
UST each campsite by their tribal groups and ancestral families

Here the masculine terms **man** and **his** have a generic sense that includes both men and women. If it would be helpful to your readers, you could use language in your translation that is clearly inclusive of both men and women. Alternate translation: [a person according to his or her clans, in accordance with the house of his or her fathers]
Support Reference: When Masculine Words Include Women

ULT **a man according to his clans**
UST each campsite by their tribal groups

The author is not referring to a specific **man**. He means each person in general. If it would be helpful to your readers, you could use an expression that would be more natural in your language. Alternate translation: [each man according to his clan]
Support Reference: Generic Noun Phrases

ULT **the house of his fathers**
UST and ancestral families

See how you translated the similar phrase in 1:2.
Support Reference: Metaphor

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Israel	Israelites
Yahweh	Yahweh
Moses	Moses
clans	by their tribal groups
house	and … families

Numbers 3

Numbers 3 Introduction

Numbers 3 Chapter Introduction

Structure and Formatting

This chapter describes the counting of Levite men and their assignments for taking care of the tent of meeting. It also describes how the Levites and their animals act as ransoms for the firstborn Israelites and the Israelites' firstborn animals.

1. Aaron's sons serve as priests (1–4)
2. Yahweh sets apart the Levites to serve the priests and care for the tabernacle (5–13)
3. Yahweh commands Moses to count the Levite clans and assigns their duties (14–39)
4. The Levites replace Israel's firstborn, and the remaining firstborn are redeemed (40–51)

Religious and Cultural Concepts in This Chapter

The tribe of Levi

The Levites had a special role in Israel, which is why they were not included in the census in chapters 1 and 2. They were specially dedicated to serve Yahweh and to keep and serve the sacred tent. They also functioned as a ransom for the firstborn Israelites and the firstborn animals of the Israelites. See the following entries for more information on the specific roles the Levites fulfilled.

Keep

One of the primary duties of the Levites was to "keep" various things, including Aaron, the Israelites, and the parts of the sacred tent. In this context, "keep" refers specifically to keeping watch or guarding. No one besides the Levites was supposed to approach the sacred tent or do any priestly duties. So, the Levites guarded the sacred tent and the Israelites to prevent any non-Levite from approaching. Consider how to refer to this type of guard duty.

Serve

One of the primary duties of the Levites was to "serve." In this context, "serve" refers specifically to physical labor, including carrying, setting up, and tearing down the sacred tent and its equipment. There is more information about the physical labor required of the Levites in Numbers 4. Consider how to refer to this type of physical labor.

Ransom

In 3:45–51, Yahweh requires the Israelites to pay a ransom to him for the firstborn males that he did not kill during the tenth plague in Egypt, as described in Exodus 12:29 and 13:15. Because Yahweh did not kill the firstborn male people and animals among the Israelites, he

considered them to owe him their lives. Instead of taking their lives, Yahweh chose the Levite men to be his special servants in their place. However, the number of Levites was 273 people less than the number of firstborn males, so Yahweh required the people to pay money to him to redeem those additional people.

"House of the father" and "clan"

The phrase "house of the father" and the word "clan" refer to divisions of an Israelite tribe. In Numbers, the "house of the father" was the larger division, and each "house of the father" contained several "clans." For example, one "house of the father" within the tribe of Levi was named after Levi's son, Gershon. Within the "house of the father" of the Gershonites were two clans named after Gershon's sons (Levi's grandsons): Libni and Shimei. Consider how you might refer to tribal divisions within other tribal divisions.

Firstborn

Throughout this chapter, the word "firstborn" always refers to the oldest male child or offspring of a human or animal. Sometimes the word "male" is explicitly included, and other times it is implied. Use a word or phrase that clearly refers to the oldest male child or offspring.

Translation Issues in This Chapter

"From a son of a month and upward"

Many instructions in this chapter apply only to the Levites who qualify as "from a son of a month and upward." This phrase refers to people who are at least one month old. They could be young or old, but they must have lived for at least one month after their birth. Consider how you might refer to anyone who is one month old or older.

"Keep the keeping" and "serve the service"

Multiple times in this chapter, Yahweh or the narrator uses a construction in which a verb and its object come from the same root. They do this for emphasis. The two specific phrases are "keep the keeping" and "serve the service." You may be able to use the same construction in your language to express the meaning here. Alternatively, your language may have another way of showing the emphasis. Consider how you might emphasize the completeness of the "keeping" and "serving."

Numbers 3:1

ULT	UST
And these are the generations of Aaron and Moses on the day Yahweh spoke with Moses on the mountain of Sinai.	*Here is a list of the descendants of Aaron and Moses at the time when Yahweh and Moses talked on Mount Sinai.*

ULT **And these**
UST Here is a list

The author is using the word **And** to introduce a new event in the story. Use a word, phrase, or other method in your language that is natural for introducing a new event. Alternate translation: [Now these]
Support Reference: Introduction of a New Event

ULT **on the day**
UST at the time when

The phrase **on the day** is a common expression of this culture to mean “when.” If this phrase does not have that meaning in your language, you could use a comparable expression from your language that does have that meaning, or you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [when]
Support Reference: Idiom

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
generations	of the descendants
Aaron	Aaron
Moses	Moses
Moses	Moses
Yahweh	Yahweh
Sinai	Sinai

Numbers 3:3

ULT	UST
These are the names of the sons of Aaron, the priests, the ones who were anointed, whose hand he filled to serve as priest.	*Those are Aaron's sons, and they were priests. Moses had poured olive oil on them to appoint them as priests, and he had commissioned them to be priests.*

ULT **These {are} the names of the sons of Aaron, the priests**
UST Those are Aaron's sons, and they were priests

It might seem that the expression **These are the names of the sons of Aaron** contains extra information that would not be natural to express in your language, since the same words are in the previous verse. If so, you can shorten it. Alternate translation: [They are the priests]
Support Reference: Making Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information Explicit

ULT **the ones who were anointed, whose hand he filled**
UST Moses had poured olive oil on them {to appoint them as priests}, and he had commissioned them

The expressions **the ones who were anointed** and **whose hand he filled** are describing the same priests, not distinguishing between different priests. They are not making a distinction between the priests and the ones who were anointed or whose hand he filled. If it would be helpful in your language, you could make this relationship between these phrases clearer. Alternate translation: [that is, the ones who were anointed and whose hand he filled]
Support Reference: Distinguishing Versus Informing or Reminding

ULT **the ones who were anointed**
UST Moses had poured olive oil on them to appoint them as priests

The expression **who were anointed** is a passive verbal form. If your language would not use that form, you could express the idea in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. If you need to say who does the action, the context indicates that it is Moses. Alternate translation: [the ones whom Moses anointed]
Support Reference: Active or Passive

ULT **whose hand he filled to serve as priest**
UST and he had commissioned them to be priests

In this verse, the words **hand** and **priest** are singular in form, but they refer to all the priests as a group. If it would be helpful in your language, you could use the plural forms of "hand" and "priest." Alternate translation: [whose hands he filled to serve as priests]
Support Reference: Collective Nouns

ULT **whose hand he filled**
UST and he had commissioned them

The author is using **whose hand he filled** as a common expression of his culture to mean "whom he dedicated as priests." If this phrase does not have that meaning in your language, you could use a comparable expression from your language that does have that meaning, or you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [whom he dedicated]
Support Reference: Idiom

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Aaron	Aaron’s
priests	priests
anointed	Moses had poured olive oil on them to appoint them as priests
priest	priests

Numbers 3:4

ULT	UST
But Nadab died and Abihu to the face of Yahweh when they offered strange fire to the face of Yahweh in the wilderness of Sinai, and sons were not to them. And Eleazar served as priest and Ithamar against the face of Aaron their father.	*However, Nadab and Abihu died in front of where Yahweh was present because they presented to him burning coals that he had not authorized. This happened while they were in the desolate area around Sinai. Nadab and Abihu did not have any sons. So, only Eleazar and Ithamar were priests with their father Aaron.*

ULT **But Nadab died and Abihu**
UST However, Nadab and Abihu died

If it would be more natural in your language, you may want to put the words “and Abihu” before the word “died.” Alternate translation: [But Nadab and Abihu died]
Support Reference: Information Structure

ULT **to the face of Yahweh … to the face of Yahweh**
UST in front of where Yahweh was present … to him

Here, **to the face of** represents being in front of Yahweh. If it would be helpful in your language, you could use an equivalent expression or plain language. Alternate translation: [in the presence of … in the presence of]
Support Reference: Metonymy

ULT **strange fire**
UST burning coals that he had not authorized

Here, **strange fire** represents burning coals that were not authorized for use in worship, as indicated in the account of this event in Leviticus 10:1. If it would be helpful in your language, you could use an equivalent expression or plain language. Alternate translation: [strange coals that were on fire]
Support Reference: Metonymy

ULT **strange fire**
UST burning coals that he had not authorized

Here, the author is speaking of fire that was not authorized as if it were **strange** or foreign. If it would be helpful in your language, you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [unauthorized fire]
Support Reference: Metaphor

ULT **and sons were not to them**
UST Nadab and Abihu did not have any sons

The author is using **sons were not to them** as a common expression of his culture to mean “they had no sons.” If this phrase does not have that meaning in your language, you could use a comparable expression from your language that does have that meaning, or you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [and they had no sons]
Support Reference: Idiom

ULT **And Eleazar served as priest and Ithamar**
UST So, {only} Eleazar and Ithamar were priests

The word **And** here indicates that what follows is a result of what came before. Use a connector in your language that makes it clear that what follows is a result of what came before. Alternate translation: [As a result, only Eleazar served as priest and Ithamar]
Support Reference: Connect — Reason-and-Result Relationship

ULT **And Eleazar served as priest and Ithamar**
UST So, {only} Eleazar and Ithamar were priests

If it would be more natural in your language, you may want to put the information about Eleazar and Ithamar together by saying that they both served as priests. Alternate translation: [And Eleazar and Ithamar served as priests]
Support Reference: Information Structure

ULT **against the face of Aaron**
UST with … Aaron

The author is using **against the face of** as a common expression of his culture to mean "under the supervision of." If this phrase does not have that meaning in your language, you could use a comparable expression from your language that does have that meaning, or you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [under the supervision of Aaron]
Support Reference: Idiom

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Yahweh	Yahweh
Yahweh	him
wilderness	This happened while they were in the desolate area around
Sinai	Sinai
Eleazar	Eleazar
priest	priests
Aaron	Aaron

Numbers 3:5

ULT	UST
And Yahweh spoke to Moses, saying,	*Yahweh told Moses,*

ULT **And Yahweh spoke**
UST Yahweh told

The author is using the word translated **And** to introduce a new event in the story. Use a word, phrase, or other method in your language that is natural for introducing a new event. Alternate translation: [Now Yahweh spoke]
Support Reference: Introduction of a New Event

ULT **saying**
UST told

Here and throughout the chapter, the word **saying** introduces a direct quotation. See how you translated **saying** in 1:1.
Support Reference: Quotations and Quote Margins

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Yahweh	Yahweh
Moses	Moses

Numbers 3:6

ULT	UST
"Bring near the tribe of Levi and station it to the face of Aaron the priest. And they shall minister to him.	*"Summon the descendants of Levi and order them to stand in front of Aaron the priest. They must help Aaron.*

ULT **the tribe of Levi**
UST the descendants of Levi

Yahweh is using this possessive form to mean the **tribe** that has the name **Levi**. It may be helpful to clarify this for your readers. See how you translated this phrase in 1:21. Alternate translation: [Levi tribe] or [the tribe that is named Levi]
Support Reference: Possession

ULT **it**
UST them

Here, **it** refers to all the men of **the tribe of Levi**. If it would be helpful in your language, you could state this explicitly. Alternate translation: [the men from the tribe]
Support Reference: Pronouns — When to Use Them

ULT **to the face of Aaron**
UST in front of Aaron

See how you translated the same use of this phrase in 3:4.
Support Reference: Metonymy

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
tribe	the descendants
Levi	Levi
Aaron	Aaron
priest	priest

Numbers 3:7

ULT	UST
And they shall keep his keeping and the keeping of all the congregation to the face of the tent of meeting, to serve the service of the Dwelling.	*They must guard Aaron and the whole Israelite community at the sacred tent as they set up and take down the sacred tent.*

ULT **And they shall keep his keeping and the keeping of all the congregation**
UST They must guard Aaron and the whole {Israelite} community

For emphasis, people in this culture used a construction in which a verb and its object come from the same root. Here and throughout this chapter, this happens with the words **keep** and **keeping**. See the chapter introduction for more information. You may be able to use the same construction in your language to express the meaning here. Alternatively, your language may have another way of showing the emphasis. Alternate translation: [And they shall carefully keep him and all the congregation]

Support Reference: Poetry

ULT **to the face of the tent of meeting**
UST at the sacred tent

Here, **to the face of** represents being in front of the tent of meeting. If it would be helpful in your language, you could use an equivalent expression or plain language. Alternate translation: [in front of the tent of meeting]

Support Reference: Metonymy

ULT **to serve the service of the Dwelling**
UST as they set up and take down the sacred tent

If your language does not use an abstract noun for the idea of **service**, you could express the same idea in another way. Alternate translation: [to serve what needs to be served for the Dwelling]

Support Reference: Abstract Nouns

ULT **to serve**
UST as they set up and take down

Here, the phrase **to serve** could introduce: (1) something that happens at the same time as the "keeping" earlier in the verse. Alternate translation: [while serving]; or (2) the means by which they do the "keeping" earlier in the verse. Alternate translation: [by serving]

Support Reference: Connect — Simultaneous Time Relationship

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
congregation	community
tent of meeting	the sacred tent
serve	as they set up and take down
of the Dwelling	the sacred tent

Numbers 3:8

ULT	UST
And they shall keep all the vessels of the tent of meeting and the keeping of the sons of Israel, to serve the service of the Dwelling.	*They must guard all the equipment for the sacred tent and the Israelites. They must do that as they set up and take down the sacred tent.*

ULT **the vessels of the tent of meeting**
UST the equipment for the sacred tent

Yahweh is using the possessive form to describe **vessels** that are characterized by being used in **the tent of meeting**. If a speaker of your language would not use the possessive form for this, you could express this idea in another way. Alternate translation: [the vessels that are used in the tent of meeting]
Support Reference: Possession

ULT **to serve the service of the Dwelling**
UST They must do that as they set up and take down the sacred tent

See how you translated this phrase in 3:7.
Support Reference: Poetry

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
tent of meeting	for the sacred tent
Israel	Israelites
serve	They must do that as they set up and take down
of the Dwelling	the sacred tent

Numbers 3:9

ULT	UST
And you shall give the Levites to Aaron and to his sons. They are given, given to him from with the sons of Israel.	*Moses, assign the Levites to serve Aaron and his sons. Out of all the Israelites, I have assigned the Levites exclusively to serve Aaron and his sons.*

ULT **And you shall give the Levites to Aaron and to his sons. They {are} given, given to him**

UST Moses, assign the Levites to serve Aaron and his sons … I have assigned the Levites exclusively to serve Aaron and his sons

Here, Yahweh is speaking as if the Levites were actually objects that could be given to Aaron and his sons. If it would be helpful in your language, you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [And you shall assign the Levites to Aaron and to his sons. They are assigned, assigned to him]

Support Reference: Metaphor

ULT **And you shall give**

UST Moses, assign

The word **you** is singular here because Yahweh is speaking to Moses. So use the singular form in your translation if your language marks that distinction.

Support Reference: Forms of 'You' — Singular

ULT **They {are} given, given**

UST I have assigned the Levites exclusively

The expression **are given, given** is a passive verbal form. If your language would not use that form, you could express the idea in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. If you need to say who does the action, the context indicates that it is God. Alternate translation: [I have given them, given them]

Support Reference: Active or Passive

ULT **They {are} given, given**

UST I have assigned the Levites exclusively

Yahweh is repeating forms of the verb **given** in order to intensify his expression of the idea that it conveys. If your language can repeat words for intensification, it would be appropriate to do that here in your translation. If not, your language may have another way of expressing the intensification. Alternate translation: [They are wholly given]

Support Reference: Reduplication

ULT **to him**

UST to serve Aaron and his sons

The implication is that **him** refers to **Aaron and his sons**, who were just mentioned. You could include this information if that would be helpful to your readers. Alternate translation: [to Aaron and his sons]

Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Levites	Levites
Aaron	Aaron
Israel	Israelites

Numbers 3:10

ULT	UST
And you shall count Aaron and his sons, and they shall keep their priesthood. And the stranger who comes near shall be put to death."	*List Aaron and his sons as priests. They must make sure that no one else serves as a priest. If anyone who is not a Levite approaches the sacred tent, someone must execute that person."*

ULT **And you shall count**

UST List Aaron … as priests

The implication is that **count** means to appoint or assign Aaron and his sons as priests. You could include this information if that would be helpful to your readers. Alternate translation: [And you shall appoint as priests]

Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

ULT **their priesthood**

UST that no one else serves as a priest

If your language does not use an abstract noun for the idea of **priesthood**, you could express the same idea in another way. Alternate translation: [what they do as priests]

Support Reference: Abstract Nouns

ULT **And the stranger who comes near shall be put to death**

UST If anyone who is not a Levite approaches {the sacred tent}, someone must execute that person

See how you translated this sentence in 1:51.

Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Aaron	Aaron
priesthood	priest

Numbers 3:12

ULT	UST
"And I, behold, I have taken the Levites from the midst of the sons of Israel instead of every firstborn, the opener of the womb from the sons of Israel, and the Levites shall be for me,	*"Note that it is I who have appointed the Levites out of all the Israelites to serve me. They serve me in place of the oldest male from every Israelite family. So the Levites belong to me.*

ULT **And I, behold, I have taken**
UST Note that it is I who have appointed

Yahweh is stating the pronoun **I** separately, even though the verb translated as **I have taken** already includes this meaning. He is doing that to emphasize that he is the one who has chosen the Levites. If a speaker of your language would use an explicit pronoun for the same purpose, you may want to use that construction in your translation. If not, your language may have other ways of showing that emphasis. Alternate translation: [And behold, I am the one who has taken]

Support Reference: Pronouns — When to Use Them

ULT **behold**
UST Note that it is

Yahweh is using the term **behold** to focus his listeners' attention on what he is about to say. Your language may have a comparable expression that you can use in your translation. Alternate translation: [listen]

Support Reference: Metaphor

ULT **And I … I have taken the Levites from the midst of the sons**
UST I who have appointed the Levites out of all the Israelites to serve me

Here, Yahweh is speaking as if choosing the Levites were actually **taking** them **from the midst of the sons of Israel**. If it would be helpful in your language, you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [I … have selected the Levites from]

Support Reference: Metaphor

ULT **And I … I have taken the Levites**
UST I who have appointed the Levites

The implication is that Yahweh has **taken the Levites** to serve him at the tent of meeting. You could include this information if that would be helpful to your readers. Alternate translation: [I … have taken the Levites to minister to me in the tent of meeting]

Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

ULT **firstborn, the opener of the womb**
UST the oldest male

It might seem that the expression **firstborn, the opener of the womb** contains extra information that would not be natural to express in your language. If so, you can shorten it. Alternate translation: [firstborn]

Support Reference: Making Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information Explicit

ULT **firstborn**
UST the oldest male

Here and throughout the chapter, the implication is that **firstborn** refers specifically to firstborn males. See the chapter introduction for more information. You could include this information if that would be helpful to your readers. Alternate translation: [firstborn male]
Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

ULT **the opener of the womb**
UST the oldest male

Yahweh is using **the opener of the womb** as a common expression of the culture to mean "first child to be born to a woman." If this phrase does not have that meaning in your language, you could use a comparable expression from your language that does have that meaning, or you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [the first child of every woman]
Support Reference: Idiom

ULT **and the Levites shall be for me**
UST So the Levites belong to me

The word **and** indicates that what follows is a result of what came before. Use a connector in your language that makes it clear that what follows is a result of what came before. Alternate translation: [and as a result, the Levites shall be for me]
Support Reference: Connect — Reason-and-Result Relationship

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Levites	Levites
Israel	Israelites
firstborn	the oldest male
womb	the oldest male
Israel	Israelite
Levites	Levites

Numbers 3:13

ULT	UST
for every firstborn is for me. On the day of my striking down every firstborn in the land of Egypt, I consecrated for me every firstborn in Israel, from man up to animal. They are for me. I am Yahweh."	*That is because the oldest male from every Israelite family belongs to me. I set apart the oldest male of every Israelite family and the oldest male offspring of all their farm animals when I killed the oldest male from every Egyptian family in Egypt. So, the eldest males belong to me. I am Yahweh."*

ULT **On the day of my striking down**
UST when I killed

See how you translated this phrase in 3:1.
Support Reference: Idiom

ULT **my striking down**
UST I killed

By **striking down**, Yahweh means that he killed the firstborn Egyptians. You could indicate this explicitly in your translation if that would be helpful to your readers. See the discussion of the term "struck" in the Introduction to Numbers. Alternate translation: [my slaying]
Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

ULT **in Israel**
UST of … Israelite family

Here, **Israel** refers to the people who descended from **Israel**. See the discussion in the Introduction to Numbers.
Support Reference: Metonymy

ULT **from man up to animal**
UST of … Israelite family and the oldest male offspring of all their farm animals

The expression **from man up to animal** is a common expression of this culture to mean "both humans and animals." If this phrase does not have that meaning in your language, you could use a comparable expression from your language that does have that meaning, or you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [both men and animals]
Support Reference: Idiom

ULT **from man**
UST of … Israelite family

Here the masculine term **man** has a generic sense that includes both men and women. If it would be helpful to your readers, you could use language in your translation that is clearly inclusive of both men and women. Alternate translation: [from human]
Support Reference: When Masculine Words Include Women

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
firstborn	the oldest male from every Israelite family
firstborn	the oldest male
land	from … Egyptian family in Egypt
Egypt	Egyptian
consecrated	I set apart
firstborn	the oldest male
Israel	Israelite
animal	animals
Yahweh	Yahweh
I am Yahweh	I am Yahweh

Numbers 3:15

ULT	UST
"Count the sons of Levi according to the house of their fathers, according to their clans. You shall count them, every male from a son of a month and upward."	*"List all the male descendants of Levi who are at least one month old. List them by their ancestral families and tribal groups."*

ULT **the sons of Levi**
UST descendants of Levi

Here, Yahweh is speaking of **the sons of Levi** as if they were Levi's direct children, but he is actually referring to all men who were descended from Levi. If it would be helpful in your language, you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [the men descended from Levi]
Support Reference: Metaphor

ULT **according to the house of their fathers, according to their clans**
UST by their ancestral families and tribal groups

Here and throughout this chapter, the phrase **house of their fathers** refers to largest divisions within a single tribe. The word **clans** refers to the largest divisions of each **house of their fathers**. See the chapter introduction for more information. Alternate translation: [according to the house of their fathers, according to the clans that make up each house of their fathers]
Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

ULT **according to the house of their fathers**
UST by their ancestral families

See how you translated this phrase in 1:2.
Support Reference: Metaphor

ULT **according to their clans. You shall count them, every male**
UST all the male … List them … and tribal groups

It might seem that the expression **You shall count them** contains extra information that would not be natural to express in your language since it repeats the command from the first part of the verse. If so, you can shorten it. Alternate translation: [according to their clans, every male]
Support Reference: Making Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information Explicit

ULT **every male from a son of a month and upward**
UST all the male … who are at least one month old

Here and throughout this chapter, the phrase **from a son of a month and upward** is a common expression of this culture to mean "someone who is at least one month old." See the chapter introduction for more information. If this phrase does not have that meaning in your language, you could use a comparable expression from your language that does have that meaning, or you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [every male who is one month old or older]
Support Reference: Idiom

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Levi	Levi
house	by … families
clans	and tribal groups
month	month

Numbers 3:16

ULT	UST
And Moses counted them upon the mouth of Yahweh, just as he was commanded.	*So Moses listed these descendants of Levi. He did exactly what Yahweh ordered him to do.*

ULT **And Moses counted them**
UST So Moses listed these descendants of Levi

The word **And** indicates that what follows is a result of what came before. Use a connector in your language that makes it clear that what follows is a result of what came before. Alternate translation: [As a result, Moses counted them]
Support Reference: Connect — Reason-and-Result Relationship

ULT **upon the mouth of Yahweh, just as he was commanded**
UST He did exactly what Yahweh ordered him to do

It might seem that the expression **upon the mouth of Yahweh, just as he was commanded** contains extra information that would not be natural to express in your language. If so, you can shorten it. Alternate translation: [exactly as he was commanded by Yahweh]
Support Reference: Making Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information Explicit

ULT **upon the mouth of Yahweh**
UST He did exactly what Yahweh

The author is using **upon the mouth of Yahweh** as a common expression of his culture to mean “according to what Yahweh said.” If this phrase does not have that meaning in your language, you could use a comparable expression from your language that does have that meaning, or you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [as Yahweh had said]
Support Reference: Idiom

ULT **he was commanded**
UST ordered him to do

The expression **he was commanded** is a passive verbal form. If your language would not use that form, you could express the idea in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. If you need to say who does the action, the context indicates that it is God. Alternate translation: [Yahweh commanded him]
Support Reference: Active or Passive

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Moses	Moses
Yahweh	Yahweh

Numbers 3:19

ULT	UST
And the sons of Kohath according to their clans were Amram and Izhar, Hebron and Uzziel.	*The names of Kohath's sons by their tribal groups were Amram, Izhar, Hebron, and Uzziel.*

ULT **And the sons of Kohath according to their clans {were} Amram**

UST The {names} of Kohath's sons by their tribal groups were Amram

The implication is that these are names of Kohath's sons. You could include this information if that would be helpful to your readers. Alternate translation: [And these are the names of the sons of Kohath according to their clans:]

Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
clans	by their tribal groups
Hebron	Hebron

Numbers 3:20

ULT	UST
And the sons of Merari according to their clans were Mahli and Mushi. These are they, the clans of the Levites according to the house of their fathers.	*And the names of Merari's sons by their tribal groups were Mahli and Mushi. These were the tribal groups of the Levites by their ancestral families.*

ULT **And the sons of Merari according to their clans {were} Mahli**
UST And the {names} of Merari's sons by their tribal groups were Mahli

The implication is that these are names of Merari's sons. You could include this information if that would be helpful to your readers. Alternate translation: [And these are the names of the sons of Merari according to their clans:]
Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

ULT **These {are} they, the clans of the Levites**
UST These were the tribal groups of the Levites

It might seem that the expression **These are they, the clans of** contains extra information that would not be natural to express in your language. If so, you can shorten it. Alternate translation: [These are the clans of the Levites]
Support Reference: Making Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information Explicit

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
clans	by their tribal groups
clans	the tribal groups
Levites	Levites
house	by … families

Numbers 3:21

ULT	UST
Of Gershon were the clan of the Libnite and the clan of the Shimeite. These are they, the clans of the Gershonite.	*The two tribal groups that descended from Gershon were the descendants of Libni and the descendants of Shimei.*

ULT **Of Gershon**
UST from Gershon

The author is using this possessive form to mean descendants and clans that came from Gershon. It may be helpful to clarify this for your readers. Alternate translation: [Descended from Gershon]

Support Reference: Possession

ULT **the Libnite … the Shimeite … the Gershonite**
UST from Gershon … Libni … Shimei

Libnite refers to a descendant of Libni, **Shimeite** refers to a descendant of Shimei, and **Gershonite** refers to a descendant of Gershon.

Support Reference: How to Translate Names

ULT **the Libnite … the Shimeite … the Gershonite**
UST from Gershon … Libni … Shimei

Here, **the Libnite**, **the Shimeite**, and **the Gershonite** represent groups of people in general, not specific individuals. If it would be helpful to your readers, you could use expressions that would be more natural in your language. Alternate translation: [the Libnites … the Shimeites … the Gershonites]

Support Reference: Generic Noun Phrases

ULT **These {are} they**
UST The {two} tribal groups

See how you translated this clause in 3:20.

Support Reference: Making Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information Explicit

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
clan	were the descendants of
clan	and the descendants of
clans	that descended

Numbers 3:22

ULT	UST
Their counted ones by the number of every male from a son of a month and upward, their counted ones were 7, 500.	*For those two tribal groups, Moses listed 7, 500 men who were at least one month old.*

ULT **Their counted ones by the number of every male from a son of a month and upward, their counted ones {were} 7,500**

UST For those {two} tribal groups, Moses listed 7,500 men who were at least one month old

It might seem that the expression **their counted ones** being repeated contains extra information that would not be natural to express in your language. If so, you can shorten it. Alternate translation: [Their counted ones by the number of every male from a son of a month and upward were 7,500]

Support Reference: Making Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information Explicit

ULT **Their counted ones … their counted ones**

UST For those {two} tribal groups, Moses listed … men who were

The expression **their counted ones** is a passive verbal form. If your language would not use that form, you could express the idea in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. If you need to say who does the action, the context indicates that it is Moses. Alternate translation: [Those whom Moses counted … those whom Moses counted]

Support Reference: Active or Passive

ULT **were 7,500**

UST 7,500

If your language has a different way of expressing the number **7,500**, you could use that number expression instead. Alternate translation: [were seventy-five hundred]

Support Reference: Numbers

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
month	month

Numbers 3:23

ULT	UST
The clans of the Gershonite camp behind the Dwelling, to the west.	*The two tribal groups that descended from Gershon set up their tents near the back of the sacred tent on its western side.*

ULT The clans of the Gershonite

UST The {two} tribal groups that descended from Gershon

See how you translated this phrase in 3:21.

Support Reference: Generic Noun Phrases

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
clans	The {two} tribal groups that descended from Gershon
the Dwelling	the sacred tent

Numbers 3:24

ULT	UST
And the leader of the house of the father for the Gershonite was Eliasaph, the son of Lael.	*Lael's son Eliasaph led the ancestral family that descended from Gershon.*

ULT **for the Gershonite**
UST that descended from Gershon

See how you translated this phrase is in 3:23.
Support Reference: Generic Noun Phrases

ULT **was Eliasaph … Lael**
UST Lael's … Eliasaph

Eliasaph and **Lael** are names of men.
Support Reference: How to Translate Names

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
leader	led
house	the … family

Numbers 3:25

ULT	UST
And the keeping of the sons of Gershon in the tent of meeting was the Dwelling and the tent, its covering and the curtain of the opening of the tent of meeting	*At the sacred tent, the descendants of Gershon guarded the inner parts of sacred tent, the outer parts of the sacred tent, what covered this outer part, the curtain at its entrance,*

ULT **the sons of Gershon**
UST the descendants of Gershon

Here, **sons** refers to male descendants. See how you translated the same use of **sons** in 3:15.
Support Reference: Metaphor

ULT **was the Dwelling and the tent**
UST the inner parts of sacred tent, the outer parts of the sacred tent

Here, the word **Dwelling** refers specifically to the inner part of the sacred tent, made out of ten curtains. The word **tent** refers specifically to the outer part of the sacred tent, made out of eleven curtains. See Exodus 26:1–13 for details. You could indicate these details explicitly in your translation if that would be helpful to your readers. Alternate translation: [the inner curtains and the outer curtains of the Dwelling]
Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

ULT **its covering**
UST what covered this outer part

The implication is that this was the covering that went over the entire tent. You could include this information if that would be helpful to your readers. Alternate translation: [the covering over the tent]
Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
tent of meeting	At the sacred tent
was the Dwelling	the inner parts of sacred tent
curtain	curtain
tent of meeting	its

Numbers 3:26

ULT	UST
and the hangings of the courtyard and the curtain of the opening of the courtyard that is on the Dwelling and on the altar all around, and its ropes for all its service.	*the curtains that hang on the fence around the courtyard, the curtain at the entrance to the courtyard that surrounds the sacred tent and the altar, and all the braided cords that they used to set up and take down the curtains.*

ULT **and the hangings of the courtyard**
UST the curtains that hang on {the fence around} the courtyard

The implication is that these were the curtains that marked off and formed a fence around the courtyard, as described in Exodus 27:9–15. You could include this information if that would be helpful to your readers. Alternate translation: [and the curtains that marked off the courtyard]
Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

ULT **that {is} on the Dwelling and on the altar all around**
UST that surrounds the sacred tent and the altar

The author is using **on the Dwelling and on the altar all around** as a common expression of his culture to mean "that contains the sacred tent and the altar." If this phrase does not have that meaning in your language, you could use a comparable expression from your language that does have that meaning, or you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [that contains the Dwelling and the altar]
Support Reference: Idiom

ULT **and its ropes for all its service**
UST and all the braided cords that they used to set up and take down the curtains

Here, the pronoun **its** could refer to: (1) the curtains mentioned in this and the previous verse. Alternate translation: [and the ropes for the curtains for all their service]; or (2) the Dwelling. Alternate translation: [and the ropes for the Dwelling for all its service]
Support Reference: Pronouns — When to Use Them

ULT **for all its service**
UST that they used to set up and take down the curtains

If your language does not use an abstract noun for the idea of **service**, you could express the same idea in another way. Alternate translation: [for all the ways that it needs to be served]
Support Reference: Abstract Nouns

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
and the hangings	curtains
courtyard	courtyard
curtain	curtain
courtyard	courtyard
the Dwelling	the sacred tent
altar	altar

Numbers 3:27

ULT	UST
And of Kohath were the clan of the Amramite and the clan of the Izharite and the clan of the Hebronite and the clan of the Uzzielite. These are they, the clans of the Kohathite.	*The four tribal groups that descended from Kohath were the descendants of Amram, the descendants of Izhar, the descendants of Hebron, and the descendants of Uzziel.*

ULT **And of Kohath**
UST that descended from Kohath

See how you translated the similar phrase in 3:21.
Support Reference: Possession

ULT **the Amramite … the Izharite … the Hebronite … the Uzzielite … the Kohathite**
UST that descended from Kohath … Amram … Izhar … Hebron … Uzziel

Amramite refers to a descendant of Amram, **Izharite** refers to a descendant of Izhar, **Hebronite** refers to a descendant of **Hebron**, **Uzzielite** refers to a descendant of Uzziel, and **Kohathite** refers to a descendant of Kohath.
Support Reference: How to Translate Names

ULT **the Amramite … the Izharite … the Hebronite … the Uzzielite … the Kohathite**
UST that descended from Kohath … Amram … Izhar … Hebron … Uzziel

The author is not referring to a specific **Amramite**, **Izharite**, **Hebronite**, **Uzzielite**, or **Kohathite**. He means all the people in each of these clans. If it would be helpful to your readers, you could use an expression that would be more natural in your language. Alternate translation: [the Amramites … the Izharites … the Hebronites … the Uzzielites … the Kohathites]
Support Reference: Generic Noun Phrases

ULT **These {are} they**
UST The {four} tribal groups

See how you translated this clause in 3:20.
Support Reference: Making Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information Explicit

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
clan	were the descendants of
clan	the descendants of
clan	the descendants of
clan	and the descendants of
clans	four tribal groups

Numbers 3:28

ULT	UST
By the number of every male from a son of a month and upward, 8, 600 were the keepers of the keeping of the holy place.	*For those four tribal groups, Moses listed 8, 600 men who were at least one month old. They guarded the sacred tent.*

ULT **8,600**
UST 8,600

If your language has a different way of expressing the number **8,600**, you could use that number expression instead. Alternate translation: [eighty-six hundred]
Support Reference: Numbers

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
month	month
were the keepers	guarded
holy place	sacred

Numbers 3:29

ULT	UST
The clans of the sons of Kohath camp on the side of the Dwelling to the south.	*The four tribal groups that descended from Kohath set up their tents next to the sacred tent on its southern side.*

ULT **the sons of Kohath**
UST that descended from Kohath

Here, **sons** refers to male descendants. See how you translated the same use of **sons** in 3:15.
Support Reference: Metaphor

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
clans	The {four} tribal groups
the Dwelling	the sacred tent

Numbers 3:30

ULT	UST
And the leader of the house of the father for the clans of the Kohathite was Elizaphan, the son of Uzziel.	*Uzziel's son Elizaphan led the ancestral family that descended from Kohath, which was those four tribal groups.*

ULT **the Kohathite**
UST Kohath

See how you translated this phrase is in 3:27.
Support Reference: Generic Noun Phrases

ULT **was Elizaphan … Uzziel**
UST Uzziel's … Elizaphan

Elizaphan and **Uzziel** are names of men.
Support Reference: How to Translate Names

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
leader	led
house	the … family
clans	that descended from … which was {those four} tribal groups

Numbers 3:31

ULT	UST
And their keeping was the box and the table and the lampstand and the altars and the vessels of the holy place with which they minister and the curtain, and all its service.	*The descendants of Kohath guarded the sacred chest, the table, the lampstand, the altars, the equipment for the sacred tent that the priests use, the curtain that covered the entrance of the Most Holy Place, and everything that they used to set up and take down the curtain.*

ULT **and the table**
UST the table

The implication is that this was the special table that held the bread that was presented to God. You could include this information if that would be helpful to your readers. Alternate translation: [and the table for the special bread]
Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

ULT **they minister**
UST the priests use

The pronoun **they** could refer to: (1) the priests. Alternate translation: [the priests minister]; or (2) the Kohathites. Alternate translation: [the descendants of Kohath minister]
Support Reference: Pronouns — When to Use Them

ULT **and the curtain**
UST the curtain that covered the entrance of the Most Holy Place

The implication is that this was the special curtain that separated the Most Holy Place from the Holy Place in the sacred tent. You could include this information if that would be helpful to your readers. Alternate translation: [and the curtain that separated the Most Holy Place from the Holy Place]
Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

ULT **and all its service**
UST and everything that they used to set up and take down the curtain

Here, the pronoun **its** could refer to: (1) just the curtain. Alternate translation: [and all the service for the curtain]; or (2) all the items mentioned in this verse. Alternate translation: [and all the service for all those things]
Support Reference: Pronouns — When to Use Them

ULT **and all its service**
UST and everything that they used to set up and take down the curtain

See how you translated this phrase in 3:26. Alternate translation: [and all the ways that it needs to be served]
Support Reference: Abstract Nouns

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
box	the sacred chest
lampstand	lampstand
altars	altars
holy place	for the sacred tent
they minister	the priests use
curtain	curtain

Numbers 3:32

ULT	UST
And the leader of the leaders of the Levites was Eleazar, the son of Aaron the priest, the oversight of the keepers of the keeping of the holy place.	*Aaron the priest's son Eleazar led the men who led the Levites. He was in charge of those who guarded the sacred tent.*

ULT **the oversight of the keepers of**
UST He was in charge of those who guarded

The author is leaving out some of the words that in many languages a sentence would need in order to be complete. You can supply these words from the context if that would be clearer in your language. Alternate translation: [and he had the oversight of]
Support Reference: Ellipsis

ULT **the oversight of the keepers of**
UST He was in charge of those who guarded

If your language does not use an abstract noun for the idea of **oversight**, you could express the same idea in another way. Alternate translation: [overseeing]
Support Reference: Abstract Nouns

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
leader	led
Levites	Levites
Eleazar	Eleazar
Aaron	Aaron
priest	priest
the keepers of	guarded
holy place	the sacred tent

Numbers 3:33

ULT	UST
Of Merari were the clan of the Mahlite and the clan of the Mushite. These are they, the clans of Merari.	*The two tribal groups that descended from Merari were the descendants of Mahli and the descendants of Mushi.*

ULT **Of Merari**
UST from Merari

See how you translated the similar phrase in 3:21.
Support Reference: Possession

ULT **the Mahlite … the Mushite**
UST Mahli … Mushi

Mahlite refers to a descendant of Mahli, and **Mushite** refers to a descendant of Mushi.
Support Reference: How to Translate Names

ULT **the Mahlite … the Mushite**
UST Mahli … Mushi

The author is not referring to a specific **Mahlite** and **Mushite**. He means all the people from these clans. If it would be helpful to your readers, you could use an expression that would be more natural in your language. Alternate translation: [the Mahlites … the Mushites]
Support Reference: Generic Noun Phrases

ULT **These {are} they**
UST The {two} tribal groups … were

See how you translated this clause in 3:20.
Support Reference: Making Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information Explicit

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
clan	the descendants of
clan	and the descendants of
clans	that descended

Numbers 3:34

ULT	UST
And their counted ones by the number of every male from a son of a month and upward were 6, 200.	*For those two tribal groups, Moses listed 6, 200 men who were at least one month old.*

ULT were 6,200
UST 6,200

If your language has a different way of expressing the number **6,200**, you could use that number expression instead. Alternate translation: [were sixty-two hundred]
Support Reference: Numbers

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
month	month

Numbers 3:35

ULT	UST
And the leader of the house of the father for the clans of Merari was Zuriel, the son of Abihail. They camp on the side of the Dwelling to the north.	*Abihail's son Zuriel led the ancestral family that descended from Merari, which was those two tribal groups. Those two tribal groups set up their tents next to the sacred tent on its northern side.*

ULT **was Zuriel … of Abihail**
UST Abihail's … Zuriel

Zuriel and **Abihail** are names of men.
Support Reference: How to Translate Names

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
leader	led
house	the … family
clans	that descended
of the Dwelling	the sacred tent

Numbers 3:36

ULT	UST
And the oversight of the keeping of the sons of Merari was the frames of the Dwelling and its crossbars and its pillars and its bases and all its vessels, and all its service,	*The descendants of Merari were in charge of guarding the sacred tent's frame boards, poles, posts, bases, and all its equipment, and everything that they used to set up and take down the sacred tent.*

ULT **And the oversight of the keeping of the sons of Merari {was} the frames of**
UST The descendants of Merari were in charge of guarding … frame boards

See how you translated the abstract noun **oversight** in 3:32. Alternate translation: [And the sons of Merari oversaw the keeping of]
Support Reference: Abstract Nouns

ULT **the sons of Merari**
UST The descendants of Merari

Here, **sons** refers to male descendants. See how you translated the same use of **sons** in 3:15.
Support Reference: Metaphor

ULT **was the frames of the Dwelling**
UST the sacred tent's frame boards

Here, **frames** refers to open wooden structures made to hold the curtains. If a translation is available in your language, see how it translates this term in Exodus 26:15. Alternate translation: [the wooden structural supports of the Dwelling]
Support Reference: Translate Unknowns

ULT **and its crossbars**
UST poles

Here, **crossbars** refers to horizontal support beams that give stability to the structure. If a translation is available in your language, see how it translates this term in Exodus 26:26. Alternate translation: [and the beams that support it]
Support Reference: Translate Unknowns

ULT **and its bases**
UST bases

These **bases** were silver blocks that had a slot in them to keep the pillars in place and off the ground. If a translation is available in your language, see how it translates this term in Exodus 26:19. Alternate translation: [and its metal foundations]
Support Reference: Translate Unknowns

ULT **and all its service**
UST and everything that they used to set up and take down the sacred tent

See how you translated this phrase in 3:26. Alternate translation: [and all the ways that it needs to be served]
Support Reference: Abstract Nouns

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
the Dwelling	the sacred tent’s
pillars	posts

Numbers 3:37

ULT	UST
and the pillars of the courtyard all around and their bases and their pegs and their ropes.	*They were also in charge of guarding the posts, bases, stakes, and braided cords that were parts of the fence surrounding the courtyard.*

ULT **and the pillars of the courtyard all around**

UST They were also {in charge of guarding} the posts … surrounding the courtyard

The implication is that these pillars formed a fence that marked off the boundary of the courtyard around the sacred tent. You could include this information if that would be helpful to your readers. Alternate translation: [and the posts that mark off the courtyard]

Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

ULT **and their bases and their pegs and their ropes**

UST bases, stakes, and braided cords that were parts of the fence

Here, **bases**, **pegs**, and **ropes** refer to the items used to secure the pillars and curtains of the courtyard fence into place. The pillars were placed on the **bases**, **ropes** were fastened to them, and the other ends of the **ropes** were fastened down with the **pegs**, which were driven into the ground. Alternate translation: [and their metal foundations and their spikes and their cords]

Support Reference: Translate Unknowns

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
pillars	They were also {in charge of guarding} the posts
courtyard	courtyard

Numbers 3:38

ULT	UST
And the ones camping to the face of the Dwelling to the east, to the face of the tent of meeting toward the sunrise, were Moses and Aaron and his sons, the keepers of the keeping of the holy place, according to the keeping of the sons of Israel. And the stranger who comes near shall be put to death.	*Moses, Aaron, and Aaron's sons set up their tents in front of the entrance to the sacred tent on its eastern side. They guarded the sacred tent, and they guarded the Israelites. If anyone who is not a Levite approaches the sacred tent, someone must execute that person.*

ULT **to the face of the Dwelling to the east, to the face of the tent of meeting toward the sunrise**

UST in front of {the entrance to} the sacred tent on its eastern side

These two phrases **to the face of the Dwelling to the east** and **to the face of the tent of meeting toward the sunrise** mean basically the same thing. The second emphasizes the meaning of the first by repeating the same idea with different words. If it would be helpful to your readers, you could combine them and express the emphasis in another way. Alternate translation: [to the face of the tent of meeting to the east]

Support Reference: Parallelism

ULT **to the face of the Dwelling … to the face of the tent of meeting**

UST in front of … the sacred tent on its

Here, **to the face of** represents being in front of the Dwelling and the tent of meeting. If it would be helpful in your language, you could use an equivalent expression or plain language. Alternate translation: [before the Dwelling … before the tent of meeting]

Support Reference: Metonymy

ULT **And the stranger who comes near shall be put to death**

UST If anyone who is not a Levite approaches {the sacred tent}, someone must execute that person

See how you translated this sentence in 1:51.

Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
of the Dwelling	the sacred tent
tent of meeting	its
Moses	Moses
Aaron	Aaron
the keepers	guarded
holy place	the sacred tent
Israel	Israelites

Numbers 3:39

ULT	UST
All the counted ones of the Levites whom Moses and Aaron counted upon the mouth of Yahweh, according to their clans, every male from a son of a month and upward, were 22, 000.	*For the descendants of Levi, Moses and Aaron listed by their tribal groups 22, 000 men who were at least one month old. Moses and Aaron listed them as Yahweh had ordered them to do.*

ULT **All the counted ones of the Levites whom Moses and Aaron counted**
UST For the descendants of Levi, Moses and Aaron listed … Moses and Aaron listed them as

It might seem that the expression **All the counted ones of the Levites whom Moses and Aaron counted** contains extra information that would not be natural to express in your language. If so, you can shorten it. Alternate translation: [All the Levites whom Moses and Aaron counted]

Support Reference: Making Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information Explicit

ULT **the counted ones**
UST Moses and Aaron listed them

See how you translated this passive form in 3:22.

Support Reference: Active or Passive

ULT **upon the mouth of Yahweh**
UST Yahweh had ordered them to do

See how you translated this phrase in 3:16.

Support Reference: Idiom

ULT **were 22,000**
UST 22,000

If your language has a different way of expressing the number **22,000**, you could use that number expression instead. Alternate translation: [were twenty-two thousand]

Support Reference: Numbers

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Levites	Levi
Moses	Moses
Aaron	Aaron
Yahweh	Yahweh
clans	by their tribal groups
month	month

Numbers 3:40

ULT	UST
And Yahweh said to Moses, "Count every firstborn male of the sons of Israel from a son of a month and upward. And lift up the number of their names.	*Yahweh told Moses, "List all the oldest males from every Israelite family who are at least one month old. Count how many you listed.*

ULT **And lift up the number of their names**
UST Count how many you listed

This sentence could refer to: (1) calculating the total **number** of **names**. Alternate translation: [And calculate the number of their names]; or (2) writing down a list of **names**. Alternate translation: [And list their names]
Support Reference: Idiom

ULT **of their names**
UST Count how many you listed

The pronoun **their** refers to the firstborn males of Israel. It may be helpful to clarify this for your readers. Alternate translation: [the names of those counted]
Support Reference: Pronouns — When to Use Them

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Yahweh	Yahweh
Moses	Moses
firstborn	the oldest
Israel	Israelite

Numbers 3:41

ULT	UST
And you shall take the Levites for me—I am Yahweh—instead of every firstborn among the sons of Israel, and the animal of the Levites instead of every firstborn among the animal of the sons of Israel."	*I am Yahweh. Appoint the Levites to serve me in place of the oldest males from every Israelite family. Appoint for me also the farm animals of the Levites in place of every Israelite family's farm animal's oldest male offspring."*

ULT **And you shall take the Levites for me—I {am} Yahweh—instead of**
UST I am Yahweh. Appoint the Levites to {serve} me in place of

Yahweh interrupts the sentence with the statement **I am Yahweh** in order to remind Moses of who he is. If it would be more natural in your language, you could change the order of these clauses. Alternate translation: [Remember that I am Yahweh. You shall take the Levites for me instead of]

Support Reference: Information Structure

ULT **the animal of the Levites … among the animal of the sons of Israel**
UST Appoint for me also the farm animals of the Levites … Israelite family's farm animal's

In this verse, the word **animal** is singular in form, but it refers to all livestock as a group. If it would be helpful in your language, you could use the plural form of "animal." Alternate translation: [the animals of the Levites … among the animals of the sons of Israel]

Support Reference: Collective Nouns

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Levites	Levites
Yahweh	Yahweh
I {am} Yahweh	I am Yahweh
firstborn	the oldest males
Israel	Israelite
animal	animals
Levites	Levites
firstborn	oldest male offspring
animal	farm animal's
Israel	Israelite

Numbers 3:42

ULT	UST
And Moses counted, just as Yahweh had commanded him, all the firstborn among the sons of Israel.	*So Moses listed the oldest males in every Israelite family. He did what Yahweh had ordered him to do.*

ULT **And Moses counted, just as Yahweh had commanded him, all the firstborn among the sons of Israel**

UST So Moses listed the oldest {males} in every Israelite family. {He did} what Yahweh had ordered him to do

If it would be more natural in your language, you may want to put the information about Yahweh commanding Moses before the information about Moses counting the people. Alternate translation: [And just as Yahweh had commanded him, Moses counted all the firstborn among the sons of Israel]

Support Reference: Information Structure

ULT **And Moses counted**

UST So Moses listed

And here introduces the result of obeying the instructions stated in the previous clause. See how you translated the same use of **And** in 3:16.

Support Reference: Connect — Reason-and-Result Relationship

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Moses	Moses
Yahweh	Yahweh
firstborn	the oldest males
Israel	Israelite

Numbers 3:43

ULT	UST
And it happened that every firstborn male by the number of the names from a son of a month and upward, according to their counted ones, was 22, 273.	*When Moses listed by name all oldest males from every Israelite family who were at least one month old, there were 22, 273 of them.*

ULT **by the number of the names**
UST Moses listed by name

See how you translated this phrase in 1:2.
Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

ULT **according to their counted ones**
UST there were … of them

See how you translated **their counted ones** in 3:22.
Support Reference: Active or Passive

ULT **was 22,273**
UST 22,273

If your language has a different way of expressing the number **22,273**, you could use that number expression instead. Alternate translation: [was twenty-two thousand two hundred and seventy-three men]
Support Reference: Numbers

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
firstborn	oldest

Numbers 3:45

ULT	UST
"Take the Levites instead of every firstborn among the sons of Israel, and the animal of the Levites instead of their animal. And the Levites shall be for me—I am Yahweh.	*"In place of the oldest males from every Israelite family, appoint the Levites to serve me. In place of each Israelite family's farm animal's oldest male offspring, appoint the farm animals of the Levites to belong to me. I am Yahweh.*

ULT **the animal of the Levites instead of their animal**

UST In place of each Israelite family's farm animal's oldest male offspring … the farm animals of the Levites

See how you translated **animal** in 3:41.

Support Reference: Collective Nouns

ULT **their animal**

UST each Israelite family's … oldest male offspring … the farm animals

The implication is that this refers to firstborn male animals, as stated in 3:41. You could include this information if that would be helpful to your readers. Alternate translation: [their firstborn male animal]

Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Levites	Levites
firstborn	the oldest males
Israel	Israelite
animal	farm animal's … of
Levites	Levites
animal	animals
Levites	to belong to me
Yahweh	Yahweh
I {am} Yahweh	I am Yahweh

Numbers 3:46

ULT	UST
And the ransoms of the 273, the ones being in excess over the Levites from the firstborn of the sons of Israel,	*The Israelites must pay for the 273 more oldest males from Israelite families than there are male Levites.*

ULT **And the ransoms of**
UST The Israelites must pay for

Yahweh is leaving out some of the words that in many languages a sentence would need in order to be complete. You can supply these words from the context if that would be clearer in your language. Alternate translation: [And you shall take the ransoms of]
Support Reference: Ellipsis

ULT **And the ransoms of the 273**
UST The Israelites must pay for the 273

Here, **ransoms** refers to money that must be paid for the additional 273 firstborn mentioned in this verse. Since there were not enough Levites to be in place of these 273 firstborn, God required money in their place. See the discussion of this in the Introduction for this chapter. Alternate translation: [And the payment for the 273]
Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

ULT **And the ransoms of the 273**
UST The Israelites must pay for the 273

If your language does not use an abstract noun for the idea of **ransoms**, you could express the same idea in another way. Alternate translation: [And you shall ransom the 273]
Support Reference: Abstract Nouns

ULT **the 273**
UST the 273

If your language has a different way of expressing the number **273**, you could use that number expression instead. Alternate translation: [the two hundred seventy-three]
Support Reference: Numbers

ULT **the 273, the ones being in excess over the Levites from the firstborn of the sons of Israel**
UST the 273 more oldest {males} from Israelite families than there are {male} Levites

The implication is that these were 273 firstborn Israelite males who did not have a corresponding Levite male to take their place. You could include this information if that would be helpful to your readers. Alternate translation: [the 273 firstborn males who did not have a Levite in their place]
Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

> ULT **the ones being in excess over the Levites from the firstborn of the sons of Israel**
> UST more oldest {males} from Israelite families than there are {male} Levites

This clause gives further information about **the 273**. It is not making a distinction between **the 273** and **the ones being in excess**. If it would be helpful in your language, you could make the relationship between these phrases clearer. Alternate translation: [that is, the ones being in excess over the Levites from the firstborn of the sons of Israel]

Support Reference: Distinguishing Versus Informing or Reminding

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
ransoms	The Israelites must pay for
Levites	Levites
firstborn	oldest males
Israel	Israelite

Numbers 3:47

ULT	UST
and you shall take five, five shekels for the skull. You shall take by the shekel of the holy place (20 gerahs is the shekel).	*So, collect exactly five pieces of silver for each of the 273 additional firstborn males. Use the same kind of pieces of silver that the priests use in the sacred tent. Each of these piece of silver weighs about 11 grams.*

ULT **five shekels … by the shekel … is the shekel**
UST exactly five pieces of silver … the same kind of pieces of silver that {the priests} use … Each of these piece of silver weighs about

In ancient times, a **shekel** was a measure of weight for silver that equaled about 11 grams. You could try to express this in terms of modern money values, but if you did, that could cause your Bible translation to become outdated and inaccurate, since those values can change over time. Instead, you might say something general like “pieces of silver,” or use the biblical term in the text and explain the value in a note.
Support Reference: Biblical Money

ULT **five, five**
UST exactly five

Yahweh repeats the same word **five** in order to intensify his expression of the idea that it conveys. If your language can repeat words for intensification, it would be appropriate to do that here in your translation. If not, your language may have another way of expressing the intensification. Alternate translation: [precisely five]
Support Reference: Reduplication

ULT **for the skull**
UST for each of the 273 additional firstborn males

Yahweh is using **skull** to represent a whole person. If it would be helpful in your language, you could use an equivalent expression from your culture or state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [for each person]
Support Reference: Synecdoche

ULT **of the holy place**
UST in the sacred tent

Yahweh is using the possessive form to describe a shekel that was used in **the holy place**. If a speaker of your language would not use the possessive form for this, you could express this idea in another way. Alternate translation: [that is used in the holy place]
Support Reference: Possession

> ULT **20 gerahs**
> UST 11 grams

A **gerah** was a unit of weight equal to about 0.6 grams. Twenty gerahs equaled one shekel, or about 11 grams. In your translation, you could use the ancient measurement and spell the word "gerah" the way it sounds in your language. You could also use modern measurements, or you could use the ancient measurement and put a modern measurement in parentheses in the text or in a footnote.

Support Reference: Biblical Weight

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
holy place	in the sacred tent

Numbers 3:48

ULT	UST
And you shall give the silver to Aaron and to his sons, the ransoms of the ones being in excess among them."	*Give those pieces of silver to Aaron and his sons. Those pieces will pay for the 273 additional oldest males from Israelite families."*

ULT the silver
UST those pieces of silver

The implication is that this is the silver that Moses would collect as ransom money for the 273 firstborn males. You could include this information if that would be helpful to your readers. Alternate translation: [the silver that you collected in shekels]
Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

ULT the ransoms of the ones being in excess
UST Those pieces will pay for the {273} additional oldest males

If your language does not use an abstract noun for the idea of **ransoms**, you could express the same idea in another way. Alternate translation: [to ransom the ones being in excess]
Support Reference: Abstract Nouns

ULT the ones being in excess among them
UST the {273} additional {oldest males} from Israelite families

The implication is that these were the 273 firstborn Israelite males for whom there were no corresponding Levites to take their place. You could include this information if that would be helpful to your readers. Alternate translation: [the firstborn Israelite males who did not have a Levite in their place]
Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
silver	silver
Aaron	Aaron
ransoms	Those pieces will pay for

Numbers 3:49

ULT	UST
And Moses took the silver of the ransom from with the ones being in excess over the ransoms of the Levites.	*Moses collected those pieces of silver from the 273 oldest males from Israelite families for whom the Levites did not substitute.*

ULT **And Moses took**
UST Moses collected

The words translated as **And** indicate that what follows is a result of what came before. Use a connector in your language that makes it clear that what follows is a result of what came before. Alternate translation: [As a result, Moses took]
Support Reference: Connect — Reason-and-Result Relationship

ULT **the silver of the ransom**
UST those pieces of silver

The implication is that this was the ransom money that Moses collected in shekels to pay for the firstborn Israelite males. You could include this information if that would be helpful to your readers. Alternate translation: [the silver of the ransom that he collected in shekels]
Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

ULT **the silver of the ransom**
UST those pieces of silver

The author is using the possessive form to describe **the silver** that was paid as a **ransom**. If a speaker of your language would not use the possessive form for this, you could express this idea in another way. Alternate translation: [the silver for the ransom]
Support Reference: Possession

ULT **the silver of the ransom**
UST those pieces of silver

If your language does not use an abstract noun for the idea of **ransom**, you could express the same idea in another way. Alternate translation: [the silver, by which they were ransomed,]
Support Reference: Abstract Nouns

ULT **the ones being in excess over**
UST from the {273 oldest males from Israelite families} for whom … did not substitute

See how you translated this phrase in 3:46.
Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

ULT **the ransoms of the Levites**
UST for whom the Levites did not substitute

Here, **ransoms of the Levites** represents "the ones ransomed by the Levites." If it would be helpful in your language, you could use an equivalent expression or plain language. Alternate translation: [the ones ransomed by the Levites]
Support Reference: Metonymy

> ULT **the ransoms of the Levites**
> UST for whom the Levites did not substitute

The author is using this possessive form to mean the ransoming that was accomplished when the Levites were given to God. It may be helpful to clarify this for your readers. Alternate translation: [the ransoms accomplished when the Levites were given to God]

Support Reference: Possession

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Moses	Moses
silver	silver
ransom	those pieces of silver
ransoms	for whom … did not substitute
Levites	Levites

Numbers 3:50

ULT	UST
From with the firstborn of the sons of Israel he took the silver: 1, 365 by the shekel of the holy place.	*Moses collected a total of 1, 365 pieces of silver from the oldest males of Israelite families. He collected the same kind of pieces of silver that the priests use in the sacred tent.*

ULT **the silver**
UST pieces of silver

The implication is that this was the silver that Moses collected in shekels from the firstborn Israelites. You could include this information if that would be helpful to your readers. Alternate translation: [the silver that he collected in shekels]
Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

ULT **1,365**
UST 1,365

If your language has a different way of expressing the number **1,365**, you could use that number expression instead. Alternate translation: [one thousand three hundred and sixty-five]
Support Reference: Numbers

ULT **by the shekel of the holy place**
UST He collected the same kind of pieces of silver that {the priests} use in the sacred tent

See how you translated this phrase in 3:47.
Support Reference: Possession

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
firstborn	the oldest
Israel	Israelite
silver	silver
holy place	that {the priests} use in the sacred tent

Numbers 3:51

ULT	UST
And Moses gave the silver of the ransoms to Aaron and to his sons upon the mouth of Yahweh, just as Yahweh had commanded Moses.	*Then Moses gave those 1, 365 pieces of silver to Aaron and his sons to pay for the additional 273 oldest males from Israelite families. He did exactly what Yahweh ordered him to do.*

ULT **the silver of the ransoms**

UST those {1,365} pieces of silver … to pay for the additional 273 oldest males from Israelite families

See how you translated the similar phrase in 3:49.

Support Reference: Possession

ULT **upon the mouth of Yahweh, just as Yahweh had commanded Moses**

UST He did exactly what Yahweh ordered him to do

It might seem that the expression **upon the mouth of Yahweh, just as Yahweh had commanded Moses** contains extra information that would not be natural to express in your language. If so, you can shorten it. See how you translated the similar clauses in 3:16. Alternate translation: [exactly as Yahweh had commanded Moses]

Support Reference: Making Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information Explicit

ULT **upon the mouth of Yahweh**

UST He did exactly what

The author is using **upon the mouth of Yahweh** as a common expression of his culture to mean "as Yahweh had said." If this phrase does not have that meaning in your language, you could use a comparable expression from your language that does have that meaning, or you could state the meaning plainly. See how you translated this phrase in 3:16. Alternate translation: [as Yahweh had said]

Support Reference: Idiom

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Moses	Moses
silver	silver
ransoms	to pay for the additional 273 oldest males from Israelite families
Aaron	Aaron
Yahweh	He did exactly what
Yahweh	Yahweh
Moses	him to do

Numbers 4

Numbers 4 Introduction

Numbers 4 Chapter Introduction

Structure and Formatting

This chapter describes the assignments Yahweh gave to each of the families who descended from Levi with regard to taking care of and transporting the sacred tent.

1. Yahweh assigns the Kohathites to carry the most holy things (1–20)
2. Yahweh assigns the Gershonites to carry the tabernacle's curtains and coverings (21–28)
3. Yahweh assigns the Merarites to carry the tabernacle's frames, posts, and bases (29–33)
4. Moses, Aaron, and Israel's leaders count the Levites eligible for service (34–49)

Religious and Cultural Concepts in This Chapter

"Keeping," "service," and "burden"

As in the previous chapter, the word "keeping" refers to keeping watch or guarding. No one else was supposed to approach the sacred items, so the Levites were required to guard these items, especially when they were transporting them. The word "service" refers to physical labor, particularly taking down and setting up the sacred tent and the items that were in it. The Levites were also responsible for these tasks. Finally, the word "burden" refers to the specific task of carrying the pieces of the sacred tent and the items in it when the Israelites moved from one campsite to another. See how you translated "keeping" and "service" in chapter 3.

"Clan" and "house of their fathers"

As in chapter 3, the phrase "house of the father" and the word "clan" refer to divisions of an Israelite tribe. The "house of the father" was the larger division, and each "house of the father" contained several "clans." For example, one "house of the father" within the tribe of Levi was named after Levi's son, Gershon. Within the "house of the father" of the Gershonites were two clans named after Gershon's sons (Levi's grandsons): Libni and Shimei. Translate "house of the father" and "clan" as you did in chapter 3.

"Skin of a porpoise"

This phrase refers to leather made from the skin of a specific animal. Scholars debate exactly what animal the word refers to. Some argue that it is a land animal like a goat. Others argue that it is a sea animal like a dolphin or porpoise. The ULT identifies the animal as a porpoise, and the UST models how to refer to leather without identifying the animal. Consider how the word is translated in any translations your readers might know. If you do identify a specific animal, you could include a footnote indicating that this identification is uncertain.

Translation Issues in This Chapter

“Sons of”

Throughout this chapter, the phrase “sons of” refers to the men who were part of the tribal group named after the word “of.” So, the phrase “the sons of Merari” refers to the men who were part of the Merari tribal group. Consider how you translated this phrase in chapter 3.

The “army”

In this chapter, serving at the sacred tent is sometimes described as if it were being part of an army and fighting. The rest of the Israelite men had to serve in the army when necessary, but the Levites were exempt from serving in the army. Instead, they served at the tent of meeting. Because of this, their duties as Levites can be described as if they were service in the army. The ULT preserves the army metaphor, and the UST models how to express the idea without this metaphor.

“A son of 30 years and upward and up to a son of 50 years”

The phrase “a son of … years” is an idiom that refers to the age of a man. The longer phrase here refers to a man who is at least 30 years old and at most 50 years old. If it would be helpful in your language, you could express the meaning plainly.

Repetition in 4:34–48

In 4:34–48, the author records the number of men who were 30–50 years old in each of the three ancestral families of the Levites. The same phrases and structures are often repeated for each of the ancestral families. Once you translate the first section, in most cases you should use the same forms and phrases with the other two sections. The notes on these verses will indicate when a phrase or whole verse is identical to a previous phrase or whole verse.

Numbers 4:1

ULT	UST
And Yahweh spoke to Moses and to Aaron, saying,	*Yahweh told Moses and Aaron,*

ULT **saying**
UST told

Here and throughout the chapter, the word **saying** introduces a direct quotation. See how you translated **saying** in 1:1.
Support Reference: Quotations and Quote Margins

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Yahweh	Yahweh
Moses	Moses
Aaron	Aaron

Numbers 4:2

ULT	UST
“Lift up the head of the sons of Kohath from the midst of the sons of Levi, according to their clans, according to the house of their fathers,	*“Out of the descendants of Levi, count the male descendants of Kohath. Count them by their tribal groups and ancestral families.*

ULT **Lift up the head of the sons of**
UST count the male descendants of

See how you translated the nearly identical idiom in 1:2.
Support Reference: Idiom

ULT **Lift up**
UST count

The word **Lift up** is singular here because God is speaking to Moses. So use the singular form in your translation if your language marks that distinction.
Support Reference: Forms of ‘You’ — Singular

ULT **the sons of Kohath from the midst of the sons of Levi**
UST Out of the descendants of Levi … the male descendants of Kohath

Here and throughout this chapter, the phrase **sons of** refers to male descendants. See the chapter introduction for more information. Alternate translation: [male descendants of Kohath from the midst of the male descendants of Levi]
Support Reference: Metaphor

ULT **from the midst of the sons of Levi**
UST Out of the descendants of Levi

Here, Yahweh is speaking as if Kohath’s descendants were physically located **from the midst of** the other Levites. He means that they should be counted from among all the Levites. If it would be helpful in your language, you could state the meaning plainly.
Support Reference: Metaphor

ULT **according to their clans, according to the house of their fathers**
UST Count them by their tribal groups and ancestral families

Here and throughout this chapter, the phrase **house of their fathers** refers to largest divisions within a single tribe. The word **clans** refers to the largest divisions of each **house of their fathers**. See the chapter introduction for more information. Alternate translation: [according to their clans, according to the house of their fathers made up of those clans]
Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

ULT **according to the house of their fathers**
UST and ancestral families

See how you translated this phrase in 1:2.
Support Reference: Metaphor

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Levi	Levi
clans	Count them by their tribal groups
house	and … families

Numbers 4:3

ULT	UST
from a son of 30 years and upward and up to a son of 50 years, every one who comes to the army to do work in the tent of meeting.	*Count only those men who are at least 30 years old and at most 50 years old. These men must be able to participate when the Levites work in the sacred tent.*

ULT **from a son of 30 years and upward and up to a son of 50 years**
UST Count only those men who are at least 30 years old and at most 50 years old

Here and throughout this chapter, this phrase identifies men who are at least 30 years old and no older than 50 years old. See the chapter introduction for more information. Alternate translation: [men who are 30–50 years old]
Support Reference: Idiom

ULT **one who comes to the army**
UST must be able to participate

The expression **who comes to** is a common expression of his culture to mean "who is able to be part of." If this phrase does not have that meaning in your language, you could use a comparable expression from your language that does have that meaning, or you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [one who is able to be part of the army]
Support Reference: Idiom

ULT **to the army**
UST must be able to participate

Here, Moses is speaking of the group who works in the tent of meeting as if it were an **army**. See the chapter introduction for more information. If it would be helpful in your language, you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [to the group of workers]
Support Reference: Metaphor

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
years	years
work	work
tent of meeting	in the sacred tent

Numbers 4:4

ULT	UST
This is the service of the sons of Kohath in the tent of meeting, the holy of the holies.	*When the Levites set up and take down the sacred tent, the descendants of Kohath are responsible for the most sacred items.*

ULT **This {is} the service of the sons of Kohath**
UST When the Levites set up and take down … the descendants of Kohath

If your language does not use an abstract noun for the idea of **service**, you could express the same idea in another way. Alternate translation: [This is how the sons of Kohath serve]
Support Reference: Abstract Nouns

ULT **the holy of the holies**
UST are responsible for the most sacred items

The expression **the holy of the holies** is leaving out some of the words that in many languages a sentence would need in order to be complete. You can supply these words from the context if that would be clearer in your language.
Support Reference: Ellipsis

ULT **the holy of the holies**
UST are responsible for the most sacred items

Here, **the holy of the holies** represents the most holy things or objects. If it would be helpful in your language, you could use an equivalent expression or plain language. Alternate translation: [the things that are most holy]
Support Reference: Metonymy

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
tent of meeting	the sacred tent
holy	sacred
holies	sacred

Numbers 4:5

ULT	UST
And Aaron shall come and his sons when the camp sets out, and they shall take down the veil of the curtain, and with it they shall cover the Box of the Testimony.	*When the Israelites leave a place, Aaron and his sons must go to the sacred tent and pull down the curtain that blocks off the Most Holy Place. Then they must lay it over the sacred chest.*

ULT **And Aaron shall come and his sons**
UST Aaron and his sons must go to the sacred tent

If it would be more natural in your language, you may want to put **Aaron and his sons** together at the beginning of the clause, rather than having **Aaron** first and **his sons** later. Alternate translation: [And Aaron and his sons shall come]
Support Reference: Information Structure

ULT **the camp**
UST When the Israelites leave a place

Here, **camp** represents the people living in the camp. If it would be helpful in your language, you could use an equivalent expression or plain language. Alternate translation: [the people in the camp]
Support Reference: Metonymy

ULT **the veil of the curtain**
UST the curtain that blocks off the Most Holy Place

Yahweh assumes that readers will know that **the veil of the curtain** refers to the special curtain that separated the Most Holy Place from the rest of the sacred tent. You could say that explicitly if that would be helpful to your readers. Alternate translation: [the veil of the curtain in front of the Holy of Holies]
Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

ULT **the veil of the curtain**
UST the curtain that blocks off the Most Holy Place

Here Yahweh is using the possessive form to describe a **veil** that is characterized by being a **curtain**. If a speaker of your language would not use the possessive form for this, you could express this idea in another way. Alternate translation: [the curtain that is a veil]
Support Reference: Possession

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Aaron	Aaron
veil	that blocks off the Most Holy Place
curtain	curtain
Box of the Testimony	the sacred chest

Numbers 4:6

ULT	UST
And they shall put on it a covering of skin of a porpoise, and they shall spread a cloth of completely blue from above, and they shall set its poles.	*Then they must cover the sacred chest and the curtain with fine leather and lay a completely blue cloth covering over that leather. Then they must put the sacred chest's poles in the proper place to carry it.*

ULT **on it**
UST Then they must cover the sacred chest and the curtain

The pronoun **it** refers to the Box of the Testimony. It may be helpful to clarify this for your readers. Alternate translation: [on the box and the curtain covering it]
Support Reference: Pronouns — When to Use Them

ULT **skin of a porpoise**
UST with fine leather

This phrase refers to high-quality leather made from the skin of an animal. The animal may be a **porpoise**, a type of sea creature with leathery skin. See the chapter introduction for more information. If your readers would not be familiar with this type of sea animal, you could use a more general term. Alternate translation: [durable animal skin]
Support Reference: Translate Unknowns

ULT **a cloth of completely blue**
UST a completely blue cloth covering

Yahweh is using the possessive form to describe a **cloth** that is characterized by being **completely blue**. If a speaker of your language would not use the possessive form for this, you could express this idea in another way. Alternate translation: [an entirely blue cloth]
Support Reference: Possession

ULT **from above**
UST over

The implication is that the blue cloth should be placed over all the other coverings that were put on the Box of the Testimony. You could include this information if that would be helpful to your readers. Alternate translation: [on top of all these things]
Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

ULT **and they shall set its poles**
UST Then they must put the sacred chest's poles in the proper place to carry it

The implication is that these **poles** were inserted into rings on the sides of the ark and used to carry it. You could include this information if that would be helpful to your readers. Alternate translation: [and they shall slide poles into the rings on the sides of the box in order to carry it]
Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

Numbers 4:7

ULT	UST
And over the table of the faces they shall spread a cloth of blue, and they shall put on it the dishes and the palm-sized bowls and the bowls and the pitchers of the drink offering, and the bread of continuity shall be on it.	*They must lay a blue cloth covering over the sacred table. Then they must place on that cloth the dishes, the ladles, the bowls, and the jugs that the priests use for presenting wine. Also, they must leave the sacred bread on the sacred table.*

ULT **the table of the faces**
UST the sacred table

The phrase **the table of the faces** is a common expression of this culture that means "the table that is in Yahweh's presence." This table was placed before Yahweh in the tent of meeting, and the Levites were to place special bread on it for Yahweh, as described in Exodus 25:30. If this phrase does not have that meaning in your language, you could use a comparable expression from your language that does have that meaning, or you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [the table in Yahweh's presence]

Support Reference: Idiom

ULT **a cloth of blue**
UST a blue cloth covering

Yahweh is using the possessive form to describe a **cloth of blue** that is characterized by **blue**. If a speaker of your language would not use the possessive form for this, you could express this idea in another way. Alternate translation: [a cloth that is blue]

Support Reference: Possession

ULT **the dishes and the palm-sized bowls and the bowls and the pitchers of the drink offering**
UST the dishes, the ladles, the bowls, and the jugs {that the priests use} for presenting wine

The **dishes**, **palm-sized bowls**, **bowls**, and **pitchers** are different kinds of vessels used in the tabernacle service. If your readers would not be familiar with what these vessels are, you could use the names of similar containers that your readers would recognize, or you could use more general terms. Alternate translation: [the plates and the large spoons and the containers and the jars of the drink offering]

Support Reference: Translate Unknowns

ULT **the pitchers of the drink offering**
UST and the jugs {that the priests use} for presenting wine

Yahweh is using the possessive form to describe **pitchers** that are used for **the drink offering**. If a speaker of your language would not use the possessive form for this, you could express this idea in another way. Alternate translation: [the pitchers used with drink offerings]

Support Reference: Possession

ULT **and the bread of continuity**
UST Also … the sacred bread

The phrase **bread of continuity** refers to the bread that was regularly offered to God. If your readers would not be familiar with what this bread is, you could use a term that shows it was bread that was always present on the table as an offering to God. Alternate translation: [and the bread of continuity offered to me]
Support Reference: Translate Unknowns

ULT **and the bread of continuity**
UST Also … the sacred bread

Here Yahweh is using the possessive form to describe **the bread** that was characterized by being offered regularly (in **continuity**). If a speaker of your language would not use the possessive form for this, you could express this idea in another way. Alternate translation: [and the bread that is offered continually]
Support Reference: Possession

ULT **and the bread of continuity**
UST Also … the sacred bread

If your language does not use an abstract noun for the idea of **continuity**, you could express the same idea in another way. Alternate translation: [and the continual bread]
Support Reference: Abstract Nouns

ULT **shall be on it**
UST they must leave … on the sacred table

By **shall be on it**, Yahweh means that the bread was to remain on the table when the priests covered it. You could indicate this explicitly in your translation if that would be helpful to your readers. Alternate translation: [shall stay on it]
Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
the palm-sized bowls	the ladles
drink offering	that the priests use for presenting wine
bread	bread

Numbers 4:8

ULT	UST
And they shall spread over them a cloth of worm of scarlet, and they shall cover it with a covering of skin of a porpoise, and they shall set its poles.	*Then they must lay a red cloth covering over those things and cover that cloth with fine leather. Then they must put the sacred table's poles in the proper place to carry it.*

ULT **a cloth of worm of scarlet**
UST a red cloth covering

Here Yahweh is using the possessive form to describe a **cloth** that was dyed by a **worm of scarlet**. If a speaker of your language would not use the possessive form for this, you could express this idea in another way. Alternate translation: [a cloth dyed by worm of scarlet]
Support Reference: Possession

ULT **worm of scarlet**
UST red

The expression **worm of scarlet** is a common expression of this culture that means "red" or "crimson." If this phrase does not have that meaning in your language, you could use a comparable expression from your language that does have that meaning, or you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [scarlet]
Support Reference: Idiom

ULT **with a covering of skin of a porpoise**
UST with fine leather

See how you translated the same phrase in 4:6.
Support Reference: Translate Unknowns

ULT **and they shall set its poles**
UST Then they must put the sacred table's poles in the proper place to carry it

The implication is that the poles were placed through the rings attached to the sides of the table so people could use them to carry it. You could include this information if that would be helpful to your readers. Alternate translation: [and they shall slide poles into the rings on the sides of the table in order to carry it]
Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

Numbers 4:9

ULT	UST
And they shall take a cloth of blue, and they shall cover the lampstand of the light and its lamps and its tongs and its trays and all the vessels of its oil with which they minister to it.	*They must lay a blue cloth covering over the lampstand, its oil lamps, the tongs for removing burned wicks, the trays in which to put the burned wicks, and all the jars full of olive oil with which they supply the oil lamps.*

ULT **a cloth of blue**
UST a blue cloth covering

See how you translated this phrase in 4:7.
Support Reference: Possession

ULT **the lampstand of the light**
UST the lampstand

Yahweh is using the possessive form to describe **the lampstand** that produces **light**. If a speaker of your language would not use the possessive form for this, you could express this idea in another way. Alternate translation: [the lampstand that produces light]
Support Reference: Possession

ULT **and its lamps and its tongs and its trays and all the vessels of its oil**
UST its oil lamps, the tongs {for removing burned wicks}, the trays {in which to put the burned wicks}, and all the jars full of olive oil

The **tongs** and **trays** are tools used to handle hot lamp wicks. The **lamps** burned olive oil, and the **vessels** contained that oil. If your readers would not be familiar with these items, you could use the names of similar tools that your readers would recognize, or you could use more general terms. Alternate translation: [and its oil lamps and its wick tools and its wick plates and all the containers of its oil]
Support Reference: Translate Unknowns

ULT **the vessels of its oil**
UST the jars full of olive oil

Here Yahweh is using the possessive form to describe **the vessels** that contained **its oil**. If a speaker of your language would not use the possessive form for this, you could express this idea in another way. Alternate translation: [the vessels that contained its oil]
Support Reference: Possession

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
lampstand	lampstand
lamps	lamps
oil	oil
they minister	they supply the oil lamps

Numbers 4:10

ULT	UST
And they shall put it and all its vessels into a covering of skin of a porpoise, and they shall put them on the carrying pole.	*Then they must wrap the lampstand and all its equipment in fine leather. Then they must attach the lampstand and its equipment to a pole to carry them.*

ULT **and they shall put {them} on the carrying pole**

UST Then they must attach {the lampstand and its equipment} to a pole to carry them

The implication is that the poles were used for carrying the items. You could include this information if that would be helpful to your readers. Alternate translation: [and they shall attach them to a long piece of wood in order to carry them]

Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
carrying	carry

Numbers 4:11

ULT	UST
And over the altar of gold they shall spread a cloth of blue, and they shall cover it with a covering of skin of a porpoise, and they shall set its poles.	*They must lay a blue cloth covering over the golden altar and cover that cloth with fine leather. Then they must put the altar's poles in the proper place to carry it.*

ULT **the altar of gold**
UST the golden altar

The term **altar of gold** assumes that readers will know this was the altar used for burning incense. You could say that explicitly if that would be helpful to your readers. Alternate translation: [the incense altar of gold]
Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

ULT **the altar of gold**
UST the golden altar

Here Yahweh is using the possessive form to describe **the altar** that is characterized by being overlaid with **gold**. If a speaker of your language would not use the possessive form for this, you could express this idea in another way. Alternate translation: [the altar overlaid with gold]
Support Reference: Possession

ULT **a cloth of blue**
UST a blue cloth covering

See how you translated this phrase in 4:7.
Support Reference: Possession

ULT **and they shall set its poles**
UST Then they must put the altar's poles in the proper place to carry it

By **set its poles**, Yahweh means they put the poles into the rings that were on the sides of the altar so that they could carry it. You could indicate this explicitly in your translation if that would be helpful to your readers. See how you translated the similar use of this clause in 4:6. Alternate translation: [and they shall slide poles into the rings on the sides of the altar in order to carry it]
Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
altar	altar
gold	golden

Numbers 4:12

ULT	UST
And they shall take all the vessels of the ministry with which they minister in the holy place, and they shall put them into a cloth of blue. And they shall cover them with a covering of skin of a porpoise. And they shall put them on the carrying pole.	*They must wrap in a blue cloth covering all the equipment that they use in the sacred tent and cover that cloth with fine leather. Then they must attach all the equipment to a pole to carry it.*

ULT **the vessels of the ministry with which they minister**
UST the equipment that they use in

It might seem that the expression **the vessels of the ministry with which they minister** contains extra information that would not be natural to express in your language. If so, you can shorten it. Alternate translation: [the vessels with which they minister]
Support Reference: Making Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information Explicit

ULT **a cloth of blue**
UST a blue cloth covering

See how you translated this phrase in 4:7.
Support Reference: Possession

ULT **And they shall put {them} on the carrying pole**
UST Then they must attach {all the equipment} to a pole to carry it

By **put them on the carrying pole**, Yahweh means they must attach these items to poles that people will use to carry them. See how you translated this clause in 4:10. You could indicate this explicitly in your translation if that would be helpful to your readers. Alternate translation: [and they shall attach them to a long piece of wood in order to carry them]
Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
ministry	the equipment
holy place	the sacred tent
carrying	carry

Numbers 4:13

ULT	UST
And they shall remove the ashes from the altar, and they shall spread over it a cloth of purple.	*They must clean the bronze altar and lay a purple cloth covering over it.*

ULT **And they shall remove the ashes from the altar**
UST They must clean the {bronze} altar

By **remove the ashes**, Yahweh means that the priests were to clean out the fat and ashes that remained after burning the sacrifices on the altar. You could indicate this explicitly in your translation if that would be helpful to your readers. Alternate translation: [And they shall cleanse the altar of fat and ashes]
Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

ULT **the altar**
UST the {bronze} altar

The text **the altar** refers to the bronze altar used for sacrifices that was placed in front of the tent of meeting. Yahweh assumes that readers will know which altar this is, since there were two altars used in worship. You could say this explicitly if that would be helpful to your readers. Alternate translation: [the sacrificial altar]
Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

ULT **a cloth of purple**
UST a purple cloth covering

Yahweh is using the possessive form to describe a **cloth** that is characterized by **purple**. If a speaker of your language would not use the possessive form for this, you could express this idea in another way. Alternate translation: [a cloth that is purple]
Support Reference: Possession

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
altar	altar
purple	purple

Numbers 4:14

ULT	UST
And they shall put on it all its vessels with which they minister on it: the trays, the meat forks and the shovels and the basins—all the vessels of the altar. And they shall spread over it a covering of skin of a porpoise, and they shall set its poles.	*Then they must place on that cloth all the equipment that they use at the bronze altar, including trays, forks for meat, shovels, and large bowls. Then they must lay fine leather over the altar and its equipment. Then they must put the altar's poles in the proper place to carry it.*

ULT **the trays, the meat forks and the shovels and the basins**

UST including trays, forks for meat, shovels, and large bowls

The **trays** were like large, flat plates and were used for holding meat and other things. The **meat forks** were used to stab and move the meat. The **shovels** and **basins** were used for moving and storing ashes, blood, and anything else. If your readers would not be familiar with these tools, you could use the names of similar things that your readers would recognize, or you could use more general terms. Alternate translation: [the platters, the utensils for stabbing meat and the scoops and the containers]

Support Reference: Translate Unknowns

ULT **and the basins—all the vessels of the altar**

UST and large bowls … the altar and its equipment

It might seem that the expression **the basins—all the vessels of the altar** contains extra information that would not be natural to express in your language. If so, you can shorten it. Alternate translation: [and the basins]

Support Reference: Making Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information Explicit

ULT **and they shall set its poles**

UST Then they must put the altar's poles in the proper place to carry it

The implied meaning is that the poles were put into rings on the sides of the altar so that people could use them to carry it. You could include this information if that would be helpful to your readers. See how you translated the similar use of this clause in 4:6. Alternate translation: [and they shall slide poles into the rings on the sides of the altar in order to carry it]

Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
they minister	they use
altar	altar

Numbers 4:15

ULT	UST
And Aaron and his sons shall finish to cover the holy place and all the vessels of the holy place when the camp sets out. And after that the sons of Kohath shall come to carry, and they shall not touch the holy place and die. These are the burden of the sons of Kohath in the tent of meeting.	*When the Israelites leave a place, Aaron and his sons must complete putting coverings on the sacred tent and all the equipment that they use in the sacred tent. Once that is complete, the descendants of Kohath can approach and carry all those things. They must not touch anything that belongs in the sacred tent, or they will die. Those are all the things that the descendants of Kohath must carry. That is what they must do at the sacred tent.*

ULT **And Aaron and his sons shall finish to cover**
UST Aaron and his sons must complete putting coverings

The phrase **shall finish to cover** is a common expression of this culture that means "shall finish covering." If this phrase does not have that meaning in your language, you could use a comparable expression from your language that does have that meaning, or you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [And Aaron and his sons shall finish covering]
Support Reference: Idiom

ULT **when the camp sets out**
UST When the Israelites leave a place

Here, **the camp** represents the people who are in the camp. If it would be helpful in your language, you could use an equivalent expression or plain language. See how you translated this clause in 4:5. Alternate translation: [when the people in the camp set out]
Support Reference: Metonymy

ULT **and they shall not touch the holy place**
UST They must not touch {anything that belongs in} the sacred tent

Here, **the holy place** represents the sacred objects that belong in the holy place. If it would be helpful in your language, you could use an equivalent expression or plain language. Alternate translation: [and they shall not touch the things that belong in the holy place]
Support Reference: Metonymy

ULT **and die**
UST or they will die

The words **and die** express the result of touching the holy place. If it would be more natural in your language, you could make this connection more explicit. Alternate translation: [which would cause them to die]
Support Reference: Connect — Reason-and-Result Relationship

> ULT **These are the burden of the sons of Kohath**
> UST all those things … Those are all the things that the descendants of Kohath must carry

The phrase **the burden of** refers to the objects that the sons of Kohath were responsible for carrying when the Israelites traveled. You could indicate this explicitly in your translation if that would be helpful to your readers. See the chapter introduction for more information. Alternate translation: [These are the things that must be carried by the sons of Kohath]

Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Aaron	Aaron
holy place	that they use in the sacred tent
carry	carry
tent of meeting	That is what they must do at the sacred tent

Numbers 4:16

ULT	UST
And the oversight of Eleazar, the son of Aaron the priest, is the oil of the light and the incense of the spices and the grain offering of continuity and the oil of the anointing, the oversight of all the Dwelling and all that is in it, in the holy place, and in its vessels."	*Aaron the priest's son Eleazar is in charge of the olive oil that the priests burn to make light in the sacred tent, the incense that they make using spices, the grain that they present regularly, and the oil that they pour on people and things. He is in charge of every part of the sacred tent and everything in it, in what belongs in the sacred tent, and in the equipment that the priests use with it."*

ULT **And the oversight of Eleazar … the oversight of all**
UST Eleazar is in charge of … He is in charge of every part

If your language does not use an abstract noun for the idea of **oversight**, you could express the same idea in another way. Alternate translation: [And what is overseen by Eleazar … and he oversees]
Support Reference: Abstract Nouns

ULT **is the oil of the light**
UST the olive oil {that the priests burn} to make light in the sacred tent

Here Yahweh is using the possessive form to describe **the oil** as oil that produces **light**. If a speaker of your language would not use the possessive form for this, you could express this idea in another way. Alternate translation: [the oil that is burned to produce light]
Support Reference: Possession

ULT **and the incense of the spices**
UST the incense {that they make using} spices

The phrase **incense of the spices** is using the possessive form to describe **incense** that is made out of **spices**. If a speaker of your language would not use the possessive form for this, you could express this idea in another way. Alternate translation: [the incense that is made of spices]
Support Reference: Possession

ULT **and the grain offering of continuity**
UST the grain that they present regularly

The phrase **the grain offering of continuity** refers to a grain offering that is characterized by **continuity**—it was offered regularly. If a speaker of your language would not use the possessive form for this, you could express this idea in another way. See how you translated the same use of **continuity** in 4:7. Alternate translation: [and the grain offering that is offered continually]
Support Reference: Possession

ULT **and the grain offering of continuity**
UST the grain that they present regularly

If your language does not use an abstract noun for the idea of **continuity**, you could express the same idea in another way. Alternate translation: [and the continual grain offering]
Support Reference: Abstract Nouns

ULT **and the oil of the anointing**
UST and the oil that they pour on people and things

Yahweh is using the possessive form to describe **the oil** that is used for **anointing**. If a speaker of your language would not use the possessive form for this, you could express this idea in another way. Alternate translation: [the oil that is used for anointing]
Support Reference: Possession

ULT **the oversight of all the Dwelling**
UST He is in charge of every part of the sacred tent

It might seem that the expression **the oversight of all the Dwelling** contains extra information that would not be natural to express in your language. If so, you can shorten it. Alternate translation: [and all the Dwelling]
Support Reference: Making Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information Explicit

ULT **and all that {is} in it, in the holy place, and in its vessels**
UST and everything in it, in {what belongs in} the sacred tent, and in the equipment {that the priests use} with it

The implication is that this refers to everything that is contained in the **Dwelling**, **holy place**, and **vessels**. You could include this information if that would be helpful to your readers. Alternate translation: [and everything that is in it, and everything that is in the holy place, and everything that is in its vessels]
Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

ULT **in the holy place**
UST in {what belongs in} the sacred tent

Here, **holy place** represents the things that belong in the holy place. If it would be helpful in your language, you could use an equivalent expression or plain language. See how you translated the similar phrase in 4:15. Alternate translation: [in the things that belong in the holy place]
Support Reference: Metonymy

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Eleazar	Eleazar
Aaron	Aaron
priest	priest
oil	oil
incense	incense
grain offering	the grain
anointing	that they pour on people and things
the Dwelling	of the sacred tent
holy place	in {what belongs in} the sacred tent

Numbers 4:18

ULT	UST
"Do not cut off the tribe of the clans of the Kohathite from the midst of the Levites.	*"Do not cause the Levites from the Kohathite tribal groups to die.*

ULT **the tribe of the clans of the Kohathite**
UST the Kohathite tribal groups

Yahweh is using the possessive form to describe a **tribe** that is made up of the **clans of the Kohathite**. If a speaker of your language would not use the possessive form for this, you could express this idea in another way. Alternate translation: [the tribe that is made up of the clans of]
Support Reference: Possession

ULT **the tribe of the clans of**
UST tribal groups

Here, **tribe** represents the descendants of Kohath who comprise part of the tribe. If it would be helpful in your language, you could use an equivalent expression or plain language. Alternate translation: [the portion of the tribe of]
Support Reference: Metonymy

ULT **the Kohathite**
UST the Kohathite

Yahweh is not referring to a specific **Kohathite**. He means all the members of the Kohathite clan in general. If it would be helpful to your readers, you could use an expression that would be more natural in your language. Alternate translation: [the Kohathites]
Support Reference: Generic Noun Phrases

ULT **from the midst of the Levites**
UST the Levites from

Here, Moses is speaking as if the Kohathites were objects that could be physically removed **from the midst of** the Levites. He means that they could be eliminated as a group from among the Levites. If it would be helpful in your language, you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [so that they no longer exist among]
Support Reference: Metaphor

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
tribe	tribal
the clans of	tribal groups
Levites	Levites

Numbers 4:19

ULT	UST
But this do for them, and they will live and not die when they come near the holy of the holies: Aaron and his sons shall go and set them man by man in accordance with his service and to his burden.	*Rather, Aaron and his sons must come and show each Kohathite man what he must pick up and carry. That way, the descendants of Kohath will stay alive when they come close to the most sacred items.*

ULT **But this**
UST Rather

The pronoun **this** refers to the instructions that follow about how Aaron and his sons must assign specific tasks to each of the Kohathites. It may be helpful to clarify this for your readers. Alternate translation: [But here is what you must]
Support Reference: Pronouns — When to Use Them

ULT **and they will live and not die**
UST That way, the descendants of Kohath will stay alive

The phrases **live** and **not die** mean similar things. Yahweh is using the two terms together for emphasis. If it would be clearer for your readers, you could express the emphasis with a single phrase. Alternate translation: [and they will certainly live]
Support Reference: Doublet

ULT **and they will live**
UST That way, the descendants of Kohath will stay alive

Here, **and they will live** marks this clause as the purpose of Aaron and his sons showing each man what to carry. Use a connector in your language that makes it clear that this is the purpose. Alternate translation: [so that they will live]
Support Reference: Connect — Goal (Purpose) Relationship

ULT **the holy of the holies**
UST the most sacred items

Here, **holy of the holies** represents the most sacred items. If it would be helpful in your language, you could use an equivalent expression or plain language. Alternate translation: [the things that are most holy]
Support Reference: Metonymy

ULT **shall go**
UST must come

By **shall go**, Yahweh means Aaron and his sons will enter the sacred tent to show each Kohathite man what he should carry. You could indicate this explicitly in your translation if that would be helpful to your readers. Alternate translation: [shall enter the sacred tent]
Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

ULT **and set them man by man**
UST and show each {Kohathite} man

The phrase **set them man by man** is a common expression of this culture that means "to assign each person his own task." If this phrase does not have that meaning in your language, you could use a comparable expression from your language that does have that meaning, or you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [and appoint each of them]
Support Reference: Idiom

ULT **his service**
UST what he must pick up

If your language does not use an abstract noun for the idea of **service**, you could express the same idea in another way. Alternate translation: [what he does to serve]
Support Reference: Abstract Nouns

ULT **his burden**
UST and carry

See how you translated the same use of **burden** in 4:15.
Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
holy	sacred
holies	most
Aaron	Aaron
and set	and show
his service	what he must pick up
his burden	carry

Numbers 4:20

ULT	UST
But they shall not go to see, when swallowing, the holy place and die.”	*The descendants of Kohath must not look at anything that belongs in the sacred tent, not even briefly, or they will die.”*

ULT **But they shall not go**
UST The descendants of Kohath must not

The pronoun **they** refers to the sons of Kohath. It may be helpful to clarify this for your readers. Alternate translation: [But the sons of Kohath shall not go]
Support Reference: Pronouns — When to Use Them

ULT **But they shall not go**
UST The descendants of Kohath must not

The implication is that the Kohathites must not enter the sacred tent while Aaron and his sons are covering the holy items. You could include this information if that would be helpful to your readers. Alternate translation: [But they shall not enter the sacred tent]
Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

ULT **when swallowing**
UST not even briefly

The expression **when swallowing** is a common expression of this culture that means “even for a moment.” If this phrase does not have that meaning in your language, you could use a comparable expression from your language that does have that meaning, or you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [even for a moment]
Support Reference: Idiom

ULT **the holy place**
UST the sacred tent

Here, **holy place** represents the things that belong in the holy place. If it would be helpful in your language, you could use an equivalent expression or plain language. See how you translated the similar phrase in 4:15. Alternate translation: [the things that belong in the holy place]
Support Reference: Metonymy

ULT **and die**
UST or they will die

The words **and die** express the result of touching the holy place. If it would be more natural in your language, you could make this connection more explicit. See how you translated the similar phrase in 4:15. Alternate translation: [which would cause them to die]
Support Reference: Connect — Reason-and-Result Relationship

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
holy place	the sacred tent

Numbers 4:22

ULT	UST
"Lift up the head of the sons of Gershon, also them, according to the house of their fathers, according to their clans.	*"Count the male descendants of Gershon too. Count them by their ancestral families and tribal groups.*

ULT **Lift up the head of the sons**
UST Count the male descendants

See how you translated this phrase in 4:2.
Support Reference: Idiom

ULT **also them**
UST too. Count them

By **also them**, Moses means that he should count the descendants of Gershon in addition to having counted the descendants of Kohath. You could indicate this explicitly in your translation if that would be helpful to your readers. Alternate translation: [in addition to the sons of Kohath]
Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

ULT **according to the house of their fathers, according to their clans**
UST by their ancestral families and tribal groups

See how you translated these phrases in 4:2.
Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
house	by … families
clans	and tribal groups

Numbers 4:23

ULT	UST
From a son of 30 years and upward up to a son of 50 years you shall count them, everyone who comes to fight in the army, to serve service in the tent of meeting.	*List the men who are at least 30 years old and at most 50 years old. These men must be able to work at the sacred tent and set it up and take it down.*

ULT **From a son of 30 years and upward up to a son of 50 years**
UST who are at least 30 years old and at most 50 years old

See how you translated this phrase in 4:3. Alternate translation: [From 30–50 years old]
Support Reference: Idiom

ULT **who comes to fight**
UST These men must be able to work

The phrase **who comes to** is a common expression of this culture that means "who is able to." If this phrase does not have that meaning in your language, you could use a comparable expression from your language that does have that meaning, or you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [who can fight]
Support Reference: Idiom

ULT **to fight in the army**
UST to work

Here, Yahweh is speaking of serving in the tabernacle as if it were **fighting in the army**. This emphasizes that the work was strenuous and required careful coordination and attention to detail. If it would be helpful in your language, you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [to be part of the group of workers]
Support Reference: Metaphor

ULT **to fight in the army**
UST to work

Yahweh is using a construction in which a verb and its object come from the same root. You may be able to use the same construction in your language to express the meaning here. Alternatively, your language may have another way of saying this. Alternate translation: [to be in the army]
Support Reference: Poetry

ULT **to serve service**
UST and set it up and take it down

If your language does not use an abstract noun for the idea of **service**, you could express the same idea in another way. Alternate translation: [to serve what needs to be served]
Support Reference: Abstract Nouns

> ULT **to serve service**
> UST and set it up and take it down

Moses is using a construction in which a verb and its object come from the same root. You may be able to use the same construction in your language to express the meaning here. Alternatively, your language may have another way of saying this. Alternate translation: [to serve carefully]

Support Reference: Poetry

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
years	years
serve	and set it up and take it down
tent of meeting	at the sacred tent

Numbers 4:24

ULT	UST
This is the service of the clans of the Gershonite, to serve and according to a burden.	*When the Levites set up and take down the sacred tent, the tribal groups that make up the ancestral family of Gershon are responsible for setting up and taking down the sacred tent and carrying it.*

ULT **This {is} the service of the clans of the Gershonite**
UST When the Levites set up and take down {the sacred tent}, the tribal groups {that make up the ancestral family} of Gershon

If your language does not use an abstract noun for the idea of **service**, you could express the same idea in another way. Alternate translation: [This is how the clans of the Gershonite serve]
Support Reference: Abstract Nouns

ULT **the Gershonite**
UST that make up the ancestral family of Gershon

Yahweh is not referring to a specific **Gershonite**. He means all the descendants of Gershon in general. If it would be helpful to your readers, you could use an expression that would be more natural in your language. Alternate translation: [the Gershonites]
Support Reference: Generic Noun Phrases

ULT **to serve and according to a burden**
UST are responsible for setting up and taking down {the sacred tent} and carrying it

These phrases specify what exactly the service of the Gershonites was. It included both serving and carrying burdens. You could make this idea more explicit if that would be helpful to your readers. Alternate translation: [both to serve and to carry their burdens]
Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
clans	the tribal groups
serve	are responsible for setting up and taking down the sacred tent

Numbers 4:25

ULT	UST
And they shall carry the curtains of the Dwelling and the tent of meeting, its covering and the covering of porpoise which is on it from above and the curtain of the opening of the tent of meeting	*They must carry the curtains for the inner part of the sacred tent, the outer part of the sacred tent, what covers this outer part, the fine leather that covers over all those things, the curtain at the sacred tent's entrance,*

ULT **the curtains of the Dwelling and the tent of meeting**
UST the curtains for the inner part of the sacred tent

Here, the word **Dwelling** refers specifically to the inner part of the sacred tent. The phrase **tent of meeting** refers specifically to the outer part of the sacred tent. See how you translated the similar phrases in 3:25. Alternate translation: [the curtains of the inner part of the Dwelling and the outer curtains of the Dwelling]
Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

ULT **its covering and the covering of porpoise which {is} on it**
UST the outer part of the sacred tent, what covers {this outer part}, the fine leather that covers over all those things

Yahweh assumes that readers will know that the sacred tent had both an inner and an outer **covering**. You could say that explicitly if that would be helpful to your readers. Alternate translation: [its inner covering and the outer covering of porpoise which is on it]
Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

ULT **and the covering of porpoise**
UST what covers {this outer part}, the fine leather

See how you translated the similar phrase in 4:6.
Support Reference: Translate Unknowns

ULT **from above**
UST covers over all those things

The implication is that the covering being referred to was placed on top of the other coverings that were already on the tent. You could include this information if that would be helpful to your readers. Alternate translation: [on top of all these things]
Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

ULT **the curtain of the opening of the tent of meeting**
UST the curtain at the sacred tent's entrance

See how you translated this phrase in 3:25.
Support Reference: Possession

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
carry	carry
curtains	curtains
of the Dwelling	for the inner part
tent of meeting	of the sacred tent
curtain	curtain

Numbers 4:26

ULT	UST
and the hangings of the courtyard and the curtain of the opening of the gate of the courtyard that is on the Dwelling and on the altar all around, and their ropes and all the vessels of their service and all that is done for them; and they shall serve.	*the curtains that hang on the fence around the courtyard, the curtain at the entrance to the courtyard that surrounds the sacred tent and the altar, the braided cords for the curtains, and all the equipment and other items for setting up and taking down the curtains and coverings. They must set up and take down all these things.*

ULT **the opening of the gate of**
UST at the entrance to

Yahweh is using the possessive form to describe an **opening** that is a **gate**. If a speaker of your language would not use the possessive form for this, you could express this idea in another way. Alternate translation: [the opening that is the gate of]
Support Reference: Possession

ULT **that {is} on the Dwelling and on the altar all around**
UST that surrounds the sacred tent and the altar

See how you translated this clause in 3:26.
Support Reference: Idiom

ULT **and their ropes and all the vessels of their service and all that is done for them; and they shall serve**
UST the braided cords for the curtains, and all the equipment and other items for setting up and taking down the curtains and coverings. They must set up and take down all these things

Here, the pronouns **their** and **them** refer to the curtains for the sacred tent, and the pronoun **they** refers to the Gershonites. It may be helpful to clarify this for your readers. Alternate translation: [and the ropes for the curtains and all the vessels of the curtain's service and all that is done for the curtains; and the Gershonites shall serve]
Support Reference: Pronouns — When to Use Them

ULT **the vessels of their service**
UST the equipment and other items for setting up and taking down the curtains and coverings

If your language does not use an abstract noun for the idea of **service**, you could express the same idea in another way. Alternate translation: [the vessels with which they are served]
Support Reference: Abstract Nouns

ULT **and all that is done for them**
UST They must set up and take down all these things

The expression **is to be done** is a passive verbal form. If your language would not use that form, you could express the idea in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. If you need to say who does the action, the context indicates that it is the Gershonites. Alternate translation: [all that the Gershonites do for them]
Support Reference: Active or Passive

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
the hangings of	curtains
courtyard	courtyard
curtain	curtain
gate	at the entrance to
the Dwelling	the sacred tent
altar	altar
serve	They must set up and take down all these things

Numbers 4:27

ULT	UST
Upon the mouth of Aaron and his sons will be all the service of the sons of the Gershonite, according to all their burden and according to all their service. And you shall count upon them all their burden in keeping.	*The descendants of Gershon must set up and take down the sacred tent as Aaron and his sons command them. This includes everything they do to set up and take down the sacred tent and to carry it. You and Aaron must assign something for each of them to carry and to guard.*

ULT **Upon the mouth of Aaron and his sons**
UST as Aaron and his sons command them

The phrase **upon the mouth of Aaron and his sons** is a common expression of his culture to mean "according to what Aaron and his sons command." If this phrase does not have that meaning in your language, you could use a comparable expression from your language that does have that meaning, or you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [According to what Aaron and his sons say]
Support Reference: Idiom

ULT **all the service of the sons of the Gershonite**
UST The descendants of Gershon must set up and take down the sacred tent

If your language does not use an abstract noun for the idea of **service**, you could express the same idea in another way. Alternate translation: [how the sons of the Gershonite serve]
Support Reference: Abstract Nouns

ULT **the Gershonite**
UST Gershon

Yahweh is not referring to a specific **Gershonite**. He means Gershonites in general. If it would be helpful to your readers, you could use an expression that would be more natural in your language. Alternate translation: [the Gershonites]
Support Reference: Generic Noun Phrases

ULT **and according to all their service**
UST This includes everything they do to set up and take down the sacred tent

If your language does not use an abstract noun for the idea of **service**, you could express the same idea in another way. Alternate translation: [and according to how they serve]
Support Reference: Abstract Nouns

ULT **And you shall count**
UST You {and Aaron} must assign something

The word **you** is plural here because God is speaking to Moses and Aaron. So use the plural form in your translation if your language marks that distinction.
Support Reference: Forms of 'You' — Singular

ULT **And you shall count**
UST You {and Aaron} must assign something

The implication is that Moses and Aaron are to assign specific tasks and equipment to specific people. You could include this information if that would be helpful to your readers. See how you translated the similar phrase in 3:10. Alternate translation: [And you shall appoint]
Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

ULT **all their burden in keeping**
UST to carry and to guard

By **all their burden in keeping**, Yahweh means everything that they must guard while they are carrying it. You could indicate this explicitly in your translation if that would be helpful to your readers. Alternate translation: [everything that they must guard as they carry it]
Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Aaron	Aaron

Numbers 4:28

ULT	UST
This is the service of the clans of the sons of the Gershonite in the tent of meeting, and their keeping is in the hand of Ithamar, the son of Aaron the priest.	*When the Levites set up and take down the sacred tent, that is what the tribal groups that descended from Gershon must do. Aaron the priest's son Ithamar is in charge of them as they guard all those things.*

ULT **This {is} the service of the clans of the sons of the Gershonite**

UST When the Levites set up and take down … that is what the tribal groups that descended from Gershon must do

If your language does not use an abstract noun for the idea of **service**, you could express the same idea in another way. Alternate translation: [This is how the clans of the sons of the Gershonite serve]

Support Reference: Abstract Nouns

ULT **the Gershonite**

UST Gershon

Yahweh is not referring to a specific **Gershonite**. He means the Gershonites in general. If it would be helpful to your readers, you could use an expression that would be more natural in your language. Alternate translation: [the Gershonites]

Support Reference: Generic Noun Phrases

ULT **is in the hand of Ithamar**

UST Ithamar is in charge of them

Yahweh is using the common expression of his culture **in the hand of** to mean "under the authority of" or "under the supervision of." If this phrase does not have that meaning in your language, you could use a comparable expression from your language that does have that meaning, or you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [under the control of]

Support Reference: Idiom

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
clans	the tribal groups
Aaron	Aaron
priest	priest's

Numbers 4:29

ULT	UST
The sons of Merari, according to their clans, according to the house of their fathers, you shall count them.	*Moses, list the descendants of Merari by their tribal groups and ancestral families.*

ULT **The sons of Merari, according to their clans, according to the house of their fathers, you shall count them**

UST Moses, list the descendants of Merari by their tribal groups and ancestral families

If it would be more natural in your language, you may want to put the information about counting first, followed by the information about **their clans** and **the house of their fathers**. Alternate translation: [You shall count the sons of Merari, according to their clans, according to the house of their fathers]

Support Reference: Information Structure

ULT **according to their clans, according to the house of their fathers**

UST by their tribal groups and ancestral families

See how you translated these phrases in 4:2.

Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

ULT **you shall count**

UST Moses, list

The word **you** is singular here because Yahweh is addressing Moses. So use the singular form in your translation if your language marks that distinction. Alternate translation: [you, Moses, shall count]

Support Reference: Forms of 'You' — Singular

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
clans	by their tribal groups
according to the house	and … families

Numbers 4:30

ULT	UST
From a son of 30 years and upward and up to a son of 50 years you shall count them, everyone who comes to the army to serve the service of the tent of meeting.	*List the men who are at least 30 years old and at most 50 years old. These men must be able to participate when the Levites set up and take down the sacred tent.*

ULT **everyone who comes to the army**
UST These men must be able to participate

See how you translated this phrase in 4:23.
Support Reference: Idiom

ULT **to serve the service**
UST when the Levites set up and take down

Yahweh is using a construction in which a verb and its object come from the same root. You may be able to use the same construction in your language to express the meaning here. Alternatively, your language may have another way of saying this. Alternate translation: [to serve]
Support Reference: Poetry

ULT **the service of the tent of meeting**
UST when the Levites set up and take down the sacred tent

If your language does not use an abstract noun for the idea of **service**, you could express the same idea in another way. Alternate translation: [as the tent of meeting needs to be served]
Support Reference: Abstract Nouns

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
years	years
serve	when the Levites set up and take down
tent of meeting	the sacred tent

Numbers 4:31

ULT	UST
And this is the keeping of their burden, according to all their service in the tent of meeting: the frames of the Dwelling and its crossbars and its pillars and its bases	*As they help to set up and take down the sacred tent, the descendants of Merari must guard and carry the sacred tent's frame boards, poles, posts, and bases,*

ULT **according to all their service**
UST As they help to set up and take down

If your language does not use an abstract noun for the idea of **service**, you could express the same idea in another way. Alternate translation: [according to how they serve]
Support Reference: Abstract Nouns

ULT **the frames of the Dwelling and its crossbars and its pillars and its bases**
UST the sacred tent's frame boards, poles, posts, and bases

See how you referred to these items in 3:36.
Support Reference: Translate Unknowns

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
tent of meeting	the sacred tent
of the Dwelling	the sacred tent's
pillars	posts

Numbers 4:32

ULT	UST
and the pillars of the courtyard all around and their bases and their pegs and their ropes, for all their vessels and for all their service; and by names you shall count the vessels of the keeping of their burden.	*as well as the posts, bases, stakes, and braided cords that were parts of the fence surrounding the courtyard, including all the equipment that they used to set up and take down all those things. Assign to each of them by name equipment to guard and to carry.*

ULT **and the pillars of the courtyard all around and their bases and their pegs and their ropes**

UST as well as the posts, bases, stakes, and braided cords {that were parts of the fence} surrounding the courtyard

See how you referred to these items in 3:37.

Support Reference: Translate Unknowns

ULT **and for all their service**

UST that they used to set up and take down all those things

If your language does not use an abstract noun for the idea of **service**, you could express the same idea in another way. Alternate translation: [and for all the ways that they are served]

Support Reference: Abstract Nouns

ULT **and by names**

UST by name

The phrase **by names** means that the priests were to assign specific items to specific people by recording each person's name with the items he was to be responsible for. You could indicate this explicitly in your translation if that would be helpful to your readers. Alternate translation: [and by each man's name]

Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

ULT **you shall count**

UST Assign to each of them

The word **you** is plural here because Yahweh is speaking to Moses and Aaron. So use the singular form in your translation if your language marks that distinction.

Support Reference: Forms of 'You' — Singular

ULT **you shall count**

UST Assign to each of them

The implication is that Moses and Aaron are to assign specific tasks and equipment to specific people. You could include this information if that would be helpful to your readers. See how you translated the similar phrase in 4:27. Alternate translation: [you shall appoint]

Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

> ULT **the vessels of the keeping of their burden**
> UST equipment to guard and to carry

Yahweh is using the possessive form to describe **vessels** that are a **burden** and that require **keeping**. If a speaker of your language would not use the possessive form for this, you could express this idea in another way. Alternate translation: [the vessels that they must keep as they carry them]

Support Reference: Possession

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
pillars	as well as the posts
courtyard	courtyard

Numbers 4:33

ULT	UST
This is the service of the clans of the sons of Merari for all their service in the tent of meeting in the hand of Ithamar, the son of Aaron the priest."	*When the Levites set up and take down the sacred tent, that is what the tribal groups that descended from Merari must do. Aaron the priest's son Ithamar is in charge of them."*

ULT **This {is} the service of the clans of the sons of Merari for all their service**
UST When the Levites set up and take down … that is what the tribal groups that descended from Merari must do

It might seem that the expression **This is the service of the clans of the sons of Merari for all their service** contains extra information that would not be natural to express in your language. If so, you can shorten it. Alternate translation: [This is the service of the clans of the sons of Merari]
Support Reference: Making Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information Explicit

ULT **This {is} the service of the clans of the sons of Merari for all their service**
UST When the Levites set up and take down … that is what the tribal groups that descended from Merari must do

If your language does not use abstract nouns for the ideas of **service** and **service**, you could express the same ideas in other ways. Alternate translation: [This is how the clans of the sons of Merari serve as they serve]
Support Reference: Abstract Nouns

ULT **in the hand of Ithamar**
UST Ithamar is in charge of them

The phrase **in the hand of** is a common expression of this culture that means "under the control of" or "under the direction of." If this phrase does not have that meaning in your language, you could use a comparable expression from your language that does have that meaning, or you could state the meaning plainly. See you how you translated the similar phrase in 4:28. Alternate translation: [under the control of]
Support Reference: Idiom

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
clans	the tribal groups
tent of meeting	the sacred tent
Aaron	Aaron
priest	priest's

Numbers 4:34

ULT	UST
And Moses and Aaron and the leaders of the congregation counted the sons of the Kohathite according to their clans and according to the house of their fathers,	*So, Moses, Aaron, and the men who led the Israelite community listed the descendants of Kohath by their tribal groups and ancestral families.*

ULT **And Moses and Aaron and the leaders of the congregation counted**
UST So, Moses, Aaron, and the men who led the {Israelite} community listed

The word translated as **And** indicates that what follows is a result of what came before. Use a connector in your language that makes it clear that what follows is a result of what came before. Alternate translation: [As a result, Moses and Aaron and the leaders of the congregation counted]
Support Reference: Connect — Reason-and-Result Relationship

ULT **the Kohathite**
UST Kohath

The author is not referring to a specific **Kohathite**. He means all the members of the Kohathite clan in general. If it would be helpful to your readers, you could use an expression that would be more natural in your language. Alternate translation: [the Kohathites]
Support Reference: Generic Noun Phrases

ULT **according to their clans and according to the house of their fathers**
UST by their tribal groups and ancestral families

See how you translated these phrases in 4:2.
Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Moses	Moses
Aaron	Aaron
leaders	and the men who led
congregation	community
clans	by their tribal groups
house	and … families

Numbers 4:35

ULT	UST
from a son of 30 years and upward and up to a son of 50 years, everyone who comes to the army for service in the tent of meeting,	*They listed the men who were at least 30 years old and at most 50 years old. These men were able to participate when the Levites set up and took down the sacred tent.*

ULT **everyone who comes to the army**
UST These men were able to participate

See how you translated this phrase in 4:30.
Support Reference: Idiom

ULT **for service**
UST when the Levites set up and took down

If your language does not use an abstract noun for the idea of **service**, you could express the same idea in another way. Alternate translation: [to serve]
Support Reference: Abstract Nouns

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
years	years
for service	when the Levites set up and took down
tent of meeting	the sacred tent

Numbers 4:36

ULT	UST
and their counted ones according to their clans were 2, 750.	*Moses and Aaron listed 2, 750 of these descendants of Kohath by their tribal groups.*

ULT **their counted ones**

UST Moses and Aaron listed … of these descendants of Kohath

The expression **their counted ones** is a passive verbal form. If your language would not use that form, you could express the idea in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. See how you translated this phrase in 3:22. Alternate translation: [the ones whom Moses, Aaron, and the leaders counted]

Support Reference: Active or Passive

ULT **2,750**

UST 2,750

Translate this number according to the conventions of your own language and culture. Alternate translation: [two thousand seven hundred and fifty]

Support Reference: Numbers

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
clans	by their tribal groups

Numbers 4:37

ULT	UST
These were the counted ones of the clans of the Kohathite, everyone who serves in the tent of meeting, whom Moses and Aaron counted upon the mouth of Yahweh in the hand of Moses.	*Moses and Aaron listed those men from the tribal groups that descended from Kohath, just as Yahweh ordered them to do. Moses was in charge. Each one of these men helped set up and take down the sacred tent.*

ULT **These {were} the counted ones of the clans of**
UST those men from the tribal groups that descended from

See how you translated **counted ones** in 4:37.
Support Reference: Active or Passive

ULT **the Kohathite**
UST Kohath

The author is not referring to a specific **Kohathite**. He means all the members of the Kohathite clan in general. If it would be helpful to your readers, you could use an expression that would be more natural in your language. Alternate translation: [the Kohathites]
Support Reference: Generic Noun Phrases

ULT **upon the mouth of Yahweh**
UST Yahweh ordered them to do

See how you translated this phrase in 3:51. Alternate translation: [as Yahweh had said]
Support Reference: Idiom

ULT **in the hand of Moses**
UST Moses was in charge

The phrase **in the hand of** is a common expression of his culture to mean "under the authority of" or "under the control of." If this phrase does not have that meaning in your language, you could use a comparable expression from your language that does have that meaning, or you could state the meaning plainly. See you how you translated the similar phrase in 4:28. Alternate translation: [under the control of]
Support Reference: Idiom

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
clans	from the tribal groups that descended from
serves	helped set up and take down
tent of meeting	the sacred tent
Moses	Moses
Aaron	Aaron
Yahweh	Yahweh

Numbers 4:38

ULT	UST
And the counted ones of the sons of Gershon, according to their clans and according to the house of their fathers,	*Moses and Aaron also listed the descendants of Gershon by their tribal groups and ancestral families.*

ULT **And the counted ones of the sons**
UST Moses and Aaron also listed the descendants

See how you translated **counted ones** in 4:37.

Support Reference: Active or Passive

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
clans	by their tribal groups
house	and … families

Numbers 4:39

ULT	UST
from a son of 30 years and upward and up to a son of 50 years, everyone who comes to the army for service in the tent of meeting,	*They listed the men who were at least 30 years old and at most 50 years old. These men were able to participate when the Levites set up and took down the sacred tent.*

ULT **from a son of 30 years and upward and up to a son of 50 years, everyone who comes to the army for service in the tent of meeting**

UST They listed the men who were at least 30 years old and at most 50 years old. These men were able to participate when the Levites set up and took down the sacred tent

This verse is identical to 4:35. Translate it the same way.

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
years	years
for service	when the Levites set up and took down
tent of meeting	the sacred tent

Numbers 4:40

ULT	UST
and their counted ones according to their clans, according to the house of their fathers, were 2, 630.	*Moses and Aaron listed 2, 630 of these descendants of Gershon by their tribal groups and ancestral families.*

ULT **and their counted ones according to their clans, according to the house of their fathers, were 2,630**

UST Moses and Aaron listed 2,630 of these {descendants of Gershon} by their tribal groups and ancestral families

The structure of this verse is identical with 4:36 except that it includes the phrase **according to the house of their fathers**. Translate this verse as you translated that verse, changing only the number and including the phrase **according to the house of their fathers**.

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
clans	by their tribal groups
house	and … families

Numbers 4:41

ULT	UST
These were the counted ones of the clans of the sons of Gershon, everyone who serves in the tent of meeting, whom Moses and Aaron counted upon the mouth of Yahweh.	*Moses and Aaron listed those men from the tribal groups that descended from Gershon, just as Yahweh ordered them to do. Each one of these men helped set up and take down the sacred tent.*

ULT **These {were} the counted ones of the clans of the sons of Gershon, everyone who serves in the tent of meeting, whom Moses and Aaron counted upon the mouth of Yahweh**
UST Moses and Aaron listed those men from the tribal groups that descended from Gershon, just as Yahweh ordered them {to do}. Each one of these men helped set up and take down the sacred tent

This verse is almost identical to 4:37. This verse refers to **sons of Gershon** instead of "the Kohathite," and it does not include the phrase "in the hand of Moses," which is at the end of 4:37. Otherwise, translate this verse the same way you translated 4:37.

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
of the clans	from the tribal groups
serves	helped set up and take down
tent of meeting	the sacred tent
Moses	Moses
Aaron	Aaron
Yahweh	Yahweh

Numbers 4:42

ULT	UST
And the counted ones of the clans of the sons of Merari, according to their clans, according to the house of their fathers,	*Moses and Aaron also listed the tribal groups that descended from Merari by their tribal groups and ancestral families*

ULT **And the counted ones of the clans**
UST Moses and Aaron also listed the tribal groups

See how you translated **counted ones** in 4:37.

Support Reference: Active or Passive

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
of the clans	the tribal groups
house	and … families

Numbers 4:43

ULT	UST
from a son of 30 years and upward and up to a son of 50 years, everyone who comes to the army for service in the tent of meeting,	*They listed the men who were at least 30 years old and at most 50 years old. These men were able to participate when the Levites set up and took down the sacred tent.*

ULT **from a son of 30 years and upward and up to a son of 50 years, everyone who comes to the army for service in the tent of meeting**

UST They listed the men who were at least 30 years old and at most 50 years old. These men were able to participate when the Levites set up and took down the sacred tent

This verse is identical to 4:35. Translate it the same way.

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
years	years
for service	when the Levites set up and took down
tent of meeting	the sacred tent

Numbers 4:44

ULT	UST
and their counted ones according to their clans were 3, 200.	*Moses and Aaron listed 3, 200 of these descendants of Merari by their tribal groups.*

ULT **and their counted ones according to their clans were 3,200**

UST Moses and Aaron listed 3,200 of these {descendants of Merari} by their tribal groups

The structure of this verse is identical with 4:36. Translate this verse as you translated that verse, changing only the number.

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
clans	by their tribal groups

Numbers 4:45

ULT	UST
These were the counted ones of the clans of the sons of Merari, whom Moses and Aaron counted upon the mouth of Yahweh in the hand of Moses.	*Moses and Aaron listed those men from the tribal groups that descended from Merari, just as Yahweh ordered them to do. Moses was in charge.*

ULT **These {were} the counted ones of the clans of the sons of Merari**
UST those men from the tribal groups that descended from Merari

See you how translated the same clause in 4:41.

ULT **whom Moses and Aaron counted upon the mouth of Yahweh in the hand of Moses**
UST Moses and Aaron listed … just as Yahweh ordered them {to do}. Moses was in charge

See how you translated the same clause in 4:37.

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
clans	from the tribal groups
Moses	Moses
Aaron	Aaron
Yahweh	Yahweh
Moses	Moses

Numbers 4:46

ULT	UST
All the counted ones whom Moses and Aaron and the leaders of Israel counted, the Levites according to their clans and according to the house of their fathers,	*Moses, Aaron, and the men who led the Israelites listed all those descendants of Levi by their tribal groups and ancestral families.*

ULT **All the counted ones whom Moses and Aaron and the leaders of Israel counted**
UST Moses, Aaron, and the men who led the Israelites listed all those descendants

It might seem that the expression **the counted ones** contains extra information that would not be natural to express in your language. If so, you can shorten it. Alternate translation: [All the ones whom Moses and Aaron and the leaders of Israel counted]
Support Reference: Making Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information Explicit

ULT **the counted ones**
UST those descendants

See how you translated **counted ones** in 4:37.
Support Reference: Active or Passive

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Moses	Moses
Aaron	Aaron
leaders	and the men who led
Israel	Israelites
Levites	Levi
clans	by their tribal groups
house	and … families

Numbers 4:47

ULT	UST
from a son of 30 years and upward and up to a son of 50 years, everyone who comes to serve the service of service and the service of burden in the tent of meeting,	*They listed the men who were at least 30 years old and at most 50 years old. These men were able to set up and take down the sacred tent and to carry it and its equipment.*

ULT **everyone who comes to serve**
UST These men were able to set up and take down

The phrase **every one who comes to serve** is a common expression of his culture to mean "everyone who is capable of serving." If this phrase does not have that meaning in your language, you could use a comparable expression from your language that does have that meaning, or you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [every one who is capable of serving]

Support Reference: Idiom

ULT **to serve the service of service and the service of burden**
UST to set up and take down … and to carry it and its equipment

The author is using a construction in which a verb and its object come from the same root. You may be able to use the same construction in your language to express the meaning here. Alternatively, your language may have another way of saying this. Alternate translation: [to serve carefully and to carry burdens]

Support Reference: Poetry

ULT **the service of service and the service of burden**
UST to set up and take down … and to carry it and its equipment

If your language does not use abstract nouns for the ideas of **service** and **burden**, you could express the same ideas in other ways. Alternate translation: [in any way that they need to serve and in any way that they need to bear burdens]

Support Reference: Abstract Nouns

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
years	years
serve	to set up and take down
tent of meeting	the sacred tent

Numbers 4:48

ULT	UST
and their counted ones were 8, 580.	*They listed a total of 8, 580 of these men.*

ULT **their counted ones**
UST They listed … of these men

See how you translated **counted ones** in 4:37.
Support Reference: Active or Passive

ULT **8,580**
UST a total of 8,580

Translate this number according to the conventions of your own language and culture.
Alternate translation: [eight thousand five hundred and eighty]
Support Reference: Numbers

Numbers 4:49

ULT	UST
Upon the mouth of Yahweh he counted them in the hand of Moses, man by man in accordance with his service and in accordance with his burden. So these were his counted ones that Yahweh commanded Moses.	*Moses listed each of these men by what each one had to set up, take down, and carry, just as Yahweh had ordered them to do. Moses was in charge. These were all the men whom Yahweh had ordered Moses to count.*

ULT **Upon the mouth of Yahweh**
UST just as Yahweh had ordered them to do

See how you translated this phrase in 3:51. Alternate translation: [as Yahweh had said]
Support Reference: Idiom

ULT **he counted**
UST Moses listed

Here the pronoun **he** refers generically to everyone who counted the Levites, not just one person. Use an expression for this that would be natural in your language. Alternate translation: [they counted]
Support Reference: Pronouns — When to Use Them

ULT **in the hand of Moses**
UST Moses was in charge

The author is using **in the hand of** as a common expression of his culture to mean "under the control of." If this phrase does not have that meaning in your language, you could use a comparable expression from your language that does have that meaning, or you could state the meaning plainly. See you how you translated the similar phrase in 4:28. Alternate translation: [under the control of]
Support Reference: Idiom

ULT **man by man**
UST each of these men

The author is using the expression **man by man** as a common expression of his culture to mean "each man." If this phrase does not have that meaning in your language, you could use a comparable expression from your language that does have that meaning, or you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [each man]
Support Reference: Idiom

ULT **in accordance with his service**
UST by what each one had to set up, take down

If your language does not use an abstract noun for the idea of **service**, you could express the same idea in another way. Alternate translation: [in accordance with how he serves]
Support Reference: Abstract Nouns

ULT **So {these were} his counted ones**
UST These were all the men … to count

See how you translated **counted ones** in 4:37.
Support Reference: Active or Passive

> ULT **So {these were} his counted ones**
> UST These were all the men … to count

Here, the pronoun **his** could refer to: (1) Moses. Alternate translation: [So these were Moses' counted ones]; or (2) the tribe of Levi. Alternate translation: [So these were the counted ones of the tribe of Levi]

Support Reference: Pronouns — When to Use Them

> ULT **that Yahweh commanded Moses**
> UST whom Yahweh had ordered Moses

The author is leaving out some of the words that in many languages a sentence would need in order to be complete. You can supply these words from the context if that would be clearer in your language. Alternate translation: [that Yahweh commanded Moses to count]

Support Reference: Ellipsis

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Yahweh	Yahweh
Moses	Moses

Numbers 5

Numbers 5 Introduction

Numbers 5 Chapter Introduction

Structure and Formatting

This chapter gives instructions for keeping the camp pure because Yahweh lives among his people. It addresses ceremonial uncleanness, repayment for wrongdoing, and what to do when a husband suspects his wife has been unfaithful.

1. Yahweh commands Israel to send ceremonially unclean people outside the camp (1–4)
2. Yahweh gives instructions for confessing sins and making repayment (5–10)
3. Yahweh gives instructions on what to do when a husband suspects his wife has been unfaithful (11–31)

Religious and Cultural Concepts in This Chapter

Uncleanness

When people or things are unclean, or impure, they are not fit to be in or near God's presence. Uncleanness can be caused by sin, but it can also be caused by diseases or events that are not sinful. In 5:2–3, the uncleanness comes from diseases or from contact with a corpse. While having a disease or coming into contact with a corpse is not sinful, it still causes uncleanness. On the other hand, a wife who commits adultery, as discussed later in the chapter, is also unclean. This is because of the sin of adultery. With or without sin as the cause of the uncleanness, unclean people should not be in or near God's presence.

Guilt

In 5:6–8, the word "guilt" can refer both to the fact that someone did something wrong and to the restitution that the person must pay because he or she did something wrong. Because the person has "guilt" (he or she did something wrong), he or she must return the "guilt" (the payment for restitution) to the person he or she sinned against. See the notes on these verses for translation examples.

Ceremony for a jealous husband

In 5:11–31, Yahweh tells Moses what a man should do when he thinks his wife has committed adultery. The instructions state that the man does not have direct proof, so they pertain only when he is suspicious. The ceremony includes an oath with a curse that the wife speaks, special water that she drinks, and a grain offering. Yahweh promises that he will punish any wife who has actually committed adultery, but he will not punish any wife who is innocent. The punishment is sickness or failure in reproductive organs so that the guilty wife will no longer be able to have children. It is important that Yahweh is the one who brings the punishment or not. The ceremony itself has no effect without Yahweh.

Translation Issues in This Chapter

“The priest”

Throughout this chapter, Yahweh refers to “the priest.” Since there were several priests, this phrase probably refers to whichever priest was on duty at the time. Be sure that your readers would not misunderstand the phrase “the priest.”

Order of actions in the ceremony for a jealous husband

As he outlines the ceremony for a jealous husband, Yahweh does not include all the steps in exact sequential order. Specifically, 5:24 indicates that the woman drinks the water. However, 5:27 also indicates that the woman drinks the water. Yahweh has stated the general command in 5:24, but then he specifies in 5:25–27 the steps required in having the woman drink the water. So, 5:24 is the general command, and 5:25–27 are the details of how to perform that command. You could state this more explicitly if it would be helpful in your language. See the first note on 5:25.

Belly swelling and thigh falling

The punishment that Yahweh inflicts on the wife who committed adultery includes her belly swelling and her thigh falling. These phrases refer generally to illness or failure in her reproductive organs. Scholars are unsure what specific symptoms or illnesses these phrases might refer to, but it is clear that the woman will no longer be able to have children. Consider how to express that meaning without identifying a specific illness or failure. See the notes for translation options.

Numbers 5:1

ULT	UST
And Yahweh spoke to Moses, saying,	*Yahweh told Moses,*

ULT **saying**
UST told

Here and throughout the chapter, the word **saying** introduces a direct quotation. See how you translated **saying** in 1:1.
Support Reference: Quotations and Quote Margins

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Yahweh	Yahweh
Moses	Moses

Numbers 5:2

ULT	UST
“Command the sons of Israel, and they shall send from the camp everyone with a skin disease and everyone flowing and everyone unclean to a person.	*“Some people among the Israelites have skin diseases, are discharging bodily fluids from their genitals, or are impure because they touched a dead body. Order the Israelites to remove those people from the campground.*

ULT **and they shall send from the camp**

UST to remove those people from the campground

By **send from the camp**, Yahweh means that the Israelites were to make certain people leave the camp and live outside it. You could indicate this explicitly in your translation if that would be helpful to your readers. Alternate translation: [and they shall banish to a place outside the camp]

Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

ULT **and everyone flowing**

UST are discharging bodily fluids from their genitals

By **everyone flowing**, Moses means everyone who has an abnormal discharge from their genitals. You could indicate this explicitly in your translation if that would be helpful to your readers. Alternate translation: [everyone with abnormal discharge from their genitals]

Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

ULT **unclean to a person**

UST are impure because they touched a dead body

Yahweh is using **unclean to a person** as a common expression of his culture to mean “unclean because of contact with a dead body.” If this phrase does not have that meaning in your language, you could use a comparable expression from your language that does have that meaning, or you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [unclean because of coming into contact with a corpse]

Support Reference: Idiom

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Israel	Israelites
skin disease	skin diseases

Numbers 5:3

ULT	UST
From male up to female you shall send, to the outside of the camp you shall send them. And they shall not make unclean their camp, where I am dwelling in the midst of them."	*Whether they are male or female, you shall certainly remove those people from the campground. That way, they do not make the campground impure. That matters because I am present with the Israelites in the campground."*

ULT **From male up to female**
UST Whether they are male or female

Yahweh is using the expression **From male up to female** as a common expression of his culture to mean "both males and females" or "everyone." If this phrase does not have that meaning in your language, you could use a comparable expression from your language that does have that meaning, or you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [Both males and females]
Support Reference: Idiom

ULT **you shall send, to the outside of the camp you shall send them**
UST you shall certainly remove those people from the campground

It might seem that the expression **you shall send, to the outside of the camp you shall send them** contains extra information that would not be natural to express in your language. If so, you can shorten it. Alternate translation: [you shall send them to the outside of the camp]
Support Reference: Making Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information Explicit

ULT **you shall send**
UST you shall certainly

The pronoun **you** here is in the plural form since Yahweh was speaking to Moses but wanted him to convey this command to all the Israelites. You could make this explicit if it would be clearer in your language. Alternate translation: [all of you must send] or [you Israelites must send]
Support Reference: Forms of You

ULT **And they shall not make unclean their camp, where I am dwelling in the midst of them**
UST That way, they do not make the campground impure. {That matters because} I am present with the Israelites in the campground

If it would be more natural in your language, you could reverse the order of these phrases, since the second phrase (**where I am dwelling in the midst of them**) gives the reason for the result that the first phrase (**they shall not make unclean their camp**) describes. Alternate translation: [I am dwelling in the midst of them, so they shall not make unclean their camp]
Support Reference: Connect — Reason-and-Result Relationship

> ULT **And they shall not make unclean their camp**
> UST That way, they do not make the campground impure

The pronoun **they** refers to the unclean people who were sent outside the camp. It may be helpful to clarify this for your readers. Alternate translation: [And the unclean people shall not make unclean their camp]

Support Reference: Pronouns — When to Use Them

Numbers 5:4

ULT	UST
And the sons of Israel did so, and they sent them to the outside of the camp. Just as Yahweh spoke to Moses, thus the sons of Israel did.	*Then the Israelites did exactly what Yahweh ordered Moses to do. They removed those people from the campground.*

ULT **And the sons of Israel did so, and they sent them to the outside of the camp**
UST Then the Israelites did exactly … They removed those people from the campground

It might seem that the expression **the sons of Israel did so, and they sent them to the outside of the camp** contains extra information that would not be natural to express in your language. If so, you can shorten it. Alternate translation: [And the sons of Israel sent them to the outside of the camp]

Support Reference: Making Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information Explicit

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Israel	Israelites
Yahweh	Yahweh
Moses	Moses

Numbers 5:6

ULT	UST
“Speak to the sons of Israel: ‘A man or a woman, when they do from all the sins of the man to be unfaithful in unfaithfulness against Yahweh, then that person is guilty.	*“Tell the Israelites that any person, whether man or woman, might sin against another person. When a person does that, he or she is not being loyal to Yahweh. So, that person is guilty.*

ULT **Speak to the sons of Israel: ‘A man**
UST Tell the Israelites that any person, whether man or woman

If it would be clearer in your language, you could translate this so that there is not a quotation within a quotation. Alternate translation: [Speak to the sons of Israel. Say to them that a man]
Support Reference: Quotes within Quotes

ULT **A man or a woman, when they do from all the sins of the man to be unfaithful {in} unfaithfulness against Yahweh, then that person is guilty**
UST that any person, whether man or woman, might sin against another person. When a person does that, he or she is not being loyal to Yahweh. So, that person is guilty

In this verse, Yahweh alternates between singular and plural forms. He does this because the instructions relate to any person. If it would be helpful to your readers, you could use just the singular or plural throughout this verse. Alternate translation: [A man or woman, when he or she does from all the sins of the man to be unfaithful in unfaithfulness against Yahweh, then that person is guilty] or [Men or women, when they do from all the sins of the man to be unfaithful in unfaithfulness against Yahweh, then those people are guilty]
Support Reference: Pronouns — When to Use Them

ULT **the sins of the man**
UST might sin against another person

Here, Yahweh could be using the possessive form to refer to **sins** that are: (1) committed against a **man**. Alternate translation: [the sins against a man]; or (2) committed by a **man**. Alternate translation: [the sins by a man]
Support Reference: Possession

ULT **the man**
UST another person

Here the masculine term **man** has a generic sense that includes both men and women. If it would be helpful to your readers, you could use language in your translation that is clearly inclusive of both men and women. Alternate translation: [the human]
Support Reference: When Masculine Words Include Women

ULT **to be unfaithful**
UST When a person does that, he or she is not being loyal

The words translated as **to be unfaithful** indicate that what follows is a result of what came before. Use a connector in your language that makes it clear that what follows is a result of what came before. Alternate translation: [with the result that they are unfaithful]
Support Reference: Connect — Reason-and-Result Relationship

ULT **to be unfaithful {in} unfaithfulness**

UST When a person does that, he or she is not being loyal

Moses is using a construction in which a verb and its object come from the same root. You may be able to use the same construction in your language to express the meaning here. Alternatively, your language may have another way of saying this. Alternate translation: [to be very unfaithful]

Support Reference: Poetry

ULT **in unfaithfulness**

UST When a person does that, he or she is not being loyal

The phrase **unfaithfulness** expresses an abstract idea. If your language does not use an abstract noun for the idea of **unfaithfulness**, you could express the same idea in another way. Alternate translation: [in an unfaithful way]

Support Reference: Abstract Nouns

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Israel	Israelites
sins	sin
unfaithful	When a person does that, he or she is not being loyal
unfaithfulness	When a person does that, he or she is not being loyal
Yahweh	Yahweh
guilty	guilty

Numbers 5:7

ULT	UST
And they shall confess their sin that they did, and he shall return his guilt in its head and he shall add its fifth upon it, and he shall give to him to whom he is guilty.	*That person must admit how he or she sinned. Then, that person must pay the one against whom he or she sinned the full cost of what he or she did plus one fifth of the full cost.*

ULT **And they shall confess their sin that they did, and he shall return his guilt in its head and he shall add its fifth upon it, and he shall give to him to whom he is guilty**

UST That person must admit how he or she sinned. Then, that person must pay the one against whom he or she sinned the full cost of what he or she did plus one fifth of the full cost

As in the previous verse, Yahweh alternates between singular and plural forms. If it would be helpful to your readers, you could use just the singular or plural throughout this verse. Do what you did in the previous verse. Alternate translation: [And he or she shall confess his or her sin that he or she did, and he or she shall return his or her guilt in its head and he or she shall add its fifth upon it, and he or she shall give to him to whom he or she is guilty] or [And they shall confess their sin that they did, and they shall return their guilt in its head and they shall add its fifth upon it, and they shall give to him to whom they are guilty]

Support Reference: Pronouns — When to Use Them

ULT **and he shall return his guilt in its head and he shall add its fifth upon it, and he shall give to him to whom he is guilty**

UST Then, that person must pay the one against whom he or she sinned the full cost of what he or she did plus one fifth of the full cost

Here the masculine pronouns **he**, **his**, and **him** have a generic sense that includes both men and women. This can be seen from verse 6, which explicitly refers to “a man or a woman.” If it would be helpful to your readers, you could use language in your translation that is clearly inclusive of both men and women. Alternate translation: [and that person shall return his or her guilt in its head and he or she shall add its fifth upon it, and he or she shall give to the person to whom he or she is guilty]

Support Reference: When Masculine Words Include Women

ULT **his guilt**

UST what he or she did

Here, **guilt** represents the payment that must be made as compensation for causing damage or loss to someone. If it would be helpful in your language, you could use an equivalent expression or plain language. Alternate translation: [the payment for his guilt]

Support Reference: Metonymy

ULT **his guilt**

UST what he or she did

If your language does not use an abstract noun for the idea of **guilt**, you could express the same idea in another way. Alternate translation: [his guilty payment]

Support Reference: Abstract Nouns

ULT **in its head**
UST the full cost of

Yahweh is using **in its head** as a common expression of his culture to mean "in its entirety" or "in full." If this phrase does not have that meaning in your language, you could use a comparable expression from your language that does have that meaning, or you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [in its entirety]
Support Reference: Idiom

ULT **and he shall add its fifth upon it**
UST plus one fifth of the full cost

Yahweh is using **add its fifth** as a common expression of his culture to mean "include an additional 20 percent." If this phrase does not have that meaning in your language, you could use a comparable expression from your language that does have that meaning, or you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [and he shall include a fifth more]
Support Reference: Idiom

ULT **and he shall add its fifth**
UST plus one fifth

A **fifth** means one part out of five equal parts. Alternate translation: [and he shall add 20 percent]
Support Reference: Fractions

ULT **to whom he is guilty**
UST the one … he or she sinned

Yahweh here refers to whomever the person sinned against. You could include this information if that would be helpful to your readers. Alternate translation: [whom he sinned against when he became guilty]
Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
confess	That person must admit
sin	sinned
guilty	he or she sinned

Numbers 5:8

ULT	UST
And if there is not one redeeming for the man to return the guilt to him, the guilt being returned is to Yahweh to the priest, besides the ram of the atonement upon which he shall make atonement for him.	*Suppose that the person who should receive the full cost has died and has no close relatives to receive the full cost instead. In that case, the person who sinned must pay the full cost to Yahweh by paying it to the priest. That is in addition to the ram which he or she must give to the priest. The priest will offer that ram to remove that person's sin.*

ULT **And if there is not one redeeming for the man**

UST Suppose that the person who should receive the full cost {has died and} has no close relatives

The implication is that the wronged person has died and there are no close relatives who can receive the payment. You could include this information if that would be helpful to your readers. Alternate translation: [And if the person who was sinned against has died and there is not one redeeming for him]

Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

ULT **one redeeming for the man**

UST the person who should receive the full cost {has died and} has no close relatives

The implication is that a **one redeeming** refers to a close relative who could receive payment on behalf of a deceased person who had been wronged. You could include this information if that would be helpful to your readers. Alternate translation: [a close relative who can represent the man]

Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

ULT **for the man to return the guilt to him**

UST the person who should receive the full cost {has died and} has no close relatives to receive the full cost instead

Here the masculine term **man** has a generic sense that includes both men and women. If it would be helpful to your readers, you could use language in your translation that is clearly inclusive of both men and women. Alternate translation: [for the person to return the guilt to him or her]

Support Reference: When Masculine Words Include Women

ULT **the guilt to him, the guilt**

UST to receive the full cost instead … the full cost

If your language does not use an abstract noun for the idea of **guilt**, you could express the same idea in another way. Alternate translation: [the guilty payment to him, the guilty payment]

Support Reference: Abstract Nouns

ULT **the guilt to him, the guilt**
UST to receive the full cost instead … the full cost

The term **guilt** represents "payment for guilt" or "compensation." See how you translated the similar use of **guilt** in 5:7. If it would be helpful in your language, you could use an equivalent expression or plain language. Alternate translation: [the payment for his guilt to him, the payment for the guilt]
Support Reference: Metonymy

ULT **the guilt being returned**
UST In that case, the person who sinned must pay the full cost

The expression **being returned** is a passive verbal form. If your language would not use that form, you could express the idea in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: [the guilt that the guilty person is returning]
Support Reference: Active or Passive

ULT **is to Yahweh to the priest**
UST to Yahweh {by paying it} to the priest

The implication is that the payment belongs to Yahweh and therefore must be given to the priest who serves him. You could include this information if that would be helpful to your readers. Alternate translation: [is for Yahweh and thus given to the priest]
Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

ULT **the ram of the atonement upon which he shall make atonement for him**
UST the ram {which he or she must give to the priest}. The priest will offer that ram to remove that person's sin

If your language does not use an abstract noun for the idea of **atonement**, you could express the same idea in another way. Alternate translation: [the ram for atoning upon which he shall atone for him]
Support Reference: Abstract Nouns

ULT **the ram of the atonement**
UST the ram {which he or she must give to the priest}. The priest will offer that ram to remove that person's sin

Yahweh is using the possessive form to describe a **ram** that is used for **atonement**. If a speaker of your language would not use the possessive form for this, you could express this idea in another way. Alternate translation: [the ram that is offered to atone]
Support Reference: Possession

ULT **he shall make atonement for him**
UST The priest will offer that ram to remove that person's sin

The pronoun **he** refers to the priest, while the pronoun **him** refers to the guilty person. It may be helpful to clarify this for your readers. Alternate translation: [the priest shall make atonement for the guilty person]
Support Reference: Pronouns — When to Use Them

> ULT **for him**
> UST The priest will offer that ram to remove that person’s sin

Here the masculine term **him** has a generic sense that includes both men and women. If it would be helpful to your readers, you could use language in your translation that is clearly inclusive of both men and women. Alternate translation: [for him or her]

Support Reference: When Masculine Words Include Women

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
redeeming	the person who should receive the full cost {has died and} has no close relatives
to return	to receive the full cost instead
Yahweh	Yahweh
priest	priest
ram	ram
atonement	The priest will offer that ram to remove that person’s sin

Numbers 5:9

ULT	UST
And every contribution of all the holy things of the sons of Israel that they present to the priest, to him it shall be.	*Whenever the Israelites bring any special and sacred contribution to the priest, that contribution belongs to the priest.*

ULT **And every contribution of all the holy things of the sons of Israel**
UST Whenever the Israelites … any special and sacred contribution

Yahweh is using the possessive form **of the sons of Israel** to describe the **holy things** that are characterized by belonging to or coming from Israel. If a speaker of your language would not use the possessive form for this, you could express this idea in another way. Alternate translation: [And every holy contribution by the sons of Israel]

Support Reference: Possession

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
contribution	contribution
holy	sacred
Israel	Israelites
priest	priest

Numbers 5:10

ULT	UST
And a man, his holy things shall be to him; a man, what he gives to the priest, to him shall be.’”	*Indeed, whenever any person brings a sacred contribution to the priest, that contribution belongs to the priest.”*

ULT **And a man, his holy things shall be to him; a man, what he gives to the priest, to him shall be**

UST Indeed, whenever any person brings a sacred {contribution} to the priest, that contribution belongs to the priest

These two phrases **his holy things shall be to him** and **what he gives to the priest, to him shall be** mean basically the same thing, as long as **him** refers in both places to the priest (see the note below on these pronouns). The second phrase emphasizes the meaning of the first by repeating the same idea with different words. If it would be helpful to your readers, you could combine them and express the emphasis in another way. Alternate translation: [And a man, the holy things he gives to the priest shall be to him]

Support Reference: Parallelism

ULT **And a man … a man**

UST Indeed, whenever any person

The phrase **a man … a man** is a common expression of his culture used to emphasize that this rule applies separately to each individual person. If this phrase does not have that meaning in your language, you could use a comparable expression from your language that does have that meaning, or you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [As for each man … as for each man]

Support Reference: Idiom

ULT **shall be to him … to him shall be**

UST a sacred contribution … belongs to the priest

The second occurrence of **him** refers to the priest. The first occurrence of **him** could refer to: (1) the priest. Alternate translation: [shall be to the priest … to the priest shall be]; or (2) the man who owns it before giving it to the priest. Alternate translation: [shall be to that man himself …to the priest shall be]

Support Reference: Pronouns — When to Use Them

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
holy	sacred
priest	priest

Numbers 5:12

ULT	UST
"Speak to the sons of Israel and say to them, 'A man, a man, when his wife turns aside and is unfaithful against him in unfaithfulness,	*"Tell the Israelites that a man's wife might stop being loyal to him.*

ULT **Speak to the sons of Israel and say to them, 'A man**
UST Tell the Israelites that a man's wife

If it would be clearer in your language, you could translate this so that there is not a quotation within a quotation. Alternate translation: [Speak to the sons of Israel. Say to them that a man]
Support Reference: Quotes within Quotes

ULT **and say to them**
UST Tell the Israelites

The phrase **and say to them** introduces a direct quotation. In your translation, use a natural way of introducing direct quotations in your language. It may not be necessary to represent this phrase explicitly.
Support Reference: Quotations and Quote Margins

ULT **A man, a man**
UST that a man's wife

In Hebrew, the repetition of **a man, a man** creates emphasis. If your language has different ways to show emphasis, you could use one of those instead. Alternate translation: [Any man]
Support Reference: Reduplication

ULT **his wife turns aside and is unfaithful against him {in} unfaithfulness**
UST that a man's wife might stop being loyal to him

These two phrases **turns aside** and **is unfaithful against him in unfaithfulness** mean basically the same thing. The second emphasizes the meaning of the first by repeating the same idea with different words. If it would be helpful to your readers, you could combine them and express the emphasis in another way. Alternate translation: [his wife is unfaithful against him in unfaithfulness] or [his wife turns aside to unfaithfulness against him]
Support Reference: Parallelism

ULT **his wife turns aside**
UST that a man's wife might stop being loyal

Here, Yahweh is speaking of a wife's unfaithfulness as if she had literally **turned aside** from a path. This metaphor means that she has stopped being faithful to her husband. If it would be helpful in your language, you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [his wife does what is wrong]
Support Reference: Metaphor

ULT **and is unfaithful against him {in} unfaithfulness**
UST might stop being loyal to him

Yahweh is using a construction in which a verb and its object come from the same root. You may be able to use the same construction in your language to express the meaning here. Alternatively, your language may have another way of saying this. Alternate translation: [and is unfaithful against him]
Support Reference: Poetry

ULT **in unfaithfulness**
UST might stop being loyal

If your language does not use an abstract noun for the idea of **unfaithfulness**, you could express the same idea in another way. Alternate translation: [in an unfaithful way]
Support Reference: Abstract Nouns

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Israel	Israelites
unfaithfulness	might stop being loyal

Numbers 5:13

ULT	UST
and a man lies with her the lying of seed, and it is concealed from the eyes of her husband, and it is hidden, and she, she is made unclean, but there is no witness against her, and she, she has not been caught,	*Another man might have sex with her, and so she becomes impure. However, her husband does not know this, and no one else knows either. No one can prove what she did.*

ULT **and a man lies with her the lying of seed**
UST Another man might have sex with her

Yahweh is referring to sexual relations in a polite way by using the phrase **lies with her the lying of seed**. Depending on what is helpful in your language, you could use a polite way of referring to this in your language, or you could state this plainly. Alternate translation: [has sexual relations with her] or [commits adultery with her]
Support Reference: Euphemism

ULT **a man**
UST Another man

By **a man** Yahweh means a man who is not the woman's husband. This would have been clear to the original readers from the context. You could indicate this explicitly in your translation if that would be helpful to your readers. Alternate translation: [a man who is not her husband]
Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

ULT **and it is concealed from the eyes of her husband**
UST However, her husband does not know this

The expression **it is concealed from the eyes of her husband** is a passive verbal form. If your language would not use that form, you could express the idea in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: [and the eyes of her husband do not see it]
Support Reference: Active or Passive

ULT **and it is concealed from the eyes of her husband, and it is hidden**
UST However, her husband does not know this, and no one else knows either

These two phrases **it is concealed from the eyes of her husband** and **it is hidden** mean basically the same thing. The second emphasizes the meaning of the first by repeating the same idea with different words. If it would be helpful to your readers, you could combine them and express the emphasis in another way. Alternate translation: [and it is hidden from the eyes of her husband]
Support Reference: Parallelism

ULT **from the eyes of her husband**
UST However, her husband does not know this

Here, **from the eyes of her husband** represents her husband's knowledge or awareness. If it would be helpful in your language, you could use an equivalent expression or plain language. Alternate translation: [from her husband]
Support Reference: Metonymy

ULT **and it is hidden**
UST and no one else knows either

The expression **it is hidden** is a passive verbal form. If your language would not use that form, you could express the idea in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: [and she hides it]
Support Reference: Active or Passive

ULT **and she, she is made unclean … and she, she has not been caught**
UST and so she becomes impure … No one can prove what she did

Yahweh is stating the pronoun **she** separately, even though the verbs translated as **she is made unclean** and **she has … been caught** already include this meaning. He is doing that to switch from speaking about the husband to speaking about the wife. If a speaker of your language would use an explicit pronoun for the same purpose, you may want to use that construction in your translation. If not, your language may have other ways of showing that emphasis. Alternate translation: [and as for her, she is made unclean … and as for her, she has not been caught]
Support Reference: Pronouns — When to Use Them

ULT **and she, she is made unclean**
UST and so she becomes impure

The expression **is made unclean** is a passive verbal form. If your language would not use that form, you could express the idea in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: [and she, she has made herself unclean]
Support Reference: Active or Passive

ULT **and she, she has not been caught**
UST No one can prove what she did

The expression **has not been caught** is a passive verbal form. If your language would not use that form, you could express the idea in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: [and no one has caught her]
Support Reference: Active or Passive

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
seed	might have sex
witness	No one can prove what she did

Numbers 5:14

ULT	UST
and a spirit of jealousy passes over on him and he is jealous of his wife and she, she is made unclean, or a spirit of jealousy passes over on him and he is jealous of his wife and she, she is not made unclean,	*Despite that, her husband might become suspicious that another man has had sex with her, whether she has actually become impure in that way or not.*

ULT **and a spirit of jealousy passes over on him and he is jealous of his wife and she, she is made unclean, or a spirit of jealousy passes over on him and he is jealous … and she, she is not made unclean**

UST Despite that, her husband might become suspicious {that another man has had sex with her}, whether she has actually become impure {in that way} or not

It might seem that the second occurrence of the expression **a spirit of jealousy passes over on him and he is jealous of his wife** contains extra information that would not be natural to express in your language. If so, you can shorten it. Alternate translation: [and a spirit of jealousy passes over on him and he is jealous of his wife and she, she is made unclean or she, she is not made unclean]

Support Reference: Making Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information Explicit

ULT **and a spirit of jealousy passes over on him and he is jealous of his wife … or a spirit of jealousy passes over on him and he is jealous … and she**

UST Despite that, her husband might become suspicious that another man has had sex with her … or not

The two phrases **a spirit of jealousy passes over on him** and **he is jealous** mean basically the same thing. The second emphasizes the meaning of the first by repeating the same idea with different words. If it would be helpful to your readers, you could connect the phrases with a word other than **and** in order to show that the second phrase is repeating the first one, not saying something additional. Alternate translation: [and a spirit of jealousy passes over on him so that he is jealous of his wife … or a spirit of jealousy passes over on him so that he is jealous of his wife]

Support Reference: Parallelism

ULT **and a spirit of jealousy passes over on him … or a spirit of jealousy passes over on him**

UST Despite that, her husband might become suspicious that another man has had sex with her … or

Yahweh is using **a spirit of jealousy passes over on him** as a common expression of his culture to mean “he feels jealous.” If this phrase does not have that meaning in your language, you could use a comparable expression from your language that does have that meaning, or you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [and he feels jealous … or he feels jealous]

Support Reference: Idiom

ULT **and she, she is made unclean … she is not made unclean**
UST whether she has actually become impure in that way … not

The expression **is made unclean** is a passive verbal form. If your language would not use that form, you could express the idea in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: [and she, she has made herself unclean … and she, she has not made herself unclean]

Support Reference: Active or Passive

ULT **and she, she is made unclean … she is not made unclean**
UST whether she has actually become impure in that way … not

Yahweh is stating the pronoun **she** separately, even though the verbs translated as **she is made unclean** and **she is … made unclean** already include this meaning. He is doing that to switch from speaking about the husband to speaking about the wife. If a speaker of your language would use an explicit pronoun for the same purpose, you may want to use that construction in your translation. If not, your language may have other ways of showing that emphasis. Alternate translation: [and as for her, she is made unclean … and as for her, she is not made caught]

Support Reference: Reflexive Pronouns

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
spirit	Despite that, her husband might become suspicious that another man has had sex with her
jealous	Despite that, her husband might become suspicious that another man has had sex with her
jealousy	Despite that, her husband might become suspicious that another man has had sex with her

Numbers 5:15

ULT	UST
then the man shall bring his wife to the priest. And he shall bring her offering upon her, the tenth of the ephah of flour of barley. He shall not pour oil on it, and he shall not put frankincense on it, for it is a grain offering of jealousy, a grain offering of memorial causing iniquity to be remembered.	*In that case, the husband must take his wife to the priest. He must also take about two liters of barley flour to present to the priest on her behalf. He presents this grain offering because he is suspicious of his wife and because he wants to know whether she has done what is wrong. So, he must not put olive oil or incense on the barley flour.*

ULT **And he shall bring her offering upon her**
UST He must also take … to present {to the priest} on her behalf

Yahweh is using **bring her offering upon her** as a common expression of his culture to mean "bring the offering for her." If this phrase does not have that meaning in your language, you could use a comparable expression from your language that does have that meaning, or you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [And he shall bring the offering for her]
Support Reference: Idiom

ULT **the tenth of the ephah**
UST about two liters

This **ephah** was equivalent to 22 liters or nearly two thirds of a bushel. If it would be helpful to your readers, you could express this in terms of modern measurements, either in the text or in a footnote. Alternate translation: [about 2.2 liters] or [about two thirds of a bushel]
Support Reference: Biblical Volume

ULT **the tenth**
UST about two liters

A **tenth** means one part out of ten equal parts. Alternate translation: [one-tenth]
Support Reference: Fractions

ULT **of flour of barley**
UST of barley flour

Yahweh is using the possessive form to describe **flour** that is made from **barley**. If a speaker of your language would not use the possessive form for this, you could express this idea in another way. Alternate translation: [flour made with barley]
Support Reference: Possession

ULT **He shall not pour oil on it, and he shall not put frankincense on it, for it {is} a grain offering of jealousy, a grain offering of memorial causing iniquity to be remembered**
UST He presents this grain offering because he is suspicious {of his wife} and because he wants to know whether she has done what is wrong. So, he must not put olive oil or incense on the barley flour

If it would be more natural in your language, you could reverse the order of these phrases, since the second phrase gives the reason for the first phrase. The phrase **it is a grain offering of jealousy, a grain offering of memorial causing iniquity to be remembered** gives the reason why **he shall not pour oil on it, and he shall not put frankincense on it**. Alternate translation: [It is a grain offering of jealousy, a grain offering of memorial causing iniquity to be remembered, so he shall not pour oil on it, and he shall not put frankincense on it]
Support Reference: Connect — Reason-and-Result Relationship

ULT **a grain offering of jealousy, a grain offering of memorial causing iniquity to be remembered**
UST this grain offering … he is suspicious {of his wife} and because he wants to know whether she has done what is wrong

If your language does not use abstract nouns for the ideas of **jealousy**, **memorial**, and **iniquity**, you could express the same ideas in other ways. Alternate translation: [a grain offering of a jealous husband, a grain offering that reminds a person and that causes any bad thing the person did to be remembered]
Support Reference: Abstract Nouns

ULT **a grain offering of jealousy, a grain offering of memorial**
UST this grain offering … he is suspicious {of his wife} and because he wants to know whether she has done what is wrong

Yahweh is using the possessive form to describe a **grain offering** that is characterized by **jealousy** and serves as a **memorial**. If a speaker of your language would not use the possessive form for this, you could express this idea in another way. Alternate translation: [a grain offering offered because of jealousy and to make a memorial]
Support Reference: Possession

ULT **causing iniquity to be remembered**
UST and because he wants to know whether she has done what is wrong

The expression **to be remembered** is a passive verbal form. If your language would not use that form, you could express the idea in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: [causing people to remember iniquity]
Support Reference: Active or Passive

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
priest	priest
offering	to present to the priest
tenth	about two liters
barley	barley
oil	oil
frankincense	or incense
grain offering	grain offering
jealousy	he is suspicious of his wife
memorial	and because he wants to know whether she has done what is wrong
iniquity	and because he wants to know whether she has done what is wrong

Numbers 5:16

ULT	UST
And the priest shall present her, and he shall stand her to the face of Yahweh.	*Then the priest must lead her to the sacred tent and make her stand in front of Yahweh.*

ULT **And the priest shall present her**

UST Then the priest must lead her to the sacred tent

The implication is that the priest presents the woman at the altar to have her stand before Yahweh for judgment. You could include this information if that would be helpful to your readers. Alternate translation: [And the priest shall have her come near the altar]

Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

ULT **to the face of Yahweh**

UST in front of Yahweh

Here, **to the face of** represents being in front of Yahweh. If it would be helpful in your language, you could use an equivalent expression or plain language. Alternate translation: [before Yahweh]

Support Reference: Metonymy

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
priest	priest
Yahweh	Yahweh

Numbers 5:17

ULT	UST
And the priest shall take holy water in a vessel of clay, and the priest shall take from the dust that is on the floor of the Dwelling, and he shall put it to the water.	*The priest must fill a clay container with sacred water and then put some dust from the ground inside the sacred tent into that water.*

ULT **And the priest shall take holy water in a vessel of clay**
UST The priest must fill a clay container with sacred water

The implication is that the priest must first get water that was set apart for sacred use and then put it in a clay pot. You could include this information if that would be helpful to your readers. Alternate translation: [And the priest shall fill a vessel of clay with holy water]
Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

ULT **and the priest shall take from the dust**
UST and then put some dust from the ground

Yahweh is using **take from the dust** as a common expression of his culture to mean "take some of the dust." If this phrase does not have that meaning in your language, you could use a comparable expression from your language that does have that meaning, or you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [and the priest shall take some of the dust]
Support Reference: Idiom

ULT **and he shall put {it} to the water**
UST and then put … into that water

Here, Yahweh could mean that the priest should: (1) mix the dust in with the water. Alternate translation: [and he shall mix it into the water]; or (2) pour the dust on top of the water. Alternate translation: [and he shall pour it onto the water]
Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
priest	priest
holy	sacred
of the Dwelling	inside the sacred tent

Numbers 5:18

ULT	UST
And the priest shall stand the woman to the face of Yahweh, and he shall loose the head of the woman, and he shall put on her palm the grain offering of memorial. It is a grain offering of jealousy. And in the hand of the priest shall be the water of bitterness that brings a curse.	*The priest must make the woman stand in front of Yahweh, let her hair down, and have her hold the grain offering. Her husband presents this grain offering because he wants to know whether his wife has done what is wrong and because he is suspicious of her. The priest must hold the clay container with the water. Yahweh will use this water to curse the wife who has done what is wrong and make bad things happen to her.*

ULT **to the face of Yahweh**
UST in front of Yahweh

Here, **to the face of** represents being in front of Yahweh. If it would be helpful in your language, you could use an equivalent expression or plain language. Alternate translation: [before Yahweh]
Support Reference: Metonymy

ULT **and he shall loose the head of the woman**
UST let her hair down

Here, the word **head** could refer to: (1) the woman's hair. In this case, the priest lets down her hair. Alternate translation: [and he shall let the woman's hair down]; or (2) the woman's head, which has hair on it. In this case, the priest uncovers the woman's head and her hair. Alternate translation: [and he shall uncover the head of the woman]
Support Reference: Synecdoche

ULT **and he shall put on her palm**
UST and have her hold

Yahweh is using **put on her palm** as a common expression of his culture to mean "hand to her" or "give to her to hold." If this phrase does not have that meaning in your language, you could use a comparable expression from your language that does have that meaning, or you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [and he shall hand her]
Support Reference: Idiom

ULT **the grain offering of memorial. It {is} a grain offering of jealousy**
UST the grain offering. {Her husband presents} this grain offering because he wants to know {whether his wife has done what is wrong} and because he is suspicious of her

See how you translated the phrases **grain offering of memorial** and **grain offering of jealousy** in 5:15.
Support Reference: Abstract Nouns

> ULT **the water of bitterness**
> UST Yahweh will use this water … and make bad things happen to her

Here, Yahweh could be using the possessive form to indicate that the **water**: (1) causes **bitterness** in the woman's life. Alternate translation: [the water that causes a bitter life]; or (2) tastes bitter. Alternate translation: [the water that tastes bitter]

Support Reference: Possession

> ULT **the water of bitterness**
> UST Yahweh will use this water … and make bad things happen to her

If your language does not use an abstract noun for the idea of **bitterness**, you could express the same idea in another way. Alternate translation: [the water that makes bitter]

Support Reference: Abstract Nouns

> ULT **the water**
> UST Yahweh will use this water … and make bad things happen to her

Here, **the water** represents the vessel containing the water that has been prepared with dust from the tabernacle floor. If it would be helpful in your language, you could use an equivalent expression or plain language. Alternate translation: [the vessel full of the water]

Support Reference: Metonymy

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
priest	priest
Yahweh	Yahweh
grain offering	grain offering
memorial	the grain offering
jealousy	and because he is suspicious of her
priest	priest
curse	curse

Numbers 5:19

ULT	UST
And the priest shall make her swear, and he shall say to the woman, "If a man did not lie with you, and if you did not turn aside to uncleanness under your husband, be free from this water of bitterness that brings a curse.	*The priest must have the woman take an oath. Then, he must tell her, 'Suppose that another man has not had sex with you and that you have been loyal to your husband and have not become impure. In that case, Yahweh will not use this water to curse you and make bad things happen to you.*

ULT **a man did not lie with you**
UST another man has not had sex with you

The priest is referring to sexual relations in a polite way by using the phrase **lie with you**. Depending on what is helpful in your language, you could use a polite way of referring to this in your language, or you could state this plainly. Alternate translation: [a man did not have sexual relations with you] or [a man did not have intimate relations with you]

Support Reference: Euphemism

ULT **a man**
UST another man

By **a man**, Yahweh means a man who is not the woman's husband. You could indicate this explicitly in your translation if that would be helpful to your readers. Alternate translation: [a man who is not your husband]

Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

ULT **you did not turn aside to uncleanness**
UST you have been loyal to your husband

Here, Yahweh is speaking of sexual unfaithfulness as if it were **turning aside to uncleanness**. If it would be helpful in your language, you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [you did not do what is unclean and wrong]

Support Reference: Metaphor

ULT **to uncleanness**
UST you have been loyal to your husband

If your language does not use an abstract noun for the idea of **uncleanness**, you could express the same idea in another way. Alternate translation: [to do what is unclean]

Support Reference: Abstract Nouns

ULT **under your husband**
UST you have been loyal to your husband

Here, Yahweh could be using the phrase **under your husband** to indicate that: (1) the woman was married to her **husband** at the time. Alternate translation: [while married to your husband]; or (2) the uncleanness would have been committed with someone besides her **husband**. Alternate translation: [instead of your husband]

Support Reference: Metaphor

> ULT **be free from this water**
> UST and have not become impure. In that case, {Yahweh} will not {use} this water to curse {you} and make bad things happen to you

Here, Yahweh is speaking as if this **water** were a captor from whom the woman could be **free**. If it would be helpful in your language, you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [be unaffected by this water]

Support Reference: Metaphor

> ULT **be free**
> UST and have not become impure

The priest is using the imperative form **be free** to state a promise rather than to give a command. He is telling the woman that if she has not committed adultery, she will not suffer any harm from drinking the water that brings a curse. If your language does not use an imperative form to express a promise, you could use a statement about the future. Alternate translation: [you will be free]

Support Reference: Imperatives — Other Uses

> ULT **from this water of bitterness that brings a curse**
> UST In that case, {Yahweh} will not {use} this water to curse {you} and make bad things happen to you

See how you translated this phrase in 5:18.

Support Reference: Possession

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
priest	priest
swear	oath
free	and have not become impure
curse	and make bad things happen to you

Numbers 5:19-20

> ULT **and he shall say to the woman, “If a man did not lie with you, and if you did not turn aside to uncleanness under your husband, be free from this water of bitterness that brings a curse. But you, if you did turn aside under your husband, and if you were made unclean and a man gave his lying in you besides your husband**
> UST Then, he must tell her, ‘Suppose that {another} man has not had sex with you and that you have been loyal to your husband and have not become impure. In that case, {Yahweh} will not {use} this water to curse {you} and make bad things happen to you. However, suppose that you have not been loyal to your husband and have become impure. Suppose that a man who is not your husband has had sex with you

If it would be clearer in your language, you could translate this so that there is not a quotation within a quotation. Alternate translation: [and he shall tell the woman that if a man did not lie with her, and if she did not turn aside to uncleanness under her husband, she shall be free from the water of bitterness that brings a curse. And he will also tell that if she did turn aside under her husband, and if she was made unclean and a man gave his lying in her besides her husband,]

Support Reference: Quotes within Quotes

Numbers 5:20

ULT	UST
But you, if you did turn aside under your husband, and if you were made unclean and a man gave his lying in you besides your husband,"	*However, suppose that you have not been loyal to your husband and have become impure. Suppose that a man who is not your husband has had sex with you.'*

ULT **you did turn aside**
UST have not been loyal to your husband

Here, Yahweh is speaking of unfaithfulness to one's husband as if it were physically **turning aside** from the right path. See how you translated the similar phrase in 5:12. If it would be helpful in your language, you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [you did what was wrong]
Support Reference: Metaphor

ULT **under your husband**
UST have not been loyal to your husband

See how you translated this phrase in 5:19.
Support Reference: Metaphor

ULT **you were made unclean**
UST have become impure

The expression **were made unclean** is a passive verbal form. If your language would not use that form, you could express the idea in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: [you made yourself unclean]
Support Reference: Active or Passive

ULT **and a man gave his lying in you**
UST Suppose that a man … has had sex with you

Yahweh is referring to sexual relations in a polite way by using the phrase **gave his lying in you**. Depending on what is helpful in your language, you could use a polite way of referring to this in your language, or you could state this plainly. Alternate translation: [a man had sexual relations with you] or [a man had intimate relations with you]
Support Reference: Euphemism

Numbers 5:21

ULT	UST
and the priest shall make the woman swear with the oath of the curse. And the priest shall say to the woman, "Yahweh will give you to a curse and to an oath in the midst of your people when Yahweh gives your thigh falling and your belly swelling.	*Then the priest must have the woman speak the cursing words that go with the oath. Then he must say to her, 'In that case, Yahweh will make you experience what the cursing words that go with the oath indicate. All your fellow Israelites will know this when Yahweh makes your genitals and womb sick.*

ULT **and the priest shall make the woman swear with the oath of**

UST Then the priest must have the woman speak … that go with the oath

The implication is that the priest would speak the oath and then pause while the woman repeated the words after him. You could include this information if that would be helpful to your readers. Alternate translation: [and the priest shall stop speaking and shall make the woman swear]

Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

ULT **swear with the oath of the curse**

UST the cursing words that go with the oath

Yahweh is using the possessive form to describe an **oath** that contains **the curse**. If a speaker of your language would not use the possessive form for this, you could express this idea in another way. Alternate translation: [the curse section of the oath]

Support Reference: Possession

ULT **Yahweh will give you to a curse and to an oath in the midst of your people**

UST In that case, Yahweh will make you experience what the cursing words that go with the oath indicate. All your fellow {Israelites} will know this

Here, Yahweh is speaking as if Yahweh were actually **giving** the woman to a **curse** and an **oath**. This means that Yahweh will bring about the consequences of the curse she speaks. If it would be helpful in your language, you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [Yahweh will make you suffer among your people what you swore in the curse and in the oath]

Support Reference: Metaphor

ULT **to a curse and to an oath**

UST what the cursing words that go with the oath indicate

The phrase **curse and oath** expresses a single idea. The word **oath** tells more about **curse**. If it would be more natural in your language, you could express this meaning in a different way. Alternate translation: [to a curse in an oath]

Support Reference: Hendiadys

ULT **when Yahweh gives your thigh falling and your belly swelling**
UST when Yahweh makes your genitals and womb sick

Here the priest refers to general sickness or failure of female reproductive organs. These phrases are general and probably do not refer to one specific type of disease or failure. However, it is clear that the sickness or failure will prevent the conception and birth of children. Consider how to make this clear to your readers. Alternate translation: [when Yahweh gives your reproductive organs failure] or [when Yahweh makes you unable to bear children]
Support Reference: Translate Unknowns

ULT **your thigh**
UST your genitals

Yahweh is referring to sexual organs in a polite way by using the phrase **thigh**. Depending on what is helpful in your language, you could use a polite way of referring to this in your language, or you could state this plainly. Alternate translation: [your genital organs]
Support Reference: Euphemism

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
priest	priest
swear	oath
curse	cursing
Yahweh	Yahweh

Numbers 5:21-22

> ULT **And the priest shall say to the woman, “Yahweh will give you to a curse and to an oath in the midst of your people when Yahweh gives your thigh falling and your belly swelling. And this water that brings a curse will go in your insides to cause belly to swell and to cause thigh to fall**
> UST Then he must say to her, ‘{In that case,} Yahweh will make you experience what the cursing words that go with the oath indicate. All your fellow {Israelites} will know this when Yahweh makes your genitals and womb sick. {Yahweh} will {use} this water to curse {you} when you drink it. It will make your genitals and womb sick

If it would be clearer in your language, you could translate this so that there is not a quotation within a quotation. Alternate translation: [And the priest shall tell the woman that Yahweh will give her to a curse and to an oath in the midst of her people when Yahweh gives her thigh falling and her belly swelling. He will tell her that this water that brings a curse will go in her insides to cause belly to swell and to cause thigh to fall.]

Support Reference: Quotes within Quotes

Numbers 5:22

ULT	UST
And this water that brings a curse will go in your insides to cause belly to swell and to cause thigh to fall.” And the woman shall say, “Amen, amen.”	*Yahweh will use this water to curse you when you drink it. It will make your genitals and womb sick.’ Then the woman must say, ‘May it be so.’*

ULT **to cause belly to swell and to cause thigh to fall**
UST It will make your genitals and womb sick

See how you translated the similar phrases in 5:21.
Support Reference: Translate Unknowns

ULT **And the woman shall say, “Amen, amen**
UST Then the woman must say, ‘May it be so

If it would be clearer in your language, you could translate this so that there is not a quotation within a quotation. Alternate translation: [And the woman shall say amen twice.]
Support Reference: Quotes within Quotes

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
curse	curse
Amen	May it be so

Numbers 5:23

ULT	UST
And the priest shall write these curses in the book, and he shall wipe them out into the water of bitterness.	*The priest must write down the cursing words on a scroll. Then, he must wash the ink into the water which Yahweh will use to make bad things happen to her.*

ULT **these curses**
UST the cursing words

The implication is that **these curses** refers to the curse oath that the woman swore in 5:21. You could include this information if that would be helpful to your readers. Alternate translation: [the curses the woman spoke]
Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

ULT **in the book**
UST on a scroll

The priest is not referring to a specific **book**. He means a scroll or other writing material in general. If it would be helpful to your readers, you could use an expression that would be more natural in your language. Alternate translation: [in a book]
Support Reference: Generic Noun Phrases

ULT **and he shall wipe {them} out into the water of bitterness**
UST Then, he must wash the ink into the water {which Yahweh will use} to make bad things happen to her

The implication is that the priest will write the curses on a book or scroll and then wash off the ink into the water of bitterness so that the water contains the written curses. You could include this information if that would be helpful to your readers. Alternate translation: [and he shall use the water of bitterness to wash the words of the curses off the book into the water]
Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

ULT **into the water of bitterness**
UST into the water {which Yahweh will use} to make bad things happen to her

See how you translated the similar phrase in 5:18.
Support Reference: Possession

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
priest	priest
curses	cursing

Numbers 5:24

ULT	UST
And he shall make the woman drink the water of bitterness that brings a curse, and the water that brings a curse to bitterness will go in her.	*Then, he must have the woman drink the water that Yahweh will use to curse the wife who has done what is wrong and make bad things happen to her. She must swallow it.*

ULT **the water of bitterness that brings a curse**
UST the water {that Yahweh will use} to curse {the wife who has done what is wrong} and make bad things happen to her

See how you translated the similar phrase in 5:18.
Support Reference: Possession

ULT **the water that brings a curse to bitterness**
UST it

If your language does not use an abstract noun for the idea of **bitterness**, you could express the same idea in another way. This phrase is similar to the one earlier in the verse, so see how you translated the word **bitterness** there. Alternate translation: [the water that brings a curse and so makes bitter]
Support Reference: Abstract Nouns

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
curse	and make bad things happen to her

Numbers 5:25

ULT	UST
And the priest shall take from the hand of the woman the grain offering of jealousy, and he shall raise the grain offering to the face of Yahweh, and he shall present it to the altar.	*The priest must take from the woman the grain offering that her husband presented because he was suspicious of her. He must hold up this grain offering in Yahweh's presence and take it to the altar.*

ULT **And the priest shall take**
UST The priest must take

In 5:25–27, Yahweh explains the process by which the priest will have the woman drink the water, which is summarized in 5:24. If it would be helpful in your language, you could indicate that this is an explanation, not the next action in sequence. Alternate translation: [Specifically, the priest shall take] or [Before he has her drink the water, the priest shall take]
Support Reference: Connect — Background Information

ULT **the grain offering of jealousy**
UST the grain offering {that her husband presented} because he was suspicious of her

See how you translated this phrase in 5:15.
Support Reference: Abstract Nouns

ULT **and he shall raise the grain offering to the face of Yahweh**
UST He must hold up this grain offering in Yahweh's presence

The **raising** of the grain offering was a symbolic action by which the priest showed that he was presenting the offering to Yahweh. If it would be helpful to your readers, you could explain the significance of this action in the text of your translation or in a footnote. Alternate translation: [and he shall lift up the grain offering to the face of Yahweh to dedicate it to him]
Support Reference: Symbolic Action

ULT **to the face of Yahweh**
UST in Yahweh's presence

Here, **to the face of** represents being in front of Yahweh. If it would be helpful in your language, you could use an equivalent expression or plain language. Alternate translation: [before Yahweh]
Support Reference: Metonymy

ULT **and he shall present it to the altar**
UST and take it to the altar

Yahweh is using **present it to the altar** as a common expression of his culture to mean "bring it near to the altar." If this phrase does not have that meaning in your language, you could use a comparable expression from your language that does have that meaning, or you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [and he shall bring it near the altar]
Support Reference: Idiom

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
priest	priest
grain offering	grain offering
jealousy	that her husband presented because he was suspicious of her
Yahweh	Yahweh's
altar	altar

Numbers 5:26

ULT	UST
And the priest shall grab from the grain offering its memorial portion and he shall cause it to become smoke on the altar. And after he shall make the woman drink the water.	*The priest must scoop out a handful from the grain offering and burn it on the altar in a way that causes smoke to go up. After that, he must have the woman drink the water.*

ULT its memorial portion

UST the grain offering

The implication is the priest presented only a handful the grain offering to represent the entire offering before God and to serve as a memorial or reminder. You could include this information if that would be helpful to your readers. Alternate translation: [a handful, which is its memorial portion,]

Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
priest	priest
grain offering	grain offering
memorial	the grain offering
altar	altar

Numbers 5:27

ULT	UST
And he shall make her drink the water. And it will happen, if she was made unclean and was unfaithful in unfaithfulness against her husband, then the water that brings a curse to bitterness will go in her, and her belly will swell and her thigh will fall, and the woman will become a curse in the midst of her people.	*Suppose that the woman became impure and was not loyal to her husband. In that case, when the priest has her drink the water that Yahweh will use to curse the wife who has done what is wrong and make bad things happen to her, her genitals and womb will become sick. She will experience what the cursing words indicated, and all her fellow Israelites will know.*

ULT **And he shall make her drink the water**
UST when the priest has her drink the water

It might seem that the expression **And he shall make her drink the water** contains extra information that would not be natural to express in your language since this was just stated in 5:26. If so, you can omit it.
Support Reference: Making Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information Explicit

ULT **she was made unclean and was unfaithful {in} unfaithfulness against her husband**
UST the woman became impure and was not loyal to her husband

If it would be more natural in your language, you could reverse the order of these phrases, since **she was made unclean** describes the result and **was unfaithful in unfaithfulness against her husband** gives the reason for that result. Alternate translation: [she was unfaithful in unfaithfulness against her husband and so was made unclean]
Support Reference: Connect — Reason-and-Result Relationship

ULT **and was unfaithful {in} unfaithfulness against her husband**
UST and was not loyal to her husband

See how you translated the similar phrase in 5:12.
Support Reference: Poetry

ULT **she was made unclean**
UST the woman became impure

The expression **was made unclean** is a passive verbal form. If your language would not use that form, you could express the idea in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: [she made herself unclean]
Support Reference: Active or Passive

ULT **then the water that brings a curse to bitterness will go in her**
UST that Yahweh will use to curse {the wife who has done what is wrong} and make bad things happen to her

See how you translated this clause in 5:24.
Support Reference: Possession

ULT **and her belly will swell and her thigh will fall**
UST her genitals and womb will become sick

See how you translated the similar phrases in 5:21.
Support Reference: Translate Unknowns

ULT **and the woman will become a curse in the midst of her people**
UST She will experience what the cursing words indicated, and all her fellow Israelites will know

Here, Yahweh is speaking as if the woman herself were actually **a curse**. This refers to how she will experience the bad things in the **curse**, and **her people** will see this. If it would be helpful in your language, you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [the woman will suffer among her people what she swore in the curse]
Support Reference: Metaphor

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
unfaithful	and was not loyal
unfaithfulness	and was not loyal
curse	curse

Numbers 5:28

ULT	UST
And if the woman was not made unclean, and she is clean, then she will be free, and she will be sown with seed.	*However, suppose that she did not become impure. In that case, she is pure, and none of these bad things will happen to her. She will be able to bear children.*

ULT **the woman was not made unclean, and she {is} clean**
UST she did not become impure. In that case, she is pure

The phrases **the woman was not made unclean** and **she is clean** mean the same thing. For emphasis, Yahweh is saying it first negatively and then positively. If a speaker of your language would not use repetition like this, in your translation you can convey the emphasis in a different way. Alternate translation: [the woman is completely clean]
Support Reference: Parallelism

ULT **the woman was not made unclean**
UST she did not become impure

The expression **was not made unclean** is a passive verbal form. If your language would not use that form, you could express the idea in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: [the woman did not make herself unclean]
Support Reference: Active or Passive

ULT **then she will be free**
UST and none {of these bad things} will happen to her

Here, the woman could be **free**: (1) from the negative affects of the water and the curse. This is what **free** explicitly refers to in 5:19. Alternate translation: [then she will be free of the water and the curse]; or (2) from any declaration of guilt. Alternate translation: [then she will be free of guilt]
Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

ULT **and she will be sown {with} seed**
UST She will be able to bear children

Yahweh is using a construction in which a verb and its object come from the same root. You may be able to use the same construction in your language to express the meaning here. Alternatively, your language may have another way of saying this. Alternate translation: [and she will be sown successfully]
Support Reference: Poetry

ULT **and she will be sown {with} seed**
UST She will be able to bear children

Here, Yahweh is speaking as if a woman's ability to have children were the same as if someone were planting **seed** in a field. If it would be helpful in your language, you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [and she will be able to have children]
Support Reference: Metaphor

> ULT **and she will be sown {with} seed**
> UST She will be able to bear children

The expression **will be sown** is a passive verbal form. If your language would not use that form, you could express the idea in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. If you need to say who does the action, the context indicates that it is her husband. Alternate translation: [and her husband will sow her with seed]

Support Reference: Active or Passive

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
free	and none {of these bad things} will happen to her
seed	children

Numbers 5:29

ULT	UST
This is the law of jealousy when a woman turns aside under her husband and is made unclean,	*These instructions apply when a husband is suspicious of his wife. Specifically, they apply when a wife is not loyal to her husband and becomes impure*

ULT **the law of jealousy**
UST instructions apply when {a husband} is suspicious of his wife

Yahweh is using the possessive form to describe a **law** that is followed when there is **jealousy**. If a speaker of your language would not use the possessive form for this, you could express this idea in another way. Alternate translation: [the law for dealing with jealousy]
Support Reference: Possession

ULT **the law of jealousy**
UST instructions apply when {a husband} is suspicious of his wife

If your language does not use an abstract noun for the idea of **jealousy**, you could express the same idea in another way. Alternate translation: [the law for when a husband is jealous]
Support Reference: Abstract Nouns

ULT **when a woman turns aside**
UST Specifically, {they apply} when a wife is not loyal

Here, Yahweh is speaking of a wife who is unfaithful to her husband as if she had physically **turned aside** from him. If it would be helpful in your language, you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [when a woman does what is wrong]
Support Reference: Metaphor

ULT **under her husband**
UST to her husband

See how you translated this phrase in 5:19.
Support Reference: Metaphor

ULT **and is made unclean**
UST and becomes impure

The expression **is made unclean** is a passive verbal form. If your language would not use that form, you could express the idea in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: [and makes herself unclean]
Support Reference: Active or Passive

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
law	instructions
jealousy	apply when {a husband} is suspicious of his wife

Numbers 5:30

ULT	UST
or a man, when a spirit of jealousy passes over on him and he is jealous of his wife, then he shall stand the woman to the face of Yahweh, and the priest shall do all this law to her.	*or when a husband becomes suspicious that another man has had sex with his wife. Then, the husband must make his wife stand in Yahweh's presence, and the priest must do to her everything that these instructions require.*

ULT **a spirit of jealousy passes over on him and he is jealous of his wife**
UST when … becomes suspicious that another man has had sex with his wife

See how you translated the same sentence in 5:14.
Support Reference: Idiom

ULT **to the face of Yahweh**
UST in Yahweh's presence

Here, **to the face of** represents being in front of Yahweh. If it would be helpful in your language, you could use an equivalent expression or plain language. Alternate translation: [before Yahweh]
Support Reference: Metonymy

ULT **all this law**
UST everything that these instructions require

Here, **all this law** represents the specific instructions given for the test of jealousy. If it would be helpful in your language, you could use an equivalent expression or plain language. Alternate translation: [everything that this law states]
Support Reference: Metonymy

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
spirit	when … becomes suspicious that another man has had sex with his wife
jealousy	when … becomes suspicious that another man has had sex with his wife
jealous	when … becomes suspicious that another man has had sex with his wife
Yahweh	Yahweh's
priest	priest
law	that … instructions require

Numbers 5:31

ULT	UST
And the man will be free from iniquity, and this woman will lift up her iniquity.’”	*Then, Yahweh will not punish any husband who brings his wife to the priest in this way, but Yahweh will punish any wife who has done what is wrong.”*

ULT **will lift up her iniquity**
UST Yahweh will punish

Here, Yahweh speaks of being punished for **iniquity** as if it were lifting up that **iniquity**. If this meaning would not be clear in your language, you could use a comparable expression or you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [will bear her iniquity] or [will be punished for her iniquity]
Support Reference: Metaphor

ULT **from iniquity … her iniquity**
UST Then, {Yahweh} will not punish … Yahweh will punish

If your language does not use an abstract noun for the ideas of **iniquity**, you could express the same idea in another way. Alternate translation: [from doing wrong … what she did wrong]
Support Reference: Abstract Nouns

ULT **from iniquity**
UST Then, {Yahweh} will not punish

Here, the word **iniquity** could refer to: (1) punishment because of **iniquity**. Alternate translation: [from punishment]; or (2) guilt because of **iniquity**. Alternate translation: [from guilt]
Support Reference: Metonymy

ULT **and this woman**
UST but … any wife who has done what is wrong

By **this woman**, Yahweh means the woman who has committed adultery. You could indicate this explicitly in your translation if that would be helpful to your readers. Alternate translation: [and the woman who is guilty]
Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
free	Then, {Yahweh} will not punish
iniquity	Then, {Yahweh} will not punish
iniquity	Yahweh will punish

Numbers 6

Numbers 6 Introduction

Numbers 6 Chapter Introduction

Structure and Formatting

This chapter outlines laws for Nazirites (people who dedicate themselves to Yahweh in a special way and for a specific period of time). These laws indicate what the Nazirites must abstain from, what to do if they become unclean before the end of their time as Nazirites, and the sacrifices they should offer once they complete their time as Nazirites. The chapter ends with a blessing that the priests pronounce over the Israelites.

1. Yahweh gives instructions for the Nazirite vow (1–21)
2. Yahweh instructs Aaron and his sons to bless Israel (22–27)

Religious and Cultural Concepts in This Chapter

Nazirite vow

The term “Nazirite” refers to someone who has vowed to separate himself or herself to Yahweh for a period of time. This period of time could be the person’s entire life, as in the case of Samson. Nazirites had to avoid three things: (1) eating or drinking anything produced from grapes or with any alcoholic content, (2) cutting their hair, (3) coming into contact with dead bodies. If any Nazirite came into contact with a dead body, he or she had to offer sacrifices and restart the time of separation. Once the time was complete, each Nazirite had to shave off his or her hair and offer a specific set of sacrifices. He or she could also offer more than what was required.

Priestly blessing

In 6:24–26, Yahweh provides a blessing that the priests should speak to the Israelites. This blessing asks Yahweh to protect, care for, and give peace to the Israelites. Yahweh then promises that he will indeed carry out what this blessing asks. Consider how you might express a blessing in your language.

Translation Issues in This Chapter

Gender and number

In 6:2, Yahweh clearly states that a Nazirite can be a man or a woman. However, the rest of the chapter uses masculine and singular language to refer to each Nazirite. In Moses’ language, masculine and singular language could refer generically to anyone. If masculine and singular language would not refer generically to anyone in your language, consider how you might naturally include anyone who could be a Nazirite. The UST often models how to use plural forms in many verses. You could also consider using the second person to address Nazirites directly in these verses.

The “separation”

Throughout this chapter, Yahweh refers to Nazirites’ “separation,” which refers to the way in which Nazirites avoid certain things as they dedicate themselves to Yahweh. Yahweh uses the word “separation” to refer to the action of separating and to the long hair that they grow during this time. The notes on specific verses will indicate which meaning of “separation” is in view.

Numbers 6:1

ULT	UST
And Yahweh spoke to Moses, saying,	*Yahweh told Moses,*

ULT **saying**
UST told

Here and throughout the chapter, the word **saying** introduces a direct quotation. See how you translated **saying** in 1:1.
Support Reference: Quotations and Quote Margins

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Yahweh	Yahweh
Moses	Moses

Numbers 6:2

ULT	UST
"Speak to the sons of Israel and say to them, 'A man or a woman, when he does something wonderful to vow a vow of a Nazirite to make separate to Yahweh,	*"Tell the Israelites that any person, whether man or woman, may want to make a solemn promise to be a Nazirite by dedicating himself or herself to Yahweh in a special way.*

ULT **Speak to the sons of Israel and say to them, 'A man or a woman**
UST Tell the Israelites that any person, whether man or woman

If it would be clearer in your language, you could translate this so that there is not a quotation within a quotation. Alternate translation: [Speak to the sons of Israel and say to them that a man or a woman]
Support Reference: Quotes within Quotes

ULT **and say to them**
UST that

The phrase **and say to them** introduces a direct quotation. In your translation, use a natural way of introducing direct quotations in your language. It may not be necessary to represent this phrase explicitly.
Support Reference: Quotations and Quote Margins

ULT **when he does something wonderful**
UST may want to make a solemn promise … in a special way

Here and in 6:3–21, the masculine language refers generically to men or women, as the phrase "A man or a woman" earlier in this verse shows. See the chapter introduction for more information. If it would be helpful to your readers, you could use language in your translation that is clearly inclusive of both men and women. Alternate translation: [when he or she does something wonderful]
Support Reference: When Masculine Words Include Women

ULT **when he does something wonderful to vow a vow**
UST may want to make a solemn promise … in a special way

The implication is that when someone makes a vow to become a Nazirite, they are making a serious and special commitment to Yahweh. You could include this information if that would be helpful to your readers. Alternate translation: [when he makes a special vow, the vow of]
Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

ULT **to vow a vow of a Nazirite**
UST may want to make a solemn promise to be a Nazirite … in a special way

Yahweh is using a construction in which a verb and its object come from the same root. You may be able to use the same construction in your language to express the meaning here. Alternatively, your language may have another way of saying this. Alternate translation: [to vow to be]
Support Reference: Poetry

ULT **to make separate to Yahweh**
UST by dedicating himself or herself to Yahweh

The phrase **to make separate to Yahweh** is a common expression of this culture that means "to dedicate oneself to Yahweh" or "to set oneself apart for service to Yahweh." If this phrase does not have that meaning in your language, you could use a comparable expression from your language that does have that meaning, or you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [to set himself apart for Yahweh]

Support Reference: Idiom

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Israel	Israelites
he does something wonderful	may want to make a solemn promise … in a special way
vow	may want to make a solemn promise … in a special way
vow	may want to make a solemn promise … in a special way
Nazirite	Nazirite
Yahweh	Yahweh

Numbers 6:3

ULT	UST
he shall make separate from wine and intoxicating drink. He shall not drink the vinegar of wine and the vinegar of intoxicating drink, and he shall not drink all the juice of grapes, and he shall not eat fresh and dried grapes.	*All people who do so must completely avoid wine and any other alcoholic drink. They must not drink wine vinegar, any other kind of alcoholic vinegar, or grape juice. Also, they must not eat grapes or raisins.*

ULT **he shall make separate from wine**
UST All people who do so must completely avoid wine

The phrase **make separate from** is a common expression of his culture to mean "completely avoid" or "abstain from." If this phrase does not have that meaning in your language, you could use a comparable expression from your language that does have that meaning, or you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [he shall completely avoid]
Support Reference: Idiom

ULT **and intoxicating drink … intoxicating drink**
UST and any other alcoholic drink … any other kind of alcoholic vinegar

The term **intoxicating drink** refers to any alcoholic beverage made from grains or other substances. If your readers would not be familiar with what intoxicating drink is, you could use a more general term or explain it in a footnote. Alternate translation: [and any drink with alcohol in it … any drink with alcohol in it]
Support Reference: Translate Unknowns

ULT **the vinegar of wine and the vinegar of intoxicating drink**
UST wine vinegar, any other kind of alcoholic vinegar

Yahweh is using the possessive form to describe **vinegar** that is made from **wine** or **intoxicating drink**. If a speaker of your language would not use the possessive form for this, you could express this idea in another way. Alternate translation: [vinegar made from wine and vinegar made from intoxicating drink]
Support Reference: Possession

ULT **the vinegar of wine and the vinegar of intoxicating drink**
UST wine vinegar, any other kind of alcoholic vinegar

Here, **vinegar** is a kind of sour liquid made from fermented wine or other fermented drinks. If your readers would not be familiar with what vinegar is, you could use a more general term or explain it in a footnote. Alternate translation: [sour juice of … sour juice of]
Support Reference: Translate Unknowns

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
wine	wine
and intoxicating drink	and any other alcoholic drink
wine	wine
grapes	grape
dried	or raisins
grapes	grapes

Numbers 6:4

ULT	UST
All the days of his separation, he shall not eat from all that is made from the vine of the wine, from seeds and up to skin.	*While they are Nazirites, they must not eat anything that people make out of any part of grapes, including the seeds and the skin.*

ULT **All the days of his separation**
UST While they are Nazirites

If your language does not use an abstract noun for the idea of **separation**, you could express the same idea in another way. Alternate translation: [All the days he is separate]
Support Reference: Abstract Nouns

ULT **from the vine of the wine**
UST out of any part of grapes

Yahweh is using the possessive form to describe a **vine** that is connected with **wine**. If a speaker of your language would not use the possessive form for this, you could express this idea in another way. Alternate translation: [from the vine from which wine is produced]
Support Reference: Possession

ULT **from the vine**
UST out of any part of grapes

Here, **vine** represents everything that comes from grape vines. If it would be helpful in your language, you could use an equivalent expression or plain language. Alternate translation: [from the grapes of the vine]
Support Reference: Metonymy

ULT **from all that is made**
UST anything that people make

The expression **is made** is a passive verbal form. If your language would not use that form, you could express the idea in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: [from all that anyone makes]
Support Reference: Active or Passive

ULT **from seeds and up to skin**
UST including the seeds and the skin

Yahweh is referring to all parts of a grape by naming two major components, **seeds** and **skin**. If it would be helpful in your language, you could use an equivalent expression or plain language. Alternate translation: [from any part of a grape]
Support Reference: Merism

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
vine	out of any part of grapes
wine	out of any part of grapes
seeds	seeds

Numbers 6:5

ULT	UST
All the days of the vow of his separation, a razor shall not pass over upon his head. Until the fulfilling of the days that he made separate to Yahweh, he shall be holy and shall make great the locks of the hair of his head.	*While they are Nazirites, they must not cut their hair. Instead, until they finish the time during which they dedicate themselves to Yahweh, they must remain sacred and let their hair grow long.*

ULT **the vow of his separation**
UST they are Nazirites

Yahweh is using the possessive form to describe a **vow** that is characterized by **separation**. If a speaker of your language would not use the possessive form for this, you could express this idea in another way. Alternate translation: [the vow in which he swore separation]
Support Reference: Possession

ULT **the vow of his separation**
UST they are Nazirites

If your language does not use an abstract noun for the idea of **separation**, you could express the same idea in another way. Alternate translation: [his vow to be separate]
Support Reference: Abstract Nouns

ULT **a razor**
UST they must not cut their hair

A **razor** is a kind of tool for cutting hair. If your readers would not be familiar with what a razor is, you could use the name of a similar thing that your readers would recognize, or you could use a more general term. Alternate translation: [a shaving tool]
Support Reference: Translate Unknowns

ULT **a razor shall not pass over upon his head**
UST they must not cut their hair

Yahweh is using **a razor shall not pass over upon his head** as a common expression of this culture to mean “he must not cut his hair.” If this phrase does not have that meaning in your language, you could use a comparable expression from your language that does have that meaning, or you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [a razor shall not be used on his head]
Support Reference: Idiom

ULT **upon his head**
UST they must not cut their hair

Here, **head** represents the hair on the head. If it would be helpful in your language, you could use an equivalent expression or plain language. Alternate translation: [the hair on his head]
Support Reference: Metonymy

ULT **that he made separate to Yahweh**
UST during which they dedicate themselves to Yahweh

Yahweh is using the phrase **made separate to Yahweh** as a common expression of his culture to mean “set himself apart for Yahweh” or “dedicated himself to Yahweh.” If this phrase does not have that meaning in your language, you could use a comparable expression from your language that does have that meaning, or you could state the meaning plainly. See how you translated the similar phrase in 6:2. Alternate translation: [that he set himself apart for Yahweh]
Support Reference: Idiom

ULT **and shall make great**
UST and let their hair grow long

The implication is that **shall make great** means to let the hair grow long. You could include this information if that would be helpful to your readers. Alternate translation: [and shall grow out]
Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

ULT **the locks of the hair of his head**
UST and let their hair grow long

Yahweh is using the possessive form to describe **locks** that are **the hair** that is on **his head**. If a speaker of your language would not use the possessive form for this, you could express this idea in another way. Alternate translation: [the hairs on his head]
Support Reference: Possession

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
vow	they are Nazirites
fulfilling	they finish
days	the time
Yahweh	Yahweh
holy	sacred

Numbers 6:6

ULT	UST
All the days of him making separate to Yahweh, he shall not go upon a person having died.	*While they are Nazirites, they must not be near a dead body.*

ULT **him making separate to Yahweh**
UST they are Nazirites

The phrase **making separate to Yahweh** is a common expression of this culture that means "dedicating oneself to Yahweh" or "setting oneself apart for Yahweh." If this phrase does not have that meaning in your language, you could use a comparable expression from your language that does have that meaning, or you could state the meaning plainly. See how you translated the similar phrase in 6:2. Alternate translation: [him setting himself apart for Yahweh]

Support Reference: Idiom

ULT **he shall not go upon a person having died**
UST they must not be near a dead body

Here, Yahweh is speaking of being close to a dead **person** as if one could literally **go upon** them. This refers to approaching a dead body. If it would be helpful in your language, you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [he shall not come close to a person having died]

Support Reference: Metaphor

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Yahweh	they are Nazirites

Numbers 6:7

ULT	UST
For his father and for his mother, for his brother and for his sister, he shall not make himself unclean for them in their death, because the separation of his God is upon his head.	*Even if their fathers, mothers, brothers, or sisters die, they must not be near their dead bodies. That would make them impure, and they must not become impure while they have the long hair that shows that they have dedicated themselves to God.*

ULT **For his father and for his mother, for his brother and for his sister, he shall not make himself unclean for them in their death, because the separation of his God {is} upon his head**

UST Even if their fathers, mothers, brothers, or sisters die, they must not be near their dead bodies. That would make them impure, {and they must not become impure} while they have the long hair that shows that they have dedicated themselves to God

If it would be more natural in your language, you could reverse the order of these phrases, since **because the separation of his God is upon his head** gives the reason for the result that **For his father and for his mother, for his brother and for his sister, he shall not make himself unclean for them in their death** describes. Alternate translation: [Since the separation of his God is upon his head, he shall not make himself unclean for his father and for his mother, for his brother and for his sister, in their death.]

Support Reference: Connect — Reason-and-Result Relationship

ULT **For his father and for his mother, for his brother and for his sister, he shall not make himself unclean for them in their death**

UST Even if their fathers, mothers, brothers, or sisters die, they must not be near their dead bodies. That would make them impure, and they must not become impure

If it would be more natural in your language, you may want to put the information about making himself **unclean** before the list of relatives (**his father and for his mother, for his brother and for his sister**). Alternate translation: [He shall not make himself unclean for his father and for his mother, for his brother and for his sister, in their death]

Support Reference: Information Structure

ULT **For his father and for his mother, for his brother and for his sister**

UST Even if their fathers, mothers, brothers, or sisters

Here, Yahweh refers to a person's closest relatives to refer to any close relatives. You could indicate this explicitly in your translation if that would be helpful to your readers. Alternate translation: [For any close relatives, even his father, mother, brother, and sister]

Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

ULT **for his brother and for his sister**

UST brothers, or sisters

The terms **brother** and **sister** include both older and younger siblings. Your language may have its own term or expression for this relationship. Alternate translation: [for any brother or sister]

Support Reference: Kinship

> ULT **he shall not make himself unclean for them**
> UST they must not be near their dead bodies. That would make them impure, and they must not become impure

By **he shall not make himself unclean for them**, Yahweh means he must not participate in funeral rituals or come near the dead bodies of even his closest relatives. You could indicate this explicitly in your translation if that would be helpful to your readers. Alternate translation: [he shall not make himself unclean for them by coming close to them]
Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

> ULT **in their death**
> UST die

If your language does not use an abstract noun for the idea of **death**, you could express the same idea in another way. Alternate translation: [when they die]
Support Reference: Abstract Nouns

> ULT **the separation of his God**
> UST they have dedicated themselves to God

Here, **separation** represents the hair that a Nazirite grew to show his dedication to God. If it would be helpful in your language, you could use an equivalent expression or plain language. Alternate translation: [the hair that represents the separation of his God]
Support Reference: Metonymy

> ULT **the separation of his God**
> UST they have dedicated themselves to God

Yahweh is using the possessive form to describe a **separation** that is directed toward **his God**. If a speaker of your language would not use the possessive form for this, you could express this idea in another way. Alternate translation: [the separation for his God's sake]
Support Reference: Possession

> ULT **the separation of his God**
> UST they have dedicated themselves to God

If your language does not use an abstract noun for the idea of **separation**, you could express the same idea in another way. Alternate translation: [how he separated himself for his God]
Support Reference: Abstract Nouns

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
God	God

Numbers 6:8

ULT	UST
All the days of his separation he is holy to Yahweh.	*While they are Nazirites, they are sacred and belong to Yahweh.*

> ULT **All the days of his separation**
> UST While they are Nazirites

If your language does not use an abstract noun for the idea of **separation**, you could express the same idea in another way. Alternate translation: [All the days while he separates himself]
Support Reference: Abstract Nouns

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
holy	sacred
Yahweh	Yahweh

Numbers 6:9

ULT	UST
And if a dying one dies upon him in suddenness suddenly, and he makes the head of his separation unclean, then he shall shave his head on the day of his purification; on the seventh day he shall shave it.	*Suppose that someone dies suddenly near them, which makes impure the long hair that shows that they have dedicated themselves to God. In that case, on the seventh day afterward, when they become pure again, they must cut all their hair off.*

ULT **a dying one dies**
UST someone dies

It might seem that the expression **a dying one dies** contains extra information that would not be natural to express in your language. If so, you can shorten it. Alternate translation: [a person dies]
Support Reference: Making Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information Explicit

ULT **dies upon him**
UST someone dies … near them

Yahweh is using **dies upon him** as a common expression of his culture to mean "dies close to him." If this phrase does not have that meaning in your language, you could use a comparable expression from your language that does have that meaning, or you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [dies close to him]
Support Reference: Idiom

ULT **in suddenness suddenly**
UST suddenly

Here Yahweh is using a construction in which two words come from the same root. You may be able to use the same construction in your language to express the meaning here. Alternatively, your language may have another way of saying this. Alternate translation: [very suddenly]
Support Reference: Poetry

ULT **in suddenness**
UST suddenly

If your language does not use an abstract noun for the idea of **suddenness**, you could express the same idea in another way. Alternate translation: [unexpectedly]
Support Reference: Abstract Nouns

ULT **and he makes … unclean**
UST which makes impure

The word translated as **and** indicates that what follows is a result of what came before. Use a connector in your language that makes it clear that what follows is a result of what came before. Alternate translation: [and so he makes unclean]
Support Reference: Connect — Reason-and-Result Relationship

ULT **the head of his separation**
UST the long hair that shows that they have dedicated themselves to God

Yahweh is using the possessive form to describe a **head** that shows or represents **his separation**. If a speaker of your language would not use the possessive form for this, you could express this idea in another way. Alternate translation: [his head that represents his separation]
Support Reference: Possession

ULT **the head of his separation**
UST the long hair that shows that they have dedicated themselves to God

If your language does not use an abstract noun for the idea of **separation**, you could express the same idea in another way. Alternate translation: [his head that represents how he made himself separate]
Support Reference: Abstract Nouns

ULT **the head**
UST the long hair

Here, **head** represents the hair on the head. If it would be helpful in your language, you could use an equivalent expression or plain language. Alternate translation: [the hair on the head]
Support Reference: Metonymy

ULT **then he shall shave his head on the day of his purification; on the seventh day he shall shave it**
UST In that case, on the seventh day afterward, when they become pure again, they must cut all their hair off

It might seem that the expression **he shall shave it** contains extra information that would not be natural to express in your language. If so, you can shorten it. Alternate translation: [then he shall shave his head on the day of his purification, which is the seventh day]
Support Reference: Making Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information Explicit

ULT **his head**
UST their hair

Here, **head** represents the hair on the head of the Nazirite. The long hair was a visible sign of the Nazirite's dedication to God. If it would be helpful in your language, you could use an equivalent expression or plain language. Alternate translation: [the hair on his head]
Support Reference: Metonymy

ULT **on the day of his purification; on the seventh day he shall shave it**
UST In that case, on the seventh day afterward, when they become pure again, they must cut all … off

Yahweh assumes that readers will know that a person who becomes unclean from being near a dead body must wait seven days before being purified, according to the law in Numbers 19:11–22. You could say that explicitly if that would be helpful to your readers. Alternate translation: [on the day of his purification. That is the seventh day after he was near a dead body according to the law concerning impurity from corpses, and on that day he shall shave it]
Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

ULT **on the day of his purification**
UST when they become pure again

If your language does not use an abstract noun for the idea of **purification**, you could express the same idea in another way. Alternate translation: [on the day when he is purified]
Support Reference: Abstract Nouns

ULT **on the seventh day**
UST on the seventh day afterward

If your language would not represent a number in a form such as **the seventh day**, you could represent this number in a form that your language would use. Alternate translation: [day seven]
Support Reference: Ordinal Numbers

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
purification	pure

Numbers 6:10

ULT	UST
And on the eighth day he shall bring two doves or two sons of a pigeon to the priest, to the opening of the tent of meeting.	*Then, on the eighth day afterward, each of them must take two doves or two young pigeons to the priest at the entrance to the sacred tent.*

ULT **And on the eighth day**
UST Then, on the eighth day afterward

If your language would not represent a number in a form such as **the eighth day**, you could represent this number in a form that your language would use. Alternate translation: [And on day eight]
Support Reference: Ordinal Numbers

ULT **sons of a pigeon**
UST young pigeons

Here, **sons of a pigeon** refers to young pigeons. Yahweh is speaking as if they were actually children of the mother bird. If it would be helpful in your language, you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [pigeons that are young]
Support Reference: Metaphor

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
doves	doves
pigeon	pigeons
priest	priest
tent of meeting	to the sacred tent

Numbers 6:11

ULT	UST
And the priest shall make one for a sin offering and one for a burnt offering, and he shall make atonement for him from what he sinned upon the person. And he shall consecrate his head on that day.	*The priest must offer one of the birds as a purifying sacrifice and the other as a wholly burned sacrifice. When the priest offers these sacrifices, I will accept the sacrifices and remove the Nazirites' sin, which they committed when they were near the dead body. Immediately after that, they must set apart their hair again to show that they are dedicating themselves to Yahweh.*

ULT **and he shall make atonement**

UST When the priest offers these sacrifices, I will accept the sacrifices and remove

If your language does not use an abstract noun for the idea of **atonement**, you could express the same idea in another way. Alternate translation: [and he shall atone]

Support Reference: Abstract Nouns

ULT **for him from what he sinned**

UST When the priest offers these sacrifices, I will accept the sacrifices and remove the Nazirites' sin, which they committed

Yahweh is using **for him from what he sinned** as a common expression of this culture to mean "to restore him after he had sinned." If this phrase does not have that meaning in your language, you could use a comparable expression from your language that does have that meaning, or you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [to restore him after he sinned]

Support Reference: Idiom

ULT **upon the person**

UST when they were near the dead body

The implication is that the person was defiled by touching or being near a dead person. You could include this information if that would be helpful to your readers. Alternate translation: [concerning the dead person]

Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

ULT **his head**

UST their hair again to show that they are dedicating themselves to Yahweh

Here, **head** represents the Nazirite's hair, which showed that he was dedicated to God. If it would be helpful in your language, you could use an equivalent expression or plain language. Alternate translation: [the hair that will grow on his head]

Support Reference: Metonymy

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
priest	priest
sin offering	of the birds as a purifying sacrifice
burnt offering	as a wholly burned sacrifice
atonement	When the priest offers these sacrifices, I will accept the sacrifices and remove
sinned	sin
consecrate	after that, they must set apart

Numbers 6:12

ULT	UST
And he shall make separate to Yahweh the days of his separation, and he shall bring a male lamb, a son of his year, for a guilt offering. And the first days shall fall, because his separation was made unclean.	*The time before they were near the dead body will not count toward the total time during which they dedicate themselves to Yahweh. That is because they became impure during that time. So, they must dedicate themselves to Yahweh for the entire time again. Also, each of them must take a male sheep that is one year old as a restoring sacrifice.*

ULT **And he shall make separate to Yahweh the days of his separation**
UST So, they must dedicate themselves to Yahweh for the entire time again

Yahweh is using the expression **make separate** as a common expression of this culture to mean “set himself apart” or “dedicate himself.” If this phrase does not have that meaning in your language, you could use a comparable expression from your language that does have that meaning, or you could state the meaning plainly. See how you translated the similar phrase in 6:2. Alternate translation: [And he shall set himself apart for Yahweh during the days of his separation]

Support Reference: Idiom

ULT **the days of his separation**
UST for the entire time again

If your language does not use an abstract noun for the idea of **separation**, you could express the same idea in another way. Alternate translation: [the days he is separate]

Support Reference: Abstract Nouns

ULT **a son of his year**
UST that is one year old

The expression **a son of his year** is a common expression of his culture that means “one year old.” If this phrase does not have that meaning in your language, you could use a comparable expression from your language that does have that meaning, or you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [a year old]

Support Reference: Idiom

ULT **And the first days shall fall**
UST The time before {they were near the dead body} will not count toward the total time during which they dedicate themselves to Yahweh

Here, the text speaks of the first days of separation as if they could **fall**, meaning they would not count toward the total time of separation. If it would be helpful in your language, you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [And the first days must not be included in the time of separation]

Support Reference: Metaphor

ULT **And the first days**
UST The time before they were near the dead body

The implication is that this is the first period during which the Nazirite had taken the vow before he was made unclean. You could include this information if that would be helpful to your readers. Alternate translation: [And the days before he was made unclean]
Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

ULT **his separation was made unclean**
UST they became impure during that time

The expression **his separation was made unclean** is a passive verbal form. If your language would not use that form, you could express the idea in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: [the dead body made his separation unclean]
Support Reference: Active or Passive

ULT **his separation was made unclean**
UST they became impure during that time

If your language does not use an abstract noun for the idea of **separation**, you could express the same idea in another way. Alternate translation: [he was made unclean while he was separate]
Support Reference: Abstract Nouns

ULT **of his separation**
UST for the entire time again

Here, **separation** represents the condition or state of being set apart as a Nazirite. If it would be helpful in your language, you could use an equivalent expression or plain language. Alternate translation: [he, during his time of separation,]
Support Reference: Metonymy

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Yahweh	Yahweh
days	for the entire time again
lamb	a male sheep
year	year
guilt offering	as a restoring sacrifice

Numbers 6:13

ULT	UST
And this is the law of the Nazirite: On the day of the fulfilling of the days of his separation, he shall bring him to the opening of the tent of meeting,	*Here are the instructions for when Nazirites have finished the time during which they dedicated themselves to Yahweh. Someone must take them to the entrance to the sacred tent.*

ULT **And this is the law of the Nazirite**
UST Here are the instructions … Nazirites

By **this**, Yahweh means the instructions that follow about what should happen when a Nazirite's period of dedication is complete. You could indicate this explicitly in your translation if that would be helpful to your readers. Alternate translation: [What follows is the law concerning the Nazirite]
Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

ULT **the Nazirite**
UST Nazirites

Yahweh is not referring to a specific **Nazirite**. He means Nazirites in general. If it would be helpful to your readers, you could use an expression that would be more natural in your language. Alternate translation: [the Nazirites]
Support Reference: Generic Noun Phrases

ULT **On the day of the fulfilling of the days of his separation**
UST for when … have finished the time during which they dedicated themselves to Yahweh

Yahweh is using the possessive form to describe **the day** on which **the days** that make up his time of **separation** are fulfilled. If a speaker of your language would not use the possessive form for this, you could express this idea in another way. Alternate translation: [On the day when the time during which he is separate is fulfilled]
Support Reference: Possession

ULT **the days of his separation**
UST the time during which they dedicated themselves to Yahweh

If your language does not use an abstract noun for the idea of **separation**, you could express the same idea in another way. See how you translated this phrase in 6:12. Alternate translation: [the days he is separate]
Support Reference: Abstract Nouns

ULT **he shall bring him**
UST Someone must take them

Here, the pronoun **him** refers to the Nazirite. The pronoun **he** could refer to: (1) any person who could accompany the Nazirite. Alternate translation: [a person shall bring the Nazirite] or [the Nazirite shall be brought]; or (2) the Nazirite, who brings himself. Alternate translation: [the Nazirite shall bring himself]
Support Reference: Pronouns — When to Use Them

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
law	the instructions
Nazirite	Nazirites
fulfilling	have finished
tent of meeting	to the sacred tent

Numbers 6:14

ULT	UST
and he shall present his offering to Yahweh: one perfect male lamb, a son of his year, for a burnt offering; and one perfect female lamb, a daughter of her year, for a sin offering; and one perfect ram for a peace offering;	*Then, each Nazirite must offer sacrificial animals, food, and drink to Yahweh. Each one must offer as a wholly burned sacrifice one healthy male sheep that is one year old. Each one must offer as a purifying sacrifice one healthy female sheep that is one year old. Each one must offer as a fellowship sacrifice one healthy ram.*

ULT **and he shall present his offering**
UST Then, each {Nazirite} must offer sacrificial animals, food, and drink

Yahweh is using a construction in which a verb (**present**) and its object (**offering**) come from the same root. You may be able to use the same construction in your language to express the meaning here. Alternatively, your language may have another way of saying this. Alternate translation: [and he shall give his offering]
Support Reference: Poetry

ULT **a son of his year**
UST that is one year old

Yahweh is using the common expression of his culture **a son of his year** to mean "one year old." See how you translated this phrase in 6:12. If this phrase does not have that meaning in your language, you could use a comparable expression from your language that does have that meaning, or you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [a year old]
Support Reference: Idiom

ULT **a daughter of her year**
UST that is one year old

The phrase **a daughter of her year** is a common expression of the culture that means "a year old." See how you translated the similar phrase "a son of his year" earlier in the verse. If this phrase does not have that meaning in your language, you could use a comparable expression from your language that does have that meaning, or you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [a year old]
Support Reference: Idiom

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
offering	sacrificial animals, food, and drink
Yahweh	Yahweh
perfect	healthy
lamb	male sheep
year	year
burnt offering	as a wholly burned sacrifice
sin offering	Each one must offer as a purifying sacrifice
ram	ram
peace offering	Each one must offer as a fellowship sacrifice

Numbers 6:15

ULT	UST
and a basket of unleavened bread, flour of loaves mixed with the oil and wafers of unleavened bread anointed with the oil; and their grain offering and their drink offerings.	*Each one must offer the grain and wine offerings that go with those sacrifices. Finally, each one must offer bread without yeast in a container. Some of the bread must be thick bread with olive oil in it, and some of the bread must be thin bread with olive oil on the outside.*

ULT **and a basket of unleavened bread, flour of loaves mixed with the oil and wafers of unleavened bread anointed with the oil; and their grain offering and their drink offerings**
UST Each one must offer the grain and wine offerings that go with those sacrifices. {Finally, each one must offer} bread without yeast in a container. Some of the bread must be thick bread with olive oil in it, and some of the bread must be thin bread with olive oil on the outside

If it would be more natural in your language, you may want to put the information about **their grain offering and their drink offerings** immediately after the sacrifices mentioned in verse 14, since these offerings accompany those sacrifices. Alternate translation: [and their grain offering and their drink offerings; and a basket of unleavened bread, flour of loaves mixed with the oil and wafers of unleavened bread anointed with the oil]
Support Reference: Information Structure

ULT **and a basket of unleavened bread**
UST Finally, each one must offer bread without yeast in a container

Yahweh is using the possessive form to describe **a basket** that is characterized by having **unleavened bread** in it. If a speaker of your language would not use the possessive form for this, you could express this idea in another way. Alternate translation: [and a basket full of unleavened bread]
Support Reference: Possession

ULT **and a basket**
UST Finally, each one must offer … in a container

A **basket** is a kind of container used to hold and carry things. If your readers would not be familiar with what a basket is, you could use the name of a similar thing that your readers would recognize, or you could use a more general term. Alternate translation: [and a box]
Support Reference: Translate Unknowns

ULT **of unleavened bread, flour of loaves mixed with the oil and wafers of unleavened bread anointed with the oil**
UST bread without yeast … Some of the bread must be thick bread with olive oil in it, and some of the bread must be thin bread with olive oil on the outside

The implication is that there were two distinct types of unleavened bread in the basket: **loaves mixed with oil** and **wafers anointed with oil**. You could include this information if that would be helpful to your readers. Alternate translation: [unleavened bread of two types, both flour of loaves mixed with the oil and wafers of unleavened bread anointed with the oil]
Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

ULT **flour of loaves mixed with the oil and wafers of unleavened bread anointed with the oil**

UST Some of the bread must be thick bread with olive oil in it, and some of the bread must be thin bread with olive oil on the outside

The phrase **flour of loaves mixed with the oil** refers to thick loaves of bread in which **oil** was mixed before cooking. The phrase **wafers of unleavened bread anointed with the oil** refers to thin loaves of bread on which **oil** was spread after cooking. If your readers would not be familiar with these kinds of bread, you could use the names of similar things that your readers would recognize, or you could use more general terms. Alternate translation: [thick loaves made from flour and oil and thin loaves spread with oil]

Support Reference: Translate Unknowns

ULT **flour of loaves**

UST Some of the bread must be thick bread

Yahweh is using the possessive form to describe **loaves** that are characterized by **flour**. If a speaker of your language would not use the possessive form for this, you could express this idea in another way. Alternate translation: [loaves made of flour]

Support Reference: Possession

ULT **mixed**

UST in it

The expression **mixed** is a passive verbal form. If your language would not use that form, you could express the idea in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. If you need to say who does the action, the context indicates that it is whoever cooked the bread. Alternate translation: [that someone has mixed]

Support Reference: Active or Passive

ULT **with the oil … with the oil**

UST with olive oil … with olive oil

Yahweh is not referring to specific portions of **oil**. He means oil in general. If it would be helpful to your readers, you could use an expression that would be more natural in your language. Alternate translation: [with oil … with oil]

Support Reference: Generic Noun Phrases

ULT **anointed**

UST on the outside

The expression **anointed** is a passive verbal form. If your language would not use that form, you could express the idea in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. If you need to say who does the action, the context indicates that it is whoever cooked the bread. Alternate translation: [that someone has anointed]

Support Reference: Active or Passive

ULT **and their grain offering and their drink offerings**

UST Each one must offer the grain and wine offerings that go with those sacrifices

The pronoun **their** refers to the grain offerings and drink offerings that go with the sacrificial animals mentioned in verse 14. It may be helpful to clarify this for your readers. Alternate translation: [and the grain offering and drink offerings for each of those sacrifices]

Support Reference: Pronouns — When to Use Them

> ULT **and their grain offering**
> UST Each one must offer the grain

In this verse, the word **grain offering** is singular in form, but it refers to all the grain offerings as a group. If it would be helpful in your language, you could use the plural form of "grain offering." Alternate translation: [and their grain offerings]

Support Reference: Collective Nouns

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
unleavened bread	bread without yeast
oil	oil
anointed	on the outside
oil	oil
grain offering	Each one must offer the grain
drink offerings	and wine offerings that go with those sacrifices

Numbers 6:16

ULT	UST
And the priest shall present to the face of Yahweh, and he shall make his sin offering and his burnt offering.	*The priest must offer those things in Yahweh's presence. He must offer the female sheep as a purifying sacrifice and the male sheep as a wholly burned sacrifice.*

ULT **And the priest shall present**
UST The priest must offer those things

Yahweh is leaving out some of the words that in many languages a sentence would need in order to be complete. You can supply **the offerings** from the context if that would be clearer in your language. Alternate translation: [And the priest shall present the offerings]
Support Reference: Ellipsis

ULT **to the face of Yahweh**
UST in Yahweh's presence

Here, **to the face of** represents being in front of Yahweh. If it would be helpful in your language, you could use an equivalent expression or plain language. Alternate translation: [before Yahweh]
Support Reference: Metonymy

ULT **and he shall make his sin offering and his burnt offering**
UST He must offer {the female sheep} as a purifying sacrifice and {the male sheep} as a wholly burned sacrifice

The pronoun **his** refers to the Nazirite, while the pronoun **he** refers to the priest. It may be helpful to clarify this for your readers. Alternate translation: [and the priest shall make the Nazirite's sin offering and his burnt offering]
Support Reference: Pronouns — When to Use Them

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
priest	priest
Yahweh	Yahweh's
sin	the female sheep as a purifying sacrifice
burnt offering	and {the male sheep} as a wholly burned sacrifice

Numbers 6:17

ULT	UST
And the ram he shall make a sacrifice of peace offering to Yahweh upon the basket of the unleavened bread. And the priest shall make his grain offering and his drink offering.	*The priest must offer the ram, together with the bread without yeast in a container, as a fellowship sacrifice to Yahweh. He must also offer the grain and wine offerings that the person brought.*

ULT **a sacrifice of peace offering**
UST as a fellowship sacrifice

Yahweh is using the possessive form to describe a **sacrifice** that is characterized by being part of the **peace offering**. If a speaker of your language would not use the possessive form for this, you could express this idea in another way. Alternate translation: [the sacrifice that is part of the peace offering]
Support Reference: Possession

ULT **upon the basket of**
UST in a container

Yahweh is using **upon the basket** as a common expression of this culture to mean "along with the basket." If this phrase does not have that meaning in your language, you could use a comparable expression from your language that does have that meaning, or you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [along with the basket]
Support Reference: Idiom

ULT **upon the basket of**
UST in a container

A **basket** is a kind of container made from woven material. If your readers would not be familiar with what a basket is, you could use the name of a similar thing that your readers would recognize, or you could use a more general term. See how you translated **basket** in 6:15. Alternate translation: [upon the box]
Support Reference: Translate Unknowns

ULT **the basket of the unleavened bread**
UST the bread without yeast … a container

Yahweh is using the possessive form to describe a **basket** that is characterized by **the unleavened bread**. If a speaker of your language would not use the possessive form for this, you could express this idea in another way. See how you translated this phrase in 6:15. Alternate translation: [the basket full of unleavened bread]
Support Reference: Possession

ULT **his grain offering and his drink offering**
UST the grain and wine offerings that the person brought

Here, the pronoun **his** could refer to: (1) the Nazirite who brought the **grain offering** and **drink offering**. Alternate translation: [the Nazirite's grain offering and his drink offering]; or (2) the **peace offering**. Alternate translation: [its grain offering and its drink offering]
Support Reference: Pronouns — When to Use Them

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
ram	ram
sacrifice	sacrifice
peace offering	fellowship
Yahweh	Yahweh
unleavened bread	the bread without yeast
priest	priest
grain offering	the grain
drink offering	and wine offerings that the person brought

Numbers 6:18

ULT	UST
And the Nazirite shall shave the head of his separation at the opening of the tent of meeting, and he shall take the hair of the head of his separation, and he shall put it on the fire that is under the sacrifice of peace offering.	*Then the Nazirites must cut off the long hair that shows that they have dedicated themselves to God. They must do this at the entrance to the sacred tent. Then, they must place the long hair they cut off on the flames that burn under the fellowship sacrifices that they offered.*

ULT **the head of his separation … the hair of the head of his separation**
UST the long hair that shows that they have dedicated themselves to God … the long hair they cut off

See how you translated the similar phrase in 6:9. The only difference here is that the second phrase makes **hair** explicit. Alternate translation: [the hair on his head that represents how he made himself separate … the hair on his head that represents how he made himself separate]
Support Reference: Possession

ULT **on the fire that {is} under**
UST on the flames that burn under

Yahweh assumes that readers will know that **the fire** was burning on the altar and that the peace offering was being sacrificed on that altar. You could say that explicitly if that would be helpful to your readers. Alternate translation: [the fire that burns on the altar under]
Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

ULT **the sacrifice of peace offering**
UST the fellowship sacrifices that they offered

See how you translated this phrase in 6:17.
Support Reference: Possession

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Nazirite	Nazirites
tent of meeting	to the sacred tent
sacrifice	sacrifices
peace offering	the fellowship sacrifices that they offered

Numbers 6:19

ULT	UST
And the priest shall take the boiled shoulder from the ram and one loaf of unleavened bread from the basket and one wafer of unleavened bread, and he shall put them on the palms of the Nazirite after his shaving his separation.	*Once he has boiled the ram, the priest must remove the shoulder and its meat from the ram. After each Nazirite shaves off his or her long hair, the priest will have him or her hold the shoulder meat and two pieces of bread without yeast from the container, one thick and one thin.*

ULT **the boiled shoulder from the ram**

UST Once he has boiled the ram … the shoulder and its meat from the ram

This means that he had boiled the ram's shoulder. If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: [the shoulder of the ram that he boiled]

Support Reference: Active or Passive

ULT **the boiled shoulder from the ram**

UST Once he has boiled the ram … the shoulder and its meat from the ram

Here, the word **shoulder** refers to one of the front legs of the **ram**. The word **boiled** indicates that it has been cooked in hot water. If your readers would not be familiar with what a **boiled shoulder** is, you could use the name of a similar thing that your readers would recognize, or you could use a more general term. Alternate translation: [the front leg of the ram that has been cooked]

Support Reference: Translate Unknowns

ULT **and one loaf of unleavened bread from the basket and one wafer of unleavened bread**

UST from the container, one thick and one thin

The phrase **one loaf of unleavened bread** refers to a thick loaf of bread in which oil was mixed before cooking. The phrase **one wafer of unleavened bread** refers to a thin loaf of bread on which **oil** was spread after cooking. See how you referred to these kinds of bread in 6:15. Alternate translation: [one thick unleavened loaf from the basket and one thin unleavened loaf]

Support Reference: Translate Unknowns

ULT **from the basket**

UST from the container

A **basket** is a kind of container made from woven materials. If your readers would not be familiar with what a basket is, you could use the name of a similar thing that your readers would recognize, or you could use a more general term. See how you translated **basket** in 6:15. Alternate translation: [from the box]

Support Reference: Translate Unknowns

ULT **and he shall put {them} on the palms of the Nazirite**
UST each Nazirite … the priest will have him or her hold the shoulder meat and two pieces of bread without yeast

Yahweh is using **on the palms of the Nazirite** as a common expression of this culture to mean "to give to the Nazirite to hold." If this phrase does not have that meaning in your language, you could use a comparable expression from your language that does have that meaning, or you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [and he shall give them to the Nazirite to hold]
Support Reference: Idiom

ULT **his separation**
UST shaves off his or her long hair

If your language does not use an abstract noun for the idea of **separation**, you could express the same idea in another way. Alternate translation: [how he made himself separate]
Support Reference: Abstract Nouns

ULT **his separation**
UST shaves off his or her long hair

Here, **separation** represents the hair that showed that this person was separated to God as a Nazirite. If it would be helpful in your language, you could use an equivalent expression or plain language. Alternate translation: [the hair that represents his separation]
Support Reference: Metonymy

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
priest	priest
ram	ram
unleavened bread	thick
Nazirite	Nazirite

Numbers 6:20

ULT	UST
And the priest shall raise them as a raised offering to the face of Yahweh. It is a holy thing for the priest upon the breast of the raised offering and upon the thigh of the contribution. And after, the Nazirite will drink wine.	*Then the priest must take back the meat and bread and hold them up in Yahweh's presence. They are sacred and belong to the priest. That is in addition to the breast meat that he holds up in Yahweh's presence and the thigh meat from the special contribution, both of which he normally receives from a fellowship sacrifice. After the priest has completed all those things, the person who was a Nazirite can now drink wine and other alcoholic drinks.*

ULT **And the priest shall raise them**

UST Then the priest must {take back} the meat and bread

The implication is that the Nazirite first gives these items to the priest, who then lifts them up as an offering. You could include this information if that would be helpful to your readers. Alternate translation: [And the Nazirite shall hand them back to the priest, and the priest shall raise them]

Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

ULT **as a raised offering … of the raised offering**

UST and hold them up … that he holds up in Yahweh's presence

The expression **raised offering** is a passive verbal form. If your language would not use that form, you could express the idea in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: [as an offering that the priests raise … the offering that the priests raise]

Support Reference: Active or Passive

ULT **to the face of Yahweh**

UST in Yahweh's presence

Here, **to the face of** represents being in front of Yahweh. If it would be helpful in your language, you could use an equivalent expression or plain language. Alternate translation: [before Yahweh]

Support Reference: Metonymy

ULT **It {is} a holy thing**

UST They are sacred

The pronoun **It** refers to the portions of the sacrifice that the priest has raised up to Yahweh (the meat and bread). Yahweh is referring to those things as a group. It may be helpful to clarify this for your readers. Alternate translation: [They are holy things]

Support Reference: Pronouns — When to Use Them

ULT **upon the breast of the raised offering and upon the thigh of the contribution**
UST That is in addition to the breast meat that he holds up {in Yahweh's presence} and the thigh meat from the special contribution, both of which he normally receives from a fellowship sacrifice

Yahweh assumes that readers will know that the breast and thigh portions of peace offerings were always given to the priests as their share of the offering. See Leviticus 7:28–34 for more information on this. You could say that explicitly if that would be helpful to your readers. Alternate translation: [upon the breast of the raised offering and upon the thigh of the contribution that are always given to the priest from any peace offering]
Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

---

ULT **upon the breast of the raised offering and upon the thigh of the contribution**
UST That is in addition to the breast meat that he holds up {in Yahweh's presence} and the thigh meat from the special contribution, both of which he normally receives from a fellowship sacrifice

The phrase **upon the breast … and upon the thigh** is a common expression of this culture that means "in addition to the breast and thigh." If this phrase does not have that meaning in your language, you could use a comparable expression from your language that does have that meaning, or you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [along with the breast of … and along with the thigh of]
Support Reference: Idiom

ULT **the breast of the raised offering**
UST the breast meat that he holds up in Yahweh's presence

Yahweh is using the possessive form to describe a **breast** that is offered as **the raised offering**. If a speaker of your language would not use the possessive form for this, you could express this idea in another way. Alternate translation: [the breast that is presented as a raised offering]
Support Reference: Possession

ULT **the thigh of the contribution**
UST the thigh meat from the special contribution, both of which he normally receives from a fellowship sacrifice

Yahweh is using the possessive form to describe a **thigh** that is a **contribution**. If a speaker of your language would not use the possessive form for this, you could express this idea in another way. Alternate translation: [the thigh that is contributed]
Support Reference: Possession

ULT **the Nazirite will drink wine**
UST the person who was a Nazirite can now drink wine and other alcoholic drinks

Yahweh is using a future statement to give an instruction or command in **the Nazirite will drink wine**. If it would be helpful in your language, you could translate these words using a command or instruction form. Alternate translation: [the Nazirite is allowed to drink wine]
Support Reference: Statements — Other Uses

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
priest	priest
offering	and hold them up
Yahweh	Yahweh’s
holy	sacred
offering	that he holds up in Yahweh’s presence
contribution	contribution
Nazirite	Nazirite
wine	wine

Numbers 6:21

ULT	UST
This is the law of the Nazirite who vows his offering to Yahweh upon his separation, besides what his hand reaches. According to the mouth of his vow that he vowed, thus he shall do in accordance with the law of his separation.'"	*Those are the instructions for all people who make solemn promises to be Nazirites and to present sacrifices to Yahweh when they have finished the time during which they dedicated themselves to Yahweh. They may also present other sacrifices if they choose to do so. These people must do exactly what they solemnly promised and what those instructions require."*

ULT **the Nazirite**
UST to be Nazirites

Yahweh is not referring to a specific **Nazirite**. He means Nazirites in general. If it would be helpful to your readers, you could use an expression that would be more natural in your language. See how you translated the similar phrase in 6:13. Alternate translation: [the Nazirites]
Support Reference: Generic Noun Phrases

ULT **who vows his offering to Yahweh upon his separation**
UST for all people who make solemn promises … and to present sacrifices to Yahweh {when they have finished the time during which} they dedicated themselves to Yahweh

By **upon his separation**, Yahweh means after the time of being a Nazirite is completed. You could indicate this explicitly in your translation if that would be helpful to your readers. Alternate translation: [who vows to present this offering to Yahweh after his separation]
Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

ULT **upon his separation**
UST when they have finished the time during which they dedicated themselves to Yahweh

If your language does not use an abstract noun for the idea of **separation**, you could express the same idea in another way. Alternate translation: [after he has been separate]
Support Reference: Abstract Nouns

ULT **what his hand reaches**
UST They may also present other sacrifices if they choose to do so

Yahweh is using **what his hand reaches** as a common expression of this culture to mean "whatever else he can give" or "whatever more he can afford." If this phrase does not have that meaning in your language, you could use a comparable expression from your language that does have that meaning, or you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [whatever else he can give]
Support Reference: Idiom

ULT **According to the mouth of his vow**
UST exactly

Yahweh is speaking of **his vow** as if it were a living thing that had a **mouth**. If it would be helpful in your language, you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [According to the words of his vow]
Support Reference: Personification

ULT **his vow that he vowed**
UST exactly what they solemnly promised

Yahweh is using a construction in which a verb and its object come from the same root. You may be able to use the same construction in your language to express the meaning here. Alternatively, your language may have another way of saying this. Alternate translation: [what he vowed]

Support Reference: Poetry

ULT **the law of his separation**
UST and what those instructions require

If your language does not use an abstract noun for the idea of **separation**, you could express the same idea in another way. Alternate translation: [the law concerning when people make themselves separate]

Support Reference: Abstract Nouns

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
law	the instructions
Nazirite	Nazirites
vows	make solemn promises
offering	sacrifices
Yahweh	Yahweh
vow	exactly
law	and what those instructions require

Numbers 6:23

ULT	UST
“Speak to Aaron and to his sons, saying, ‘Thus you shall bless the sons of Israel, saying to them,	*“Tell Aaron and his sons that when they bless the Israelites, they must use these words:*

ULT **Speak to Aaron and to his sons, saying, ‘Thus you shall bless**
UST Tell Aaron and his sons that when they bless

If it would be clearer in your language, you could translate this so that there is not a quotation within a quotation. Alternate translation: [Speak to Aaron and to his sons. Tell them that this is how they shall bless]

Support Reference: Quotes within Quotes

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Aaron	Aaron
bless	bless
Israel	Israelites

Numbers 6:23-26

> ULT **saying to them, “May Yahweh bless you, and may he keep you. May Yahweh make his face shine to you, and may he be gracious to you. May Yahweh lift up his face to you and may he put peace to you**
> UST they must use these words: ‘We ask Yahweh to bless and guard you. We ask Yahweh to be favorable and kind to you. We ask Yahweh to care for you and make you peaceful

If it would be clearer in your language, you could translate this so that there is not a quotation within a quotation. Alternate translation: [telling them that they pray that Yahweh may bless them and keep them, that they pray that Yahweh may make his face shine to them and be gracious to them, and that they pray that Yahweh may lift up his face to them and put peace to them.]

Support Reference: Quotes within Quotes

Numbers 6:24

ULT	UST
“May Yahweh bless you, and may he keep you.	*‘We ask Yahweh to bless and guard you.*

ULT **May Yahweh bless you, and may he keep you**
UST We ask Yahweh to bless and guard you

The word **you** is singular here because God is telling Aaron and his sons to bless each individual Israelite. So use the singular form in your translation if your language marks that distinction. Alternate translation: [May Yahweh bless each one of you, and may he keep each one of you]

Support Reference: Forms of ‘You’ — Singular

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Yahweh	Yahweh
bless	bless

Numbers 6:24-26

> ULT **May Yahweh bless you, and may he keep you. May Yahweh make his face shine to you, and may he be gracious to you. May Yahweh lift up his face to you and may he put peace to you**
> UST We ask Yahweh to bless and guard you. We ask Yahweh to be favorable and kind to you. We ask Yahweh to care for you and make you peaceful

The priests are asking God to bless the Israelites. In your translation, use a form that people would recognize as a blessing in your language. You might express this as a prayer, if that would be more natural in your language. Alternate translation: [We pray that Yahweh will bless you and keep you. We pray that Yahweh will make his face shine to you and be gracious to you. We pray that Yahweh will lift up his face to you and put peace to you.]

Support Reference: Blessings

Numbers 6:25

ULT	UST
May Yahweh make his face shine to you, and may he be gracious to you.	*We ask Yahweh to be favorable and kind to you.*

ULT **May Yahweh make his face shine to you**
UST We ask Yahweh to be favorable … to you

Here, Yahweh is speaking as if his **face** were actually shining on someone with light. This refers to him acting favorably toward them. If it would be helpful in your language, you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [May Yahweh favor you]
Support Reference: Metaphor

ULT **to you, and may he be gracious to you**
UST and kind to you

The word **you** is singular here because this blessing was originally spoken to each individual Israelite. So use the singular form in your translation if your language marks that distinction. Alternate translation: [to each of you, and may he be gracious to each of you]
Support Reference: Forms of 'You' — Singular

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Yahweh	Yahweh

Numbers 6:26

ULT	UST
May Yahweh lift up his face to you and may he put peace to you.”’	*We ask Yahweh to care for you and make you peaceful.’*

ULT **May Yahweh lift up his face to you**
UST We ask Yahweh to care for you

Here, Yahweh is speaking as if Yahweh had a physical **face** that he could lift up toward someone. This expression means that Yahweh would pay attention to someone in order to help them. If it would be helpful in your language, you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [May Yahweh pay attention to you for your good]
Support Reference: Metaphor

ULT **to you … to you**
UST for you … you

The word **you** is singular here because Aaron and his sons are speaking this blessing to each individual Israelite. So use the singular form in your translation if your language marks that distinction. Alternate translation: [to each of you … to each of you]
Support Reference: Forms of ‘You’ — Singular

ULT **and may he put peace to you**
UST and make you peaceful

Yahweh is using **put peace to you** as a common expression of this culture to mean “give you peace” or “cause you to have peace.” If this phrase does not have that meaning in your language, you could use a comparable expression from your language that does have that meaning, or you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [and he give you peace]
Support Reference: Idiom

ULT **and may he put peace to you**
UST and make you peaceful

If your language does not use an abstract noun for the idea of **peace**, you could express the same idea in another way. Alternate translation: [and may he make you live peacefully]
Support Reference: Abstract Nouns

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Yahweh	Yahweh
peace	peaceful

Numbers 6:27

ULT	UST
And they shall put my name on the sons of Israel, and I, I will bless them.”	*When they speak those words, they declare that the Israelites belong to me. I will certainly bless the Israelites.”*

ULT **And they shall put my name on the sons of Israel**
UST When they speak those words, they declare that the Israelites belong to me

Here, God is speaking of Aaron and his sons **putting his name** on the Israelites as if his name were a physical object that could be placed on them. This means that the priests will declare that the Israelites belong to God. If it would be helpful in your language, you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [And they shall call the sons of Israel mine] or [And they shall link the sons of Israel with me through the use of my name]
Support Reference: Metaphor

ULT **and I, I will bless them**
UST I will certainly bless the Israelites

The word **and** here indicates that what follows is a result of what came before. Use a connector in your language that makes it clear that what follows is a result of what came before. Alternate translation: [and as a result I, I will bless them]
Support Reference: Connect — Reason-and-Result Relationship

ULT **and I, I will bless them**
UST I will certainly bless the Israelites

Yahweh is stating the pronoun **I** separately, even though the verb translated as **I will bless** already includes this meaning. He is doing that to emphasize that he is the one who will do the blessing. If a speaker of your language would use an explicit pronoun for the same purpose, you may want to use that construction in your translation. If not, your language may have other ways of showing that emphasis. Alternate translation: [and it is I who will bless them]
Support Reference: Pronouns — When to Use Them

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Israel	Israelites
bless	bless

Numbers 7

Numbers 7 Introduction

Numbers 7 Chapter Introduction

Structure and Formatting

This chapter lists the offerings that each leader of the 12 Israelite tribes gave to Yahweh after Moses dedicated the altar.

1. The tribal leaders provide wagons and oxen for the Levites' work (1–9)
2. Each tribal leader brings offerings for the dedication of the altar (10–88)
3. Moses hears Yahweh speaking from above the atonement lid (89)

Religious and Cultural Concepts in This Chapter

Anointing and dedicating the altar

To set the altar apart for Yahweh, Moses poured olive oil on it. This was the "dedication" of the altar. After Moses did this, the leaders of the 12 tribes presented offerings to Yahweh, which Yahweh told Moses to give to the Levites. These offerings were called a "dedication," since they were presented at the dedication of the altar.

The offerings

The leaders of the 12 Israelite tribes together presented six wagons and 12 oxen. The Levites would use these wagons and oxen as they set up, took down, and transported the sacred tent. Then, on successive days, each of the 12 leaders presented an offering to Yahweh. Each offering was identical to the others and included a silver dish and basin with flour and oil filling them, a small bowl or ladle with incense filling it, and animals for a burnt offering (a bull, a ram, and a male lamb), for a sin offering (a male goat), and for a peace offering (two cattle, five rams, five male goats, and five male lambs). The priests would use the animals, flour, and incense to make sacrifices to Yahweh. The priests would use the dishes, basins, and ladles regularly during their work at the sacred tent.

The shekel of the holy place

A "shekel" is a standard of weight. There were several different definitions of the weight of a "shekel." The phrase "the shekel of the holy place" identifies a specific definition: the one used by the priests at the sacred tent. This shekel weighed about 11 grams. Throughout this chapter, the author makes it clear that it is this weight for "shekel" that the leaders used to weigh the gold and silver dishes that they presented to Yahweh.

Translation Issues in This Chapter

Sequence with the previous chapters

This chapter begins with a specific date: the day that Moses set up and consecrated the sacred tent and the altar. According to Exodus 40:17, that day was the first day of the first month of the second year. However, Numbers 1:1 indicates that the census and the instructions for the Levites in chapters 1–4 began on the first day of the second month of the second year. So, the events narrated in this chapter took place before the events of Numbers 1–4. You may need to make this explicit for your readers. See the notes on 7:1–2 for specific issues and translation options.

"Sons of [tribe or clan]"

Throughout this chapter, the phrase "sons of [tribe or clan name]" appears. This phrase refers to the people who belong to the tribe or clan as if they were the direct "sons" of the man whom the tribe or clan was named after. Consider how you would naturally refer to the members of a tribe or clan. The UST uses the phrase "descendants of [tribe name]."

Names from earlier in Numbers

In this chapter, the author includes twice the name of each leader and the name of each leader's father. These names already appeared in Numbers 1 in identical form. Be sure that you translate them in exactly the same way in this chapter.

Repetition

The list of items offered by each of the leaders is very repetitive. In fact, words that indicate what items the leader gave are exactly identical in each of the twelve sections. Most likely, this kind of repetition represents a list or table in sentence form. The author thought that listing each item for each leader was important, perhaps to indicate that each tribe shared equally in this task or to reenact with words how the Israelites dedicated the altar with these offerings. Because of this, it is recommended that you do not shorten the repetition. Instead, be sure that the repeated verses are translated in the same way. You could also use formatting to make these verses look more like a list and enable readers to follow the repetition better. See the UST for an example of one way to do this.

Numbers 7:1

ULT	UST
And it happened on the day of Moses finishing to raise up the Dwelling that he anointed it and consecrated it and all its vessels and the altar and all its vessels. And he anointed them, and he consecrated them.	*When Moses completed setting up the sacred tent, he poured olive oil on it and set it apart. He also poured olive oil on the equipment for the sacred tent, the altar, and the equipment for the altar and set them apart.*

ULT **And it happened on the day of Moses finishing**
UST When Moses completed

This **day** is the day that Exodus 40:17 refers to, which is the first day of the first month of the second year. That means that this **day** occurred before the day that 1:1 refers to, which is the first day of the second month of the second year. If it is helpful in your language, you might want to make it clear that the account that starts in this verse happened before the events in chapters 1–6. Alternate translation: [Now previously, on the day of Moses finishing]
Support Reference: Order of Events

ULT **Moses finishing**
UST Moses completed

The implication is that Moses and the Levites did all the work of setting up the sacred tent, though the text only mentions **Moses finishing**. You could include this information if that would be helpful to your readers. Alternate translation: [Moses and the Levites finishing]
Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

ULT **that he anointed it and consecrated it and all its vessels and the altar and all its vessels. And he anointed them, and he consecrated them**
UST he poured {olive oil} on it and set it apart. He also poured {olive oil} on the equipment for the sacred tent, the altar, and the equipment for the altar and set them apart

It might seem that the expression **And he anointed them, and he consecrated them** contains extra information that would not be natural to express in your language. If so, you could shorten it. Alternate translation: [that he anointed and consecrated it and all its vessels and the altar and all its vessels]
Support Reference: Making Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information Explicit

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Moses	Moses
the Dwelling	the sacred tent
anointed	he poured olive oil
consecrated	and set … apart
altar	altar

Numbers 7:2

ULT	UST
And the leaders of Israel, the heads of the houses of their fathers, presented. They were the leaders of the tribes. They were the ones standing over the counted ones.	*Then the men who led the Israelites offered gifts to Yahweh. These men were in charge of their ancestral families, led the tribes, and ruled over the people whom they, Moses, and Aaron would list.*

ULT **the heads of the houses of**
UST These men were in charge of … families

Here, the author is speaking of the leaders or rulers of the houses of their fathers as if they were **the heads** of those families. If this meaning would not be clear in your language, you could use a comparable expression or you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [the rulers of the houses]
Support Reference: Metaphor

ULT **the ones standing over**
UST and ruled over

Here, the author is speaking of the leaders as if they were **standing over** the people they supervised. If this meaning would not be clear in your language, you could use a comparable expression or you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [the ones who oversaw]
Support Reference: Metaphor

ULT **the houses of their fathers**
UST their ancestral families

See how you translated the similar phrase in 1:2. Alternate translation: [the family groups of their ancestors]
Support Reference: Metaphor

ULT **And … presented**
UST Then … offered gifts to Yahweh

The author is leaving out some of the words that in many languages a sentence would need in order to be complete. The verb **presented** needs an object to make clear what they presented. You can supply these words from the context if that would be clearer in your language. Alternate translation: [presented an offering]
Support Reference: Ellipsis

ULT **the counted ones**
UST the people {whom they, Moses, and Aaron} would list

As the first note to 7:1 makes clear, the events in this chapter happened before the census in chapters 1–2. So, these people have not yet been **counted**. If it is helpful in your language, you might want to make it clear that the counting happened after the events in this chapter. Alternate translation: [the ones who would be counted]
Support Reference: Order of Events

> ULT **the counted ones**
> UST the people {whom they, Moses, and Aaron} would list

The expression **the counted ones** is a passive verbal form. If your language would not use that form, you could express the idea in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. See how you translated the similar phrase in 2:4. Alternate translation: [the ones whom they, Moses, and Aaron counted]

Support Reference: Active or Passive

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
leaders	the men who led
Israel	Israelites
houses	families
leaders	led
tribes	tribes

Numbers 7:3

ULT	UST
And they brought their offering to the face of Yahweh, six covered wagons and 12 cattle, a wagon according to two of the leaders and an ox for one. And they presented them to the face of the Dwelling.	*They took their gifts to the sacred tent, in Yahweh's presence. They used six carts and twelve bulls. Each cart was from two leaders, and each bull was from one leader.*

ULT **their offering**
UST their gifts

In this verse, the word **offering** is singular in form, but it refers to all the gifts from the leaders as a group. If it would be helpful in your language, you could use the plural form of "offering." Alternate translation: [their offerings]
Support Reference: Collective Nouns

ULT **to the face of Yahweh**
UST in Yahweh's presence

Here, **to the face of** represents being in front of Yahweh. If it would be helpful in your language, you could use an equivalent expression or plain language. Alternate translation: [before Yahweh]
Support Reference: Metonymy

ULT **covered wagons … a wagon**
UST carts … Each cart

A **covered wagon** is a kind of cart with a protective covering over it. If your readers would not be familiar with what a covered wagon is, you could use the name of a similar thing that your readers would recognize, or you could use a more general term. Alternate translation: [carts with coverings … a cart]
Support Reference: Translate Unknowns

ULT **to the face of the Dwelling**
UST to the sacred tent

Here, **to the face of** represents being in front of the Dwelling. If it would be helpful in your language, you could use an equivalent expression or plain language. Alternate translation: [before the Dwelling]
Support Reference: Metonymy

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
offering	their gifts
Yahweh	Yahweh's
cattle	bulls
leaders	leaders
ox	bull
of the Dwelling	the sacred tent

Numbers 7:4

ULT	UST
And Yahweh said to Moses, saying,	*Then Yahweh told Moses,*

ULT **saying**
UST Then … told

Here, the word **saying** introduces a direct quotation. See how you translated **saying** in 1:1.
Support Reference: Quotations and Quote Margins

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Yahweh	Yahweh
Moses	Moses

Numbers 7:5

ULT	UST
"Take from with them, and they shall be to serve the service of the tent of meeting. And you shall give them to the Levites, a man according to the mouth of his service."	*"Accept their gifts. The Levites must use them as they set up and take down the sacred tent. Give them to the Levites who can best use them as they do so."*

ULT **Take from with them**
UST Accept their gifts

Yahweh is leaving out some of the words that in many languages a sentence would need in order to be complete. You can supply these words from the context if that would be clearer in your language. Alternate translation: [Take the wagons and cattle from with them]
Support Reference: Ellipsis

ULT **to serve the service of**
UST as they set up and take down

Here, just as in Numbers 4, the words **serve** and **service** refer to tasks of setting up, taking down, and carrying the sacred tent. See how you translated these words in 4:30. Alternate translation: [for the physical labor required to move]
Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

ULT **to serve the service of**
UST as they set up and take down

The phrase **to serve the service** is poetic language in which a verb and its object come from the same root. You may be able to use the same construction in your language to express the meaning here. Alternatively, your language may have another way of saying this. Alternate translation: [to serve]
Support Reference: Poetry

ULT **the service of the tent of meeting**
UST as they set up and take down the sacred tent

If your language does not use an abstract noun for the idea of **service**, you could express the same idea in another way. Alternate translation: [as the tent of meeting needs to be served]
Support Reference: Abstract Nouns

ULT **a man**
UST who

In some languages it is more natural to express **a man** with a distributive form meaning "each man" or "each one." This refers to how Moses was to distribute the carts and oxen to each of the groups of Levites according to their needs. If your language has a distributive form, you may want to use it here. Alternate translation: [each man]
Support Reference: Generic Noun Phrases

ULT **according to the mouth of his service**
UST can best use them as they do so

Yahweh is using the expression **according to the mouth of his service** as a common expression of his culture to mean "according to how he was required to serve." If this phrase does not have that meaning in your language, you could use a comparable expression from your language that does have that meaning, or you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [according to how he was required to serve]

Support Reference: Idiom

ULT **his service**
UST as they do so

If your language does not use an abstract noun for the idea of **service**, you could express the same idea in another way. Alternate translation: [how he serves]

Support Reference: Abstract Nouns

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
serve	as they set up and take down
tent of meeting	the sacred tent
Levites	Levites

Numbers 7:6

ULT	UST
So Moses took the wagons and the cattle, and he gave them to the Levites.	*So Moses accepted the carts and the bulls. Then, he gave them to the Levites.*

ULT **the wagons**
UST the carts

See how you translated **wagons** in 7:3.
Support Reference: Translate Unknowns

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Moses	Moses
cattle	bulls
Levites	Levites

Numbers 7:7

ULT	UST
Two of the wagons and four of the cattle he gave to the sons of Gershon, according to the mouth of their service,	*He gave two carts and four bulls to the descendants of Gershon since they could use them as they set up and took down the sacred tent.*

ULT **to the sons of Gershon**
UST to the descendants of Gershon

This is the first of many times in this chapter that the author uses the phrase **the sons of** followed by a tribe or clan name to refer to the men who belong to that tribe or clan. See the chapter introduction for more information.
Support Reference: Metaphor

ULT **according to the mouth of their service**
UST since they could use them as they set up and took down the sacred tent

The author is using **according to the mouth of their service** as a common expression of his culture to mean "according to how they were required to serve." If this phrase does not have that meaning in your language, you could use a comparable expression from your language that does have that meaning, or you could state the meaning plainly. See how you translated the similar phrase in 7:5. Alternate translation: [according to how they were required to serve]
Support Reference: Idiom

ULT **their service**
UST as they set up and took down the sacred tent

If your language does not use an abstract noun for the idea of **service**, you could express the same idea in another way. Alternate translation: [how they serve]
Support Reference: Abstract Nouns

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
cattle	bulls

Numbers 7:8

ULT	UST
and four of the wagons and eight of the cattle he gave to the sons of Merari, according to the mouth of their service, in the hand of Ithamar, the son of Aaron the priest.	*He gave four carts and eight bulls to the descendants of Merari since they could use them as they set up and took down the sacred tent. Aaron the priest's son Ithamar was in charge of both these groups of Levites.*

ULT **according to the mouth of their service**

UST since they could use them as they set up and took down the sacred tent

See how you translated this phrase in 7:7.

Support Reference: Idiom

ULT **their service, in the hand of Ithamar**

UST as they set up and took down the sacred tent … Ithamar was in charge of both these groups of Levites

Here, the author means that both the **sons of Merari** and the "sons of Gershon" (7:7) are **in the hand of Ithamar**. You could indicate this explicitly in your translation if that would be helpful to your readers. Alternate translation: [their service. The service of the sons of Gershon and the sons of Merari was in the hand of Ithamar]

Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

ULT **their service**

UST as they set up and took down the sacred tent

If your language does not use an abstract noun for the idea of **service**, you could express the same idea in another way. Alternate translation: [how they serve]

Support Reference: Abstract Nouns

ULT **in the hand of Ithamar**

UST Ithamar was in charge of both these groups of Levites

The author is using **in the hand of** as a common expression of his culture to mean "under the control of" or "under the supervision of." If this phrase does not have that meaning in your language, you could use a comparable expression from your language that does have that meaning, or you could state the meaning plainly. See how you translated this phrase in 4:28. Alternate translation: [under the control of Ithamar]

Support Reference: Idiom

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Aaron	Aaron
priest	priest's

Numbers 7:9

ULT	UST
But to the sons of Kohath he did not give, for the service of the holy place was upon them. They carried on the shoulder.	*However, he did not give any carts or bulls to the descendants of Kohath. That was because they carried the things that belonged in the sacred tent. They had to carry those things themselves instead of using carts.*

ULT **was upon them**
UST themselves

Here, the author is speaking of the responsibility of caring for the holy items as if it were a physical burden that **was upon** the Kohathites. If this meaning would not be clear in your language, you could use a comparable expression or you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [was their duty]
Support Reference: Metaphor

ULT **But to the sons of Kohath he did not give, for the service of the holy place {was} upon them**
UST However, he did not give {any carts or bulls} to the descendants of Kohath. That was because they carried {the things that belonged in} the sacred tent … themselves

If it would be more natural in your language, you could reverse the order of these phrases, since the second phrase gives the reason for the result that the first phrase describes. Alternate translation: [But the service of the holy place was upon the sons of Kohath, so he did not give to them]
Support Reference: Connect — Reason-and-Result Relationship

ULT **he did not give**
UST he did not give any carts or bulls

The author is leaving out some of the words that in many languages a sentence would need in order to be complete. In **he did not give**, he does not say what Moses did not give to the Kohathites. You can supply these words from the context if that would be clearer in your language. Alternate translation: [he did not give any wagons or cattle]
Support Reference: Ellipsis

ULT **the service of**
UST they carried

If your language does not use an abstract noun for the idea of **service**, you could express the same idea in another way. Alternate translation: [serving]
Support Reference: Abstract Nouns

ULT **the holy place**
UST the things that belonged in the sacred tent

Here, **the holy place** represents the sacred items that were kept in the holy place. If it would be helpful in your language, you could use an equivalent expression or plain language. Alternate translation: [the things in the holy place]
Support Reference: Metonymy

ULT **They carried**
UST They had to carry those things

The author is leaving out some of the words that in many languages a sentence would need in order to be complete. You can supply these words from the context if that would be clearer in your language. Alternate translation: [They carried the holy things]
Support Reference: Ellipsis

ULT **on the shoulder**
UST instead of using carts

The author is not referring to a specific **shoulder**. He means their shoulders in general. If it would be helpful to your readers, you could use an expression that would be more natural in your language. Alternate translation: [on their shoulders]
Support Reference: Generic Noun Phrases

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
holy	sacred
carried	carry

Numbers 7:10

ULT	UST
And the leaders presented the dedication of the altar on the day of its being anointed. And the leaders presented their offering to the face of the altar.	*When Moses poured olive oil on the altar and set it apart, the men who led the Israelites offered gifts before the altar.*

ULT **the dedication of the altar**
UST Moses poured {olive oil} on the altar and set it apart

Here, **dedication** represents the gifts and offerings that were given to dedicate the altar. If it would be helpful in your language, you could use an equivalent expression or plain language. Alternate translation: [the dedication offerings for the altar]
Support Reference: Metonymy

ULT **the dedication of the altar**
UST Moses poured {olive oil} on the altar and set it apart

If your language does not use an abstract noun for the idea of **dedication**, you could express the same idea in another way. Alternate translation: [what they offered for when the altar was dedicated]
Support Reference: Abstract Nouns

ULT **its being anointed**
UST Moses poured olive oil … and set it apart

The expression **its being anointed** is a passive verbal form. If your language would not use that form, you could express the idea in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. If you need to say who does the action, the context indicates that it is Moses. Alternate translation: [Moses anointing it]
Support Reference: Active or Passive

ULT **And the leaders presented their offering**
UST the men who led {the Israelites} offered gifts

The author is using a construction in which a verb (**presented**) and its object (**offering**) come from the same root. You may be able to use the same construction in your language to express the meaning here. Alternatively, your language may have another way of saying this. Alternate translation: [And the leaders gave their offering]
Support Reference: Poetry

ULT **their offering**
UST gifts

The term **their offering** refers to the combined gifts from all the leaders, even though each leader brought his own individual offering. The author describes it as a single collective offering, though the next verse clarifies that the leaders presented their offerings one at a time over several days. If it would be clearer in your language, you could use the plural form to emphasize that there were multiple individual offerings. Alternate translation: [their offerings]
Support Reference: Collective Nouns

> ULT **to the face of the altar**
> UST before the altar

Here, **to the face of** represents being in front of the altar. If it would be helpful in your language, you could use an equivalent expression or plain language. Alternate translation: [in front of the altar]

Support Reference: Metonymy

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
leaders	the men who led the Israelites
dedication	Moses poured olive oil … and set it apart
altar	altar
anointed	Moses poured olive oil … and set it apart
offering	gifts

Numbers 7:11

ULT	UST
And Yahweh said to Moses, "One leader for the day, one leader for the day, they shall present their offering for the dedication of the altar."	*Yahweh told Moses, "On each of the next twelve days one man who leads the Israelites must offer the gifts that he offers because you set the altar apart."*

ULT **One leader for the day, one leader for the day**
UST On each of the next twelve days one man who leads the Israelites

Yahweh is using **One leader for the day, one leader for the day** as a common expression of his culture to mean "one leader on each separate day in sequence." If this phrase does not have that meaning in your language, you could use a comparable expression from your language that does have that meaning, or you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [One leader on each day for 12 days]
Support Reference: Idiom

ULT **they shall present their offering**
UST must offer the gifts that he offers

Yahweh is using a construction in which a verb (**present**) and its object (**offering**) come from the same root. You may be able to use the same construction in your language to express the meaning here. Alternatively, your language may have another way of saying this. Alternate translation: [they shall give their offering]
Support Reference: Poetry

ULT **their offering**
UST the gifts that he offers

In this verse, the word **offering** is singular in form, but it refers to the offerings of all the leaders of Israel as a group. If it would be helpful in your language, you could use the plural form of "offering." Alternate translation: [their offerings]
Support Reference: Collective Nouns

ULT **for the dedication of the altar**
UST because you set the altar apart

If your language does not use an abstract noun for the idea of **dedication**, you could express the same idea in another way. Alternate translation: [for when the altar is dedicated]
Support Reference: Abstract Nouns

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Yahweh	Yahweh
Moses	Moses
leader	On each of the next twelve days one man who leads the Israelites
day	days
offering	the gifts that he offers
dedication	because you set … apart
altar	altar

Numbers 7:12

ULT	UST
And the one presenting his offering on the first day was Nahshon, the son of Amminadab, for the tribe of Judah.	*On the first day, Nahshon son of Amminadab offered his gifts. He was from Judah tribe.*

ULT **And the one presenting his offering**
UST offered his gifts

The author is using a construction in which a verb (**presenting**) and its object (**offering**) come from the same root. You may be able to use the same construction in your language to express the meaning here. Alternatively, your language may have another way of saying this. Alternate translation: [And the one giving his offering]
Support Reference: Poetry

ULT **on the first day**
UST On the first day

If your language would not represent a number in a form such as **on the first day**, you could represent this number in a form that your language would use. Alternate translation: [on day one]
Support Reference: Ordinal Numbers

ULT **was Nahshon, the son of Amminadab**
UST Nahshon son of Amminadab

For these and the other names in this chapter, translate them as you did in chapter 1. See the chapter introduction for more information.
Support Reference: How to Translate Names

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
offering	his gifts
tribe	He was from
Judah	Judah

Numbers 7:13

ULT	UST
And his offering was one silver dish (its weight 130), one silver basin (70 shekels in the shekel of the holy place), the two of them full of flour mixed with the oil for a grain offering,	*He offered a silver dish that weighed one and one-half kilograms and a large silver bowl that weighed four-fifths of a kilogram. He weighed them the same way the priests do in the sacred tent. He filled both of them with flour with olive oil in it as a grain offering.*

ULT **one silver dish**

UST a silver dish that weighed one and one-half kilograms

A **silver dish** is a kind of large bowl made out of silver, although its exact shape is uncertain. If your readers would not be familiar with what a **silver dish** is, you could use the name of a similar thing that your readers would recognize, or you could use a more general term. Alternate translation: [one deep silver bowl]

Support Reference: Translate Unknowns

ULT **its weight 130**

UST that weighed one and one-half kilograms

The author is leaving out some of the words that in many languages a sentence would need in order to be complete. You can supply “shekels” from the context if that would be clearer in your language. Alternate translation: [its weight was 130 shekels]

Support Reference: Ellipsis

ULT **its weight 130**

UST that weighed one and one-half kilograms

These 130 **shekels** came to about one and one-half kilograms or about three and one-third pounds of silver. In your translation, you could use the ancient measurement and spell the word “shekel” the way it sounds in your language. You could also use the metric measurement given in the UST or use the measurement that your language and culture customarily use. Alternatively, you could use the ancient measurement and put a modern measurement in parentheses in the text or in a footnote.

Support Reference: Biblical Weight

ULT **one silver basin**

UST and a large silver bowl

A **silver basin** is a kind of jug or deep bowl used to store liquids, although its exact shape is uncertain. If your readers would not be familiar with what a **silver basin** is, you could use the name of a similar thing that your readers would recognize, or you could use a more general term. Alternate translation: [one silver pitcher]

Support Reference: Translate Unknowns

ULT **70 shekels**
UST that weighed four-fifths of a kilogram

These **70 shekels** came to about 800 grams or about 1.75 pounds of silver. In your translation, you could use the ancient measurement and spell the word "shekel" the way it sounds in your language. You could also use the metric measurement given in the UST or use the measurement that your language and culture customarily use. Alternatively, you could use the ancient measurement and put a modern measurement in parentheses in the text or in a footnote.
Support Reference: Biblical Weight

ULT **in the shekel of the holy place**
UST He weighed them the same way {the priests} do in the sacred tent

The author is using the possessive form to describe a **shekel** that was used in **the holy place**. If a speaker of your language would not use the possessive form for this, you could express this idea in another way. See the chapter introduction for more information about this **shekel**. Alternate translation: [in the shekel that is used in the holy place]
Support Reference: Possession

ULT **the two of them full of flour mixed with the oil**
UST He filled both of them with flour with olive oil in it

The expression **full of flour mixed with the oil** is a passive verbal form. If your language would not use that form, you could express the idea in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: [the two of which he had filled with flour that he had mixed with the oil]
Support Reference: Active or Passive

ULT **with the oil**
UST with olive oil in it

The author is not referring to a specific **oil**. He means oil in general. If it would be helpful to your readers, you could use an expression that would be more natural in your language. Alternate translation: [with oil]
Support Reference: Generic Noun Phrases

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
offering	He offered
silver	silver
holy place	in the sacred tent
oil	oil
grain offering	grain offering

Numbers 7:14

ULT	UST
one palm-sized bowl (ten gold) full of incense,	*He offered a gold ladle that weighed one-tenth of a kilogram. He filled it with incense.*

ULT **one palm-sized bowl**
UST He offered a … ladle that weighed one-tenth of a kilogram

A **palm-sized bowl** is a kind of small ceremonial dish about the size of a person's palm, although its exact shape is uncertain. If your readers would not be familiar with what a palm-sized bowl is, you could use a more general term or explain it in a footnote. Alternate translation: [one large spoon]
Support Reference: Translate Unknowns

ULT **ten gold**
UST gold … that weighed one-tenth of a kilogram

The author is leaving out some of the words that in many languages a sentence would need in order to be complete. Here **ten gold** means "ten shekels of gold," which the author has shortened. You can supply these words from the context if that would be clearer in your language. Alternate translation: [ten gold shekels]
Support Reference: Ellipsis

ULT **ten gold**
UST gold … that weighed one-tenth of a kilogram

These **ten gold** shekels came to about 114 grams or a quarter pound of gold. In your translation, you could use the ancient measurement and spell the word "shekel" the way it sounds in your language. You could also use the metric measurement given in the UST or use the measurement that your language and culture customarily use. Alternatively, you could use the ancient measurement and put a modern measurement in parentheses in the text or in a footnote.
Support Reference: Biblical Weight

ULT **full of incense**
UST He filled it with incense

The expression **full of incense** is a passive verbal form. If your language would not use that form, you could express the idea in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: [that he had filled with incense]
Support Reference: Active or Passive

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
gold	gold
incense	incense

Numbers 7:15

ULT	UST
one bull (a son of cattle), one ram, one male lamb (a son of his year) for a burnt offering,	*As a wholly burned sacrifice, he offered a young bull, a ram, and a male sheep that was one year old.*

ULT **a son of cattle**
UST a young bull

Here, the author uses the phrase **son of cattle** to indicate that the bull was young. If this meaning would not be clear in your language, you could use a comparable expression or you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [a young one]
Support Reference: Metaphor

ULT **a son of his year**
UST that was one year old

Here, the author is speaking of a male lamb as if it were a **son of his year**, meaning it was one year old. If this meaning would not be clear in your language, you could use a comparable expression or you could state the meaning plainly. See how you translated this phrase in 6:12. Alternate translation: [a year old]
Support Reference: Metaphor

ULT **his year) for a burnt offering**
UST As a wholly burned sacrifice, he offered … that was one year old

The author implies that all three animals were used for the **burnt offering**. You could indicate this explicitly in your translation if that would be helpful to your readers. Alternate translation: [his year), all three for a burnt offering]
Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
bull	bull
cattle	bull
ram	ram
lamb	and … male sheep
year	year
burnt offering	As a wholly burned sacrifice, he offered

Numbers 7:16

ULT	UST
one buck of the goats for a sin offering,	*As a purifying sacrifice, he offered a male goat.*

> ULT **one buck of the goats**
> UST a male goat

The author is using the possessive form to describe a **buck** that is characterized by being **of the goats**. If a speaker of your language would not use the possessive form for this, you could express this idea in another way. Alternate translation: [a goat that is a buck] or [an adult male goat]

Support Reference: Possession

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
goats	goat
sin offering	As a purifying sacrifice, he offered

Numbers 7:17

ULT	UST
and for the sacrifice of the peace offering two cattle, five rams, five male goats, five male lambs (sons of a year). This was the offering of Nahshon, the son of Amminadab.	*As a fellowship sacrifice, he offered two oxen, five rams, five male goats, and five male sheep that were one year old. Nahshon son of Amminadab gave all those gifts.*

ULT **sons of a year**
UST that were one year old

Here, the author is speaking as if the lambs were actually **sons of a year**. This expression means that they were one year old. If this meaning would not be clear in your language, you could use a comparable expression or you could state the meaning plainly. See how you translated the similar phrase in 7:15. Alternate translation: [each a year old]
Support Reference: Metaphor

ULT **and for the sacrifice of the peace offering**
UST As a fellowship sacrifice, he offered

The author is using the possessive form to describe a **sacrifice** that is part of the **peace offering**. If a speaker of your language would not use the possessive form for this, you could express this idea in another way. Alternate translation: [and for the animal sacrifices that are part of the peace offering]
Support Reference: Possession

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
sacrifice	sacrifice
peace offering	fellowship
cattle	oxen
rams	rams
goats	goats
lambs	and … male sheep
year	year

Numbers 7:18

ULT	UST
On the second day, Nethanel, the son of Zuar, the leader of Issachar, presented.	*On the second day, Nethanel son of Zuar, who led Issachar tribe, offered his gifts.*

ULT **On the second day**
UST On the second day

If your language would not represent a number in a form such as **the second day**, you could represent this number in a form that your language would use. Alternate translation: [On day two]
Support Reference: Ordinal Numbers

ULT **presented**
UST offered his gifts

The author is leaving out some of the words that in many languages a sentence would need in order to be complete. You can supply these words from the context if that would be clearer in your language. Alternate translation: [presented his offering]
Support Reference: Ellipsis

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Issachar	Issachar

Numbers 7:19

ULT	UST
He presented his offering: one silver dish (its weight 130), one silver basin (70 shekels in the shekel of the holy place), the two of them full of flour mixed with the oil for a grain offering,	*He offered a silver dish that weighed one and one-half kilograms and a large silver bowl that weighed four-fifths of a kilogram. He weighed them the same way the priests do in the sacred tent. He filled both of them with flour with olive oil in it as a grain offering.*

ULT **He presented his offering**
UST He offered

It might seem that the expression **He presented his offering** contains extra information that would not be natural to express in your language since 7:18 already states that Nethanel presented. If so, you could shorten it. Alternate translation: [This was his offering]
Support Reference: Making Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information Explicit

ULT **He presented his offering**
UST He offered

Here the author is using a construction in which a verb (**presented**) and its object (**offering**) come from the same root. You may be able to use the same construction in your language to express the meaning here. Alternatively, your language may have another way of saying this. Alternate translation: [He gave his offering]
Support Reference: Poetry

ULT **one silver dish (its weight 130), one silver basin (70 shekels in the shekel of the holy place), the two of them full of flour mixed with the oil for a grain offering**
UST a silver dish that weighed one and one-half kilograms and a large silver bowl that weighed four-fifths of a kilogram. He weighed them the same way {the priests} do in the sacred tent. He filled both of them with flour with olive oil in it as a grain offering

See how you translated the identical words in 7:13.

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
offering	He offered
silver	silver
holy	sacred
oil	oil
grain offering	grain offering

Numbers 7:20

ULT	UST
one palm-sized bowl (ten gold) full of incense,	*He offered a gold ladle that weighed one-tenth of a kilogram. He filled it with incense.*

> ULT **one palm-sized bowl (ten gold) full of incense**
> UST He offered a gold ladle that weighed one-tenth of a kilogram. He filled it with incense

This verse is identical to 7:14, so translate it the same way.

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
gold	gold
incense	incense

Numbers 7:21

ULT	UST
one bull (a son of cattle), one ram, one male lamb (a son of his year) for a burnt offering,	*As a wholly burned sacrifice, he offered a young bull, a ram, and a male sheep that was one year old.*

ULT one bull (a son of cattle), one ram, one male lamb (a son of his year) for a burnt offering

UST As a wholly burned sacrifice, {he offered} a young bull, a ram, and a male sheep that was one year old

This verse is identical to 7:15, so translate it the same way.

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
bull	bull
cattle	bull
ram	ram
lamb	and … male sheep
year	year
burnt offering	As a wholly burned sacrifice, he offered

Numbers 7:22

ULT	UST
one buck of the goats for a sin offering,	*As a purifying sacrifice, he offered a male goat.*

ULT **one buck of the goats for a sin offering**
UST As a purifying sacrifice, {he offered} a male goat

This verse is identical to 7:16, so translate it the same way.

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
goats	goat
sin offering	As a purifying sacrifice, he offered

Numbers 7:23

ULT	UST
and for the sacrifice of the peace offering two cattle, five rams, five male goats, five male lambs (sons of a year). This was the offering of Nethanel, the son of Zuar.	*As a fellowship sacrifice, he offered two oxen, five rams, five male goats, and five male sheep that were one year old. Nethanel son of Zuar gave all those gifts.*

ULT **and for the sacrifice of the peace offering two cattle, five rams, five male goats, five male lambs (sons of a year). This {was} the offering of Nethanel, the son of Zuar**

UST As a fellowship sacrifice, {he offered} two oxen, five rams, five male goats, and five male sheep that were one year old. Nethanel son of Zuar gave all those gifts

Besides the different names, this verse is identical to 7:17, so translate it the same way, changing only the names.

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
sacrifice	sacrifice
peace offering	fellowship
cattle	oxen
rams	rams
goats	goats
lambs	and … male sheep
year	year

Numbers 7:24

ULT	UST
On the third day, the leader for the sons of Zebulun, Eliab, the son of Helon:	*On the third day, Eliab son of Helon, who led the descendants of Zebulun, offered his gifts.*

ULT **On the third day**

UST On the third day

Languages have different ways of expressing ordinal numbers. The phrase **third day** uses an ordinal number. If your language does not use ordinal numbers, you could say “day three” or express this idea in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: [On day three]

Support Reference: Ordinal Numbers

ULT **Eliab, the son of Helon**

UST Eliab son of Helon … offered his gifts

The author is leaving out some of the words that in many languages a sentence would need in order to be complete. You can supply the words “presented an offering” from the context if that would be clearer in your language. Alternate translation: [Eliab, the son of Helon, presented an offering]

Support Reference: Ellipsis

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
leader	who
Zebulun	Zebulun

Numbers 7:25

ULT	UST
his offering was one silver dish (its weight 130), one silver basin (70 shekels in the shekel of the holy place), the two of them full of flour mixed with the oil for a grain offering,	*He offered a silver dish that weighed one and one-half kilograms and a large silver bowl that weighed four-fifths of a kilogram. He weighed them the same way the priests do in the sacred tent. He filled both of them with flour with olive oil in it as a grain offering.*

ULT **was one silver dish (its weight 130), one silver basin (70 shekels in the shekel of the holy place), the two of them full of flour mixed with the oil for a grain offering**

UST a silver dish that weighed one and one-half kilograms and a large silver bowl that weighed four-fifths of a kilogram. He weighed them the same way {the priests} do in the sacred tent. He filled both of them with flour with olive oil in it as a grain offering

See how you translated the identical words in 7:13.

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
offering	He offered
silver	silver
holy	sacred
oil	oil
offering	offering

Numbers 7:26

ULT	UST
one palm-sized bowl (ten gold) full of incense,	*He offered a gold ladle that weighed one-tenth of a kilogram. He filled it with incense.*

ULT **one palm-sized bowl (ten gold) full of incense**
UST He offered a gold ladle that weighed one-tenth of a kilogram. He filled it with incense

This verse is identical to 7:14, so translate it the same way.

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
gold	gold
incense	incense

Numbers 7:27

ULT	UST
one bull (a son of cattle), one ram, one male lamb (a son of his year) for a burnt offering,	*As a wholly burned sacrifice, he offered a young bull, a ram, and a male sheep that was one year old.*

ULT one bull (a son of cattle), one ram, one male lamb (a son of his year) for a burnt offering

UST As a wholly burned sacrifice, {he offered} a young bull, a ram, and a male sheep that was one year old

This verse is identical to 7:15, so translate it the same way.

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
bull	bull
cattle	bull
ram	ram
lamb	and … male sheep
year	year
burnt offering	As a wholly burned sacrifice, he offered

Numbers 7:28

ULT	UST
one buck of the goats for a sin offering,	*As a purifying sacrifice, he offered a male goat.*

ULT **one buck of the goats for a sin offering**
UST As a purifying sacrifice, {he offered} a male goat

This verse is identical to 7:16, so translate it the same way.

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
goats	goat
sin offering	As a purifying sacrifice, he offered

Numbers 7:29

ULT	UST
and for the sacrifice of the peace offering two cattle, five rams, five male goats, five male lambs (sons of a year). This was the offering of Eliab, the son of Helon.	*As a fellowship sacrifice, he offered two oxen, five rams, five male goats, and five male sheep that were one year old. Eliab son of Helon gave all those gifts.*

ULT **and for the sacrifice of the peace offering two cattle, five rams, five male goats, five male lambs (sons of a year). This {was} the offering of Eliab, the son of Helon**

UST As a fellowship sacrifice, {he offered} two oxen, five rams, five male goats, and five male sheep that were one year old. Eliab son of Helon gave all those gifts

Besides the different names, this verse is identical to 7:17, so translate it the same way, changing only the names.

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
sacrifice	sacrifice
peace offering	fellowship
cattle	oxen
rams	rams
goats	goats
lambs	and … male sheep
year	year

Numbers 7:30

ULT	UST
On the fourth day, the leader for the sons of Reuben, Elizur, the son of Shedeur:	*On the fourth day, Elizur son of Shedeur, who led the descendants of Reuben, offered his gifts.*

> ULT **On the fourth day, the leader for the sons of Reuben, Elizur, the son of Shedeur**
> UST On the fourth day, Elizur son of Shedeur, who led the descendants of Reuben, offered his gifts

Besides the different names and number, this verse is identical to 7:24, so translate it the same way, changing only the names and number.

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
leader	who led
Reuben	Reuben

Numbers 7:31

ULT	UST
his offering was one silver dish (its weight 130), one silver basin (70 shekels in the shekel of the holy place), the two of them full of flour mixed with the oil for a grain offering,	*He offered a silver dish that weighed one and one-half kilograms and a large silver bowl that weighed four-fifths of a kilogram. He weighed them the same way the priests do in the sacred tent. He filled both of them with flour with olive oil in it as a grain offering.*

ULT **his offering {was} one silver dish (its weight 130), one silver basin (70 shekels in the shekel of the holy place), the two of them full of flour mixed with the oil for a grain offering**
UST He offered a silver dish that weighed one and one-half kilograms and a large silver bowl that weighed four-fifths of a kilogram. He weighed them the same way {the priests} do in the sacred tent. He filled both of them with flour with olive oil in it as a grain offering

This verse is identical to 7:25, so translate it the same way.

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
silver	silver
holy	sacred
oil	oil
offering	offering

Numbers 7:32

ULT	UST
one palm-sized bowl (ten gold) full of incense,	*He offered a gold ladle that weighed one-tenth of a kilogram. He filled it with incense.*

ULT **one palm-sized bowl (ten gold) full of incense**
UST He offered a gold ladle that weighed one-tenth of a kilogram. He filled it with incense

This verse is identical to 7:14, so translate it the same way.

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
gold	gold
incense	incense

Numbers 7:33

ULT	UST
one bull (a son of cattle), one ram, one male lamb (a son of his year) for a burnt offering,	*As a wholly burned sacrifice, he offered a young bull, a ram, and a male sheep that was one year old.*

ULT **one bull (a son of cattle), one ram, one male lamb (a son of his year) for a burnt offering**

UST As a wholly burned sacrifice, {he offered} a young bull, a ram, and a male sheep that was one year old

This verse is identical to 7:15, so translate it the same way.

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
bull	bull
cattle	bull
ram	ram
lamb	and … male sheep
burnt offering	As a wholly burned sacrifice, he offered

Numbers 7:34

ULT	UST
one buck of the goats for a sin offering,	*As a purifying sacrifice, he offered a male goat.*

ULT **one buck of the goats for a sin offering**
UST As a purifying sacrifice, {he offered} a male goat

This verse is identical to 7:16, so translate it the same way.

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
goats	goat
sin offering	As a purifying sacrifice, he offered

Numbers 7:35

ULT	UST
and for the sacrifice of the peace offering two cattle, five rams, five male goats, five male lambs (sons of a year). This was the offering of Elizur, the son of Shedeur.	*As a fellowship sacrifice, he offered two oxen, five rams, five male goats, and five male sheep that were one year old. Elizur son of Shedeur gave all those gifts.*

ULT **and for the sacrifice of the peace offering two cattle, five rams, five male goats, five male lambs (sons of a year). This {was} the offering of Elizur, the son of Shedeur**

UST As a fellowship sacrifice, {he offered} two oxen, five rams, five male goats, and five male sheep that were one year old. Elizur son of Shedeur gave all those gifts

Besides the different names, this verse is identical to 7:17, so translate it the same way, changing only the names.

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
sacrifice	sacrifice
peace offering	fellowship
cattle	oxen
rams	rams
goats	goats
lambs	and … male sheep

Numbers 7:36

ULT	UST
On the fifth day, the leader for the sons of Simeon, Shelumiel, the son of Zurishaddai:	*On the fifth day, Shelumiel son of Zurishaddai, who led the descendants of Simeon, offered his gifts.*

ULT **On the fifth day, the leader for the sons of Simeon, Shelumiel, the son of Zurishaddai**
UST On the fifth day, Shelumiel son of Zurishaddai, who led the descendants of Simeon, offered his gifts

Besides the different names and number, this verse is identical to 7:24, so translate it the same way, changing only the names and number.

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
leader	who led
Simeon	Simeon

Numbers 7:37

ULT	UST
his offering was one silver dish (its weight 130), one silver basin (70 shekels in the shekel of the holy place), the two of them full of flour mixed with the oil for a grain offering,	*He offered a silver dish that weighed one and one-half kilograms and a large silver bowl that weighed four-fifths of a kilogram. He weighed them the same way the priests do in the sacred tent. He filled both of them with flour with olive oil in it as a grain offering.*

ULT **his offering {was} one silver dish (its weight 130), one silver basin (70 shekels in the shekel of the holy place), the two of them full of flour mixed with the oil for a grain offering**
UST He offered a silver dish that weighed one and one-half kilograms and a large silver bowl that weighed four-fifths of a kilogram. He weighed them the same way {the priests} do in the sacred tent. He filled both of them with flour with olive oil in it as a grain offering

This verse is identical to 7:25, so translate it the same way.

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
offering	He offered
silver	silver
holy place	in the sacred tent
oil	oil
grain offering	grain offering

Numbers 7:38

ULT	UST
one palm-sized bowl (ten gold) full of incense,	*He offered a gold ladle that weighed one-tenth of a kilogram. He filled it with incense.*

ULT **one palm-sized bowl (ten gold) full of incense**
UST He offered a gold ladle that weighed one-tenth of a kilogram. He filled it with incense

This verse is identical to 7:14, so translate it the same way.

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
gold	gold
incense	incense

Numbers 7:39

ULT	UST
one bull (a son of cattle), one ram, one male lamb (a son of his year) for a burnt offering,	*As a wholly burned sacrifice, he offered a young bull, a ram, and a male sheep that was one year old.*

ULT one bull (a son of cattle), one ram, one male lamb (a son of his year) for a burnt offering

UST As a wholly burned sacrifice, {he offered} a young bull, a ram, and a male sheep that was one year old

This verse is identical to 7:15, so translate it the same way.

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
bull	bull
cattle	bull
ram	ram
lamb	and a male sheep
burnt offering	As a wholly burned sacrifice, he offered

Numbers 7:40

ULT	UST
one buck of the goats for a sin offering,	*As a purifying sacrifice, he offered a male goat.*

ULT **one buck of the goats for a sin offering**
UST As a purifying sacrifice, {he offered} a male goat

This verse is identical to 7:16, so translate it the same way.

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
goats	goat
sin offering	As a purifying sacrifice, he offered

Numbers 7:41

ULT	UST
and for the sacrifice of the peace offering two cattle, five rams, five male goats, five male lambs (sons of a year). This was the offering of Shelumiel, the son of Zurishaddai.	*As a fellowship sacrifice, he offered two oxen, five rams, five male goats, and five male sheep that were one year old. Shelumiel son of Zurishaddai gave all those gifts.*

ULT **and for the sacrifice of the peace offering two cattle, five rams, five male goats, five male lambs (sons of a year). This {was} the offering of Shelumiel, the son of Zurishaddai**

UST As a fellowship sacrifice, {he offered} two oxen, five rams, five male goats, and five male sheep that were one year old. Shelumiel son of Zurishaddai gave all those gifts

Besides the different names, this verse is identical to 7:17, so translate it the same way, changing only the names.

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
sacrifice	sacrifice
peace offering	fellowship
cattle	oxen
rams	rams
goats	goats
lambs	and … male sheep

Numbers 7:42

ULT	UST
On the sixth day, the leader for the sons of Gad, Eliasaph, the son of Deuel:	*On the sixth day, Eliasaph son of Deuel, who led the descendants of Gad, offered his gifts.*

ULT **On the sixth day, the leader for the sons of Gad, Eliasaph, the son of Deuel**

UST On the sixth day, Eliasaph son of Deuel, who led the descendants of Gad, offered his gifts

Besides the different names and number, this verse is identical to 7:24, so translate it the same way, changing only the names and number.

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
leader	who led
Gad	Gad

Numbers 7:43

ULT	UST
his offering was one silver dish (its weight 130), one silver basin (70 shekels in the shekel of the holy place), the two of them full of flour mixed with the oil for a grain offering,	*He offered a silver dish that weighed one and one-half kilograms and a large silver bowl that weighed four-fifths of a kilogram. He weighed them the same way the priests do in the sacred tent. He filled both of them with flour with olive oil in it as a grain offering.*

ULT **his offering {was} one silver dish (its weight 130), one silver basin (70 shekels in the shekel of the holy place), the two of them full of flour mixed with the oil for a grain offering**
UST He offered a silver dish that weighed one and one-half kilograms and a large silver bowl that weighed four-fifths of a kilogram. He weighed them the same way {the priests} do in the sacred tent. He filled both of them with flour with olive oil in it as a grain offering

This verse is identical to 7:25, so translate it the same way.

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
offering	He offered
silver	silver
holy place	in the sacred tent
oil	oil
grain offering	grain offering

Numbers 7:44

ULT	UST
one palm-sized bowl (ten gold) full of incense,	*He offered a gold ladle that weighed one-tenth of a kilogram. He filled it with incense.*

ULT **one palm-sized bowl (ten gold) full of incense**
UST He offered a gold ladle that weighed one-tenth of a kilogram. He filled it with incense

This verse is identical to 7:14, so translate it the same way.

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
gold	gold
incense	incense

Numbers 7:45

ULT	UST
one bull (a son of cattle), one ram, one male lamb (a son of his year) for a burnt offering,	*As a wholly burned sacrifice, he offered a young bull, a ram, and a male sheep that was one year old.*

ULT **one bull (a son of cattle), one ram, one male lamb (a son of his year) for a burnt offering**

UST As a wholly burned sacrifice, {he offered} a young bull, a ram, and a male sheep that was one year old

This verse is identical to 7:15, so translate it the same way.

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
bull	bull
cattle	bull
ram	ram
lamb	and a male sheep
burnt offering	As a wholly burned sacrifice, he offered

Numbers 7:46

ULT	UST
one buck of the goats for a sin offering,	*As a purifying sacrifice, he offered a male goat.*

ULT **one buck of the goats for a sin offering**
UST As a purifying sacrifice, {he offered} a male goat

This verse is identical to 7:16, so translate it the same way.

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
goats	goat
sin offering	As a purifying sacrifice, he offered

Numbers 7:47

ULT	UST
and for the sacrifice of the peace offering two cattle, five rams, five male goats, five male lambs (sons of a year). This was the offering of Eliasaph, the son of Deuel.	*As a fellowship sacrifice, he offered two oxen, five rams, five male goats, and five male sheep that were one year old. Eliasaph son of Deuel gave all those gifts.*

ULT **and for the sacrifice of the peace offering two cattle, five rams, five male goats, five male lambs (sons of a year). This {was} the offering of Eliasaph, the son of Deuel**

UST As a fellowship sacrifice, {he offered} two oxen, five rams, five male goats, and five male sheep that were one year old. Eliasaph son of Deuel gave all those gifts

Besides the different names, this verse is identical to 7:17, so translate it the same way, changing only the names.

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
sacrifice	sacrifice
peace offering	fellowship
cattle	oxen
rams	rams
goats	goats
lambs	and … male sheep

Numbers 7:48

ULT	UST
On the seventh day, the leader for the sons of Ephraim, Elishama, the son of Ammihud:	*On the seventh day, Elishama son of Ammihud, who led the descendants of Ephraim, offered his gifts.*

ULT **On the seventh day, the leader for the sons of Ephraim, Elishama, the son of Ammihud**

UST On the seventh day, Elishama son of Ammihud, who led the descendants of Ephraim, offered his gifts

Besides the different names and number, this verse is identical to 7:24, so translate it the same way, changing only the names and number.

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
leader	who led
Ephraim	Ephraim

Numbers 7:49

ULT	UST
his offering was one silver dish (its weight 130), one silver basin (70 shekels in the shekel of the holy place), the two of them full of flour mixed with the oil for a grain offering,	*He offered a silver dish that weighed one and one-half kilograms and a large silver bowl that weighed four-fifths of a kilogram. He weighed them the same way the priests do in the sacred tent. He filled both of them with flour with olive oil in it as a grain offering.*

ULT **his offering {was} one silver dish (its weight 130), one silver basin (70 shekels in the shekel of the holy place), the two of them full of flour mixed with the oil for a grain offering**
UST He offered a silver dish that weighed one and one-half kilograms and a large silver bowl that weighed four-fifths of a kilogram. He weighed them the same way {the priests} do in the sacred tent. He filled both of them with flour with olive oil in it as a grain offering

This verse is identical to 7:25, so translate it the same way.

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
offering	He offered
silver	silver
silver	silver
holy	sacred
oil	oil
grain offering	grain offering

Numbers 7:50

ULT	UST
one palm-sized bowl (ten gold) full of incense,	*He offered a gold ladle that weighed one-tenth of a kilogram. He filled it with incense.*

ULT **one palm-sized bowl (ten gold) full of incense**
UST He offered a gold ladle that weighed one-tenth of a kilogram. He filled it with incense

This verse is identical to 7:14, so translate it the same way.

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
gold	gold
incense	incense

Numbers 7:51

ULT	UST
one bull (a son of cattle), one ram, one male lamb (a son of his year) for a burnt offering,	*As a wholly burned sacrifice, he offered a young bull, a ram, and a male sheep that was one year old.*

ULT one bull (a son of cattle), one ram, one male lamb (a son of his year) for a burnt offering

UST As a wholly burned sacrifice, {he offered} a young bull, a ram, and a male sheep that was one year old

This verse is identical to 7:15, so translate it the same way.

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
bull	bull
cattle	bull
ram	ram
lamb	and a male sheep
burnt offering	As a wholly burned sacrifice, he offered

Numbers 7:52

ULT	UST
one buck of the goats for a sin offering,	*As a purifying sacrifice, he offered a male goat.*

ULT **one buck of the goats for a sin offering**
UST As a purifying sacrifice, {he offered} a male goat

This verse is identical to 7:16, so translate it the same way.

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
goats	goat
sin offering	As a purifying sacrifice, he offered

Numbers 7:53

ULT	UST
and for the sacrifice of the peace offering two cattle, five rams, five male goats, five male lambs (sons of a year). This was the offering of Elishama, the son of Ammihud.	*As a fellowship sacrifice, he offered two oxen, five rams, five male goats, and five male sheep that were one year old. Elishama son of Ammihud gave all those gifts.*

ULT **and for the sacrifice of the peace offering two cattle, five rams, five male goats, five male lambs (sons of a year). This {was} the offering of Elishama, the son of Ammihud**

UST As a fellowship sacrifice, {he offered} two oxen, five rams, five male goats, and five male sheep that were one year old. Elishama son of Ammihud gave all those gifts

Besides the different names, this verse is identical to 7:17, so translate it the same way, changing only the names.

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
sacrifice	sacrifice
peace offering	fellowship
cattle	oxen
rams	rams
goats	goats
lambs	and … male sheep

Numbers 7:54

ULT	UST
On the eighth day, the leader for the sons of Manasseh, Gamaliel, the son of Pedahzur:	*On the eighth day, Gamaliel son of Pedahzur, who led the descendants of Manasseh offered his gifts.*

ULT **On the eighth day, the leader for the sons of Manasseh, Gamaliel, the son of Pedahzur**
UST On the eighth day, Gamaliel son of Pedahzur, who led the descendants of Manasseh offered his gifts

Besides the different names and number, this verse is identical to 7:24, so translate it the same way, changing only the names and number.

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
leader	who led
Manasseh	Manasseh

Numbers 7:55

ULT	UST
his offering was one silver dish (its weight 130), one silver basin (70 shekels in the shekel of the holy place), the two of them full of flour mixed with the oil for a grain offering,	*He offered a silver dish that weighed one and one-half kilograms and a large silver bowl that weighed four-fifths of a kilogram. He weighed them the same way the priests do in the sacred tent. He filled both of them with flour with olive oil in it as a grain offering.*

ULT **his offering {was} one silver dish (its weight 130), one silver basin (70 shekels in the shekel of the holy place), the two of them full of flour mixed with the oil for a grain offering**
UST He offered a silver dish that weighed one and one-half kilograms and a large silver bowl that weighed four-fifths of a kilogram. He weighed them the same way {the priests} do in the sacred tent. He filled both of them with flour with olive oil in it as a grain offering

This verse is identical to 7:25, so translate it the same way.

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
offering	He offered
silver	silver
holy place	in the sacred tent
oil	oil
grain offering	grain offering

Numbers 7:56

ULT	UST
one palm-sized bowl (ten gold) full of incense,	*He offered a gold ladle that weighed one-tenth of a kilogram. He filled it with incense.*

ULT **one palm-sized bowl (ten gold) full of incense**
UST He offered a gold ladle that weighed one-tenth of a kilogram. He filled it with incense

This verse is identical to 7:14, so translate it the same way.

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
gold	gold
incense	incense

Numbers 7:57

ULT	UST
one bull (a son of cattle), one ram, one male lamb (a son of his year) for a burnt offering,	*As a wholly burned sacrifice, he offered a young bull, a ram, and a male sheep that was one year old.*

ULT one bull (a son of cattle), one ram, one male lamb (a son of his year) for a burnt offering

UST As a wholly burned sacrifice, {he offered} a young bull, a ram, and a male sheep that was one year old

This verse is identical to 7:15, so translate it the same way.

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
bull	bull
cattle	bull
ram	ram
lamb	and a male sheep
burnt offering	As a wholly burned sacrifice, he offered

Numbers 7:58

ULT	UST
one buck of the goats for a sin offering,	*As a purifying sacrifice, he offered a male goat.*

ULT **one buck of the goats for a sin offering**
UST As a purifying sacrifice, {he offered} a male goat

This verse is identical to 7:16, so translate it the same way.

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
goats	goat
sin offering	As a purifying sacrifice, he offered

Numbers 7:59

ULT	UST
and for the sacrifice of the peace offering two cattle, five rams, five male goats, five male lambs (sons of a year). This was the offering of Gamaliel, the son of Pedahzur.	*As a fellowship sacrifice, he offered two oxen, five rams, five male goats, and five male sheep that were one year old. Gamaliel son of Pedahzur gave all those gifts.*

ULT **and for the sacrifice of the peace offering two cattle, five rams, five male goats, five male lambs (sons of a year). This {was} the offering of Gamaliel, the son of Pedahzur**

UST As a fellowship sacrifice, {he offered} two oxen, five rams, five male goats, and five male sheep that were one year old. Gamaliel son of Pedahzur gave all those gifts

Besides the different names, this verse is identical to 7:17, so translate it the same way, changing only the names.

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
sacrifice	sacrifice
peace offering	fellowship
cattle	oxen
rams	rams
goats	goats
lambs	male sheep

Numbers 7:60

ULT	UST
On the ninth day, the leader for the sons of Benjamin, Abidan, the son of Gideoni:	*On the ninth day, Abidan son of Gideoni, who led the descendants of Benjamin, offered his gifts.*

ULT **On the ninth day, the leader for the sons of Benjamin, Abidan, the son of Gideoni**
UST On the ninth day, Abidan son of Gideoni, who led the descendants of Benjamin, offered his gifts

Besides the different names and number, this verse is identical to 7:24, so translate it the same way, changing only the names and number.

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
leader	who led
Benjamin	Benjamin

Numbers 7:61

ULT	UST
his offering was one silver dish (its weight 130), one silver basin (70 shekels in the shekel of the holy place), the two of them full of flour mixed with the oil for a grain offering,	*He offered a silver dish that weighed one and one-half kilograms and a large silver bowl that weighed four-fifths of a kilogram. He weighed them the same way the priests do in the sacred tent. He filled both of them with flour with olive oil in it as a grain offering.*

ULT **his offering {was} one silver dish (its weight 130), one silver basin (70 shekels in the shekel of the holy place), the two of them full of flour mixed with the oil for a grain offering**
UST He offered a silver dish that weighed one and one-half kilograms and a large silver bowl that weighed four-fifths of a kilogram. He weighed them the same way {the priests} do in the sacred tent. He filled both of them with flour with olive oil in it as a grain offering

This verse is identical to 7:25, so translate it the same way.

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
offering	He offered
silver	silver
holy place	in the sacred tent
oil	oil
grain offering	grain offering

Numbers 7:62

ULT	UST
one palm-sized bowl (ten gold) full of incense,	*He offered a gold ladle that weighed one-tenth of a kilogram. He filled it with incense.*

> ULT **one palm-sized bowl (ten gold) full of incense**
> UST He offered a gold ladle that weighed one-tenth of a kilogram. He filled it with incense

This verse is identical to 7:14, so translate it the same way.

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
gold	gold
incense	incense

Numbers 7:63

ULT	UST
one bull (a son of cattle), one ram, one male lamb (a son of his year) for a burnt offering,	*As a wholly burned sacrifice, he offered a young bull, a ram, and a male sheep that was one year old.*

ULT one bull (a son of cattle), one ram, one male lamb (a son of his year) for a burnt offering

UST As a wholly burned sacrifice, {he offered} a young bull, a ram, and a male sheep that was one year old

This verse is identical to 7:15, so translate it the same way.

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
bull	bull
cattle	bull
ram	ram
lamb	and … male sheep
burnt offering	As a wholly burned sacrifice, he offered

Numbers 7:64

ULT	UST
one buck of the goats for a sin offering,	*As a purifying sacrifice, he offered a male goat.*

ULT **one buck of the goats for a sin offering**
UST As a purifying sacrifice, {he offered} a male goat

This verse is identical to 7:16, so translate it the same way.

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
goats	goat
sin offering	As a purifying sacrifice, he offered

Numbers 7:65

ULT	UST
and for the sacrifice of the peace offering two cattle, five rams, five male goats, five male lambs (sons of a year). This was the offering of Abidan, the son of Gideoni.	*As a fellowship sacrifice, he offered two oxen, five rams, five male goats, and five male sheep that were one year old. Abidan son of Gideoni gave all those gifts.*

ULT **and for the sacrifice of the peace offering two cattle, five rams, five male goats, five male lambs (sons of a year). This {was} the offering of Abidan, the son of Gideoni**

UST As a fellowship sacrifice, {he offered} two oxen, five rams, five male goats, and five male sheep that were one year old. Abidan son of Gideoni gave all those gifts

Besides the different names, this verse is identical to 7:17, so translate it the same way, changing only the names.

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
sacrifice	sacrifice
peace offering	fellowship
cattle	oxen
rams	rams
goats	goats
lambs	and … male sheep

Numbers 7:66

ULT	UST
On the tenth day, the leader for the sons of Dan, Ahiezer, the son of Ammishaddai:	*On the tenth day, Ahiezer son of Ammishaddai, who led the descendants of Dan, offered his gifts.*

ULT **On the tenth day, the leader for the sons of Dan, Ahiezer, the son of Ammishaddai**
UST On the tenth day, Ahiezer son of Ammishaddai, who led the descendants of Dan, offered his gifts

Besides the different names and number, this verse is identical to 7:24, so translate it the same way, changing only the names and number.

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
leader	who led
Dan	Dan

Numbers 7:67

ULT	UST
his offering was one silver dish (its weight 130), one silver basin (70 shekels in the shekel of the holy place), the two of them full of flour mixed with the oil for a grain offering,	*He offered a silver dish that weighed one and one-half kilograms and a large silver bowl that weighed four-fifths of a kilogram. He weighed them the same way the priests do in the sacred tent. He filled both of them with flour with olive oil in it as a grain offering.*

ULT **his offering {was} one silver dish (its weight 130), one silver basin (70 shekels in the shekel of the holy place), the two of them full of flour mixed with the oil for a grain offering**
UST He offered a silver dish that weighed one and one-half kilograms and a large silver bowl that weighed four-fifths of a kilogram. He weighed them the same way {the priests} do in the sacred tent. He filled both of them with flour with olive oil in it as a grain offering

This verse is identical to 7:25, so translate it the same way.

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
offering	He offered
silver	silver
holy place	in the sacred tent
oil	oil
grain offering	grain offering

Numbers 7:68

ULT	UST
one palm-sized bowl (ten gold) full of incense,	*He offered a gold ladle that weighed one-tenth of a kilogram. He filled it with incense.*

> ULT **one palm-sized bowl (ten gold) full of incense**
> UST He offered a gold ladle that weighed one-tenth of a kilogram. He filled it with incense

This verse is identical to 7:14, so translate it the same way.

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
gold	gold
incense	incense

Numbers 7:69

ULT	UST
one bull (a son of cattle), one ram, one male lamb (a son of his year) for a burnt offering,	*As a wholly burned sacrifice, he offered a young bull, a ram, and a male sheep that was one year old.*

ULT one bull (a son of cattle), one ram, one male lamb (a son of his year) for a burnt offering

UST As a wholly burned sacrifice, {he offered} a young bull, a ram, and a male sheep that was one year old

This verse is identical to 7:15, so translate it the same way.

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
bull	bull
cattle	bull
ram	ram
lamb	and … male sheep
burnt offering	As a wholly burned sacrifice, he offered

Numbers 7:70

ULT	UST
one buck of the goats for a sin offering,	*As a purifying sacrifice, he offered a male goat.*

ULT **one buck of the goats for a sin offering**
UST As a purifying sacrifice, {he offered} a male goat

This verse is identical to 7:16, so translate it the same way.

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
goats	goat
sin offering	As a purifying sacrifice, he offered

Numbers 7:71

ULT	UST
and for the sacrifice of the peace offering two cattle, five rams, five male goats, five male lambs (sons of a year). This was the offering of Ahiezer, the son of Ammishaddai.	*As a fellowship sacrifice, he offered two oxen, five rams, five male goats, and five male sheep that were one year old. Ahiezer son of Ammishaddai gave all those gifts.*

ULT **and for the sacrifice of the peace offering two cattle, five rams, five male goats, five male lambs (sons of a year). This {was} the offering of Ahiezer, the son of Ammishaddai**

UST As a fellowship sacrifice, {he offered} two oxen, five rams, five male goats, and five male sheep that were one year old. Ahiezer son of Ammishaddai gave all those gifts

Besides the different names, this verse is identical to 7:17, so translate it the same way, changing only the names.

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
sacrifice	sacrifice
peace offering	fellowship
cattle	oxen
rams	rams
goats	goats
lambs	and … male sheep

Numbers 7:72

ULT	UST
On the day of the eleventh day, the leader for the sons of Asher, Pagiel, the son of Okran:	*On the eleventh day, Pagiel son of Okran, who led the descendants of Asher, offered his gifts.*

ULT **On the day of the eleventh day**
UST On the eleventh day

It might seem that the expression **On the day of the eleventh day** contains extra information that would not be natural to express in your language. If so, you could shorten it. Alternate translation: [During the eleventh day]
Support Reference: Making Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information Explicit

ULT **Pagiel, the son of Okran**
UST Pagiel son … Okran … of

The author is leaving out some of the words that in many languages a sentence would need in order to be complete. You can supply these words from the context if that would be clearer in your language. See how you translated the similar construction in 7:24. Alternate translation: [Pagiel, the son of Okran, presented an offering]
Support Reference: Ellipsis

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
leader	who led
Asher	Asher

Numbers 7:73

ULT	UST
his offering was one silver dish (its weight 130), one silver basin (70 shekels in the shekel of the holy place), the two of them full of flour mixed with the oil for a grain offering,	*He offered a silver dish that weighed one and one-half kilograms and a large silver bowl that weighed four-fifths of a kilogram. He weighed them the same way the priests do in the sacred tent. He filled both of them with flour with olive oil in it as a grain offering.*

ULT **his offering {was} one silver dish (its weight 130), one silver basin (70 shekels in the shekel of the holy place), the two of them full of flour mixed with the oil for a grain offering**
UST He offered a silver dish that weighed one and one-half kilograms and a large silver bowl that weighed four-fifths of a kilogram. He weighed them the same way {the priests} do in the sacred tent. He filled both of them with flour with olive oil in it as a grain offering

This verse is identical to 7:25, so translate it the same way.

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
offering	He offered
silver	silver
holy place	in the sacred tent
oil	oil
grain offering	grain offering

Numbers 7:74

ULT	UST
one palm-sized bowl (ten gold) full of incense,	*He offered a gold ladle that weighed one-tenth of a kilogram. He filled it with incense.*

ULT **one palm-sized bowl (ten gold) full of incense**
UST He offered a gold ladle that weighed one-tenth of a kilogram. He filled it with incense

This verse is identical to 7:14, so translate it the same way.

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
gold	gold
incense	incense

Numbers 7:75

ULT	UST
one bull (a son of cattle), one ram, one male lamb (a son of his year) for a burnt offering,	*As a wholly burned sacrifice, he offered a young bull, a ram, and a male sheep that was one year old.*

ULT one bull (a son of cattle), one ram, one male lamb (a son of his year) for a burnt offering

UST As a wholly burned sacrifice, {he offered} a young bull, a ram, and a male sheep that was one year old

This verse is identical to 7:15, so translate it the same way.

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
bull	bull
cattle	bull
ram	ram
lamb	and … male sheep
burnt offering	As a wholly burned sacrifice, he offered

Numbers 7:76

ULT	UST
one buck of the goats for a sin offering,	*As a purifying sacrifice, he offered a male goat.*

ULT **one buck of the goats for a sin offering**
UST As a purifying sacrifice, {he offered} a male goat

This verse is identical to 7:16, so translate it the same way.

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
goats	goat
sin offering	As a purifying sacrifice, he offered

Numbers 7:77

ULT	UST
and for the sacrifice of the peace offering two cattle, five rams, five male goats, five male lambs (sons of a year). This was the offering of Pagiel, the son of Okran.	*As a fellowship sacrifice, he offered two oxen, five rams, five male goats, and five male sheep that were one year old. Pagiel son of Okran gave all those gifts.*

ULT **and for the sacrifice of the peace offering two cattle, five rams, five male goats, five male lambs (sons of a year). This {was} the offering of Pagiel, the son of Okran**

UST As a fellowship sacrifice, {he offered} two oxen, five rams, five male goats, and five male sheep that were one year old. Pagiel son of Okran gave all those gifts

Besides the different names, this verse is identical to 7:17, so translate it the same way, changing only the names.

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
sacrifice	sacrifice
peace offering	fellowship
cattle	oxen
rams	rams
goats	goats
lambs	and … male sheep

Numbers 7:78

ULT	UST
On the day of the twelfth day, the leader for the sons of Naphtali, Ahira, the son of Enan:	*On the twelfth day, Ahira son of Enan, who led the descendants of Naphtali offered his gifts.*

ULT **On the day of the twelfth day, the leader for the sons of Naphtali, Ahira, the son of Enan**

UST On the twelfth day, Ahira son of Enan, who led the descendants of Naphtali offered his gifts

Besides the different names and number, this verse is identical to 7:72, so translate it the same way, changing only the names and number.

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
leader	who led
Naphtali	Naphtali

Numbers 7:79

ULT	UST
his offering was one silver dish (its weight 130), one silver basin (70 shekels in the shekel of the holy place), the two of them full of flour mixed with the oil for a grain offering,	*He offered a silver dish that weighed one and one-half kilograms and a large silver bowl that weighed four-fifths of a kilogram. He weighed them the same way the priests do in the sacred tent. He filled both of them with flour with olive oil in it as a grain offering.*

ULT **his offering {was} one silver dish (its weight 130), one silver basin (70 shekels in the shekel of the holy place), the two of them full of flour mixed with the oil for a grain offering**
UST He offered a silver dish that weighed one and one-half kilograms and a large silver bowl that weighed four-fifths of a kilogram. He weighed them the same way {the priests} do in the sacred tent. He filled both of them with flour with olive oil in it as a grain offering

This verse is identical to 7:25, so translate it the same way.

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
offering	He offered
silver	silver
holy place	in the sacred tent
oil	oil
grain offering	grain offering

Numbers 7:80

ULT	UST
one palm-sized bowl (ten gold) full of incense,	*He offered a gold ladle that weighed one-tenth of a kilogram. He filled it with incense.*

ULT **one palm-sized bowl (ten gold) full of incense**
UST He offered a gold ladle that weighed one-tenth of a kilogram. He filled it with incense

This verse is identical to 7:14, so translate it the same way.

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
gold	gold
incense	incense

Numbers 7:81

ULT	UST
one bull (a son of cattle), one ram, one male lamb (a son of his year) for a burnt offering,	*As a wholly burned sacrifice, he offered a young bull, a ram, and a male sheep that was one year old.*

ULT one bull (a son of cattle), one ram, one male lamb (a son of his year) for a burnt offering

UST As a wholly burned sacrifice, {he offered} a young bull, a ram, and a male sheep that was one year old

This verse is identical to 7:15, so translate it the same way.

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
bull	bull
cattle	bull
ram	ram
lamb	and … male sheep
burnt offering	As a wholly burned sacrifice, he offered

Numbers 7:82

ULT	UST
one buck of the goats for a sin offering,	*As a purifying sacrifice, he offered a male goat.*

ULT **one buck of the goats for a sin offering**
UST As a purifying sacrifice, {he offered} a male goat

This verse is identical to 7:16, so translate it the same way.

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
goats	goat
sin offering	As a purifying sacrifice, he offered

Numbers 7:83

ULT	UST
and for the sacrifice of the peace offering two cattle, five rams, five male goats, five male lambs (sons of a year). This was the offering of Ahira, the son of Enan.	*As a fellowship sacrifice, he offered two oxen, five rams, five male goats, and five male sheep that were one year old. Ahira son of Enan gave all those gifts.*

ULT **and for the sacrifice of the peace offering two cattle, five rams, five male goats, five male lambs (sons of a year). This {was} the offering of Ahira, the son of Enan**

UST As a fellowship sacrifice, {he offered} two oxen, five rams, five male goats, and five male sheep that were one year old. Ahira son of Enan gave all those gifts

Besides the different names, this verse is identical to 7:17, so translate it the same way, changing only the names.

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
sacrifice	sacrifice
peace offering	fellowship
cattle	oxen
rams	rams
goats	goats
lambs	and … male sheep

Numbers 7:84

ULT	UST
This was the dedication of the altar on the day of its being anointed from with the leaders of Israel: 12 dishes of silver, 12 basins of silver, 12 palm-sized bowls of gold.	*When Moses poured olive oil on the altar and set it apart, the men who led the Israelites offered gifts. They offered 12 silver dishes, 12 large silver bowls, and 12 gold ladles.*

ULT **the dedication of the altar**
UST the altar … offered gifts

Here, **the dedication of the altar** represents the gifts that were offered to dedicate the altar. If it would be helpful in your language, you could use an equivalent expression or plain language. See how you translated this phrase in 7:10. Alternate translation: [the dedication offering for the altar]
Support Reference: Metonymy

ULT **the dedication of the altar**
UST the altar … offered gifts

If your language does not use an abstract noun for the idea of **dedication**, you could express the same idea in another way. See how you translated this phrase in 7:10. Alternate translation: [what they offered for when the altar was dedicated]
Support Reference: Abstract Nouns

ULT **its being anointed**
UST Moses poured {olive oil} on … and set it apart

The expression **its being anointed** is a passive verbal form. If your language would not use that form, you could express the idea in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. See how you translated this phrase in 7:10. Alternate translation: [Moses anointing it]
Support Reference: Active or Passive

ULT **12 dishes of silver, 12 basins of silver, 12 palm-sized bowls of gold**
UST They offered 12 silver dishes, 12 large silver bowls, and 12 gold ladles

See how you translated "dish" and "basins" in 7:13 and "palm-sized bowls" in 7:14. Alternate translation: [12 deep silver bowls, 12 silver pitchers, 12 large gold spoons]
Support Reference: Translate Unknowns

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
dedication	offered gifts
altar	altar
anointed	Moses poured {olive oil} on … and set it apart
leaders	the men who led
Israel	Israelites
silver	silver
gold	gold

Numbers 7:85

ULT	UST
130 was the one silver bowl, and 70 was the one basin. All the silver of the vessels was 2, 400 in the shekel of the holy place.	*Each silver dish weighed one and one-half kilograms. Each large silver bowl weighed four-fifths of a kilogram. Altogether, these silver dishes and large bowls weighed about 27 kilograms. They weighed them the same way the priests do in the sacred tent.*

ULT **130 {was} the one silver bowl, and 70 {was} the one basin**
UST Each silver dish weighed one and one-half kilograms. Each large silver bowl weighed four-fifths of a kilogram

The author is leaving out some of the words that in many languages a sentence would need in order to be complete. You can supply these words from the context if that would be clearer in your language. Alternate translation: [The one silver bowl weighed 130 shekels, and the one basin weighed 70 shekels]
Support Reference: Ellipsis

ULT **130**
UST weighed one and one-half kilograms

These 130 **shekels** came to about one and one-half kilograms or about three and one-third pounds of silver. See how you translated this weight in 7:13. In your translation, you could use the ancient measurement and spell the word “shekel” the way it sounds in your language. You could also use the metric measurement given in the UST or use the measurement that your language and culture customarily use. Alternatively, you could use the ancient measurement and put a modern measurement in parentheses in the text or in a footnote.
Support Reference: Biblical Weight

ULT **was the one silver bowl … was the one basin**
UST Each silver dish … Each large silver bowl

Here, **the one silver bowl** and **the one basin** represent each of the silver bowls and basins in general, not just two of them. If it would be helpful to your readers, you could use expressions that would be more natural in your language. Alternate translation: [each silver bowl … each basin]
Support Reference: Generic Noun Phrases

ULT **and 70**
UST weighed four-fifths of a kilogram

These 70 **shekels** came to about four-fifths of a kilogram or 1.75 pounds of silver. See how you translated this weight in 7:13. In your translation, you could use the ancient measurement and spell the word “shekel” the way it sounds in your language. You could also use the metric measurement given in the UST or use the measurement that your language and culture customarily use. Alternatively, you could use the ancient measurement and put a modern measurement in parentheses in the text or in a footnote.
Support Reference: Biblical Weight

ULT **All the silver of the vessels {was} 2,400**
UST Altogether, these silver dishes and large bowls weighed about 27 kilograms

The author is leaving out some of the words that in many languages a sentence would need in order to be complete. You can supply these words from the context if that would be clearer in your language. Alternate translation: [All the silver of the vessels weighed 2,400 shekels]
Support Reference: Ellipsis

ULT **was 2,400**
UST weighed about 27 kilograms

These 2,400 **shekels** came to about 27 kilograms or 60 pounds of silver. In your translation, you could use the ancient measurement and spell the word “shekel” the way it sounds in your language. You could also use the metric measurement given in the UST or use the measurement that your language and culture customarily use. Alternatively, you could use the ancient measurement and put a modern measurement in parentheses in the text or in a footnote.
Support Reference: Biblical Weight

ULT **was 2,400**
UST weighed about 27 kilograms

Translate the number **2,400** according to the conventions of your own language and culture. Alternate translation: [two thousand four hundred]
Support Reference: Numbers

ULT **in the shekel of the holy place**
UST They weighed them the same way {the priests} do in the sacred tent

The author is using the possessive form to describe a **shekel** that is used in **the holy place**. If a speaker of your language would not use the possessive form for this, you could express this idea in another way. See how you translated this phrase in 7:13. Alternate translation: [in the shekel that is used in the holy place]
Support Reference: Possession

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
silver	silver
holy place	in the sacred tent

Numbers 7:86

ULT	UST
The palm-sized bowls of gold were 12, full of incense. Ten, ten was the palm-sized bowl in the shekel of the holy place. All the gold of the palm-sized bowls was 120.	*They filled the 12 gold ladles with incense. Each ladle weighed one-tenth of a kilogram. They weighed them the same way the priests do in the sacred tent. Altogether, these gold ladles weighed about one and one-fifth kilograms.*

ULT **The palm-sized bowls of gold … was the palm-sized bowl … the palm-sized bowls**
UST the … gold ladles … Each ladle … ladles

See how you translated the phrase “palm-sized bowl” in 7:14. Alternate translation: [The large gold spoons … the large spoon … the large spoons]
Support Reference: Translate Unknowns

ULT **full of incense**
UST They filled … with incense

The expression **full of incense** is a passive verbal form. If your language would not use that form, you could express the idea in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: [which they had filled with incense]
Support Reference: Active or Passive

ULT **Ten, ten {was} the palm-sized bowl**
UST Each ladle weighed one-tenth of a kilogram

The author is leaving out some of the words that in many languages a sentence would need in order to be complete. You can supply these words from the context if that would be clearer in your language. Alternate translation: [The palm-sized bowl weighed ten, ten shekels]
Support Reference: Ellipsis

ULT **Ten, ten**
UST weighed one-tenth of a kilogram

These words **Ten, ten** refer to ten shekels, which was about 114 grams or 4 ounces. See how you translated this weight in 7:14. In your translation, you could use the ancient measurement and spell the word “shekel” the way it sounds in your language. You could also use the metric measurement given in the UST or use the measurement that your language and culture customarily use. Alternatively, you could use the ancient measurement and put a modern measurement in parentheses in the text or in a footnote.
Support Reference: Biblical Weight

ULT **Ten, ten**
UST weighed one-tenth of a kilogram

The author is using **Ten, ten** as a common expression of his culture to mean “ten each” or “ten shekels per bowl.” If this phrase does not have that meaning in your language, you could use a comparable expression from your language that does have that meaning, or you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [Ten each]
Support Reference: Idiom

ULT **was the palm-sized bowl**
UST Each ladle

The author is not referring to a specific **palm-sized bowl**. He means each of the palm-sized bowls. If it would be helpful to your readers, you could use an expression that would be more natural in your language. Alternate translation: [each palm-sized bowl]
Support Reference: Generic Noun Phrases

ULT **in the shekel of the holy place**
UST They weighed them the same way {the priests} do in the sacred tent

The author is using the possessive form to describe a **shekel** that was used in **the holy place**. If a speaker of your language would not use the possessive form for this, you could express this idea in another way. See how you translated this phrase in 7:13. Alternate translation: [in the shekel that is used in the holy place]
Support Reference: Possession

ULT **was 120**
UST weighed about one and one-fifth kilograms

The author is leaving out some of the words that in many languages a sentence would need in order to be complete. You can supply these words from the context if that would be clearer in your language. Alternate translation: [weighed 120 shekels]
Support Reference: Ellipsis

ULT **was 120**
UST weighed about one and one-fifth kilograms

These 120 shekels of gold together came to about 1.2 kilograms or about 3 pounds of gold. In your translation, you could use the ancient measurement and spell the word “shekel” the way it sounds in your language. You could also use the metric measurement given in the UST or use the measurement that your language and culture customarily use. Alternatively, you could use the ancient measurement and put a modern measurement in parentheses in the text or in a footnote.
Support Reference: Biblical Weight

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
gold	gold
incense	incense
holy place	in the sacred tent
gold	gold

Numbers 7:87

ULT	UST
All the cattle for the burnt offering were 12 bulls, 12 rams, 12 male lambs (sons of a year), and their grain offering. And 12 bucks of the goats were for a sin offering.	*As a wholly burned sacrifice, they offered 12 bulls, 12 rams, and 12 male sheep that were one year old, along with the grain offerings for them. As a purifying sacrifice, they offered 12 male goats.*

ULT **sons of a year**
UST that were one year old

Here, the author is speaking as if the lambs were actually **sons of a year**. This expression means that they were one year old. If this meaning would not be clear in your language, you could use a comparable expression or you could state the meaning plainly. See how you translated this phrase in 7:17. Alternate translation: [a year old]
Support Reference: Metaphor

ULT **and their grain offering**
UST along with the grain offerings for them

In this verse, the word **grain offering** is singular in form, but it refers to all the offerings that accompanied each of the animals as a group. If it would be helpful in your language, you could use the plural form of "grain offering." Alternate translation: [and their grain offerings]
Support Reference: Collective Nouns

ULT **And 12 bucks of the goats**
UST 12 male goats

The author is using the possessive form to describe **bucks** that were **goats**. If a speaker of your language would not use the possessive form for this, you could express this idea in another way. See how you translated the similar phrase in 7:16. Alternate translation: [And 12 goats that are bucks] or [And 12 adult male goats]
Support Reference: Possession

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
cattle	As a wholly burned sacrifice, they offered
burnt offering	As a wholly burned sacrifice, they offered
bulls	bulls
rams	rams
lambs	and … male sheep
grain offering	grain offerings
goats	goats
sin offering	As a purifying sacrifice, they offered

Numbers 7:88

ULT	UST
And all the cattle of the sacrifice of the peace offering were 24 bulls, 60 rams, 60 male goats, 60 male lambs (sons of a year). This was the dedication of the altar after its being anointed.	*As a fellowship sacrifice, they offered 24 bulls, 60 rams, 60 male goats, and 60 male sheep that were one year old. That is what the men who led Israel offered when Moses poured olive oil on the altar and set it apart.*

ULT **sons of a year**
UST that were one year old

Here, the author is speaking as if these male lambs were actually **sons of a year**. If this meaning would not be clear in your language, you could use a comparable expression or you could state the meaning plainly as "a year old." See how you translated this phrase in 7:17. Alternate translation: [a year old]
Support Reference: Metaphor

ULT **the sacrifice of the peace offering**
UST As a fellowship sacrifice, they offered

The author is using the possessive form to describe a **sacrifice** that is part of the **peace offering**. If a speaker of your language would not use the possessive form for this, you could express this idea in another way. See how you translated the similar phrase in 7:17. Alternate translation: [the animal sacrifices that are part of the peace offering]
Support Reference: Possession

ULT **the dedication of the altar**
UST That is what the men who led Israel offered

Here, **the dedication of the altar** represents the gifts and sacrifices that were offered to dedicate the altar. If it would be helpful in your language, you could use an equivalent expression or plain language. See how you translated this phrase in 7:10. Alternate translation: [the dedication offering for the altar]
Support Reference: Metonymy

ULT **the dedication of the altar**
UST That is what the men who led Israel offered

If your language does not use an abstract noun for the idea of **dedication**, you could express the same idea in another way. See how you translated this phrase in 7:10. Alternate translation: [what they offered for when the altar was dedicated]
Support Reference: Abstract Nouns

ULT **after its being anointed**
UST when Moses poured {olive oil} on the altar and set it apart

The expression **after its being anointed** is a passive verbal form. If your language would not use that form, you could express the idea in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. See how you translated this phrase in 7:10. Alternate translation: [after Moses anointed it]
Support Reference: Active or Passive

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
cattle	As a fellowship sacrifice, they offered
sacrifice	sacrifice
peace offering	As a fellowship sacrifice, they offered
bulls	bulls
rams	rams
goats	goats
lambs	and … male sheep
dedication	That is what the men who led Israel offered
altar	That is what the men who led Israel offered
anointed	Moses poured {olive oil} on the altar and set it apart

Numbers 7:89

ULT	UST
And when Moses went to the tent of meeting to speak with him, then he heard the voice speaking to him from upon the atonement lid that is on the Box of the Testimony, from between the two cherubs. And he spoke to him.	*Then, Moses entered the sacred tent to talk with Yahweh, and he heard Yahweh's voice. The voice came from between the two images of creatures with wings that were above the lid for the sacred chest. That is how Yahweh spoke to Moses.*

ULT **And when Moses went to the tent of meeting to speak with him, then he heard … And he spoke to him**

UST Then, Moses entered the sacred tent to talk with Yahweh, and he heard … That is how Yahweh spoke to Moses

Here, the author could be describing: (1) a specific event that happened after the altar was anointed and the offerings were given. Alternate translation: [And then Moses went to the tent of meeting to speak with him, and he heard … And he spoke to him]; or (2) what Moses and Yahweh normally did once the altar was anointed and the offerings were given. Alternate translation: [And whenever Moses went to the tent of meeting to speak with him, he would hear … And he would speak to him]

Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

ULT **with him**

UST with Yahweh

The pronoun **him** refers to Yahweh. It may be helpful to clarify this for your readers. Alternate translation: [with God]

Support Reference: Pronouns — When to Use Them

ULT **then he heard the voice speaking**

UST and he heard Yahweh's voice. The voice came

The author is using **the voice** to represent God himself. If it would be helpful in your language, you could use an equivalent expression from your culture or state the meaning plainly. However, the author intentionally used an indirect reference to God, so use an indirect form in your language if it is possible. Alternate translation: [then he heard Yahweh speaking]

Support Reference: Synecdoche

ULT **from upon the atonement lid that {is} on the Box of the Testimony, from between the two cherubs**

UST from between the two images of creatures with wings that were above the lid for the sacred chest

The implication is that Yahweh's voice came not only from above the atonement lid, but also specifically from the space between the two cherubs that were on top of it. You could include this information if that would be helpful to your readers. Alternate translation: [from the area above the atonement lid that is on the Box of the Testimony, which is between the two cherubs that are above the Box of the Testimony]

Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

> ULT **And he spoke to him**
> UST That is how Yahweh spoke to Moses

The pronoun **he** refers to Yahweh, while the pronoun **him** refers to Moses. It may be helpful to clarify this for your readers. Alternate translation: [And Yahweh spoke to Moses]

Support Reference: Pronouns — When to Use Them

> ULT **And he spoke to him**
> UST That is how Yahweh spoke to Moses

By **And he spoke to him**, the author means that what he describes in this verse is the way that Yahweh spoke to Moses. You could indicate this explicitly in your translation if that would be helpful to your readers. Alternate translation: [He spoke to him in that way] or [Thus he spoke to him]

Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Moses	Moses
tent of meeting	the sacred tent
atonement lid	the lid
Box of the Testimony	the sacred chest
cherubs	the … images of creatures with wings

Numbers 8

Numbers 8 Introduction

Numbers 8 Chapter Introduction

Structure and Formatting

This chapter details the cleansing and consecration of the Levites so that they could serve at the sacred tent. It also provides brief instructions on the orientation of the lamps on the lampstand and on the age requirements for service at the tent.

1. Yahweh gives instructions for arranging the seven lamps (1–4)
2. The Levites are purified and presented to Yahweh for service (5–22)
3. Yahweh establishes the ages for the Levites' service (23–26)

Religious and Cultural Concepts in This Chapter

Cleansing and consecrating the Levites

In this chapter, Yahweh gives Moses instructions on how to cleanse and consecrate the Levites. 8:6–7 gives instructions for cleansing them: they must be sprinkled with water, shave off their hair, and wash their clothing. 8:8–14 gives instructions for consecrating them after they have been cleansed: they must offer two bulls, and they must be presented like a raised offering to Yahweh. 8:15 gives a clear summary: in order to serve at the sacred tent, the Levites need to be cleansed and consecrated like a raised offering.

"Service" and "keeping"

As in Numbers 3–4, the word "keeping" refers to keeping watch or guarding. No one else was supposed to approach the sacred items, so the Levites were required to guard these items, especially when they were transporting them. 8:26 includes an unusual plural form: "keepings." It probably refers to all the kinds of guard duty the Levites might need to perform. The word "service" refers to physical labor, particularly taking down and setting up the sacred tent and the items that were in it. The Levites were also responsible for these tasks. See how you translated "keeping" and "service" in Numbers 3–4.

The Levites and the firstborn Israelites

As outlined in chapter 3, Yahweh required the Israelites to pay a ransom to him for the firstborn males that he did not kill during the tenth plague in Egypt, as described in Exodus 12:29 and 13:15. Because Yahweh did not kill the firstborn male people and animals among the Israelites, he considered them to owe him their lives. Instead of taking their lives, Yahweh chose the Levite men to be his special servants in their place. Yahweh repeats some of that information in 8:17–18. See how you translated the similar statements in Numbers 3.

Translation Issues in This Chapter

Starting service at 25 or 30 years old?

In 8:24, Yahweh states that Levites who are 25 years old can begin serving at the sacred tent. However, in 4:3, the age at which Levites begin serving at the sacred tent is 30 years old. This chapter is chronologically prior to chapter 4 (see the Introduction to Numbers 7), so it is possible that the lower age requirement was updated from 25 to 30 years old. It is also possible that the census in Numbers 4 only included men who were 30–50 years old, but men as young as 25 were able to serve at the sacred tent. There is not enough information to know for sure. In the end, do not harmonize this chapter with Numbers 4; this chapter should say 25 years and Numbers 4 should say 30 years.

The “army”

In 8:24–25, as in Numbers 4, serving at the sacred tent is sometimes described as if it were being part of an army and fighting. The rest of the Israelite men had to serve in the army when necessary, but the Levites were exempt from serving in the army. Instead, they served at the tent of meeting. Because of this, their duties as Levites can be described as if they were serving in the army. The ULT preserves the army metaphor, and the UST models how to express the idea without this metaphor.

Numbers 8:1

ULT	UST
And Yahweh spoke to Moses, saying,	*Yahweh told Moses,*

ULT **saying**
UST told

Here, the word **saying** introduces a direct quotation. See how you translated **saying** in 1:1.
Support Reference: Quotations and Quote Margins

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Yahweh	Yahweh
Moses	Moses

Numbers 8:2

ULT	UST
"Speak to Aaron and say to him, 'When you lift up the lamps, the seven lamps shall shine to the front of the face of the lampstand.'"	*"Tell Aaron that, when he puts the seven lamps in their places on the lampstand, he must make sure that they light up the area in front of the lampstand."*

ULT **Speak to Aaron and say to him**
UST Tell Aaron that

The term **Speak to Aaron and say to him** introduces a direct quotation. In your translation, use a natural way of introducing direct quotations in your language. It may not be necessary to represent this term explicitly. Alternate translation: [Say to Aaron]
Support Reference: Quotations and Quote Margins

ULT **and say to him, 'When you lift up**
UST that, when he puts

The text includes quotations within quotations. If it would be clearer in your language, you could translate this so that there is not a quotation within a quotation. Alternate translation: [and say to him that when he lifts up]
Support Reference: Quotes within Quotes

ULT **When you lift up the lamps**
UST when he puts … lamps in their places on the lampstand

The implication is that Aaron would lift up the lamps to put them in their proper places on the lampstand. You could include this information if that would be helpful to your readers. Alternate translation: [When you lift up the lamps and put them on the lampstand]
Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

ULT **the seven lamps shall shine**
UST the seven lamps {in their places on the lampstand}, {he must make sure that} they light up

The implication is that the lampstand should be set up in such a way that the seven lamps illuminate the area in front of it. You could include this information if that would be helpful to your readers. Alternate translation: [the seven lamps must be oriented so that they shine]
Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

ULT **to the front of the face of the lampstand**
UST the area in front of the lampstand

Here, **to the face of** represents being in front of the lampstand. If it would be helpful in your language, you could use an equivalent expression or plain language. Alternate translation: [on the place before the lampstand]
Support Reference: Metonymy

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Aaron	Aaron
lamps	lamps
lampstand	lampstand

Numbers 8:3

ULT	UST
And Aaron did so. To the front of the face of the lampstand he lifted up its lamps, just as Yahweh commanded Moses.	*When Moses told that to Aaron, Aaron did it exactly as Yahweh had said. He put the lamps in their places on the lampstand so that they lit up the area in front of the lampstand.*

ULT **To the front of the face of the lampstand he lifted up its lamps**
UST He put the lamps {in their places on the lampstand so that they lit up} the area in front of the lampstand

The implication is that the lamps were positioned so they would shine forward from the lampstand. You could include this information if that would be helpful to your readers. Alternate translation: [To shine to the front of the face of the lampstand he lifted up its lamps]
Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

ULT **To the front of the face of the lampstand**
UST the area in front of the lampstand

See how you translated this phrase in 8:2. Alternate translation: [Facing the place before the lampstand]
Support Reference: Metonymy

ULT **he lifted up its lamps**
UST He put the lamps in their places on the lampstand so that they lit up

The implication is that someone needed to put the lamps in their places on the lampstand to get them ready to burn. You could include this information if that would be helpful to your readers. See how you translated the similar phrase in 8:2. Alternate translation: [he lifted up the lamps and put them on the lampstand]
Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Aaron	Aaron
lampstand	lampstand
lamps	lamps
Yahweh	Yahweh
Moses	exactly as … had said

Numbers 8:4

ULT	UST
And this is the work of the lampstand: a hammered work of gold; it was a hammered work up to its side, up to its blossom. According to the appearance that Yahweh showed Moses, so he made the lampstand.	*The people who made the lampstand had made it look exactly like what Yahweh had shown to Moses. They had made it, including its main shaft and the flower decorations on it, by hammering a single sheet of gold.*

ULT **the work of the lampstand**
UST The people who made the lampstand

The author is using the possessive form to describe a **lampstand** that was made by a specific kind of **work**. If a speaker of your language would not use the possessive form for this, you could express this idea in another way. Alternate translation: [how the lampstand was made]
Support Reference: Possession

ULT **a hammered work of gold; it {was} a hammered work**
UST They had made it … by hammering a single sheet of gold

A **hammered work** is a kind of metal object that is formed by repeatedly striking a sheet of metal to shape it. If your readers would not be familiar with what a hammered work is, you could use a more general term or explain it in a footnote. Alternate translation: [constructed from a sheet of gold that was hammered into shape, it was constructed this way]
Support Reference: Translate Unknowns

ULT **up to its side, up to its blossom**
UST including its main shaft and the flower decorations on it

The author is referring to all of the lampstand by naming two major components, **its side** and **its blossom**. If it would be helpful in your language, you could use an equivalent expression or plain language. Alternate translation: [in its entirety] or [completely, including its side and its blossom]
Support Reference: Merism

ULT **its blossom**
UST and the flower decorations on it

A **blossom** is a kind of flower that decorated the golden lampstand. If your readers would not be familiar with what a blossom is, you could use a more general term or explain it in a footnote. See the description of the lampstand in Exodus 25:33–36. Alternate translation: [the blossom that decorated it]
Support Reference: Translate Unknowns

ULT **its blossom**
UST and the flower decorations on it

In this verse, the word **blossom** is singular in form, but it refers to all the flower decorations on the lampstand as a group. If it would be helpful in your language, you could use the plural form of "blossom." Alternate translation: [its blossoms]
Support Reference: Collective Nouns

ULT **According to the appearance that Yahweh showed Moses**
UST look exactly like what Yahweh had shown to Moses

If your language does not use an abstract noun for the idea of **appearance**, you could express the same idea in another way. Alternate translation: [According to what Yahweh showed Moses about how the lampstand should look]
Support Reference: Abstract Nouns

ULT **so he made the lampstand**
UST had made it

The implication is that someone made the lampstand at Moses's direction rather than Moses making it himself. You could include this information if that would be helpful to your readers. Alternate translation: [so he had the workers make the lampstand]
Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
work	The people who made
lampstand	lampstand
gold	gold
Yahweh	Yahweh
Moses	Moses

Numbers 8:6

ULT	UST
"Take the Levites from the midst of the sons of Israel and cleanse them.	*"Out of all the Israelites, appoint the Levites to serve me. You must make them pure.*

ULT **Take the Levites from the midst of the sons of Israel**

UST Out of all the Israelites, appoint the Levites to serve me

Here, Moses is speaking as if the Levites were an object that could be physically **taken** from among the Israelites. He means that they should be selected and set apart from the rest of the people. If this meaning would not be clear in your language, you could use a comparable expression or you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [Select the Levites from among the sons of Israel]

Support Reference: Metaphor

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Levites	Levites
Israel	Israelites
and cleanse	pure

Numbers 8:7

ULT	UST
And thus you shall do to them to cleanse them: Sprinkle on them the water of the sin offering. And they shall pass a razor over all their flesh, and they shall wash their clothes, and they shall cleanse themselves.	*Here is how to make them pure. You must flick some purifying water on them. You must have them shave off their hair completely. You must have them wash their clothes. That is how they will make themselves pure.*

ULT **And thus you shall do to them**

UST Here is how to make them

The implication is that some of these instructions will be carried out by Moses and others will be carried out by the Levites themselves. You could include this information if that would be helpful to your readers. Alternate translation: [And here is how]

Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

ULT **Sprinkle on them the water of the sin offering**

UST You must flick some purifying water on them

Sprinkling the water of the sin offering was a symbolic action by which the priests showed that the Levites were being purified and made clean for their service. If it would be helpful to your readers, you could explain the significance of this action in the text of your translation or in a footnote. Alternate translation: [Sprinkle on them the water of the sin offering to purify them]

Support Reference: Symbolic Action

ULT **the sin offering**

UST purifying

Here, **sin offering** represents the purification from sin that occurs when a **sin offering** is offered. If it would be helpful in your language, you could use an equivalent expression or plain language. Alternate translation: [purification]

Support Reference: Metonymy

ULT **And they shall pass a razor over all their flesh**

UST You must have them shave off their hair completely

The phrase **pass a razor over all their flesh** is a common expression of his culture to mean "cut off the hair from their entire body." If this phrase does not have that meaning in your language, you could use a comparable expression from your language that does have that meaning, or you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [And they shall use a razor to cut off the hair on their entire body]

Support Reference: Idiom

ULT **a razor**

UST You must have them shave

A **razor** is a kind of cutting tool used for shaving hair. If your readers would not be familiar with what a razor is, you could use the name of a similar thing that your readers would recognize, or you could use a more general term. See how you translated **razor** in 6:5. Alternate translation: [a shaving tool]

Support Reference: Translate Unknowns

> ULT **and they shall cleanse themselves**
> UST That is how they will make themselves pure

Here, the word **and** introduces a summary or conclusion for this section. If it would be helpful in your language, you could make this more explicit. Alternate translation: [and thus they shall cleanse themselves]

Support Reference: Connecting Words and Phrases

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
sin	purifying
and they shall cleanse themselves	pure

Numbers 8:8

ULT	UST
And they shall take a bull, a son of cattle, and its grain offering of flour mixed with the oil. And you shall take a second bull, a son of cattle, for a sin offering.	*They must select a young bull and prepare grain offering that goes with it, which is flour with olive oil in it. You must select another young bull to be a purifying sacrifice.*

ULT **a son of cattle … a son of cattle**
UST a young bull … young bull

Here, Yahweh uses the phrase **son of cattle** to indicate that the bull was young. If this meaning would not be clear in your language, you could use a comparable expression or you could state the meaning plainly. See how you translated this phrase in 7:15. Alternate translation: [a young one … a young one]
Support Reference: Metaphor

ULT **flour mixed with the oil**
UST which is flour with olive oil in it

The expression **mixed with the oil** is a passive verbal form. If your language would not use that form, you could express the idea in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. See how you translated this phrase in 6:15. Alternate translation: [flour that they had mixed with the oil]
Support Reference: Active or Passive

ULT **with the oil**
UST with olive oil

Yahweh is not referring to a specific **oil**. He means oil in general. If it would be helpful to your readers, you could use an expression that would be more natural in your language. See how you translated this phrase in 6:15. Alternate translation: [with oil]
Support Reference: Generic Noun Phrases

ULT **And you shall take a second bull, a son of cattle**
UST You must select another young bull

Here, Yahweh could be telling Moses that: (1) he must be the one who offers the second bull. Alternate translation: [And you yourself shall take]; or (2) he must instruct the Levites to offer the second bull. Alternate translation: [And you shall have them take]
Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

ULT **And … a second bull**
UST another young bull

If your language would not represent a number in a form such as **a second bull**, you could represent this number in a form that your language would use. Alternate translation: [another bull] or [bull two]
Support Reference: Ordinal Numbers

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
bull	bull
cattle	bull
grain offering	grain offering
oil	oil
bull	bull
cattle	bull
sin offering	to be a purifying sacrifice

Numbers 8:9

ULT	UST
And you shall present the Levites to the face of the tent of meeting. And you shall assemble all the congregation of the sons of Israel.	*Then you must have the Levites stand at the front of the sacred tent. You must summon the rest of the Israelite community to the sacred tent.*

ULT **to the face of the tent of meeting**
UST at the front of the sacred tent

Here, **to the face of** represents being in front of the tent of meeting. If it would be helpful in your language, you could use an equivalent expression or plain language. Alternate translation: [before the tent of meeting]
Support Reference: Metonymy

ULT **all the congregation of the sons of Israel**
UST the rest of the Israelite community to the sacred tent

Yahweh is using the possessive form to describe a **congregation** that is made up of **the sons of Israel**. If a speaker of your language would not use the possessive form for this, you could express this idea in another way. Alternate translation: [the congregation that consists of all the sons of Israel]
Support Reference: Possession

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Levites	Levites
assemble	You must summon
congregation	community
Israel	Israelite

Numbers 8:10

ULT	UST
And you shall present the Levites to the face of Yahweh, and the sons of Israel shall lay their hands on the Levites.	*You must offer the Levites in my presence, and the leaders of the Israelites must place their hands on them.*

ULT **to the face of Yahweh**
UST in my presence

Here, **to the face of** represents being in front of Yahweh. If it would be helpful in your language, you could use an equivalent expression or plain language. Alternate translation: [before Yahweh]
Support Reference: Metonymy

ULT **to the face of Yahweh**
UST in my presence

Yahweh is speaking of himself in the third person as **Yahweh**. If it would be helpful in your language, you could translate this in the first person. Alternate translation: [to my face]
Support Reference: First, Second or Third Person

ULT **and the sons of Israel shall lay their hands on the Levites**
UST and the leaders of the Israelites must place their hands on them

To lay hands on the Levites was a symbolic action by which the Israelites could have shown: (1) that the Levites were substitutes for them. Alternate translation: [and the sons of Israel shall lay their hands on the Levites to designate the Levites as their substitutes]; or (2) that the Levites were being dedicated to God. Alternate translation: [and the sons of Israel shall lay their hands on the Levites to dedicate them to God]
Support Reference: Symbolic Action

ULT **and the sons of Israel shall lay**
UST and the leaders of the Israelites must place

By **the sons of Israel**, Yahweh means the leaders of Israel who were representing all of Israel in this ceremony. It would not be possible for all the Israelites to lay their hands on the Levites. You could indicate this explicitly in your translation if that would be helpful to your readers. Alternate translation: [and the leaders of the sons of Israel]
Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Levites	Levites
Yahweh	in my presence
Israel	Israelites

Numbers 8:11

ULT	UST
And Aaron shall raise the Levites as a raised offering to the face of Yahweh from with the sons of Israel. And they shall be to serve the service of Yahweh.	*From all the Israelites, Aaron must set the Levites apart in my presence, as if he were holding them up as an offering. Then, the Levites must do the work that I require.*

ULT **And Aaron shall raise the Levites {as} a raised offering to the face of Yahweh**
UST Aaron must set the Levites apart in my presence, as if he were holding them up as an offering

Here, Moses is speaking of presenting the Levites to Yahweh as if they were a **raised offering**. If this meaning would not be clear in your language, you could use a comparable expression or you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [And Aaron shall dedicate the Levites to Yahweh as he does when he raises a raised offering]
Support Reference: Metaphor

ULT **And Aaron shall raise the Levites {as} a raised offering**
UST Aaron must set the Levites apart … as if he were holding them up as an offering

Yahweh is using a construction in which a verb and its object come from the same root. You may be able to use the same construction in your language to express the meaning here. Alternatively, your language may have another way of saying this. Alternate translation: [And Aaron shall offer the Levites as a raised offering]
Support Reference: Poetry

ULT **as a raised offering**
UST as if he were holding them up as an offering

The expression **raised offering** is a passive verbal form. If your language would not use that form, you could express the idea in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. If you need to say who does the action, the context indicates that it is a priest. Alternate translation: [as an offering that the priests raise]
Support Reference: Active or Passive

ULT **to the face of Yahweh … the service of Yahweh**
UST in my presence … the work that I require

Yahweh is speaking of himself in the third person as **Yahweh**. If it would be helpful in your language, you could translate this in the first person. Alternate translation: [to my face … my service]
Support Reference: First, Second or Third Person

ULT **to the face of Yahweh**
UST in my presence

Here, **to the face of** represents being in front of Yahweh. If it would be helpful in your language, you could use an equivalent expression or plain language. Alternate translation: [before Yahweh]
Support Reference: Metonymy

ULT **to serve the service of**
UST do the work

Here, just as in Numbers 4, the words **serve** and **service** refer to tasks of setting up, taking down, and carrying the sacred tent. See how you translated these words in 4:30. Alternate translation: [for the physical labor required to move]
Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

ULT **to serve the service of**
UST do the work

Yahweh is using a construction in which a verb and its object come from the same root. You may be able to use the same construction in your language to express the meaning here. Alternatively, your language may have another way of saying this. Alternate translation: [to serve]
Support Reference: Poetry

ULT **the service of Yahweh**
UST the work that I require

Yahweh is using the possessive form to describe a **service** that is done for **Yahweh**. If a speaker of your language would not use the possessive form for this, you could express this idea in another way. Alternate translation: [the service they do for Yahweh]
Support Reference: Possession

ULT **the service of Yahweh**
UST the work that I require

If your language does not use an abstract noun for the idea of **service**, you could express the same idea in another way. Alternate translation: [as Yahweh needs to be served]
Support Reference: Abstract Nouns

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Aaron	Aaron
Levites	Levites
offering	offering
Yahweh	in my presence
Israel	Israelites
serve	do

Numbers 8:12

ULT	UST
And the Levites shall lay their hands on the head of the bulls, and make the one a sin offering and the one a burnt offering to Yahweh, to make atonement for the Levites.	*Then the Levites must place their hands on bulls' heads. You must have a priest offer one bull as a purifying sacrifice and the other bull as a wholly burned sacrifice in order to remove their sins and ransom them.*

ULT **And the Levites shall lay their hands on the head of the bulls**

UST Then the Levites must place their hands on bulls' heads

To lay hands on the bulls was a symbolic action by which the Levites could have shown: (1) that the bulls were substitutes for the Levites. Alternate translation: [And the Levites shall lay their hands on the head of the bulls to designate the bulls as their substitutes]; or (2) that the bulls were being dedicated to God. Alternate translation: [And the Levites shall lay their hands on the head of the bulls to dedicate them to God]

Support Reference: Symbolic Action

ULT **and make**

UST You must have a priest offer

This is a command addressed to Moses. Yahweh could be indicating that: (1) Moses should have the priest make the offerings. Alternate translation: [and have a priest make]; or (2) Moses should make the offerings himself. Alternate translation: [and you must make]

Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

ULT **to make atonement for the Levites**

UST in order to remove {their sins} and ransom them

If your language does not use an abstract noun for the idea of **atonement**, you could express the same idea in another way. Alternate translation: [to redeem the Levites and restore them to Yahweh]

Support Reference: Abstract Nouns

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Levites	Levites
sin	as a purifying sacrifice
burnt offering	as a wholly burned sacrifice
Yahweh	as a wholly burned sacrifice
atonement	in order to remove {their sins} and ransom them

Numbers 8:13

ULT	UST
And you shall stand the Levites to the face of Aaron and to the face of his sons, and you shall raise them as a raised offering to Yahweh.	*You must have the Levites stand in front of Aaron and his sons. Then, you must set the Levites apart for me, as if you were holding them up as an offering.*

ULT **and you shall raise them {as} a raised offering to Yahweh**
UST Then, you must set the Levites apart for me, as if you were holding them up as an offering

Here, Yahweh is speaking of dedicating the Levites to Yahweh as if their dedication were a **raised offering** that was lifted up to him. If this meaning would not be clear in your language, you could use a comparable expression or you could state the meaning plainly. See how you translated the similar phrase in 8:11. Alternate translation: [and you shall dedicate the Levites to Yahweh as you do when you raise a raised offering]

Support Reference: Metaphor

ULT **to the face of Aaron and to the face of his sons**
UST in front of Aaron and his sons

Here, **to the face of** represents being in front of Aaron and his sons. If it would be helpful in your language, you could use an equivalent expression or plain language. Alternate translation: [before Aaron and before his sons]

Support Reference: Metonymy

ULT **and you shall raise them {as} a raised offering to Yahweh**
UST Then, you must set the Levites apart for me, as if you were holding them up as an offering

Yahweh is using a construction in which a verb and its object come from the same root. You may be able to use the same construction in your language to express the meaning here. Alternatively, your language may have another way of saying this. Alternate translation: [and you shall offer them as a raised offering to Yahweh]

Support Reference: Poetry

ULT **as a raised offering**
UST as if you were holding them up as an offering

The expression **raised offering** is a passive verbal form. If your language would not use that form, you could express the idea in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. If you need to say who does the action, the context indicates that it is a priest. Alternate translation: [as an offering that the priests raise]

Support Reference: Active or Passive

ULT **to Yahweh**
UST for me

Yahweh is speaking of himself in the third person as **Yahweh**. If it would be helpful in your language, you could translate this in the first person. Alternate translation: [to me]

Support Reference: First, Second or Third Person

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Levites	Levites
Aaron	Aaron
Yahweh	for me

Numbers 8:14

ULT	UST
And you shall separate the Levites from the midst of the sons of Israel, and the Levites shall be for me.	*That is how you must set the Levites apart from the rest of the Israelites. Then, Levites will belong to me.*

ULT **And you shall separate the Levites**
UST That is how you must set the Levites apart

Here, the word **And** introduces a summary or conclusion for this section. If it would be helpful in your language, you could make this more explicit. Alternate translation: [And thus you shall separate the Levites]

Support Reference: Connecting Words and Phrases

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Levites	Levites
Israel	Israelites

Numbers 8:15

ULT	UST
And after that the Levites shall go to serve the tent of meeting, and you shall cleanse them and you shall raise them as a raised offering.	*Once you have made them pure and set them apart, as if you were holding them up as an offering, then the Levites can set up and take down the sacred tent whenever the Israelites travel.*

ULT **And after that the Levites shall go to serve the tent of meeting, and you shall cleanse them and you shall raise them {as} a raised offering**

UST Once you have made them pure and set them apart, as if you were holding them up as an offering, then the Levites can set up and take down the sacred tent whenever the Israelites travel

The event in the second clauses (**you shall cleanse them and you shall raise them as a raised offering**) will happen before the events in the first clause (**the Levites shall go to serve the tent of meeting**). If having the clauses in this order would make the sequence unclear, you can change the order. Alternate translation: [And you shall cleanse the Levites and you shall raise them as a raised offering, and after that the Levites shall go to serve the tent of meeting]

Support Reference: Connect — Sequential Time Relationship

ULT **shall go to serve**

UST can set up and take down

Yahweh is using **shall go to serve** as a common expression of his culture to mean “shall be capable of serving.” If this phrase does not have that meaning in your language, you could use a comparable expression from your language that does have that meaning, or you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [shall be capable of serving]

Support Reference: Idiom

ULT **and you shall raise them {as} a raised offering**

UST and set them apart, as if you were holding them up as an offering

See how you translated this clause in 8:13.

Support Reference: Metaphor

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Levites	Levites
serve	set up and take down
tent of meeting	the sacred tent whenever the Israelites travel
and you shall cleanse	pure
offering	offering

Numbers 8:16

ULT	UST
For they are given, given to me from the midst of the sons of Israel. Instead of the opener of every womb, the firstborn of all from the sons of Israel, I have taken them for me.	*You must set the Levites apart because out of all the Israelites, I have assigned the Levites exclusively to me. They belong to me in place of the oldest male from every Israelite family.*

ULT **they {are} given, given to me from the midst of the sons of Israel**
UST out of all the Israelites, I have assigned the Levites exclusively to me

Here, Yahweh is speaking as if the Israelites were actually **given** to Yahweh like objects that could be handed over. This represents the formal dedication and appointment of people for service to Yahweh. If this meaning would not be clear in your language, you could use a comparable expression or you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [they are appointed, appointed to me out of all the sons of Israel]
Support Reference: Metaphor

ULT **they {are} given, given to me**
UST I have assigned the Levites exclusively to me

The expression **are given, given** is a passive verbal form. If your language would not use that form, you could express the idea in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. If you need to say who does the action, the context indicates that it is God. Alternate translation: [I have given them, given them to myself]
Support Reference: Active or Passive

ULT **they {are} given, given**
UST I have assigned the Levites exclusively

Yahweh is repeating forms of the verb **given** in order to intensify his expression of the idea that it conveys. If your language can repeat words for intensification, it would be appropriate to do that here in your translation. If not, your language may have another way of expressing the intensification. Alternate translation: [they are wholly given]
Support Reference: Reduplication

ULT **the opener of every womb, the firstborn of**
UST the oldest male

It might seem that the expression **the opener of every womb, the firstborn of** contains extra information that would not be natural to express in your language. If so, you could shorten it. Alternate translation: [the firstborn of]
Support Reference: Making Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information Explicit

ULT **the opener of every womb**
UST the oldest male

Yahweh is using **the opener of every womb** as a common expression of his culture to mean "the first child of every woman." If this phrase does not have that meaning in your language, you could use a comparable expression from your language that does have that meaning, or you could state the meaning plainly. See how you translated this phrase in 3:12. Alternate translation: [the first child of every woman]
Support Reference: Idiom

> ULT **the firstborn of all**
> UST the oldest {male} from every

Here and throughout this chapter, the implication is that **firstborn** refers specifically to firstborn males. You could include this information if that would be helpful to your readers. Alternate translation: [the firstborn males of]

Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

> ULT **I have taken them for me**
> UST They belong to me

By **taken them for me**, God means he has selected them to serve him at the tent of meeting. You could indicate this explicitly in your translation if that would be helpful to your readers. Alternate translation: [I have selected them to serve me at the tent of meeting]

Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Israel	Israelites
womb	the oldest male
firstborn	the oldest male

Numbers 8:17

ULT	UST
For to me is every firstborn among the sons of Israel, among the man and among the animal. On the day of my striking down every firstborn in the land of Egypt, I consecrated them to me.	*That is because the oldest male from every Israelite family and the oldest male offspring of all their farm animals belong to me. When I killed the oldest male from every Egyptian family in Egypt, I set the oldest male from every Israelite family apart for myself.*

ULT **among the man and among the animal**
UST the oldest male … and the oldest male offspring of all their farm animals

Here, **man** and **animal** represent people and animals in general, not specific people or animals. If it would be helpful to your readers, you could use expressions that would be more natural in your language. Alternate translation: [among the men and among the animals]
Support Reference: Generic Noun Phrases

ULT **among the man**
UST the oldest male … offspring

Here the masculine term **man** has a generic sense that includes both men and women. If it would be helpful to your readers, you could use language in your translation that is clearly inclusive of both men and women. Alternate translation: [among the human]
Support Reference: When Masculine Words Include Women

ULT **On the day of my striking down**
UST When I killed

The expression **On the day of** is a common expression of his culture to mean "at the time when." If this phrase does not have that meaning in your language, you could use a comparable expression from your language that does have that meaning, or you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [At the time when I struck down]
Support Reference: Idiom

ULT **my striking down**
UST I killed

By **my striking down**, God means when he killed all the firstborn sons of the Egyptians. You could indicate this explicitly in your translation if that would be helpful to your readers. See the discussion of the term "struck" in the Introduction to Numbers. Alternate translation: [my slaying]
Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
firstborn	the oldest male … offspring
Israel	Israelite
animal	animals
firstborn	the oldest male
Egypt	Egyptian
consecrated	I set … apart

Numbers 8:18

ULT	UST
And I took the Levites instead of every firstborn among the sons of Israel.	*But now I have chosen the Levites in place of the oldest male from every Israelite family.*

ULT **And I took the Levites**

UST But now I have chosen the Levites

By **I have taken the Levites**, God means he selected and set apart the Levites for special service to him. You could indicate this explicitly in your translation if that would be helpful to your readers. Alternate translation: [And I have selected the Levites to serve me at the tent of meeting]

Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Levites	Levites
firstborn	the oldest male
Israel	Israelite

Numbers 8:19

ULT	UST
And I gave the Levites as given ones to Aaron and to his sons from the midst of the sons of Israel, to serve the service of the sons of Israel in the tent of meeting and to make atonement for the sons of Israel. And a plague will not be among the sons of Israel when the sons of Israel come near to the holy place."	*Out of all the Israelites, I have assigned the Levites to serve Aaron and his sons. They will set up and take down the sacred tent for the Israelites, and they will ransom the Israelites. That way, when the Israelites approach the sacred tent, bad things will not happen to them."*

ULT **And I gave the Levites {as} given ones**
UST I have assigned the Levites to serve

Here, Yahweh is speaking as if the Levites were actually **given ones** who were presented as gifts to Aaron and his sons. If this meaning would not be clear in your language, you could use a comparable expression or you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [And I appointed the Levites as appointed ones]
Support Reference: Metaphor

ULT **And I gave the Levites {as} given ones**
UST I have assigned the Levites to serve

Yahweh is using a construction in which a verb and its object come from the same root. You may be able to use the same construction in your language to express the meaning here. Alternatively, your language may have another way of saying this. Alternate translation: [And I gave the Levites]
Support Reference: Poetry

ULT **to serve the service of**
UST They will set up and take down

Yahweh is using a construction in which a verb and its object come from the same root. You may be able to use the same construction in your language to express the meaning here. Alternatively, your language may have another way of saying this. Alternate translation: [to serve]
Support Reference: Poetry

ULT **the service of the sons of Israel**
UST They will set up and take down … for the Israelites

Yahweh is using the possessive form to describe a **service** that is done **for the sons of Israel**. If a speaker of your language would not use the possessive form for this, you could express this idea in another way. Alternate translation: [the service they do for the sake of the sons of Israel]
Support Reference: Possession

ULT **the service of the sons of Israel**
UST They will set up and take down … for the Israelites

If your language does not use an abstract noun for the idea of **service**, you could express the same idea in another way. Alternate translation: [for the sake of serving the sons of Israel]
Support Reference: Abstract Nouns

ULT **and to make atonement for the sons of Israel**
UST and they will ransom the Israelites

If your language does not use an abstract noun for the idea of **atonement**, you could express the same idea in another way. Alternate translation: [to redeem the sons of Israel]
Support Reference: Abstract Nouns

ULT **And a plague will not be**
UST bad things will not happen

The word translated as **And** here indicates that what follows is a result of what came before. Use a connector in your language that makes it clear that what follows is a result of what came before. Alternate translation: [As a result, a plague will not be]
Support Reference: Connect — Reason-and-Result Relationship

ULT **a plague**
UST bad things

The term **plague** refers to any kind of severe disaster or terrible trouble. If your readers would not be familiar with what a plague is, you could use a more general term or explain it in a footnote. Alternate translation: [a disaster] or [terrible trouble]
Support Reference: Translate Unknowns

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Levites	Levites
Aaron	Aaron
Israel	Israelites
serve	They will set up and take down
tent of meeting	the sacred tent
atonement	and they will ransom
plague	bad things
holy	sacred

Numbers 8:20

ULT	UST
And Moses, and Aaron and all the congregation of the sons of Israel, did to the Levites according to all that Yahweh had commanded Moses for the Levites; thus the sons of Israel did to them.	*Moses, Aaron, and the rest of the Israelite community did exactly what Yahweh told Moses to do with the Levites.*

ULT **And Moses, and Aaron and all the congregation of the sons of Israel, did to the Levites according to all that Yahweh had commanded Moses for the Levites; thus the sons of Israel did to them**

UST Moses, Aaron, and the rest of the Israelite community did exactly what Yahweh told Moses to do with the Levites

It might seem that the expression **thus the sons of Israel did to them** contains extra information that would not be natural to express in your language. If so, you could shorten it. Alternate translation: [And Moses, and Aaron and all the congregation of the sons of Israel, did to the Levites exactly according to all that Yahweh had commanded Moses for the Levites]

Support Reference: Making Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information Explicit

ULT **and all the congregation of the sons of Israel**

UST and the rest of the Israelite community

The author is using the possessive form to describe a **congregation** that is made up of **the sons of Israel**. If a speaker of your language would not use the possessive form for this, you could express this idea in another way. See how you translated this phrase in 8:9. Alternate translation: [the congregation that consists of all the sons of Israel]

Support Reference: Possession

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Moses	Moses
Aaron	Aaron
congregation	community
Israel	Israelite
Levites	Levites
Yahweh	Yahweh
Moses	Moses

Numbers 8:21

ULT	UST
And the Levites purified themselves, and they washed their clothes, and Aaron raised them as a raised offering to the face of Yahweh, and Aaron made atonement for them to cleanse them.	*The Levites washed their clothes and purified themselves. Aaron set them apart in Yahweh's presence, as if he were holding them up as an offering. Aaron offered a sacrifice that Yahweh accepted to remove their sins, and so they were pure.*

ULT **and Aaron raised them {as} a raised offering to the face of Yahweh**

UST Aaron set them apart in Yahweh's presence, as if he were holding them up as an offering

See how you translated the similar phrase in 8:11.

Support Reference: Metaphor

ULT **and Aaron made atonement for them**

UST Aaron offered a sacrifice that Yahweh accepted to remove their sins

If your language does not use an abstract noun for the idea of **atonement**, you could express the same idea in another way. Alternate translation: [And Aaron offered sacrifices to redeem the Levites and restore them to Yahweh]

Support Reference: Abstract Nouns

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Levites	Levites
purified	purified
Aaron	Aaron
offering	offering
Yahweh	Yahweh's
atonement	offered a sacrifice that Yahweh accepted to remove their sins

Numbers 8:22

ULT	UST
And after that, the Levites went to serve their service in the tent of meeting to the face of Aaron and to the face of his sons. Just as Yahweh had commanded Moses concerning the Levites, so they did to them.	*Once that was done, the Levites were able to set up and take down the sacred tent whenever the Israelites travel. Aaron and his sons would supervise them as they did that. So, the Israelites did exactly what Yahweh told Moses to do with the Levites.*

ULT **went to serve**
UST were able to set up and take down

The phrase **went to serve** is a common expression of his culture to mean "were capable of serving" or "began their service." If this phrase does not have that meaning in your language, you could use a comparable expression from your language that does have that meaning, or you could state the meaning plainly. See how you translated the similar phrase in 8:15. Alternate translation: [were capable of serving]
Support Reference: Idiom

ULT **to serve their service**
UST to set up and take down

Yahweh is using a construction in which a verb and its object come from the same root. You may be able to use the same construction in your language to express the meaning here. Alternatively, your language may have another way of saying this. Alternate translation: [to serve]
Support Reference: Poetry

ULT **their service**
UST to set up and take down

If your language does not use an abstract noun for the idea of **service**, you could express the same idea in another way. Alternate translation: [as they must serve]
Support Reference: Abstract Nouns

ULT **to the face of Aaron and to the face of his sons**
UST Aaron and his sons would supervise them as they did that

Here, **to the face of** represents being in front of Aaron and his sons. If it would be helpful in your language, you could use an equivalent expression or plain language. See how you translated these words in 8:13. Alternate translation: [before Aaron and before his sons]
Support Reference: Metonymy

ULT **they did**
UST the Israelites did

The pronoun **they** refers to the Levites. It may be helpful to clarify this for your readers. Alternate translation: [the people of Israel]
Support Reference: Pronouns — When to Use Them

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Levites	Levites
serve	to set up and take down
tent of meeting	the sacred tent whenever the Israelites travel
Aaron	Aaron
Yahweh	Yahweh
Moses	Moses

Numbers 8:24

ULT	UST
"This is what is for the Levites: From a son of 25 years and upward he shall come to fight in the army in the service of the tent of meeting.	*"Here are instructions for the Levites. The Levite men who are at least 25 years old are able to work at the sacred tent and set it up and take it down.*

ULT **to fight in the army**
UST to work … and set it up and take it down

Here, Yahweh is speaking of serving in the tabernacle as if it were **fighting in the army**. This metaphor implies dedication and discipline in service. If this meaning would not be clear in your language, you could use a comparable expression or you could state the meaning plainly. See how you translated this phrase in 4:23. Alternate translation: [to be part of the group of workers]

Support Reference: Metaphor

ULT **This {is} what {is} for the Levites**
UST Here are instructions for the Levites

Yahweh is using **This is what is for the Levites** as a common expression of his culture to mean "Here is what the Levites should do." If this phrase does not have that meaning in your language, you could use a comparable expression from your language that does have that meaning, or you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [Here is what the Levites should do]

Support Reference: Idiom

ULT **From a son of 25 years and upward he shall come**
UST The Levite men who are at least 25 years old are able

Yahweh is not referring to a specific Levite. He means Levites who meet this requirement in general. If it would be helpful to your readers, you could use an expression that would be more natural in your language. Alternate translation: [From sons of 25 years and upward they shall come]

Support Reference: Generic Noun Phrases

ULT **From a son of 25 years and upward he shall come**
UST The Levite men who are at least 25 years old are able

The phrase **from a son of 25 years** is a common expression of this culture that means "from age 25" or "starting at 25 years old." If this phrase does not have that meaning in your language, you could use a comparable expression from your language that does have that meaning, or you could state the meaning plainly. See how you translated the similar phrase in 1:3. Alternate translation: [Those who are 25 years old or older shall come] or [Those aged 25 and above shall come]

Support Reference: Idiom

ULT **he shall come to fight**
UST are able to work

Yahweh is using **come to fight** as a common expression of this culture to mean "begin doing military service." If this phrase does not have that meaning in your language, you could use a comparable expression from your language that does have that meaning, or you could state the meaning plainly. See how you translated this phrase in 4:23. Alternate translation: [he can fight]

Support Reference: Idiom

ULT **to fight in the army**
UST to work … and set it up and take it down

Yahweh is using a construction in which a verb (**fight**) and its object (**army**) come from the same root. You may be able to use the same construction in your language to express the meaning here. Alternatively, your language may have another way of saying this. Alternate translation: [to be in the army]

Support Reference: Poetry

ULT **in the service of the tent of**
UST at the … tent and set it up and take it down

If your language does not use an abstract noun for the idea of **service**, you could express the same idea in another way. Alternate translation: [to serve at]

Support Reference: Abstract Nouns

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Levites	Levites
years	years
tent of meeting	at the sacred tent

Numbers 8:25

ULT	UST
And from a son of 50 years he shall return from the army of the service, and he shall not serve more.	*The Levite men who are at least 50 years old are no longer able to set up and take down the sacred tent. They must not do that anymore.*

ULT **from the army of the service**
UST are no longer able to set up and take down the sacred tent

Here, Yahweh is speaking of the group of workers as if it were an **army**. If this meaning would not be clear in your language, you could use a comparable expression or you could state the meaning plainly. See how you translated the similar figure of speech in 8:24. Alternate translation: [from being part of the group of workers for]
Support Reference: Metaphor

ULT **And from a son of 50 years he shall return from the army of the service, and he shall not serve more**
UST The Levite men who are at least 50 years old are no longer able to set up and take down the sacred tent. They must not do that anymore

Yahweh is not referring to a specific Levite. He means Levites who meet this qualification in general. If it would be helpful to your readers, you could use an expression that would be more natural in your language. See how you chose to translate 8:24. Alternate translation: [And from sons of 50 years old they shall return from the army of service, and they shall not serve more]
Support Reference: Generic Noun Phrases

ULT **And from a son of 50 years he shall return**
UST The Levite men who are at least 50 years old are no longer able to set up and take down the sacred tent

The phrase **a son of 50 years** is a common expression of this culture that means that a person has the characteristic of being at least 50 years old. If it would be helpful to your readers, you could use an equivalent expression from your language or state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [Those who are 50 years old or older shall return] or [Those aged 50 and above shall return]
Support Reference: Idiom

ULT **he shall return from the army of**
UST are no longer able to set up and take down the sacred tent

Yahweh is using **he shall return from the army** as a common expression of this culture to mean “he cannot be in the army.” If this phrase does not have that meaning in your language, you could use a comparable expression from your language that does have that meaning, or you could state the meaning plainly. See how you translated the opposite figure of speech in 8:24. Alternate translation: [he cannot be in the army]
Support Reference: Idiom

> ULT **from the army of the service**
> UST are no longer able to set up and take down the sacred tent

If your language does not use abstract nouns for the idea of **service**, you could express the same idea in another way. Alternate translation: [from the army that serves]

Support Reference: Abstract Nouns

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
years	years
he shall return	are no longer able to set up and take down the sacred tent
serve	They must … do that

Numbers 8:26

ULT	UST
And he shall minister to his brothers in the tent of meeting to keep keeping, but he shall not serve service. Thus you shall do for the Levites in their keepings."	*They can help their fellow Levites at the tent of meeting by guarding the sacred tent and its equipment. However, they cannot set up and take down the sacred tent. That is what you must have the Levites do as they guard the sacred tent and its equipment."*

ULT **And he shall minister to his brothers in the tent of meeting to keep keeping, but he shall not serve service**

UST They can help their fellow Levites at the tent of meeting by guarding {the sacred tent and its equipment}. However, they cannot set up and take down the sacred tent

Yahweh is not referring to one specific Levite. He means Levites over 50 years old in general. If it would be helpful to your readers, you could use expressions that would be more natural in your language. See how you chose to translate 8:24–25. Alternate translation: [And they shall minister to their brothers in the tent of meeting to keep keeping, but they shall not serve service]

Support Reference: Generic Noun Phrases

ULT **And he shall minister to his brothers**

UST They can help their fellow Levites

Here, Yahweh is using the term **brothers** to describe fellow members of the tribe of Levi. If it would be helpful in your language, you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [to the other Levites]

Support Reference: Metaphor

ULT **to keep keeping, but he shall not serve service**

UST by guarding {the sacred tent and its equipment}. However, they cannot set up and take down the sacred tent

By **keep keeping** and **serve service**, Yahweh means to guard the holy things and do the physical work associated with moving them. You could indicate this explicitly in your translation if that would be helpful to your readers. See the chapter introduction for more information. Alternate translation: [to guard the holy things, but he shall not do the physical labor required to move them]

Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

ULT **to keep keeping, but he shall not serve service**

UST by guarding {the sacred tent and its equipment}. However, they cannot set up and take down the sacred tent

Yahweh is using a construction in which a verb and its object come from the same root. You may be able to use the same construction in your language to express the meaning here. Alternatively, your language may have another way of saying this. Alternate translation: [to keep, but he shall not serve]

Support Reference: Poetry

ULT **service**
UST However, they cannot set up and take down the sacred tent

If your language does not use an abstract noun for the idea of **service**, you could express the same idea in another way. Alternate translation: [in any way that the Levites serve]
Support Reference: Abstract Nouns

ULT **Thus you shall do for the Levites in their keepings**
UST That is what you must have the Levites do as they guard the sacred tent and its equipment

By **their keepings**, Yahweh means the duties and responsibilities that God has assigned to the Levites. You could indicate this explicitly in your translation if that would be helpful to your readers. Alternate translation: [That is what you must command the Levites concerning their keepings]
Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

ULT **in their keepings**
UST as they guard the sacred tent and its equipment

The implication is that the Levites had specific duties guarding the sanctuary and assisting with its maintenance. You could include this information if that would be helpful to your readers. See the chapter introduction for more information. Alternate translation: [in their guard duties]
Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
tent of meeting	tent of meeting
serve	However, they cannot set up and take down the sacred tent
service	However, they cannot set up and take down the sacred tent
Levites	Levites

Numbers 9

Numbers 9 Introduction

Numbers 9 Chapter Introduction

Structure and Formatting

This chapter briefly narrates how the Israelites celebrated the Passover for the first time since they left Egypt, and it also gives instructions for a celebration of the Passover in the second month for those who were unable to celebrate it in the first month. Then, the author describes how a cloud visually represented Yahweh's commands to the Israelites concerning when to travel and where to camp.

1. Israel celebrates the Passover, and Yahweh provides for those unable to celebrate at the appointed time (1–14)
2. Yahweh uses the cloud over the tabernacle to show Israel when to camp and when to travel (15–23)

Religious and Cultural Concepts in This Chapter

Passover

The Passover was a festival that celebrated how God delivered the Israelites from Egypt. You can read more about the Passover in Exodus 12. This chapter records the first celebration of this festival after God delivered the Israelites from Egypt. The festival was celebrated on the fourteenth day of the first month, and it included a special meal at which the Israelites ate unleavened bread and a special lamb. In this chapter, Yahweh allows any Israelites who were unable to celebrate on that day (because of impurity or travel) to celebrate on a backup day, which was the fourteenth day of the second month. This festival was a very important one, so Yahweh indicates that anyone who chooses not to celebrate it must be expelled from the community.

Being "cut off" from the people

The punishment for failing to celebrate the Passover (except for impurity or travel) was being "cut off" from the rest of the Israelites. Scholars are unsure exactly what penalty this phrase implies. It could refer to death by execution. It could refer to punishment from Yahweh in a way of his choice. It could refer to expulsion from the Israelite community. The UST and notes follow this last option. If possible, use a word or phrase that could be understood in several of these ways. If you must specify, it is recommended that you follow the UST and notes.

The cloud

This chapter refers to "the cloud" that was over the sacred tent during the Israelites' travels in the wilderness. This cloud appeared when the Israelites left Egypt (see Exodus 13:21–22). There it is described as a pillar that is a cloud during the day and fire at night. Here, the cloud also looks like fire at night. In this chapter, the cloud visually shows Yahweh's commands for

when and where the Israelites should travel. Be sure that it is clear to your readers that Yahweh controls the cloud.

Translation Issues in This Chapter

Order of events

As with Numbers 7, this chapter occurs before the events in Numbers 1–6. In fact, 9:15 refers to the same day as 7:1 does. Within this chapter, the exact timing of the events in 9:1–4 is uncertain, since the author only mentions the month (although these must have happened before the fourteenth day, when Passover was celebrated). The events in 9:5–14 took place on the fourteenth day of the first month. Then, the event in 9:15 took place on the first day of the first month. So, these events are not in sequential order. Consider how to make this clear to your readers. See the notes on 9:15 for translation options.

Present tense for repeated past actions

In 9:15–23, the author uses the present tense to refer to repeated actions in the past. He means that the events he describes with the present tense happened many times. Consider what tense or form to use to make that clear. The UST uses the English form “would” to refer to these repeated past events.

Personification of the cloud

The author speaks of the cloud as if it were a person who could “dwell” and “prolong” in certain places. He uses this figure of speech to describe how the cloud moved and to imply that Yahweh controlled the cloud. If you would not speak of a cloud as if it were a person, you could use words that you would normally use to describe clouds moving, or you could indicate that Yahweh controlled the cloud.

Numbers 9:1

ULT	UST
And Yahweh spoke to Moses in the wilderness of Sinai, in the second year of their going out from the land of Egypt, in the first month, saying,	*It was the first month of the year after the Israelite people had left Egypt. While the Israelite people were in the desolate area around Sinai, Yahweh spoke to Moses. Yahweh told him,*

ULT **And Yahweh spoke to Moses in the wilderness of Sinai, in the second year of their going out from the land of Egypt, in the first month**

UST It was the first month of the year after the Israelite people had left Egypt. {While the Israelite people were} in the desolate area around Sinai, Yahweh spoke to Moses

The events in this chapter occurred during the same month as the events in Numbers 7. See the note on 7:1. That means that these events occurred before the events in Numbers 1–6, which took place during the second month. You could include a footnote to make the timing of this chapter clear to your readers.

Support Reference: Order of Events

ULT **in the second year of … in the first month**

UST It was the first month of the year after

If your language would not represent numbers in forms such as **in the second year** and **in the first month**, you could represent these numbers in forms that your language would use. Alternate translation: [in year two … in month one]

Support Reference: Ordinal Numbers

ULT **in the first month**

UST It was the first month

The **first** month of the Hebrew calendar includes parts of March and April on Western calendars. You could convert the Hebrew day and month into an approximate date on the calendar that your culture uses. However, the Jews used a lunar calendar, so if you use a solar calendar, the date will be different every year, and the translation will not be entirely accurate. So you may just want to give the number of the day and the name of the month on the Hebrew calendar and say in a footnote approximately what time of year that is on your calendar.

Support Reference: Hebrew Months

ULT **saying**

UST Yahweh told him

Here, the word **saying** introduces a direct quotation. See how you translated **saying** in 1:1.

Support Reference: Quotations and Quote Margins

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Yahweh	Yahweh
Moses	Moses
wilderness	While the Israelite people were in the desolate area
Sinai	Sinai
year	year
land	Egypt
Egypt	Egypt
month	month

Numbers 9:2

ULT	UST
“And the sons of Israel shall do the Passover in its appointed time.	*“You and the rest of the Israelites must celebrate the Passover Celebration at its proper time.*

ULT **And the sons of Israel shall do**

UST You and the rest of the Israelites must celebrate

Here the word **And** introduces additional instructions that Yahweh is giving to the Israelites. If the connection between this statement and the previous one is not clear, you may want to use a different connecting word to show how this statement relates to what comes before it. Alternate translation: [Also, the sons of Israel shall do]

Support Reference: Connecting Words and Phrases

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Israel	Israelites
Passover	Passover
time	time

Numbers 9:3

ULT	UST
On day 14 in this month, between the evenings, you shall do it in its appointed time. According to all its statutes and according to all its ordinances you shall do it."	*You must celebrate it on the fourteenth day of this month, early in the evening. You must obey all the instructions about it that I previously told you."*

ULT **On day 14**
UST on the fourteenth day

If your language would not represent a number in a form such as **day 14**, you could represent this number in a form that your language would use. Alternate translation: [On the fourteenth day]
Support Reference: Ordinal Numbers

ULT **between the evenings**
UST early in the evening

Yahweh is using **between the evenings** as a common expression of this culture to mean "when evening begins." If this phrase does not have that meaning in your language, you could use a comparable expression from your language that does have that meaning, or you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [when evening begins]
Support Reference: Idiom

ULT **According to all its statutes and according to all its ordinances**
UST all the instructions

These two phrases **according to all its statutes** and **according to all its ordinances** mean basically the same thing. The second emphasizes the meaning of the first by repeating the same idea with different words. If it would be helpful to your readers, you could combine them and express the emphasis in another way. Alternate translation: [According to all its statutes] or [According to all its ordinances]
Support Reference: Parallelism

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
month	month
time	You must celebrate
statutes	the instructions
its ordinances	the instructions

Numbers 9:4

ULT	UST
And Moses spoke to the sons of Israel to do the Passover.	*Then Moses told the Israelites that they needed to celebrate the Passover Celebration.*

ULT **And Moses spoke to the sons of Israel to do the Passover**

UST Then Moses told the Israelites that they needed to celebrate the Passover Celebration

If it would be more natural in your language, you could express this as a direct quotation.
Alternate translation: [And Moses said to the sons of Israel, “Do the Passover”]

Support Reference: Direct and Indirect Quotations

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Moses	Moses
Israel	Israelites
Passover	Passover

Numbers 9:5

ULT	UST
And they did the Passover in the first, on day 14 of the month, between the evenings, in the wilderness of Sinai. According to all that Yahweh had commanded Moses, so the sons of Israel did.	*So, on the fourteenth day of the first month, early in the evening, they celebrated the Passover Celebration in the desolate area around Sinai. They did exactly what Yahweh had ordered Moses to do.*

ULT **in the first, on day 14 of the month**
UST on the fourteenth day of the first month

The **first** month of the Hebrew calendar includes March and April on Western calendars. You could convert the Hebrew day and month into an approximate date on the calendar that your culture uses. However, the Jews used a lunar calendar, so if you use a solar calendar, the date will be different every year, and the translation will not be entirely accurate. So you may just want to give the number of the day and the name of the month on the Hebrew calendar and say in a footnote approximately what time of year that is on your calendar. See how you referred to this month in 9:1.

Support Reference: Hebrew Months

ULT **in the first**
UST of the first

The author is leaving out some of the words that in many languages a sentence would need in order to be complete. Here **in the first** refers to the first month, as in verse 1. You can supply these words from the context if that would be clearer in your language. Alternate translation: [in the first month]

Support Reference: Ellipsis

ULT **in the first**
UST of the first

If your language would not represent a number in a form such as **in the first**, you could represent this number in a form that your language would use. Alternate translation: [on one]

Support Reference: Ordinal Numbers

ULT **on day 14**
UST on the fourteenth day

If your language would not represent a number in a form such as **day 14**, you could represent this number in a form that your language would use. See how you referred to this day in 9:3. Alternate translation: [on the fourteenth day]

Support Reference: Ordinal Numbers

ULT **between the evenings**
UST early in the evening

See how you translated this phrase in 9:3. Alternate translation: [when evening began]

Support Reference: Idiom

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Passover	Passover
month	month
wilderness	in the desolate area
Sinai	Sinai
Yahweh	Yahweh
Moses	Moses
Israel	They

Numbers 9:6

ULT	UST
And there were men who were unclean to a person of a man, and they were not able to do the Passover on that day. And they came near to the face of Moses and to the face of Aaron on that day.	*However, some of the Israelites were impure because they had touched a dead body. Because of that, they could not celebrate the Passover Celebration on the fourteenth day of the first month. So, they approached Moses and Aaron on the day for the Passover Celebration.*

ULT **men … a man**
UST some of the Israelites … a … body

Here the masculine terms **men** and **a man** have a generic sense that includes both men and women. If it would be helpful to your readers, you could use language in your translation that is clearly inclusive of both men and women. Alternate translation: [people … human]
Support Reference: When Masculine Words Include Women

ULT **unclean to a person of a man**
UST impure because they had touched a dead body

The author is using **unclean to a person of a man** as a common expression of this culture to mean "unclean because of contact with a dead person's body." If this phrase does not have that meaning in your language, you could use a comparable expression from your language that does have that meaning, or you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [unclean because of coming into contact with a corpse]
Support Reference: Idiom

ULT **and they were not able**
UST Because of that, they could not

The word translated as **and** indicates that what follows is a result of what came before. Use a connector in your language that makes it clear that what follows is a result of what came before. Alternate translation: [and since they were unclean, they were not able]
Support Reference: Connect — Reason-and-Result Relationship

ULT **to the face of Moses and to the face of Aaron**
UST So, they approached Moses and Aaron

Here, **to the face of** represents being in front of Moses and Aaron. If it would be helpful in your language, you could use an equivalent expression or plain language. Alternate translation: [before Moses and before Aaron]
Support Reference: Metonymy

ULT **on that day**
UST on the fourteenth day of the first month

The author assumes that readers will know **that day** refers to the fourteenth day of the first month when the Passover was to be celebrated. You could say that explicitly if that would be helpful to your readers. Alternate translation: [on the day when the Passover would be celebrated]
Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Passover	Passover
Moses	Moses
Aaron	Aaron

Numbers 9:7

ULT	UST
And those men said to him, "We are unclean to a person of a man. Why are we taken away not to present the offering of Yahweh in its appointed time in the midst of the sons of Israel?"	*They told Moses, "We are impure because we touched a dead body. However, we do not want that to prevent us from offering the Passover sacrifice to Yahweh at the proper time along with the rest of the Israelites."*

ULT **men … a man**
UST They … a … body

Here the masculine terms **men** and **man** have a generic sense that includes both men and women. If it would be helpful to your readers, you could use language in your translation that is clearly inclusive of both men and women. Alternate translation: [people … a human]
Support Reference: When Masculine Words Include Women

ULT **to him**
UST Moses

The pronoun **him** refers to Moses. It may be helpful to clarify this for your readers. Alternate translation: [to Moses]
Support Reference: Pronouns — When to Use Them

ULT **unclean to a person of a man**
UST are impure because we touched a dead body

See how you translated this phrase in 9:6. Alternate translation: [unclean because of coming into contact with a corpse]
Support Reference: Idiom

ULT **Why are we taken away not to present the offering of Yahweh in its appointed time in the midst of the sons of Israel**
UST However, we do not want that to prevent us from offering the {Passover} sacrifice to Yahweh at the proper time along with the rest of the Israelites

The men are using the question form to express their strong desire to participate in the Passover celebration. If a speaker of your language would not use the question form for that purpose, you could translate this as a statement or as an exclamation. Alternate translation: [Yet, we still want to be able to present the offering of Yahweh in its appointed time in the midst of the sons of Israel.]
Support Reference: Rhetorical Question

ULT **are we taken away not to present**
UST we do not want that to prevent us from offering

The men are using the phrase **are we taken away not to present** as a common expression of their culture to mean "are we prevented from presenting" or "are we forbidden to present." If this phrase does not have that meaning in your language, you could use a comparable expression from your language that does have that meaning, or you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [are we prevented from presenting]
Support Reference: Idiom

ULT **are we taken away**
UST we do not want that

The expression **are we taken away** is a passive verbal form. If your language would not use that form, you could express the idea in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: [does our uncleanness take us away]
Support Reference: Active or Passive

ULT **to present the offering of**
UST from offering the {Passover} sacrifice

The phrase **present the offering** is a construction in which a verb (**present**) and its object (**offering**) come from the same root. You may be able to use the same construction in your language to express the meaning here. Alternatively, your language may have another way of saying this. Alternate translation: [to give the offering]
Support Reference: Poetry

ULT **the offering of Yahweh**
UST the {Passover} sacrifice to Yahweh

The people are using the possessive form to describe an **offering** that is for **Yahweh**. If a speaker of your language would not use the possessive form for this, you could express this idea in another way. Alternate translation: [the offering for Yahweh]
Support Reference: Possession

ULT **the offering of**
UST the {Passover} sacrifice

The people assume that Moses will know that **the offering** refers to the lamb that was killed and eaten during the Passover celebration. You could say that explicitly if that would be helpful to your readers. Alternate translation: [the Passover lamb offering]
Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
offering	sacrifice
Yahweh	Yahweh
time	time
Israel	Israelites

Numbers 9:8

ULT	UST
And Moses said to them, "Stand, and I shall hear what Yahweh commands for you."	*Moses replied, "Wait here. I will go to the sacred tent and ask Yahweh, and I will listen to what he wants you to do."*

ULT **Stand**
UST Wait here. I will go to the sacred tent and ask Yahweh

By **Stand**, Moses means to wait where they were while he went to ask Yahweh about their situation. You could indicate this explicitly in your translation if that would be helpful to your readers. Alternate translation: [Stand here as you wait]
Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

ULT **and I shall hear what Yahweh commands for you**
UST and I will listen to what he wants you to do

By **I shall hear what Yahweh commands**, Moses means he will go to the sacred tent to receive instructions from Yahweh and then report back to tell them. You could indicate this explicitly in your translation if that would be helpful to your readers. Alternate translation: [and I shall go to the sacred tent, find out what Yahweh commands for you, and tell you]
Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Moses	Moses
Yahweh	he

Numbers 9:10

ULT	UST
"Speak to the sons of Israel, saying, 'A man, a man, when he is unclean to a person or is on a distant way, for you or for your generations, then he will do the Passover to Yahweh.	*"Tell the Israelites that people might be impure because they touched a dead body. Or, they might be traveling far away. In those cases, those people can still celebrate the Passover Celebration to honor me. These instructions apply to the Israelites who are alive now and to all their descendants.*

ULT **Speak to the sons of Israel, saying, 'A man, a man, when he is unclean to a person or is on a distant way, for you or for your generations**
UST Tell the Israelites that people might be impure because they touched a dead body. Or, they might be traveling far away … These instructions apply to the Israelites who are alive now and to all their descendants

If it would be clearer in your language, you could translate this so that there is not a quotation within a quotation. Alternate translation: [Speak to the sons of Israel. Say to them that a man, a man, when he is unclean to a person or is on a distant way, for them or for their generations]
Support Reference: Quotes within Quotes

ULT **A man, a man, when he is unclean … then he will do**
UST people might be impure … In those cases, those people can still celebrate

Here the masculine terms **a man, a man** and **he** have a generic sense that includes both men and women. If it would be helpful to your readers, you could use language in your translation that is clearly inclusive of both men and women. Since the verses that follow use plural forms, you could also use plural forms here. Alternate translation: [A person, a person, when he or she is unclean … then he or she shall do]
Support Reference: When Masculine Words Include Women

ULT **A man, a man**
UST people

In Hebrew, the repetition of **A man, a man** creates emphasis. If your language has different ways to show emphasis, you could use one of those instead. See how you translated this phrase in 5:12. Alternate translation: [Any man]
Support Reference: Reduplication

ULT **unclean to a person**
UST impure because they touched a dead body

See how you translated the similar phrase in 9:6. Alternate translation: [unclean because of coming into contact with a corpse]
Support Reference: Idiom

ULT **is on a distant way**
UST they might be traveling far away

The phrase **on a distant way** was a common expression meaning “on a long journey” or “traveling far away.” If this phrase does not have that meaning in your language, you could use a comparable expression from your language that does have that meaning, or you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [on a journey far away]
Support Reference: Idiom

ULT **for you or for your generations**
UST These instructions apply to the Israelites who are alive now and to all their descendants

By **for you or for your generations**, Yahweh means that these instructions apply both to the people who were alive at that time and to all their descendants who would live later. You could indicate this explicitly in your translation if that would be helpful to your readers. Alternate translation: [which applies to you and to your generations]
Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

ULT **then he will do**
UST In those cases, those people can still celebrate

Yahweh is using a future statement to give an instruction or command. If it would be helpful in your language, you could translate these words **then he will do** using a command or instruction form. Alternate translation: [then he may do]
Support Reference: Statements — Other Uses

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Israel	Israelites
generations	to all their descendants
Passover	Passover
Yahweh	to {honor} me

Numbers 9:11

ULT	UST
In the second month on day 14, between the evenings, they shall do it. With unleavened bread and bitter herbs they shall eat it.	*The people who are impure or traveling can celebrate the Passover Celebration on the fourteenth day of the second month of the same year. They must eat the lamb for the Passover Celebration along with bread without yeast and sour vegetables.*

ULT **In the second month on day 14**
UST on the fourteenth day of the second month of the same year

The **second month** of the Hebrew calendar includes April and May on Western calendars. You could convert the Hebrew day and month into an approximate date on the calendar that your culture uses. However, the Jews used a lunar calendar, so if you use a solar calendar, the date will be different every year, and the translation will not be entirely accurate. So you may just want to give the number of the day and the name of the month on the Hebrew calendar and say in a footnote approximately what time of year that is on your calendar.
Support Reference: Hebrew Months

ULT **In the second month**
UST of the second month of the same year

If your language would not represent a number in a form such as **In the second month**, you could represent this number in a form that your language would use. Alternate translation: [On month two]
Support Reference: Ordinal Numbers

ULT **on day 14**
UST on the fourteenth day

If your language would not represent a number in a form such as **on day 14**, you could represent this number in a form that your language would use. Alternate translation: [on the fourteenth day]
Support Reference: Ordinal Numbers

ULT **between the evenings**

See how you translated this phrase in 9:3. Alternate translation: [when evening began]
Support Reference: Idiom

ULT **and bitter herbs**
UST and sour vegetables

These **bitter herbs** are a kind of vegetable or plant that has a strong and sour taste. If your readers would not be familiar with what bitter herbs are, you could use a more general term or explain it in a footnote. Alternate translation: [and small plants that taste bitter]
Support Reference: Translate Unknowns

> ULT **they shall eat it**
> UST They must eat the lamb for the Passover Celebration

The pronoun **it** refers to the Passover lamb. It may be helpful to clarify this for your readers. Alternate translation: [they shall eat the Passover lamb]

Support Reference: Pronouns — When to Use Them

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
month	month
unleavened bread	bread without yeast

Numbers 9:12

ULT	UST
They shall not leave from it until morning, and a bone they shall not break in it. According to every statute of the Passover they shall do it.	*They must not have any leftover food in the morning. Also, they must not break any of the lamb's bones. They must obey all the instructions about the Passover Celebration that I previously told you.*

ULT **from it … in it … they shall do it**

UST They must … have any leftover food … of the lamb's … They must obey

The pronoun **it** in the phrases **from it** and **in it** refers to the Passover lamb. The pronoun **it** in the phrase **they shall do it** refers to the Passover celebration. It may be helpful to clarify this for your readers. Alternate translation: [from the Passover lamb … in the Passover lamb … they shall do the Passover]

Support Reference: Pronouns — When to Use Them

ULT **They shall not leave from it until morning**

UST They must not have any leftover food in the morning

Yahweh is using a figure of speech here that emphasizes a positive meaning by using a negative word, **not**, together with a mild expression that is the opposite of the intended meaning. If it would be helpful in your language, you could emphasize the positive meaning in a strong way. It is clear in Exodus 12:10 that they must eat all the food or burn any leftovers. Alternate translation: [They shall eat it all or burn any leftovers before morning]

Support Reference: Litotes

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
leave	They must … have any leftover food
statute	the instructions … that I previously told you
Passover	Passover

Numbers 9:13

ULT	UST
And the man who is clean and is not on a way and ceases to do the Passover, then that person shall be cut off from his people, for he did not present the offering of Yahweh in its appointed time. That man shall lift up his sin.	*However, suppose that any Israelites are pure and are not traveling, but they do not celebrate the Passover Celebration. In that case, the other Israelites must drive those people out from among them. That is because those people did not offer the Passover sacrifice to me at the proper time. I will punish those people for what they did wrong.*

ULT **then that person shall be cut off from his people**

UST In that case, the other Israelites must drive those people out from among them

Here, Yahweh is speaking of separating a person from his community as if that person were **cut off** from his people like a branch being cut from a tree. If this meaning would not be clear in your language, you could use a comparable expression or you could state the meaning plainly. See the chapter introduction for more information. Alternate translation: [then that person shall be expelled from his people]

Support Reference: Metaphor

ULT **That man shall lift up his sin**

UST I will punish those people for what they did wrong

Here, Yahweh is speaking of sin as if it were a **burden** that a person could lift up or carry. This speaks of experiencing the consequences of sin. If this meaning would not be clear in your language, you could use a comparable expression or you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [That man shall bear his sin] or [That man will be punished for his sin]

Support Reference: Metaphor

ULT **And the man who is clean and is not on a way and ceases to do the Passover, then that person shall be cut off from his people, for he did not present the offering of Yahweh in its appointed time. That man shall lift up his sin**

UST However, suppose that any Israelites are pure and are not traveling, but they do not celebrate the Passover Celebration. In that case, the other Israelites must drive those people out from among them. That is because those people did not offer the {Passover} sacrifice to me at the proper time. I will punish those people for what they did wrong

Here the masculine terms **man**, **he**, and **his** have a generic sense that includes both men and women. If it would be helpful to your readers, you could use language in your translation that is clearly inclusive of both men and women. Alternate translation: [And the person who is clean and is not on a way and ceases to do the Passover, then that person shall be cut off from his or her people, for he or she did not present the offering of Yahweh in its appointed time. That person shall lift up his or her sin]

Support Reference: When Masculine Words Include Women

ULT **and is not on a way**
UST and are not traveling

Yahweh is using **is not on a way** as a common expression of this culture to mean "is not traveling" or "is not on a journey." If this phrase does not have that meaning in your language, you could use a comparable expression from your language that does have that meaning, or you could state the meaning plainly. See how you translated the similar phrase in 9:10. Alternate translation: [is not on a journey]
Support Reference: Idiom

ULT **then that person shall be cut off from his people**
UST In that case, the other Israelites must drive those people out from among them

The expression **shall be cut off from his people** is a passive verbal form. If your language would not use that form, you could express the idea in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. If you need to say who does the action, the context indicates that it is the rest of the Israelites. Alternate translation: [then the rest of the Israelites must cut off that person from among them]
Support Reference: Active or Passive

ULT **he did not present the offering of**
UST those people did not offer the {Passover} sacrifice

Yahweh is using a construction in which a verb (**present**) and its object (**offering**) come from the same root. You may be able to use the same construction in your language to express the meaning here. Alternatively, your language may have another way of saying this. Alternate translation: [he did not give the offering]
Support Reference: Poetry

ULT **the offering of Yahweh**
UST the {Passover} sacrifice to me

Yahweh is using the possessive form to describe an **offering** that is for **Yahweh**. If a speaker of your language would not use the possessive form for this, you could express this idea in another way. See how you translated this phrase in 9:7. Alternate translation: [the offering for Yahweh]
Support Reference: Possession

ULT **the offering of**
UST the {Passover} sacrifice

Yahweh assumes that readers will know that **the offering** refers to the Passover lamb that the Israelites were commanded to sacrifice. You could say that explicitly if that would be helpful to your readers. See how you translated this word in 9:7. Alternate translation: [the Passover lamb offering]
Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Passover	Passover
offering	sacrifice
Yahweh	to me
time	time
sin	for what they did wrong

Numbers 9:14

ULT	UST
And if a sojourner sojourns with you and does the Passover to Yahweh according to the statute of the Passover and according to its ordinance, so he shall do. One statute shall be for you and for the sojourner and for the native of the land.'"	*Any foreigners who live among you and who want to celebrate the Passover Celebration to honor me may do so. They must obey all the instructions about the Passover Celebration that I previously told you. The same instructions apply to foreigners and to Israelites."*

ULT **And if a sojourner sojourns with you … for you**
UST Any foreigners who live among you … and to Israelites

If you decided in 9:10 to translate these verses in such a way that there would not be a quotation within a quotation, you can continue doing that here. Alternate translation: [And if a sojourner sojourns with them … for them]
Support Reference: Quotes within Quotes

ULT **according to the statute of the Passover and according to its ordinance**
UST all the instructions about the Passover Celebration that I previously told you

These two phrases **according to the statute of the Passover** and **according to its ordinance** mean basically the same thing. The second emphasizes the meaning of the first by repeating the same idea with different words. If it would be helpful to your readers, you could combine them and express the emphasis in another way. Alternate translation: [according to the statute of the Passover] or [according to the ordinance of the Passover]
Support Reference: Parallelism

ULT **according to the statute of the Passover and according to its ordinance … One statute**
UST all the instructions about the Passover Celebration {that I previously told you}. The same instructions

Here, **statute** and **ordinance** represent laws about the Passover in general, not one specific law. If it would be helpful to your readers, you could use expressions that would be more natural in your language. Alternate translation: [according to the statutes of the Passover and according to its ordinances … The same statutes]
Support Reference: Generic Noun Phrases

ULT **so he shall do**
UST may do so. They must obey

The implication is that foreigners must follow all the Passover regulations, but if they do, they can celebrate the Passover. You could include this information if that would be helpful to your readers. Alternate translation: [he may do the Passover in that way]
Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

ULT **so he shall do**
UST may do so. They must obey

Here the masculine term **he** has a generic sense that includes both men and women. If it would be helpful to your readers, you could use language in your translation that is clearly inclusive of both men and women. Alternate translation: [so he or she shall do]
Support Reference: When Masculine Words Include Women

ULT **for you and for the sojourner and for the native of the land**
UST to foreigners and to Israelites

The implication is that **you** includes both the **sojourner** and the **native of the land**. You could include this information if that would be helpful to your readers. Alternate translation: [for you, both for the sojourner and for the native of the land]
Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

ULT **and for the sojourner and for the native of the land**
UST to foreigners and to Israelites

Here, **sojourner** and **native** represent sojourners and natives in general, not specific individuals. If it would be helpful to your readers, you could use expressions that would be more natural in your language. Alternate translation: [and for the sojourners and for the natives of]
Support Reference: Generic Noun Phrases

ULT **and for the native of the land**
UST and to Israelites

Yahweh is using **the native of the land** as a common expression of this culture to mean "people who were born as Israelites." If this phrase does not have that meaning in your language, you could use a comparable expression from your language that does have that meaning, or you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [and for people who were born as Israelites]
Support Reference: Idiom

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
sojourns	foreigners
Passover	Passover
Yahweh	to {honor} me
statute	all the instructions
Passover	Passover
ordinance	all the instructions
statute	instructions
land	and to Israelites

Numbers 9:15

ULT	UST
And on the day of the raising up of the Dwelling, the cloud covered the Dwelling of the Tent of the Testimony, and in the evening it is upon the Dwelling like the appearance of fire until morning.	*When the Israelites set up the sacred tent, the cloud that went with them out of Egypt came directly over the inner part of the sacred tent. From sunset until sunrise, it would look like fire on top of the sacred tent.*

ULT **And on the day of the raising up of the Dwelling**
UST When the Israelites set up the sacred tent

This **day** is the day that Exodus 40:17 refers to, which is the first day of the first month of the second year. So, this event occurred before the Passover described in the first half of this chapter, which took place on the fourteenth day of the first month. If it is helpful in your language, you might want to make it clear that the account that starts in this verse happened before the Passover in 9:1–14. Alternate translation: [Now previously, on the day of the raising up of the Dwelling]

Support Reference: Order of Events

ULT **the cloud**
UST the cloud that went with them out of Egypt

The author assumes that readers will know that **the cloud** is the same cloud that led the Israelites when they left Egypt as described in Exodus 13:21–22. You could say this explicitly if that would be helpful to your readers. Alternate translation: [the same cloud that went before them when they left Egypt]

Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

ULT **the Dwelling of the Tent of the Testimony**
UST the inner part of the sacred tent

The author is using the possessive form to describe a **Dwelling** that was inside the **Tent of the Testimony**. The Dwelling was the inner part of the sacred tent, and the Tent of the Testimony was the outer part that enclosed it. See Exodus 26:1–13 for details, and see how you translated the similar words in 3:25. If a speaker of your language would not use the possessive form for this, you could express this idea in another way. Alternate translation: [the Dwelling that was inside the Tent of the Testimony]

Support Reference: Possession

ULT **it is upon the Dwelling like the appearance of fire**
UST it would look like fire on top of the sacred tent

The point of this comparison is that just as **fire** is bright and visible at night, so was the appearance over **the Dwelling**. If it would be helpful in your language, you could make this point explicitly. Alternate translation: [it is bright upon the Dwelling, like the appearance of fire]

Support Reference: Simile

ULT **it is**
UST it would

Here and in 9:16–23, the author uses the present tense to describe things that happened regularly and repeatedly in the past. See the chapter introduction for more information. If it would be clearer in your language, you could use a tense that can refer to regular or repeated actions. Alternate translation: [it was]

Support Reference: Irregular Use of Tenses

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
the Dwelling	the sacred tent
Tent	the inner part
Testimony	the inner part
the Dwelling	the sacred tent

Numbers 9:16

ULT	UST
So it is continually; the cloud covers it, and the appearance of fire is at night.	*That is what happened regularly. The cloud would be directly over the sacred tent, and it would look like fire during the night.*

ULT **So it is continually**
UST That is what happened regularly

The implication is that this situation with the cloud covering the tent in the daytime and appearing as fire at night continued throughout the entire time that the Israelites traveled in the wilderness. You could include this information if that would be helpful to your readers. Alternate translation: [So it is continually while the Israelites traveled through the wilderness]
Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

ULT **and the appearance of fire {is} at night**
UST and it would look like fire during the night

By **the appearance of fire is at night**, the author means that the cloud that covered the sacred tent appeared like fire during the night. You could indicate this explicitly in your translation if that would be helpful to your readers. See how you translated the fuller expression of this idea in 9:15. Alternate translation: [and the cloud appeared like fire at night]
Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

Numbers 9:17

ULT	UST
And to the mouth of the cloud being taken up from upon the tent, and after that the sons of Israel set out. And in a place where the cloud dwells there, there the sons of Israel camp.	*Whenever the cloud moved from the sacred tent, the Israelites would immediately leave the place where they had set up their tents. Whenever the cloud stayed in one place, the Israelites would set up their tents there.*

ULT **And to the mouth of the cloud being taken up**
UST Whenever the cloud moved

The author is using **to the mouth of the cloud** as a common expression of his culture to mean "when" or "at the time." If this phrase does not have that meaning in your language, you could use a comparable expression from your language that does have that meaning, or you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [And at any time the cloud could be taken up]
Support Reference: Idiom

ULT **of the cloud being taken up**
UST the cloud moved

The expression **being taken up** is a passive verbal form. If your language would not use that form, you could express the idea in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. If you need to say who does the action, the context indicates that it is God. Alternate translation: [Yahweh taking up the cloud]
Support Reference: Active or Passive

ULT **And in a place where the cloud dwells there**
UST Whenever the cloud stayed in one place

It might seem that the expression **where the cloud dwells there** contains extra information that would not be natural to express in your language. If so, you could shorten it. Alternate translation: [And in any place where the cloud dwells]
Support Reference: Making Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information Explicit

ULT **the cloud dwells**
UST the cloud stayed in one place

The author is speaking of the **cloud** as if it were a living thing that could dwell in a place. He means that Yahweh had the cloud stay in a place. If it would be helpful in your language, you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [Yahweh had the cloud stop and stay]
Support Reference: Personification

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
taken up	moved
tent	tent
Israel	Israelites

Numbers 9:18

ULT	UST
Upon the mouth of Yahweh the sons of Israel set out, and upon the mouth of Yahweh they camp. All the days that the cloud dwells upon the Dwelling they camp.	*The Israelites would leave a place and set up their tents in a new place as Yahweh commanded them to using the cloud. For as long as the cloud was over the sacred tent, they would stay in that place.*

ULT **Upon the mouth of Yahweh the sons of Israel set out, and upon the mouth of Yahweh they camp**

UST The Israelites would leave {a place} and set up their tents {in a new place} as Yahweh commanded them to using the cloud

It might seem that the expression **upon the mouth of Yahweh** contains extra information that would not be natural to express in your language. If so, you could shorten it. Alternate translation: [Upon the mouth of Yahweh the sons of Israel both set out and camp]

Support Reference: Making Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information Explicit

ULT **Upon the mouth of Yahweh … and upon the mouth of Yahweh**

UST as Yahweh commanded them to using the cloud

Here, **mouth** represents what Yahweh said or commanded. If it would be helpful in your language, you could use an equivalent expression or plain language. Alternate translation: [When Yahweh tells them to, … and when Yahweh tells them to,]

Support Reference: Metonymy

ULT **Upon the mouth of Yahweh … and upon the mouth of Yahweh**

UST as Yahweh commanded them to using the cloud

The implication is that Yahweh communicated his commands through the movement of the cloud. When it moved or stayed in place, this showed his will for the Israelites' travel. The phrase **upon the mouth of Yahweh** refers to Yahweh's commands or instructions. You could include this information if that would be helpful to your readers. Alternate translation: [Upon the mouth of Yahweh, made known by the cloud, … and upon the mouth of Yahweh, made known by the cloud,]

Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

ULT **the cloud dwells**

UST the cloud was

The author is speaking of **the cloud** as if it were a living thing that could live or stay in a place. If it would be helpful in your language, you could state the meaning plainly. See how you translated the similar words in 9:17. Alternate translation: [Yahweh has the cloud remain]

Support Reference: Personification

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Yahweh	Yahweh
Israel	Israelites
the Dwelling	the sacred tent

Numbers 9:19

ULT	UST
And when the cloud prolongs upon the Dwelling many days, then the sons of Israel keep the keeping of Yahweh, and they do not set out.	*Sometimes, the cloud would be over the sacred tent for a long time. When that happened, the Israelites would do exactly what Yahweh required. They would not leave the place where they had set up their tents.*

ULT **And when the cloud prolongs**
UST Sometimes, the cloud would be

The author is speaking of **the cloud** as if it were a living thing that could decide to stay in one place. He means that Yahweh had the cloud stay in one place. If it would be helpful in your language, you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [And when Yahweh has the cloud remain]
Support Reference: Personification

ULT **then … keep the keeping of Yahweh**
UST When that happened … would do exactly what Yahweh required

The author is using a construction in which a verb and its object come from the same root. You may be able to use the same construction in your language to express the meaning here. Alternatively, your language may have another way of saying this. Alternate translation: [keep the command of Yahweh]
Support Reference: Poetry

ULT **the keeping of Yahweh**
UST exactly what Yahweh required

The author is using the possessive form to describe a **keeping** that is required by **Yahweh**. If a speaker of your language would not use the possessive form for this, you could express this idea in another way. Alternate translation: [what Yahweh commanded them to keep]
Support Reference: Possession

ULT **and they do not set out**
UST They would not leave the place where they had set up their tents

The word **and** indicates that what follows is a result of what came before. Use a connector in your language that makes it clear that what follows is a result of what came before. Alternate translation: [and as a result they do not set out]
Support Reference: Connect — Reason-and-Result Relationship

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
the Dwelling	the sacred tent
Israel	Israelites
Yahweh	Yahweh

Numbers 9:20

ULT	UST
And it is that the cloud is days of number upon the Dwelling, upon the mouth of Yahweh they camp, and upon the mouth of Yahweh they set out.	*Sometimes, the cloud would be over the sacred tent for only a few days. In that case, they would set up their tents in a new place and leave that place as Yahweh commanded them to using the cloud.*

ULT **And it is that**
UST Sometimes

The phrase **And it is that** introduces a situation that happened multiple times but not every time. If it would be helpful in your language, you could translate this with a word or phrase that introduces recurring events, such as “whenever” or “sometimes.” Alternate translation: [And whenever]
Support Reference: Statements — Other Uses

ULT **days of number**
UST for only a few days

The phrase **days of number** was a common expression of this culture to mean “a small number of days” or “a few days.” If this phrase does not have that meaning in your language, you could use a comparable expression from your language that does have that meaning, or you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [a small number of days]
Support Reference: Idiom

ULT **upon the mouth of Yahweh they camp, and upon the mouth of Yahweh they set out**
UST In that case, they would set up their tents {in a new place} and leave {that place} as Yahweh commanded them to using the cloud

The expressions **upon the mouth of Yahweh they camp** and **upon the mouth of Yahweh they set out** might seem to contain extra information that would not be natural to express in your language. If so, you could shorten it. See how you translated the similar clauses in 9:18. Alternate translation: [upon the mouth of Yahweh they both camp and set out]
Support Reference: Making Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information Explicit

ULT **upon the mouth of Yahweh … and upon the mouth of Yahweh**
UST as Yahweh commanded them to using the cloud

Here, **upon the mouth of Yahweh** represents what Yahweh said by using words. If it would be clearer in your language, you could state the meaning plainly. See how you translated the similar phrases in 9:18. Alternate translation: [when Yahweh tells them to, … and when Yahweh tells them to,]
Support Reference: Metonymy

ULT **upon the mouth of Yahweh … and upon the mouth of Yahweh**
UST as Yahweh commanded them to using the cloud

The implication is that when Moses says the Israelites moved **upon the mouth of Yahweh**, Yahweh communicated his will through the movement of the cloud. You could include this information if that would be helpful to your readers. See how you translated the similar phrases in 9:18. Alternate translation: [upon the mouth of Yahweh, made known by the cloud, … and upon the mouth of Yahweh, made known by the cloud,]

Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
the Dwelling	the sacred tent
Yahweh	Yahweh

Numbers 9:21

ULT	UST
And it is that the cloud is from evening until morning, and the cloud is taken up in the morning, then they set out; or during the day and at night, and the cloud is taken up, then they set out.	*Sometimes, the cloud would be over the sacred tent only overnight. In that case, when the cloud moved from over the sacred tent in the morning, they would leave the place where they had set up their tents. Indeed, whenever the cloud moved from over the sacred tent, whether it was daytime or nighttime, they would leave the place where they had set up their tents.*

ULT **And it is that**
UST Sometimes

The phrase **And it is that** introduces events that occurred regularly. If it would be helpful in your language, you could use words like "whenever" or "sometimes" to show that these were repeated events. See how you translated this phrase in 9:20. Alternate translation: [And whenever]
Support Reference: Statements — Other Uses

ULT **is from evening**
UST would be over the sacred tent only overnight

The author is leaving out some of the words that in many languages a sentence would need in order to be complete. You can supply these words from the context if that would be clearer in your language. Alternate translation: [is upon the Dwelling from evening]
Support Reference: Ellipsis

ULT **and the cloud is taken up … and the cloud is taken up**
UST In that case, when the cloud moved from over the sacred tent … Indeed, whenever the cloud moved from over the sacred tent

The expression **the cloud is taken up** is a passive verbal form. If your language would not use that form, you could express the idea in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. If you need to say who does the action, the context indicates that it is God. See how you translated the similar words in 9:17. Alternate translation: [and Yahweh takes the cloud up … and Yahweh takes the cloud up]
Support Reference: Active or Passive

ULT **or during the day and at night, and the cloud is taken up**
UST the place where they had set up their tents. Indeed, whenever the cloud moved {from over the sacred tent}, whether it was daytime or nighttime

Here, the author could be indicating that: (1) the **cloud** could be **taken up** at any time of the **day** or **night**. Alternate translation: [or the cloud is taken up at any time during the day or night]; or (2) the **cloud** would sometimes remain over the Dwelling for a **day** and a **night** and then be **taken up**. Alternate translation: [or the cloud is over the Dwelling for a day and a night and then is taken up]
Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
day	whether it was daytime

Numbers 9:22

ULT	UST
Whether two days or a month or days, when the cloud prolongs upon the Dwelling to dwell upon it, the sons of Israel camp and do not set out. And when it is taken up, they set out.	*Sometimes, the cloud would stay over the sacred tent for two days, or a month, or a year, or any other length of time. In those cases, the Israelites would stay where they had set up their tents for that time. When the cloud would eventually move from over the sacred tent, they would leave that place.*

ULT **Whether two days or a month or days**
UST Sometimes … for two days, or a month, or a year, or any other length of time

The phrase **two days or a month or days** presents different lengths of time in order to emphasize that the length of time could vary. The author lists specific time periods as examples and ends with the general term "days" to indicate that these are just examples of possible lengths of time. If it would be clearer in your language, you could make explicit that these are examples and that other lengths of time were also possible. Alternate translation: [Whatever length of time, whether two days or a month or days]
Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

ULT **two days**
UST for two days

The author is using the expression **days** as a common expression of this culture to mean "a year." If this phrase does not have that meaning in your language, you could use a comparable expression from your language that does have that meaning, or you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [one year]
Support Reference: Idiom

ULT **when the cloud prolongs upon the Dwelling to dwell**
UST the cloud would stay over the sacred tent

The author is speaking of **the cloud** as if it were a living thing that could prolong its stay and dwell in a place. If it would be helpful in your language, you could state the meaning plainly. See how you translated the similar clause in 9:19. Alternate translation: [when Yahweh has the cloud remain upon the Dwelling to dwell]
Support Reference: Personification

ULT **And when it is taken up**
UST When the cloud would {eventually} move from over the sacred tent

The expression **is taken up** is a passive verbal form. If your language would not use that form, you could express the idea in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. If you need to say who does the action, the context indicates that it is God. See how you translated the similar form in 9:17. Alternate translation: [And when Yahweh takes it up]
Support Reference: Active or Passive

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
month	month
the Dwelling	the sacred tent
Israel	Israelites

Numbers 9:23

ULT	UST
Upon the mouth of Yahweh they camp, and upon the mouth of Yahweh they set out. They kept the keeping of Yahweh upon the mouth of Yahweh in the hand of Moses.	*So, the Israelites would set up their tents in a new place and leave that place as Yahweh commanded them to using the cloud. They did exactly what Yahweh required. Moses was in charge of the Israelites as they did that.*

ULT **Upon the mouth of Yahweh they camp, and upon the mouth of Yahweh they set out**
UST So, the Israelites would set up their tents {in a new place} and leave {that place} as Yahweh commanded them to using the cloud

See how you how translated the identical clauses in 9:20.
Support Reference: Metonymy

ULT **They kept the keeping of Yahweh**
UST They did … what Yahweh required

See how you translated the similar clause in 9:19. Alternate translation: [They kept what Yahweh commanded]
Support Reference: Poetry

ULT **and upon the mouth of Yahweh**
UST as Yahweh commanded them to using the cloud

Here, **mouth** represents Yahweh's command or instruction. If it would be helpful in your language, you could use an equivalent expression or plain language. Alternate translation: [as Yahweh ordered them to]
Support Reference: Metonymy

ULT **in the hand of Moses**
UST Moses was in charge of the Israelites as they did that

The author is using **in the hand of** as a common expression of this culture to mean "under the control of." If this phrase does not have that meaning in your language, you could use a comparable expression from your language that does have that meaning, or you could state the meaning plainly. See how you translated this phrase in 4:37. Alternate translation: [under the control of]
Support Reference: Idiom

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Yahweh	Yahweh
They kept	They did
Moses	Moses

Numbers 10

Numbers 10 Introduction

Numbers 10 Chapter Introduction

Structure and Formatting

This chapter provides the commands Yahweh gave to Moses about silver trumpets to be used for signaling the people. It also describes the order in which the Israelites set out, Moses' request to Hobab, and the blessings Moses spoke when the sacred chest was picked up at the beginning of each day and set down at the end of each day.

1. Yahweh commands Moses to make silver trumpets and explains their uses (1–10)
2. Israel leaves Sinai and travels in the assigned order (11–28)
3. Moses asks Hobab to accompany Israel and help guide the people (29–32)
4. The ark goes ahead of Israel, and Moses calls on Yahweh when it sets out and rests (33–36)

Religious and Cultural Concepts in This Chapter

Trumpets

The trumpets mentioned in this chapter are metal instruments that make a loud sound when people blow into them. This chapter refers to "blowing" the trumpets as well as "blowing an alarm." These are two different ways of making sounds with the trumpets. It is not clear exactly what sound the "alarm" was. Some scholars think that the sound was very loud. Others think the sound was repeated. Use a general expression in your language, but be sure to distinguish "blowing" and "blowing an alarm."

Israel sets out

In 10:11–28, the author describes the order in which the Israelite tribes set out from their camp at Sinai. While the author is explicitly describing the first time they left, he implies that this is also how they normally traveled. The four camps that Yahweh outlined in Numbers 2 set out in the same order in this chapter: east, south, west, north. It is also important to note that the Levites set out in two different groups: first the Gershonites and Merarites, who carried the pieces of the sacred tent, and later the Kohathites, who carried the things that belonged inside the sacred tent.

"According to their armies"

As in Numbers 2, the phrase "according to their armies" indicates that each tribe and camp was organized and arranged into military units or divisions. The people in each military unit would camp together, and their names were listed together when the census was recorded. The UST expresses this idea with the phrase "by their army divisions."

Translation Issues in This Chapter

Order of events

The events in this chapter occur after the events in Numbers 1–9. The events in Numbers 7–9 happened first, followed by the events in Numbers 1–6. Then, the events in this chapter happened. This chapter repeatedly refers to the same event: the Israelites setting out from Mount Sinai. The author mentions this event directly in 10:12–13, 10:28, and 10:33. Be sure that your readers know that these verses all refer to the same event.

Repetition

The list in 10:14–27 includes many repeated structures. Each of the camps, made up of three tribes, is described with almost the same words, except for the names. After you have translated 10:14–16, use the same forms for the following sections. Remember to pay attention to differences in names and details, as illustrated in the ULT and by the notes.

Names from earlier in Numbers

In this chapter, the author includes the name of each tribe's leader and the name of each leader's father. These names already appeared in Numbers 1 in identical form. Be sure that you translate them in exactly the same way in this chapter.

Moses' father-in-law

In 10:29, the author refers to Hobab and Reuel, identifying one of them as Moses' father-in-law, but it is not clear which one. In Judges 4:11, Hobab is called Moses' father-in-law. However, in Exodus 2:18, Reuel is named as the father of Moses' (future) wife. Finally, elsewhere in Exodus (for example, see Exodus 3:1 and 4:18), Jethro is the name of Moses' father-in-law. In this time period, people often had multiple names. Also, some scholars think that the word for "father-in-law" can refer to any male relative by marriage. So, it may be that Hobab is Moses' brother-in-law and that Reuel was also named Jethro and was Moses' father-in-law. It may be that Hobab was also named Jethro and was Moses' father-in-law and that Reuel was Hobab's father and Moses' wife's grandfather. It may be that one man had all three names (Hobab, Reuel, and Jethro) and had a father whose name was also Reuel. Here, the Hebrew most naturally identifies Hobab as Moses' father-in-law, and the UST follows that interpretation. Consider how translations that your readers might be familiar with treat this verse.

Numbers 10:1

ULT	UST
And Yahweh spoke to Moses, saying,	*Yahweh told Moses,*

ULT **saying**
UST told

Here, the word **saying** introduces a direct quotation. See how you translated **saying** in 1:1.
Support Reference: Quotations and Quote Margins

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Yahweh	Yahweh
Moses	Moses

Numbers 10:2

ULT	UST
"Make for you two trumpets of silver. You shall make them hammered work, and they shall be for you for the assembly of the congregation and for the departure of the camps,	*"Have someone make two trumpets by hammering them from a single sheet of silver. You must use these trumpets to summon the whole Israelite community together and to signal that it is time to leave the place where the Israelites have set up their tents.*

ULT **Make for you … You shall make … for you**
UST Have someone make … by hammering … from a single sheet of silver. You must use these trumpets

The word **you** is singular here because Moses is being addressed individually. So use the singular form in your translation if your language marks that distinction.
Support Reference: Forms of 'You' — Singular

ULT **Make for you two trumpets of silver. You shall make**
UST Have someone make two trumpets by hammering … from a single sheet of silver

By **Make for you**, Yahweh means that Moses should have someone make the trumpets for him. You could indicate this explicitly in your translation if that would be helpful to your readers. Alternate translation: [Let two trumpets of silver be made for you. Let them be made of]
Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

ULT **hammered work**
UST by hammering … from a single sheet of silver

A **hammered work** is a kind of metalworking technique where a flat sheet of metal is shaped by striking it repeatedly. If your readers would not be familiar with what a hammered work is, you could use a more general term or explain it in a footnote. See how you translated this phrase in 8:4. Alternate translation: [from a sheet of silver that was hammered into shape]
Support Reference: Translate Unknowns

ULT **and they shall be for you**
UST You must use these trumpets

The implication is that someone other than Moses would need to blow the trumpets. You could include this information if that would be helpful to your readers. Alternate translation: [and you shall have someone blow them]
Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

ULT **for the assembly of the congregation and for the departure of the camps**
UST to summon the whole Israelite community together and to signal that it is time to leave the place where the Israelites have set up their tents

If your language does not use abstract nouns for the ideas of **assembly** and **departure**, you could express the same ideas in other ways. Alternate translation: [to signal the congregation to assemble and to signal the camps to depart]
Support Reference: Abstract Nouns

> ULT **the camps**
> UST the place where the Israelites have set up their tents

Here, **camps** represents the groups of people living in the camps. If it would be helpful in your language, you could use an equivalent expression or plain language. Alternate translation: [the people in the camps]

Support Reference: Metonymy

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
trumpets	trumpets
silver	silver
assembly	to summon
congregation	community

Numbers 10:3

ULT	UST
and they shall blow them, and all the congregation shall congregate to you to the opening of the tent of meeting.	*When the priests sound both trumpets, the whole Israelite community must gather together with you at the entrance to the sacred tent.*

ULT **and they shall blow**
UST When {the priests} sound

The pronoun **they** refers to the priests, as 10:8 clarifies. It may be helpful to clarify this for your readers. Alternate translation: [and the priests shall blow]
Support Reference: Pronouns — When to Use Them

ULT **them**
UST both trumpets

The implication is that Moses was to have both trumpets sounded to summon the entire congregation, in contrast with 10:4, where only one trumpet was to be sounded to summon just the leaders. You could include this information if that would be helpful to your readers. Alternate translation: [the two trumpets]
Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

ULT **to you**
UST with you

The word **you** is singular here because Moses is the one being addressed. So use the singular form in your translation if your language marks that distinction.
Support Reference: Forms of 'You' — Singular

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
congregation	community
tent of meeting	the sacred tent

Numbers 10:4

ULT	UST
And if they blow one, then the leaders, the heads of the thousands of Israel, shall congregate to you.	*When the priests sound only one trumpet, the men who lead the clans of the Israelite people must gather together with you at the entrance to the sacred tent.*

ULT **the heads of the thousands of Israel**
UST the men who lead the clans of the Israelite people

Here, Yahweh is speaking as if the leaders of Israel were actually **heads** of groups of people. If this meaning would not be clear in your language, you could use a comparable expression or you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [the chiefs over the divisions within Israel]
Support Reference: Metaphor

ULT **one**
UST only one

Yahweh is leaving out some of the words that in many languages a sentence would need in order to be complete. You can supply these words from the context if that would be clearer in your language. Alternate translation: [a single trumpet]
Support Reference: Ellipsis

ULT **to you**
UST with you at the entrance to the sacred tent

The word **you** is singular here because Yahweh is speaking only to Moses. So use the singular form in your translation if your language marks that distinction.
Support Reference: Forms of 'You' — Singular

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
leaders	the men who lead
Israel	Israelite

Numbers 10:5

ULT	UST
And you shall blow an alarm, and the camps camping to the east shall set out,	*When the priests sound the trumpets in a special way, the people that set up their tents on the east side of the sacred tent must leave that place.*

ULT **And you shall blow**
UST When {the priests} sound the trumpets

The word **you** is plural here because God is addressing all the Israelites along with Moses. So use the plural form in your translation if your language marks that distinction.
Support Reference: Forms of 'You' — Singular

ULT **And you shall blow**
UST When {the priests} sound the trumpets

By **you shall blow**, Yahweh means that the priests shall blow the trumpets. You could indicate this explicitly in your translation if that would be helpful to your readers. Alternate translation: [And you shall have the priests blow]
Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

ULT **an alarm**
UST in a special way

A **alarm** is a kind of signal made by blowing the trumpet in a special way. If your readers would not be familiar with what an alarm is, you could use a more general term or explain it in a footnote. Alternate translation: [a signal] or [a loud blast]
Support Reference: Translate Unknowns

ULT **the camps**
UST the people that set up their tents

Here, **camps** represents the people living in the camps. If it would be helpful in your language, you could use an equivalent expression or plain language. Alternate translation: [the people in the camps]
Support Reference: Metonymy

ULT **to the east**
UST on the east side of the sacred tent

The implication is that these camps were pitched to the east of the tent of meeting. You could include this information if that would be helpful to your readers. Alternate translation: [to the east of the tent of meeting]
Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
alarm	in a special way

Numbers 10:6

ULT	UST
and you shall blow a second alarm, and the camps camping to the south shall set out. They shall blow an alarm for their setting out.	*When the priests sound the trumpets in a special way a second time, the people that set up their tents on the south side of the sacred tent must leave that place. The priests must sound the trumpets in that special way whenever the people who set up their tents on any side of the sacred tent must leave those places.*

ULT **and you shall blow**
UST When {the priests} sound the trumpets

The word **you** is plural here because Yahweh is addressing all the Israelites along with Moses. So use the plural form in your translation if your language marks that distinction.
Support Reference: Forms of 'You' — Singular

ULT **and you shall blow**
UST When {the priests} sound the trumpets

By **you shall blow**, Yahweh means that the priests shall blow the trumpets, as stated in 10:8. You could indicate this explicitly in your translation if that would be helpful to your readers. See how you translated this phrase in 10:5. Alternate translation: [and you shall have the priests blow]
Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

ULT **a second alarm … an alarm**
UST in a special way a second time … in that special way

The term **alarm** refers to a kind of trumpet signal. If your readers would not be familiar with what an alarm is, you could use the name of a similar thing that your readers would recognize, or you could use a more general term like "signal" or "loud blast." See how you translated the word **alarm** in 10:5. Alternate translation: [a second signal … a signal] or [a second loud blast … a loud blast]
Support Reference: Translate Unknowns

ULT **a second alarm**
UST in a special way a second time

If your language would not represent a number in a form such as **a second alarm**, you could represent this number in a form that your language would use. Alternate translation: [alarm two]
Support Reference: Ordinal Numbers

ULT **the camps**
UST the people that set up their tents

See how you translated **camps** in 10:5. Alternate translation: [and the people in the camps]
Support Reference: Metonymy

ULT **to the south**
UST on the south side of the sacred tent

The implication is that these were the camps located to the south of the tent of meeting. You could include this information if that would be helpful to your readers. See how you translated the similar phrase in 10:5. Alternate translation: [to the south of the tent of meeting]
Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

ULT **They shall blow an alarm for their setting out**
UST The priests must sound {the trumpets} in that special way whenever the people who set up their tents {on any side of the sacred tent} must leave those places

The pronoun **they** refers to the priests. It may be helpful to clarify this for your readers. See how you translated "and they shall blow them" in 10:3. Alternate translation: [And the priests shall blow an alarm for the setting out of the camps]
Support Reference: Pronouns — When to Use Them

ULT **They shall blow an alarm for their setting out**
UST The priests must sound {the trumpets} in that special way whenever the people who set up their tents {on any side of the sacred tent} must leave those places

The implication is that the same trumpet signal used for the eastern and southern camps was also to be used when the western and northern camps set out. You could include this information if that would be helpful to your readers. Alternate translation: [They shall blow alarms for the setting out of each other camp in the same way]
Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
alarm	in a special way

Numbers 10:7

ULT	UST
And when assembling the assembly, you shall blow but you shall not blow an alarm.	*When you want to summon the whole Israelite community, the priests must sound the trumpets, but not in that special way.*

ULT **And when assembling the assembly**
UST When you want to summon the {whole Israelite} community

This is poetic language where the verb "assemble" and its object "assembly" come from the same root. You may be able to use the same construction in your language to express the meaning here. Alternatively, your language may have another way of saying this. Alternate translation: [And when assembling the people]
Support Reference: Poetry

ULT **you shall blow but you shall not blow an alarm**
UST the priests must sound {the trumpets}, but not in that special way

The word **you** is plural here because God is speaking to all the Israelites along with Moses. So use the plural form in your translation if your language marks that distinction.
Support Reference: Forms of 'You' — Singular

ULT **you shall blow but you shall not blow an alarm**
UST the priests must sound {the trumpets}, but not in that special way

The implication is that it is the priests who blow the trumpets, as stated explicitly in 10:8. You could make this explicit by saying who does the blowing. See how you translated "you shall blow" in 10:5. Alternate translation: [you shall have the priests blow but you shall not have them blow]
Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

ULT **but you shall not blow an alarm**
UST but not in that special way

See how you translated **alarm** in 10:5.
Support Reference: Translate Unknowns

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
assembling	When you want to summon
assembly	community
alarm	in that special way

Numbers 10:8

ULT	UST
And the sons of Aaron, the priests, shall blow the trumpets, and they shall be for you for a statute of eternity, for your generations.	*The descendants of Aaron who are priests are the ones who should sound the trumpets. These instructions about the trumpets always apply, both to the Israelites who are alive now and to their descendants.*

ULT **And the sons of Aaron**
UST The descendants of Aaron

Here, Yahweh is speaking as if the priests were actually **sons of Aaron**. This refers to the descendants of Aaron who served as priests. If this meaning would not be clear in your language, you could use a comparable expression or you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [And the men descended from Aaron]
Support Reference: Metaphor

ULT **and they shall be**
UST apply

The pronoun **they** refers to the trumpets. It may be helpful to clarify this for your readers. Alternate translation: [and the trumpets shall be]
Support Reference: Pronouns — When to Use Them

ULT **for you … for your generations**
UST both to the Israelites who are alive now and to their descendants

The word **you** is plural here because it refers to the Israelites. So use the plural form in your translation if your language marks that distinction.
Support Reference: Forms of 'You' — Singular

ULT **for a statute of eternity**
UST These instructions about the trumpets always

Yahweh is using the possessive form to describe a **statute** that applies for **eternity**. If a speaker of your language would not use the possessive form for this, you could express this idea in another way. Alternate translation: [for a statute that applies for eternity]
Support Reference: Possession

ULT **for a statute of eternity**
UST These instructions about the trumpets always

If your language does not use an abstract noun for the idea of **eternity**, you could express the same idea in another way. Alternate translation: [for an eternal statute]
Support Reference: Abstract Nouns

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Aaron	Aaron
priests	priests
trumpets	trumpets
statute	These instructions about the trumpets
eternity	always
generations	and to their descendants

Numbers 10:9

ULT	UST
And when you go to a battle in your land against the opponent who opposes you, then you shall blow an alarm on the trumpets, and you shall be remembered to the face of Yahweh your God, and you shall be saved from your enemies.	*When you fight in your own country against enemies who attack you, have the priests sound the trumpets in a special way. I, Yahweh your God, will listen and rescue you from those enemies.*

ULT **And when you go**
UST When you fight

The word **you** here and in the rest of this verse is plural because Yahweh is addressing all the Israelites along with Moses. So use the plural form in your translation if your language marks that distinction.
Support Reference: Forms of 'You' — Singular

ULT **the opponent who opposes you**
UST enemies who attack you

Yahweh is using a construction in which a verb and its object come from the same root. You may be able to use the same construction in your language to express the meaning here. Alternatively, your language may have another way of saying this. Alternate translation: [those who oppose you]
Support Reference: Poetry

ULT **then you shall blow an alarm**
UST have {the priests} sound the trumpets

See how you translated this phrase in 10:5.
Support Reference: Translate Unknowns

ULT **and you shall be remembered to the face of Yahweh your God, and you shall be saved**
UST I, Yahweh your God, will listen and rescue you

The expressions **shall be remembered** and **shall be saved** are passive verbal forms. If your language would not use those forms, you could express the ideas in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. If you need to say who does the actions, the context indicates that it is God. Alternate translation: [and Yahweh your God shall remember you, and he shall save you]
Support Reference: Active or Passive

ULT **and you shall be remembered**
UST will listen

The word translated as **and** indicates that what follows is a result of what came before. Use a connector in your language that makes it clear that what follows is a result of what came before. Alternate translation: [and in response you shall be remembered]
Support Reference: Connect — Reason-and-Result Relationship

> ULT **to the face of Yahweh your God**
> UST I, Yahweh your God, will listen

Here, **to the face of** represents being in front of Yahweh. If it would be helpful in your language, you could use an equivalent expression or plain language. Alternate translation: [before Yahweh your God]

Support Reference: Metonymy

> ULT **to the face of Yahweh your God**
> UST I, Yahweh your God, will listen

Yahweh is speaking of himself in the third person as **Yahweh your God**. If it would be helpful in your language, you could translate this in the first person. Alternate translation: [to my face, who am Yahweh your God]

Support Reference: First, Second or Third Person

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
land	in your own country
the opponent	enemies
alarm	have {the priests} sound the trumpets
trumpets	in a special way
Yahweh	Yahweh
God	God
saved	rescue
enemies	enemies

Numbers 10:10

ULT	UST
And on the day of your joy and at your appointed times and at the heads of your months, then you shall blow the trumpets upon your burnt offerings and upon the sacrifices of your peace offerings, and they will be for you for a memorial to the face of your God. I am Yahweh your God."	*When it is a day when you rejoice, including at the yearly celebrations and on the first day of each month, have the priests sound the trumpets. They must do that when the priests offer the wholly burned sacrifices and fellowship sacrifices that you give. Then, I will listen to you and think about you. I am Yahweh your God."*

ULT **and at the heads of your months**
UST and on the first day of each month

Here, **heads of your months** refers to the beginning of each month as if each month were a person or animal and its first day were its head. If this meaning would not be clear in your language, you could use a comparable expression or you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [and during the festivals at the beginning of each month]
Support Reference: Metaphor

ULT **And on the day of your joy and at your appointed times and at the heads of your months, then you shall blow the trumpets upon your burnt offerings and upon the sacrifices of your peace offerings, and they will be for you for a memorial to the face of your God. I {am} Yahweh your God**
UST When it is a day when you rejoice, including at the yearly celebrations and on the first day of each month, have {the priests} sound the trumpets. {They must do that} when {the priests} offer the wholly burned sacrifices and fellowship sacrifices that you give. Then, I will listen to you and think about you. I am Yahweh your God

The word **you** is plural here and in the rest of the verse because Yahweh is addressing all the Israelites along with Moses. So use the plural form in your translation if your language marks that distinction.
Support Reference: Forms of 'You' — Singular

ULT **And on the day of your joy and at your appointed times and at the heads of your months**
UST When it is a day when you rejoice, including at the yearly celebrations and on the first day of each month

Here, the word **and** in the phrase **and at your appointed times** could mean that: (1) **your appointed times** and **the heads of your months** are examples of **the day of your**. Alternate translation: [And on the day of your joy, that is, at your appointed times and at the heads of your months]; or (2) **your appointed times** and **the heads of your months** are in addition to **the day of your joy**. Alternate translation: [And on the day of your joy and also at your appointed times and at the heads of your months]
Support Reference: Connecting Words and Phrases

ULT **And on the day of your joy**
UST When it is a day when you rejoice

Here, **day** represents a specific time. If it would be helpful in your language, you could use an equivalent expression or plain language. Alternate translation: [And at the time of your joy]
Support Reference: Metonymy

ULT **And on the day of your joy**
UST When it is a day when you rejoice

If your language does not use an abstract noun for the idea of **joy**, you could express the same idea in another way. Alternate translation: [And on the day when you are joyful]
Support Reference: Abstract Nouns

ULT **And on the day**
UST When it is a day

Yahweh is not referring to a specific **day**. He means days in general. If it would be helpful to your readers, you could use an expression that would be more natural in your language. Alternate translation: [And on the days]
Support Reference: Generic Noun Phrases

ULT **and at your appointed times**
UST including at the yearly celebrations

By **appointed times**, Yahweh means the special festivals that God commanded the Israelites to celebrate each year. You could indicate this explicitly in your translation if that would be helpful to your readers. Alternate translation: [at your yearly festivals]
Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

ULT **then you shall blow**
UST have {the priests} sound

The implication is that the priests, not the general population, were to blow the trumpets. You could include this information if that would be helpful to your readers. Alternate translation: [then you shall have the priests blow]
Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

ULT **upon your burnt offerings and upon the sacrifices of your peace offerings**
UST They must do that when {the priests} offer the wholly burned sacrifices and fellowship sacrifices that you give

Yahweh is using **upon your burnt offerings and upon the sacrifices of your peace offerings** as a common expression of this culture to mean “when you offer your burnt offerings and when you offer the sacrifices of your peace offerings.” If this phrase does not have that meaning in your language, you could use a comparable expression from your language that does have that meaning, or you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [when you offer your burnt offerings and when you offer the sacrifices of your peace offerings]
Support Reference: Idiom

ULT **and upon the sacrifices of your peace offerings**
UST and fellowship sacrifices that you give

Yahweh is using the possessive form to describe **sacrifices** that are part of **peace offerings**. If a speaker of your language would not use the possessive form for this, you could express this idea in another way. Alternate translation: [and upon the animal sacrifices that are part of your peace offerings]
Support Reference: Possession

ULT **and they will be for you for a memorial**
UST Then, I will listen to you and think about you

If your language does not use an abstract noun for the idea of **memorial**, you could express the same idea in another way. Alternate translation: [and they will cause you to be remembered]
Support Reference: Abstract Nouns

ULT **to the face of your God**
UST Then, I will listen to you and think about you

Here, **to the face of** represents being in front of God. If it would be helpful in your language, you could use an equivalent expression or plain language. Alternate translation: [before your God]
Support Reference: Metonymy

ULT **of your God**
UST Then, I will listen to you and think about you

Yahweh is speaking of himself in the third person as **your God**. If it would be helpful in your language, you could translate this in the first person. Alternate translation: [me, your God]
Support Reference: First, Second or Third Person

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
joy	rejoice
times	including at the yearly celebrations
months	month
trumpets	trumpets
burnt offerings	the wholly burned sacrifices
sacrifices	sacrifices
peace offerings	fellowship sacrifices that you give
God	Then, I will listen to you and think about you
I {am} Yahweh	I am Yahweh
God	God

Numbers 10:11

ULT	UST
And it happened in the second year, in the second month, on 20 in the month, the cloud was taken up from upon the Dwelling of the Testimony.	*It was the twentieth day of the second month of the second year. On that day, the cloud moved from the sacred tent.*

ULT **And it happened**
UST It was

The phrase **And it happened** introduces a new event in the story. This is a common way in biblical Hebrew to signal the beginning of a new section. If your language has a natural way to mark the start of a new event, you could use it here. Alternate translation: [Then] or [After this]
Support Reference: Introduction of a New Event

ULT **in the second year, in the second month, on 20 in the month**
UST the twentieth day of the second month of the second year

This event took place after the events narrated in Numbers 1–6, which took place after the events in Numbers 7–9. If it is helpful in your language, you might want to make it clear that the account that starts in this verse happened after the events in chapters 1–6. Alternate translation: [after the census, in the second year, in the second month, on 20 in the month]
Support Reference: Order of Events

ULT **in the second year, in the second month**
UST of the second month of the second year

If your language would not represent numbers in forms such as **in the second year** and **in the second month**, you could represent these numbers in forms that your language would use. Alternate translation: [in year two, in month two]
Support Reference: Ordinal Numbers

ULT **in the second year**
UST of the second year

The implication is that this was two years after the Israelites had left Egypt. You could include this information if that would be helpful to your readers. Alternate translation: [in the second year after the Israelites left Egypt]
Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

ULT **in the second month**
UST of the second month

The **second month** of the Hebrew calendar includes April and May on Western calendars. You could convert the Hebrew day and month into an approximate date on the calendar that your culture uses. However, the Jews used a lunar calendar, so if you use a solar calendar, the date will be different every year, and the translation will not be entirely accurate. So you may just want to give the number of the day and the name of the month on the Hebrew calendar and say in a footnote approximately what time of year that is on your calendar.
Support Reference: Hebrew Months

ULT **on 20**
UST the twentieth day

The author is leaving out some of the words that in many languages a sentence would need in order to be complete. You can supply these words from the context if that would be clearer in your language. Alternate translation: [on day 20]
Support Reference: Ellipsis

ULT **on 20**
UST the twentieth day

If your language would not represent a number in a form such as **on 20**, you could represent this number in a form that your language would use. Alternate translation: [on the twentieth]
Support Reference: Ordinal Numbers

ULT **the cloud was taken up**
UST On that day, the cloud moved

The expression **was taken up** is a passive verbal form. If your language would not use that form, you could express the idea in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. If you need to say who does the action, the context indicates that it is Yahweh. Alternate translation: [Yahweh took the cloud up]
Support Reference: Active or Passive

ULT **the Dwelling of the Testimony**
UST the sacred tent

The implication is that the tent housed the stone tablets on which Yahweh had written the Ten Commandments, which were called "the Testimony." The ark containing these tablets was kept in the Most Holy Place in this tent. You could include this information if that would be helpful to your readers. See how you translated this phrase in 1:50. Alternate translation: [the tent holding the ark containing the Ten Commandments]
Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
year	year
month	month
the Dwelling	the … tent
Testimony	sacred

Numbers 10:12

ULT	UST
And the sons of Israel set out according to their departures from the wilderness of Sinai, and the cloud dwelled in the wilderness of Paran.	*So, the Israelites left the desolate area around Sinai. Each group of tribes left in the proper order. The cloud moved to the desolate area near the city of Paran and stayed there, and the Israelites followed it.*

ULT **according to their departures**
UST Each group of tribes left in the proper order

Here, the word **departures** could refer to: (1) the way each group of three tribes left its campsite. This is probably what the word means in 10:28. Alternate translation: [according to their order of departure]; or (2) multiple times in a row when the Israelites left their campsite. This is what the word means in 33:1–2. Alternate translation: [with many campsites] or [on their many journeys]
Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

ULT **according to their departures**
UST Each group of tribes left in the proper order

If your language does not use an abstract noun for the idea of **departures**, you could express the same idea in another way. Alternate translation: [according to how they departed]
Support Reference: Abstract Nouns

ULT **and the cloud dwelled**
UST The cloud moved … and stayed there, and the Israelites followed it

The author is speaking of the **cloud** as if it were a living thing that could dwell in a place. If it would be helpful in your language, you could state the meaning plainly. See how you translated the similar phrase in 9:17. Alternate translation: [and Yahweh had the cloud stop and stay]
Support Reference: Personification

ULT **in the wilderness of Paran**
UST to the desolate area near {the city of} Paran

The author is using the possessive form to describe a **wilderness** that is near **Paran**. If a speaker of your language would not use the possessive form for this, you could express this idea in another way. Alternate translation: [in the wilderness that was near Paran]
Support Reference: Possession

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Israel	Israelites
wilderness	the desolate area
Sinai	Sinai
Paran	Paran

Numbers 10:13

ULT	UST
And they set out in the first upon the mouth of Yahweh in the hand of Moses.	*That was the first time Yahweh commanded them to leave the place where they had set up their tents. Moses was in charge as they left.*

ULT **in the first**
UST That was the first time

The phrase **in the first** is a common expression of this culture to mean "for the first time." If this phrase does not have that meaning in your language, you could use a comparable expression from your language that does have that meaning, or you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [for the first time]
Support Reference: Idiom

ULT **in the first**
UST That was the first time

If your language would not represent a number in a form such as **in the first**, you could represent this number in a form that your language would use. Alternate translation: [for time one]
Support Reference: Ordinal Numbers

ULT **upon the mouth of Yahweh in the hand of Moses**
UST Yahweh commanded them … Moses was in charge as they left

See how you translated this phrase in 9:23. Alternate translation: [as Yahweh commanded them under the control of Moses]
Support Reference: Metonymy

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Yahweh	Yahweh
Moses	Moses

Numbers 10:14

ULT	UST
And the banner of the camp of the sons of Judah set out in the first according to their armies: and over his army was Nahshon, the son of Amminadab,	*The three tribes that set up their camps near the tribal flag that belonged to the descendants of Judah left first. They left by their army divisions. Amminadab's son Nahshon led the soldiers from Judah tribe.*

ULT **And the banner of the camp of the sons of Judah set out**

UST The three tribes that set up their camps near the tribal flag that belonged to the descendants of Judah left … They left

The author is speaking of **the banner** as if it were a living thing that could set out on its own. If it would be helpful in your language, you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [And those who camped at the banner of the camp of the sons of Judah set out]

Support Reference: Personification

ULT **the banner of**

UST The three tribes that set up their camps near the tribal flag

A **banner** is a kind of flag that represents a group of people. If your readers would not be familiar with what a banner is, you could use the name of a similar thing that your readers would recognize, or you could use a more general term. See how you translated **banner** in 1:52. Alternate translation: [the flag of]

Support Reference: Translate Unknowns

ULT **the camp of the sons of Judah**

UST The three tribes that set up their camps near the tribal flag that belonged to the descendants of Judah

The implication is that this group, who followed the tribal flag of Judah, included the troops not only from Judah but also from the tribes of Issachar and Zebulun, as shown in 10:15–16. You could include this information if that would be helpful to your readers. Alternate translation: [the camp of the sons of Judah, which included the sons of Issachar and Zebulun,]

Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

ULT **in the first**

UST first

The author is using **in the first** as a common expression of his culture to mean "as the first to leave" or "in the first position." If this phrase does not have that meaning in your language, you could use a comparable expression from your language that does have that meaning, or you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [as the first to leave]

Support Reference: Idiom

ULT **according to their armies**
UST by their army divisions

Here and throughout the chapter, the phrase **according to their armies** implies that the tribes were organized like armies, with leaders and orderly groups. You could include this information if that would be helpful to your readers. See the chapter introduction for more information. Alternate translation: [according to their military divisions]
Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

ULT **and over his army**
UST led the soldiers from Judah tribe

The pronoun **his** refers to Judah. It may be helpful to clarify this for your readers. Alternate translation: [and over Judah's army]
Support Reference: Pronouns — When to Use Them

ULT **was Nahshon, the son of Amminadab**
UST Amminadab's son Nahshon

For these and the other names in the list in 10:14–27, translate them as you did in chapter 1. See the chapter introduction for more information.
Support Reference: How to Translate Names

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Judah	Judah

Numbers 10:17

ULT	UST
And the Dwelling was taken down, and the sons of Gershon and the sons of Merari, the ones carrying the Dwelling, set out.	*Then the Levites disassembled the sacred tent. The descendants of Gershon and Merari carried its pieces, and they left next.*

ULT **And the Dwelling was taken down**
UST Then {the Levites} disassembled the sacred tent

The expression **was taken down** is a passive verbal form. If your language would not use that form, you could express the idea in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. If you need to say who does the action, the context indicates that it is the Gershonites and the Merarites. Alternate translation: [And the sons of Gershon and the sons of Merari took down the Dwelling]
Support Reference: Active or Passive

ULT **of Gershon … of Merari**
UST of Gershon … Merari

See how you translated these men's names in Numbers 3:17.
Support Reference: How to Translate Names

ULT **the ones carrying the Dwelling**
UST carried its pieces

The implication is that these men were assigned this task as their specific responsibility. You could include this information if that would be helpful to your readers. Alternate translation: [whose job it was to carry the Dwelling]
Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
the Dwelling	the sacred tent
carrying	carried

Numbers 10:18

ULT	UST
And the banner of the camp of Reuben set out according to their armies: and over his army was Elizur, the son of Shedeur,	*Then the three tribes that set up their camps near the tribal flag that belonged to the descendants of Reuben left. They left by their army divisions. Shedeur's son Elizur led the soldiers from Reuben tribe.*

ULT **And the banner of the camp of Reuben set out**
UST Then {the three tribes that set up their camps near} the tribal flag that belonged to {the descendants of} Reuben left

The author is speaking of **the banner** as if it were a living thing that could move forward. If it would be helpful in your language, you could state the meaning plainly. See how you translated the similar clause in 10:14. Alternate translation: [And those who camped at the banner of the camp of Reuben set out]
Support Reference: Personification

ULT **And the banner of the camp of Reuben set out**
UST Then {the three tribes that set up their camps near} the tribal flag that belonged to {the descendants of} Reuben left

See how you translated **banner** in 10:14.
Support Reference: Translate Unknowns

ULT **and over his army**
UST led the soldiers from Reuben tribe

The pronoun **his** refers to Reuben. It may be helpful to clarify this for your readers. See how you translated the similar phrase in 10:14. Alternate translation: [and over Reuben's camp]
Support Reference: Pronouns — When to Use Them

ULT **the camp of Reuben**
UST the tribal flag that belonged to {the descendants of} Reuben

The implication is that the camp of Reuben included the tribes of Simeon and Gad, who followed Reuben's leadership and camped near his tribal flag. You could include this information if that would be helpful to your readers. Alternate translation: [the camp of Reuben, which included the sons of Simeon and Gad]
Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Reuben	Reuben

Numbers 10:21

ULT	UST
And the Kohathites, the ones carrying the holy place, set out, and they raised up the Dwelling until their coming.	*The descendants of Kohath carried the things that belonged in the sacred tent, and they left next. The other Levites set up the sacred tent before the descendants of Kohath arrived at the place where they would set up their tents.*

ULT **the Kohathites**
UST The descendants of Kohath

This refers to the descendants of Kohath. See how you translated this in Numbers 3:27.
Support Reference: How to Translate Names

ULT **the ones carrying the holy place**
UST carried {the things that belonged in} the sacred tent

The implication is that this group of people had the special duty of carrying the holy place. You could include this information if that would be helpful to your readers. See how you translated the similar phrase in 10:17. Alternate translation: [whose job it was to carry the holy place]
Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

ULT **the holy place**
UST the things that belonged in the sacred tent

Here, **the holy place** represents the sacred objects that were inside the holy place. If it would be helpful in your language, you could use an equivalent expression or plain language. See how you translated the similar phrase in 4:15. Alternate translation: [the things that belong in the holy place]
Support Reference: Metonymy

ULT **and they raised up**
UST The other Levites set up

The pronoun **they** refers to the sons of Gershon and the sons of Merari who were mentioned in 2:17. It may be helpful to clarify this for your readers. Alternate translation: [and the sons of Gershon and the sons of Merari raised up]
Support Reference: Pronouns — When to Use Them

ULT **until their coming**
UST before the descendants of Kohath arrived at the place where they would set up their tents

The author is using **until their coming** as a common expression of his culture to mean “before they arrived.” If this phrase does not have that meaning in your language, you could use a comparable expression from your language that does have that meaning, or you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [before they came]
Support Reference: Idiom

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
carrying	carried
the holy place	the things that belonged in the sacred tent
the Dwelling	the sacred tent

Numbers 10:22

ULT	UST
And the banner of the camp of the sons of Ephraim set out according to their armies: and over his army was Elishama, the son of Ammihud,	*Then the three tribes that set up their camps near the tribal flag that belonged to the descendants of Ephraim left. They left by their army divisions. Ammihud's son Elishama led the soldiers from Ephraim tribe.*

ULT **And the banner of the camp of the sons of Ephraim set out according to their armies: and over his army {was} Elishama, the son of Ammihud**

UST Then {the three tribes that set up their camps near} the tribal flag that belonged to the descendants of Ephraim left. They left by their army divisions. Ammihud's son Elishama led the soldiers from Ephraim tribe

This verse is identical in structure with 10:19 except that this verse includes **the sons of** in front of **Ephraim**. Translate this verse as you translated 10:19, changing only the names as well as **the sons of**, if necessary. The tribes associated with this camp were Ephraim, Manasseh, and Benjamin.

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Ephraim	Ephraim

Numbers 10:25

ULT	UST
And the banner of the camp of the sons of Dan, the one gathering for all the camps, set out according to their armies: and over his army was Ahiezer, the son of Ammishaddai.	*Then the three tribes that set up their camps near the tribal flag that belonged to the descendants of Dan left as the rearguard. They left by their army divisions. Ammishaddai's son Ahiezer led the soldiers from Dan tribe.*

ULT **And the banner of the camp of the sons of Dan, the one gathering for all the camps, set out according to their armies: and over his army was Ahiezer, the son of Ammishaddai**
UST Then {the three tribes that set up their camps near} the tribal flag that belonged to the descendants of Dan left as the rearguard. They left by their army divisions. Ammishaddai's son Ahiezer led the soldiers from Dan tribe

This verse is identical in structure with 10:14 except that it uses the phrase **the one gathering for all the camps** instead of **in the first**. For the phrase **the one gathering for all the camps**, see the note below. Except for that, translate this verse as you translated 10:14. The tribes associated with this camp were Dan, Asher, and Naphtali.

ULT **the one gathering for all the camps**
UST as the rearguard

The author is using **the one gathering for all the camps** as a common expression of this culture to mean "the rearguard" or "the one walking at the rear of the group." If this phrase does not have that meaning in your language, you could use a comparable expression from your language that does have that meaning, or you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [the one walking at the rear of the group]
Support Reference: Idiom

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Dan	Dan
gathering	as the rearguard

Numbers 10:28

ULT	UST
These were the departures of the sons of Israel according to their armies. And they set out.	*That was the order in which the groups of Israelite tribes left the place where they had set up their camps.*

ULT **These were the departures of the sons of Israel**
UST That was the order … of Israelite

If your language does not use an abstract noun for the idea of **departures**, you could express the same idea in another way. Alternate translation: [This was how the sons of Israel departed]
Support Reference: Abstract Nouns

ULT **These were the departures of the sons**
UST That was the order … of Israelite

Here, the word **departures** could refer to: (1) the way each group of three tribes left its campsite. This is probably what the word means in 10:12. Alternate translation: [This was the order of departure of]; or (2) multiple times in a row when the Israelites left their campsite. This is what the word means in 33:1–2. Alternate translation: [These were the many journeys of]
Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

ULT **And they set out**
UST left the place where they had set up their camps

The author assumes that readers will know that he is summarizing what has already been said about how the Israelites arranged themselves for travel. This statement in verse 28 follows the detailed description of the marching order that began in 10:12. You could say that explicitly if that would be helpful to your readers. Alternate translation: [That is how they set out]
Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Israel	Israelite

Numbers 10:29

ULT	UST
And Moses said to Hobab, the son of Reuel, the Midianite, the father-in-law of Moses, "We are setting out to the place that Yahweh said, 'I shall give it to you.' Go with us, and we will do good to you. For Yahweh has spoken good upon Israel."	*When the Israelites were getting ready to leave the desolate area around Sinai, Moses spoke to Hobab. Hobab was the father of Moses' wife, and he was Reuel's son. He was from the Midian people group. Moses said to him, "We are about to leave for the place that Yahweh promised to give to us. Please come with us. Yahweh has promised to take good care of us Israelites. So, we will take good care of you."*

ULT **We are setting out … with us, and we will do good**
UST Moses said to him, "We are about to leave … with us … we will take good care

Here and in 10:31–32, when Moses says **we** and **us**, he is including himself and the Israelites but not Hobab, to whom he is speaking, so use the exclusive form of those words if your language marks that distinction.
Support Reference: Exclusive and Inclusive 'We'

ULT **to Hobab, the son of Reuel, the Midianite, the father-in-law of Moses**
UST to Hobab. Hobab was the father of Moses' wife, and he was Reuel's son. He was from the Midian people group

It is not totally clear which of these men was Moses' **father-in-law**. See the chapter introduction for more information. Moses' **father-in-law** could be: (1) Hobab. Alternate translation: [to the father-in-law of Moses, Hobab the son of Reuel the Midianite]; or (2) Reuel. Alternate translation: [to Hobab, the son of the father-in-law of Moses, Reuel the Midianite]
Support Reference: Kinship

ULT **to Hobab, the son of Reuel, the Midianite**
UST to Hobab … and he was Reuel's son. He was from the Midian people group

The phrase **the Midianite** could go with: (1) Hobab. Alternate translation: [to Hobab the Midianite, the son of Reuel]; or (2) Reuel. Alternate translation: [to Hobab, the son of Reuel the Midianite]
Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

ULT **to Hobab, the son of Reuel**
UST to Hobab … and he was Reuel's son

The words **Hobab** and **Reuel** are the names of men.
Support Reference: How to Translate Names

ULT **that Yahweh said, 'I shall give it to you**
UST that Yahweh promised to give to us

If it would be clearer in your language, you could translate this so that there is not a quotation within a quotation. Alternate translation: [that Yahweh said that he would give to us]
Support Reference: Quotes within Quotes

ULT **Go with us, and we will do good to you. For Yahweh has spoken good upon Israel**
UST Please come with us. Yahweh has promised to take good care of us Israelites. So, we will take good care of you

The word translated as **For** indicates that what follows is a reason for what came before. If it would be more natural in your language, you could reverse the order of these phrases, since the second phrase gives the reason for the result that the first phrase describes. Alternate translation: [Yahweh has spoken good upon Israel. So, go with us, and we will do good to you]
Support Reference: Connect — Reason-and-Result Relationship

ULT **Go with us**
UST Please come with us

In a context such as this, your language might say “Come” instead of **Go**. Alternate translation: [Come with us]
Support Reference: Go and Come

ULT **has spoken good upon Israel**
UST has promised to take good care of us Israelites

Moses is using **has spoken good upon Israel** as a common expression of his culture to mean “has promised to do good things for Israel.” If this phrase does not have that meaning in your language, you could use a comparable expression from your language that does have that meaning, or you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [has said that good things will happen to Israel]
Support Reference: Idiom

ULT **upon Israel**
UST of us Israelites

Moses is speaking of himself and his fellow Israelites in the third person as **Israel**. If it would be helpful in your language, you could translate this form in the first person. Alternate translation: [upon us Israelites]
Support Reference: First, Second or Third Person

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Moses	Moses
Reuel	Reuel’s
Midianite	Midian
Yahweh	Yahweh
Yahweh	Yahweh
good	good
Israel	Israelites

Numbers 10:30

ULT	UST
And he said to him, "I will not go, except I will go to my land and to my relatives."	*Hobab replied, "No, I will not come with you. Instead, I will return to my own country and family."*

ULT **I will not go, except I will go to my land and to my relatives**
UST No, I will not come with you. Instead, I will return to my own country and family

If it would appear in your language that Hobab was making a statement and then contradicting it, you could reword this as a positive statement. Alternate translation: [I will not go with you. Rather, I will go to my land and to my relatives.]
Support Reference: Connect — Exception Clauses

ULT **to my land and to my relatives**
UST to my own country and family

The phrase **land and relatives** expresses a single idea. The word **relatives** tells more about **land**. If it would be more natural in your language, you could express this meaning in a different way. Alternate translation: [to my land where my relatives are]
Support Reference: Hendiadys

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
land	my own country

Numbers 10:31

ULT	UST
And he said, "Please do not leave us! For upon this, you know our camping in the wilderness, and you will be for us for eyes.	*But Moses said, "You know the places where we can set up our tents in this desolate area, and you can guide us. So, I ask you not to go away.*

ULT **us … our camping … for us**
UST the places where we can set up our tents … and you can guide us … to go away

Here and in 10:32, the words **us** and **our** include Moses and the Israelites but not Hobab, to whom Moses is speaking, so use the exclusive form of these words if your language marks that distinction. Alternate translation: [myself and all the Israelites … our camping … for myself and all the Israelites]

Support Reference: Exclusive and Inclusive 'We'

ULT **For upon this, you know**
UST You know … So

Moses is using **For upon this** as a common expression of his culture to mean "Here is why I ask." If this phrase does not have that meaning in your language, you could use a comparable expression from your language that does have that meaning, or you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [Here is why I ask: you know]

Support Reference: Idiom

ULT **our camping**
UST the places where we can set up our tents

Here, **camping** represents places of encampment. If it would be helpful in your language, you could use an equivalent expression or plain language. Alternate translation: [where we can camp]

Support Reference: Metonymy

ULT **for us for eyes**
UST and you can guide us

Moses is using the expression **for us for eyes** as a common expression of his culture to mean "a guide for us." If this phrase does not have that meaning in your language, you could use a comparable expression from your language that does have that meaning, or you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [a guide for us]

Support Reference: Idiom

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
leave	to go away
know	know
wilderness	in this desolate area

Numbers 10:32

ULT	UST
And it shall be that when you go with us, then it will happen that that good that Yahweh shall do good with us, also we shall do good to you."	*Yahweh will take very good care of us. So, if you come with us, we will take care of you in the same way."*

ULT **when you go with us, then it will happen that**
UST you come with us … in the same way

Moses is describing a possible condition in which **it will happen that that good that Yahweh shall do good with us** will take place only if **you go with us** occurs first. Express this possible condition in a way that would be natural in your language. Alternate translation: [if you go with us, then it will happen]
Support Reference: Connect — Hypothetical Conditions

ULT **then it will happen that that good that Yahweh shall do good with us, also we shall do good to you**
UST Yahweh will take very good care of us … we will take care of you in the same way

If it would be more natural in your language, you may want to put the information about **that good that Yahweh shall do good with us** with the information about **we shall do good to you**. Alternate translation: [that we shall do the same good to you that Yahweh shall do with us]
Support Reference: Information Structure

ULT **also we shall do good to you**
UST we will take care of you

The author does not explicitly indicate whether Hobab went with the Israelites. The narrative may imply that he did. However, because the author does not include Hobab's response, it is recommended that you do not make his response explicit in your translation.
Support Reference: When to Keep Information Implicit

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Yahweh	Yahweh
good	good

Numbers 10:33

ULT	UST
And they set out from the mountain of Yahweh a way of three days, and the box of the covenant of Yahweh was setting out to their face a way of three days, to seek out for them rest,	*When the Israelites left Mount Sinai, where Yahweh had revealed himself, they walked for three days. The people who carried the sacred chest walked in front of the Israelites for those three days to find the place where Yahweh wanted them to set up their tents.*

ULT **And they set out from the mountain of Yahweh a way of three days**

UST When the Israelites left Mount Sinai, where Yahweh {had revealed himself}, they walked for three days

The term **appointed** is a formal way of saying “arranged for” or “selected for.” If it would be clearer in your language, you could express this idea in a less formal way, such as “he chose” or “he picked.” Alternate translation: [And when they set out from the mountain of Yahweh, they traveled a way of three days]

Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

ULT **from the mountain of Yahweh**

UST Mount Sinai, where Yahweh had revealed himself

The implication is that Mount Sinai was the mountain where Yahweh had revealed himself to the Israelites and given them his law. You could include this information if that would be helpful to your readers. Alternate translation: [from Sinai, the mountain of Yahweh]

Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

ULT **from the mountain of Yahweh**

UST Mount Sinai, where Yahweh had revealed himself

The author is using the possessive form to describe a **mountain** that is characterized by being the place where Yahweh had revealed himself to Israel. If a speaker of your language would not use the possessive form for this, you could express this idea in another way. Alternate translation: [from the mountain where Yahweh had spoken to them]

Support Reference: Possession

ULT **a way of three days … a way of three days**

UST they walked for three days … walked … for those three days

The phrase **a way of three days** was a common expression of his culture to mean “a three-day journey” or “a distance that would take three days to travel.” If this phrase does not have that meaning in your language, you could use a comparable expression from your language that does have that meaning, or you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [and walked for three days … for those three days]

Support Reference: Idiom

ULT **and the box of the covenant of Yahweh was setting out**
UST The people who carried the sacred chest

The author is speaking of **the box of the covenant of Yahweh** as if it were a living thing that could travel on its own. If it would be helpful in your language, you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [and the men who carried the box of the covenant of Yahweh were setting out]
Support Reference: Personification

ULT **to their face**
UST in front of the Israelites

Here, **to their face** represents being in front of the Israelites. If it would be helpful in your language, you could use an equivalent expression or plain language. Alternate translation: [ahead of them]
Support Reference: Metonymy

ULT **rest**
UST where {Yahweh} wanted them to set up their tents

Here, **rest** represents a place to camp. If it would be helpful in your language, you could use an equivalent expression or plain language. Alternate translation: [a place to rest]
Support Reference: Metonymy

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Yahweh	Yahweh
box of the covenant of Yahweh	the sacred chest
seek	to find the place

Numbers 10:34

ULT	UST
and the cloud of Yahweh was over them by day when they set out from the camp.	*Whenever they left a place where they had set up their camps in the morning, the cloud that Yahweh sent would be over them during the day.*

ULT **and the cloud of Yahweh {was} over them by day when they set out from the camp**
UST Whenever they left a place where they had set up their camps {in the morning}, the cloud that Yahweh sent would be over them during the day

By **the cloud of Yahweh was over them**, the author means this happened regularly whenever they traveled. You could indicate this explicitly in your translation if that would be helpful to your readers. Alternate translation: [and the cloud of Yahweh would be over them by day each time they set out from the camp]

Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

ULT **and the cloud of Yahweh**
UST the cloud that Yahweh sent

The author is using the possessive form to describe a **cloud** that was controlled by **Yahweh**. If a speaker of your language would not use the possessive form for this, you could express this idea in another way. Alternate translation: [and the cloud that Yahweh controlled]

Support Reference: Possession

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Yahweh	Yahweh

Numbers 10:35

ULT	UST
And it happened, when the box set out, that Moses said, "Rise up, Yahweh, and your enemies will scatter, and the ones hating you will flee from your face."	*Whenever the people who carried the sacred chest left a place, Moses would say, "Yahweh, please act for us. Then, the people who hate you and act against you will run away from your presence!"*

ULT **Rise up**
UST please act for us

Here, Moses is speaking of the command **Rise up** as if Yahweh were a person who could physically stand up and begin to act. If this meaning would not be clear in your language, you could use a comparable expression or you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [Begin to act]
Support Reference: Metaphor

ULT **when the box set out**
UST Whenever {the people who carried} the sacred chest left a place

The author is speaking of **the box** as if it were a living thing that could set out. If it would be helpful in your language, you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [when the people who carried the box set out]
Support Reference: Personification

ULT **Rise up**
UST please act for us

The word translated as **Rise up** is an imperative, but it communicates a polite request rather than a command. Use a form in your language that communicates a polite request. It may be helpful to add an expression such as "please" to make this clear. Alternate translation: [I ask you to rise up]
Support Reference: Imperatives — Other Uses

ULT **and your enemies will scatter, and the ones hating you will flee**
UST Then, the people who hate you and act against you will run away

The phrases **your enemies will scatter** and **the ones hating you will flee** are results that will follow when Moses says "Rise up, Yahweh." If it would be clearer in your language, you could use words that show that these are results that will happen when Yahweh acts. Alternate translation: [and in response your enemies will scatter, and in response the ones having you will flee]
Support Reference: Connect — Reason-and-Result Relationship

ULT **from your face**
UST from your presence

Here, **from your face** represents being in the presence of Yahweh. If it would be helpful in your language, you could use an equivalent expression or plain language. Alternate translation: [from before you]
Support Reference: Metonymy

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
box	the people who carried the sacred chest
Moses	Moses
Yahweh	Yahweh
enemies	and act against you
scatter	will run away

Numbers 10:36

ULT	UST
And when it rested, he says, "Return, Yahweh, the ten thousands of the thousands of Israel."	*Whenever the people who carried the sacred chest stayed in a place, Moses would say, "Yahweh, please stay with the very many Israelite clans!"*

ULT **Return**
UST please stay with

Here, Moses is speaking as if Yahweh were actually going to **Return** to a physical location with Israel. If this meaning would not be clear in your language, you could use a comparable expression or you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [Be with us]
Support Reference: Metaphor

ULT **the thousands of Israel**
UST Israelite clans

Here, Moses is speaking as if the tribes of Israel were **thousands** of military divisions. If this meaning would not be clear in your language, you could use a comparable expression or you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [the military divisions of]
Support Reference: Metaphor

ULT **And when it rested**
UST Whenever {the people who carried} the sacred chest stayed in a place

The author is speaking of the box as if it were a living thing that could rest. If it would be helpful in your language, you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [And when the men carrying it rested]
Support Reference: Personification

ULT **And when it rested**
UST Whenever {the people who carried} the sacred chest stayed in a place

The implication is that **it** refers to the sacred chest or ark of the covenant that was mentioned in 10:35. You could include this information if that would be helpful to your readers. Alternate translation: [And when it stopped and stayed in one place]
Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

ULT **he says**
UST Moses would say

The author is using the present tense in **says** to refer to a repeated past action. If it would not be natural to do that in your language, you could use the past tense in your translation. Alternate translation: [he would say]
Support Reference: Irregular Use of Tenses

ULT **Return, Yahweh, the ten thousands of the thousands of Israel**
UST Yahweh, please stay with the very many Israelite clans

This clause could mean that: (1) Moses is asking Yahweh to **Return** to the Israelites after arising (10:35). Alternate translation: [Return, Yahweh, to the ten thousands of the thousands of Israel]; or (2) Moses is describing Yahweh as the leader of the Israelites. Alternate translation: [Return, Yahweh who is over the ten thousands of the thousands of Israel]
Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

ULT **Return**
UST please stay with

The word translated as **Return** is an imperative, but it communicates a polite request rather than a command. Use a form in your language that communicates a polite request. It may be helpful to add an expression such as “please” to make this clear. Alternate translation: [I ask you to return]
Support Reference: Imperatives — Other Uses

ULT **the ten thousands of the thousands of**
UST the very many … clans

The expression **ten thousands** stands approximately for a very large number. Translate this number according to the conventions of your own language and culture. Alternate translation: [the enormous number of]
Support Reference: Numbers

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Yahweh	Yahweh
Israel	Israelite

Numbers 11

Numbers 11 Introduction

Numbers 11 Chapter Introduction

Structure and Formatting

In this chapter, the Israelites complain about the manna that Yahweh provided for them and ask for meat instead. Yahweh gives them meat but also punishes them. Yahweh also appoints 70 men to help Moses lead the Israelites.

1. The people complain, and Yahweh sends fire against the camp (1–3)
2. The people complain about food, and Moses asks Yahweh for help (4–15)
3. Yahweh promises helpers for Moses and meat for the people (16–23)
4. Yahweh gives his Spirit to 70 leaders to help Moses (24–30)
5. Yahweh sends quail and punishes the people (31–35)

Religious and Cultural Concepts in This Chapter

The manna

In this chapter, the Israelites complain about the food that Yahweh provided for them, which was called "manna." See Exodus 16 for more information about how God provided the manna for them. Here, the Israelites want meat instead of manna. God provides them with meat, but he also punishes them for failing to be content with the manna. The author also briefly describes the manner. It is shaped like small seeds, and it has the consistency or color of gum resin.

The Spirit

In 11:17, 25–26, and 29, the "Spirit" is mentioned. Scholars debate whether the word refers to God's own Spirit, which he gave to Moses, or whether it refers to Moses' spirit, which Yahweh had enabled in a special way. Either way, it is clear that Yahweh enabled Moses to lead the Israelites, and now Yahweh also enables the 70 men to lead the Israelites too. It is recommended that you follow the UST and indicate that the Spirit is God's Spirit. However, also consider how translations that your readers might be familiar with treat the word "Spirit" here.

Prophesying

In this chapter, Yahweh sends his Spirit on 70 leaders. When they receive the Spirit, they "prophesy." The author does not indicate exactly what they said or did. In some cases, "prophesying" means not being in control of one's body and saying strange things. In other cases, "prophesying" means speaking words from God. In this context, it is likely that the

leaders “prophesied” by speaking words from God, but they may also have acted strangely as they did so.

The quails

In this chapter, Yahweh sends birds called “quails” to the Israelites. These birds are good to eat. They are brown and have a wingspan of around 32–35 centimeters. They migrate in large numbers through the Sinai area twice a year.

Translation Issues in This Chapter

“People” as singular and plural

The singular word “people” occurs frequently in this chapter. Sometimes, plural words refer to “people” (for example, see 11:8), and sometimes singular words refer to “people” (for example, see 11:10). This happens because the word “people” is singular in form but refers to many persons. The ULT preserves the singular and plural alternation, and the UST models how to express the ideas in plural form. Consider how you would naturally refer to a group of people in your language.

Quotes in quotes

There are several times in this chapter where there are quotes inside quotes. In fact, 11:18 includes a quote inside a quote inside a quote. Consider how your language indicates that a quote contains a quote. The UST models how to express the idea with only one level of quotations.

Metaphors with the Spirit

In this chapter, Yahweh and the author speak as if the Spirit were an object that could be taken from one person, given to another person, and “rest” on top of them. This metaphor portrays how Yahweh shared the Spirit that he gave to Moses with the 70 leaders, who now also received the Spirit from Yahweh. Yahweh and the author do not mean that Moses had less of the Spirit now. Rather, they mean that the Spirit now enables the 70 leaders to lead the Israelites along with Moses. See the notes for translation options.

Numbers 11:1

ULT	UST
And it happened that the people were like those complaining of evil in the ears of Yahweh, and Yahweh heard, and his nose burned, and the fire of Yahweh burned among them, and it ate at the end of the camp.	*One day the Israelites grumbled in Yahweh's presence about how much they thought they were suffering. When Yahweh listened to what they said, he was angry. So, he sent a fire that burned at the edge of their campsite and destroyed some of their belongings.*

ULT **the people {were} like those complaining of evil in the ears of Yahweh**
UST the Israelites grumbled in Yahweh's presence about how much they thought they were suffering

The point of this comparison is that just as **those complaining** speaks of people who make complaints, so the Israelites were actually doing this in **the ears of Yahweh**. If it would be helpful in your language, you could make this point explicitly. Alternate translation: [the people complained of evil in the ears of Yahweh]
Support Reference: Simile

ULT **like those complaining of evil in the ears of Yahweh**
UST grumbled in Yahweh's presence about how much they thought they were suffering

Here, the word **evil** could go with: (1) **complaining** as its object. Alternate translation: [like those complaining about evil in the ears of Yahweh]; or (2) **in the ears of Yahweh**. Alternate translation: [like those complaining, and it was evil in the ears of Yahweh]; or (3) **complaining** as a descriptor. Alternate translation: [like those complaining bitterly in the ears of Yahweh]
Support Reference: Information Structure

ULT **like those complaining of evil**
UST grumbled … about how much they thought they were suffering

If your language does not use an abstract noun for the idea of **evil**, you could express the same idea in another way. Alternate translation: [like those complaining that things were evil]
Support Reference: Abstract Nouns

ULT **in the ears of Yahweh, and Yahweh heard, and his nose burned**
UST in Yahweh's presence … When Yahweh listened to what they said, he was angry

It might seem that the expression **in the ears of Yahweh** contains extra information that would not be natural to express in your language. If so, you could shorten it. Alternate translation: [while Yahweh heard, and his nose burned]
Support Reference: Making Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information Explicit

ULT **in the ears of Yahweh**
UST in Yahweh's presence

The phrase **in the ears of Yahweh** means in Yahweh's hearing. If it would be helpful in your language, you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [while Yahweh could hear]
Support Reference: Metonymy

ULT **and his nose burned**
UST he was angry

The phrase **his nose burned** is a common expression of this culture that means that Yahweh is angry. If this phrase does not have that meaning in your language, use a comparable expression from your language that does have that meaning or state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [and his anger burned] or [and he was enraged]
Support Reference: Idiom

ULT **and the fire of Yahweh burned among them, and it ate at the end of the camp**
UST So, he sent a fire that burned at the edge of their campsite and destroyed some of their belongings

Here, the author could be implying that: (1) the fire burned the edges of the camp but did not kill anyone. Alternate translation: [and the fire of Yahweh burned among then, and it ate tents and belongings at the edges of the camp]; or (2) the fire burned in the camp near its edges and did kill some people. Alternate translation: [and the fire of Yahweh burned among them, and it ate some people at the edges of the camp]
Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

ULT **and the fire of Yahweh burned**
UST So, he sent a fire that burned

The author is using the possessive form to describe a **fire** that was sent by **Yahweh**. If a speaker of your language would not use the possessive form for this, you could express this idea in another way. Alternate translation: [and the fire that Yahweh sent]
Support Reference: Possession

ULT **and it ate**
UST and destroyed some of their belongings

The author is speaking of **fire** as if it were a living thing that could eat or devour things. If it would be helpful in your language, you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [and it ravaged]
Support Reference: Personification

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
evil	grumbled … about how much they thought they were suffering
Yahweh	Yahweh's

Numbers 11:2

ULT	UST
And the people cried out to Moses, and Moses prayed to Yahweh, and the fire sank;	*Then the Israelites pleaded with Moses to help them. So, Moses asked Yahweh to stop the fire, and the fire did stop.*

ULT and the fire sank
UST and the fire did stop

The expression **the fire sank** is a common expression of this culture to mean "the fire went out" or "the fire died down." If this phrase does not have that meaning in your language, you could use a comparable expression from your language that does have that meaning, or you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [and the fire went out] or [and the fire died down]
Support Reference: Idiom

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Moses	Moses
prayed	So … asked … to stop the fire
Yahweh	Yahweh

Numbers 11:3

ULT	UST
and he called the name of that place Taberah, for the fire of Yahweh burned among them.	*So they named that place Taberah, which means "Burning," because the fire from Yahweh had burned among them.*

ULT and he called the name of that place Taberah, for the fire of Yahweh burned among them

UST So they named that place Taberah, which means "Burning," because the fire from Yahweh had burned among them

If it would be more natural in your language, you could reverse the order of these phrases, since the second phrase gives the reason for the result that the first phrase describes. Alternate translation: [and because the fire of Yahweh burned among them, he called the name of that place Taberah]

Support Reference: Connect — Reason-and-Result Relationship

ULT and he called

UST So they named

The pronoun **he** could refer: (1) generically to anyone who used this name. Alternate translation: [and people called]; or (2) to Moses. Alternate translation: [and Moses called]

Support Reference: Pronouns — When to Use Them

ULT Taberah

UST Taberah, which means "Burning

The word **Taberah** is the name of a place. This name sounds like the Hebrew word for "burning." If it would be helpful to your readers, you could explain this in the text of your translation or in a footnote. Alternate translation: [the place of burning]

Support Reference: How to Translate Names

ULT for the fire of Yahweh

UST because the fire from Yahweh

See how you translated this phrase in 11:1. Alternate translation: [for the fire that Yahweh sent]

Support Reference: Possession

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
called	So they named
Yahweh	Yahweh

Numbers 11:4

ULT	UST
And the rabble that was in its midst desired a desire, and also the sons of Israel returned, and they wept. And they said, "Who will feed us flesh?	*After that, some people who were not Israelites wanted very badly to eat meat. Then the Israelites too cried again, as they did when they grumbled earlier. They said, "We wish someone would give us meat to eat!*

ULT **in its midst**
UST After that, some people who were not Israelites

Here, the author is speaking as if the non-Israelite people were actually in the **midst** of all the Israelites. He means that the non-Israelites were living among the Israelites. If this meaning would not be clear in your language, you could use a comparable expression or you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [among the people]
Support Reference: Metaphor

ULT **And the rabble that {was} in its midst**
UST After that, some people who were not Israelites

The implication is that there were some people among the Israelites who were not Israelites themselves and who were causing trouble by encouraging the Israelites to complain. You could include this information if that would be helpful to your readers. Alternate translation: [And some non-Israelite troublemakers that were]
Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

ULT **in its midst**
UST After that, some people who were not Israelites

The pronoun **its** refers to the people of Israel. It may be helpful to clarify this for your readers. Alternate translation: [in the midst of the people]
Support Reference: Pronouns — When to Use Them

ULT **desired a desire**
UST wanted very badly to eat meat

The author is using a construction in which a verb and its object come from the same root. You may be able to use the same construction in your language to express the meaning here. Alternatively, your language may have another way of saying this. Alternate translation: [had a strong desire]
Support Reference: Poetry

ULT **a desire**
UST very badly to eat meat

By **a desire**, the author means a desire to eat meat. You could indicate this explicitly in your translation if that would be helpful to your readers. Alternate translation: [a desire to eat meat]
Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

ULT **a desire**
UST very badly to eat meat

If your language does not use an abstract noun for the idea of **desire**, you could express the same idea in another way. Alternate translation: [what they desired]
Support Reference: Abstract Nouns

ULT **and … returned, and they wept**
UST Then … cried again, as they did when they grumbled earlier

The author is using **returned, and they wept** as a common expression of his culture to mean "they wept again." The text in 11:1–2 implies that they had already wept once. If this phrase does not have that meaning in your language, you could use a comparable expression from your language that does have that meaning, or you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [wept again]
Support Reference: Idiom

ULT **And they said**
UST They said

The pronoun **they** refers to the Israelites who were complaining. It may be helpful to clarify this for your readers. Alternate translation: [And the Israelites said]
Support Reference: Pronouns — When to Use Them

ULT **Who will feed us flesh**
UST We wish someone would give us meat to eat

The Israelites are using the question form to express their strong desire for meat. If a speaker of your language would not use the question form for that purpose, you could translate this as a statement or as an exclamation. Alternate translation: [If only someone would feed us flesh!]
Support Reference: Rhetorical Question

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Israel	Israelites

Numbers 11:5

ULT	UST
We remember the fish that we ate in Egypt for nothing, the cucumbers, and the watermelons, and the leeks, and the onions, and the garlic.	*We can recall what we ate in Egypt for free: fish, gourds, and the vegetables we used for seasoning.*

ULT **We remember the fish that we ate**
UST We can recall what we ate … fish

By **we**, the Israelites mean to include both themselves and their listeners, so use the inclusive form of that word if your language marks that distinction.
Support Reference: Exclusive and Inclusive 'We'

ULT **the cucumbers, and the watermelons, and the leeks, and the onions, and the garlic**
UST gourds, and the vegetables we used for seasoning

The **cucumbers** and **watermelons** are kinds of gourds, and **leeks**, **onions**, and **garlic** are kinds of vegetables used for seasoning. If your readers would not be familiar with what these foods are, you could use more general terms or explain them in a footnote. Alternate translation: [the fruits with rinds, and the savory vegetables]
Support Reference: Translate Unknowns

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Egypt	Egypt

Numbers 11:6

ULT	UST
And now our life is dry; there is not anything except for the manna in our eyes."	*But now we have become weak, because all we have to eat is this manna that we see!"*

ULT **And now our life {is} dry**
UST But now we have become weak

Here the Israelites speak as if their lives were **dry**. They could mean that: (1) they have lost their strength because they do not have enough to eat. Alternate translation: [And now we have lost our strength]; or (2) they have lost their appetite for food because they do not like eating only manna. Alternate translation: [And now we have lost our appetite]
Support Reference: Metaphor

ULT **our life {is} dry**
UST we have become weak

In this verse, the word **life** is singular in form, but it refers to all the lives of the Israelites as a group. If it would be helpful in your language, you could use the plural form of "life." Alternate translation: [our lives are dry]
Support Reference: Collective Nouns

ULT **our life … in our eyes**
UST we have become weak … that we see

By **our**, the Israelites mean to include both themselves and their listeners, so use the inclusive form of that word if your language marks that distinction.
Support Reference: Exclusive and Inclusive 'We'

ULT **there is not anything except for the manna {in} our eyes**
UST because all we have {to eat} is this manna that we see

If it would appear in your language that the Israelites were making a statement and then contradicting it, you could reword this as a positive statement. Alternate translation: [the only thing in our eyes is the manna]
Support Reference: Connect — Exception Clauses

ULT **there is not anything**
UST because all we have {to eat} is

The implication is that the people meant there was nothing worth eating except manna. You could include this information if that would be helpful to your readers. Alternate translation: [there is not any food]
Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

ULT **in our eyes**
UST that we see

The people are using the common expression of their culture **in our eyes** to mean "that we can see" or "that is available to us." If this phrase does not have that meaning in your language, you could use a comparable expression from your language that does have that meaning, or you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [that we can observe]
Support Reference: Idiom

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
dry	we have become weak
manna	manna

Numbers 11:7

ULT	UST
And the manna, it was like the seed of coriander, and its eye was like the eye of bdellium.	*As for the manna, it had the shape of small seeds, and it looked like resin.*

ULT **And the manna**
UST As for the manna

Here, the author is providing background information to help readers understand what happens next in the story. The phrase **And the manna** introduces an explanation of the manna, how it appeared, and what the people did with it in 11:7–9. In your translation, introduce this information in a way that would be natural in your own language and culture. Alternate translation: [Now about this manna:]
Support Reference: Background Information

ULT **it {was} like the seed of coriander**
UST it had the shape of small seeds

The point of this comparison is that just as **the seed of coriander** is small and round, so is **the manna**. If it would be helpful in your language, you could make this point explicitly. Alternate translation: [it was small and round like the seed of coriander]
Support Reference: Simile

ULT **like the seed of coriander**
UST the shape of small seeds

The author is using the possessive form to describe **seed** that is from the **coriander** plant. If a speaker of your language would not use the possessive form for this, you could express this idea in another way. Alternate translation: [coriander seeds]
Support Reference: Possession

ULT **like the seed of coriander**
UST the shape of small seeds

The plant named **coriander** produces leaves that people use for seasoning and call “cilantro.” It also produces small, round seeds that are 3–5 millimeters in diameter. If your readers would not be familiar with what **coriander** is, you could use the name of a similar thing that your readers would recognize, or you could use a more general term. Alternate translation: [the small, round seed of a plant called coriander]
Support Reference: Translate Unknowns

ULT **and its eye {was} like the eye of bdellium**
UST and it looked like resin

The point of this comparison is that just as **bdellium** is yellowish-brown in color, so is **the eye** (the appearance) of the manna. If it would be helpful in your language, you could make this point explicitly. Alternate translation: [and it was yellowish-brown, like bdellium]
Support Reference: Simile

ULT **and its eye {was} like the eye of bdellium**
UST and it looked like resin

Here, **eye** represents appearance. If it would be helpful in your language, you could use an equivalent expression or plain language. Alternate translation: [and its appearance was like the appearance of bdellium]
Support Reference: Metonymy

ULT **bdellium**
UST resin

A **bdellium** is a kind of gum resin that comes from certain trees. If your readers would not be familiar with what bdellium is, you could use the name of a similar resin that your readers would recognize, or you could use a more general term. Alternate translation: [a gum resin called bdellium]
Support Reference: Translate Unknowns

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
manna	manna
seed	the shape of

Numbers 11:8

ULT	UST
The people went about, and they gathered, and they ground in the mill or crushed in the mortar, and they boiled in the pot, and they made it cakes, and its taste was like the taste of the freshness of the oil.	

ULT **and they gathered, and they ground in the mill or crushed in the mortar, and they boiled in the pot**

UST and gather the manna. Then, they would grind it up by using a handmill or a mortar and pestle. After that, they would boil it

The author is leaving out some of the words that in many languages a sentence would need in order to be complete. You can supply these words from the context if that would be clearer in your language. Alternate translation: [and they gathered the manna, and they ground it in the mill or crushed it in the mortar, and they boiled it in the pot]

Support Reference: Ellipsis

ULT **and they ground in the mill or crushed in the mortar**

UST Then, they would grind it up by using a handmill or a mortar and pestle

A **mill** is a kind of stone tool used for grinding grain. A **mortar** is a stone bowl in which people would crush grain. If your readers would not be familiar with what a mill or a mortar is, you could use more general terms or explain them in a footnote. Alternate translation: [and they ground with stones that they used for grinding grain or crushed in bowls with special stones]

Support Reference: Translate Unknowns

ULT **and they ground in the mill or crushed in the mortar**

UST Then, they would grind it up by using a handmill or a mortar and pestle

Here, **mill** and **mortar** represent grinding tools in general, not specific grinding tools. If it would be helpful to your readers, you could use expressions that would be more natural in your language. Alternate translation: [and they ground in mills or crushed in mortars]

Support Reference: Generic Noun Phrases

ULT **cakes**

UST into loaves

Here, **cakes** are a kind of bread baked in a flat, round shape. If your readers would not be familiar with what cakes are, you could use the name of a similar thing that your readers would recognize, or you could use a more general term. Alternate translation: [flat, round loaves]

Support Reference: Translate Unknowns

ULT **the oil**

UST olive oil

The author is not referring to a specific **oil**. He means oil in general. If it would be helpful to your readers, you could use an expression that would be more natural in your language. Alternate translation: [oil]

Support Reference: Generic Noun Phrases

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
and they gathered	and gather the manna
oil	oil

Numbers 11:8-9

ULT	UST
	Whenever the dew appeared during the night at the place where they had set up their tents, the manna would appear with it. Then, in the morning, the people would walk around and gather the manna. Then, they would grind it up by using a handmill or a mortar and pestle. After that, they would boil it and then form it into loaves. The manna tasted like good olive oil.

ULT **The people went about, and they gathered, and they ground in the mill or crushed in the mortar, and they boiled in the pot, and they made it cakes, and its taste was like the taste of the freshness of the oil. And when the dew came down on the camp at night, the manna came down upon it**

UST Whenever the dew appeared during the night at the place where they had set up their tents, the manna would appear with it. Then, {in the morning,} the people would walk around and gather the manna. Then, they would grind it up by using a handmill or a mortar and pestle. After that, they would boil it and then form it into loaves. The manna tasted like good olive oil

If it is more natural in your language to indicate how the manna appeared before indicating what the people did with it, you could move the information from verse 9 before the information in verse 8. You would then present the combined verses as 11:8–9. See the UST for an example.

Support Reference: Verse Bridges

Numbers 11:9

ULT	UST
And when the dew came down on the camp at night, the manna came down upon it.	

ULT **And when the dew came down on the camp**

UST Whenever the dew appeared … at the place where they had set up their tents

The author is using **came down** as a common expression of his culture to mean "settled" or "formed." If this phrase does not have that meaning in your language, you could use a comparable expression from your language that does have that meaning, or you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [And when the dew condensed in the camp]

Support Reference: Idiom

ULT **the manna came down upon it**

UST the manna would appear with it

The implication is that when the dew came down at night, the manna appeared along with it. You could include this information if that would be helpful to your readers. Alternate translation: [the manna was there along with it]

Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
manna	manna

Numbers 11:10

ULT	UST
And Moses heard the people weeping according to its clans, a man to the opening of his tent; and the nose of Yahweh burned exceedingly, and in the eyes of Moses it was evil.	*Now as the people were crying at their tents with their tribal groups, Moses heard them. Yahweh was very angry. Also, Moses was very upset.*

ULT **And Moses heard**
UST Now as … Moses heard

The previous verses include background information about the manna. Here, the author returns to the main storyline. If it would be helpful in your language, you could use a form that makes this explicit. Alternate translation: [Now when the people said those things, Moses heard]
Support Reference: Order of Events

ULT **a man to the opening of his tent**
UST at their tents

The author is not referring to a specific **man**. He means all the men in general. If it would be helpful to your readers, you could use an expression that would be more natural in your language. Alternate translation: [each of the men at the openings of their tents]
Support Reference: Generic Noun Phrases

ULT **a man to the opening of his tent**
UST at their tents

Here the masculine term **man** has a generic sense that includes both men and women. If it would be helpful to your readers, you could use language in your translation that is clearly inclusive of both men and women. Alternate translation: [a person at the opening of his or her tent]
Support Reference: When Masculine Words Include Women

ULT **and the nose of Yahweh burned exceedingly**
UST Yahweh was very angry

The phrase **the nose of Yahweh burned** is a common expression of this culture that means that Yahweh is angry. If this phrase does not have that meaning in your language, use a comparable expression from your language that does have that meaning or state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [and Yahweh's anger greatly burned] or [and Yahweh was very enraged]
Support Reference: Idiom

ULT **and in the eyes of Moses**
UST Also, Moses was very upset

The phrase **in the eyes of** is a common expression of this culture that means "in the judgment of" or "in the opinion of." If this phrase does not have that meaning in your language, you could use a comparable expression from your language that does have that meaning, or you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [and in the judgment of Moses]
Support Reference: Idiom

> ULT **it was evil**
> UST Also … was very upset

Here, the author could mean that Moses considers **evil**: (1) what the people did. Alternate translation: [what the people did was evil]; or (2) that the people made Yahweh angry. Alternate translation: [it was evil that the people made Yahweh angry]; or (3) that Yahweh was angry. Alternate translation: [Yahweh's anger was evil]

Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Moses	Moses
weeping	were crying
clans	with their tribal groups
tent	tents
Yahweh	Yahweh
Moses	Moses
evil	Also … was very upset

Numbers 11:11

ULT	UST
And Moses said to Yahweh, "Why do you do evil to your servant? And why have I not found favor in your eyes, to put the burden of all this people on me?	*Then Moses went to the sacred tent and said to Yahweh, "I am upset that you have made me, your servant, suffer like this. You must have chosen not to treat me kindly. Otherwise, you would not have made me take care of all these people!*

ULT **to put the burden of all this people on me**

UST Otherwise, you would not have made me take care of all these people

Here, Moses is speaking of his responsibility to care for the Israelites as if it were a heavy **burden** that he had to carry. If this meaning would not be clear in your language, you could use a comparable expression or you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [to make me work very hard to care for all this people]

Support Reference: Metaphor

ULT **And Moses said**

UST Then Moses {went to the sacred tent and} said

The implication is that Moses went to the tent of meeting to speak with Yahweh. This is shown clearly when it says "And Moses went out" in 11:24. You could include this information if that would be helpful to your readers. Alternate translation: [And Moses went to the tent of meeting and said]

Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

ULT **Why do you do evil to your servant? And why have I not found favor in your eyes, to put the burden of all this people on me**

UST I am upset that you have made me, your servant, suffer like this. You must have chosen not to treat me kindly. Otherwise, you would not have made me take care of all these people

Moses is using the question form to express strong negative emotions and to complain about his situation. If a speaker of your language would not use the question form for that purpose, you could translate these questions as statements or as exclamations. Alternate translation: [You are doing evil to your servant. I clearly have not found favor in your eyes, since you have put the burden of all this people on me.]

Support Reference: Rhetorical Question

ULT **do you do evil to your servant**

UST I am upset that you have made me, your servant, suffer like this

If your language does not use an abstract noun for the idea of **evil**, you could express the same idea in another way. Alternate translation: [do you harm your servant]

Support Reference: Abstract Nouns

ULT **to your servant**
UST your servant

Moses is speaking of himself in the third person as **your servant** to show humility. If it would be helpful in your language, you could translate this in a humble form in the first person. Alternate translation: [to me, who serves you]
Support Reference: First, Second or Third Person

ULT **have I not found favor in your eyes**
UST You must have chosen not to treat me kindly

Moses is using the common expression of his culture **found favor in your eyes** to mean "gained your approval" or "pleased you." If this phrase does not have that meaning in your language, you could use a comparable expression from your language that does have that meaning, or you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [do you not approve of me] or [do you not show me favor]
Support Reference: Idiom

ULT **have I not found favor in your eyes**
UST You must have chosen not to treat me kindly

If your language does not use an abstract noun for the idea of **favor**, you could express the same idea in another way. Alternate translation: [am I not favored in your eyes]
Support Reference: Abstract Nouns

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Moses	Moses
Yahweh	Yahweh
evil	I am upset that you have made me … suffer like this
servant	servant
favor	You must have chosen … to treat me kindly

Numbers 11:12

ULT	UST
Did I, I conceive all this people? Or did I, I bear him, that you say to me, 'Carry him in your bosom just as the one nursing carries the one sucking,' over the ground that you swore to his fathers?	*I am not their mother. Yet, you have still ordered me to act like their nurse, as if I could hold them like an infant close to my chest and carry them to the land you promised their ancestors that you would give to them.*

ULT **Did I, I conceive all this people? Or did I, I bear him**
UST I am not their mother

Here, Moses is speaking as if he were actually **a mother** who had conceived and given birth to all the Israelites. If this meaning would not be clear in your language, you could use a comparable expression or you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [Am I like a mother who conceived all these people? Am I like the mother that bore them]
Support Reference: Metaphor

ULT **Carry him in your bosom … to his fathers**
UST as if I could hold them … close to my chest … their ancestors that you would give to them

Here, Moses is speaking as if the Israelites were actually a **child** whom he had to **carry in his bosom** and nurse. If this meaning would not be clear in your language, you could use a comparable expression or you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [Take care of them as if you were carrying them in your bosom … to their fathers]
Support Reference: Metaphor

ULT **Did I, I conceive all this people? Or did I, I bear him, that you say to me, 'Carry him in your bosom just as the one nursing carries the one sucking,' over the ground that you swore to his fathers**
UST I am not their mother. Yet, you have still ordered me to act like their nurse, as if I could hold them like an infant close to my chest and carry them to the land you promised their ancestors that you would give to them

Moses is using the question form for emphasis and to express his frustration at being expected to care for the Israelites like a mother. If a speaker of your language would not use the question form for that purpose, you could translate these questions as statements or as exclamations. Alternate translation: [I, I did not conceive all this people. I, I did not bear him, that you say to me, 'Carry him in your bosom just as the one nursing carries the one sucking,' upon the ground that you swore to his fathers.]
Support Reference: Rhetorical Question

ULT **Did I, I conceive … did I, I bear him**
UST I am not their mother

Moses is stating the pronoun **I** separately, even though the verbs translated as **I conceive** and **I bear** already include this meaning. He is doing that to emphasize that it is definitely not he who did those things. If a speaker of your language would use an explicit pronoun for the same purpose, you may want to use that construction in your translation. If not, your language may have other ways of showing that emphasis. Alternate translation: [Was it I who conceived … was it I who bore him]
Support Reference: Pronouns — When to Use Them

ULT **Carry him in your bosom just as the one nursing carries the one sucking,' over the ground that you swore to his fathers**

UST to act like their nurse, as if I could hold them like an infant close to my chest and carry them to the land you promised their ancestors that you would give to them

Here, the quotation could end after: (1) the word **sucking**. Moses speaks the rest of the sentence to Yahweh. See the ULT. (2) the word **father**. This implies either that Moses **swore** the promise or that Yahweh is speaking about himself in the second person. Alternate translation: ['Carry him in your bosom just as the one nursing carries the one sucking upon the ground that you swore to his fathers?']

Support Reference: Quotations and Quote Margins

ULT **that you say to me, 'Carry him in your bosom just as the one nursing carries the one sucking,' over the ground**

UST Yet, you have still ordered me to act like their nurse, as if I could hold them like an infant close to my chest and carry them to the land

If it would be clearer in your language, you could translate this so that there is not a quotation within a quotation. Alternate translation: [that you tell me to carry him in my bosom just as the one nursing carries the one sucking, upon the ground]

Support Reference: Quotes within Quotes

ULT **just as the one nursing carries the one sucking**

UST to act like their nurse … like an infant … and carry them

The point of this comparison is that just as **the one nursing carries the one sucking** is gentle and caring, so Moses should care for the Israelites. If it would be helpful in your language, you could make this point explicitly. Alternate translation: [with the tenderness of a nurse carrying the one sucking]

Support Reference: Simile

ULT **that you swore to his fathers**

UST you promised their ancestors that you would give to them

Moses is leaving out some of the words that in many languages a sentence would need in order to be complete. You can supply the words "to give to" from the context if that would be clearer in your language. Alternate translation: [that you swore to give to his fathers]

Support Reference: Ellipsis

ULT **to his fathers**

UST their ancestors that you would give to them

Moses is using the term **fathers** to mean "ancestors." If it would be helpful in your language, you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [to his predecessors]

Support Reference: Metaphor

ULT **over the ground**

UST to the land

Moses is using **over the ground** as a common expression of his culture to mean "to the land." If this phrase does not have that meaning in your language, you could use a comparable expression from your language that does have that meaning, or you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [to the place]

Support Reference: Idiom

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
conceive	I am not their mother
bear	I am not their mother
Carry	as if I could hold them
carries	carry
you swore	you promised
fathers	their ancestors that you would give to them

Numbers 11:13

ULT	UST
From where is flesh for me to give to all this people? For they weep upon me, saying, 'Give to us flesh and let us eat.'	*All these people cry in front of me and ask me to give them meat to eat. However, I cannot get enough meat to feed all these people!*

ULT **From where {is} flesh for me to give to all this people? For they weep upon me, saying, 'Give to us flesh and let us eat**
UST All these people cry in front of me and ask me to give them meat to eat. However, I cannot get enough meat to feed all these people

If it would be more natural in your language, you could reverse the order of these phrases, since the second phrase gives the reason for the result that the first phrase describes. Alternate translation: [These people weep upon me, saying, 'Give to us flesh and let us eat.' But from where is meat for me to give to all this people?]
Support Reference: Connect — Reason-and-Result Relationship

ULT **From where {is} flesh for me to give to all this people**
UST I cannot get enough meat to feed all these people

Moses is using the question form to emphasize that it would be impossible for him to get enough meat to feed all the Israelite people. If a speaker of your language would not use the question form for that purpose, you could translate this as a statement or as an exclamation. Alternate translation: [There is no place for me to acquire meat to give to all this people.]
Support Reference: Rhetorical Question

ULT **upon me**
UST in front of me

The phrase **upon me** is a common expression of this culture that means "near me" or "to me." If this phrase does not have that meaning in your language, you could use a comparable expression from your language that does have that meaning, or you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [near me] or [to me]
Support Reference: Idiom

ULT **saying, 'Give to us flesh and let us eat**
UST and ask me to give them meat to eat

If it would be clearer in your language, you could translate this so that there is not a quotation within a quotation. Alternate translation: [demanding that I give them flesh so that they can eat it]
Support Reference: Quotes within Quotes

ULT **saying**
UST and ask me

Here, the word **saying** introduces a direct quotation. See how you translated **saying** in 1:1.
Support Reference: Quotations and Quote Margins

Numbers 11:14

ULT	UST
I, I am not able by myself to carry all this people, for it is heavy from me.	*I cannot take care of all these people alone. It is too difficult for me.*

ULT **to carry all this people**
UST take care of all these people

Here, Moses is speaking of the responsibility to lead and care for the Israelites as if it were a heavy object that he had to **carry**. If this meaning would not be clear in your language, you could use a comparable expression or you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [to care for all this people]
Support Reference: Metaphor

ULT **it is heavy from me**
UST It is too difficult for me

Here, Moses is speaking of taking care of the Israelites as if it were a heavy **burden** that he must carry. If this meaning would not be clear in your language, you could use a comparable expression or you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [it is too hard for me to do]
Support Reference: Metaphor

ULT **I, I am not able by myself to carry all this people, for {it is} heavy from me**
UST I cannot take care of all these people alone. It is too difficult for me

If it would be more natural in your language, you could reverse the order of these phrases, since **heavy from me** gives the reason for the result that **I myself am not able by myself to carry all this people** describes. Alternate translation: [Carrying all this people by myself is heavy from me. So, I, I am not able to do it]
Support Reference: Connect — Reason-and-Result Relationship

ULT **I, I am not able**
UST I cannot take care of

Moses is stating the pronoun **I** separately, even though the verb translated as **I am … able** already includes this meaning. He is doing that to emphasize that he is definitely not able to do this. If a speaker of your language would use an explicit pronoun for the same purpose, you may want to use that construction in your translation. If not, your language may have other ways of showing that emphasis. Alternate translation: [I am certainly not able]
Support Reference: Pronouns — When to Use Them

ULT **it is heavy**
UST It is too difficult for me

Here, the word **heavy** could describe: (1) carrying the people. Alternate translation: [this burden is heavy]; or (2) the people. Alternate translation: [they are heavy]
Support Reference: Ellipsis

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
carry	take care of

Numbers 11:15

ULT	UST
And if you are doing thus to me, killing, please kill me, if I have found favor in your eyes, and let me not look on my evil."	*I ask you to kill me now if you intend to keep treating me this way. That is how you can treat me kindly! That way, I will not have to suffer like this."*

ULT **and let me not look on my evil**

UST That way, I will not have to suffer like this

Here, Moses is speaking of his suffering as if it were his own **evil** that he needed to look at. If this meaning would not be clear in your language, you could use a comparable expression or you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [I do not want to experience my evil]

Support Reference: Metaphor

ULT **And if you are doing thus to me, killing, please kill me, if I have found favor in your eyes**

UST I ask you to kill me now if you intend to keep treating me this way. That is how you can treat me kindly

Moses is describing a possible condition in which God will kill him only if two conditions are both true: God is going to continue treating him in this way, and Moses has found favor in God's eyes. Express this possible condition in a way that would be natural in your language. Alternate translation: [Suppose that you are doing thus to me, and suppose that I have found favor in your eyes. In that case, killing, please kill me]

Support Reference: Connect — Hypothetical Conditions

ULT **killing, please kill me**

UST I ask you to kill me now

Moses is repeating forms of the verb **kill** in order to intensify his expression of the idea that it conveys. If your language can repeat words for intensification, it would be appropriate to do that here in your translation. If not, your language may have another way of expressing the intensification. Alternate translation: [please kill me immediately]

Support Reference: Reduplication

ULT **if I have found favor in your eyes**

UST That is how you can treat me kindly

Moses is using the common expression of his culture **found favor in your eyes** to mean "you approve of me" or "you show me favor." If this phrase does not have that meaning in your language, you could use a comparable expression from your language that does have that meaning, or you could state the meaning plainly. See how you translated the negative form of this clause in 11:11. Alternate translation: [if you approve of me] or [if you show me favor]

Support Reference: Idiom

> ULT **if I have found favor in your eyes**
> UST That is how you can treat me kindly

If your language does not use an abstract noun for the idea of **favor**, you could express the same idea in another way. See how you translated the negative form of this clause in 11:11. Alternate translation: [if I am favored in your eyes]

Support Reference: Abstract Nouns

> ULT **on my evil**
> UST I will … have to suffer like this

Moses is using the possessive form to describe **evil** that is happening to him. If a speaker of your language would not use the possessive form for this, you could express this idea in another way. Alternate translation: [on the evil that is happening to me]

Support Reference: Possession

> ULT **on my evil**
> UST I will … have to suffer like this

If your language does not use an abstract noun for the idea of **evil**, you could express the same idea in another way. Alternate translation: [on the evil things that are happening to me]

Support Reference: Abstract Nouns

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
killing	kill
please	I ask you to kill me now
kill	kill
favor	That is how you can treat me kindly
evil	I will … have to suffer like this

Numbers 11:16

ULT	UST
And Yahweh said to Moses, "Gather for me 70 men from the elders of Israel whom you know that they are elders of the people and its officers, and you shall take them to the tent of meeting, and they shall station themselves there with you.	*Yahweh told Moses, "Summon 70 men whom you know are leaders among the Israelite people. Have them go to the sacred tent and stand there with you.*

ULT **and its officers**
UST are leaders

A **officer** is a kind of leader with authority over others. If your readers would not be familiar with what an officer is, you could use a more general term or explain it in a footnote. Alternate translation: [and ones with authority over it]
Support Reference: Translate Unknowns

ULT **and you shall take them**
UST Have them go

In a context such as this, your language might say **bring** instead of "take." Alternate translation: [and you shall bring them]
Support Reference: Go and Come

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Yahweh	Yahweh
Moses	Moses
Gather	Summon
elders	men
Israel	Israelite
know	know
elders	are leaders
tent of meeting	the sacred tent

Numbers 11:17

ULT	UST
And I will come down and speak with you there, and I will take away from the Spirit that is on you, and I will put on them, and they will carry the burden of the people with you, and you, you will not carry by yourself.	*I will be present in a special way and talk with you at the sacred tent. By means of my Spirit, I have enabled you to lead my people. I will also enable the 70 leaders to lead my people by means of my Spirit. They will help you take care of the people so that you will not have to do so alone.*

ULT **And I will come down**

UST I will be present in a special way

Here, God is speaking of his coming to Moses as if he would physically **come down** from heaven to earth. If this meaning would not be clear in your language, you could use a comparable expression or you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [And I will meet you]

Support Reference: Metaphor

ULT **and I will take away from the Spirit that {is} on you, and I will put on them**

UST By means of my Spirit, I have enabled you to lead my people. I will also enable the 70 leaders

Here, Yahweh is speaking of the Spirit that empowered Moses as if it were a physical substance that could be **taken away** from one person and **put** on others. If this meaning would not be clear in your language, you could use a comparable expression or you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [and I will share with them some of the authority and power that I gave you through my Spirit]

Support Reference: Metaphor

ULT **and they will carry the burden of the people with you, and you, you will not carry by yourself**

UST to lead my people by means of my Spirit. They will help you take care of the people so that you will not have to do so alone

Here, Yahweh is speaking of taking care of the people as if it were a heavy **burden** to carry. The image emphasizes how difficult and wearisome this responsibility is. If this meaning would not be clear in your language, you could use a comparable expression or you could state the meaning plainly. See how you translated the similar metaphor in 11:11. Alternate translation: [and they will work hard to care for the people with you, and you, you will not have to care for them by yourself]

Support Reference: Metaphor

ULT **from the Spirit**

UST By means of my Spirit, I have enabled you to lead my people

On this issue, see the chapter introduction for more information. Here, the word **Spirit** could refer to: (1) God's Spirit. Alternate translation: [from my Spirit]; or (2) Moses' own spirit that Yahweh has specially equipped. Alternate translation: [from the spirit]

Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

ULT **and I will put on them**
UST I will also enable the 70 leaders

Yahweh is leaving out some of the words that in many languages a sentence would need in order to be complete. You can supply these words from the context if that would be clearer in your language. Alternate translation: [and I will put some of that Spirit on them]
Support Reference: Ellipsis

ULT **the burden of the people**
UST They will help you take care of the people

Yahweh is using the possessive form to describe **the burden** that is made up of **the people**. If a speaker of your language would not use the possessive form for this, you could express this idea in another way. Alternate translation: [the burden that the people create]
Support Reference: Possession

ULT **and you, you will not carry**
UST so that you will not have to do so

Yahweh is stating the pronoun **you** separately, even though the verb translated as **you will … carry** already includes this meaning. He is doing that to emphasize that Moses will definitely not need to do this. If a speaker of your language would use an explicit pronoun for the same purpose, you may want to use that construction in your translation. If not, your language may have other ways of showing that emphasis. Alternate translation: [and you will no longer carry]
Support Reference: Pronouns — When to Use Them

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Spirit	Spirit
and I will put	I will also enable the 70 leaders
carry	to lead my people by means of my Spirit
carry	will … have to do so

Numbers 11:18

ULT	UST
And to the people you shall say, 'Consecrate yourselves for tomorrow, and you shall eat flesh. For you wept in the ears of Yahweh, saying, "Who will feed us flesh? For it was good for us in Egypt." And Yahweh shall give to you flesh, and you shall eat.	*Also, tell the people that they must set themselves apart to prepare for the next day, when they will eat meat. Remind them that they cried in my presence and said that they wished that someone would give them meat to eat just as when they lived well in Egypt. Tell them that I will provide them with meat to eat.*

> ULT **And to the people you shall say, 'Consecrate yourselves for tomorrow, and you shall eat flesh. For you wept in the ears of Yahweh, saying, "Who will feed us flesh? For {it was} good for us in Egypt." And Yahweh shall give to you flesh, and you shall eat**
> UST Also, tell the people that they must set themselves apart to prepare for the next day, when they will eat meat. Remind them that they cried in my presence and said that they wished that someone would give them meat to eat just as when they lived well in Egypt. Tell them that I will provide them with meat to eat

If it would be clearer in your language, you could translate this so that there is not a quotation within a quotation. Alternate translation: [And you shall say to the people that they must consecrate themselves for tomorrow, and they shall eat flesh, for they wept in my ears, asking who would feed them flesh and declaring that it was good for them in Egypt. Say to them that I shall give to them flesh, and they shall eat.]

Support Reference: Quotes within Quotes

> ULT **Consecrate yourselves for tomorrow, and you shall eat flesh. For you wept in the ears of Yahweh, saying, "Who will feed us flesh? For {it was} good for us in Egypt." And Yahweh shall give to you flesh, and you shall eat**
> UST that they must set themselves apart to prepare for the next day, when they will eat meat. Remind them that they cried in my presence and said that they wished that someone would give them meat to eat just as when they lived well in Egypt. Tell them that I will provide them with meat to eat

If it would be more natural in your language, you may want to put the information about **you shall eat flesh** with the information about **Yahweh shall give to you flesh**, since these are related events that are separated by the reason **For you wept in the ears of Yahweh**. Alternate translation: [Consecrate yourselves for tomorrow, and Yahweh shall give to you flesh, and you shall eat it. For you wept in the ears of Yahweh, saying, "Who will feed us flesh? For it was good for us in Egypt."]

Support Reference: Information Structure

ULT **Consecrate yourselves for tomorrow, and you shall eat flesh. For you wept in the ears of Yahweh, saying, "Who will feed us flesh? For {it was} good for us in Egypt**

UST that they must set themselves apart to prepare for the next day, when they will eat meat. Remind them that they cried in my presence and said that they wished that someone would give them meat to eat just as when they lived well in Egypt

If it would be more natural in your language, you could reverse the order of these phrases, since **For you wept in the ears of Yahweh** gives the reason for the result that **consecrate yourselves for tomorrow, and you shall eat flesh** describes. Alternate translation: [You wept in the ears of Yahweh, saying, "Who will feed us flesh? For it was good for us in Egypt." So, consecrate yourselves for tomorrow, and you shall eat flesh.]

Support Reference: Connect — Reason-and-Result Relationship

ULT **in the ears of Yahweh**

UST in my presence

Here, **in the ears of** represents that Yahweh heard what the people said. See how you translated this phrase in 11:1. If it would be helpful in your language, you could use an equivalent expression or plain language. Alternate translation: [while Yahweh could hear]

Support Reference: Metonymy

ULT **Who will feed us flesh**

UST they wished that someone would give them meat to eat

The Israelites are using the question form to express their strong desire for meat to eat. If a speaker of your language would not use the question form for that purpose, you could translate this as a statement or as an exclamation. Alternate translation: [If only someone would feed us flesh!]

Support Reference: Rhetorical Question

ULT **For {it was} good**

UST just as when they lived well

The word translated as **For** indicates that what follows is the reason why they asked the question. Use a connector in your language that makes it clear that what follows is a reason for what came before. Alternate translation: [We ask that because it used to be]

Support Reference: Connect — Reason-and-Result Relationship

ULT **And Yahweh shall give to you flesh, and you shall eat**

UST Tell them that I will provide them with meat to eat

It might seem that the expression **Yahweh shall give to you flesh, and you shall eat** contains extra information that would not be natural to express in your language since Yahweh has already said that they will eat flesh. If so, you could shorten it. Alternate translation: [And Yahweh shall give to you flesh]

Support Reference: Making Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information Explicit

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Consecrate	that they must set themselves apart to prepare
Yahweh	my
Egypt	Egypt
Yahweh	I

Numbers 11:19

ULT	UST
You shall eat not one day and not two days and not five days and not ten days and not 20 days,	*Tell them that they will eat meat, but not for only one, two, five, ten, or even 20 days.*

ULT **You shall eat not one day and not two days and not five days and not ten days and not 20 days**

UST Tell them that they will eat {meat}, but not for only one, two, five, ten, or even 20 days

If you decided in the previous verse to translate this quotation in such a way that there would not be a quotation within a quotation, you can continue doing that here. Alternate translation: [Say to them that they shall eat not one day and not two days and not five days and not ten days and not 20 days]

Support Reference: Quotes within Quotes

ULT **You shall eat not one day and not two days and not five days and not ten days and not 20 days**

UST Tell them that they will eat {meat}, but not for only one, two, five, ten, or even 20 days

The implication is that Yahweh will give them meat for a much longer time than any of these shorter periods. Yahweh lists increasingly longer periods of time to emphasize that Yahweh will give them more meat than they expect. You could include this information if that would be helpful to your readers. Alternate translation: [You shall eat not just for one day or two days or five days or ten days or 20 days]

Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

ULT **You shall eat**

UST Tell them that they will eat meat

Yahweh is leaving out some of the words that in many languages a sentence would need in order to be complete. You can supply these words from the context if that would be clearer in your language. Alternate translation: [You shall eat flesh]

Support Reference: Ellipsis

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
days	two

Numbers 11:20

ULT	UST
until a month of days, until when it goes out from your nose. And it shall be for nausea for you because you rejected Yahweh who is in your midst, and you wept to his face, saying, "Why is this: we went out from Egypt?"'"	*Tell them that they will instead eat meat every day for a month, and then they will have too much and will want to vomit when they eat it. Tell them that this will happen because they have not wanted to obey me, who am present with them in a special way, and because they cried in my presence and said that they were very unhappy that they left Egypt."*

ULT **until when it goes out from your nose**
UST and then they will have too much

Here, Yahweh is speaking as if the meat were actually **going out from your nose**. This means that they will become very sick of the meat. If this meaning would not be clear in your language, you could use a comparable expression or you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [until when you are too full] or [until when you gag on it]
Support Reference: Metaphor

ULT **until a month of days, until when it goes out from your nose. And it shall be for nausea for you because you rejected Yahweh who is in your midst, and you wept to his face, saying, "Why {is} this: we went out from Egypt**
UST Tell them that {they will instead eat meat} every day for a month, and then they will have too much and will want to vomit {when they eat it}. Tell them that this will happen because they have not wanted to obey me, who am present with them in a special way, and because they cried in my presence and said that they were very unhappy that they left Egypt

If it would be clearer in your language, you could translate this so that there is not a quotation within a quotation. Alternate translation: [until a month of days, until when it goes out from their nose. Say to them that it shall be for nausea for them because they rejected me who is in their midst, and they wept to my face, asking why they went out from Egypt.]
Support Reference: Quotes within Quotes

ULT **until a month of days**
UST Tell them that {they will instead eat meat} every day for a month

The implication is that they would eat meat for 30 days. You could include this information if that would be helpful to your readers. Alternate translation: [but for a month of days] or [but for 30 days]
Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

ULT **a month of days**
UST every day for a month

Yahweh is using the possessive form to describe **a month** that is made up of all its **days**. If a speaker of your language would not use the possessive form for this, you could express this idea in another way. Alternate translation: [all the days in a month]
Support Reference: Possession

ULT **from your nose**
UST and then they will have too much

Yahweh is not referring to a specific **nose**. He means their noses in general. If it would be helpful to your readers, you could use an expression that would be more natural in your language. Alternate translation: [from your noses]
Support Reference: Generic Noun Phrases

ULT **And it shall be for nausea for you**
UST and will want to vomit when they eat it

If your language does not use an abstract noun for the idea of **nausea**, you could express the same idea in another way. Alternate translation: [And it shall make you nauseous]
Support Reference: Abstract Nouns

ULT **to his face**
UST in my presence

Here, **to his face** represents being in front of Yahweh. If it would be helpful in your language, you could use an equivalent expression or plain language. Alternate translation: [before him]
Support Reference: Metonymy

ULT **Why {is} this: we went out from Egypt**
UST they were very unhappy that they left Egypt

The people are using the question form to complain about leaving Egypt and to express their regret that they left. If a speaker of your language would not use the question form for that purpose, you could translate this as a statement or as an exclamation. Alternate translation: [We should never have gone out from Egypt!]
Support Reference: Rhetorical Question

ULT **Why {is} this: we went out**
UST they were very unhappy that they left

It might seem that the word **this** contains extra information that would not be natural to express in your language. If so, you could shorten it. Alternate translation: [Why did we go out]
Support Reference: Making Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information Explicit

ULT **we went out**
UST they left

In a context such as this, your language might say “came” instead of **went**. Alternate translation: [we came out]
Support Reference: Go and Come

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
month	month
rejected	they have not wanted to obey
Yahweh	me
Egypt	Egypt

Numbers 11:21

ULT	UST
And Moses said, "The people in whose midst I am are 600, 000 on foot, but you, you said, 'I shall give flesh to them, and they shall eat a month of days.'	*Moses replied, "There are 600, 000 men not including women and children walking with me. Despite that, you say that you will give them enough meat to eat every day for a month!*

ULT **are 600,000 on foot**
UST There are 600,000 men {not including women and children} walking with me

The implication is that this number represents only the adult men who could walk, since the census in Numbers 1 only counted adult men. You could include this information if that would be helpful to your readers. Alternate translation: [are 600,000 men on foot, plus the women and children]
Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

ULT **are 600,000**
UST There are 600,000

The number **600,000** is a round number, since 1:46 indicates that there were 603,550 men. Translate this number according to the conventions of your own language and culture. Alternate translation: [six hundred thousand]
Support Reference: Numbers

ULT **on foot**
UST men {not including women and children} walking with me

The phrase **on foot** is a common expression of this culture that means "who walk." If this phrase does not have that meaning in your language, you could use a comparable expression from your language that does have that meaning, or you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [who walk]
Support Reference: Idiom

ULT **but you, you said, 'I shall give flesh to them, and they shall eat a month of days**
UST Despite that, you say that you will give them enough meat to eat every day for a month

If it would be clearer in your language, you could translate this so that there is not a quotation within a quotation. Alternate translation: [but you, you said that you shall give flesh to them, and they shall eat a month of days]
Support Reference: Quotes within Quotes

ULT **but you, you said**
UST Despite that, you say that

Moses is stating the pronoun **you** separately, even though the verb translated as **you said** already includes this meaning. He is doing that to emphasize that Yahweh was the one who said this. If a speaker of your language would use an explicit pronoun for the same purpose, you may want to use that construction in your translation. If not, your language may have other ways of showing that emphasis. Alternate translation: [but you definitely said]
Support Reference: Pronouns — When to Use Them

ULT **and they shall eat**
UST to eat

Moses is leaving out some of the words that in many languages a sentence would need in order to be complete. You can supply these words from the context if that would be clearer in your language. Alternate translation: [and they shall eat flesh]
Support Reference: Ellipsis

ULT **a month of days**
UST every day for a month

Moses is using the possessive form to describe a **month** that is made up of all its **days**. If a speaker of your language would not use the possessive form for this, you could express this idea in another way. See how you translated this phrase in 11:20. Alternate translation: [all the days in a month]
Support Reference: Possession

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Moses	Moses

Numbers 11:22

ULT	UST
Shall flock and cattle be slaughtered for them, and it shall find for them? Or shall all the fish of the sea be gathered for them, and it shall find for them?"	*Even if we killed all the sheep and oxen or caught all the fish in the sea, that would not be enough meat for them!"*

ULT **Shall flock and cattle be slaughtered for them, and it shall find for them? Or shall all the fish of the sea be gathered for them, and it shall find for them**

UST Even if we killed all the sheep and oxen or caught all the fish in the sea, that would not be enough meat for them

These two phrases **Shall flock and cattle be slaughtered for them, and it shall find for them** and **shall all the fish of the sea be gathered for them, and it shall find for them** mean basically the same thing. The second emphasizes the meaning of the first by repeating the same idea with different words. If it would be helpful to your readers, you could combine them and express the emphasis in another way. Alternate translation: [Shall flock and cattle be slaughtered for them or all the fish of the sea be gathered for them, and it shall find for them?]

Support Reference: Parallelism

ULT **Shall flock and cattle be slaughtered for them, and it shall find for them? Or shall all the fish of the sea be gathered for them, and it shall find for them**

UST Even if we killed all the sheep and oxen or caught all the fish in the sea, that would not be enough meat for them

Moses is using the question form for emphasis to point out the impossibility of what God had promised to do. If a speaker of your language would not use the question form for that purpose, you could translate these questions as statements or as exclamations. Alternate translation: [Were flock and cattle to be slaughtered for them, it would not find for them. Or were all the fish of the sea to be gathered for them, it would not find for them.]

Support Reference: Rhetorical Question

ULT **Shall flock and cattle be slaughtered … shall all the fish of the sea be gathered**

UST we killed all the sheep and oxen or caught all the fish in the sea

The expressions **be slaughtered** and **be gathered** are passive verbal forms. If your language would not use those forms, you could express the ideas in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: [Shall someone slaughter flock and cattle … shall someone gather all the fish of the sea]

Support Reference: Active or Passive

ULT **and it shall find for them … and it shall find for them**

UST that would not be enough meat for them

The phrase **it shall find for them** is a common expression of this culture that means "it will be enough for them" or "it will satisfy them." If this phrase does not have that meaning in your language, you could use a comparable expression from your language that does have that meaning, or you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [and it satisfy them … and it satisfy them]

Support Reference: Idiom

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
flock	all the sheep
cattle	and oxen
slaughtered	we killed
the sea	the sea
shall … be gathered	or caught

Numbers 11:23

ULT	UST
And Yahweh said to Moses, "Is the hand of Yahweh short? Now you will see whether my word will happen to you or not."	*Yahweh replied, "You doubt that I am powerful. At this time you will find out if I can do what I say I will do."*

ULT **Is the hand of Yahweh short**
UST You doubt that I am powerful

Here, Yahweh is speaking as if he had a **hand** that could be too short to reach what he wanted. He means that his power is not limited. If this meaning would not be clear in your language, you could use a comparable expression or you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [Is the power of Yahweh limited?]
Support Reference: Metaphor

ULT **Is the hand of Yahweh short**
UST You doubt that I am powerful

Yahweh is using the question form **Is the hand of Yahweh short?** to strongly emphasize that he is fully able to do what he has promised. If a speaker of your language would not use the question form for that purpose, you could translate this as a statement or as an exclamation. Alternate translation: [The hand of Yahweh is not short!]
Support Reference: Rhetorical Question

ULT **Is the hand of Yahweh**
UST You doubt that I am powerful

Yahweh is speaking of himself in the third person as **Yahweh**. If it would be helpful in your language, you could translate this in the first person. Alternate translation: [my hand]
Support Reference: First, Second or Third Person

ULT **Now you will see whether my word will happen to you**
UST At this time you will find out if I can do what I say I will do

The word **you** is singular here because Yahweh is speaking directly to Moses. So use the singular form in your translation if your language marks that distinction. Alternate translation: [Now Moses, you will see whether my word will happen to you or not]
Support Reference: Forms of 'You' — Singular

ULT **Now you will see**
UST At this time you will find out

Here, **see** represents experiencing or knowing something. If it would be helpful in your language, you could use an equivalent expression or plain language. Alternate translation: [Now you will experience]
Support Reference: Metonymy

ULT **my word**
UST what I say I will do

Here, **word** represents what Yahweh said he would do. If it would be clearer in your language, you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [what I said]
Support Reference: Metonymy

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Yahweh	Yahweh
Moses	replied

Numbers 11:24

ULT	UST
And Moses went out, and he spoke to the people the words of Yahweh. And he gathered 70 men from the elders of the people, and he stood them around the tent.	*After that, Moses left the sacred tent and told the people what Yahweh had said. Then he summoned 70 men who were leaders among the Israelites and had them stand around the sacred tent.*

ULT **And Moses went out**
UST After that, Moses left the sacred tent

The implication is that Moses went out of the tent of meeting where he had been speaking with Yahweh. You could include this information if that would be helpful to your readers. Alternate translation: [And Moses went out of the tent of meeting]
Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

ULT **And Moses went out**
UST After that, Moses left the sacred tent

In a context such as this, your language might say “came” instead of **went**. Alternate translation: [And Moses came out]
Support Reference: Go and Come

ULT **the words of Yahweh**
UST what Yahweh had said

Here, **words of Yahweh** represents what Yahweh said by using words. If it would be clearer in your language, you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [what Yahweh had spoken]
Support Reference: Metonymy

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Moses	Moses
Yahweh	Yahweh
gathered	Then he summoned
elders	who were leaders among
tent	tent

Numbers 11:25

ULT	UST
And Yahweh came down in the cloud, and he spoke to him, and he took away from the Spirit that was on him, and he gave on 70 men, the elders. And it happened, as the Spirit rested on them, that they prophesied, and they did not add.	*Then Yahweh was present in a special way in the cloud that was above the sacred tent, and he talked with Moses. By means of his Spirit, he enabled the 70 leaders to lead the Israelites, just as he had enabled Moses. When Yahweh enabled them, the leaders spoke as Yahweh inspired them. However, they did not do that again.*

ULT **And Yahweh came down**

UST Then Yahweh was present in a special way

Here the author is speaking of Yahweh as if he were a person who could move up and down in space. This was a common way of describing God appearing to humans to interact with them. If this meaning would not be clear in your language, you could use a comparable expression or you could state the meaning plainly. See how you translated the similar phrase in 11:17. Alternate translation: [And Yahweh met them]

Support Reference: Metaphor

ULT **and he took away from the Spirit that {was} on him, and he gave on 70 men**

UST By means of his Spirit, he enabled the 70 leaders {to lead the Israelites}, just as he had enabled Moses

Here, the author is speaking as if the **Spirit** that empowered Moses were a physical substance that could be removed from one person and distributed to others. This represents God sharing his power and authority. If this meaning would not be clear in your language, you could use a comparable expression or you could state the meaning plainly. See how you translated the similar construction in 11:17. Alternate translation: [and he shared some of the authority and power that he gave Moses through his Spirit with 70 men]

Support Reference: Metaphor

ULT **as the Spirit rested on them**

UST Yahweh enabled them

Here, the author is speaking of the Spirit as if it were a physical being that could **rest** on people. This represents God giving these men authority and power to serve as leaders. If this meaning would not be clear in your language, you could use a comparable expression or you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [as they received the authority and power through God's Spirit]

Support Reference: Metaphor

ULT **in the cloud**

UST in the cloud that was above the sacred tent

The implication is that this was the same cloud that represented Yahweh's presence, which descended on and remained above the sacred tent as described in 9:15–23. You could include this information if that would be helpful to your readers. Alternate translation: [in the cloud that was over the Dwelling]

Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

ULT **from the Spirit … the Spirit**
UST By means of his Spirit … Yahweh enabled them

On this issue, see the chapter introduction for more information, and see how you referred to **Spirit** in 11:17. Here, the word **Spirit** could refer to: (1) God's Spirit. Alternate translation: [from God's Spirit … God's Spirit]; or (2) Moses' own spirit that Yahweh has specially equipped. Alternate translation: [from the spirit … the spirit]
Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

ULT **and he gave on 70 men**
UST he enabled the 70 leaders to lead the Israelites

The author is leaving out some of the words that in many languages a sentence would need in order to be complete. You can supply these words from the context if that would be clearer in your language. See how you translated the similar clause in 11:17. Alternate translation: [and he gave some of that Spirit on 70 men]
Support Reference: Ellipsis

ULT **and they did not add**
UST However, they did not do that again

The phrase **they did not add** is a common expression of this culture that means "they did not do it again" or "it happened only that one time." If this phrase does not have that meaning in your language, you could use a comparable expression from your language that does have that meaning, or you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [but they did so only that time]
Support Reference: Idiom

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Yahweh	Yahweh
elders	the 70 leaders to lead the Israelites
Spirit	Yahweh enabled them
prophesied	the leaders spoke as Yahweh inspired them

Numbers 11:26

ULT	UST
And two of the men were left in the camp: The name of the one was Eldad, and the name of the second was Medad. And the Spirit rested on them, and they were among the written ones, but they did not go out to the tent; and they prophesied in the camp.	*Eldad and Medad were two of the men whom Moses had summoned. However, they did not go to the sacred tent. Instead, they stayed among the Israelites' tents. However, Yahweh enabled them too to lead the Israelites by means of his Spirit, and they spoke as Yahweh inspired them among the tents.*

ULT **And two of the men were left**

UST were two of the men … Instead, they stayed

The expression **were left** is a passive verbal form. If your language would not use that form, you could express the idea in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: [And two of the men remained]

Support Reference: Active or Passive

ULT **the one**

UST Eldad

If your language would not represent a number in a form such as **the one**, you could represent this number in a form that your language would use. Alternate translation: [the first]

Support Reference: Ordinal Numbers

ULT **the second**

UST and Medad

If your language would not represent a number in a form such as **the second**, you could represent this number in a form that your language would use. Alternate translation: [the other] or [number two]

Support Reference: Ordinal Numbers

ULT **And the Spirit rested on them, and they {were} among the written ones, but they did not go out to the tent; and they prophesied in the camp**

UST whom Moses had summoned. However, they did not go to the sacred tent … However, Yahweh enabled them too to lead {the Israelites} by means of his Spirit, and they spoke as Yahweh inspired them among the tents

If it would be more natural in your language, you may want to put the information about **they were among the written ones** with the information about **they did not go out to the tent** before stating that **the Spirit rested on them, and they prophesied in the camp**. Alternate translation: [And they were among the written ones, but they did not go out to the tent. And the spirit rested on them, and they prophesied in the camp]

Support Reference: Information Structure

ULT **And the Spirit rested on them**

UST However, Yahweh enabled them too to lead {the Israelites} by means of his Spirit

See how you translated the similar phrase in 11:26.

Support Reference: Metaphor

ULT **among the written ones**
UST Moses had summoned

The implication is that these men were among those who had been selected and registered as leaders. You could include this information if that would be helpful to your readers. Alternate translation: [among those whose names were written down as chosen leaders]
Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

ULT **among the written ones**
UST Moses had summoned

The expression **among the written ones** is a passive verbal form. If your language would not use that form, you could express the idea in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. If you need to say who does the action, the context indicates that it is Moses. Alternate translation: [among the ones whose names Moses had written down]
Support Reference: Active or Passive

ULT **but they did not go out**
UST However, they did not go to

Here, the author speaks of going to the sacred tent as "going out." However, the sacred tent was in the center of the campsite. If a speaker of your language would not use the phrase **go out** for this, you could express this idea in another way. Alternate translation: [but they did not approach]
Support Reference: Go and Come

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Spirit	Spirit
tent	tent
prophesied	and they spoke as Yahweh inspired them

Numbers 11:27

ULT	UST
And the young man ran, and he told to Moses, and he said, "Eldad and Medad are prophesying in the camp."	*Then, a young man hurried to Moses and told him, "Eldad and Medad are speaking as Yahweh inspires them among the tents!"*

ULT **the young man**
UST a young man

The author is not referring to a **young man** who has already been mentioned in the story. He means an unidentified young man. If it would be helpful to your readers, you could use an expression that would be more natural in your language. Alternate translation: [a certain young man]

Support Reference: Generic Noun Phrases

ULT **and he said**
UST and told him

The term **and he said** introduces a direct quotation. In your translation, use a natural way of introducing direct quotations in your language. It may not be necessary to represent this term explicitly.

Support Reference: Quotations and Quote Margins

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
young man	young man
Moses	Moses
prophesying	are speaking as Yahweh inspires them

Numbers 11:28

ULT	UST
And Joshua, the son of Nun, the one ministering to Moses from his youth, answered and said, "My lord Moses, restrain them."	*Nun's son Joshua, who since he was a young man had helped Moses, responded, "Moses sir, I ask that you tell them to stop doing that!"*

ULT **Nun**
UST Nun's

The word **Nun** is the name of a man.
Support Reference: How to Translate Names

ULT **from his youth**
UST since he was a young man

Here, the phrase the ULT translates as **from his youth** could mean: (1) that Joshua had been ministering to Moses since Joshua was young. Alternate translation: [since he was young]; or (2) that Joshua was one of Moses' "chosen," or best, men. Alternate translation: [as one of his chosen men]
Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

ULT **and said**
UST responded

The terms **answered and said** introduce a direct quotation. In your translation, use a natural way of introducing direct quotations in your language. It may not be necessary to represent both of these terms explicitly.
Support Reference: Quotations and Quote Margins

ULT **My lord Moses**
UST Moses sir

Joshua is referring to **Moses** by a respectful title. Use a comparable title or expression for addressing someone respectfully in your language. Alternate translation: [My master Moses] or [Moses my leader]
Support Reference: Politeness

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Joshua	Joshua
the one ministering	who … had helped
Moses	Moses
lord	sir
Moses	Moses

Numbers 11:29

ULT	UST
And Moses said to him, "Are you being jealous for me? And who will give all the people of Yahweh as prophets, that Yahweh will give his Spirit on them?"	*Moses replied, "You should not be worried that this will harm me. In fact, I wish that Yahweh would inspire all his people by means of his Spirit so that they all would speak as he inspired them!"*

ULT **Are you being jealous for me**
UST You should not be worried that this will harm me

Moses is using the question form to rebuke Joshua's concern. If a speaker of your language would not use the question form for that purpose, you could translate this as a statement or as an exclamation. Alternate translation: [Do not be jealous for me!]
Support Reference: Rhetorical Question

ULT **Are you being jealous for me**
UST You should not be worried that this will harm me

By **Are you being jealous for me**, Moses means "Are you trying to protect my authority as leader?" You could indicate this explicitly in your translation if that would be helpful to your readers. Alternate translation: [Are you trying to protect my leadership]
Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

ULT **And who will give all the people of Yahweh {as} prophets, that Yahweh will give his Spirit on them**
UST In fact, I wish that Yahweh would inspire all his people by means of his Spirit so that they all would speak as he inspired them

Moses is using the question form to express his wish or desire that all of Yahweh's people would be prophets. If a speaker of your language would not use the question form for that purpose, you could translate this as a statement or as an exclamation. Alternate translation: [If only all the people of Yahweh would be prophets, that Yahweh would give his Spirit on them!]
Support Reference: Rhetorical Question

ULT **And who will give all the people of Yahweh {as} prophets, that Yahweh will give his Spirit on them**
UST In fact, I wish that Yahweh would inspire all his people by means of his Spirit so that they all would speak as he inspired them

If it would be more natural in your language, you may want to put the information about Yahweh giving his Spirit before the information about the people becoming prophets, since in the context, Yahweh gives his Spirit before people prophesy. Alternate translation: [And when will Yahweh give his Spirit on all the people of Yahweh, and who will give them as prophets]
Support Reference: Information Structure

ULT **And who will give all the people of Yahweh {as} prophets**
UST In fact, I wish that Yahweh would inspire all his people … so that they all would speak as he inspired them

Moses is using the phrase **who will give** as a common expression of his culture to mean "who will make" or "who will cause." If this phrase does not have that meaning in your language, you could use a comparable expression from your language that does have that meaning, or you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [And who will make all the people of Yahweh prophets]
Support Reference: Idiom

ULT **that Yahweh will give his Spirit on them**
UST by means of his Spirit

See how you translated the similar words in 11:25.
Support Reference: Metaphor

ULT **that**
UST by means of his Spirit

Here the word **that** introduces a second wish. If the connection between this statement and the previous one is not clear, you may want to use a different connecting word to show how this statement relates to what comes before it. Alternate translation: [and that]
Support Reference: Connecting Words and Phrases

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Moses	Moses
Yahweh	Yahweh
prophets	so that they all would speak as he inspired them
Spirit	Spirit

Numbers 11:30

ULT	UST
And Moses was gathered to the camp, he and the elders of Israel.	*Then Moses and the leaders went back to their tents.*

ULT **And Moses was gathered to the camp, he and the elders of Israel**
UST Then Moses and the leaders went back to their tents

If it would be more natural in your language, you may want to put the information about **he and the elders of Israel** with the information about **Moses** at the beginning of the sentence. Alternate translation: [And Moses and the elders of Israel were gathered to the camp]
Support Reference: Information Structure

ULT **And Moses was gathered**
UST Then Moses … went back

The expression **was gathered** is a passive verbal form. If your language would not use that form, you could express the idea in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: [And Moses returned]
Support Reference: Active or Passive

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Moses	Moses
gathered	Then … went back
elders	and the leaders
Israel	and the leaders

Numbers 11:31

ULT	UST
And a wind set out from with Yahweh, and it brought quails from the sea, and it left upon the camp as a way of a day this way and as a way of a day that way around the camp and about two cubits on the face of the land.	*Then Yahweh made the wind blow small birds from the nearby sea, and they fell on the ground in the campsite and as far as a person can walk in a day in every direction. They lay on the ground a meter high.*

ULT **And a wind set out from with Yahweh**
UST Then Yahweh made the wind blow

Here, the author is speaking as if the **wind** were actually a person that Yahweh sent on a mission. If this meaning would not be clear in your language, you could use a comparable expression or you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [And Yahweh sent a wind]
Support Reference: Metaphor

ULT **quails**
UST small birds

A **quail** is a kind of small, plump game bird. If your readers would not be familiar with what a quail is, you could use the name of a similar bird that your readers would recognize, or you could use a more general term. Alternate translation: [small, plump game birds]
Support Reference: Translate Unknowns

ULT **from the sea**
UST from the nearby sea

The author assumes that readers will know that **the sea** refers to the Gulf of Aqaba, on the eastern side of the Sinai region. You could say that explicitly if that would be helpful to your readers. Alternate translation: [from the nearby gulf]
Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

ULT **and it left upon the camp**
UST and they fell on the ground in the campsite

The author is leaving out some of the words that in many languages a sentence would need in order to be complete. You can supply these words from the context if that would be clearer in your language. Alternate translation: [and it left the quails upon the camp]
Support Reference: Ellipsis

ULT **as a way of a day this way and as a way of a day that way around the camp**
UST and as far as a person can walk in a day in every direction

The phrase **as a way of a day this way and as a way of a day that way** was a common expression of this culture that means “about a day’s journey in each direction.” If this phrase does not have that meaning in your language, you could use a comparable expression from your language that does have that meaning, or you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [and about a day’s journey in each direction from the camp]
Support Reference: Idiom

ULT **and about two cubits on the face of the land**
UST They lay on the ground a meter high

Here, the author could be indicating that: (1) the quails lay in piles on the ground, and the piles were **about two cubits** high. Alternate translation: [and in piles about two cubits high on the face of]; or (2) the quails were flying **about two cubits** above the ground. Alternate translation: [and flying about cubits above the face of]
Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

ULT **and about two cubits**
UST They lay … a meter high

The term **two cubits** refers to a unit of measurement corresponding to the distance between an average person's elbow and middle fingertip, or about 46 centimeters or 18 inches. If it would be helpful to your readers, you could express this distance in modern measurements, either in the text or a footnote. Alternate translation: [and about three feet]
Support Reference: Biblical Distance

ULT **on the face of the land**
UST on the ground

Here, **face of the land** represents the surface of the ground. If it would be helpful in your language, you could use an equivalent expression or plain language. Alternate translation: [on top of the land]
Support Reference: Metonymy

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
wind	wind
Yahweh	Yahweh
the sea	the nearby sea
land	the ground

Numbers 11:32

ULT	UST
And the people rose all that day and all the night and all the day of the next day, and they gathered the quail. The one making little gathered ten homers. And spreading, they spread for them around the camp.	*So the people went out and collected the small birds that day, that night, and the entire next day. The people who worked the least still collected about 2, 200 liters. They laid the quails out on the ground around the campsite.*

ULT **And the people rose**
UST So the people went out

The author is using **rose** as a common expression of his culture to mean "got up and started working." If this phrase does not have that meaning in your language, you could use a comparable expression from your language that does have that meaning, or you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [And the people worked]
Support Reference: Idiom

ULT **and all the day of the next day**
UST and the entire next day

It might seem that the expression **the day of** contains extra information that would not be natural to express in your language. If so, you could shorten it. Alternate translation: [and all the next day]
Support Reference: Making Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information Explicit

ULT **the quail**
UST the small birds

In this verse, the word **quail** is singular in form, but it refers to all the birds as a group. If it would be helpful in your language, you could use the plural form of "quail." Alternate translation: [the quail birds]
Support Reference: Collective Nouns

ULT **The one making little gathered ten homers**
UST The people who worked the least still collected about 2,200 liters

The implication is that even the person who gathered the least amount still gathered a very large quantity of quail. You could include this information if that would be helpful to your readers. Alternate translation: [Even the one making little gathered very much: ten homers]
Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

ULT **The one making little**
UST The people who worked the least

The phrase **making little** is a common expression of this culture that means "doing the least work" or "gathering the least amount." If this phrase does not have that meaning in your language, you could use a comparable expression from your language that does have that meaning, or you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [The one who did the least work]
Support Reference: Idiom

ULT **ten homers**
UST about 2,200 liters

The term **homer** was equivalent to 220 liters or about 6.5 bushels. If it would be helpful to your readers, you could express this in terms of modern measurements, either in the text or in a footnote.
Support Reference: Biblical Volume

ULT **And spreading, they spread for them around the camp**
UST They laid the quails out {on the ground} around the campsite

The author does not state why the people spread the quails around the camp. Some scholars think that they did this so that the meat from the quails would dry out and last longer. However, it is not certain that this is why they spread them out. So it is recommended that you do not explain in your translation why they spread out the quails. You could include possible interpretations in a footnote if that would be helpful to your readers.
Support Reference: When to Keep Information Implicit

ULT **And spreading, they spread**
UST They laid … out on the ground

The author is repeating forms of the verb **spread** in order to intensify his expression of the idea that it conveys. If your language can repeat words for intensification, it would be appropriate to do that here in your translation. If not, your language may have another way of expressing the intensification. Alternate translation: [And they spread widely]
Support Reference: Reduplication

ULT **for them**
UST the quails

The pronoun **them** refers to the Israelites who gathered the quails. It may be helpful to clarify this for your readers. Alternate translation: [for themselves]
Support Reference: Pronouns — When to Use Them

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
day	next
and they gathered	and collected

Numbers 11:33

ULT	UST
The flesh was still between their teeth, before it was cut off, and the nose of Yahweh burned against the people, and Yahweh struck the people an exceedingly great striking,	*While the people were about to eat the meat, before they took a bite, Yahweh was angry with them. So, he caused very many of them to die.*

ULT **The flesh {was} still between their teeth, before it was cut off**
UST While the people were about to eat the meat, before they took a bite

The expression **The flesh was still between their teeth, before it was cut off** was a common expression of this culture that means "before they had even chewed and swallowed the meat." If this phrase does not have that meaning in your language, you could use a comparable expression from your language that does have that meaning, or you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [They were about to bite off some of the flesh and chew it]
Support Reference: Idiom

ULT **before it was cut off**
UST before they took a bite

The expression **was cut off** is a passive verbal form. If your language would not use that form, you could express the idea in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. If you need to say who does the action, the context indicates that it is the Israelites. Alternate translation: [before they cut it off]
Support Reference: Active or Passive

ULT **and the nose of Yahweh burned against the people**
UST Yahweh was angry with them

The phrase **the nose of Yahweh burned** is a common expression of this culture that means that Yahweh is angry. If this phrase does not have that meaning in your language, use a comparable expression from your language that does have that meaning or state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [and Yahweh's anger burned against the people] or [and Yahweh was enraged with the people]
Support Reference: Idiom

ULT **and Yahweh struck the people an exceedingly great striking**
UST So, he caused very many of them to die

The author is using a construction in which a verb and its object come from the same root. You may be able to use the same construction in your language to express the meaning here. Alternatively, your language may have another way of saying this. Alternate translation: [and Yahweh struck the people very hard]
Support Reference: Poetry

ULT **and Yahweh struck the people an exceedingly great striking**
UST So, he caused very many of them to die

The implication is that Yahweh caused a large number of people to die, possibly through a disease or plague. You could include this information if that would be helpful to your readers. See the discussion of the term “struck” in the Introduction to Numbers. Alternate translation: [and Yahweh caused many of the people to die] or [and Yahweh sent a terrible plague among the people]

Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Yahweh	Yahweh

Numbers 11:34

ULT	UST
and he called the name of that place Kibroth Hattaavah, because there they buried the people who had desired.	*In that place the Israelites buried the bodies of the people who had wanted very badly to eat meat. So, they named that place Kibroth Hattaavah, which means "Graves for the People Who Wanted".*

ULT **and he called the name of that place Kibroth Hattaavah, because there they buried the people who had desired**

UST In that place the Israelites buried the bodies of the people who had wanted very badly {to eat meat}. So, they named that place Kibroth Hattaavah, which means "Graves for the People Who Wanted

If it would be more natural in your language, you could reverse the order of these phrases, since the second phrase gives the reason for the result that the first phrase describes. Alternate translation: [and because there they buried the people who had desired, he called the name of that place Kibroth Hattaavah]

Support Reference: Connect — Reason-and-Result Relationship

ULT **and he called**

UST So, they named

See how you translated the similar form in 11:3. Here, the pronoun **he** could refer: (1) generically to anyone who used this name. Alternate translation: [and people called]; or (2) to Moses. Alternate translation: [and Moses called]

Support Reference: Pronouns — When to Use Them

ULT **Kibroth Hattaavah**

UST Kibroth Hattaavah

This name **Kibroth Hattaavah** sounds like the Hebrew words for "graves of desire." This place got this name because the Israelites buried there the people who had strongly desired meat. If it would be helpful to your readers, you could explain this in the text of your translation or in a footnote.

Support Reference: How to Translate Names

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
called	So, they named
buried	which means "Graves

Numbers 11:35

ULT	UST
From Kibroth Hattaavah the people set out to Hazeroth. And they were in Hazeroth.	*The people left Kibroth Hattaavah and arrived in Hazeroth, and they stayed there.*

ULT **to Hazeroth**

UST in Hazeroth

The word **Hazeroth** is the name of a place in the desert. Alternate translation: [the place called Hazeroth]

Support Reference: How to Translate Names

ULT **And they were in Hazeroth**

UST and they stayed there

The implication is that the Israelites stayed in Hazeroth, and this is where the events in chapter 12 took place. You could include this information if that would be helpful to your readers. Alternate translation: [And they camped in Hazeroth]

Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

Numbers 12

Numbers 12 Introduction

Numbers 12 Chapter Introduction

Structure and Formatting

In this chapter, Miriam and Aaron speak against Moses and claim authority like his authority. God punishes Miriam, but then he restores her when Moses intercedes for her.

1. Miriam and Aaron question Moses' authority (1–3)
2. Yahweh explains Moses' special role as his servant (4–9)
3. Miriam receives a skin disease and stays outside the camp for seven days (10–16)

Religious and Cultural Concepts in This Chapter

Miriam and Aaron

Miriam was Moses' older sister. Aaron was Moses' older brother, although Aaron was younger than Miriam. In this story, they claim to have the authority to speak for God as Moses did. However, by the end of the chapter, God has shown that Moses is the one who has this authority.

Moses' wife

This chapter refers to a wife of Moses who was a Cushite, which means that she was from the area that is now southern Egypt and northern Sudan. In Exodus 2:21, Moses marries a woman named Zipporah, but it is clear in the context that she is a Midianite (see Exodus 2:16). It is possible that Zipporah could be identified both as a Cushite and as a Midianite. It is more likely that Moses married a second woman, who was a Cushite. However, since the text does not directly identify this woman, it is recommended that you refer to her as generally as 12:1 does.

Skin disease

God punishes Miriam by making her suffer a skin disease. This specific skin disease disfigures her skin and makes it white. It is not certain exactly what skin disease it is. It is recommended that you use a general term for a skin disease.

Numbers 12:1

ULT	UST
And Miriam and Aaron spoke against Moses on account of the woman, the Cushitess, that he took. For he took a woman, a Cushitess.	*Previously, Moses had married a woman from the Cush people group. Now while the Israelites were in Hazeroth, Moses' older sister Miriam and his older brother Aaron criticized Moses because he had married that woman from the Cush people group.*

ULT **And Miriam and Aaron spoke against Moses on account of the woman, the Cushitess, that he took. For he took a woman, a Cushitess**

UST Previously, Moses had married a woman from the Cush people group. {Now while the Israelites were in Hazeroth, Moses' older sister} Miriam and {his older brother} Aaron criticized Moses because he had married that woman from the Cush people group

If it would be more natural in your language, you could reverse the order of these phrases, since the second phrase gives the reason for the result that the first phrase describes. Alternate translation: [Now Moses had taken a woman, a Cushitess. And Miriam and Aaron spoke against Moses on account of this woman, this Cushitess]

Support Reference: Connect — Reason-and-Result Relationship

ULT **the woman, the Cushitess**

UST that woman from the Cush people group

Some scholars argue that this woman was Zipporah, whom Moses married in Exodus 2:21. Other scholars argue that this is another woman to whom Moses was also married. It is recommended that you do not identify this woman beyond identifying her as a **Cushitess**.

Support Reference: When to Keep Information Implicit

ULT **the Cushitess … a Cushitess**

UST from the Cush people group … from the Cush people group

Here, the word **Cushitess** refers to a woman from the area south of Egypt, sometimes known as Nubia. This is modern day southern Egypt and northern Sudan. Alternate translation: [the one from Cush … one from Cush]

Support Reference: How to Translate Names

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Miriam	Miriam
Aaron	Aaron
Moses	Moses

Numbers 12:2

ULT	UST
And they said, "Did Yahweh really only speak in Moses? Did he not speak also in us?" And Yahweh heard.	*They said, "Yahweh has not spoken only through Moses. He has spoken through us, too!" Yahweh heard what they said.*

ULT **Did Yahweh really only speak in Moses? Did he not speak also in us**
UST Yahweh has not spoken only through Moses. He has spoken through us, too

Aaron and Miriam are using the question form for emphasis. If a speaker of your language would not use the question form for that purpose, you could translate these questions as statements or as exclamations. Alternate translation: [Yahweh did not only speak in Moses. He also spoke in us!]
Support Reference: Rhetorical Question

ULT **in Moses … in us**
UST through Moses … through us

The phrases **in Moses** and **in us** are common expressions of this culture that mean "by means of Moses" and "by means of us." If these phrases do not have that meaning in your language, you could use a comparable expression from your language that does have that meaning, or you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [by means of Moses … by means of us]
Support Reference: Idiom

ULT **in us**
UST through us

By **in us**, Miriam and Aaron mean themselves but not Moses to whom they are referring, so use the exclusive form of that word in your translation if your language marks that distinction.
Support Reference: Exclusive and Inclusive 'We'

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Yahweh	Yahweh
Moses	Moses

Numbers 12:3

ULT	UST
(And the man Moses was very meek, more than the man who was upon the face of the ground.)	*As for Moses, he was much more humble than any other person on earth.*

ULT **And the man Moses {was} very meek, more than the man who {was} upon the face of the ground**

UST As for Moses, he was much more humble than any other person on earth

Here, the author is providing background information to help readers understand what happens next in the story. The ULT indicates this with parentheses. In your translation, introduce this information in a way that would be natural in your own language and culture. Alternate translation: [Now it is important to know that the man Moses was very meek, more than the man who was upon the face of the ground]

Support Reference: Background Information

ULT **And the man**

UST As for

The author is not referring to a specific **man**. The author means people in general. If it would be helpful to your readers, you could use an expression that would be more natural in your language. Alternate translation: [any human]

Support Reference: Generic Noun Phrases

ULT **who {was} upon the face of the ground**

UST other person on earth

The author is using **upon the face of the ground** as a common expression of his culture to mean “in the world” or “on the earth.” If this phrase does not have that meaning in your language, you could use a comparable expression from your language that does have that meaning, or you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [who was alive] or [who was in the world]

Support Reference: Idiom

ULT **the face of the ground**

UST on earth

Here, **the face of the ground** represents the surface of the ground. If it would be helpful in your language, you could use an equivalent expression or plain language. Alternate translation: [the surface of the land] or [the land]

Support Reference: Metonymy

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Moses	Moses

Numbers 12:4

ULT	UST
And Yahweh said suddenly to Moses and to Aaron and to Miriam, "Go out, the three of you, to the tent of meeting." And the three of them went out.	*Then, without warning, Yahweh told Moses, Aaron, and Miriam, "All three of you must go to the sacred tent." So they went to the sacred tent.*

ULT **Go out … And the three of them went out**
UST must go … So they went to the sacred tent

In a context such as this, your language might say "approach" instead of **go**. The tent was in the middle of the camp, not outside it. See how you translated the similar expression in 11:26. Alternate translation: [Approach … And the three of them approached]
Support Reference: Go and Come

ULT **And the three of them went out**
UST So they went to the sacred tent

By **the three of them went out**, the author means they went out to the tent of meeting. You could indicate this explicitly in your translation if that would be helpful to your readers. Alternate translation: [And the three of them went out to the tent of meeting]
Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Yahweh	Yahweh
Moses	Moses
Aaron	Aaron
Miriam	Miriam

Numbers 12:5

ULT	UST
And Yahweh came down in a pillar of cloud, and it stood at the opening of the tent, and he called Aaron and Miriam, and the two of them went out.	*Then Yahweh was present in a special way in a cloud that looked like a column. The cloud was at the entrance to the sacred tent. Then Yahweh summoned Aaron and Miriam. They approached the cloud.*

ULT **And Yahweh came down**
UST Then Yahweh was present in a special way

Here, the author is speaking as if **Yahweh** had actually moved physically downward. If this meaning would not be clear in your language, you could use a comparable expression or you could state the meaning plainly. See how you translated the similar phrase in 11:25. Alternate translation: [And Yahweh met them]
Support Reference: Metaphor

ULT **in a pillar of cloud**
UST in a cloud that looked like a column

The author is using the possessive form to describe a **cloud** that is in the shape of **a pillar**. If a speaker of your language would not use the possessive form for this, you could express this idea in another way. Alternate translation: [in a cloud in the shape of a pillar]
Support Reference: Possession

ULT **and it stood**
UST The cloud was

The author is speaking of the cloud column as if it were a living thing that could **stand**. If it would be helpful in your language, you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [and Yahweh had it stay]
Support Reference: Personification

ULT **and the two of them went out**
UST They approached the cloud

In a context such as this, your language might say “approached” instead of **went out**. The tent was in the middle of the camp, not outside it. See how you translated the similar expression in 12:4. Alternate translation: [and the two of them approached]
Support Reference: Go and Come

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Yahweh	Yahweh
pillar	column
tent	tent
and he called	Then Yahweh summoned
Aaron	Aaron
Miriam	Miriam

Numbers 12:6

ULT	UST
And he said, "Please hear my words! If there is a prophet of yours of Yahweh, in the vision I will make myself known to him. In the dream I will speak with him.	*Yahweh told them, "Listen to me! When people who truly speak for me are among you, I communicate with them by giving them dreams and visions.*

ULT **my words**
UST Listen to me

Here, **words** represents what God will say by using words. If it would be clearer in your language, you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [what I am about to say]
Support Reference: Metonymy

ULT **If there is a prophet of yours of Yahweh, in the vision I will make myself known to him**
UST When people who truly speak for me are among you, I communicate with them … and visions

Yahweh is describing a possible condition in which he will make himself known in a vision only if there is a prophet of Yahweh. Express this possible condition in a way that would be natural in your language. Alternate translation: [Suppose that there is a prophet of yours of Yahweh. In that case, in the vision I will make myself known to him]
Support Reference: Connect — Hypothetical Conditions

ULT **a prophet of yours of Yahweh**
UST When people who truly speak for me are among you

The author is using the possessive form to describe a **prophet** who belongs to and speaks for **Yahweh**. If a speaker of your language would not use the possessive form for this, you could express this idea in another way. Alternate translation: [a prophet among you through whom I speak]
Support Reference: Possession

ULT **of Yahweh**
UST When people who truly speak for me are among you

Yahweh is speaking of himself in the third person as **Yahweh**. If it would be helpful in your language, you could translate this in the first person. Alternate translation: [of mine]
Support Reference: First, Second or Third Person

ULT **in the vision I will make myself known to him. In the dream I will speak with him**
UST I communicate with them by giving them dreams and visions

These two phrases **in the vision I will make myself known to him** and **In the dream I will speak with him** mean basically the same thing. The second emphasizes the meaning of the first by repeating the same idea with different words. If it would be helpful to your readers, you could combine them and express the emphasis in another way. Alternate translation: [in the vision or the dream I will reveal myself to him]
Support Reference: Parallelism

> ULT **in the vision … In the dream**
> UST dreams and visions

Here, **vision** and **dream** represent supernatural revelations in general, not specific visions or dreams. If it would be helpful to your readers, you could use expressions that would be more natural in your language. Alternate translation: [in a vision … In a dream]

Support Reference: Generic Noun Phrases

> ULT **to him … with him**
> UST with them … them

Here the masculine terms **to him** and **with him** have a generic sense that includes both men and women. If it would be helpful to your readers, you could use language in your translation that is clearly inclusive of both men and women. Alternate translation: [to that person … with that person]

Support Reference: When Masculine Words Include Women

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Please	Listen to me
prophet	When people who truly speak for me are among you
Yahweh	When people who truly speak for me are among you
vision	visions
known	I communicate
dream	dreams

Numbers 12:7

ULT	UST
Not so my servant Moses; in all my house, he, he is faithful.	*But that is not how I communicate with Moses, who serves me. He is trustworthy as he leads my people.*

ULT **Not so my servant Moses**
UST But that is not how {I communicate with} Moses, who serves me

The author is leaving out some of the words that in many languages a sentence would need in order to be complete. You can supply these words from the context if that would be clearer in your language. Alternate translation: [Not so do I make myself known to my servant Moses]
Support Reference: Ellipsis

ULT **in all my house, he, he is faithful**
UST He is trustworthy as he leads my people

Here, the phrase **he himself is faithful** could indicate that: (1) Moses faithfully does what God requires. Alternate translation: [in all my house he, he acts faithfully]; or (2) Moses is entrusted with the **house**. Alternate translation: [with all my house he, he is entrusted]
Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

ULT **in all my house**
UST as he leads my people

God is using the term **house** to mean all the people who serve and worship him. If it would be helpful in your language, you could use an equivalent expression or state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [among all my people]
Support Reference: Metonymy

ULT **he, he is faithful**
UST He is trustworthy

Yahweh is stating the pronoun **he** separately, even though the verb translated as **he is faithful** already includes this meaning. He is doing that to emphasize that Moses is very faithful. If a speaker of your language would use an explicit pronoun for the same purpose, you may want to use that construction in your translation. If not, your language may have other ways of showing that emphasis. Alternate translation: [he certainly is faithful]
Support Reference: Pronouns — When to Use Them

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
servant	serves
Moses	Moses
my house	as he leads my people
faithful	trustworthy

Numbers 12:8

ULT	UST
Mouth to mouth I speak with him, and appearance and not in riddles, and he looks at the form of Yahweh. And why do you not fear to speak against my servant, against Moses?"	*I speak with him directly, and I do not make him try to figure out what I mean. Instead, I tell him plainly, and he sees how I choose to look when I am present in a special way. So, you should be afraid to criticize Moses, who serves me!"*

ULT **Mouth to mouth**
UST directly

Yahweh is using **mouth to mouth** as a common expression of his culture to mean "face to face" or "directly." If this phrase does not have that meaning in your language, you could use a comparable expression from your language that does have that meaning, or you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [Face to face] or [Directly]
Support Reference: Idiom

ULT **and appearance and not in riddles**
UST and I do not make him try to figure out what I mean. Instead, I tell him plainly

By **appearance and not in riddles**, Yahweh means that he spoke to Moses plainly and directly rather than in ways that were difficult to understand. You could indicate this explicitly in your translation if that would be helpful to your readers. Alternate translation: [and clearly instead of in complicated ways]
Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

ULT **and … the form of Yahweh**
UST and … how I choose to look when I am present in a special way

By **the form of Yahweh**, Yahweh means the visible way in which he reveals himself. You could indicate this explicitly in your translation if that would be helpful to your readers. Alternate translation: [the visible way in which Yahweh reveals himself]
Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

ULT **and … the form of Yahweh**
UST and … how I choose to look when I am present in a special way

Yahweh is speaking of himself in the third person as **Yahweh**. If it would be helpful in your language, you could translate this in the first person. Alternate translation: [my form]
Support Reference: First, Second or Third Person

ULT **And why do you not fear to speak against my servant, against Moses**
UST So, you should be afraid to criticize Moses, who serves me

God is using the question form to rebuke Aaron and Miriam. If a speaker of your language would not use the question form for that purpose, you could translate this as a statement or as an exclamation. Alternate translation: [So you should fear to speak against my servant, against Moses.]
Support Reference: Rhetorical Question

> ULT **against my servant, against Moses**
> UST Moses, who serves me

It might seem that the expression **against my servant, against Moses** contains extra information that would not be natural to express in your language. If so, you could shorten it. Alternate translation: [against my servant Moses]

Support Reference: Making Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information Explicit

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Yahweh	and … how I choose to look when I am present in a special way
fear	afraid
Moses	Moses

Numbers 12:9

ULT	UST
And the nose of Yahweh burned against them, and he went,	*Yahweh was angry with Miriam and Aaron, and he left that place.*

ULT **And the nose of Yahweh burned against them**
UST Yahweh was angry with Miriam and Aaron

The phrase **the nose of Yahweh burned** is a common expression of this culture that means that Yahweh is angry. If this phrase does not have that meaning in your language, use a comparable expression from your language that does have that meaning or state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [and Yahweh's anger burned against them] or [and Yahweh was enraged with them]

Support Reference: Idiom

ULT **and he went**
UST and he left that place

The implication is that Yahweh left the sacred tent where he had been speaking with Moses, Aaron, and Miriam. You could include this information if that would be helpful to your readers. Alternate translation: [and he left the sacred tent]

Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Yahweh	Yahweh

Numbers 12:10

ULT	UST
and the cloud turned aside from upon the tent. And behold, Miriam was with a skin disease, like the snow, and Aaron turned to Miriam, and behold, she was with a skin disease,	*The cloud too moved from the sacred tent. Immediately, Miriam had a skin disease that made her skin as white as snow. When Aaron looked at her, he immediately saw that she had a skin disease.*

ULT **and the cloud turned aside**
UST The cloud too moved

The author is speaking of the **cloud** as if it were a living thing that could move away on its own. If it would be helpful in your language, you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [and Yahweh had the cloud depart]
Support Reference: Personification

ULT **And behold … and behold**
UST Immediately … he immediately saw that

The author is using the term **behold** to focus his listeners' attention on what he is about to say. Your language may have a comparable expression that you can use in your translation. Alternate translation: [And look … and look]
Support Reference: Metaphor

ULT **like the snow**
UST that made her skin as white as snow

The point of this comparison is that just as **snow** is white, so was her skin. If it would be helpful in your language, you could make this point explicitly. Alternate translation: [white like snow] or [white like wool]
Support Reference: Simile

ULT **like the snow**
UST that made her skin as white as snow

The author is not referring to a specific **snow**. He means snow in general. If it would be helpful to your readers, you could use an expression that would be more natural in your language. Alternate translation: [like snow]
Support Reference: Generic Noun Phrases

ULT **and behold, she was with a skin disease**
UST he immediately saw that she had a skin disease

It might seem that the expression **she was with a skin disease** contains extra information that would not be natural to express in your language, since the author stated it earlier in the verse. If so, you could shorten it. Alternate translation: [and he saw what had happened]
Support Reference: Making Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information Explicit

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
tent	tent
Miriam	Miriam
skin disease	skin disease
snow	snow
Aaron	Aaron
Miriam	her

Numbers 12:11

ULT	UST
and Aaron said to Moses, "Please, my lord, please do not put upon us sin which we did foolishly and which we sinned.	*Then Aaron said to Moses, "Sir, I ask you not to punish us for the wrong thing that we did so foolishly!*

ULT **do not put upon us sin**
UST not to punish us for the wrong thing

Here, Aaron is speaking as if sin were actually something that could be **put upon** a person. If this meaning would not be clear in your language, you could use a comparable expression or you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [do not make us suffer the punishment for the sin]
Support Reference: Metaphor

ULT **Please, my lord, please**
UST Sir, I ask you

Aaron uses two words that mean **please** to indicate his own low status and the urgency of his request. Use a comparable title or expression for addressing someone respectfully in your language. Alternate translation: [I beg you, my lord,]
Support Reference: Politeness

ULT **my lord**
UST Sir

Aaron is referring to Moses by the respectful title **my lord**. Use a comparable title or expression for addressing someone respectfully in your language. See how you translated the similar phrase in 11:28. Alternate translation: [my master] or [my leader]
Support Reference: Politeness

ULT **upon us … we did foolishly … we sinned**
UST us … we did so foolishly

By **us**, Aaron means himself and Miriam but not Moses to whom he is speaking, so use the exclusive form of that word in your translation if your language marks that distinction.
Support Reference: Exclusive and Inclusive 'We'

ULT **which we did foolishly and which we sinned**
UST that we did so foolishly

The expression **which we did foolishly and which we sinned** expresses a single idea. The word **foolishly** tells more about **sinned**. If it would be more natural in your language, you could express this meaning in a different way. Alternate translation: [which we foolishly sinned] or [which we did so foolishly]
Support Reference: Hendiadys

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Aaron	Aaron
Moses	Moses
lord	Sir
please	I ask you
sin	for the wrong thing
sinned	we did so foolishly

Numbers 12:12

ULT	UST
May she not be like the one having died, who, when he comes out from the womb of his mother, then half of his flesh was eaten."	*I ask that you do not allow Miriam to be like a baby that has died and already partly decayed when its mother gives birth to it!"*

ULT **May she not be like the one having died, who, when he comes out from the womb of his mother, then half of his flesh was eaten**

UST I ask that you do not allow Miriam to be like a baby that has died and already partly decayed when its mother gives birth to it

The point of this comparison is that just as **one having died** has decaying flesh, so Miriam has decaying flesh. If it would be helpful in your language, you could make this point explicitly. Alternate translation: [May her skin not be like the skin of the one having died, who, when he comes out from the womb of his mother, then half of his flesh was eaten]

Support Reference: Simile

ULT **when he comes out from the womb of his mother**

UST its mother gives birth to it

The author is using **when he comes out from the womb of his mother** as a common expression of his culture to mean "when he is born." If this phrase does not have that meaning in your language, you could use a comparable expression from your language that does have that meaning, or you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [when he is born]

Support Reference: Idiom

ULT **then half of his flesh was eaten**

UST and already partly decayed

The expression **was eaten** is a passive verbal form. If your language would not use that form, you could express the idea in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: [then half of his flesh has wasted away] or [then half of his flesh has rotted]

Support Reference: Active or Passive

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
womb	gives birth to it

Numbers 12:13

ULT	UST
And Moses cried out to Yahweh, saying, "God, please, please heal her!"	*So Moses pleaded with Yahweh, "God, I beg you to cure her!"*

ULT **saying**
UST So … pleaded

Here, the word **saying** introduces a direct quotation. See how you translated **saying** in 1:1.
Support Reference: Quotations and Quote Margins

ULT **God, please, please**
UST God, I beg you

Here Moses repeats the word **please** to show that he is speaking humbly and pleading urgently with God. To show humility and urgency in your language, you may need to use different words or expressions rather than repeating "please." See how you translated the similar repetition in 12:11. Alternate translation: [God, I respectfully and urgently ask you,]
Support Reference: Politeness

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Moses	Moses
cried out	So … pleaded
Yahweh	Yahweh
God	God
please	beg

Numbers 12:14

ULT	UST
And Yahweh said to Moses, "And her father, spitting, spit in her face, would she not be humiliated seven days? She shall be shut up seven days from outside to the camp, and after she shall be gathered."	*Yahweh replied, "Suppose that her father had shamed her by spitting in her face. That would shame her for seven days. Similarly, now she must stay outside the area where the Israelites set up their tents for seven days. After that, she can come back to her tent."*

ULT **And her father, spitting, spit in her face, would she not be humiliated seven days**
UST Suppose that her father had shamed her by spitting in her face. That would shame her for seven days

The author is using the question form to emphasize that being spit in the face by her father would certainly humiliate her for seven days. If a speaker of your language would not use the question form for that purpose, you could translate this as a statement or as an exclamation. Alternate translation: [And her father, spitting, spit in her face, she would be humiliated seven days.]
Support Reference: Rhetorical Question

ULT **And her father, spitting, spit in her face, would she not be humiliated seven days**
UST Suppose that her father had shamed her by spitting in her face. That would shame her for seven days

The author says **And her father, spitting, spit in her face, would she not be humiliated seven days** to introduce an imaginary situation to help explain how long Miriam should be isolated outside the camp. Use a natural method in your language for introducing an imaginary situation. Alternate translation: [Imagine that her father, spitting, spit in her face. In that case, would she not be humiliated seven days]
Support Reference: Hypothetical Situations

ULT **And her father, spitting, spit in her face**
UST Suppose that her father had shamed her by spitting in her face

Spitting **in her face** was a symbolic action by which her father showed that she was disgraced and unclean. If it would be helpful to your readers, you could explain the significance of this action in the text of your translation or in a footnote. Alternate translation: [And her father humiliated her by spitting in her face]
Support Reference: Symbolic Action

ULT **spitting, spit**
UST had shamed her by spitting

The author is repeating forms of the verb **spit** in order to intensify his expression of the idea that it conveys. If your language can repeat words for intensification, it would be appropriate to do that here in your translation. If not, your language may have another way of expressing the intensification. Alternate translation: [spit directly]
Support Reference: Reduplication

ULT **would she not be humiliated**
UST That would shame her

The expression **would she not be humiliated** is a passive verbal form. If your language would not use that form, you could express the idea in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: [would that not cause humiliation for her]
Support Reference: Active or Passive

ULT **She shall be shut up**
UST Similarly, now she must stay

The expression **she shall be shut up** is a passive verbal form. If your language would not use that form, you could express the idea in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. If you need to say who does the action, the context indicates that it is the Israelites. Alternate translation: [You Israelites must shut her up]
Support Reference: Active or Passive

ULT **She shall be shut up**
UST Similarly, now she must stay

The implication is that she must be excluded from the camp, not that she must be locked up. You could include this information if that would be helpful to your readers. Alternate translation: [She shall be banished]
Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

ULT **from outside to the camp**
UST outside the area where the Israelites set up their tents

The phrase **from outside to the camp** is a common expression of this culture to mean “in the area outside the camp.” If this phrase does not have that meaning in your language, you could use a comparable expression from your language that does have that meaning, or you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [in the area outside the camp]
Support Reference: Idiom

ULT **she shall be gathered**
UST she can come back to her tent

The expression **she shall be gathered** is a passive verbal form. If your language would not use that form, you could express the idea in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. See how you translated the similar construction in 11:30. Alternate translation: [And she shall return]
Support Reference: Active or Passive

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Yahweh	Yahweh
Moses	replied
humiliated	shame
gathered	she can come back to her tent

Numbers 12:15

ULT	UST
And Miriam was shut up from outside to the camp seven days, and the people did not set out until Miriam was gathered.	*So Miriam stayed outside the area where the Israelites set up their tents for seven days. The Israelites stayed there until she came back to her tent.*

ULT **And Miriam was shut up**
UST So Miriam stayed

The expression **was shut up** is a passive verbal form. If your language would not use that form, you could express the idea in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. See how you translated the similar clause in 12:14. Alternate translation: [And the Israelites shut up Miriam]
Support Reference: Active or Passive

ULT **And Miriam was shut up**
UST So Miriam stayed

The implication is that Miriam was shut up outside the camp, not that she was locked up. You could include this information if that would be helpful to your readers. See how you translated the similar clause in 12:14. Alternate translation: [And Miriam was banished]
Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

ULT **from outside to the camp**
UST outside the area where the Israelites set up their tents

The phrase **from outside to the camp** is a common expression of this culture that means "in the area away from the camp." If this phrase does not have that meaning in your language, you could use a comparable expression from your language that does have that meaning, or you could state the meaning plainly. See how you translated the similar phrase in 12:14. Alternate translation: [in the area outside the camp]
Support Reference: Idiom

ULT **until Miriam was gathered**
UST until she came back to her tent

The expression **was gathered** is a passive verbal form. If your language would not use that form, you could express the idea in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. See how you translated the similar clause in 12:14. Alternate translation: [until Miriam returned]
Support Reference: Active or Passive

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Miriam	Miriam
gathered	came back to her tent

Numbers 12:16

ULT	UST
And after, the people set out from Hazeroth, and they camped in the wilderness of Paran.	*Then the Israelites left Hazeroth. They set up their tents in the desolate area near the city of Paran.*

ULT **from Hazeroth**
UST Hazeroth

The word **Hazeroth** is the name of a place in the desert. See how you translated this name in 11:35.

Support Reference: How to Translate Names

ULT **in the wilderness of Paran**
UST in the desolate area near {the city of} Paran

The author is using the possessive form to describe a **wilderness** that is characterized by being near **Paran**. If a speaker of your language would not use the possessive form for this, you could express this idea in another way. See how you translated this phrase in 10:12. Alternate translation: [in the wilderness that was near Paran]

Support Reference: Possession

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
wilderness	in the desolate area

Numbers 13

Numbers 13 Introduction

Numbers 13 Chapter Introduction

Structure and Formatting

In this chapter, Yahweh has Moses send 12 leaders to explore the land of Canaan. They explore it from south to north and then return to the Israelites. They report that the land is good, but most of them discourage the Israelites from going there because the inhabitants are big and strong.

1. Yahweh commands Moses to send leaders to explore the land of Canaan, and Moses gives them instructions (1–20)
2. The leaders explore Canaan and gather fruit (21–25)
3. The leaders report what they have seen, and Caleb urges Israel to take the land (26–33)

Religious and Cultural Concepts in This Chapter

Exploring Canaan

In this chapter, Moses sends 12 leaders to explore the land of Canaan. Moses asks them to find out how the area is laid out, how fertile it is, what its people are like, and what their defenses are like. Moses asks for this information because it will help him plan how to take over the area.

Areas within Canaan

Moses tells the leaders to go from the Negeb in the south to the hill country, which is the central area to the north of the Negeb. When the leaders travel, they go from the wilderness of Zin in the southern part of the region to Lebo Hamath in the northern part of the region. The author also mentions Hebron, which is in the southern part of the hill country, and Wadi Eshcol, whose location is unknown. The mentioned locations indicate that the leaders did explore the entire land of Canaan, from south to north and then back south.

The Anak and the Nephils

In this chapter, the author mentions that there are “sons of the Anak” living at Hebron. These “Anakites” were tall and powerful men. The author mentions three names: Ahiman, Sheshai, and Talmai. These could be names of three tribes or, more likely, three men. At the end of the chapter, the Israelite leaders mention “Nephils,” and the author notes that the sons of Anak are a type of Nephil. The Nephils are also mentioned in Genesis 6:4, where they are described as mighty men. Scholars do not agree on exactly what the Nephils and the Anakites were. It is clear that they were tall and powerful people.

Translation Issues in This Chapter

Order of events

There are two places in this chapter where events are not narrated in sequence. First, 13:3 states that Moses sent the leaders to Canaan. Then, after a list of these leaders, 13:17 again states that Moses sent the leaders, followed by the instructions that Moses gave to them. This second statement about Moses sending them resumes the main storyline after the list. Consider how you would resume the main storyline in your language. Second, 13:21 provides a summary statement that indicates that the leaders explored the entire region of Canaan. Then, 13:22 begins a more detailed narrative of how they explored the region, which ends in 13:26. Consider how you might express a summary statement followed by a more detailed explanation.

"Go up"

Multiple times in this chapter, the author or characters use the word "up" with verbs of movement, such as "go" or "come." This language often includes elevation in its descriptions of movement. For example, going from the Negeb to the hill country is going "up" because elevation is gained during the travel. For some languages, "up" would give the wrong meaning or is not necessary.

Indirect questions

In 13:18–20, Moses uses indirect questions to tell the leaders what he wants to know about Canaan. These questions begin with "what" or "whether." The ULT and UST both use indirect questions here. However, you could use direct questions if it would be helpful in your language. Here is the ULT but with the indirect questions expressed as direct questions:

> [18] And you shall see the land. What {is} it? And the people dwelling upon it, {is} it strong or weak? {Is} it few or many? [19] And what {is} the land in which it is dwelling? {Is} it good or evil? And what {are} the cities in which it is dwelling? Is it in camps or in fortresses? [20] And what {is} the land? {Is} it fat or lean? Are there trees in it or not? And you shall strengthen yourselves, and you shall take from the fruit of the land.

Numbers 13:1

ULT	UST
And Yahweh spoke to Moses, saying,	*Yahweh told Moses,*

ULT **saying**
UST told

Here, the word **saying** introduces a direct quotation. See how you translated **saying** in 1:1.
Support Reference: Quotations and Quote Margins

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Yahweh	Yahweh
Moses	Moses

Numbers 13:2

ULT	UST
"Send for you men, and they shall explore the land of Canaan, which I am giving to the sons of Israel. One man, one man to the tribe of his fathers you shall send, every one a leader among them."	*"Have some men go to Canaan and scout it out. That is the land that I will give to you Israelites. Select one man for each ancestral tribe. Each one must be someone who helps lead his tribe."*

ULT **Send for you … you shall send**
UST Have … go … Select

The first instance of **you** (in **Send for you**) is singular and refers only to Moses. The second instance of **you** (in **you shall send**) is plural and refers to Moses and the Israelites. Use the appropriate singular or plural form of "you" in your language if your language marks that distinction.
Support Reference: Forms of 'You' — Singular

ULT **I am giving**
UST I will give

Yahweh is using the present tense **am giving** to describe something that is going to happen in the future in order to show that the event will happen soon. If it would be clearer in your language, you could use the future tense. Alternate translation: [I am about to give]
Support Reference: Irregular Use of Tenses

ULT **One man, one man to the tribe of his fathers**
UST one man for each ancestral tribe

The phrase **one man, one man to the tribe of** is a common expression of this culture that means "one man for each tribe." If this phrase does not have that meaning in your language, you could use a comparable expression from your language that does have that meaning, or you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [One man for each tribe of]
Support Reference: Idiom

ULT **his fathers**
UST ancestral

God is using the term **fathers** to mean "ancestors." If it would be helpful in your language, you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [his ancestors]
Support Reference: Metaphor

ULT **among them**
UST his tribe

The pronoun **them** refers to the people in the man's tribe. It may be helpful to clarify this for your readers. Alternate translation: [among the people of his tribe]
Support Reference: Pronouns — When to Use Them

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
land	it
Canaan	Canaan
Israel	Israelites
tribe	tribe
leader	must be someone who helps lead

Numbers 13:3

ULT	UST
And Moses sent them from the wilderness of Paran upon the mouth of Yahweh. All of them were men; they were heads of the sons of Israel.	*So Moses selected twelve men, each of whom was someone who helped lead the Israelites. He had them go to Canaan from where they had set up their tents in the desolate area near the city of Paran, just as Yahweh commanded him to do.*

ULT **heads of the sons**
UST who helped lead the Israelites

Here, **heads** represents leaders. If this meaning would not be clear in your language, you could use a comparable expression or you could state the meaning plainly. See how you translated the similar metaphor in 10:4. Alternate translation: [chiefs of]
Support Reference: Metaphor

ULT **from the wilderness of Paran**
UST from {where they had set up their tents in} the desolate area near {the city of} Paran

The author is using the possessive form to describe a **wilderness** that is near **Paran**. If a speaker of your language would not use the possessive form for this, you could express this idea in another way. See how you translated this phrase in 10:12. Alternate translation: [from the wilderness that was near Paran]
Support Reference: Possession

ULT **upon the mouth of Yahweh**
UST just as Yahweh commanded him to do

Here, **upon the mouth of Yahweh** represents what Yahweh said by using words. If it would be clearer in your language, you could state the meaning plainly. See how you translated this phrase in 9:23. Alternate translation: [according to what Yahweh commanded him]
Support Reference: Metonymy

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Moses	Moses
wilderness	from {where they had set up their tents in} the desolate area
Paran	Paran
Yahweh	Yahweh
Israel	Israelites

Numbers 13:4

ULT	UST
And these were their names: for the tribe of Reuben, Shammua, the son of Zaccur;	*Here are the names of the men and their tribes: Zaccur's son Shammua, from Reuben tribe;*

ULT **of Reuben, Shammua, the son of Zaccur**
UST Zaccur's son Shammua … Reuben

Here and in 13:5–16, all the names are names of tribes or men.
Support Reference: How to Translate Names

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
tribe	tribe
Reuben	Reuben

Numbers 13:8

ULT	UST
for the tribe of Ephraim, Hoshea, the son of Nun;	*Nun's son Hoshea, from Ephraim tribe;*

ULT **for the tribe of Ephraim**

UST from Ephraim tribe

The author assumes that readers will know that **Ephraim** was the son of Joseph, just as Manasseh was (see 13:11). You could say that explicitly if that would be helpful to your readers. Alternate translation: [for the tribe of Joseph, for the tribe of Ephraim]

Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
tribe	tribe
Ephraim	Ephraim
Hoshea	Hoshea

Numbers 13:11

ULT	UST
for the tribe of Joseph, for the tribe of Manasseh, Gaddi, the son of Susi;	*Susi's son Gaddi, from Manasseh tribe, which descends from Joseph;*

ULT **for the tribe of Joseph, for the tribe of Manasseh**

UST from Manasseh tribe, which descends from Joseph

The implication is that Manasseh was a subdivision of the larger tribe of Joseph. You could include this information if that would be helpful to your readers. Alternate translation: [for the tribe of Manasseh, which is part of the tribe of Joseph]

Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
tribe	which descends from
Joseph	Joseph
tribe	tribe
Manasseh	Manasseh

Numbers 13:16

ULT	UST
These were the names of the men whom Moses sent to explore the land; and Moses called Hoshea, the son of Nun, Joshua.	*Moses had those men go and scout Canaan out. Also, Moses had given Nun's son Hoshea the name Joshua.*

ULT and Moses called
UST Also, Moses had given … the name

The author does not state directly when **Moses** did this. It could be: (1) at some earlier time. In this case, the author includes this information here to explain the name "Hoshea" in the list. Alternate translation: [and previously Moses had called]; or (2) at this time, when he sent the leaders to explore Canaan. Alternate translation: [and at that time Moses called]
Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

ULT Hoshea, the son of Nun, Joshua
UST Nun's son Hoshea … Joshua

The name **Hoshea** means "he saved." The name **Joshua** means "Yahweh saved." If it would be helpful to your readers, you could give the meaning of these names in your translation or in a footnote. Alternate translation: [Hoshea (which means "he saved"), the son of Nun, Joshua (which means "Yahweh saved")]
Support Reference: How to Translate Names

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Moses	Moses
land	Canaan
and … called	Also … had given … the name
Hoshea	Hoshea
Joshua	Joshua

Numbers 13:17

ULT	UST
And Moses sent them to explore the land of Canaan, and he said to them, "Go up this in the Negeb, and you shall go up the hill country.	*When Moses had them go to Canaan and scout it out, he told them, "Walk directly ahead of you through the Negeb. Then, walk into the hilly area north of it.*

ULT **And Moses sent them to explore the land of Canaan, and he said**
UST When Moses had them go to Canaan and scout it out, he told

The author is describing one event, **Moses sent them to explore the land of Canaan**, after already having described it in 13:3. If it would be helpful in your language, you may wish to relate these events in a different way to avoid repetition. Alternate translation: [And at the time when Moses sent them to explore the land of Canaan, he said]
Support Reference: Order of Events

ULT **Go up … and you shall go up**
UST Walk … Then, walk into

In keeping with what is usual for his language and culture, Moses is marking travel for change in elevation. If this expression contains extra information that would not be natural to express in your language, you could shorten it. Alternate translation: [Go on … and you shall go to]
Support Reference: Making Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information Explicit

ULT **this**
UST directly ahead of you

The pronoun **this** refers to the way ahead of them through the Negeb. It may be helpful to clarify this for your readers. Alternate translation: [by the way in front of you] or [this way]
Support Reference: Pronouns — When to Use Them

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Moses	Moses
land	it
Canaan	Canaan
Negeb	Negeb

Numbers 13:18

ULT	UST
And you shall see the land, what it is; and the people dwelling upon it, whether it is strong or weak, whether it is few or many;	*Pay attention to what the area is like. Pay attention to the people who live there. Find out if they are powerful or not. Find out if there are many of them or only a few.*

ULT **what it is**

UST what … is like

The implication is that Moses is asking about the land in general: its quality, characteristics, and suitability for settlement. You could include this information if that would be helpful to your readers. Alternate translation: [what kind of place it is]

Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

ULT **whether it {is} strong or weak, whether it {is} few or many**

UST Find out if they are powerful or not. {Find out} if there are many of them or only a few

The pronoun **it** refers to the group of people living in the land. It may be helpful to clarify this for your readers. Alternate translation: [whether those people are strong or weak, whether those people are few or many]

Support Reference: Pronouns — When to Use Them

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
land	the area
whether … strong	Find out if … powerful

Numbers 13:19

ULT	UST
and what is the land in which it is dwelling, whether it is good or evil; and what are the cities in which it is dwelling, whether in camps or in fortresses;	*Pay attention to the area where they live. Find out if it is desirable or not. Pay attention to the places where they live. Find out if they live in cities with or without walls.*

ULT **whether in camps**
UST Find out if they live … without walls

Here, Moses is speaking of unprotected settlements where people live as if they were **camps**, which were temporary settlements made of tents. If this meaning would not be clear in your language, you could use a comparable expression or you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [whether in unfortified towns]
Support Reference: Metaphor

ULT **and what {is} the land**
UST Pay attention to the area

By **what is the land**, Moses means what the land looks like and how people live in it. You could indicate this explicitly in your translation if that would be helpful to your readers. Alternate translation: [and what are the features of the land]
Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

ULT **it is dwelling … it is dwelling**
UST they live … they live

The pronoun **it** refers to the people group who are living in the land that Moses told the men to explore. It may be helpful to clarify this for your readers. Alternate translation: [those people are dwelling … those people are dwelling]
Support Reference: Pronouns — When to Use Them

ULT **whether it {is} good or evil**
UST Find out if it is desirable or not

The implication is that the land could be good or bad for the people to live in. You could include this information if that would be helpful to your readers. Alternate translation: [whether it is good to live in or bad to live in]
Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
land	Pay attention to the area
good	Find out if … is desirable
evil	not
fortresses	in cities with

Numbers 13:20

ULT	UST
and what is the land, whether it is fat or lean, whether there are trees in it or not, and you shall strengthen yourselves, and you shall take from the fruit of the land." (And the days were the days of the firstfruits of the grapes.)	*Pay attention to the soil. Find out if it is fertile or not. Find out if trees grow there or not. Do your best to bring back some fruit that grows there." He said that because it was time when the first grapes became ripe.*

ULT **and what {is} the land**
UST Pay attention to the soil

The implication is that Moses wanted the spies to observe the quality of the soil itself. You could include this information if that would be helpful to your readers. Alternate translation: [and what kind of ground it is]
Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

ULT **whether it {is} fat or lean**
UST Find out if it is fertile or not

The author is speaking of **the land** as if it were a living thing that could be fat or lean. If it would be helpful in your language, you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [whether it can produce many crops or few crops]
Support Reference: Personification

ULT **and you shall strengthen yourselves, and you shall take**
UST Do your best to bring back

Here, the phrase **strengthen yourselves** could mean that: (1) the leaders should work hard to do something. Alternate translation: [and you shall try hard to take]; or (2) the leaders should be courageous. Alternate translation: [and you shall be courageous, and you shall take]
Support Reference: Idiom

ULT **from the fruit of the land**
UST some fruit that grows there

In this verse, the word **fruit** is singular in form, but it refers to all the produce of the land as a group. If it would be helpful in your language, you could use the plural form of "fruit." Alternate translation: [from the fruits of the land]
Support Reference: Collective Nouns

ULT **And the days {were} the days of the firstfruits of the grapes**
UST He said that because it was time when the first grapes became ripe

Here, the author is providing background information to help readers understand what happens next in the story. In your translation, introduce this information in a way that would be natural in your own language and culture. Alternate translation: [Now it is important to know that the days were the days of the firstfruits of the grapes]
Support Reference: Background Information

> ULT **And the days {were} the days of**
> UST He said that because it was time when

The author is using the term **days** to refer to a specific time. If it would be helpful in your language, you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [And it was the time of year for]

Support Reference: Metonymy

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
land	the soil
fruit	fruit
days	He said that because it was time when
firstfruits	the first
grapes	grapes

Numbers 13:21

ULT	UST
And they went up, and they explored the land from the wilderness of Zin up to Rehob, Lebo Hamath.	*So those men walked to Canaan and scouted it out. They did so from the desolate area of Zin in the south to the city of Rehob, which is near the city of Lebo Hamath in the north.*

ULT **And they went up**
UST So those men walked to Canaan

In keeping with what is usual for his language and culture, the author is marking travel for change in elevation. If this expression contains extra information that would not be natural to express in your language, you could shorten it. See how you expressed this idea in 13:17. Alternate translation: [And they went]

Support Reference: Making Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information Explicit

ULT **from the wilderness of Zin up to Rehob**
UST They did so from the desolate area of Zin {in the south} to the city of Rehob, which is near

The words **Zin** and **Rehob** are the names of places. **Zin** refers to a wilderness area in the southern part of the land, and **Rehob** refers to a city in the northern part of the land.

Support Reference: How to Translate Names

ULT **up to Rehob, Lebo Hamath**
UST to the city of Rehob, {which is near} the city of Lebo Hamath in the north

Here, the phrase **Lebo Hamath** could be: (1) the name of a city which is near **Rehob**. Alternate translation: [up to Rehob, near the city of Lebo Hamath]; or (2) a phrase that refers to the entrance or way to a place called **Hamath**. Alternate translation: [up to Rehob, at the entrance to Hamath]

Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
land	it
wilderness	They did so from the desolate area
Lebo Hamath	Lebo Hamath

Numbers 13:22

ULT	UST
And they went up in the Negeb, and they came as far as Hebron. And there were Ahiman, Sheshai, and Talmai, those born of the Anak. (And Hebron was built seven years to the face of Zoan, Egypt.)	*When they left the Israelites, they walked through the Negeb and arrived at the city of Hebron. People had constructed Hebron seven years before people constructed the city of Zoan, which is in Egypt. Some of the Anak people group lived near Hebron. Their names were Ahiman, Sheshai, and Talmai.*

ULT **And they went up in the Negeb**

UST When they left the Israelites, they walked through the Negeb

Here and in the following verses, the author provides the details of the travel that was summarized in 13:21. If it would be helpful to your readers, you could indicate explicitly that the events in this and the following verses happened during the time described in the previous verse. Alternate translation: [Specifically, they went up in the Negeb] or [Here is how they did that. They went up in the Negeb]

Support Reference: Order of Events

ULT **And they went up**

UST When they left the Israelites, they walked

In keeping with what is usual for his language and culture, the author is marking travel for change in elevation. If this expression contains extra information that would not be natural to express in your language, you could shorten it. See how you expressed this idea in 13:17. Alternate translation: [And they went]

Support Reference: Making Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information Explicit

ULT **were Ahiman, Sheshai, and Talmai**

UST Their names were Ahiman, Sheshai, and Talmai

Ahiman, **Sheshai**, and **Talmai** could be the names of: (1) individual men. Alternate translation: [the men named Ahiman, Sheshai, and Talmai]; or (2) clans. Alternate translation: [the clans of Ahiman, Sheshai, and Talmai]

Support Reference: How to Translate Names

ULT **And Hebron was built seven years to the face of Zoan, Egypt**

UST People had constructed Hebron seven years before people constructed the city of Zoan, which is in Egypt

Here, the author is providing background information to help readers understand what is happening in the story. In your translation, introduce this information in a way that would be natural in your own language and culture. Alternate translation: [It is important to know that Hebron was built seven years to the face of Zoan, Egypt]

Support Reference: Background Information

ULT **And Hebron was built**
UST People had constructed Hebron

The expression **was built** is a passive verbal form. If your language would not use that form, you could express the idea in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: [And its founders built Hebron]
Support Reference: Active or Passive

ULT **to the face of**
UST before people constructed

The author is using the expression **to the face of** to mean “before” or “previous to.” If it would be helpful in your language, you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [prior to]
Support Reference: Metonymy

ULT **Zoan, Egypt**
UST the city of Zoan, which is in Egypt

The words **Zoan** and **Egypt** are the names of a city and a country.
Support Reference: How to Translate Names

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Negeb	Negeb
Hebron	Hebron
those born of	Some of the Anak people group
Anak	Anak
Hebron	Hebron
years	years
Egypt	Egypt

Numbers 13:23

ULT	UST
And they came as far as Wadi Eshcol, and they cut from there a branch and one cluster of grapes, and they carried it on the carrying pole with two, and from the pomegranates and from the figs.	*Near Eshcol Stream Bed, they chopped a branch from a grapevine that had a large group of grapes on it. They attached it to a pole so that two of them could carry it. They also collected some pomegranates and figs.*

ULT **Wadi Eshcol**
UST Eshcol Stream Bed

The word **Wadi Eshcol** is the name of a place. Here "Wadi" means a valley or streambed.
Support Reference: How to Translate Names

ULT **a branch and one cluster of grapes**
UST a branch … a grapevine that had a large group of grapes on it

The phrase **branch and one cluster of grapes** expresses a single idea. The word **branch** tells more about the **cluster of grapes**. If it would be more natural in your language, you could express this meaning in a different way. Alternate translation: [a branch with one cluster of grapes]
Support Reference: Hendiadys

ULT **on the carrying pole**
UST to a pole

The author is not referring to a specific **carrying pole** that the reader knows about. He means any carrying pole. If it would be helpful to your readers, you could use an expression that would be more natural in your language. Alternate translation: [on a carrying pole]
Support Reference: Generic Noun Phrases

ULT **with two**
UST two of them

The implication is that there were two men who carried the cluster of grapes. You could include this information if that would be helpful to your readers. Alternate translation: [with two men carrying it at a time]
Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

ULT **and from the pomegranates and from the figs**
UST They also collected some pomegranates and figs

The author is leaving out some of the words that in many languages a sentence would need in order to be complete. You can supply these words from the context if that would be clearer in your language. Alternate translation: [and they also took from the pomegranates and from the figs]
Support Reference: Ellipsis

> ULT **and from the pomegranates and from the figs**
> UST They also collected some pomegranates and figs

Here, **pomegranates** and **figs** represent these fruits in general, not specific ones. If it would be helpful to your readers, you could use expressions that would be more natural in your language. Alternate translation: [and some pomegranates and some figs]

Support Reference: Generic Noun Phrases

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Wadi	Stream Bed
grapes	grapevine
carried	carry
carrying	to a pole
pomegranates	pomegranates
figs	figs

Numbers 13:24

ULT	UST
He called that place Wadi Eshcol on account of the cluster that the sons of Israel cut from there.	*They named that place Eshcol Stream Bed because there the Israelites chopped off a branch that had a large group of grapes on it. The word Eshcol means "a group of grapes."*

ULT **He called**
UST They named

See how you translated the similar form in 11:3. Here, the pronoun **He** could refer: (1) generically to anyone who used this name. Alternate translation: [People called]; or (2) to Moses. Alternate translation: [Moses called]
Support Reference: Pronouns — When to Use Them

ULT **Wadi Eshcol on account of the cluster**
UST Eshcol Stream Bed because … a branch that had a large group of grapes on it. The word Eshcol means "a group of grapes

The name **Eshcol** sounds like the Hebrew word for **cluster**. If it would be helpful to your readers, you could make that explicit in your translation or in a footnote. Alternate translation: [Wadi Eshcol (which means "Cluster Wadi") on account of the cluster]
Support Reference: How to Translate Names

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
called	They named
of the cluster	grapes
Israel	Israelites

Numbers 13:25

ULT	UST
And they returned from exploring the land at the end of 40 days,	*When they had finished scouting Canaan out, they came back to the rest of the Israelites. They had been gone for 40 days.*

ULT **And they returned**

UST they came back to the rest of the Israelites

The pronoun **they** refers to the 12 men who explored Canaan. It may be helpful to clarify this for your readers. Alternate translation: [And the 12 leaders returned]

Support Reference: Pronouns — When to Use Them

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
land	Canaan

Numbers 13:26

ULT	UST
and they went and they came to Moses and to Aaron and to all the congregation of the sons of Israel, to the wilderness of Paran at Kadesh. And they returned them and all the congregation a word, and they showed them the fruit of the land,	*When they arrived where the Israelites were at the city of Kadesh in the desolate area near the city of Paran, they met with Aaron, Moses, and the rest of the Israelite community. Then the leaders who had scouted Canaan out told Aaron, Moses, and the rest of the Israelite community what they had learned, and they showed them the grapes, pomegranates, and figs that they had gathered.*

ULT **and they went and they came**

UST When they arrived where the Israelites were … they met

It might seem that the expression **and they went and they came** contains extra information that would not be natural to express in your language. If so, you could shorten it. Alternate translation: [and they went] or [and they came]

Support Reference: Making Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information Explicit

ULT **and to all the congregation of the sons of Israel**

UST and the rest of the Israelite community

The author is using the possessive form to describe a **congregation** that is made up of **the sons of Israel**. If a speaker of your language would not use the possessive form for this, you could express this idea in another way. See how you translated this phrase in 8:9. Alternate translation: [and to the congregation that consists of all the sons of Israel]

Support Reference: Possession

ULT **to the wilderness of Paran at Kadesh**

UST at the city of Kadesh in the desolate area near {the city of} Paran

The implication is that the people of Israel were located in both the wilderness of Paran and specifically at the city of Kadesh when the scouts returned. You could include this information if that would be helpful to your readers. Alternate translation: [who were in the wilderness of Paran at Kadesh]

Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

ULT **And they returned them and all the congregation a word**

UST Then the leaders {who had scouted Canaan out} told Aaron, Moses, and the rest of the Israelite community what they had learned

The phrase **returned them and all the congregation a word** is a common expression of this culture that means “gave them all a report” or “told them what they learned.” If this phrase does not have that meaning in your language, you could use a comparable expression from your language that does have that meaning, or you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [And they told what they had learned to them and all the congregation]

Support Reference: Idiom

ULT **And they returned them … and they showed them**

UST Then the leaders {who had scouted Canaan out} told … what they had learned, and they showed them

The pronoun **they** refers to the 12 men who scouted out Canaan, the first pronoun **them** refers to Moses and Aaron, and the second pronoun **them** refers to Moses, Aaron, and the congregation. It may be helpful to clarify this for your readers. Alternate translation: [And the 12 leaders returned Moses and Aaron … and the 12 leaders showed Moses, Aaron, and the congregation]

Support Reference: Pronouns — When to Use Them

ULT **the fruit of the land**

UST the grapes, pomegranates, and figs that they had gathered

In this verse, the word **fruit** is singular in form, but it refers to all the produce as a group. If it would be helpful in your language, you could use the plural form of "fruit." See how you translated this phrase in 13:20. Alternate translation: [the fruits of]

Support Reference: Collective Nouns

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Moses	Moses
Aaron	Aaron
congregation	community
Israel	Israelite
wilderness	the desolate area
Paran	Paran
Kadesh	Kadesh
congregation	community
fruit	the grapes, pomegranates, and figs that they had gathered
land	the grapes, pomegranates, and figs that they had gathered

Numbers 13:27

ULT	UST
and they recounted to him, and they said, "We went to the land where you sent us, and indeed it is flowing with milk and honey, and this is its fruit.	*Then they told Moses in front of everyone, "We walked to the place where you told us to go. It certainly is a very fertile place! Here is the fruit it produces.*

ULT **it is flowing {with} milk and honey**
UST It … is a very fertile place

Here, the author is speaking as if the land were actually **flowing with milk and honey**. If this meaning would not be clear in your language, you could use a comparable expression or you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [it is rich and fertile] or [it is very productive]
Support Reference: Metaphor

ULT **to him**
UST Then they told Moses in front of everyone

The pronoun **him** refers to Moses. The men who explored Canaan spoke this report to Moses, but everyone else who was present also heard it. It may be helpful to clarify this for your readers. Alternate translation: [to Moses publicly]
Support Reference: Pronouns — When to Use Them

ULT **and they said**
UST Then they told Moses in front of everyone

The term **and they said** introduces a direct quotation. In your translation, use a natural way of introducing direct quotations in your language. It may not be necessary to represent this term explicitly.
Support Reference: Quotations and Quote Margins

ULT **where you sent us**
UST where you told us to go

The phrase **where you sent us** shows that "us" refers to the 12 men who explored Canaan, but not to Moses, whom they are addressing, so use the exclusive form of that word in your translation if your language marks that distinction.
Support Reference: Exclusive and Inclusive 'We'

ULT **and this {is} its fruit**
UST Here is the fruit it produces

In this verse, the word **fruit** is singular in form, but it refers to all the fruit (grapes, pomegranates, and figs) as a group. If it would be helpful in your language, you could use the plural form of "fruit." See how you translated this phrase in 13:20. Alternate translation: [and these are its fruits]
Support Reference: Collective Nouns

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
land	the place
honey	is a very fertile place
fruit	fruit

Numbers 13:28

ULT	UST
However, the people dwelling in the land are strong, and the cities are fortified very great, and also we saw those born of the Anak there.	*But the people who live there are powerful. Their cities have large walls. Also, some of the Anak people group live there.*

ULT **and the cities are fortified very great**
UST Their cities have large walls

The expression **are fortified** is a passive verbal form. If your language would not use that form, you could express the idea in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: [and they have fortified their cities very greatly]
Support Reference: Active or Passive

ULT **and also we saw**
UST Also … live

By **we saw**, the spies mean themselves but not Moses to whom they are speaking, so use the exclusive form of that word in your translation if your language marks that distinction.
Support Reference: Exclusive and Inclusive 'We'

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
land	there
are strong	are powerful
those born	some of the Anak people group
Anak	Anak

Numbers 13:29

ULT	UST
Amalek is dwelling in the land of the Negeb, and the Hittite and the Jebusite and the Amorite is dwelling in the hill country, and the Canaanite is dwelling upon the sea and upon the hand of the Jordan."	*The Amalekite people group lives in the Negeb. The Hittite people group, the Jebusite people group, and the Amorite people group live in the hilly area. The Canaanite people group lives near the Mediterranean Sea and near the Jordan River."*

ULT **Amalek is dwelling**
UST The Amalekite people group lives

Here, **Amalek** represents the Amalekite people. If it would be helpful in your language, you could use an equivalent expression or plain language. Alternate translation: [The Amalekites are dwelling]
Support Reference: Metonymy

ULT **and the Hittite and the Jebusite and the Amorite is dwelling … and the Canaanite is dwelling**
UST The Hittite people group, the Jebusite people group, and the Amorite people group live … The Canaanite people group lives

The men are not referring to specific **Hittite**, **Jebusite**, **Amorite**, and **Canaanite** people. They mean Hittites, Jebusites, Amorites, and Canaanites in general. If it would be helpful to your readers, you could use expressions that would be more natural in your language. Alternate translation: [and the Hittites and the Jebusites and the Amorites are dwelling … and the Canaanites are dwelling]
Support Reference: Generic Noun Phrases

ULT **upon the sea**
UST near the {Mediterranean} Sea

The author is using **upon the sea** as a common expression of his culture to mean "next to the sea" or "along the coast." If this phrase does not have that meaning in your language, you could use a comparable expression from your language that does have that meaning, or you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [next to the sea]
Support Reference: Idiom

ULT **and upon the hand of the Jordan**
UST and near the Jordan River

The author is using **upon the hand of the Jordan** as a common expression of his culture to mean "along the Jordan River." If this phrase does not have that meaning in your language, you could use a comparable expression from your language that does have that meaning, or you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [and along the Jordan]
Support Reference: Idiom

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Amalek	Amalekite
land	in
Negeb	Negeb
Hittite	Hittite
Jebusite	Jebusite
Amorite	Amorite
Canaanite	Canaanite
the sea	the {Mediterranean} Sea
Jordan	Jordan River

Numbers 13:30

ULT	UST
And Caleb hushed the people to Moses, and he said, "Going up, we will go up, and we will possess it, for being able, we are able against it."	*Caleb told the people who were in front of Moses to be quiet. Then he said, "We can definitely conquer Canaan! So, we should certainly walk there and take the area for ourselves."*

ULT **to Moses**
UST in front of Moses

Here, the phrase **to Moses** could mean that Caleb hushed: (1) all the people who were assembled with Moses. Alternate translation: [who were assembled before Moses]; or (2) the people who were near Moses. Alternate translation: [near Moses]
Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

ULT **Going up, we will go up, and we will possess it, for being able, we are able against it**
UST We can definitely conquer Canaan! So, we should certainly walk {there} and take the area for ourselves

If it would be more natural in your language, you could reverse the order of these phrases, since **being able, we are able against it** gives the reason for the result that **going up, we will go up, and we will possess it** describes. Alternate translation: [Being able, we are able against it. So, going up, we will go up, and we will possess it]
Support Reference: Connect — Reason-and-Result Relationship

ULT **Going up, we will go up … being able, we are able**
UST We can definitely conquer Canaan! So, we should certainly walk there

The author is repeating forms of the verbs **go up** and **able** in order to intensify his expression of the ideas that they convey. If your language can repeat words for intensification, it would be appropriate to do that here in your translation. If not, your language may have another way of expressing the intensification. Alternate translation: [We will certainly go up … for we are certainly able]
Support Reference: Reduplication

ULT **Going up, we will go up**
UST So, we should certainly walk there

In keeping with what is usual for his language and culture, the author is marking travel for change in elevation. If this expression contains extra information that would not be natural to express in your language, you could shorten it. See how you expressed the idea in 13:17. Alternate translation: [Going, we will go]
Support Reference: Making Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information Explicit

ULT **we will go up, and we will possess it … we are able**
UST We can definitely conquer Canaan! So, we should certainly walk {there} and take the area for ourselves

By **we will go up … and we will possess it … we are able**, Caleb means to include both himself and his listeners, so use the inclusive form of those words if your language marks that distinction.
Support Reference: Exclusive and Inclusive 'We'

ULT **and we will possess it … against it**
UST We can definitely conquer Canaan … and take the area for ourselves

The pronoun **it** refers to the land that the Israelites will possess and go up against. It may be helpful to clarify this for your readers. Alternate translation: [and we will possess the land … against the land]
Support Reference: Pronouns — When to Use Them

ULT **we are able against it**
UST We can definitely conquer Canaan

Caleb is using **we are able against it** as a common expression of his culture to mean "we are able to conquer it." If this phrase does not have that meaning in your language, you could use a comparable expression from your language that does have that meaning, or you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [we are able to conquer it]
Support Reference: Idiom

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Caleb	Caleb
Moses	Moses
and we will possess	and take the area for ourselves

Numbers 13:31

ULT	UST
But the men who went up with him said, "We are not able to go up against the people, for it is stronger than us."	*However, the others who had walked to Canaan with him said, "No, the people who live there are more powerful than we are. We cannot conquer them."*

ULT went up
UST had walked to Canaan

In keeping with what is usual for his language and culture, the author is marking travel for change in elevation. If this expression contains extra information that would not be natural to express in your language, you could shorten it. See how you expressed the idea in 13:17. Alternate translation: [went]
Support Reference: Making Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information Explicit

ULT We are not able to go up against the people, for it {is} stronger than us
UST No, the people {who live there} are more powerful than we are. We cannot conquer them

If it would be more natural in your language, you could reverse the order of these phrases, since **it is stronger than us** gives the reason for the result that **we are not able to go up against the people** describes. Alternate translation: [The people is stronger than us, so we are not able to go up against it]
Support Reference: Connect — Reason-and-Result Relationship

ULT We are not able … than us
UST No … than we are. We cannot conquer them

By **us**, the men who went up with Caleb mean themselves and the rest of the Israelites, so use the inclusive form of that word in your translation if your language marks that distinction.
Support Reference: Exclusive and Inclusive 'We'

ULT to go up against the people
UST the people who live there … We cannot conquer them

The spies are using **to go up against the people** as a common expression of their culture to mean "to fight against" or "to defeat." If this phrase does not have that meaning in your language, you could use a comparable expression from your language that does have that meaning, or you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [to fight against the people] or [to defeat the people]
Support Reference: Idiom

ULT it {is} stronger
UST are more powerful than we are

The pronoun **it** refers to the people of Canaan. It may be helpful to clarify this for your readers. Alternate translation: [those people are stronger]
Support Reference: Pronouns — When to Use Them

Numbers 13:32

ULT	UST
And they brought out a bad report of the land that they explored to the sons of Israel, saying, "The land through which we passed to explore it, it is a land eating the ones dwelling in it. And all the people whom we saw in the midst of it were men of size,	*Then those men told the Israelites bad things about Canaan, the area they had scouted out. They said, "The area that we scouted out is very bad for those who live there. Also, every person we saw there was very tall.*

ULT **And they brought out a bad report of the land**
UST Then those men told … bad things … the area

Here, the scouts are speaking as if a **report** were an object that could be **brought out**. If this meaning would not be clear in your language, you could use a comparable expression or you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [And they gave a bad report]
Support Reference: Metaphor

ULT **The land through which we passed to explore it, it {is} a land eating the ones dwelling in it**
UST The area that we scouted out is very bad for those who live there

It might seem that the expression **it is a land** contains extra information that would not be natural to express in your language. If so, you could shorten it. Alternate translation: [The land through which we passed to explore it eats the ones dwelling in it]
Support Reference: Making Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information Explicit

ULT **we passed**
UST we scouted out

By **we passed**, the spies mean themselves but not Moses and the other Israelites to whom they are speaking, so use the exclusive form of that word in your translation if your language marks that distinction.
Support Reference: Exclusive and Inclusive 'We'

ULT **a land eating the ones dwelling in it**
UST is very bad for those who live there

Here, the spies speak as if the land were a person that could eat the people who live there. Some scholars think this refers to a specific danger, like famine or war. However, it is recommended that you refer generally to dangers that people would experience living in the land. Alternate translation: [a land that is as dangerous as if it ate the ones dwelling in it] or [a land that is dangerous for the ones dwelling in it]
Support Reference: Personification

ULT **were men of size**
UST was very tall

The author is using the possessive form to describe **men** that are characterized by **size**. If a speaker of your language would not use the possessive form for this, you could express this idea in another way. Alternate translation: [sizable men] or [large men]
Support Reference: Possession

> ULT **were men of size**
> UST was very tall

Here the masculine term **men of** has a generic sense that includes both men and women. If it would be helpful to your readers, you could use language in your translation that is clearly inclusive of both men and women. Alternate translation: [humans of]

Support Reference: When Masculine Words Include Women

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
report	Then those men told … bad things
land	the area
Israel	Israelites

Numbers 13:33

ULT	UST
and there we saw the Nephils (the sons of Anak are from the Nephils), and we were in our eyes like the grasshoppers, and thus we were in their eyes."	*We even saw Nephils there. We felt like little bugs in comparison with them, and that is how they thought of us too." They mentioned Nephils because the descendants of Anak are Nephils.*

ULT **the sons of Anak**
UST They mentioned Nephils because the descendants of Anak

Here, the author is speaking as if the people of the tribes descended from Anak were actually his **sons**. If this meaning would not be clear in your language, you could use a comparable expression or you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [those descended from Anak]
Support Reference: Metaphor

ULT **we saw … and we were … we were**
UST We … saw … We felt like little bugs in comparison with them, and that is how they thought of us too

By **we**, the spies mean to include themselves but not Moses and the other Israelites to whom they are speaking, so use the exclusive form of that word in your language if your language marks that distinction.
Support Reference: Exclusive and Inclusive 'We'

ULT **the sons of Anak {are} from the Nephils**
UST They mentioned Nephils because the descendants of Anak are Nephils

Here, the author is providing background information to help readers understand the identity of **the sons of Anak**. He interrupts the quote to do so. In your translation, introduce this information in a way that would be natural in your own language and culture. Alternate translation: [it is important to know that the sons of Anak are from the Nephils]
Support Reference: Background Information

ULT **are from the Nephils**
UST are Nephils

Here, the phrase **from the Nephils** could mean: (1) that the sons of Anak are **Nephils**. Alternate translation: [are a type of Nephil]; or (2) that the sons of Anak are descended from **Nephils**. Alternate translation: [are descended from the Nephils]
Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

ULT **in our eyes … in their eyes**
UST We felt like little bugs in comparison with them, and that is how they thought of us too

Here, **eyes** represents what people thought or perceived about themselves. If it would be helpful in your language, you could use an equivalent expression or plain language. Alternate translation: [in our sight … in their sight] or [in our perception … in their perception]
Support Reference: Metonymy

ULT **like the grasshoppers**
UST We felt like little bugs in comparison with them

The point of this comparison is that just as **grasshoppers** are small and insignificant compared to humans, so the Israelite spies felt small and insignificant compared to the people of Canaan. If it would be helpful in your language, you could make this point explicitly. Alternate translation: [as small and insignificant as grasshoppers]

Support Reference: Simile

ULT **like the grasshoppers**
UST We felt like little bugs in comparison with them

A **grasshopper** is a kind of jumping insect. If your readers would not be familiar with what a grasshopper is, you could use the name of a similar thing that your readers would recognize, or you could use a more general term. Alternate translation: [like the small jumping insects]

Support Reference: Translate Unknowns

ULT **like the grasshoppers**
UST We felt like little bugs in comparison with them

The men are not referring to specific **grasshoppers**. They mean grasshoppers in general. If it would be helpful to your readers, you could use an expression that would be more natural in your language. Alternate translation: [like grasshoppers]

Support Reference: Generic Noun Phrases

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Nephils	Nephils
Anak	Anak
Nephils	Nephils

Numbers 14

Numbers 14 Introduction

Numbers 14 Chapter Introduction

Structure and Formatting

In this chapter, the Israelites refuse to enter Canaan. Yahweh then declares how he will punish them. When the Israelites hear this, they decide to go to Canaan after all. However, Yahweh does not help them, and they are defeated.

1. Israel refuses to enter Canaan despite Joshua and Caleb's appeal (1–12)
2. Moses asks Yahweh to forgive the people (13–19)
3. Yahweh declares that the rebellious generation will not enter the land (20–38)
4. Israel tries to enter the land without Yahweh's help and is defeated (39–45)

Religious and Cultural Concepts in This Chapter

Murmuring

In this chapter, "murmuring" refers to speaking against someone else. In this context, it means that people say that their leader is doing a bad job leading them. Consider how you would express this idea in your language.

Forgiveness and punishment

In this chapter, Moses quotes what Yahweh had previously said about himself: he both forgives and punishes. In response to Moses asking Yahweh to forgive the Israelites, that is exactly what Yahweh does. He forgives them, but he also punishes them for their disobedience. More specifically, all the people who refused to go to Canaan will die in the wilderness, but their children will enter and live in Canaan.

Translation Issues in This Chapter

"Go up"

Multiple times in this chapter, the author or characters use the word "up" or "down" with verbs of movement, such as "go" or "come." This language often includes elevation in its descriptions of movement. For example, going from the Israelite camp to the hill country is going "up" because elevation is gained during the travel. For some languages, "up" or "down" would give the wrong meaning or is not necessary.

Oath formulas

Yahweh uses several different oath formulas in this chapter. One formula includes something that the oath-taker swears by. Yahweh swears by his own life and by the fact that his glory fills

the earth. This formula indicates that what Yahweh swears is as certain as his glory and as his life. A second formula uses a conditional form but does not include what will happen if the condition is met. In these cases, the oath formula implies that something terrible will happen to the oath-taker if the condition is met. See the notes for specific cases and translation options.

Rhetorical Questions

Several times in this chapter, characters ask rhetorical questions. The characters are using the question form to express strong emotions. They do not actually want answers. See the notes for translation options.

Numbers 14:1

ULT	UST
And all the congregation lifted up, and they gave their voice, and the people wept in that night.	*During that night, all the Israelite people cried loudly.*

ULT **And all the congregation lifted up, and they gave their voice**
UST all the Israelite … cried loudly

Here, the author is speaking as if the voices of the people were objects that they could **lift up** and **give**. If this meaning would not be clear in your language, you could use a comparable expression or you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [And all the congregation made loud noises] or [And all the congregation cried out]
Support Reference: Metaphor

ULT **And all the congregation lifted up, and they gave their voice, and the people wept in that night**
UST During that night, all the Israelite people cried loudly

The clauses **And all the congregation lifted up, and they gave their voice** and **and the people wept** mean basically the same thing. The second emphasizes the meaning of the first by repeating the same idea with different words. If it would be helpful to your readers, you could combine them and express the emphasis in another way. Alternate translation: [And all the congregation wept very loudly in that night]
Support Reference: Parallelism

ULT **their voice**
UST cried loudly

In this verse, the word **voice** is singular in form, but it refers to all the Israelites as a group. If it would be helpful in your language, you could use the plural form of "voice." Alternate translation: [their voices]
Support Reference: Collective Nouns

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
congregation	the Israelite
and the people wept	people cried loudly

Numbers 14:2

ULT	UST
And all the sons of Israel murmured against Moses and against Aaron. And all the congregation said to them, "If only we died in the land of Egypt, or if only we died in this wilderness!	*Also, all the Israelites complained about Moses and Aaron. The whole Israelite community said to Moses and Aaron, "We wish that we had died in Egypt or in this desolate area!*

ULT **If only we died in the land of Egypt, or if only we died in this wilderness**
UST We wish that we had died in Egypt or in this desolate area

The Israelites are using a phrase that expresses a strong feeling, hopelessness and despair. There may be an equivalent word or phrase in your language that you can use in your translation to convey this feeling. If not, you could say what the Israelites were feeling, or you could say what made them sad. Alternate translation: [It would have been better for us to die in the land of Egypt! It would be better for us to die in this wilderness!]

Support Reference: Exclamations

ULT **If only we died in the land of Egypt, or if only we died in this wilderness**
UST We wish that we had died in Egypt or in this desolate area

It might seem that the expression **if only we died** contains extra information that would not be natural to express in your language. If so, you could shorten it. Alternate translation: [If only we died in the land of Egypt or in this wilderness!]

Support Reference: Making Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information Explicit

ULT **we died … we died**
UST we had died

By **we**, the Israelites mean to include themselves but not Moses and Aaron to whom they are speaking, so use the exclusive form of that word in your translation if your language marks that distinction.

Support Reference: Exclusive and Inclusive 'We'

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Israel	Israelite
Moses	Moses
Aaron	Aaron
congregation	community
land	in Egypt
Egypt	Egypt
wilderness	in … desolate area

Numbers 14:3

ULT	UST
And why is Yahweh bringing us to this land to fall by the sword? Our wives and our children will be for plunder. Is it not good for us to return to Egypt?"	*Yahweh has taken us to this land only so that the people who live here can slaughter us men. Then, they will capture our wives and children. It is best for us to go back to Egypt!"*

ULT **And why is Yahweh bringing us to this land to fall by the sword**
UST Yahweh has taken us to this land only so that {the people who live here} can slaughter us men

The Israelites are using the question form to express their complaint against Yahweh. If a speaker of your language would not use the question form for that purpose, you could translate this as a statement or as an exclamation. Alternate translation: [We do not like how Yahweh has brought us to this land, since we will fall by the sword.]
Support Reference: Rhetorical Question

ULT **us … Our wives and our children … for us**
UST us … our wives and children … for us

By **us … Our wives and our children … for us**, the Israelites mean themselves, their families, and others in the congregation, but excluding Moses and Aaron to whom they are speaking, so use the exclusive form of those words if your language marks that distinction.
Support Reference: Exclusive and Inclusive 'We'

ULT **to fall by the sword**
UST only so that {the people who live here} can slaughter us men

The phrase **to fall by the sword** is a common expression of this culture that means "to die in battle." If this phrase does not have that meaning in your language, you could use a comparable expression from your language that does have that meaning, or you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [to die in battle]
Support Reference: Idiom

ULT **for plunder**
UST they will capture

By **for plunder**, the Israelites mean that their families would be taken away as slaves. You could indicate this explicitly in your translation if that would be helpful to your readers. Alternate translation: [slaves]
Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

ULT **Is it not good for us to return to Egypt**
UST It is best for us to go back to Egypt

The Israelites are using the question form to make a strong statement that they believe returning to Egypt would be good for them. If a speaker of your language would not use the question form for that purpose, you could translate this as a statement or as an exclamation. Alternate translation: [It is good for us to return to Egypt.]
Support Reference: Rhetorical Question

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Yahweh	Yahweh
land	land
sword	only so that {the people who live here} can slaughter us men
plunder	they will capture
good	best
to return	to go back
Egypt	Egypt

Numbers 14:4

ULT	UST
And they said, a man to his brother, "We shall give a head, and we shall return to Egypt."	*So they said to each other, "We should choose a new leader, and he will lead us back to Egypt."*

ULT **We shall give a head**
UST We should choose a {new} leader

Here, the Israelites are speaking of appointing a leader as if they would **give a head**. If this meaning would not be clear in your language, you could use a comparable expression or you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [We shall appoint a chief]
Support Reference: Metaphor

ULT **And they said, a man to his brother**
UST So they said to each other

The phrase **a man to his brother** is a common expression of this culture that means "to one another." If this phrase does not have that meaning in your language, you could use a comparable expression from your language that does have that meaning, or you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [And they said to one another]
Support Reference: Idiom

ULT **We shall give … and we shall return**
UST We should choose … and he will lead us back

By **We**, the Israelites mean to include themselves and also the other Israelites to whom they are speaking, so use the inclusive form of that word in your language if your language marks that distinction.
Support Reference: Exclusive and Inclusive 'We'

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Egypt	Egypt

Numbers 14:5

ULT	UST
And Moses fell and Aaron on their faces to the face of all the assembly of the congregation of the sons of Israel,	*Then Aaron and Moses sorrowfully and fearfully bowed down before Yahweh in front of the whole Israelite community.*

ULT **And Moses fell and Aaron on their faces**
UST Then Aaron and Moses {sorrowfully and fearfully} bowed down before Yahweh

Falling on their faces was a symbolic action by which Moses and Aaron showed their dismay and grief at the Israelites' rebellion. If it would be helpful to your readers, you could explain the significance of this action in the text of your translation or in a footnote. Alternate translation: [And Moses lay and Aaron with their faces on the ground to show their grief] or [And Moses bowed and Aaron with their faces to the ground in sorrow]
Support Reference: Symbolic Action

ULT **And Moses fell and Aaron**
UST Then Aaron and Moses {sorrowfully and fearfully} bowed down

If it would be more natural in your language, you may want to put the information about **Aaron** with the information about **Moses**. Alternate translation: [And Moses and Aaron fell]
Support Reference: Information Structure

ULT **to the face of**
UST in front of

Here, **to the face of** represents being in front of the Israelite assembly. If it would be helpful in your language, you could use an equivalent expression or plain language. Alternate translation: [in the presence of]
Support Reference: Metonymy

ULT **all the assembly of the congregation of the sons of Israel**
UST the whole Israelite community

The author is using the possessive form to describe an **assembly** that is made up of **the congregation** that is **the sons of Israel**. If a speaker of your language would not use the possessive form for this, you could express this idea in another way. Alternate translation: [the congregation that consists of all the sons of Israel assembled together]
Support Reference: Possession

ULT **the assembly of the congregation of**
UST community

The terms **assembly** and **congregation** mean similar things. The author is using the two terms together for emphasis. If it would be clearer for your readers, you could express the emphasis with a single phrase. Alternate translation: [the congregation]
Support Reference: Doublet

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Moses	Moses
Aaron	Aaron
assembly	community
congregation	community
Israel	Israelite
And … fell … on their faces	Then … sorrowfully and fearfully bowed down before Yahweh

Numbers 14:6

ULT	UST
and Joshua, the son of Nun, and Caleb, the son of Jephunneh, from the ones exploring the land, tore their clothes,	*Nun's son Joshua and Jephunneh's son Caleb were two of the men who had scouted Canaan out. They ripped their clothing to show how sad they were.*

ULT **Nun … Jephunneh**
UST Nun's … Jephunneh's

The words **Nun** and **Jephunneh** are the names of men.
Support Reference: How to Translate Names

ULT **from the ones exploring the land**
UST were two of the men who had scouted Canaan out

The phrase **from the ones exploring the land** is a common expression of this culture that means "who were among those who explored the land." If this phrase does not have that meaning in your language, you could use a comparable expression from your language that does have that meaning, or you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [who were among those who explored the land]
Support Reference: Idiom

ULT **tore their clothes**
UST They ripped their clothing to show how sad they were

The act of tearing their clothes was a symbolic action by which Joshua and Caleb showed their extreme distress and grief over the people's unbelief. If it would be helpful to your readers, you could explain the significance of this action in the text of your translation or in a footnote. Alternate translation: [tore their clothes in sorrow] or [were so distressed that they ripped their clothes]
Support Reference: Symbolic Action

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Joshua	Joshua
Caleb	Caleb
land	Canaan

Numbers 14:7

ULT	UST
and they said to all the congregation of the sons of Israel, saying, "The land through which we passed to explore it is a very, very good land.	*They told the whole Israelite community, "The area that we scouted out is extremely good.*

ULT **saying**
UST They told

Here, the word **saying** introduces a direct quotation. See how you translated **saying** in 1:1.
Support Reference: Quotations and Quote Margins

ULT **we passed**
UST we scouted out

By **we**, Joshua and Caleb mean themselves but not the other Israelites to whom they are speaking, so use the exclusive form of that word in your translation if your language marks that distinction.
Support Reference: Exclusive and Inclusive 'We'

ULT **is a very, very good land**
UST is extremely good

The author is repeating forms of the word **very** in order to intensify his expression of the idea that it conveys. If your language can repeat words for intensification, it would be appropriate to do that here in your translation. If not, your language may have another way of expressing the intensification. Alternate translation: [an incredibly good land]
Support Reference: Reduplication

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
congregation	community
Israel	Israelite
land	The area
good	good
land	is extremely good

Numbers 14:8

ULT	UST
If Yahweh delights in us, then he will bring us to this land, and he will give it to us, a land that is flowing with milk and honey.	*We should act to please Yahweh. Then, he will lead us to Canaan and give it to us. It is a very fertile place!*

ULT **is flowing {with} milk and honey**
UST It is a very fertile place

Here, Joshua and Caleb are speaking of Canaan as if it were a land that had streams of **milk and honey** flowing through it. If this meaning would not be clear in your language, you could use a comparable expression or you could state the meaning plainly. See how you translated this clause in 13:27. Alternate translation: [is rich and fertile] or [is very productive]
Support Reference: Metaphor

ULT **If Yahweh delights in us, then he will bring us to this land**
UST We should act to please Yahweh. Then, he will lead us to Canaan

The author is describing a possible condition in which **he will bring us to this land** will take place only if **Yahweh delights in us** occurs first. Express this possible condition in a way that would be natural in your language. Alternate translation: [Suppose that Yahweh delights in us. In that case, he will bring us to this land]
Support Reference: Connect — Hypothetical Conditions

ULT **in us … us … to us**
UST We should act to please … us … to us

By **us**, Joshua and Caleb mean to include both themselves and their Israelite listeners, so use the inclusive form of that word if your language marks that distinction.
Support Reference: Exclusive and Inclusive ‘We’

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Yahweh	Yahweh
delights	We should act to please
land	Canaan
honey	It is a very fertile place

Numbers 14:9

ULT	UST
Only you shall not rebel against Yahweh, and you, you shall not fear the people of the land, for they are our bread. Their shadow turned aside from upon them, and Yahweh is with us. You shall not fear them!"	*But please, do not refuse to obey Yahweh! He acts for us. So, do not be afraid of the people who live in Canaan! There is nothing to protect them. We will defeat them as easily as we eat food. So, do not be afraid of them!"*

ULT **they {are} our bread**
UST We will defeat them as easily as we eat food

Here, Joshua and Caleb are speaking as if the Canaanites were actually **bread**. They mean that the Israelites will defeat them as easily as they eat food. If this meaning would not be clear in your language, you could use a comparable expression or you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [they are like our bread] or [we will conquer them as easily as eating bread]

Support Reference: Metaphor

ULT **Their shadow turned aside from upon them**
UST There is nothing to protect them

Here, Joshua and Caleb are speaking as if the protection the Canaanites had were actually a **shadow** that had departed from them. If this meaning would not be clear in your language, you could use a comparable expression or you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [Any protection they had is gone]

Support Reference: Metaphor

ULT **Only**
UST But please

Here the word **Only** introduces something that is very important because of the previous statement. If the connection between this statement and the previous one is not clear, you may want to use a different connecting word to show how this statement relates to what comes before it. Alternate translation: [So it is important that]

Support Reference: Connecting Words and Phrases

ULT **and you, you shall not fear the people of the land, for they {are} our bread**
UST So, do not be afraid of the people who live in Canaan … We will defeat them as easily as we eat food

If it would be more natural in your language, you could reverse the order of these phrases, since the second phrase gives the reason for the result that **you shall not fear the people of the land** describes. Alternate translation: [and because the people of the land are our bread, you, you shall not fear them]

Support Reference: Connect — Reason-and-Result Relationship

> ULT **and you, you shall not fear**
> UST So, do not be afraid

Here the author is repeating the pronoun **you** along with the verb translated as **shall not fear**, which already includes its meaning. He is doing that to emphasize that the Israelites should trust God rather than be afraid. If a speaker of your language would use explicit pronouns for the same purpose, you may want to use that construction in your translation. If not, your language may have other ways of showing that meaning here. Alternate translation: [and you shall not fear]

Support Reference: Pronouns — When to Use Them

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
rebel	do … refuse to obey
Yahweh	Yahweh
fear	afraid
land	who live in Canaan
bread	We will defeat them as easily as we eat food
Yahweh	He acts for us
fear	afraid

Numbers 14:10

ULT	UST
And all the congregation said to stone them with stones. But the glory of Yahweh appeared in the tent of meeting to all the sons of Israel.	*Then the whole Israelite community talked about killing Caleb and Joshua by throwing stones at them. However, Yahweh made himself present to all the Israelites in a glorious way at the sacred tent.*

ULT **And all the congregation said to stone them with stones**
UST Then the whole {Israelite} community talked about killing Caleb and Joshua by throwing stones at them

If it would be more natural in your language, you could express this as a direct quotation. Alternate translation: [And all the congregation said, “Stone them with stones!”]
Support Reference: Direct and Indirect Quotations

ULT **to stone them with stones**
UST about killing Caleb and Joshua by throwing stones at them

It might seem that the expression **to stone them with stones** contains extra information that would not be natural to express in your language. If so, you could shorten it. Alternate translation: [to stone them]
Support Reference: Making Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information Explicit

ULT **them**
UST at them

Here, the pronoun **them** could refer to: (1) Caleb and Joshua. Alternate translation: [them, that is, Caleb and Joshua,]; or (2) Moses and Aaron. Alternate translation: [Moses and Aaron]
Support Reference: Pronouns — When to Use Them

ULT **But the glory of Yahweh appeared**
UST However, Yahweh made himself present … in a glorious way

If your language does not use an abstract noun for the idea of **glory**, you could express the same idea in another way. Alternate translation: [But Yahweh showed himself gloriously]
Support Reference: Abstract Nouns

ULT **in the tent of meeting**
UST at the sacred tent

Here, the author could mean that Yahweh’s glory appeared: (1) at or near **the tent of meeting**. Alternate translation: [near the tent of meeting]; or (2) inside **the tent of meeting**. Alternate translation: [inside the tent of meeting]
Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
congregation	community
stone	about killing Caleb and Joshua by throwing
glory	glorious
Yahweh	Yahweh
tent of meeting	at the sacred tent
Israel	Israelites

Numbers 14:11

ULT	UST
And Yahweh said to Moses, "Until when will this people spurn me? And until when will it not believe in me, in all the signs that I have done in its midst?	*Yahweh told Moses, "I am displeased that these people keep rejecting me. I am displeased that they do not trust me, despite all the amazing things that I have performed among them.*

ULT **Until when will this people spurn me? And until when will it not believe in me, in all the signs that I have done in its midst**

UST I am displeased that these people keep rejecting me. I am displeased that they do not trust me, despite all the amazing things that I have performed among them

Yahweh is using the question form to express his anger and frustration that the people keep rejecting him and not believing in him. If a speaker of your language would not use the question form for that purpose, you could translate these questions as statements or as exclamations. Alternate translation: [This people needs to stop spurning me! And they need to stop not believing in me, in all the signs that I have done in its midst!]

Support Reference: Rhetorical Question

ULT **will it not believe … in its midst**

UST they do not trust … among them

The pronoun **it** refers to the people of Israel, and the pronoun **its** refers to the same group. In Hebrew, these pronouns are singular, even though they refer to a group of people. If it would be more natural in your language, you could use plural pronouns as in the alternate translation. Alternate translation: [will this people not believe … in their midst]

Support Reference: Pronouns — When to Use Them

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Yahweh	Yahweh
Moses	Moses
will it … believe	they do … trust
signs	the amazing things

Numbers 14:12

ULT	UST
I will strike it with the plague, and I will dispossess it, and I will make you into a nation greater and mightier than it."	*So I will kill them with a terrible disease, and they will not live in the land of Canaan. Instead, I will make your descendants a people group. They will be more numerous and more powerful than these Israelites."*

ULT I will strike it … and I will dispossess it … than it
UST So I will kill them … and they will not live in the land of Canaan … than these Israelites

The pronoun **it** refers to the Israelite people. It may be helpful to clarify this for your readers. Alternate translation: [I will strike this people … and I will dispossess them … than they]
Support Reference: Pronouns — When to Use Them

ULT I will strike it
UST So I will kill them

The implication is that Yahweh will kill the people with a plague. You could include this information if that would be helpful to your readers. See the discussion of the term "struck" in the Introduction to Numbers. Alternate translation: [I will make it die]
Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

ULT with the plague
UST with a terrible disease

Yahweh is not referring to a specific **plague**. He means an unspecified plague. If it would be helpful to your readers, you could use an expression that would be more natural in your language. Alternate translation: [with a plague]
Support Reference: Generic Noun Phrases

ULT and I will make you into a nation
UST Instead, I will make your descendants a people group

By **I will make you into a nation**, Yahweh means he will make Moses' descendants into a nation. You could indicate this explicitly in your translation if that would be helpful to your readers. Alternate translation: [and I will make your offspring into a nation]
Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
plague	with a terrible disease
dispossess	and they will not live in the land of Canaan
nation	a people group

Numbers 14:13

ULT	UST
And Moses said to Yahweh, "And Egypt shall hear, for you brought this people up with your power from its midst,	*Moses replied to Yahweh, "You powerfully took these people from Egypt. But if you do what you say, the Egyptians will learn about it,*

ULT **And Egypt shall hear**
UST the Egyptians will learn about it

If the connection between this statement and the previous one is not clear, you may want to use a different connecting word to show how this statement relates to what comes before it. Alternate translation: [But Egypt shall hear] or [Then Egypt shall hear]
Support Reference: Connecting Words and Phrases

ULT **And Egypt shall hear**
UST the Egyptians will learn about it

By **Egypt shall hear**, Moses means that the Egyptians will hear about what Yahweh has done to the Israelites. You could indicate this explicitly in your translation if that would be helpful to your readers. Alternate translation: [And Egypt shall hear if you do those things]
Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

ULT **Egypt**
UST the Egyptians

Here, **Egypt** represents the people of Egypt. If it would be helpful in your language, you could use an equivalent expression or plain language. Alternate translation: [the people of Egypt]
Support Reference: Metonymy

ULT **for you brought this people up**
UST You … took these people … But if you do what you say

The word translated as **for** indicates that what follows is a reason for what came before. Use a connector in your language that makes it clear that what follows is a reason for what came before. In this case, the Egyptians will hear because they are the ones from whom God rescued the Israelites. Alternate translation: [for they are paying attention because you brought this people up]
Support Reference: Connect — Reason-and-Result Relationship

ULT **you brought this people up**
UST You … took these people

In keeping with what is usual for his language and culture, Moses is marking travel for change in elevation. If the expression **you brought this people up** contains extra information that would not be natural to express in your language, you could shorten it. Alternate translation: [you brought this people]
Support Reference: Making Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information Explicit

> ULT **with your power**
> UST powerfully

If your language does not use an abstract noun for the idea of **power**, you could express the same idea in another way. Alternate translation: [in a powerful way]

Support Reference: Abstract Nouns

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Moses	Moses
Yahweh	Yahweh
Egypt	Egyptians

Numbers 14:14

ULT	UST
and they shall say to the one dwelling in this land. They have heard that you, Yahweh, are in the midst of this people, who appears eye in eye, you, Yahweh, and your cloud is standing over them, and in a pillar of cloud you are going before to their face by day and in a pillar of fire at night.	*and they will tell it to the people in Canaan. The people in Canaan have already learned that you, Yahweh, are present with the Israelites. The people in Canaan have learned that the Israelites can see your presence directly and that the cloud that you control is above them. The people in Canaan have learned that you lead the Israelites during the day with a cloud that looks like a column and during the night with fire that looks like a column.*

ULT **you are going before to their face**
UST you lead the Israelites

Here, Moses is speaking of Yahweh as if he were **going before** the people to show them the way. If this meaning would not be clear in your language, you could use a comparable expression or you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [you are guiding]
Support Reference: Metaphor

ULT **and they shall say**
UST and they will tell it

The implication is that they will tell others about what Yahweh had done to Israel. You could include this information if that would be helpful to your readers. Alternate translation: [and they shall tell what you did]
Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

ULT **to the one dwelling in**
UST to the people

In this verse, the word **one dwelling** is singular in form, but it refers to all inhabitants of Canaan as a group. If it would be helpful in your language, you could use the plural form of "one dwelling." Alternate translation: [to the ones dwelling]
Support Reference: Collective Nouns

ULT **who appears eye in eye, you, Yahweh**
UST The people in Canaan have learned that the Israelites can see your presence directly

Moses is using the expression **eye in eye** as a common expression of his culture to mean "face to face" or "directly." If this phrase does not have that meaning in your language, you could use a comparable expression from your language that does have that meaning, or you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [who appears face to face, you, Yahweh] or [who appears so that they can see you plainly, Yahweh]
Support Reference: Idiom

> ULT **and your cloud is standing over them**
> UST and that the cloud that you control is above them

Here Moses is speaking of the **cloud** as if it were a living thing that could stand over people. If it would be helpful in your language, you could state the meaning plainly. See how you translated the similar figures of speech in Numbers 9:17–19. Alternate translation: [and you have your cloud hover over them]

Support Reference: Personification

> ULT **and in a pillar of cloud … and in a pillar of fire**
> UST The people in Canaan have learned that … with a cloud that looks like a column … with fire that looks like a column

Moses is using the possessive form to describe a **cloud** that looks like a **pillar** and **fire** that looks like a **pillar**. If a speaker of your language would not use the possessive form for this, you could express this idea in another way. Alternate translation: [and in a cloud in the shape of a pillar … and in fire in the shape of a pillar]

Support Reference: Possession

> ULT **before to their face**
> UST the Israelites

Here, **to their face** represents being in front of the people. If it would be helpful in your language, you could use an equivalent expression or plain language. Alternate translation: [before them]

Support Reference: Metonymy

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
land	in Canaan
Yahweh	Yahweh
pillar	column
day	day

Numbers 14:15

ULT	UST
And you kill this people as one man, then the nations who heard your hearing will say, saying,	*So suppose that you kill all the Israelites at once. In that case, the people groups who have learned about you will say,*

ULT **And you kill**
UST So suppose that you kill

The word **And** introduces the "if" portion of a hypothetical statement. Moses is describing a possible condition in which the nations saying certain things will take place only if Yahweh kills all the Israelites. Express this possible condition in a way that would be natural in your language. Alternate translation: [If you kill]
Support Reference: Connect — Hypothetical Conditions

ULT **as one man**
UST at once

The point of this comparison is that just as killing **one man** is quick and complete, so would be killing all the Israelites at once. If it would be helpful in your language, you could make this point explicitly. Alternate translation: [at one time] or [as quickly as killing one man]
Support Reference: Simile

ULT **heard your hearing**
UST have learned about you

Moses is using a construction in which a verb and its object come from the same root. You may be able to use the same construction in your language to express the meaning here. Alternatively, your language may have another way of saying this. Alternate translation: [heard about you]
Support Reference: Poetry

ULT **then the nations who heard your hearing will say, saying**
UST In that case, the people groups who have learned about you will say

The term **saying** introduces a direct quotation. In your translation, use a natural way of introducing direct quotations in your language. It may not be necessary to represent the term explicitly. Alternate translation: [then the nations who heard your hearing will say]
Support Reference: Quotations and Quote Margins

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
kill	kill
nations	the people groups

Numbers 14:16

ULT	UST
‘From Yahweh not being able to bring this people to the land that he swore to them, so he slaughtered them in the wilderness.’	*‘Yahweh could not take these people into the land that he promised to give to them, so he killed them in the desolate area.’*

ULT **From Yahweh not being able to bring this people to the land that he swore to them, so he slaughtered them in the wilderness**

UST Yahweh could not take these people into the land that he promised to give to them, so he killed them in the desolate area

The word translated as **From** indicates that what follows is a reason for what comes after. Use a connector in your language that makes it clear that what follows is a reason for what comes after. Alternate translation: [‘Because Yahweh was not able to bring this people to the land that he swore to them, he slaughtered them in the wilderness’]

Support Reference: Connect — Reason-and-Result Relationship

ULT **that he swore to them**

UST that he promised to give to them

Moses is leaving out some of the words that in many languages a sentence would need in order to be complete. You can supply these words from the context if that would be clearer in your language. Alternate translation: [that he swore to hand over to them]

Support Reference: Ellipsis

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Yahweh	Yahweh
land	land
he swore	he promised to give
slaughtered	so he killed them
wilderness	in the desolate area

Numbers 14:17

ULT	UST
And now, please may the power of my Lord be great, just as you spoke, saying,	*So, I ask you to show that you are very powerful. That is what you said about yourself when you told me,*

ULT **And now**
UST So

If the connection between this statement and the previous one is not clear, you may want to use a different connecting word to show how this statement relates to what comes before it. Alternate translation: [Therefore]
Support Reference: Connecting Words and Phrases

ULT **may the power of my Lord be great**
UST you to show that you are very powerful

If your language does not use an abstract noun for the idea of **power**, you could express the same idea in another way. Alternate translation: [may my Lord act very powerfully]
Support Reference: Abstract Nouns

ULT **of my Lord**
UST you are

Even though Moses is addressing Yahweh directly, he is speaking of him in the third person as **my Lord** to show respect. If it would be helpful in your language, you could translate this in a respectful form in the second person. Alternate translation: [of you, my Lord,]
Support Reference: First, Second or Third Person

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
please	I ask
Lord	you are

Numbers 14:17-18

> ULT **saying … long of nostrils and great of covenant faithfulness, lifting up iniquity and transgression. But leaving unpunished, he will not leave unpunished, visiting iniquity of fathers upon sons, upon thirds, and upon fourths**
>
> UST when you told me … do not quickly become angry. Instead, I am faithful. I forgive people when they do what is wrong or disobey me. However, I will certainly punish {some} people. When parents do what is wrong, I will punish their children, grandchildren, and great-grandchildren

If it would be clearer in your language, you could translate this so that there is not a quotation within a quotation. Alternate translation: [saying that Yahweh is long of nostrils and great of covenant faithfulness, lifting up iniquity and transgression, and that leaving unpunished, he will not leave unpunished, counting iniquity of fathers upon sons, upon thirds, and upon fourths.]

Support Reference: Quotes within Quotes

Numbers 14:18

ULT	UST
‘Yahweh is long of nostrils and great of covenant faithfulness, lifting up iniquity and transgression. But leaving unpunished, he will not leave unpunished, visiting iniquity of fathers upon sons, upon thirds, and upon fourths.’	*‘I do not quickly become angry. Instead, I am faithful. I forgive people when they do what is wrong or disobey me. However, I will certainly punish some people. When parents do what is wrong, I will punish their children, grandchildren, and great-grandchildren.’*

ULT **lifting up iniquity and transgression**
UST I forgive people when they do what is wrong or disobey me

Here, Yahweh is speaking of forgiving sins as if a person were **lifting up** a heavy object and taking it away. If this meaning would not be clear in your language, you could use a comparable expression or you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [granting forgiveness for]
Support Reference: Metaphor

ULT **visiting iniquity of fathers upon sons, upon thirds, and upon fourths**
UST When parents do what is wrong, I will punish their children, grandchildren, and great-grandchildren

Here, Yahweh is speaking of passing down the consequences of sin as if it were **visiting iniquity** upon later generations. If this meaning would not be clear in your language, you could use a comparable expression or you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [making iniquity of fathers apply to sons, to thirds, and to fourths]
Support Reference: Metaphor

ULT **Yahweh {is} long of … he will not leave unpunished**
UST I do not quickly become angry … However, I will certainly punish {some} people

Yahweh is speaking of himself in the third person as **Yahweh**. If it would be helpful in your language, you could translate this in the first person. Alternate translation: [I, Yahweh, am … I will not leave unpunished]
Support Reference: First, Second or Third Person

ULT **long of nostrils**
UST do not quickly become angry

The phrase **long of nostrils** is a common expression of this culture that means “slow to anger” or “patient.” If this phrase does not have that meaning in your language, you could use a comparable expression from your language that does have that meaning, or you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [slow to anger] or [patient]
Support Reference: Idiom

ULT **and great of covenant faithfulness**
UST Instead, I am faithful

If your language does not use an abstract noun for the idea of **covenant faithfulness**, you could express the same idea in another way. Alternate translation: [and completely faithful to his promises]
Support Reference: Abstract Nouns

ULT **iniquity and transgression**
UST when they do what is wrong or disobey me

If your language does not use abstract nouns for the ideas of **iniquity** and **transgression**, you could express the same ideas in other ways. Alternate translation: [what people do that is evil and that breaks my laws]
Support Reference: Abstract Nouns

ULT **But leaving unpunished, he will not leave unpunished**
UST However, I will certainly punish {some} people

Yahweh is repeating forms of the verb **leave unpunished** in order to intensify his expression of the idea that it conveys. If your language can repeat words for intensification, it would be appropriate to do that here in your translation. If not, your language may have another way of expressing the intensification. Alternate translation: [But he will definitely not leave unpunished]
Support Reference: Reduplication

ULT **he will not leave unpunished**
UST However, I will certainly punish {some} people

Here, Yahweh could be implying that he **will not leave unpunished**: (1) a different group of people than the ones he forgives. Alternate translation: [he will not leave other people unpunished]; or (2) the same group of people he forgives, who will receive some punishment despite being forgiven. Alternate translation: [he will not leave them completely unpunished]
Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

ULT **iniquity of fathers**
UST When parents do what is wrong

If your language does not use an abstract noun for the idea of **iniquity**, you could express the same idea in another way. Alternate translation: [what fathers did that was evil]
Support Reference: Abstract Nouns

ULT **iniquity**
UST when they do what is wrong

Here, **iniquity** represents the punishment for wrongdoing. If it would be helpful in your language, you could use an equivalent expression or plain language. Alternate translation: [the punishment for iniquity]
Support Reference: Metonymy

ULT **upon thirds, and upon fourths**
UST grandchildren, and great-grandchildren

Yahweh assumes that readers will know that **thirds** and **fourths** refer to the third and fourth generations of descendants. You could say that explicitly if that would be helpful to your readers. Alternate translation: [upon the people of the third generation, and upon the people of the fourth generation]
Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Yahweh	I
covenant faithfulness	Instead, I am faithful
iniquity	when they do what is wrong
transgression	or disobey me
unpunished	punish

Numbers 14:19

ULT	UST
Please forgive this people for the iniquity according to the greatness of your covenant faithfulness and just as you lifted up for this people from Egypt and as far as here."	*I ask that you pardon these people for what they have done wrong. I ask that because you are very faithful and because you have been pardoning them during the whole time we traveled from Egypt to this place."*

ULT **for the iniquity**
UST for what they have done wrong

If your language does not use an abstract noun for the idea of **iniquity**, you could express the same idea in another way. Alternate translation: [for what they did that was evil]
Support Reference: Abstract Nouns

ULT **according to the greatness of your covenant faithfulness**
UST I ask that because you are very faithful

If your language does not use an abstract nouns for the ideas of **greatness** and **covenant faithfulness**, you could express the same ideas in another way. Alternate translation: [according to how much you are completely faithful to your promises]
Support Reference: Abstract Nouns

ULT **you lifted up**
UST you have been pardoning

Here, Moses is speaking of forgiveness as if it were "lifting up." You may have a comparable expression that you can use in your translation, or you could state the meaning plainly. See how you translated the similar phrase in 14:18. Alternate translation: [you granted forgiveness]
Support Reference: Metaphor

ULT **for this people from Egypt and as far as here**
UST them during the whole time we traveled from Egypt to this place

Moses is leaving out some of the words that in many languages a sentence would need in order to be complete. You can supply these words from the context if that would be clearer in your language. Alternate translation: [for this people as they came from Egypt to this place]
Support Reference: Ellipsis

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Please	I ask that
forgive	pardon
iniquity	for what they have done wrong
covenant faithfulness	faithful
Egypt	Egypt

Numbers 14:20

ULT	UST
And Yahweh said, "I have forgiven according to your word.	*Yahweh replied, "I have pardoned them as you asked.*

ULT **I have forgiven**
UST I have pardoned them

Yahweh is leaving out some of the words that in many languages a sentence would need in order to be complete. You can supply these words from the context if that would be clearer in your language. Alternate translation: [I have forgiven their iniquity]
Support Reference: Ellipsis

ULT **according to your word**
UST as you asked

Yahweh is using the term **word** to represent what Moses said by using words. If it would be clearer in your language, you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [according to your request]
Support Reference: Metonymy

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Yahweh	Yahweh
forgiven	pardoned

Numbers 14:21

ULT	UST
However, as I live and as all the land is filled with the glory of Yahweh,	*Yet, I surely live, and I surely am gloriously present throughout the whole world.*

ULT **as I live and {as} all the land is filled with the glory of Yahweh**
UST I … live, and I surely am gloriously present throughout the whole world

Following the custom of this culture, Yahweh is swearing an oath and guaranteeing it by his own life and by how **all the land is filled with the glory of Yahweh**. Alternate translation: [I swear by my life and by how all the land is filled with the glory of Yahweh]
Support Reference: Oath Formulas

ULT **and {as} all the land is filled**
UST and … surely am … present throughout the whole world

The expression **is filled** is a passive verbal form. If your language would not use that form, you could express the idea in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. If you need to say who does the action, the context indicates that it is God. Alternate translation: [as I fill all the land]
Support Reference: Active or Passive

ULT **with the glory of Yahweh**
UST I … gloriously

Yahweh is speaking of himself in the third person as **Yahweh**. If it would be helpful in your language, you could translate this in the first person. Alternate translation: [with my glory]
Support Reference: First, Second or Third Person

ULT **with the glory of Yahweh**
UST I … gloriously

If your language does not use an abstract noun for the idea of **glory**, you could express the same idea in another way. Alternate translation: [with my glorious presence]
Support Reference: Abstract Nouns

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
land	world
glory	gloriously
Yahweh	I

Numbers 14:21-22

> ULT **However, {as} I live and {as} all the land is filled with the glory of Yahweh, that all the men seeing my glory**
>
> UST Yet, I surely live, and I surely am gloriously present throughout the whole world. Just as surely, {I proclaim something about} all the people who experienced … and how I make myself gloriously present

Here, the phrase **all the land is filled with the glory of Yahweh** could be: (1) a second thing that Yahweh swears by. In this case, the phrase **that all the men** introduces what Yahweh swears. Alternate translation: [However, just as I live and just as all the land is filled with the glory of Yahweh, so all the men seeing my glory]; or (2) what Yahweh swears. In this case, the phrase **that all the men** introduces the reason for what Yahweh says in 14:23. Alternate translation: [However, as I live, so all the land shall be filled with the glory of Yahweh. Because all the men saw my glory]

Support Reference: Information Structure

Numbers 14:22

ULT	UST
that all the men seeing my glory and my signs that I did in Egypt and in the wilderness, and they tested me this ten times, and they did not hear my voice,	*Just as surely, I proclaim something about all the people who experienced the amazing things that I performed in Egypt and in the desolate area and how I make myself gloriously present. Those people provoked me many times and did not do what I said.*

ULT **the men**
UST the people

Here the masculine term **men** has a generic sense that includes both men and women. If it would be helpful to your readers, you could use language in your translation that is clearly inclusive of both men and women. Alternate translation: [the men and women]
Support Reference: When Masculine Words Include Women

ULT **my glory**
UST and how I make myself gloriously present

If your language does not use an abstract noun for the idea of **glory**, you could express the same idea in another way. Alternate translation: [how glorious I am]
Support Reference: Abstract Nouns

ULT **this ten times**
UST Those people … many times

Here, the phrase **ten times** could refer to: (1) many times, with **ten** standing for a significant number of **times**. Alternate translation: [these many times]; or (2) **ten** specific **times**. Alternate translation: [these ten individual times]
Support Reference: Idiom

ULT **this**
UST Those people

The pronoun **this** refers to the **ten times** when the Israelites tested God. It may be helpful to clarify this for your readers. Alternate translation: [these]
Support Reference: Pronouns — When to Use Them

ULT **my voice**
UST do what I said

Here, **my voice** represents what Yahweh told them. If it would be helpful in your language, you could use an equivalent expression or plain language. Alternate translation: [what I told them]
Support Reference: Metonymy

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
glory	and how I make myself gloriously present
signs	the amazing things
Egypt	Egypt

Numbers 14:23

ULT	UST
if they see the land that I swore to their fathers. And all the ones spurning me will not see it.	*Because of that, I proclaim that none of them will experience the land that I promised their ancestors that I would give to their descendants. Indeed, no one who rejected me will experience that land.*

ULT **will not see it**

UST Indeed, no one who rejected me will experience that land

Here, Yahweh is speaking of seeing the land to mean entering and experiencing it personally. If this meaning would not be clear in your language, you could use a comparable expression or you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [will not enter it] or [will not live in it]

Support Reference: Metaphor

ULT **if they see the land that I swore to their fathers**

UST Because of that, {I proclaim that} none of them will experience the land that I promised their ancestors that I would give to their descendants

Following the custom of this culture, Yahweh is swearing an oath by stating the first part of a condition (**if they see the land that I swore to their fathers**) but not the second part ("then"). If it would be helpful to your readers, you could explicitly state the second part of this condition. Alternate translation: [if they see the land that I swore to their fathers, may I strike myself dead]

Support Reference: Oath Formulas

ULT **that I swore to their fathers**

UST that I promised their ancestors that I would give to their descendants

Yahweh is leaving out some of the words that in many languages a sentence would need in order to be complete. You can supply these words from the context if that would be clearer in your language. See how you translated the similar clause in verse 16. Alternate translation: [that I swore to hand over to their fathers]

Support Reference: Ellipsis

ULT **to their fathers**

UST their ancestors that I would give to their descendants

Yahweh is using the term **fathers** to mean "ancestors." If it would be helpful in your language, you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [to their predecessors]

Support Reference: Metaphor

ULT **And all**

UST Indeed, no one who rejected me

Here the word **And** introduces a restatement that affirms the oath. If the connection between this statement and the previous one is not clear, you may want to use a different connecting word to show how this statement relates to what comes before it. Alternate translation: [In the end, all]

Support Reference: Connecting Words and Phrases

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
land	land
I swore	I promised

Numbers 14:24

ULT	UST
But my servant Caleb, because another spirit was with him, and he filled after me, so I will bring him to the land where he went, and his seed will possess it.	*However, Caleb, who serves me, is different from those people. He has obeyed me completely. Because of that, I will take him into the land that he scouted out. Some of it will belong to his descendants.*

ULT **because another spirit was with him**
UST is different from those people

Here, Yahweh is speaking of Caleb's attitude and character as if it were a **spirit** that was with him. If this meaning would not be clear in your language, you could use a comparable expression or you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [because he had a different attitude]
Support Reference: Metaphor

ULT **and he filled after me**
UST He has obeyed me completely

Here, Yahweh is speaking of Caleb's faithfulness as if it were physically filling up the space behind Yahweh. If this meaning would not be clear in your language, you could use a comparable expression or you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [and he was fully obedient to me] or [he was completely loyal to me]
Support Reference: Metaphor

ULT **and his seed**
UST his descendants

Here, Yahweh is speaking of Caleb's descendants as if they were actually his **seed**. If this meaning would not be clear in your language, you could use a comparable expression or you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [and his offspring]
Support Reference: Metaphor

ULT **so I will bring him**
UST Because of that, I will take him

In a context such as this, your language might say "take" instead of **bring**. Alternate translation: [so I will take him]
Support Reference: Go and Come

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
servant	serves
Caleb	Caleb
spirit	is different from those people
land	land
seed	his descendants
possess	Some of it will belong to

Numbers 14:25

ULT	UST
And the Amalekite and the Canaanite are dwelling in the valley. Tomorrow turn and set out for you to the wilderness, the way of the Sea of Reeds."	*Now the Amalekite people group and the Canaanite people group live in the nearby valley. So, tomorrow you and the Israelites must turn around and leave this place and walk to the desolate area. You must walk on the road to the Sea of Reeds."*

ULT **And the Amalekite and the Canaanite are dwelling in the valley**
UST Now the Amalekite people group and the Canaanite people group live in the {nearby} valley

The sentence **And the Amalekite and the Canaanite are dwelling in the valley** could be: (1) a reason why the Israelites must go back to the wilderness. Alternate translation: [Now here is why you travel as I command: the Amalekite and the Canaanite are dwelling in the valley.]; or (2) a description of the area that Caleb's offspring will inherit. Alternate translation: [His seed will possess a valley where the Amalekite and the Canaanite are dwelling]; or (3) an explanation that the author has included inside the quote. Alternate translation: [(It is important to know that the Amalekite and the Canaanite are dwelling in the valley.)]
Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

ULT **And the Amalekite and the Canaanite**
UST Now the Amalekite people group and the Canaanite people group

Here, **the Amalekite** and **the Canaanite** represent Amalekites and Canaanites in general, not specific individuals. If it would be helpful to your readers, you could use expressions that would be more natural in your language. Alternate translation: [And the Amalekites and the Canaanites]
Support Reference: Generic Noun Phrases

ULT **in the valley**
UST in the {nearby} valley

Here, the phrase **the valley** could refer to: (1) a specific, nearby valley. Alternate translation: [in the valley near here]; or (2) many valleys in the region. Alternate translation: [in the valleys]
Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

ULT **turn and set out for you**
UST you and the Israelites must turn around and leave

The word **you** is plural here because Yahweh is addressing the Israelites, so use the plural form in your translation if your language marks that distinction.
Support Reference: Forms of 'You' — Singular

ULT **and set out for you**
UST you and the Israelites … and leave

It might seem that the expression **for you** contains extra information that would not be natural to express in your language. If so, you could shorten it. Alternate translation: [and set out]
Support Reference: Making Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information Explicit

> ULT **the way of the Sea of Reeds**
> UST and walk … You must walk on the road to the Sea of Reeds

Yahweh is using the possessive form to describe a **way** that leads to **the Sea of Reeds**. This may refer to a well-known road. If a speaker of your language would not use the possessive form for this, you could express this idea in another way. Alternate translation: [the way that leads to the Sea of Reeds]

Support Reference: Possession

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Amalekite	Amalekite
Canaanite	Canaanite
wilderness	this place … to the desolate area
Sea of Reeds	Sea of Reeds

Numbers 14:27

ULT	UST
"Until when to this evil congregation, that they are murmuring against me? I have heard the murmurings of the sons of Israel, which they are murmuring against me.	*"I have often listened to these Israelites complain about me. I am displeased that this wicked community keeps doing that!*

ULT **Until when to this evil congregation, that they are murmuring against me? I have heard the murmurings of the sons of Israel, which they are murmuring against me**
UST I have {often} listened to these Israelites complain about me. I am displeased that this wicked community keeps doing that

If it would be more natural in your language, you may want to put the information about Yahweh hearing the complaints of the Israelites before his question about how long he must endure **this evil congregation, that they are murmuring against me**. Alternate translation: [I have heard the murmurings of the sons of Israel, which they are murmuring against me. Until when to this evil congregation, that they are murmuring against me?]
Support Reference: Information Structure

ULT **Until when to this evil congregation, that they are murmuring against me**
UST these Israelites complain about me. I am displeased that this wicked community keeps doing that

Yahweh is using the question form to express his frustration with the Israelites' constant complaining. If a speaker of your language would not use the question form for that purpose, you could translate this as a statement or as an exclamation. Alternate translation: [This evil congregation needs to stop murmuring against me!]
Support Reference: Rhetorical Question

ULT **Until when to this evil congregation, that they are murmuring**
UST these Israelites complain … I am displeased that this wicked community keeps doing that

Yahweh is leaving out some of the words that in many languages a sentence would need in order to be complete. You can supply these words from the context if that would be clearer in your language. Alternate translation: [Until when will this evil congregation escape punishment, for they are murmuring]
Support Reference: Ellipsis

ULT **the murmurings of the sons of Israel, which they are murmuring against me**
UST these Israelites complain about me

The term **murmurings** and the phrase **they are murmuring** come from the same root word. You may be able to use the same construction in your language to express the meaning here. Alternatively, your language may have another way of saying this. Alternate translation: [what the sons of Israel are murmuring against me]
Support Reference: Poetry

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
evil	wicked
congregation	community
Israel	Israelites

Numbers 14:28

ULT	UST
Say to them, ‘As I live—the declaration of Yahweh—if not just as you spoke in my ears, thus I will do to you:	*So tell them, ‘Here is what I, Yahweh, say: I surely live. Just as surely, I will make you experience exactly what you said to me.*

ULT **Say to them, ‘{As} I live—the declaration of Yahweh—if not just as you spoke in my ears, thus I will do to you**
UST So tell them, ‘Here is what I, Yahweh, say: I surely live. Just as surely, I will make you experience exactly what you said to me

If it would be clearer in your language, you could translate this so that there is not a quotation within a quotation. Alternate translation: [Say to them that as I live—the declaration of Yahweh—if not just as they spoke in my ears, thus I will do to them]
Support Reference: Quotes within Quotes

ULT **Say**
UST So tell

The word **Say** is singular here because Yahweh is speaking only to Moses. So use the singular form in your translation if your language marks that distinction.
Support Reference: Forms of ‘You’ — Singular

ULT **As I live**
UST I surely live

Following the custom of this culture, Yahweh is swearing an oath and guaranteeing it by something that he holds sacred: his life. For another example of this kind of oath, see verse 21. Alternate translation: [I swear by my life]
Support Reference: Oath Formulas

ULT **As I live—the declaration of Yahweh—if not**
UST Here is what I, Yahweh, say: I surely live. Just as surely

If it would be more natural in your language, you may want to put **the declaration of Yahweh** before the oath rather than interrupting the oath. Alternate translation: [This is the declaration of Yahweh: As I live, if not]
Support Reference: Information Structure

ULT **if not just as you spoke in my ears, thus I will do to you**
UST Just as surely, I will make you experience exactly what you said to me

Following the custom of this culture, Yahweh is swearing an oath by stating the first part of a condition (**if not just as you spoke in my ears, thus I will do to you**) but not the second part (“then”). If it would be helpful to your readers, you could explicitly state the second part of this condition. Alternate translation: [if I do not do to you exactly what you spoke in my ears, may I strike myself dead]
Support Reference: Oath Formulas

> ULT **in my ears**
> UST to me

Yahweh is using the term **in my ears** to mean hearing. If it would be helpful in your language, you could state the meaning plainly. See how you translated the similar phrase in 11:1.
Alternate translation: [while I could hear]

Support Reference: Metonymy

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Yahweh	Yahweh

Numbers 14:29

ULT	UST
In this wilderness your corpses will fall and all your counted ones according to all your number, from a son of 20 years and upward, who murmured against me;	*Everyone who complained about me will die in this desolate area. That includes all the men who were at least 20 years old whom Moses, Aaron, and the 12 leaders listed.*

ULT **In this wilderness your corpses will fall and all your counted ones according to all your number, from a son of 20 years and upward, who murmured against me**
UST Everyone who complained about me will die in this desolate area. That includes all the men who were at least 20 years old whom {Moses, Aaron, and the 12 leaders} listed

If it would be clearer in your language, you could translate this so that there is not a quotation within a quotation. Alternate translation: [In this wilderness their corpses will fall and all their counted ones according to all their number, from a son of 20 years and upward, who murmured against me]
Support Reference: Quotes within Quotes

ULT **your corpses will fall**
UST will die

Yahweh is using **your corpses will fall** as a common expression of this culture to mean "you will die." If this phrase does not have that meaning in your language, you could use a comparable expression from your language that does have that meaning, or you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [you will experience death]
Support Reference: Idiom

ULT **will fall and all**
UST will die … That includes all

Here the word **and** introduces an explanation. If the connection between this statement and the previous one is not clear, you may want to use a different connecting word to show how this statement relates to what comes before it. Alternate translation: [will fall, that is, all]
Support Reference: Connecting Words and Phrases

ULT **and all your counted ones**
UST That includes all the men … whom {Moses, Aaron, and the 12 leaders} listed

The expression **counted ones** is a passive verbal form. If your language would not use that form, you could express the idea in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. If you need to say who does the action, the context indicates that it is the Israelite leaders. See how you translated the similar phrase in 2:4. Alternate translation: [and all of you whom your leaders counted]
Support Reference: Active or Passive

ULT **from a son of 20 years and upward**
UST who were at least 20 years old

The phrase **from a son of 20 years and upward** is a common expression of this culture that means “those who were 20 years old or older.” If this phrase does not have that meaning in your language, you could use a comparable expression from your language that does have that meaning, or you could state the meaning plainly. See how you translated this phrase in 1:3. Alternate translation: [those who were 20 years old or older]

Support Reference: Idiom

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
wilderness	in … desolate area
years	years

Numbers 14:30

ULT	UST
if you go to the land that I have lifted up my hand to make you dwell in it, except Caleb, the son of Jephunneh, and Joshua, the son of Nun,	*You will certainly not enter the land that I solemnly promised to give to you. Only Jephunneh's son Caleb, Nun's son Joshua,*

ULT **if you go to the land that I have lifted up my hand to make you dwell in it, except Caleb, the son of Jephunneh, and Joshua, the son of Nun**

UST You will certainly not enter the land that I solemnly promised to give to you. Only Jephunneh's son Caleb, Nun's son Joshua

If you decided in the previous verse to translate this quotation in such a way that there would not be a quotation within a quotation, you can continue doing that here. Alternate translation: [if they go to the land that I have lifted up my hand to make them dwell in it, except Caleb, the son of Jephunneh, and Joshua, the son of Nun]

Support Reference: Quotes within Quotes

ULT **if you go to the land that I have lifted up my hand to make you dwell in it**

UST You will certainly not enter the land that I solemnly promised to give to you

Following the custom of this culture, Yahweh is swearing an oath by stating the first part of a condition (**if you go to the land that I have lifted up my hand to make you dwell in it**) but not the second part ("then"). If it would be helpful to your readers, you could explicitly state the second part of this condition. Alternate translation: [may I strike myself dead if you go to the land that I have lifted up my hand to make you dwell in it]

Support Reference: Oath Formulas

ULT **I have lifted up my hand**

UST I solemnly promised

The expression **lifted up my hand** was a symbolic action by which Yahweh showed that he was making a solemn oath or promise. If it would be helpful to your readers, you could explain the significance of this action in the text of your translation or in a footnote. Alternate translation: [I have sworn by lifting up my hand]

Support Reference: Symbolic Action

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
land	land
Caleb	Caleb
Joshua	Joshua

Numbers 14:30-31

> ULT **if you go to the land that I have lifted up my hand to make you dwell in it, except Caleb, the son of Jephunneh, and Joshua, the son of Nun, and your children whom you said will be for plunder**
>
> UST You will certainly not enter the land that I solemnly promised to give to you. Only Jephunneh's son Caleb, Nun's son Joshua, and your children {will enter that land}. Those are the very children whom you said your enemies would capture

If, in your language, it would appear that Yahweh was making a statement here and then contradicting it, you could reverse the order of the clauses so that the exception is stated first and then the larger group is named second. If you do, you may need to combine 14:30 and 14:31. Alternate translation: [except for Caleb, the son of Jephunneh, and Joshua, the son of Nun, and your children whom you said will be for plunder, if you go to the land that I have lifted up my hand to make you dwell in it]

Support Reference: Connect — Exception Clauses

Numbers 14:31

ULT	UST
and your children whom you said will be for plunder. And I will bring them, and they will know the land that you rejected.	*and your children will enter that land. Those are the very children whom you said your enemies would capture. Those are the people I will take to the land that you refused to enter, and they will experience it.*

ULT **and your children whom you said will be for plunder. And I will bring them, and they will know the land that you rejected**

UST and your children {will enter that land}. Those are the very children whom you said your enemies would capture. Those are the people I will take to the land that you refused to enter, and they will experience it

If you decided in the previous verse to translate this quotation in such a way that there would not be a quotation within a quotation, you can continue doing that here. Alternate translation: [and their children whom they said will be for plunder. And I will bring those children, and they will know the land that their parents rejected]

Support Reference: Quotes within Quotes

ULT **for plunder**

UST your enemies would capture

The implication is that some people had said the Israelite children would be taken as plunder or slaves by the Canaanites. You could include this information if that would be helpful to your readers. See how you translated the similar phrase in verse 3. Alternate translation: [slaves]

Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

---

ULT **whom you said will be for plunder**

UST Those are the very children whom you said your enemies would capture

If it would be more natural in your language, you could express this as a direct quotation. Alternate translation: [about whom you said, “They will be for plunder.”]

Support Reference: Direct and Indirect Quotations

ULT **And I will bring them**

UST Those are the people I will take to

By **I will bring them**, Yahweh means he will bring them to the land of Canaan. You could indicate this explicitly in your translation if that would be helpful to your readers. Alternate translation: [And I will bring them to Canaan]

Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

---

ULT **And I will bring them**

UST Those are the people I will take to

In a context such as this, your language might say “take” instead of **bring**. Alternate translation: [And I will take them]

Support Reference: Go and Come

> ULT **and they will know**
> UST and they will experience it

Here, **know** represents experiencing and being familiar with the land. If it would be helpful in your language, you could use an equivalent expression or plain language. Alternate translation: [and they will live in] or [and they will enjoy]

Support Reference: Metonymy

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
plunder	your enemies would capture
know	and they will experience it
land	land
rejected	you refused to enter

Numbers 14:32

ULT	UST
And you, your corpses will fall in this wilderness,	*But as for you, you will die in this desolate area.*

ULT **And you, your corpses will fall in this wilderness**
UST But as for you, you will die in this desolate area

If you decided in the previous verse to translate this quotation in such a way that there would not be a quotation within a quotation, you can continue doing that here. Alternate translation: [And they, their corpses will fall in this wilderness]
Support Reference: Quotes within Quotes

ULT **And you, your corpses**
UST But as for you

Yahweh is stating the pronoun **you** separately, even though the phrase translated as **your corpses** already includes this meaning. He is doing that to transition clearly from speaking about the children of the Israelites to the Israelites themselves. If a speaker of your language would use an explicit pronoun for the same purpose, you may want to use that construction in your translation. If not, your language may have other ways of showing the meaning here. Alternate translation: [But concerning you, your corpses]
Support Reference: Pronouns — When to Use Them

ULT **And you, your corpses will fall**
UST But as for you, you will die

Yahweh is using **your corpses will fall** as a common expression of this culture to mean "you will die." If this phrase does not have that meaning in your language, you could use a comparable expression from your language that does have that meaning, or you could state the meaning plainly. See how you translated this phrase in verse 29. Alternate translation: [And you, you will experience death]
Support Reference: Idiom

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
wilderness	in … desolate area

Numbers 14:33

ULT	UST
and your sons will be shepherds in the wilderness 40 years, and they will lift up your fornications until the finishing of your corpses in the wilderness.	*Your children will wander in this desolate area as herders for about forty years. Until all of you die in this desolate area, they will suffer because you did not faithfully obey me.*

ULT **your fornications**
UST because you did not faithfully obey me

Here, Yahweh is speaking of the Israelites' unfaithfulness to him as if it were sexual unfaithfulness (**fornications**). If this meaning would not be clear in your language, you could use a comparable expression or you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [your faithlessness]
Support Reference: Metaphor

ULT **and they will lift up your fornications**
UST they will suffer because you did not faithfully obey me

Here, Yahweh is speaking of the Israelites' **fornications** as if they were a burden that their children would carry. This refers to the consequences of their unfaithfulness to Yahweh that their children would experience. If this meaning would not be clear in your language, you could use a comparable expression or you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [and they will be punished for your fornications] or [they will bear the penalty of your fornications]
Support Reference: Metaphor

ULT **and your sons will be shepherds in the wilderness 40 years, and they will lift up your fornications until the finishing of your corpses in the wilderness**
UST Your children will {wander} in this desolate area as herders for {about} forty years. Until all of you die in this desolate area, they will suffer because you did not faithfully obey me

If you decided in the previous verse to translate this quotation in such a way that there would not be a quotation within a quotation, you can continue doing that here. Alternate translation: [and their sons will be shepherds in the wilderness 40 years, and their sons will lift up their fornications until the finishing of their corpses in the wilderness]
Support Reference: Quotes within Quotes

ULT **and your sons**
UST Your children

Here the masculine term **sons** has a generic sense that includes both men and women. If it would be helpful to your readers, you could use language in your translation that is clearly inclusive of both men and women. Alternate translation: [and your sons and daughters]
Support Reference: When Masculine Words Include Women

ULT **will be shepherds**
UST will wander … as herders

The implication is that the sons will wander from place to place in the wilderness as they care for their flocks. You could include this information if that would be helpful to your readers. Alternate translation: [will be shepherds who roam]
Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

ULT **until the finishing of your corpses**
UST Until all of you die

The phrase **until the finishing of your corpses** is a common expression of this culture that means "until the last one of you has died." If this phrase does not have that meaning in your language, you could use a comparable expression from your language that does have that meaning, or you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [until the last one of you experiences death]
Support Reference: Idiom

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
shepherds	herders
wilderness	in this desolate area
years	years
fornications	because you did not faithfully obey me
wilderness	in this desolate area

Numbers 14:34

ULT	UST
By the number of the days that you explored the land, 40 days, a day for the year, a day for the year, you will lift up your iniquities 40 years. And you will know my opposition.'	*I will punish you for what you did wrong for forty years. That is one year for each of the forty days that the 12 leaders scouted Canaan out. You will experience what it is like to have me as an enemy.*

ULT **you will lift up your iniquities**
UST I will punish you for what you did wrong

Here, Yahweh is speaking as if **iniquities** were a physical burden that the Israelites could lift up. If this meaning would not be clear in your language, you could use a comparable expression or you could state the meaning plainly. See how you translated the similar clause in verse 33. Alternate translation: [you will be punished for your iniquities] or [you will bear the penalty of your iniquities]
Support Reference: Metaphor

ULT **By the number of the days that you explored the land, 40 days, a day for the year, a day for the year, you will lift up your iniquities 40 years. And you will know my opposition**
UST I will punish you for what you did wrong for forty years. That is one year for each of the forty days that the 12 leaders scouted Canaan out. You will experience what it is like to have me as an enemy

If it would be clearer in your language, you could translate this so that there is not a quotation within a quotation. Alternate translation: [By the number of the days that they explored the land, 40 days, a day for the year, a day for the year, they will lift up their iniquities 40 years. And they will know my opposition.]
Support Reference: Quotes within Quotes

ULT **a day for the year, a day for the year**
UST That is one year for each

Yahweh is using the common expression of this culture **a day for the year, a day for the year** to mean "one year for each day." If this phrase does not have that meaning in your language, you could use a comparable expression from your language that does have that meaning, or you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [one day to one year] or [one year for each day]
Support Reference: Idiom

ULT **your iniquities**
UST what you did wrong

If your language does not use abstract nouns for the idea of **iniquities**, you could express the same idea in another way. Alternate translation: [what you did that was evil]
Support Reference: Abstract Nouns

ULT **my opposition**
UST what it is like to have me as an enemy

Here, the word translated **opposition** could refer to: (1) enmity. Alternate translation: [my enmity]; or (2) displeasure. Alternate translation: [my displeasure]; or (3) absence. Alternate translation: [my absence]
Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

ULT **my opposition**
UST what it is like to have me as an enemy

If your language does not use an abstract noun for the idea of **opposition**, you could express the same idea in another way. Alternate translation: [what it is like for me to oppose you]
Support Reference: Abstract Nouns

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
land	Canaan
iniquities	what you did wrong
know	You will experience

Numbers 14:35

ULT	UST
I, Yahweh, have spoken. If I do not do this to all this evil congregation, the ones congregating against me. In this wilderness they will finish, and there they will die."	*This will certainly happen because I, Yahweh, have declared it! I will certainly carry out everything I have said about this wicked community that gathers together to oppose me. They will never leave this desolate area. In fact, they will die here!'"*

ULT **I, Yahweh, have spoken**

UST This will certainly happen because I, Yahweh, have declared it

The implication is that when Yahweh speaks something, it will certainly happen. You could include this information if that would be helpful to your readers. Alternate translation: [I, Yahweh, have spoken, so it will happen]

Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

ULT **If I do not do this to all this evil congregation, the ones congregating against me**

UST I will certainly carry out everything I have said about this wicked community that gathers together to oppose me

Following the custom of this culture, Yahweh is swearing an oath by stating the first part of a condition (**if I do not do this to all this evil congregation, the ones congregating against me**) but not the second part ("then"). If it would be helpful to your readers, you could explicitly state the second part of this condition. Alternate translation: [If I do not do this to all this evil congregation, the ones congregating against me, may I strike myself dead]

Support Reference: Oath Formulas

ULT **this**

UST I have said about

Here, the pronoun **this** could refer to: (1) what Yahweh has declared in the previous verses. Alternate translation: [those things]; or (2) what he says at the end of this verse. Alternate translation: [what I am about to say]

Support Reference: Pronouns — When to Use Them

ULT **In this wilderness they will finish, and there they will die**

UST They will never leave this desolate area. In fact, they will die here

These two phrases **In this wilderness they will finish** and **there they will die** mean basically the same thing. The second emphasizes the meaning of the first by repeating the same idea with different words. If it would be helpful to your readers, you could combine them and express the emphasis in another way. Alternate translation: [In this wilderness they will end their lives and die]

Support Reference: Parallelism

> ULT **they will finish**
> UST They will never leave

Yahweh is using **they will finish** as a common expression of his culture to mean “they will die.” If this phrase does not have that meaning in your language, you could use a comparable expression from your language that does have that meaning, or you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [they will end their lives] or [they will experience death]

Support Reference: Idiom

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Yahweh	Yahweh
evil	wicked
congregation	community
wilderness	desolate area

Numbers 14:36

ULT	UST
And the men whom Moses sent to explore the land and returned and made all the congregation murmur against him by bringing out a bad report against the land,	*As for ten of the leaders whom Moses told to scout out the land of Canaan, they had come back and told bad things about Canaan. What they did caused the Israelite community to complain about Moses.*

ULT **by bringing out a bad report**
UST and told bad things

Here, the author is speaking as if words were actually something that could be **brought out**, like items that can be carried. If this meaning would not be clear in your language, you could use a comparable expression or you could state the meaning plainly. See how you translated the similar clause in chapter 13:32. Alternate translation: [by giving a bad report]
Support Reference: Metaphor

ULT **against him**
UST about Moses

Here, the pronoun **him** could refer to: (1) Moses. Alternate translation: [against Moses]; or (2) Yahweh. Alternate translation: [against Yahweh]
Support Reference: Pronouns — When to Use Them

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Moses	Moses
land	land
congregation	community
report	bad things

Numbers 14:37

ULT	UST
and they died, the men bringing out an evil bad report of the land, in the plague to the face of Yahweh.	*So, a terrible disease killed those men in Yahweh's presence.*

ULT **bringing out an evil bad report of the land**
UST a terrible disease … those men

Here, the author is speaking as if words were actually something that could be brought out, like items that can be carried. See how you translated the similar clause in verse 36. If this meaning would not be clear in your language, you could use a comparable expression or you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [giving an evil bad report of]
Support Reference: Metaphor

ULT **and they died, the men bringing out an evil bad report of the land**
UST So, a terrible disease killed those men

It might seem that the expression **the men bringing out an evil bad report of the land** contains extra information that would not be natural to express in your language. If so, you could shorten it. Alternate translation: [and those men died]
Support Reference: Making Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information Explicit

ULT **and they died**
UST So … killed

If the connection between this statement and the previous one is not clear, you may want to use a different connecting word to show how this statement relates to what comes before it. Alternate translation: [also they died] or [they died]
Support Reference: Connecting Words and Phrases

ULT **in the plague to the face of Yahweh**
UST a terrible disease … in Yahweh's presence

The implication is that Yahweh sent the **plague** to punish these men. You could include this information if that would be helpful to your readers. Alternate translation: [to the face of Yahweh in the plague that he sent]
Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

ULT **in the plague**
UST a terrible disease

The author is not referring to a specific **plague**. He means an unspecified plague. If it would be helpful to your readers, you could use an expression that would be more natural in your language. Alternate translation: [in a plague]
Support Reference: Generic Noun Phrases

> ULT **to the face of Yahweh**
> UST in Yahweh's presence

Here, **to the face of** represents being in front of someone. If it would be helpful in your language, you could use an equivalent expression or plain language. Alternate translation: [before]

Support Reference: Metonymy

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
evil	a terrible disease
report	those men
land	those men
plague	a terrible disease
Yahweh	Yahweh's

Numbers 14:38

ULT	UST
But Joshua, the son of Nun, and Caleb, the son of Jephunneh, lived from those men, the ones having gone to explore the land.	*Of the 12 men who had scouted Canaan out, only Nun's son Joshua and Jephunneh's son Caleb stayed alive.*

ULT **lived from those men, the ones having gone to explore the land**
UST Of the 12 men who had scouted Canaan out … stayed alive

The author is using **from those men** as a common expression of his culture to mean "among those men" or "out of those men." If this phrase does not have that meaning in your language, you could use a comparable expression from your language that does have that meaning, or you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [lived. They were the only ones who lived among those men, the ones having gone to explore the land]
Support Reference: Idiom

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Joshua	Joshua
Caleb	Caleb
land	Canaan

Numbers 14:39

ULT	UST
And Moses spoke these words to all the sons of Israel, and the people mourned exceedingly,	*Then Moses told the Israelites what Yahweh had said. They were very sad.*

ULT **these words**

UST what Yahweh had said

Moses is using the term **these words** to represent what Yahweh said by using words. If it would be clearer in your language, you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [what Yahweh had declared]

Support Reference: Metonymy

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Moses	Moses
Israel	Israelites
mourned	were … sad

Numbers 14:40

ULT	UST
and they rose early in the morning and went up to the head of the hill country, saying, "Behold us! And we will go up to the place that Yahweh said, for we sinned."	*They woke up early the next morning and started to go to the highest parts of the hilly area in Canaan. They said, "We are here! We did what was wrong. So, now we will walk to the area that Yahweh spoke about."*

ULT **and went up**
UST and started to go

The implication is that the Israelites are preparing to leave. In verse 44, the text shows that they actually started marching up to fight. You could include this information if that would be helpful to your readers. Alternate translation: [and prepared to go up] or [and got ready to go up]
Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

ULT **and went up**
UST and started to go

In keeping with what is usual for his language and culture, the author is marking travel for change in elevation. If this expression contains extra information that would not be natural to express in your language, you could shorten it. Alternate translation: [and went]
Support Reference: Making Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information Explicit

ULT **to the head of the hill country**
UST to the highest parts of the hilly area in Canaan

Here, the author is speaking as if a hill were a person with a **head**. Your language may have a comparable expression that you can use in your translation, or you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [to the heights of the hill country] or [to the top of the hill country]
Support Reference: Personification

ULT **Behold us! And we will go up … we sinned**
UST We are here! We did what was wrong … now we will walk

By **us**, the people mean to include themselves but not Moses to whom they are speaking, so use the exclusive form of that word if your language marks that distinction.
Support Reference: Exclusive and Inclusive 'We'

ULT **Behold us**
UST We are here

The Israelites are using the term **Behold us** to focus their listeners' attention on what they are about to say. Your language may have a comparable expression that you can use in your translation. Alternate translation: [Listen to us]
Support Reference: Metaphor

ULT **And we will go up to the place that Yahweh said, for we sinned**
UST We did what was wrong. So, now we will walk to the area that Yahweh spoke about

If it would be more natural in your language, you could reverse the order of these phrases, since the second phrase gives the reason for the result that the first phrase describes. Alternate translation: [We sinned. So, now we will go up to the place that Yahweh said]
Support Reference: Connect — Reason-and-Result Relationship

ULT **And we will go up**
UST now we will walk

In keeping with what is usual for his language and culture, the author is marking travel for change in elevation. If this expression contains extra information that would not be natural to express in your language, you could shorten it. Alternate translation: [And we will go]
Support Reference: Making Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information Explicit

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Yahweh	Yahweh
sinned	We did what was wrong

Numbers 14:41

ULT	UST
And Moses said, "Why is this—are you passing over the mouth of Yahweh? And it will not succeed.	*Moses replied, "You should not do that. You are disobeying what Yahweh said! You will not accomplish anything good.*

ULT **are you passing over**
UST You are disobeying

Here, Moses is speaking of disobedience as if it were physically **passing over** God's command. If this meaning would not be clear in your language, you could use a comparable expression or you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [are you transgressing]
Support Reference: Metaphor

ULT **Why {is} this—are you passing over the mouth of Yahweh**
UST You should not do that. You are disobeying what Yahweh said

Moses is using the question form to rebuke the Israelites. If a speaker of your language would not use the question form for that purpose, you could translate this as a statement or as an exclamation. Alternate translation: [Do not pass over the mouth of Yahweh!]
Support Reference: Rhetorical Question

ULT **Why {is} this—are you passing over**
UST You should not do that. You are disobeying

It might seem that the expression **is this** contains extra information that would not be natural to express in your language. If so, you could shorten it. Alternate translation: [Why are you passing over]
Support Reference: Making Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information Explicit

ULT **the mouth of Yahweh**
UST what Yahweh said

Here, **the mouth of Yahweh** represents what Yahweh said by using words. If it would be clearer in your language, you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [Yahweh's command]
Support Reference: Metonymy

ULT **And it will**
UST anything good

The pronoun **it** refers to their plan to go up to the high hill country. It may be helpful to clarify this for your readers. Alternate translation: [And your plan]
Support Reference: Pronouns — When to Use Them

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Moses	Moses
Yahweh	Yahweh
succeed	You will … accomplish

Numbers 14:42

ULT	UST
You shall not go up, for Yahweh is not in your midst, and you shall not be struck to the face of your enemies.	*Yahweh will not act for you. So, you should not walk there. Otherwise, the people who oppose you will defeat you.*

ULT **Yahweh is not in your midst**
UST Yahweh will not act for you

Here, Moses is speaking of **Yahweh** as if he were physically present among the Israelites. If this meaning would not be clear in your language, you could use a comparable expression or you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [Yahweh is not with you] or [Yahweh will not help you]
Support Reference: Metaphor

ULT **You shall not go up, for Yahweh is not in your midst**
UST Yahweh will not act for you. So, you should not walk there

If it would be more natural in your language, you could reverse the order of these phrases, since the second phrase gives the reason for the result that the first phrase describes. Alternate translation: [Yahweh is not in your midst, so you shall not go up]
Support Reference: Connect — Reason-and-Result Relationship

ULT **You shall not go up**
UST you should not walk there

In keeping with what is usual for his language and culture, Moses is marking travel for change in elevation. If this expression **go up** contains extra information that would not be natural to express in your language, you could shorten it. Alternate translation: [You shall not go]
Support Reference: Making Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information Explicit

ULT **and you shall not be struck to the face of your enemies**
UST Otherwise, the people who oppose you will defeat you

The expression **shall not be struck** is a passive verbal form. If your language would not use that form, you could express the idea in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: [and your enemies shall not strike you to their face]
Support Reference: Active or Passive

ULT **and you shall not be struck**
UST Otherwise … will defeat you

The words translated as **and** introduce what will happen if they do not go up. Use a connector in your language that makes it clear that what follows is a result of what came before. Alternate translation: [and that way you shall not be struck]
Support Reference: Connect — Reason-and-Result Relationship

ULT **and you shall not be struck**
UST Otherwise … will defeat you

The implication is that the Israelites will be defeated in battle by their enemies. You could include this information if that would be helpful to your readers. See the discussion of the term "struck" in the Introduction to Numbers. Alternate translation: [and you shall not be defeated]
Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

ULT **to the face of your enemies**
UST the people who oppose you will defeat you

Here, **to the face of** represents being in front of your enemies. If it would be helpful in your language, you could use an equivalent expression or plain language. Alternate translation: [before your enemies]
Support Reference: Metonymy

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Yahweh	Yahweh
enemies	the people who oppose you

Numbers 14:43

ULT	UST
For the Amalekite and the Canaanite are there to your face, and you will fall by the sword, for upon this, you returned from after Yahweh, and Yahweh will not be with you."	*I mean that the Amalekite people group and the Canaanite people group will oppose you there, and they will slaughter you. Here is why: you stopped obeying Yahweh. So, Yahweh will not act for you."*

ULT **For**
UST I mean that

Here the word **For** introduces not a reason but an explanation. Alternate translation: [More specifically,]
Support Reference: Connecting Words and Phrases

ULT **the Amalekite and the Canaanite**
UST the Amalekite people group and the Canaanite people group

Here, **the Amalekite** and **the Canaanite** represent Amalekites and Canaanites in general, not specific individuals. If it would be helpful to your readers, you could use expressions that would be more natural in your language. See how you translated the similar forms in verse 25. Alternate translation: [the Amalekites and the Canaanites]
Support Reference: Generic Noun Phrases

ULT **to your face**
UST will oppose you

Here, **to your face** represents being in front of you. If it would be helpful in your language, you could use an equivalent expression or plain language. Alternate translation: [in front of you]
Support Reference: Metonymy

ULT **and you will fall by the sword**
UST and they will slaughter you

Moses is using **fall by the sword** as a common expression of his culture to mean "die in battle." If this phrase does not have that meaning in your language, you could use a comparable expression from your language that does have that meaning, or you could state the meaning plainly. See how you translated the similar words in verse 3. Alternate translation: [and you will die in battle]
Support Reference: Idiom

ULT **for upon this, you returned from after Yahweh, and Yahweh will not be with you**
UST Here is why: you stopped obeying Yahweh. So, Yahweh will not act for you

Here, the phrase **for upon this** introduces a reason, which is **you returned from after Yahweh**. This clause could be the reason: (1) why the Israelites will fall by the sword. Alternate translation: [since you returned from after Yahweh. And Yahweh will not be with you]; or (2) why **Yahweh will not be with** them. Alternate translation: [and because you returned from after Yahweh, Yahweh will not be with you]
Support Reference: Connect — Reason-and-Result Relationship

> ULT **you returned from after Yahweh**
> UST you stopped obeying Yahweh

Here, Moses is speaking as if the Israelites had literally been walking behind Yahweh but then **returned from after** him. He means that they stopped living in the manner in which Yahweh wants people to live. If it would be helpful in your language, you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [you stopped following Yahweh] or [you did not do what Yahweh said]

Support Reference: Metaphor

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Amalekite	Amalekite
Canaanite	Canaanite
sword	and they will slaughter you
Yahweh	Yahweh
Yahweh	Yahweh

Numbers 14:44

ULT	UST
And they presumed to go up to the head of the hill country, but the box of the covenant of Yahweh and Moses did not depart from the midst of the camp.	*Despite that, the Israelites decided to walk to the highest parts of the hilly area in Canaan. However, both the sacred chest and Moses remained at the campsite.*

ULT **And they presumed to go up**

UST Despite that, the Israelites decided to walk

The implication is that the Israelites were deliberately disobeying Moses and Yahweh by going up to the hill country. You could include this information if that would be helpful to your readers. Alternate translation: [And they disobeyed Moses and went up]

Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

ULT **to go up**

UST to walk

In keeping with what is usual for his language and culture, the author is marking travel for change in elevation in **to go up**. If this expression contains extra information that would not be natural to express in your language, you could shorten it. Alternate translation: [to go]

Support Reference: Making Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information Explicit

ULT **to the head of the hill country**

UST to the highest parts of the hilly area in Canaan

Here, the author is speaking of the hill country as if it had a **head**, meaning its highest point or peak. Your language may have a comparable expression that you can use in your translation, or you could state the meaning plainly. See how you translated this phrase in verse 40. Alternate translation: [to the heights of the hill country] or [to the top of the hill country]

Support Reference: Personification

ULT **but the box of the covenant of Yahweh and Moses did not depart from the midst of the camp**

UST However, both the sacred chest and Moses remained at the campsite

The author is speaking of **the box of the covenant of Yahweh** as if it were a living thing that could depart or stay. If it would be helpful in your language, you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [but no one carried the box of the covenant of Yahweh from the midst of the camp, and Moses also did not depart from the midst of the camp] or [but the box of the covenant of Yahweh and Moses stayed in the midst of the camp]

Support Reference: Personification

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
box of the covenant of Yahweh	However, both the sacred chest
Yahweh	However, both the sacred chest
Moses	Moses

Numbers 14:45

ULT	UST
And the Amalekite and the Canaanite, the one dwelling in that hill country, came down. And they struck them and beat them to pieces as far as the Hormah.	*Then men from the Amalekite people group and the Canaanite people group who lived in that hilly area attacked the Israelites. They defeated the Israelites and chased them to Hormah, which means "destroy".*

ULT **and beat them to pieces**
UST They defeated the Israelites and chased them

Here, the author is speaking of defeating the Israelites as if they were objects that they could **beat … to pieces**. If this meaning would not be clear in your language, you could use a comparable expression or you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [and pursued the scattered Israelite soldiers]
Support Reference: Metaphor

ULT **And the Amalekite and the Canaanite, the one dwelling … came down**
UST Then {men from} the Amalekite people group and the Canaanite people group who lived

Here, **the Amalekite** and **the Canaanite** represent Amalekites and Canaanites in general, not specific individuals. If it would be helpful to your readers, you could use expressions that would be more natural in your language. See how you translated the similar forms in verse 25. Alternate translation: [And the Amalekites and the Canaanites, the ones dwelling]
Support Reference: Generic Noun Phrases

ULT **And … came down**
UST Then

The expression **came down** marks a change in elevation that was usual for the author to express in his language and culture. If this expression contains extra information that would not be natural to express in your language, you could shorten it. Alternate translation: [came] or [arrived]
Support Reference: Making Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information Explicit

ULT **And they struck them**
UST attacked the Israelites

The implication is that the Amalekites and Canaanites defeated the Israelites in battle and killed many of them. You could include this information if that would be helpful to your readers. See the discussion of the term "struck" in the Introduction to Numbers. Alternate translation: [And they overpowered them] or [And they won the battle with them]
Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

ULT **the Hormah**
UST Hormah, which means "destroy

The word **Hormah** is the name of a city. It was located south of Beersheba.
Support Reference: How to Translate Names

ULT **the Hormah**
UST Hormah, which means “destroy

It is very unusual for a name to have the word **the** with it in this language. The use of **the** here may imply that the author intended his readers to think about the meaning of the name **Hormah**, which comes from a word that means “to devote to destruction.” You could consider including this information in a footnote if it would be helpful to your readers.

Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Amalekite	Amalekite
Canaanite	Canaanite

Numbers 15

Numbers 15 Introduction

Numbers 15 Chapter Introduction

Structure and Formatting

In this chapter, Yahweh gives instructions for grain and drink offerings, contributions from first batches of bread, atonement for unintentional sins, punishment for intentional sins, and tassels on clothing. The author also narrates a story about a man who gathered wood on the Sabbath.

1. Yahweh gives instructions for offerings in the land of Canaan (1–21)
2. Yahweh explains how to make offerings for sins committed by mistake (22–29)
3. Yahweh warns against deliberate disobedience (30–31)
4. A man is put to death for breaking the Sabbath law (32–36)
5. Yahweh commands Israel to wear tassels as reminders of his commands (37–41)

Religious and Cultural Concepts in This Chapter

Grain and drink offerings

This chapter includes instructions for what the Israelites were supposed to offer along with animal sacrifices. For each male lamb, ram, and bull that they offered, they needed to offer also a specific portion of grain and wine. The portion size was different for each animal. When the Israelites included the grain and drink offerings with each animal, Yahweh was pleased.

Contributions from first dough

This chapter includes instructions on contributions from the dough that the Israelites made from the first grain that they harvested each year. They were to make one loaf from this dough to give to Yahweh. This contribution would be similar to the contribution that farmers made from the first grain that they harvested. Some scholars think that the contribution of a loaf was specifically intended for Israelites who were not farmers and who did not have grain from a harvest to contribute.

Deliberate and unintentional sins

This chapter includes information on deliberate and unintentional sins. Deliberate sins are when people know that they are disobeying God and continue to do so anyway. They do not feel any regret or guilt for what they have done. Those people cannot atone for their sins but instead are punished. Unintentional sins are when people disobey God without realizing that they are disobeying. Those people can atone for their sins, and God gives instructions on what sacrifices to offer. Unintentional sins can be committed by many people together or by one person, and the sacrifices are different in these two cases.

The Sabbath

On the Sabbath, which was the seventh day of the week, the Israelites were not allowed to do any work. See Exodus 20:10 for the basic command. In this chapter, a man does work on the Sabbath (gathering firewood), and the Israelite leaders know that he did something wrong. However, they wait to hear from Yahweh how the man should be punished. Yahweh declares that the Israelites must kill him by throwing stones at him, so that is what they do. This story emphasizes how important keeping the Sabbath is to Yahweh.

Tassels

This chapter includes instructions on "tassels" that the Israelites were supposed to attach to their clothing. Tassels are groups of threads connected together that hang down from whatever they are attached to. In this case, the Israelites were supposed to attach the tassels to the corners of their garments. The outer garments that the Israelites wore were usually in the shape of a rectangle, so there would be four tassels, one at each corner. Each tassel needed to have one cord or thread of blue in it. These tassels functioned as visual reminders that the Israelites were supposed to think about and obey God's commands.

Sojourners

The instructions in this chapter on grain and drink offerings and on atonement for unintentional sins apply to "sojourners" as well as to native Israelites. Sojourners were non-Israelites who lived among the Israelites. They were considered sojourners as long as they lived among the Israelites. The laws that include sojourners indicate that these foreigners could participate in worshiping and honoring Yahweh.

Translation Issues in This Chapter

Order of events

This chapter includes both instructions that Yahweh gives Moses and a story about a man working on the Sabbath. The author does not clarify in what order these events happened or whether they happened before or after the events narrated in the previous chapter. It is recommended that you avoid using time words to connect these instructions and stories.

"a scent of pleasing"

Multiple times in this chapter, Yahweh describes a sacrifice as "a scent of pleasing" to or for him. This phrase refers to burning the sacrifice in a way that causes smoke to go up, picturing the sacrifice as being converted to pleasant-smelling smoke by the fire and arising to Yahweh in heaven, where he would smell the smoke and be pleased. That the sacrifice was accompanied by the gift of the pleasant-smelling smoke of the sacrifice was apparently crucial to the acceptance of the offering as an appropriate sacrifice on a person's behalf.

Being "cut off" from the people

The punishment for deliberate sins was being "cut off" from the rest of the Israelites. Scholars are unsure exactly what penalty this phrase implies. It could refer to death by execution. It could refer to punishment from Yahweh in a way of his choice. It could refer to expulsion from the Israelite community. The UST and notes follow this last option. If possible, use a word or

phrase that could be understood in several of these ways. If you must specify, it is recommended that you follow the UST and notes.

Numbers 15:1

ULT	UST
And Yahweh spoke to Moses, saying,	*Yahweh told Moses,*

ULT **And Yahweh spoke**
UST Yahweh told

The author does not indicate exactly when Yahweh spoke the following words. It may have been before or after the events narrated in the previous chapter. Avoid implying a time relationship with the previous section. Alternate translation: [One day, Yahweh spoke]
Support Reference: Order of Events

ULT **saying**
UST told

Here, the word **saying** introduces a direct quotation. See how you translated **saying** in 1:1.
Support Reference: Quotations and Quote Margins

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Yahweh	Yahweh
Moses	Moses

Numbers 15:2

ULT	UST
“Speak to the sons of Israel and say to them, ‘When you go to the land of your dwellings, which I am giving to you,	*“Tell this to the Israelite people: They will enter the area where they will live, which I will give to them.*

ULT **and say to them, ‘When you go to the land of your dwellings, which I am giving to you**
UST Tell this … They will enter the area where they will live, which I will give to them

In 15:2–16, Yahweh tells Moses to speak for him to the Israelites. To do so, he uses a quote inside another quote. If it would be clearer in your language, you could translate this so that there is not a quotation within a quotation. See the book introduction for more information, and see the UST for an example.
Support Reference: Quotes within Quotes

ULT **and say to them**
UST Tell this

The term **and say to them** introduces a direct quotation. In your translation, use a natural way of introducing direct quotations in your language. It may not be necessary to represent this term explicitly.
Support Reference: Quotations and Quote Margins

ULT **When you go**
UST They will enter

In a context such as this, your language might say “come” instead of **go**. Alternate translation: [When you come]
Support Reference: Go and Come

ULT **to the land of your dwellings**
UST They will enter the area where they will live

The author is using the possessive form to describe a **land** that is characterized by the fact that the Israelites would have **dwellings** there. If a speaker of your language would not use the possessive form for this, you could express this idea in another way. Alternate translation: [to the land where you will dwell] or [to the land where your houses will be]
Support Reference: Possession

ULT **I am giving**
UST I will give

God is using the present tense **am giving** to describe something that is going to happen in the future in order to show that the event is certain to happen. If it would be clearer in your language, you could use the future tense. Alternate translation: [I am about to give]
Support Reference: Irregular Use of Tenses

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Israel	Israelite
land	the area

Numbers 15:3

ULT	UST
and you make a gift to Yahweh, a burnt offering or a sacrifice, to make extraordinary a vow, or in a freewill offering, or at your appointed times, to make a scent of pleasing for Yahweh from the cattle or from the flock,	*While they live there, they will offer animals to me, either oxen or sheep, so that I will enjoy the smell of the smoke when they burn them. They may present them as wholly burned sacrifices or as any other kind of sacrifice. They may present them because they have made a solemn promise, or because they freely choose to do so, or because it is a yearly celebration.*

ULT **to Yahweh … for Yahweh**
UST to me … so that I will enjoy the smell of the smoke when they burn them

Yahweh is speaking of himself in the third person as **Yahweh**. If it would be helpful in your language, you could translate this in the first person. Alternate translation: [to me … for me]
Support Reference: First, Second or Third Person

ULT **or a sacrifice**
UST or as any other kind of sacrifice

The implication is that "sacrifice" refers to any of the many kinds of animal sacrifices that the Israelites could offer. You could include this information if that would be helpful to your readers. Alternate translation: [or another sacrifice]
Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

ULT **to make extraordinary a vow**
UST They may present them because they have made a solemn promise

The author is using **to make extraordinary a vow** as a common expression of his culture to mean "to fulfill a vow." If this phrase does not have that meaning in your language, you could use a comparable expression from your language that does have that meaning, or you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [to fulfill a vow]
Support Reference: Idiom

ULT **or at your appointed times**
UST or because it is a yearly celebration

The implication is that these sacrifices were made at the annual festivals that Yahweh had appointed for Israel. You could include this information if that would be helpful to your readers. Alternate translation: [or at your yearly festivals]
Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

ULT **to make a scent of pleasing for Yahweh**
UST so that I will enjoy the smell of the smoke when they burn them

The implication is that people burned the sacrifices in order for Yahweh to enjoy their smell. You could include this information if that would be helpful to your readers. See the chapter introduction. Alternate translation: [to burn it to make a smell that pleases Yahweh]
Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Yahweh	to me
burnt offering	They may present them as wholly burned sacrifices
sacrifice	sacrifice
vow	They may present them because they have made a solemn promise
freewill offering	because they freely choose to do so
times	because it is a yearly celebration
pleasing	so that I will enjoy the smell of the smoke when they burn them
Yahweh	so that I will enjoy the smell of the smoke when they burn them
cattle	oxen
the flock	sheep

Numbers 15:4

ULT	UST
then the one presenting shall present his offering to Yahweh, a grain offering, a tenth of flour mixed with a fourth of the hin of oil.	*In all of those cases, the people who offer the sacrifices must also offer grain and wine offerings to me. The grain offering must be about two liters of flour with about one liter of olive oil in it.*

ULT **then the one presenting shall present his offering to Yahweh**
UST In all of those cases, the people who offer the sacrifices must also offer {grain and wine} offerings to me

The implication is that this person is presenting an animal sacrifice and must offer other things along with the animal. You could include this information if that would be helpful to your readers. Alternate translation: [then the one presenting the animal shall present to Yahweh an offering that goes with the animal]
Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

ULT **then the one presenting shall present his offering**
UST In all of those cases, the people who offer the sacrifices must also offer {grain and wine} offerings

The author is speaking of the one presenting in the third person as **the one presenting** even though this is an instruction to the same people who are addressed in verse 5 as "you." If it would be helpful in your language, you could translate this in the second person singular. Alternate translation: [then you who are presenting shall present your offering]
Support Reference: First, Second or Third Person

ULT **his offering**
UST the sacrifices

Here the masculine term **his** has a generic sense that includes both men and women. If it would be helpful to your readers, you could use language in your translation that is clearly inclusive of both men and women. Alternate translation: [his or her offering]
Support Reference: When Masculine Words Include Women

ULT **to Yahweh**
UST to me

Yahweh is speaking of himself in the third person as **Yahweh**. If it would be helpful in your language, you could translate this in the first person. Alternate translation: [to me, Yahweh]
Support Reference: First, Second or Third Person

ULT **a tenth of flour**
UST grain … must be about two liters of flour

The implication is that this amount of flour is measured by ephah. You could include this information if that would be helpful to your readers. Alternate translation: [a tenth of an ephah of flour]
Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

ULT **a tenth of flour**
UST grain … must be about two liters of flour

The phrase **a tenth** refers to a tenth of an ephah, which was equivalent to 2.2 liters or about 2 dry quarts. If it would be helpful to your readers, you could express this in terms of modern measurements, either in the text or in a footnote.
Support Reference: Biblical Volume

ULT **a tenth of … with a fourth of**
UST must be about two liters of flour with about one liter of

A **tenth** means one part out of ten equal parts, and a **fourth** means one part out of four equal parts.
Support Reference: Fractions

ULT **mixed**
UST in it

The expression **mixed** is a passive verbal form. If your language would not use that form, you could express the idea in active form or in another way that is natural in your language.
Alternate translation: [that someone has mixed]
Support Reference: Active or Passive

ULT **with a fourth of the hin of oil**
UST with about one liter of olive oil

The **hin** was equivalent to about four liters or one gallon, so a fourth of a hin was about one liter or one quart. If it would be helpful to your readers, you could express this in terms of modern measurements, either in the text or in a footnote.
Support Reference: Biblical Volume

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
offering	sacrifices
Yahweh	to me
grain offering	The … offering
tenth	must be about two liters of flour
oil	oil

Numbers 15:5

ULT	UST
And wine for the drink offering, a fourth of the hin, you shall make upon the burnt offering or for the sacrifice, for the one male lamb.	*The wine offering must be about one liter of wine. Those are the grain and wine offerings that they must offer when they offer one male sheep as a wholly burned sacrifice or as any other kind of sacrifice.*

ULT **a fourth of the hin**
UST must be about one liter of wine

The **fourth of the hin** was equivalent to about one liter. If it would be helpful to your readers, you could express this in terms of modern measurements, either in the text or in a footnote. See how you translated this measure in verse 4
Support Reference: Biblical Volume

ULT **a fourth of**
UST must be about one liter of wine

A **fourth** means one part out of four equal parts.
Support Reference: Fractions

ULT **you shall make**
UST Those are the grain and wine offerings that they must offer

The word **you** is singular here because it refers to each individual Israelite who would present an offering. So use the singular form in your translation if your language marks that distinction.
Support Reference: Forms of 'You' — Singular

ULT **or for the sacrifice**
UST or as any other kind of sacrifice

The implication is that this sacrifice could be any kind of sacrifice other than a burnt offering. You could include this information if that would be helpful to your readers. See how you translated "sacrifice" in verse 3. Alternate translation: [or for any other kind of sacrifice]
Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

ULT **or for the sacrifice, for the one male lamb**
UST one male sheep … or as any other kind of sacrifice

The author assumes that readers will know the measurements given in verse 4 for the grain offering and in this verse for **the drink offering** both apply to the sacrifice of **one male lamb**. You could say that explicitly if that would be helpful to your readers. Alternate translation: [or for the sacrifice. Those measurements apply when you offer one male lamb]
Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
wine	wine
drink offering	offering
burnt offering	as a wholly burned sacrifice
sacrifice	sacrifice
lamb	male sheep

Numbers 15:6

ULT	UST
Or for the ram you shall make a grain offering, two tenths of flour mixed with a third of the hin of the oil,	*When they offer a ram, the grain offering must be about four liters of flour with about one and one-fourth liters of olive oil in it.*

ULT **you shall make**
UST must be

The word **you** is singular here because it refers to a person presenting an offering to Yahweh. So use the singular form in your translation if your language marks that distinction.
Support Reference: Forms of 'You' — Singular

ULT **two tenths … flour**
UST about four liters of flour

The implication is that this amount of flour is measured by ephah. See how you translated the similar phrase in verse 4. Alternate translation: [two tenths of an ephah of flour]
Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

ULT **two tenths … flour**
UST about four liters of flour

This **two tenths** of an ephah was equivalent to about four liters of flour. If it would be helpful to your readers, you could express this in terms of modern measurements, either in the text or in a footnote.
Support Reference: Biblical Volume

ULT **two tenths … a third of**
UST about four liters … about one and one-fourth liters

A **two tenths** means two parts out of ten equal parts, and a **third** means one part out of three equal parts.
Support Reference: Fractions

ULT **mixed**
UST with … of olive oil in it

The expression **mixed** is a passive verbal form. If your language would not use that form, you could express the idea in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. See how you translated this word in verse 4. Alternate translation: [that someone has mixed]
Support Reference: Active or Passive

ULT **a third of the hin of**
UST about one and one-fourth liters

The term **hin** was a measurement of liquid volume. A **third** of a **hin** was equivalent to about 1.3 liters or 1.4 quarts. If it would be helpful to your readers, you could express this in terms of modern measurements, either in the text or in a footnote.
Support Reference: Biblical Volume

ULT **with … the oil**
UST with … of olive oil in it

The author is not referring to specific **oil**. He means olive oil in general. If it would be helpful to your readers, you could use an expression that would be more natural in your language. Alternate translation: [oil]

Support Reference: Generic Noun Phrases

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
ram	ram
grain offering	grain offering
tenths	about four liters
oil	oil

Numbers 15:7

ULT	UST
and wine for the drink offering, a third of the hin. You shall present a scent of pleasing to Yahweh.	*The wine offering must be about one and one-fourth liters of wine. When they offer those things, I will enjoy the smell of the smoke when they burn them.*

ULT **a third of the hin**
UST must be about one and one-fourth liters

The term **a third of the hin** represents about one and one-fourth liters. See how you translated this volume in verse 6. If it would be helpful to your readers, you could express this in terms of modern measurements, either in the text or in a footnote.
Support Reference: Biblical Volume

ULT **a third of**
UST must be about one and one-fourth liters

A **third** means one part out of three equal parts.
Support Reference: Fractions

ULT **You shall present**
UST When they offer those things

The word **You** is singular here because it refers to the individual person making the offering. So use the singular form in your translation if your language marks that distinction.
Support Reference: Forms of 'You' — Singular

ULT **to Yahweh**
UST I will enjoy the smell of the smoke when they burn them

Yahweh is speaking of himself in the third person as **Yahweh**. If it would be helpful in your language, you could translate this in the first person. Alternate translation: [to me]
Support Reference: First, Second or Third Person

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
wine	wine
drink offering	The wine offering
pleasing	I will enjoy the smell of the smoke when they burn them
Yahweh	I will enjoy the smell of the smoke when they burn them

Numbers 15:8

ULT	UST
And when you make a son of cattle a burnt offering or a sacrifice, to make extraordinary a vow or a peace offering to Yahweh,	*Here are the grain and wine offerings for when they offer a young bull as a wholly burned sacrifice or as any other kind of sacrifice. They may offer it as a fellowship sacrifice or because they made a solemn promise.*

ULT **And when you make**
UST Here are the grain and wine offerings for when they offer

The word **you** is singular here because it refers to any individual Israelite who makes an offering. So use the singular form in your translation if your language marks that distinction.
Support Reference: Forms of 'You' — Singular

ULT **a son of cattle**
UST a young bull

Here, the author is speaking as if a young bull were actually a **son of cattle**. If this meaning would not be clear in your language, you could use a comparable expression or you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [a bull that is young]
Support Reference: Metaphor

ULT **or a sacrifice**
UST or as any other kind of sacrifice

The implication is that this **sacrifice** could be any kind of sacrifice other than a burnt offering. You could include this information if that would be helpful to your readers. See how you translated "sacrifice" in verse 3. Alternate translation: [or another kind of sacrifice]
Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

ULT **to make extraordinary a vow**
UST because they made a solemn promise

The author is using **to make extraordinary a vow** as a common expression of his culture to mean "to fulfill a vow." If this phrase does not have that meaning in your language, you could use a comparable expression from your language that does have that meaning, or you could state the meaning plainly. See how you translated this phrase in verse 3. Alternate translation: [to fulfill a vow]
Support Reference: Idiom

ULT **to Yahweh**
UST They may offer it as a fellowship sacrifice

Yahweh is speaking of himself in the third person as **Yahweh**. If it would be helpful in your language, you could translate this in the first person. Alternate translation: [to me]
Support Reference: First, Second or Third Person

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
cattle	bull
burnt offering	as a wholly burned sacrifice
sacrifice	sacrifice
vow	because they made a solemn promise
peace offering	They may offer it as a fellowship sacrifice
Yahweh	They may offer it as a fellowship sacrifice

Numbers 15:9

ULT	UST
then he shall present upon the son of cattle a grain offering, three tenths of flour mixed with half of the hin of the oil,	*The grain offering for the young bull must be about six liters of flour with about two liters of olive oil in it.*

ULT **then he shall present**
UST must be

The text shifts from speaking to the Israelites in the second person (**you**) in the previous verse to speaking of them in the third person as **he** in this verse. If it would be helpful in your language, you could translate this in the second person singular to match verse 10. Alternate translation: [then you shall present]
Support Reference: First, Second or Third Person

ULT **the son of cattle**
UST the young bull

Here, the author is speaking as if a young bull were actually a **son of cattle**. If this meaning would not be clear in your language, you could use a comparable expression or you could state the meaning plainly. See how you translated this phrase in verse 8. Alternate translation: [the bull that is young]
Support Reference: Metaphor

ULT **three tenths … flour**
UST grain … about six liters of flour

The implication is that this amount is measured in ephahs. You may want to include the unit of measurement explicitly if that would be helpful to your readers. See how you translated the similar phrase in verse 4, y. Alternate translation: [three tenths of an ephah of flour]
Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

ULT **three tenths … flour**
UST grain … about six liters of flour

The term **three tenths** refers to three tenths of an ephah, which was equivalent to about 6.6 liters or about 6 quarts. If it would be helpful to your readers, you could express this in terms of modern measurements, either in the text or in a footnote.
Support Reference: Biblical Volume

ULT **three tenths … half of**
UST about six liters of flour … about two liters

A **three tenths** means three parts out of ten equal parts, and a **half** means one part out of two equal parts.
Support Reference: Fractions

ULT **mixed**
UST in it

The expression **mixed** is a passive verbal form. If your language would not use that form, you could express the idea in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. See how you translated this word in verse 4. Alternate translation: [that someone has mixed]
Support Reference: Active or Passive

ULT **with half of the hin of the oil**
UST with about two liters of olive oil

A **hin** was equivalent to about four liters or one gallon. If it would be helpful to your readers, you could express this in terms of modern measurements, either in the text or in a footnote.
Support Reference: Biblical Volume

ULT **with … the oil**
UST with … of olive oil

The author is not referring to specific **oil**. He means olive oil in general. If it would be helpful to your readers, you could use an expression that would be more natural in your language. Alternate translation: [oil]
Support Reference: Generic Noun Phrases

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
cattle	bull
grain offering	The … offering
tenths	about six liters of flour
oil	oil

Numbers 15:10

ULT	UST
and you shall present for the drink offering half of the hin of wine; a gift, a scent of pleasing for Yahweh.	*The wine offering must be about two liters of wine. When they give those things to me, I will enjoy the smell of the smoke when they burn them.*

ULT **and you shall present**
UST must be

The word **you** is singular here because it refers to the individual Israelite who is making the offering. So use the singular form in your translation if your language marks that distinction.
Support Reference: Forms of 'You' — Singular

ULT **half of the hin of**
UST about two liters of wine

This **half of the hin** was equivalent to two liters or about half a gallon. If it would be helpful to your readers, you could express this in terms of modern measurements, either in the text or in a footnote.
Support Reference: Biblical Volume

ULT **half of**
UST about two liters of wine

A **half** means one part out of two equal parts.
Support Reference: Fractions

ULT **for Yahweh**
UST When they give those things to me, I will enjoy the smell of the smoke when they burn them

Yahweh is speaking of himself in the third person as **Yahweh**. If it would be helpful in your language, you could translate this in the first person. Alternate translation: [for me]
Support Reference: First, Second or Third Person

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
drink offering	offering
wine	wine
pleasing	When they give those things to me, I will enjoy the smell of the smoke when they burn them
Yahweh	When they give those things to me, I will enjoy the smell of the smoke when they burn them

Numbers 15:11

ULT	UST
Thus it shall be done for the one ox or for the one ram or for the small livestock among the male lambs or among the goats.	*Those are the grain and wine offerings for each ox, ram, and male lamb or male goat that they offer.*

ULT **it shall be done**

UST Those are the grain and wine offerings … that they offer

The expression **it shall be done** is a passive verbal form. If your language would not use that form, you could express the idea in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: [thus you shall do]

Support Reference: Active or Passive

ULT **or for the small livestock among the male lambs or among the goats**

UST and male lamb or male goat

The author assumes that readers will know that **small livestock** includes both male lambs and goats, which are smaller than oxen and rams. You could say that explicitly if that would be helpful to your readers. Alternate translation: [or for any male lambs or goats, which are smaller livestock]

Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
ox	ox
ram	ram
livestock	male lamb
lambs	lamb
goats	goat

Numbers 15:12

ULT	UST
According to the number that you do, thus you shall do for the one according to their number.	*Each animal must have its appropriate grain and wine offerings, no matter how many they offer.*

ULT **that you do, thus you shall do**
UST must have its appropriate grain and wine offerings … they offer

The word **you** is plural here and in verses 13–16 because Yahweh is addressing all the Israelites, so use the plural form in your translation if your language marks that distinction.
Support Reference: Forms of 'You' — Singular

ULT **According to the number that you do, thus you shall do for the one according to their number**
UST Each animal must have its appropriate grain and wine offerings, no matter how many they offer

The implication is that each animal that is offered must have its own prescribed grain and wine offerings. You could include this information if that would be helpful to your readers. Alternate translation: [According to the number of animals that you offer, thus you shall do for each individual animal according to their number]
Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

ULT **According to the number that you do, thus you shall do for the one according to their number**
UST Each animal must have its appropriate grain and wine offerings, no matter how many they offer

It might seem that the expression **According to the number that you do, thus you shall do for the one according to their number** contains extra information that would not be natural to express in your language. If so, you could shorten it. Alternate translation: [According to the number that you do, thus you shall do for each one]
Support Reference: Making Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information Explicit

Numbers 15:13

ULT	UST
Every native shall do these thus to present a gift, a scent of pleasing for Yahweh.	*All the Israelites must follow those instructions when they offer animals to me. I will enjoy the smell of the smoke when they burn them.*

ULT **shall do these thus**
UST must follow those instructions

The pronoun **these** refers to the instructions about how to offer animals with grain and drink offerings. It may be helpful to clarify this for your readers. Alternate translation: [shall offer animals along with grain and drink offerings in that way]

Support Reference: Pronouns — When to Use Them

ULT **for Yahweh**
UST to me

Yahweh is speaking of himself in the third person as **Yahweh**. If it would be helpful in your language, you could translate this in the first person. Alternate translation: [for me]

Support Reference: First, Second or Third Person

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
pleasing	I will enjoy the smell of the smoke
Yahweh	to me

Numbers 15:14

ULT	UST
And if a sojourner sojourns with you, or who is in your midst for your generations, and he makes a gift, a scent of pleasing for Yahweh, just as you shall do, thus he shall do.	*Suppose that foreigners or anyone else who lives among the Israelites at any time want to offer animals to me so that I will enjoy the smell of the smoke when they burn them. In that case, they must follow the same instructions that the Israelites follow.*

ULT **a sojourner sojourns with you, or who {is} in your midst for your generations**
UST foreigners or anyone else who lives among the Israelites at any time

Here, these two clauses could refer to: (1) two different groups of people, “sojourners” who live among the Israelites as foreigners and anyone else who happens to be living among the Israelites. Alternate translation: [sojourner sojourns with you, or if anyone else {is} in your midst for your generations]; or (2) one group of people, with the second clause further defining the first. Alternate translation: [a sojourner sojourns with you in your midst for your generations]; or (3) two different groups of people, “sojourners” who are temporary residents and others who are permanent residents. Alternate translation: [a sojourner temporarily lives among you, or someone permanently lives among you for your generations]

Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

ULT **a sojourner sojourns**
UST foreigners … lives

It might seem that the expression **a sojourner sojourns** contains extra information that would not be natural to express in your language. If so, you could shorten it. Alternate translation: [someone sojourns]

Support Reference: Making Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information Explicit

ULT **and he makes … he shall do**
UST want to offer animals … when they burn them … the Israelites follow

Here the masculine terms **he makes** and **he shall do** have a generic sense that includes both men and women. If it would be helpful to your readers, you could use language in your translation that is clearly inclusive of both men and women. Alternate translation: [and he or she makes … he or she shall do]

Support Reference: When Masculine Words Include Women

ULT **for Yahweh**
UST to me

Yahweh is speaking of himself in the third person as **Yahweh**. If it would be helpful in your language, you could translate this in the first person. Alternate translation: [for me]

Support Reference: First, Second or Third Person

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
sojourns	lives
generations	at any time
pleasing	so that I will enjoy the smell of the smoke
Yahweh	to me

Numbers 15:15

ULT	UST
For the assembly, a statute is one for you and for the sojourner, the one sojourning, a statute of eternity for your generations. As you, so the sojourner shall be to the face of Yahweh.	*The whole community must follow the same instructions in my presence. That includes both the Israelites and the foreigners who live among them. These instructions always apply to both groups and their descendants.*

ULT **For the assembly, a statute {is} one for you and for the sojourner, the one sojourning, a statute of eternity for your generations. As you, so the sojourner shall be to the face of Yahweh**

UST The whole community must follow the same instructions in my presence. That includes both the Israelites and the foreigners who live among them. These instructions always apply to both groups and their descendants

Here, the word **statute** could be referring to: (1) the specific instructions that Yahweh just told Moses concerning grain and drink offerings with animal sacrifices. Alternate translation: [For the assembly, this statute is the same for you and for the sojourner, the one sojourning, a statute of eternity for your generations. As you, so the sojourner shall be to the face of Yahweh in this case]; or (2) the instructions that Yahweh gave to Moses more generally. Alternate translation: [For the assembly, each statute is the same for you and for the sojourner, the one sojourning, statutes of eternity for your generations. As you, so the sojourner shall be to the face of Yahweh]

Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

ULT **and for the sojourner, the one sojourning**

UST and the foreigners who live among them

It might seem that the expression **the sojourner, the one sojourning** contains extra information that would not be natural to express in your language. If so, you could shorten it. Alternate translation: [and for the one sojourning]

Support Reference: Making Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information Explicit

ULT **and for the sojourner, the one sojourning … so the sojourner**

UST and the foreigners who live among them … to both groups and their descendants

The author is not referring to a specific **sojourner**. He means foreigners in general. If it would be helpful to your readers, you could use an expression that would be more natural in your language. Alternate translation: [and for the sojourners, the ones sojourning … so the sojourners]

Support Reference: Generic Noun Phrases

ULT **a statute of eternity**

UST These instructions always apply

Yahweh is using the possessive form to describe a **statute** that is characterized by **eternity**. If a speaker of your language would not use the possessive form for this, you could express this idea in another way. See how you translated this phrase in 10:8. Alternate translation: [a statute that applies for eternity]

Support Reference: Possession

ULT **a statute of eternity**
UST These instructions always apply

If your language does not use an abstract noun for the idea of **eternity**, you could express the same idea in another way. See how you translated this phrase in 10:8. Alternate translation: [an eternal statute]
Support Reference: Abstract Nouns

ULT **to the face of Yahweh**
UST in my presence

Here, **to the face of** represents being in front of Yahweh. If it would be helpful in your language, you could use an equivalent expression or plain language. Alternate translation: [before Yahweh] or [in Yahweh's consideration]
Support Reference: Metonymy

ULT **to the face of Yahweh**
UST in my presence

Yahweh is speaking of himself in the third person as **Yahweh**. If it would be helpful in your language, you could translate this in the first person. Alternate translation: [to my face]
Support Reference: First, Second or Third Person

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
assembly	community
statute	must follow
sojourning	who live among them
statute	These instructions
eternity	always apply
generations	to both groups and their descendants
Yahweh	in my presence

Numbers 15:16

ULT	UST
One law and one ordinance shall be for you and for the sojourner, the one sojourning with you.’”	*The Israelites and the foreigners who live among them must follow these exact same instructions.”*

ULT **One law and one ordinance shall be for you and for the sojourner, the one sojourning with you**

UST The Israelites and the foreigners who live among them must follow these exact same instructions

Here, just as in 15:15, the words **law** and **ordinance** could be referring to: (1) the specific instructions that Yahweh just told Moses concerning grain and drink offerings with animal sacrifices. Alternate translation: [Concerning those instructions, the same law and the same ordinance shall be for you and for the sojourner, the one sojourning with you]; or (2) the instructions that Yahweh gave to Moses more generally. Alternate translation: [The same laws and the same ordinances shall be for you and for the sojourner, the one sojourning with you]

Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

ULT **and for the sojourner, the one sojourning with you**

UST and the foreigners who live among them

It might seem that the expression **the sojourner, the one sojourning with you** contains extra information that would not be natural to express in your language. If so, you could shorten it. Alternate translation: [and for the one sojourning with you]

Support Reference: Making Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information Explicit

ULT **and for the sojourner, the one sojourning**

UST and the foreigners who live

The author is not referring to a specific **sojourner**. He means foreigners in general. If it would be helpful to your readers, you could use an expression that would be more natural in your language. Alternate translation: [and for the sojourners, the ones sojourning]

Support Reference: Generic Noun Phrases

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
law	instructions
and … ordinance	instructions

Numbers 15:18

ULT	UST
“Speak to the sons of Israel and say to them, ‘When you go to the land where I am bringing you,	*“Tell this to the Israelite people: They will enter the area where I will take them.*

ULT **and say to them, ‘When you go to the land where I am bringing you**
UST Tell this … the Israelite people: They will enter the area where I will take them

In 15:18–31, Yahweh tells Moses to speak for him to the Israelites. To do so, he uses a quote inside another quote. If it would be clearer in your language, you could translate this so that there is not a quotation within a quotation. See the book introduction for more information, and see the UST for an example.
Support Reference: Quotes within Quotes

ULT **and say to them**
UST Tell this … the Israelite people

The term **and say to them** introduces a direct quotation. In your translation, use a natural way of introducing direct quotations in your language. It may not be necessary to represent this term explicitly.
Support Reference: Quotations and Quote Margins

ULT **When you go**
UST They will enter

In a context such as this, your language might say “come” instead of **go**. Alternate translation: [When you come]
Support Reference: Go and Come

ULT **I am bringing you**
UST where I will take them

In a context such as this, your language might say “taking” instead of **bringing**. Alternate translation: [I am taking you]
Support Reference: Go and Come

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Israel	Israelite
land	the area

Numbers 15:19

ULT	UST
and it shall be, when you eat from the bread of the land, you shall raise a contribution to Yahweh.	*While they are there, they will eat what they grow from that land. When they do, they must dedicate a special contribution to me.*

ULT **from the bread of the land**
UST what they grow from that land

The author is using the possessive form to describe a **bread** that is made from what is produced by **the land**. If a speaker of your language would not use the possessive form for this, you could express this idea in another way. Alternate translation: [from the bread that is made from what the land produces]
Support Reference: Possession

ULT **from the bread of**
UST what they grow

The author is using one kind of food, **bread**, to mean food in general. If it would be helpful in your language, you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [from the food]
Support Reference: Synecdoche

ULT **you shall raise**
UST When they do, they must dedicate

Here, Moses is speaking of dedicating food to God as if a person could **raise** it up to him. If this meaning would not be clear in your language, you could use a comparable expression or you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [you shall set apart]
Support Reference: Metaphor

ULT **to Yahweh**
UST to me

Yahweh is speaking of himself in the third person as **Yahweh**. If it would be helpful in your language, you could translate this in the first person. Alternate translation: [to me, Yahweh]
Support Reference: First, Second or Third Person

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
bread	what they grow
land	land
a contribution	a special contribution
Yahweh	to me

Numbers 15:20

ULT	UST
The first of your dough, a loaf, you shall raise as a contribution. As a contribution of the threshing floor, so you shall raise it.	*They must dedicate some of the first batch of dough that they make each year as this special contribution. They must make this dough into thick bread. When they dedicate the thick bread, it is like when farmers dedicate some of the first grain that they have harvested.*

ULT **The first of your dough, a loaf, you shall raise**
UST They must dedicate some of the first batch of dough that they make each year … They must make this dough into thick bread

By **the first of your dough**, the author means the first dough made from a new harvest of grain. You could indicate this explicitly in your translation if that would be helpful to your readers. Alternate translation: [When you first make dough from a new harvest of grain, you must make a loaf that you shall raise]
Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

ULT **The first of your dough**
UST some of the first batch of dough that they make each year

If your language would not represent a number in a form such as **first**, you could represent this number in a form that your language would use. Alternate translation: [Some of the initial batch of]
Support Reference: Ordinal Numbers

ULT **you shall raise … you shall raise it**
UST They must dedicate … they dedicate the thick bread

Here, Moses is speaking of setting grain aside as if it were actually **raising** it up to God. If this meaning would not be clear in your language, you could use a comparable expression or you could state the meaning plainly. See how you translated the similar phrase in verse 19. Alternate translation: [you shall set apart … you shall set it apart]
Support Reference: Metaphor

ULT **As a contribution of the threshing floor, so you shall raise it**
UST When they dedicate {the thick bread}, it is like when farmers dedicate some of the first grain that they have harvested

The implication is that the contribution from the first dough should be treated the same way as contributions from grain harvested at the threshing floor. You could include this information if that would be helpful to your readers. Alternate translation: [When you raise it, it counts as a contribution of the threshing floor] or [You shall raise it in the same way that you raise a contribution of the threshing floor]
Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

ULT **As a contribution of the threshing floor**

UST it is like when farmers dedicate some of the first grain that they have harvested

The author is using the possessive form to describe a **contribution** that is characterized by coming from **the threshing floor**. If a speaker of your language would not use the possessive form for this, you could express this idea in another way. Alternate translation: [a contribution that comes from the threshing floor]

Support Reference: Possession

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
as a contribution	as this special contribution
contribution	it is like when farmers dedicate some of the first grain that they have harvested
threshing	it is like when farmers dedicate some of the first grain that they have harvested

Numbers 15:21

ULT	UST
From the first of your dough you shall give a contribution to Yahweh for your generations.	*Both the Israelites and their descendants must dedicate to me some of the first batch of dough that they make each year.*

ULT **From the first of your dough you shall give**
UST must dedicate … some of the first batch of dough that they make each year

The implication is that they will be making dough from newly harvested grain. You could include this information if that would be helpful to your readers. See how you translated the similar words in verse 20. Alternate translation: [When you first make dough from a new harvest of grain, you shall give]
Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

ULT **From the first of your dough**
UST some of the first batch of dough that they make each year

The word **first** refers to the beginning portion or initial batch of the dough. If your language would not represent this idea with an ordinal number, you could represent it in a form that your language would use. See how you translated the similar phrase in verse 20. Alternate translation: [From the initial batch of]
Support Reference: Ordinal Numbers

ULT **to Yahweh**
UST to me

Yahweh is speaking of himself in the third person as **Yahweh**. If it would be helpful in your language, you could translate this in the first person. Alternate translation: [to me, Yahweh,]
Support Reference: First, Second or Third Person

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
a contribution	must dedicate
Yahweh	to me
generations	Both the Israelites and their descendants

Numbers 15:22

ULT	UST
And when you err and do not do all these commandments that Yahweh has spoken to Moses,	*Sometimes, the Israelites will accidentally disobey something that I have told you that I command.*

ULT **And when you err and do not do**
UST Sometimes, the Israelites will accidentally disobey

The phrase **err and do not do** expresses a single idea. The phrase **do not do** tells more about **err**. If it would be more natural in your language, you could express this meaning in a different way. Alternate translation: [And when you err by not doing]
Support Reference: Hendiadys

ULT **And when you err**
UST Sometimes, the Israelites will accidentally disobey

To **err** is to make a mistake or do something wrong. If your readers would not be familiar with what erring is, you could use a more general term or explain it in a footnote. Alternate translation: [And when you do something wrong by accident]
Support Reference: Translate Unknowns

ULT **Yahweh has spoken**
UST I have told

Yahweh is speaking of himself in the third person as **Yahweh**. If it would be helpful in your language, you could translate this in the first person. Alternate translation: [I have spoken]
Support Reference: First, Second or Third Person

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Yahweh	I
Moses	you

Numbers 15:23

ULT	UST
all that Yahweh has commanded to you in the hand of Moses, from the day that Yahweh commanded and beyond for your generations,	*That includes everything that I commanded them and their descendants through you, which applies at the time when I commanded it and from then on.*

ULT Yahweh has commanded … Yahweh commanded
UST I commanded … I commanded it

Yahweh is speaking of himself in the third person as **Yahweh**. If it would be helpful in your language, you could translate this in the first person. Alternate translation: [I have commanded … I commanded]
Support Reference: First, Second or Third Person

ULT in the hand of Moses
UST through you

The author is using **in the hand of Moses** as a common expression of this culture to mean "under Moses' authority" or "through Moses." If this phrase does not have that meaning in your language, you could use a comparable expression from your language that does have that meaning, or you could state the meaning plainly. See how you translated the similar phrase in 4:37. Alternate translation: [under the supervision of Moses]
Support Reference: Idiom

ULT from the day
UST which applies at the time

The author is using the term **day** to refer to a specific time. If it would be helpful in your language, you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [from the moment]
Support Reference: Metonymy

ULT and beyond
UST and from then on

The author is using **and beyond** as a common expression of this culture to mean "and ever since and into the future." If this phrase does not have that meaning in your language, you could use a comparable expression from your language that does have that meaning, or you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [and onward] or [and ever since and into the future]
Support Reference: Idiom

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Yahweh	I
Moses	you
generations	and their descendants

Numbers 15:24

ULT	UST
then it shall be, if from the eyes of the congregation it was done by mistake, that all the congregation shall make a bull (one son of cattle) for a burnt offering, for a scent of pleasing for Yahweh, and its grain offering and its drink offering, according to the ordinance, and one buck of the goats for a sin offering.	*In that case, as long as they disobeyed accidentally and the community did not know about it, the community must offer sacrifices. They must offer one young bull as a wholly burned sacrifice, along with its grain and wine offerings. They must follow the instructions for those offerings. I will enjoy the smell of the smoke when they burn them. They must also offer one male goat as a purifying sacrifice.*

ULT **from the eyes of the congregation**
UST and the community did not know about it

Here, **from the eyes of** represents the knowledge or awareness of the congregation. If it would be helpful in your language, you could use an equivalent expression or plain language. Alternate translation: [without the knowledge of the congregation]
Support Reference: Metonymy

ULT **it was done**
UST they disobeyed accidentally

The expression **it was done** is a passive verbal form. If your language would not use that form, you could express the idea in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. If you need to say who does the action, the context indicates that it is the Israelites. Alternate translation: [you did it]
Support Reference: Active or Passive

ULT **one son of cattle**
UST They must offer one young bull

Here, the author is speaking of a young bull as if it were actually a **son of cattle**. If this meaning would not be clear in your language, you could use a comparable expression or you could state the meaning plainly. See how you translated the similar phrase in verse 8. Alternate translation: [one that is young]
Support Reference: Metaphor

ULT **according to the ordinance**
UST They must follow the instructions for those offerings

The implication is that these offerings must be made according to the instructions that Yahweh had already given about grain and drink offerings. You could include this information if that would be helpful to your readers. Alternate translation: [according to the ordinance about grain and drink offerings I just gave you]
Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

ULT **and one buck of the goats**
UST They must also {offer} one male goat

The author is using the possessive form to describe a **buck** that is characterized by being one of the **goats**. If a speaker of your language would not use the possessive form for this, you could express this idea in another way. See how you translated this phrase in chapter 7:16. Alternate translation: [and a goat that is a buck] or [and an adult male goat]

Support Reference: Possession

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
congregation	community
bull	bull
cattle	bull
burnt offering	as a wholly burned sacrifice
pleasing	I will enjoy the smell of the smoke when they burn them
Yahweh	I will enjoy the smell of the smoke when they burn them
grain offering	along with its grain … offerings
drink offering	and wine
ordinance	They must follow the instructions for those offerings
goats	goat
sin offering	as a purifying sacrifice

Numbers 15:25

ULT	UST
And the priest shall make atonement for all the congregation of the sons of Israel, and it shall be forgiven for them, for it was a mistake, and they, they brought their offering, a gift, to Yahweh, and their sin offering to the face of Yahweh according to their mistake.	*When the priest offers those sacrifices, I will accept them to remove what the Israelite community did that was wrong. I will pardon the Israelites. I will do that because they disobeyed accidentally, because they offered the bull and its grain and wine offerings to me, and because they offered the male goat as a purifying sacrifice in my presence.*

ULT **And the priest shall make atonement for all the congregation of the sons of Israel**
UST When the priest offers those sacrifices, I will accept … to remove what the Israelite community did that was wrong

If your language does not use an abstract noun for the idea of **atonement**, you could express the same idea in another way. Alternate translation: [And the priest shall offer the sacrifices to restore all the congregation of the sons of Israel to Yahweh]
Support Reference: Abstract Nouns

ULT **and it shall be forgiven for them, for it {was} a mistake, and they, they brought their offering, a gift, to Yahweh, and their sin offering to the face of Yahweh according to their mistake**
UST them … I will pardon the Israelites. {I will do that} because they disobeyed accidentally, because they offered the bull and its grain and wine offerings to me, and because they offered the male goat as a purifying sacrifice in my presence

If it would be more natural in your language, you could reverse the order of these phrases, since the second phrase gives the reason for the result that the first phrase **it shall be forgiven for them** describes. Alternate translation: [and because it was a mistake, and they, they brought their offering, a gift, to Yahweh, and their sin offering to the face of Yahweh according to their mistake, it shall be forgiven for them]
Support Reference: Connect — Reason-and-Result Relationship

ULT **and it shall be forgiven for them**
UST them … I will pardon the Israelites

The expression **it shall be forgiven for them** is a passive verbal form. If your language would not use that form, you could express the idea in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. If you need to say who does the action, the context indicates that it is God. Alternate translation: [and Yahweh shall forgive them]
Support Reference: Active or Passive

ULT **and they, they brought**
UST because they offered

The author is stating the pronoun **they** separately, even though the verb translated as **brought** already includes this meaning. He is doing that to emphasize that the Israelites themselves were the ones who brought the offering. If a speaker of your language would use an explicit pronoun for the same purpose, you may want to use that construction in your translation. If not, your language may have other ways of showing the meaning here. Alternate translation: [and as for them, they brought] or [and they brought]

Support Reference: Pronouns — When to Use Them

ULT **their offering, a gift, to Yahweh, and their sin offering**
UST the bull and its grain and wine offerings to me, and because they offered the male goat as a purifying sacrifice

By **their offering, a gift**, the author means the bull mentioned in verse 24, and by **their sin offering**, he means the male goat also mentioned in verse 24. You could indicate this explicitly in your translation if that would be helpful to your readers. Alternate translation: [their offering, a gift of the bull, and their sin offering, the male goat,]

Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

ULT **to Yahweh … to the face of Yahweh**
UST to me … in my presence

Yahweh is speaking of himself in the third person as **Yahweh**. If it would be helpful in your language, you could translate this in the first person. Alternate translation: [to me … to my face]

Support Reference: First, Second or Third Person

ULT **to the face of Yahweh**
UST in my presence

Here, **to the face of** represents being in front of Yahweh. If it would be helpful in your language, you could use an equivalent expression or plain language. Alternate translation: [before Yahweh]

Support Reference: Metonymy

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
priest	priest
atonement	When … offers those sacrifices, I will accept … to remove what … did that was wrong
congregation	community
Israel	Israelite
forgiven	pardon
offering	offerings
Yahweh	to me
sin offering	and because they offered the male goat as a purifying sacrifice

Numbers 15:26

ULT	UST
And it shall be forgiven for all the congregation of the sons of Israel and for the sojourner, the one sojourning in their midst, for it was to all the people by mistake.	*Because everyone disobeyed accidentally, I will pardon the whole Israelite community and the foreigners who live among them.*

ULT **And it shall be forgiven for all the congregation of the sons of Israel and for the sojourner, the one sojourning in their midst, for {it was} to all the people by mistake**
UST Because everyone disobeyed accidentally, I will pardon the whole Israelite community and the foreigners who live among them

If it would be more natural in your language, you could reverse the order of these phrases, since the second phrase gives the reason for the result that the first phrase describes. Alternate translation: [It was to all the people by mistake. So, it shall be forgiven for all the congregation of the sons of Israel and for the sojourner, the one sojourning in their midst]
Support Reference: Connect — Reason-and-Result Relationship

ULT **And it shall be forgiven for all the congregation of**
UST I will pardon the whole … community

The expression **it shall be forgiven** is a passive verbal form. If your language would not use that form, you could express the idea in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. If you need to say who does the action, the context indicates that it is Yahweh. Alternate translation: [And Yahweh shall forgive all the congregation]
Support Reference: Active or Passive

ULT **and for the sojourner, the one sojourning in their midst**
UST and the foreigners who live among them

It might seem that the expression **the sojourner, the one sojourning in their midst** contains extra information that would not be natural to express in your language. If so, you could shorten it. Alternate translation: [and for the one sojourning in their midst]
Support Reference: Making Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information Explicit

ULT **and for the sojourner, the one sojourning**
UST and the foreigners who live

Here, **sojourner** and **the one sojourning** represent foreigners in general, not specific foreigners. If it would be helpful to your readers, you could use expressions that would be more natural in your language. Alternate translation: [and for the sojourners, the ones sojourning]
Support Reference: Generic Noun Phrases

ULT **for {it was} to all the people by mistake**
UST Because everyone disobeyed accidentally

By **it was to all the people by mistake**, the author means that all the people had disobeyed unintentionally. You could indicate this explicitly in your translation if that would be helpful to your readers. Alternate translation: [for all the people disobeyed by mistake]
Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
forgiven	pardon
congregation	community
Israel	Israelite
sojourning	who live

Numbers 15:27

ULT	UST
And if one person sins by mistake, then he shall present a female goat, a daughter of her year, for a sin offering.	*Now suppose that a single person disobeys accidentally. That person must offer a female goat that is one year old as a purifying sacrifice.*

ULT **then he shall present**
UST That person must offer

Here the masculine term **he** has a generic sense that includes both men and women. If it would be helpful to your readers, you could use language in your translation that is clearly inclusive of both men and women. Alternate translation: [then he or she shall present]
Support Reference: When Masculine Words Include Women

ULT **a daughter of her year**
UST female … that is one year old

The author is using **a daughter of her year** as a common expression of this culture to mean "one year old." If this phrase does not have that meaning in your language, you could use a comparable expression from your language that does have that meaning, or you could state the meaning plainly. See how you translated the similar phrase "a son of his year" in Numbers 6:12. Alternate translation: [a year old]
Support Reference: Idiom

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
sins	disobeys
goat	goat
year	year
sin offering	as a purifying sacrifice

Numbers 15:28

ULT	UST
And the priest shall make atonement for the person, the one erring in a sin by mistake to the face of Yahweh, to make atonement for him, and it shall be forgiven for him.	*When the priest offers that sacrifice, I will accept it to remove what that person accidentally did wrong in my presence. I will pardon that person.*

ULT **And the priest shall make atonement for the person, the one erring in a sin by mistake to the face of Yahweh, to make atonement for him**
UST When the priest offers that sacrifice, I will accept it to remove what that person accidentally did wrong in my presence

If your language does not use abstract nouns for the idea of **atonement**, you could express the same idea in another way. Alternate translation: [And the priest shall offer the sacrifice to restore the person, the one erring in a sin by mistake to the face of Yahweh, to restore him]
Support Reference: Abstract Nouns

ULT **to the face of Yahweh**
UST in my presence

Here, **to the face of** represents being in front of Yahweh. If it would be helpful in your language, you could use an equivalent expression or plain language. Alternate translation: [before Yahweh]
Support Reference: Metonymy

ULT **to the face of Yahweh**
UST in my presence

Yahweh is speaking of himself in the third person as **Yahweh**. If it would be helpful in your language, you could translate this in the first person. Alternate translation: [to my face]
Support Reference: First, Second or Third Person

ULT **to make atonement for him**
UST to remove what

It might seem that the expression **to make atonement for him** contains extra information that would not be natural to express in your language since this has already been stated. If so, you could omit these words.
Support Reference: Making Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information Explicit

ULT **for him … for him**
UST to remove what … that person

Here the masculine term **him** has a generic sense that includes both men and women. If it would be helpful to your readers, you could use language in your translation that is clearly inclusive of both men and women. Alternate translation: [for him or her … for him or her]
Support Reference: When Masculine Words Include Women

> ULT **and it shall be forgiven for him**
> UST I will pardon that person

The expression **it shall be forgiven for him** is a passive verbal form. If your language would not use that form, you could express the idea in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. If you need to say who does the action, the context indicates that it is God. Alternate translation: [and Yahweh shall forgive him]

Support Reference: Active or Passive

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
priest	priest
atonement	When … offers that sacrifice, I will accept it
sin	did wrong
Yahweh	in my presence
atonement	to remove what
forgiven	pardon

Numbers 15:29

ULT	UST
The native among the sons of Israel and for the sojourner, the one sojourning in their midst, one law shall be for you for the one doing by mistake.	*The Israelites and the foreigners who live among them must follow the same instructions when someone disobeys accidentally.*

ULT **and for the sojourner, the one sojourning in their midst**
UST and the foreigners who live among them

It might seem that the expression **the sojourner, the one sojourning in their midst** contains extra information that would not be natural to express in your language. If so, you could shorten it. See how you translated these phrases in verse 26. Alternate translation: [and for the one sojourning in their midst]
Support Reference: Making Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information Explicit

ULT **The native among the sons of Israel and for the sojourner, the one sojourning**
UST The Israelites and the foreigners who live

Here, **native** and **sojourner, the one sojourning** represent Israelites and foreigners in general, not specific individuals. If it would be helpful to your readers, you could use expressions that would be more natural in your language. Alternate translation: [The natives among the sons of Israel and for the sojourners, the ones sojourning]
Support Reference: Generic Noun Phrases

ULT **one law shall be for you**
UST must follow the same instructions

The implication is that both native Israelites and sojourners must follow the same law when dealing with unintentional sins. You could include this information if that would be helpful to your readers. Alternate translation: [the same law shall apply for any of you]
Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

ULT **for you**
UST must follow

The word **you** is plural here because Yahweh is addressing all the Israelites and foreigners who live among them, so use the plural form in your translation if your language marks that distinction.
Support Reference: Forms of 'You' — Singular

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Israel	Israelites
law	the … instructions

Numbers 15:30

ULT	UST
But the person who does with a hand being high, from the native and from the sojourner, he is blaspheming Yahweh, and that person shall be cut off from the midst of his people,	*On the other hand, suppose that someone disobeys intentionally and defiantly, whether that person is an Israelite or a foreigner. In that case, that person has insulted me. The other Israelites must drive that person out from among them.*

ULT **who does with a hand being high**
UST disobeys intentionally and defiantly

Here, Yahweh is speaking of doing something deliberately and defiantly as if it were done with a **hand being high**. If this meaning would not be clear in your language, you could use a comparable expression or you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [who sins boldly and deliberately] or [who transgresses on purpose]
Support Reference: Metaphor

ULT **from the native and from the sojourner**
UST whether that person is an Israelite or a foreigner

Here, **native** and **sojourner** represent Israelites and foreigners in general, not specific individuals. If it would be helpful to your readers, you could use expressions that would be more natural in your language. Alternate translation: [from natives and from sojourners]
Support Reference: Generic Noun Phrases

ULT **he is blaspheming … his people**
UST In that case, that person has insulted … them

Here the masculine terms **he** and **his** have a generic sense that includes both men and women. If it would be helpful to your readers, you could use language in your translation that is clearly inclusive of both men and women. Alternate translation: [he or she is blaspheming … his or her people]
Support Reference: When Masculine Words Include Women

ULT **Yahweh**
UST me

Yahweh is speaking of himself in the third person as **Yahweh**. If it would be helpful in your language, you could translate this in the first person. Alternate translation: [me, Yahweh]
Support Reference: First, Second or Third Person

ULT **and that person shall be cut off from the midst of his people**
UST The other Israelites must drive that person out from among them

Here, Yahweh is speaking of separating someone from the community as if that person were actually being **cut off** from the group. If this meaning would not be clear in your language, you could use a comparable expression or you could state the meaning plainly. See the chapter introduction for more information. Alternate translation: [and that person shall be expelled from the midst of his people]
Support Reference: Metaphor

ULT **and that person shall be cut off from the midst of his people**

UST The other Israelites must drive that person out from among them

The expression **shall be cut off** is a passive verbal form. If your language would not use that form, you could express the idea in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. If you need to say who does the action, the context indicates that it is the Israelites. Alternate translation: [and the rest of the Israelites must cut off that person from their midst]

Support Reference: Active or Passive

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
blaspheming	has insulted
Yahweh	me

Numbers 15:31

ULT	UST
for he despised the word of Yahweh and broke his commandment. Being cut off, that person shall be cut off. His iniquity is on him.'"	*They must do that because that person treated what I said disrespectfully and disobeyed what I commanded. The other Israelites must completely drive that person out from among them. I will punish that person for what he or she did wrong."*

ULT **for he despised the word of Yahweh and broke his commandment. Being cut off**
UST They must do that because that person treated what I said disrespectfully and disobeyed what I commanded. The other Israelites must completely drive … out from among them

Here, the clause **for he despised the word of Yahweh and broke his commandment** could give a reason for: (1) the person being "cut off" in 15:30. Alternate translation: [which must happen because he despised the word of Yahweh and broke his commandment. Being cut off]; or (2) the person being "cut off" in this verse. Alternate translation: [Because he despised the word of Yahweh and broke his commandment, being cut off]
Support Reference: Connect — Reason-and-Result Relationship

ULT **the word of Yahweh … his commandment**
UST what I said … and … what I commanded

Yahweh is speaking of himself in the third person as **Yahweh**. If it would be helpful in your language, you could translate this in the first person. Alternate translation: [my word … my commandment]
Support Reference: First, Second or Third Person

ULT **the word of Yahweh**
UST what I said

The author is using the term **word of Yahweh** to represent what Yahweh said by using words. If it would be clearer in your language, you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [what Yahweh spoke]
Support Reference: Metonymy

ULT **and broke**
UST and disobeyed what I commanded

Here, Yahweh is speaking of his commandment as if it were an object that they **broke** when they disobeyed. If this meaning would not be clear in your language, you could use a comparable expression or you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [and failed to obey]
Support Reference: Metaphor

ULT **Being cut off, that person shall be cut off**
UST The other Israelites must completely drive that person out from among them

Yahweh is repeating forms of the verb **cut off** in order to intensify his expression of the idea that it conveys. If your language can repeat words for intensification, it would be appropriate to do that here in your translation. If not, your language may have another way of expressing the intensification. Alternate translation: [That person must certainly be cut off]
Support Reference: Reduplication

ULT **Being cut off, that person shall be cut off**
UST The other Israelites must completely drive that person out from among them

Here, Yahweh is speaking of separating someone from the community as if that person were actually being **cut off** from the group. If this meaning would not be clear in your language, you could use a comparable expression or you could state the meaning plainly. See the chapter introduction for more information. Alternate translation: [Being expelled, that person shall be expelled]
Support Reference: Metaphor

ULT **Being cut off, that person shall be cut off**
UST The other Israelites must completely drive that person out from among them

The expressions **Being cut off** and **shall be cut off** are passive verbal forms. If your language would not use those forms, you could express the idea in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. If you need to say who does the actions, the context indicates that it is the Israelites. Alternate translation: [Cutting off, the rest of the Israelites must cut off that person]
Support Reference: Active or Passive

ULT **His iniquity {is} on him**
UST I will punish that person for what he or she did wrong

Here, Yahweh is speaking as if **iniquity** were a physical burden that a person could carry. If this meaning would not be clear in your language, you could use a comparable expression or you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [He will be punished for his iniquity] or [He will bear the penalty of his iniquity]
Support Reference: Metaphor

ULT **His iniquity {is} on him**
UST I will punish that person for what he or she did wrong

Here the masculine terms **him** and **his** have a generic sense that includes both men and women. If it would be helpful to your readers, you could use language in your translation that is clearly inclusive of both men and women. Alternate translation: [His or her iniquity is on him or her]
Support Reference: When Masculine Words Include Women

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
word of Yahweh	what I said
Yahweh	what I said
iniquity	I will punish that person for what he or she did wrong

Numbers 15:32

ULT	UST
And the sons of Israel were in the wilderness, and they found a man gathering wood on the day of the Sabbath,	*One day, while the Israelites were in the desolate area, some of them noticed a man who was collecting firewood on the Sabbath day.*

ULT **And the sons of Israel were in the wilderness, and they found**
UST One day, while the Israelites were in the desolate area, some of them noticed

The story that this clause introduces probably did not happen immediately after the commands that Yahweh gave to Moses in the previous verses. It may have happened some time before or some time after the events in the previous verses. If it would be helpful to your readers, you could use a word or phrase that introduces an event that may not be in sequence. Alternate translation: [Once, when the sons of Israel were in the wilderness, they found]
Support Reference: Order of Events

ULT **and they found**
UST some of them noticed

The implication is that the Israelites were not looking for this man, but they happened to notice him gathering wood. You could include this information if that would be helpful to your readers. Alternate translation: [and they saw]
Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

ULT **gathering wood**
UST who was collecting firewood

By **gathering wood**, the author means the man was gathering pieces of wood to use as fuel for a fire. You could indicate this explicitly in your translation if that would be helpful to your readers. Alternate translation: [gathering pieces of wood for a fire]
Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Israel	Israelites
wilderness	were in the desolate area
gathering	who was collecting
Sabbath	Sabbath

Numbers 15:33

ULT	UST
and the ones finding him gathering wood presented him to Moses and to Aaron and to all the congregation.	*Those who noticed him doing that took him to Moses and Aaron and the rest of the community.*

ULT **and the ones finding him … presented**
UST Those who noticed him … took

The implication is that the Israelites were not looking for this man, but they happened to notice him gathering wood. You could include this information if that would be helpful to your readers. See how you translated the similar phrase in verse 32. Alternate translation: [and the ones seeing him]

Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

ULT **gathering wood**
UST doing that

By **gathering wood**, the author means that the man was gathering pieces of wood to use as fuel for a fire. You could indicate this explicitly in your translation if that would be helpful to your readers. See how you translated this phrase in verse 32. Alternate translation: [gathering pieces of wood for a fire]

Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
gathering	doing that
Moses	Moses
Aaron	Aaron
congregation	community

Numbers 15:34

ULT	UST
And they made him rest in custody, for it had not been declared what should be done to him.	*The leaders did not know how to punish him. So, they had some Israelites guard him until they learned what to do.*

ULT **And they made him rest in custody, for it had not been declared what should be done to him**

UST The leaders did not know how to punish him. So, they had some Israelites guard him until they learned what to do

If it would be more natural in your language, you could reverse the order of these phrases, since the second phrase gives the reason for the result that the first phrase describes. Alternate translation: [And because it had not been declared what should be done to him, they made him rest in custody]

Support Reference: Connect — Reason-and-Result Relationship

ULT **And they made him rest in custody**

UST they had some Israelites guard him

The author is using **made him rest in custody** as a common expression of his culture to mean "put him under guard" or "kept him confined." If this phrase does not have that meaning in your language, you could use a comparable expression from your language that does have that meaning, or you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [And they put him under guard] or [And they kept him in a place for retraining people]

Support Reference: Idiom

ULT **And they made him rest**

UST they had some Israelites guard him

The pronoun **they** refers to the leaders of the congregation. It may be helpful to clarify this for your readers. Alternate translation: [And those in charge made him rest]

Support Reference: Pronouns — When to Use Them

ULT **it had not been declared**

UST The leaders did not know how to punish him

The expression **it had not been declared** is a passive verbal form. If your language would not use that form, you could express the idea in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. If you need to say who does the action, the context indicates that it is Yahweh. Alternate translation: [there was no declaration about] or [Yahweh had not declared]

Support Reference: Active or Passive

ULT **what should be done to him**

UST until they learned what to do

The expression **what should be done to him** is a passive verbal form. If your language would not use that form, you could express the idea in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. If you need to say who does the action, the context indicates that it is the Israelites. Alternate translation: [what they should do to him]

Support Reference: Active or Passive

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
declared	The leaders did not know how to punish him

Numbers 15:35

ULT	UST
And Yahweh said to Moses, "Dying, the man shall be put to death, all the congregation stoning him with the stones from outside to the camp."	*Then Yahweh told Moses, "The community must certainly execute that man by throwing stones at him outside the area where the Israelites set up their tents."*

ULT **Dying, the man shall be put to death**
UST must certainly execute that man

Yahweh is repeating forms of the verb **dying** in order to intensify his expression of the idea that it conveys. If your language can repeat words for intensification, it would be appropriate to do that here in your translation. If not, your language may have another way of expressing the intensification. Alternate translation: [The man shall surely be put to death]
Support Reference: Reduplication

ULT **Dying, the man shall be put to death**
UST must certainly execute that man

The expression **shall be put to death** is a passive verbal form. If your language would not use that form, you could express the idea in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. If you need to say who does the action, the context indicates that it is the Israelites. Alternate translation: [The Israelites shall put the man, dying, to death]
Support Reference: Active or Passive

ULT **the man shall be put to death**
UST must certainly execute that man

If your language does not use an abstract noun for the idea of **death**, you could express the same idea in another way. Alternate translation: [the man shall be killed]
Support Reference: Abstract Nouns

ULT **stoning him with the stones**
UST by throwing stones at him

It might seem that the expression **stoning him with the stones** contains extra information that would not be natural to express in your language. If so, you could shorten it. Alternate translation: [stoning him]
Support Reference: Making Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information Explicit

ULT **with the stones**
UST stones

Here, **stones** means stones in general, not specific stones. If it would be helpful to your readers, you could use an expression that would be more natural in your language. Alternate translation: [with stones]
Support Reference: Generic Noun Phrases

ULT **from outside to the camp**
UST outside the area where the Israelites set up their tents

Yahweh is using **from outside to the camp** as a common expression of this culture to mean "in the area outside the camp." If this phrase does not have that meaning in your language, you could use a comparable expression from your language that does have that meaning, or you could state the meaning plainly. See how you translated the similar phrase in 12:14. Alternate translation: [in the area outside the camp]

Support Reference: Idiom

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Yahweh	Yahweh
Moses	Moses
congregation	community
stoning	by throwing
stones	stones

Numbers 15:36

ULT	UST
And all the congregation brought him out to from outside to the camp, and they stoned him with the stones, and he died, just as Yahweh commanded Moses.	*So the whole community took that man outside the area where the Israelites set up their tents. They killed him by throwing stones at him. They did exactly what Yahweh told Moses that they should do.*

ULT **to from outside to the camp**

UST outside the area where the Israelites set up their tents

The expression **to from outside to the camp** is a common expression of this culture that means "to the area outside the camp." If this phrase does not have that meaning in your language, you could use a comparable expression from your language that does have that meaning, or you could state the meaning plainly. See how you translated the similar phrase in verse 35. Alternate translation: [to the area outside the camp]

Support Reference: Idiom

ULT **and they stoned him with the stones**

UST by throwing stones at him

It might seem that the expression **stoned him with the stones** contains extra information that would not be natural to express in your language. If so, you could shorten it. See how you translated the similar words in verse 35. Alternate translation: [and they stoned him]

Support Reference: Making Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information Explicit

ULT **with the stones**

UST stones

The author is not referring to specific **stones**. He means stones in general. If it would be helpful to your readers, you could use an expression that would be more natural in your language. Alternate translation: [with stones]

Support Reference: Generic Noun Phrases

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
congregation	community
stoned	by throwing
Yahweh	Yahweh
Moses	Moses

Numbers 15:37

ULT	UST
And Yahweh spoke to Moses, saying,	*Yahweh told Moses,*

ULT And Yahweh spoke
UST Yahweh told

The author does not indicate exactly when Yahweh spoke the following words. It may have been before or after the events narrated in the previous verses. Avoid implying a time relationship with the previous section. Alternate translation: [One day, Yahweh spoke]
Support Reference: Order of Events

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Yahweh	Yahweh
Moses	Moses

Numbers 15:38

ULT	UST
“Speak to the sons of Israel and say to them, ‘And they shall make for themselves a tassel on the hems of their clothes for their generations, and they shall put on the tassel of the hem a cord of blue,	*“Tell this to the Israelite people: They and their descendants must attach to the corners of their clothes groups of threads that hang down. Each group of threads must include one thick, blue thread.*

ULT **and say to them, ‘And they shall make for themselves**
UST Tell this … the Israelite people: They … must attach

In 15:38–41, Yahweh tells Moses to speak for him to the Israelites. To do so, he uses a quote inside another quote. If it would be clearer in your language, you could translate this so that there is not a quotation within a quotation. See the book introduction for more information, and see the UST for an example.
Support Reference: Quotes within Quotes

ULT **and say to them**
UST Tell this … the Israelite people

The term **and say to them** introduces a direct quotation. In your translation, use a natural way of introducing direct quotations in your language. It may not be necessary to represent this term explicitly.
Support Reference: Quotations and Quote Margins

ULT **And they shall make for themselves a tassel on the hems of their clothes for their generations, and they shall put**
UST They and their descendants must attach to the corners of their clothes groups of threads that hang down … must include

Yahweh switches from the third person (**they**) to second person (“you”) in verse 39. This shows that Moses was supposed to tell the Israelites what they should do, and then tell them directly what the purpose was. If it would be helpful in your language, you could translate all of these statements in the second person. Alternate translation: [And you shall make for yourselves a tassel on the hems of your clothes for your generations, and you shall put]
Support Reference: First, Second or Third Person

ULT **a tassel … on the tassel of**
UST groups of threads that hang down. Each group of threads

A **tassel** is a kind of decorative tuft of threads or cords that hangs down. If your readers would not be familiar with what a tassel is, you could use the name of a similar thing that your readers would recognize, or you could use a more general term. Alternate translation: [a tuft of threads … on the tuft of threads]
Support Reference: Translate Unknowns

ULT **on the hems of their clothes**
UST to the corners of their clothes

The author assumes that readers will know that a typical garment in ancient Israel was a rectangular cloth with four corners at the hems or edges. You could say that explicitly if that would be helpful to your readers. Alternate translation: [at each of the four places where the edges of your clothes meet]
Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

ULT **and they shall put on the tassel of the hem a cord of blue**
UST Each group of threads must include one thick, blue thread

The implication is that the blue cord needs to be attached to the tassel. You could include this information if that would be helpful to your readers. Alternate translation: [and they shall add to each tassel of the hem a cord of blue]
Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

ULT **on the tassel of the hem**
UST Each group of threads

The author is using the possessive form to describe a **tassel** that is attached to **the hem**. If a speaker of your language would not use the possessive form for this, you could express this idea in another way. Alternate translation: [on the tassel at each of the hems]
Support Reference: Possession

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Israel	Israelite
generations	and their descendants

Numbers 15:39

ULT	UST
and it shall be for you for a tassel, and you shall see it, and you shall remember all the commandments of Yahweh, and you shall do them, and you shall not explore after your heart and after your eyes, after which you are committing fornication,	*When they look at these groups of threads, they will think about everything that I have commanded them to do, and that will help them to do it. That way, they will not try to do what they naturally desire, which causes them to faithlessly disobey me.*

ULT **and it shall be for you for a tassel, and you shall see it, and you shall remember all the commandments of Yahweh**

UST When they look at these groups of threads, they will think about everything that I have commanded them to do

The implication is that the Israelites will remember the commandments when they see the tassels. You could include this information if that would be helpful to your readers. Alternate translation: [and it shall be for you for a tassel, and when you see it, you shall remember all the commandments of Yahweh]

Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

ULT **all the commandments of Yahweh**

UST everything that I have commanded them to do

Yahweh is speaking of himself in the third person as **Yahweh**. If it would be helpful in your language, you could translate this in the first person. Alternate translation: [all my commandments]

Support Reference: First, Second or Third Person

ULT **and you shall not explore after your heart and after your eyes**

UST That way, they will not try to do what they naturally desire

Here, Yahweh is speaking of following sinful desires as if a person were exploring a path, going after their **heart** and **eyes**. If this meaning would not be clear in your language, you could use a comparable expression or you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [And you shall not follow your heart and your eyes] or [And you shall not do whatever your heart and your eyes want]

Support Reference: Metaphor

ULT **after your heart and after your eyes**

UST they will … try to do what they naturally desire

Here, **heart** represents thoughts or desires, and **eyes** represents what a person sees and desires. If it would be helpful in your language, you could use an equivalent expression or plain language. Alternate translation: [after your what you think and after what you see] or [after your thoughts and after your desires]

Support Reference: Metonymy

ULT **after which**
UST which causes them to faithlessly disobey me

Yahweh is using **after which** as a common expression of this culture to mean “because of which” or “at whose prompting.” If this phrase does not have that meaning in your language, you could use a comparable expression from your language that does have that meaning, or you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [at whose prompting] or [because of which]
Support Reference: Idiom

ULT **you are committing fornication**
UST causes them to faithlessly disobey me

Here, Yahweh is speaking of the people’s disobedience as if it were **committing fornication**. If this meaning would not be clear in your language, you could use a comparable expression or you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [you are being faithless]
Support Reference: Metaphor

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Yahweh	that I have commanded them to do
fornication	causes them to faithlessly disobey me

Numbers 15:40

ULT	UST
so that you shall remember and do all my commandments, and you shall be holy for your God.	*Instead, they will think about everything that I have commanded them to do, and they will do it. Then, they will be sacred and belong to me, their God.*

ULT **so that you shall remember**
UST Instead, they will think about

Here, **so that** marks **you shall remember** as the goal or purpose of having tassels with blue cords. Use a connector in your language that makes it clear that this is the purpose. Alternate translation: [and so you shall remember] or [and the tassels will help you remember]
Support Reference: Connect — Goal (Purpose) Relationship

ULT **and you shall be holy**
UST Then, they will be sacred

The word translated as **and** indicates that what follows is a result of what came before. Use a connector in your language that makes it clear that what follows is a result of what came before. Alternate translation: [and that way you shall be holy]
Support Reference: Connect — Reason-and-Result Relationship

ULT **for your God**
UST and belong to me, their God

Yahweh is speaking of himself in the third person as **your God**. If it would be helpful in your language, you could translate this in the first person. Alternate translation: [for me, your God]
Support Reference: First, Second or Third Person

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
holy	sacred
God	God

Numbers 15:41

ULT	UST
I am Yahweh your God, who brought you out from the land of Egypt to be for you for a God. I am Yahweh your God.’”	*I am Yahweh, their God. I am the one who led them out of Egypt. I did that so that I would be their God. So, I am Yahweh, their God.”*

ULT **brought you out**
UST led them

In a context such as this, your language might say “took” instead of **brought**. Alternate translation: [took you out]
Support Reference: Go and Come

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
land	out
Egypt	Egypt
God	God
I am Yahweh	I am Yahweh
God	God

Numbers 16

Numbers 16 Introduction

Numbers 16 Chapter Introduction

Structure and Formatting

In this chapter, three men (Korah, Dathan, and Abiram) lead others in rebelling against Moses and Aaron. They want to be the leaders of the Israelites. However, Yahweh kills them and the people who agreed with them. After that, all the Israelites grumble against Moses and Aaron, and Yahweh begins to kill them too. However, Aaron offers incense for them, and Yahweh spares everyone who is still alive.

1. Korah and other leaders challenge Moses and Aaron (1–19)
2. Yahweh punishes the rebels with the opening of the ground and with fire (20–35)
3. The rebels' incense burners become a covering for the altar and a warning to Israel (36–40)
4. The people complain, and Aaron makes atonement to stop a plague (41–50)

Religious and Cultural Concepts in This Chapter

Korah, Dathan, and Abiram rebel

Korah, Dathan, and Abiram, along with many men who agreed with them, rebelled against Moses and Aaron. They argued that all the Israelites were holy, and that Aaron was improperly preventing them from approaching Yahweh. They argued that Moses was a bad leader who had not brought them to a fertile land as he had promised. They think that they should be leaders and priests instead of Moses and Aaron. Moses responds by telling them that they are not really rebelling against Moses and Aaron but against Yahweh, who appointed them. Yahweh then punishes Korah, Dathan, Abiram, and the people who agreed with them.

The Israelites rebel

After Yahweh punished Korah, Dathan, Abiram, and the people who agreed with them, the rest of the Israelites blame Moses and Aaron for killing them. Yahweh is angry and begins to kill them. Again, when the Israelites rebel against Moses and Aaron, they are rebelling against Yahweh, who appointed them.

Offering incense

In this chapter, people offer incense in several situations. To offer incense, they put hot coals or embers in a special pan and sprinkled incense on top of them. The incense would burn, creating a smoke that had a pungent smell. Moses had the 250 leaders who agreed with Korah, as well as Korah and Aaron, offer incense in Yahweh's presence as a test. The person whom Yahweh chose would be the one he wanted to be priest. Later in the chapter, Aaron fulfilled the function of priest by burning incense among the people to make atonement for their sin of

speaking against Moses and Aaron. Both times that people burn incense, it proves that Aaron is the real priest.

The plague

When Yahweh punishes the Israelites for rebelling against Moses and Aaron, he sends a "plague." The word can refer to many different kinds of disasters. Some translations suggest that the "plague" is a kind of disease. The UST illustrates that option. Other translations use a more general word or phrase that refers to any kind of disaster that kills people.

Translation Issues in This Chapter

Did Korah and Dathan and Abiram rebel in the same way?

Korah is a Levite, while Dathan and Abiram are Reubenites. When Moses responds to Korah, he speaks about Levites and priests, and the test for him and the people who agree with him includes offering incense to Yahweh. On the other hand, Dathan and Abiram critique Moses for how he has led them out of Egypt and into the wilderness. Therefore, it is likely that Korah wanted to remove Aaron from being priest, and Dathan and Abiram wanted to remove Moses from being leader. However, these three men and the people who agreed with them did work together. So, this is one rebellion that targets both Moses and Aaron.

When is each group of people punished?

Dathan, Abiram, and their families are punished when the ground opens and swallows them up. Some of the people who agreed with Korah are also punished at this time. While this chapter does not directly state when Korah himself was punished, 26:10–11 indicates that Korah too was swallowed up when the ground opened, although his sons did not die at this time. The 250 leaders of Israel were punished when they offered incense, and fire burned them up.

Numbers 16:1

ULT	UST
And Korah, the son of Izhar, the son of Kohath, the son of Levi, took, and Dathan and Abiram, the sons of Eliab, and On, the son of Peleth, the sons of Reuben,	*Now there was a man whose name was Korah. He was the son of Izhar, who was the son of Kohath, who was the son of Levi. He decided to do something, along with Eliab's sons Dathan and Abiram and Peleth's son On, who were all descendants of Reuben.*

ULT **And Korah, the son of Izhar, the son of Kohath, the son of Levi, took, and Dathan and Abiram, the sons of Eliab, and On, the son of Peleth, the sons of Reuben**

UST Now there was a man whose name was Korah. He was the son of Izhar, who was the son of Kohath, who was the son of Levi. He decided to do something, along with Eliab's sons Dathan and Abiram and Peleth's son On, who were all descendants of Reuben

If it would be more natural in your language, you may want to put all the names of the people who **took** before indicating that they **took**. Alternate translation: [And Korah, the son of Izhar, the son of Kohath, the son of Levi, and Dathan and Abiram, the sons of Eliab, and On, the son of Peleth, the sons of Reuben, took]

Support Reference: Information Structure

ULT **Izhar … Kohath … and Dathan and Abiram … Eliab, and On … Peleth**

UST of Izhar … of Kohath … along with Eliab's … Dathan and Abiram and Peleth's … On

The words **Izhar**, **Kohath**, **Dathan**, **Abiram**, **Eliab**, **On**, and **Peleth** are the names of men.

Support Reference: How to Translate Names

ULT **And … took**

UST He decided to do something

Here, the word **took** could imply that they: (1) **took** action, or decided to do something. Alternate translation: [took action]; or (2) **took** men with them. Alternate translation: [took men]; or (3) **took** confidence or boldness that they should not have had. Alternate translation: [became bold] or [rebelled]

Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Korah	Korah
Levi	Levi
Reuben	Reuben

Numbers 16:2

ULT	UST
and they rose to the face of Moses, and 250 men from the sons of Israel, leaders of the congregation, called ones of meeting, men of name,	*They rebelled against Moses, and 250 men whom the Israelites had chosen to lead their community, whom the other Israelites respected, rebelled with them.*

ULT **and they rose**
UST They rebelled

Here, the author is speaking of opposition as if it were physically rising against Moses. If this meaning would not be clear in your language, you could use a comparable expression or you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [and they opposed]
Support Reference: Metaphor

ULT **to the face of Moses**
UST against Moses

Here, **to the face of** represents being in front of Moses. If it would be helpful in your language, you could use an equivalent expression or plain language. Alternate translation: [in Moses' presence]
Support Reference: Metonymy

ULT **250**
UST 250

Translate this number according to the conventions of your own language and culture. Alternate translation: [two hundred and fifty]
Support Reference: Numbers

ULT **called ones of meeting**
UST had chosen

The expression **called ones** is a passive verbal form. If your language would not use that form, you could express the idea in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. If you need to say who does the action, it could be: (1) the other Israelites, who **called** them to participate in important meetings. Alternate translation: [whom the Israelites called to be at important meetings]; or (2) people at the **meeting**, who selected these men to be leaders. Alternate translation: [whom the people at a meeting had called]
Support Reference: Active or Passive

ULT **called ones of meeting**
UST had chosen

By **called ones of**, the author means they were selected or chosen for a specific purpose. You could indicate this explicitly in your translation if that would be helpful to your readers. Alternate translation: [chosen ones of]
Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

> ULT **men of name**
> UST whom the other Israelites respected, rebelled with them

The author is using **men of name** as a common expression of his culture to mean “respected men” or “men of importance.” If this phrase does not have that meaning in your language, you could use a comparable expression from your language that does have that meaning, or you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [respected men] or [well-known men]

Support Reference: Idiom

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Moses	Moses
Israel	Israelites
leaders	to lead
congregation	community
called	had chosen
meeting	had chosen

Numbers 16:3

ULT	UST
and they assembled against Moses and against Aaron. And they said to them, "Great to you! For all of the congregation, all of them, are holy, and Yahweh is in their midst. And why do you lift yourselves up above the assembly of Yahweh?"	*They came together to criticize Moses and Aaron. They said, "Yahweh is present with the whole Israelite community, and we are all sacred. So, you two are making yourselves greater than you should. You should not consider yourselves greater than the rest of the community of people who serve Yahweh!"*

ULT **do you lift yourselves up above the assembly of Yahweh**

UST You should not consider yourselves greater than the rest of the community of people who serve Yahweh

Here, the protesters are speaking as if Moses and Aaron could physically **lift themselves up** above the rest of the people. They mean that Moses and Aaron had claimed authority over the assembly. If this meaning would not be clear in your language, you could use a comparable expression or you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [do you take authority for yourselves over the assembly of Yahweh] or [do you claim to be more important than the rest of the assembly of Yahweh]

Support Reference: Metaphor

ULT **Great to you**

UST you two are making yourselves greater than you should

The Israelites are using **Great to you** as a common expression of their culture to mean "You take too much authority for yourself." If this phrase does not have that meaning in your language, you could use a comparable expression from your language that does have that meaning, or you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [You make much of yourselves] or [You take too much authority]

Support Reference: Idiom

ULT **For**

UST So

The word translated as **For** indicates that what follows is a reason for what came before. Use a connector in your language that makes it clear that what follows is a reason for what came before. Alternate translation: [We say that because]

Support Reference: Connect — Reason-and-Result Relationship

ULT **all of the congregation, all of them**

UST the whole {Israelite} community, and we are all

These two phrases **all of the congregation** and **all of them** mean basically the same thing. The second emphasizes the meaning of the first by repeating the same idea with different words. If it would be helpful to your readers, you could combine them and express the emphasis in another way. Alternate translation: [every single one of the congregation]

Support Reference: Parallelism

ULT **And why do you lift yourselves up above the assembly of Yahweh**
UST You should not consider yourselves greater than the rest of the community of people who serve Yahweh

Korah and his followers are using the question form to express their disapproval and criticism of Moses and Aaron. If a speaker of your language would not use the question form for that purpose, you could translate this as a statement or as an exclamation. Alternate translation: [It is wrong for you to lift yourselves up above the assembly of Yahweh!]
Support Reference: Rhetorical Question

ULT **the assembly of Yahweh**
UST the rest of the community of people who serve Yahweh

The author is using the possessive form to describe an **assembly** that serves or worships **Yahweh**. If a speaker of your language would not use the possessive form for this, you could express this idea in another way. Alternate translation: [the assembly that worships Yahweh]
Support Reference: Possession

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
assembled	They came together to criticize
Moses	Moses
Aaron	Aaron
congregation	community
holy	sacred
Yahweh	Yahweh
assembly	community

Numbers 16:4

ULT	UST
And Moses heard and fell on his face.	*When Moses heard what they said, he sorrowfully and fearfully bowed down before Yahweh.*

ULT and fell on his face
UST he {sorrowfully and fearfully} bowed down before Yahweh

Fell on his face was a symbolic action by which Moses showed his grief and humility before Yahweh at the rebellion of Korah and his followers. If it would be helpful to your readers, you could explain the significance of this action in the text of your translation or in a footnote. See how you translated the similar words in 14:5. Alternate translation: [lay with his face on the ground to show his grief] or [and bowed with his face to the ground in sorrow]
Support Reference: Symbolic Action

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Moses	Moses
and fell on his face	he {sorrowfully and fearfully} bowed down before Yahweh

Numbers 16:5

ULT	UST
And he spoke to Korah and to all his congregation, saying, "Morning, and Yahweh will make known who is to him and the holy one, and he will present to him, and whom he chooses he will present to him.	*Then he said to Korah and the community that he had assembled, "Tomorrow morning Yahweh will reveal to us who is sacred and belongs to him. Whomever Yahweh selects is the one whom Yahweh authorizes to approach his own presence.*

ULT **and to all his congregation**
UST and the community that he had assembled

The author is using the possessive form to describe a **congregation** that is characterized by following Korah. If a speaker of your language would not use the possessive form for this, you could express this idea in another way. Alternate translation: [and to all the people who had joined him]
Support Reference: Possession

ULT **saying**

Here, the word **saying** introduces a direct quotation. See how you translated **saying** in 1:1.
Support Reference: Quotations and Quote Margins

ULT **Morning**
UST Tomorrow morning

Moses is leaving out some of the words that in many languages a sentence would need in order to be complete. You can supply these words from the context if that would be clearer in your language. Alternate translation: [Wait for the morning] or [Morning will come]
Support Reference: Ellipsis

ULT **and Yahweh will make known who {is} to him and the holy one, and he will present to him, and whom he chooses he will present to him**
UST Yahweh will reveal to us who is sacred and belongs to him. Whomever Yahweh selects is the one whom Yahweh authorizes to approach his own presence

These two phrases **Yahweh will make known who is to him and the holy one, and he will present to him** and **whom he chooses he will present to him** mean basically the same thing. The second emphasizes the meaning of the first by repeating the same idea with different words. If it is helpful, you could connect the phrases in a way that shows that the second phrase is repeating the first one, not saying something additional. Alternate translation: [and Yahweh will make known who is to him and the holy one, and he will present to him. Indeed, whom he chooses he will present to him]
Support Reference: Parallelism

ULT **who {is} to him and the holy one**
UST who is sacred and belongs to him

The phrase **to him and the holy one** expresses a single idea. The word **holy one** tells more about who belongs **to him**. If it would be more natural in your language, you could express this meaning in a different way. Alternate translation: [who is the holy one who is to him]
Support Reference: Hendiadys

ULT **who {is} to him**
UST who … belongs to him

The implication is that Yahweh will show who truly belongs to him and has his approval. You could include this information if that would be helpful to your readers. Alternate translation: [who is his] or [whom he has chosen]
Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

ULT **and he will present to him, and whom he chooses he will present to him**
UST Whomever Yahweh selects is the one whom Yahweh authorizes to approach his own presence

The implication is that Yahweh will enable certain people to come into his presence and serve him. You could include this information if that would be helpful to your readers. Alternate translation: [and he will enable to come near to himself, and whom he chooses he will enable to come near to himself]
Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

ULT **and he will present to him**
UST is the one whom Yahweh authorizes to approach his own presence

Moses is leaving out some of the words that in many languages a sentence would need in order to be complete. You can supply these words from the context if that would be clearer in your language. Alternate translation: [and he will present that person to him]
Support Reference: Ellipsis

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Korah	Korah
congregation	community
Yahweh	Yahweh
known	will reveal to us
holy one	is sacred and
chooses	Whomever Yahweh selects

Numbers 16:6

ULT	UST
Do this: take for you censers, Korah and all his congregation,	*Here is what you, Korah and the community that you have assembled, must do. Prepare pans for burning incense.*

ULT **censers**
UST pans for burning incense

A **censer** is a kind of container used for burning incense. If your readers would not be familiar with what a censer is, you could use the name of a similar thing that your readers would recognize, or you could use a more general term. Alternate translation: [containers for incense]
Support Reference: Translate Unknowns

ULT **and all his congregation**
UST and the community that you have assembled

Here Moses is using the possessive form to describe a **congregation** that is characterized by following Korah. If a speaker of your language would not use the possessive form for this, you could express this idea in another way. See how you translated the similar form in verse 5. Alternate translation: [and all the people who have joined him]
Support Reference: Possession

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Korah	Korah
congregation	community

Numbers 16:7

ULT	UST
and put fire in them, and set incense on them to the face of Yahweh tomorrow. And it will happen that the man whom Yahweh chooses, he is the holy one. Great to you, sons of Levi!"	*Tomorrow morning, put burning coals in the pans and burn incense in Yahweh's presence. At that time, Yahweh will choose one man, and we will know that it is he who is sacred. You Levites are making yourselves greater than you should!"*

ULT **fire**
UST burning coals

Here, **fire** represents burning coals. If it would be helpful in your language, you could use an equivalent expression or plain language. Alternate translation: [embers]
Support Reference: Metonymy

ULT **to the face of Yahweh**
UST in Yahweh's presence

Here, **to the face of** represents being in front of Yahweh. If it would be helpful in your language, you could use an equivalent expression or plain language. Alternate translation: [before Yahweh]
Support Reference: Metonymy

ULT **the man whom Yahweh chooses, he {is} the holy one**
UST Yahweh will choose one man, and we will know that it is he who is sacred

It might seem that the expression **the man whom Yahweh chooses, he is the holy one** contains extra information that would not be natural to express in your language. If so, you could shorten it. Alternate translation: [the man whom Yahweh chooses is the holy one]
Support Reference: Making Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information Explicit

ULT **Great to you**
UST are making yourselves greater than you should

Moses is using the phrase **Great to you** as a common expression of his culture to mean "You take too much authority" or "You make too much of yourselves." If this phrase does not have that meaning in your language, you could use a comparable expression from your language that does have that meaning, or you could state the meaning plainly. See how you translated the similar phrase in verse 3. Alternate translation: [You make much of yourselves] or [You take too much authority]
Support Reference: Idiom

ULT **sons of Levi**
UST You Levites

Here, Moses is speaking as if all the people who were descended from Levi were actually **sons of Levi**. If this meaning would not be clear in your language, you could use a comparable expression or you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [men descended from Levi]
Support Reference: Metaphor

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
incense	incense
Yahweh	Yahweh’s
holy one	who is sacred
Levi	Levites

Numbers 16:8

ULT	UST
And Moses said to Korah, "Please hear, sons of Levi:	*Then Moses spoke again to Korah. He said, "Listen to me, you Levites!*

ULT **And Moses said to Korah**
UST Then Moses spoke again to Korah

Here, Moses continues speaking with Korah. The author states that Moses addressed **Korah** specifically, but Moses also addresses all the Levites who are with Korah. If it would be helpful to your readers, you could indicate more explicitly that Moses continues to speak, addressing himself directly to Korah but including other Levites as well. Alternate translation: [And Moses continued to speak with Korah as well as the Levites who were with him. He said]

Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

ULT **sons of Levi**
UST you Levites

Moses is speaking of the tribe of Levi as if they were literally the **sons of Levi**. They were actually his descendants. If it would be helpful in your language, you could state the meaning plainly. See how you translated this phrase in verse 7. Alternate translation: [men descended from Levi]

Support Reference: Metaphor

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Moses	Moses
Korah	Korah
Please	He said, "Listen to me
Levi	Levites

Numbers 16:9

ULT	UST
Is it small from you that the God of Israel has separated you from the congregation of Israel to present you to him to serve the service of the Dwelling of Yahweh and to stand to the face of the congregation to minister to them?	*The God whom we Israelites serve has set you apart from the rest of the Israelite community. He has authorized you to approach his own presence. So, you set up and take down the sacred tent. You help the rest of the community. That should be great enough for you!*

ULT **and to stand to the face of the congregation**
UST You help the rest of the community

Here, Moses is speaking of the Levites serving in front of the congregation as if they were standing **to the face** of the congregation. If this meaning would not be clear in your language, you could use a comparable expression or you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [and to be ready to serve the congregation]
Support Reference: Metaphor

ULT **Is it small from you that the God of Israel has separated you from the congregation of Israel to present you to him to serve the service of the Dwelling of Yahweh and to stand to the face of the congregation to minister to them**
UST The God whom we Israelites serve has set you apart from the rest of the Israelite community. He has authorized you to approach his own presence. So, you set up and take down the sacred tent. You help the rest of the community. That should be great enough for you

Moses is using the question form to rebuke Korah for not being content with his role. If a speaker of your language would not use the question form for that purpose, you could translate this as a statement or as an exclamation. Alternate translation: [You should not consider it small from you that the God of Israel has separated you from the congregation of Israel to present you to him to serve the service of the Dwelling of Yahweh and to stand to the face of the congregation to minister to them!]
Support Reference: Rhetorical Question

ULT **Is it small from you that**
UST That should be great enough for you

Moses is using **Is it small from you** as a common expression of his culture to mean “Do you consider it insignificant?” If this phrase does not have that meaning in your language, you could use a comparable expression from your language that does have that meaning, or you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [Do you consider it insignificant]
Support Reference: Idiom

ULT **to serve the service of the Dwelling of**
UST So, you set up and take down the … tent

The author is using a construction in which a verb and its object come from the same root. You may be able to use the same construction in your language to express the meaning here. Alternatively, your language may have another way of saying this. Alternate translation: [to serve]
Support Reference: Poetry

> ULT **the service of the Dwelling of Yahweh**
> UST So, you set up and take down the sacred tent

If your language does not use an abstract noun for the idea of **service**, you could express the same idea in another way. Alternate translation: [as the Dwelling of Yahweh needs to be served]
Support Reference: Abstract Nouns

> ULT **to the face of the congregation**
> UST the rest of the community

Here, **to the face of** represents being in front of the congregation. If it would be helpful in your language, you could use an equivalent expression or plain language. Alternate translation: [before the congregation]
Support Reference: Metonymy

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
God	God
Israel	Israelites
congregation	community
serve	So, you set up and take down
the Dwelling of	the … tent
Yahweh	sacred
to minister	You help

Numbers 16:9-10

> ULT **Is it small from you that the God of Israel has separated you from the congregation of Israel to present you to him to serve the service of the Dwelling of Yahweh and to stand to the face of the congregation to minister to them? And he has presented you and all your brothers, the sons of Levi, with you, but do you seek the priesthood also**
> UST The God whom we Israelites serve has set you apart from the rest of the Israelite community. He has authorized you to approach his own presence. So, you set up and take down the sacred tent. You help the rest of the community. That should be great enough for you! Yahweh has authorized you, {Korah,} along with your fellow Levites, to approach {his own presence}. You should not demand to become priests also

The question that begins in 16:9 could end at: (1) the end of verse 9. In this case, verse 10 is its own question. See the ULT. (2) the words **the sons of Levi, with you** in verse 10. Alternate translation: [Is it small from you that the God of Israel has separated you from the congregation of Israel to present you to him to serve the service of the Dwelling of Yahweh and to stand to the face of the congregation to minister to them and has presented you and all your brothers, the sons of Levi, with you? But do you seek the priesthood also?]

Support Reference: Rhetorical Question

Numbers 16:10

ULT	UST
And he has presented you and all your brothers, the sons of Levi, with you, but do you seek the priesthood also?	*Yahweh has authorized you, Korah, along with your fellow Levites, to approach his own presence. You should not demand to become priests also!*

ULT **the sons of Levi**
UST Levites

Here, Moses is speaking as if the people of the tribe of Levi were literally the **sons of Levi**. They were actually his descendants. If this meaning would not be clear in your language, you could use a comparable expression or you could state the meaning plainly. See how you translated this phrase in verse 7. Alternate translation: [the men descended from Levi]
Support Reference: Metaphor

ULT **And he has presented you**
UST Yahweh has authorized you, Korah … to approach his own presence

The implication is that God enabled the Levites to serve at his sanctuary. You could include this information if that would be helpful to your readers. See how you translated the similar phrases in verse 5. Alternate translation: [And he has enabled you and all your brothers, the sons of Levi, with you to come near to himself]
Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

ULT **you and all your brothers … with you, but do you seek**
UST you, {Korah,} along with your fellow … You should not demand

The word **you** is singular in most of this verse because Moses is speaking to Korah, but in **you seek** it is plural because Moses is speaking about Korah and his fellow Levites. Use the correct singular and plural forms in your translation if your language marks that distinction.
Support Reference: Forms of 'You' — Singular

ULT **and all your brothers**
UST along with your fellow

Here, Moses is using the term **brothers** to describe people who are descended from the same ancestor. If it would be helpful in your language, you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [and all your relatives]
Support Reference: Metaphor

ULT **but do you seek the priesthood also**
UST You should not demand to become priests also

Moses is using the question form to express disapproval of Korah's desire for the priesthood. If a speaker of your language would not use the question form for that purpose, you could translate this as a statement or as an exclamation. Alternate translation: [but you are seeking the priesthood also!] or [and despite that you are seeking the priesthood also.]
Support Reference: Rhetorical Question

> ULT **the priesthood**
> UST to become priests

If your language does not use an abstract noun for the idea of **priesthood**, you could express the same idea in another way. Alternate translation: [to serve as priests]

Support Reference: Abstract Nouns

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Levi	Levites
seek	You should not demand
priesthood	priests

Numbers 16:11

ULT	UST
Therefore, you and all your congregation are the ones congregating against Yahweh, and Aaron, what is he that you murmur against him?"	*So, Aaron is not the one whom you are really complaining about. Actually, you and the community that you have assembled have gathered together to oppose Yahweh!"*

ULT **you and all your congregation … you murmur**
UST you are really complaining … you and the community that you have assembled

In this verse, forms of **you** are singular except for the word **you** in **you murmur**, which is plural because it refers to both Korah and his followers. So use the plural form in that place in your translation if your language marks that distinction.
Support Reference: Forms of 'You' — Singular

ULT **and all your congregation**
UST and the community that you have assembled

Moses is using the possessive form to describe a **congregation** that is characterized by following Korah. If a speaker of your language would not use the possessive form for this, you could express this idea in another way. See how you translated the similar words in verse 5. Alternate translation: [and all the people who have joined you]
Support Reference: Possession

ULT **and Aaron, what is he that you murmur against him**
UST So, Aaron is not the one whom you are really complaining about

Moses is using the question form to emphasize that Aaron is not really the one they are rebelling against. If a speaker of your language would not use the question form for that purpose, you could translate this as a statement or as an exclamation. Alternate translation: [and Aaron is not actually the one whom you are murmuring against] or [and since Yahweh appointed Aaron, Aaron is not the one whom you are actually murmuring against]
Support Reference: Rhetorical Question

ULT **and Aaron, what is he that**
UST So, Aaron is not the one whom

It might seem that the expression **and Aaron, what is he** contains extra information that would not be natural to express in your language. If so, you could shorten it. Alternate translation: [and what is Aaron that]
Support Reference: Making Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information Explicit

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
congregation	community
Yahweh	Yahweh
Aaron	Aaron

Numbers 16:12

ULT	UST
And Moses sent to call for Dathan and for Abiram, the sons of Eliab, and they said, "We will not go up.	*Then Moses sent a messenger to summon Eliab's sons Dathan and Abiram. They told the messenger to say to Moses, "We will not come to you!*

ULT **And Moses sent to call**
UST Then Moses sent {a messenger} to summon

The implication is that Moses sent someone to call Dathan and Abiram. You could include this information if that would be helpful to your readers. Alternate translation: [And Moses sent someone to call]
Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

ULT **for Dathan and for Abiram, the sons of Eliab**
UST Eliab's sons Dathan and Abiram

The words **Dathan** and **Abiram** are the names of men, and **Eliab** is also the name of a man. See how you translated these names in verse 1.
Support Reference: How to Translate Names

ULT **We will not go up**
UST We will not come to you

Dathan and Abiram are using **go up** as a common expression of their culture to mean "present ourselves to you." If this phrase does not have that meaning in your language, you could use a comparable expression from your language that does have that meaning, or you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [We will not present ourselves to you]
Support Reference: Idiom

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Moses	Moses
call	a messenger to summon

Numbers 16:13

ULT	UST
Is it small that you have brought us up from a land flowing with milk and honey to kill us in the wilderness that you make yourself rule over us, also making yourself rule?	*You led us out of Egypt, which is a very fertile place, to make us die here in this desolate area. That was bad! But now you claim to be our ruler in every way. That is worse!*

ULT **up from a land flowing {with} milk and honey**
UST of Egypt, which is a very fertile place

Here, Dathan and Abiram are speaking of Egypt as if it were a land actually **flowing with milk and honey**. This was a way of saying that it was a very fertile and productive place. If this meaning would not be clear in your language, you could use a comparable expression or you could state the meaning plainly. See how you translated the similar phrase in 13:27. Alternate translation: [from a land that is rich and fertile] or [from a land that is very productive]
Support Reference: Metaphor

ULT **Is it small that you have brought us up from a land flowing {with} milk and honey to kill us in the wilderness that you make yourself rule over us, also making yourself rule**
UST You led us out of Egypt, which is a very fertile place, to make us die here in this desolate area. That was bad! But now you claim to be our ruler in every way. That is worse

Dathan and Abiram are using the question form to express indignation at Moses' leadership. If a speaker of your language would not use the question form for that purpose, you could translate this as a statement or as an exclamation. Alternate translation: [You should not consider it so small that you have brought us up from a land flowing with milk and honey to kill us in the wilderness that you make yourself rule over us, also making yourself rule!]
Support Reference: Rhetorical Question

ULT **Is it small that**
UST That was bad

The phrase **Is it small that** is a common expression of this culture that means "Do you consider it insignificant that" or "Is it not enough that." If this phrase does not have that meaning in your language, you could use a comparable expression from your language that does have that meaning, or you could state the meaning plainly. See how you translated the similar phrase in verse 9. Alternate translation: [Do you consider it so insignificant that]
Support Reference: Idiom

ULT **you make yourself rule over us, also making yourself rule**
UST you claim to be our ruler in every way. That is worse

Dathan and Abiram are repeating forms of the verb **rule** in order to intensify their expression of the idea that it conveys. If your language can repeat words for intensification, it would be appropriate to do that here in your translation. If not, your language may have another way of expressing the intensification. Alternate translation: [you make yourself rule over us completely]
Support Reference: Reduplication

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
land	of Egypt
honey	which is a very fertile place
kill	to make us die
wilderness	here in this desolate area
you make yourself rule	you claim to be our ruler
rule	That is worse

Numbers 16:14

ULT	UST
Also, you have not brought us to a land flowing with milk and honey, or given to us an inheritance of field and vineyard. Will you gouge out the eyes of these men? We will not go up."	*Further, you have not taken us to a very fertile land. You have not provided fields and vineyards for us and our descendants. You are only trying to deceive us Israelites! So, we will not come to you."*

ULT **to a land flowing {with} milk and honey**
UST to a very fertile land

Here, Dathan and Abiram are speaking as if the land were actually **flowing with milk and honey**. If this meaning would not be clear in your language, you could use a comparable expression or you could state the meaning plainly. See how you translated the similar phrase in verse 13. Alternate translation: [to a land that is rich and fertile] or [to a land that is very productive]
Support Reference: Metaphor

ULT **Will you gouge out the eyes of these men**
UST You are only trying to deceive us Israelites

Here, Dathan and Abiram are speaking of deceiving people as if it were **gouging out** their eyes. If this meaning would not be clear in your language, you could use a comparable expression or you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [Will you mislead these men] or [Will you trick these men]
Support Reference: Metaphor

ULT **an inheritance of field**
UST fields … for us and our descendants

Dathan and Abiram are using the term **inheritance** by association to mean a lasting possession that would be passed down to future generations. If it would be helpful in your language, you could use an equivalent expression or plain language. Alternate translation: [a lasting possession of]
Support Reference: Metonymy

ULT **field and vineyard**
UST fields and vineyards

Here, **field** and **vineyard** represent agricultural land in general, not specific fields and vineyards. If it would be helpful to your readers, you could use expressions that would be more natural in your language. Alternate translation: [of fields and vineyards]
Support Reference: Generic Noun Phrases

ULT **Will you gouge out the eyes of these men**
UST You are only trying to deceive us Israelites

Dathan and Abiram are using the question form to make a strong negative statement. If a speaker of your language would not use the question form for that purpose, you could translate this as a statement or as an exclamation. Alternate translation: [You cannot gouge out the eyes of these men!]
Support Reference: Rhetorical Question

> ULT **We will not go up**
> UST So, we will not come to you

See how you translated this clause in 16:12. Alternate translation: [We will not present ourselves to you]

Support Reference: Idiom

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
land	land
honey	a very fertile
inheritance	for us and our descendants
vineyard	vineyards

Numbers 16:15

ULT	UST
And it burned exceedingly for Moses, and he said to Yahweh, "Do not turn to their grain offering. I have not lifted up one donkey from them. And I have not done evil to one from them."	*Then Moses was very angry. He said to Yahweh, "I have not taken anything from them, not even one donkey. I have not harmed any of them. Despite that, they still complain about me. So, please do not accept anything that they offer to you."*

ULT **Do not turn to**

UST Despite that, they still complain about me. So, please do not accept anything that they offer to you

Here, Moses is speaking of accepting an offering as if Yahweh would **turn to** look at it. If this meaning would not be clear in your language, you could use a comparable expression or you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [Do not receive]

Support Reference: Metaphor

ULT **I have not lifted up one donkey from them**

UST I have not taken anything from them, not even one donkey

Here, Moses is speaking of stealing as if it were lifting something up. If this meaning would not be clear in your language, you could use a comparable expression or you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [I have not stolen one donkey from them]

Support Reference: Metaphor

ULT **And it burned exceedingly for Moses**

UST Then Moses was very angry

The author is using **it burned exceedingly** as a common expression of this culture to mean "he became very angry." If this phrase does not have that meaning in your language, you could use a comparable expression from your language that does have that meaning, or you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [and Moses' anger burned greatly] or [and Moses was enraged]

Support Reference: Idiom

ULT **their grain offering**

UST Despite that, they still complain about me. So, please do … accept anything that they offer to you

By **grain offering**, Moses means any offering from them at all. He is using a grain offering as an example because it was a small offering. You could indicate this explicitly in your translation if that would be helpful to your readers. Alternate translation: [any offering from them, even a grain offering]

Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

> ULT **one donkey**
> UST one donkey

By **one donkey**, Moses means he has not taken anything from the Israelites, not even something as insignificant as a donkey. You could indicate this explicitly in your translation if that would be helpful to your readers. Alternate translation: [something as insignificant as one donkey]

Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Moses	Moses
Yahweh	Yahweh
grain offering	Despite that, they still complain about me. So, please do … accept anything that they offer to you
donkey	donkey
evil	I have … harmed

Numbers 16:16

ULT	UST
And Moses said to Korah, "You and all your congregation, be to the face of Yahweh, you and they and Aaron, tomorrow.	*Then Moses told Korah, "You and the community that you have assembled must present yourselves in Yahweh's presence tomorrow. Aaron will also be there.*

ULT **and all your congregation**
UST and the community that you have assembled

Moses is using the possessive form to describe a **congregation** that is characterized by following Korah. If a speaker of your language would not use the possessive form for this, you could express this idea in another way. See how you translated this phrase in verse 11. Alternate translation: [all the people who have joined you]
Support Reference: Possession

ULT **to the face of Yahweh**
UST in Yahweh's presence

Here, **to the face of** represents being in front of Yahweh. If it would be helpful in your language, you could use an equivalent expression or plain language. Alternate translation: [before Yahweh]
Support Reference: Metonymy

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Moses	Moses
Korah	Korah
congregation	community
Yahweh	Yahweh's
Aaron	Aaron

Numbers 16:17

ULT	UST
And take a man his censer, and put incense on them, and present to the face of Yahweh, a man his censer, 250 censers, and you and Aaron, a man his censer."	*Each man must bring his pan for burning incense. That will be 250 pans, plus yours and Aaron's. Each man must burn incense and offer it in Yahweh's presence."*

ULT **And take a man his censer, and put incense on them, and present to the face of Yahweh, a man his censer, 250 censers**

UST Each man must bring his pan for burning incense. That will be 250 pans … Each man must burn incense and offer it in Yahweh's presence

It might seem that the second occurrence of the expression **a man his censer** contains extra information that would not be natural to express in your language. If so, you could shorten it. Alternate translation: [And take a man his censer, and put incense on them, and present to the face of Yahweh, 250 censers]

Support Reference: Making Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information Explicit

ULT **And take a man his censer**

UST Each man must bring his pan for burning incense

Moses is using **take a man his censer** as a common expression of his culture to mean "each man must take his censer." If this phrase does not have that meaning in your language, you could use a comparable expression from your language that does have that meaning, or you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [And all the men must take their censers]

Support Reference: Idiom

ULT **his censer … his censer … censers … his censer**

UST his pan for burning incense … pans

A **censer** is a kind of metal container used for burning incense. If your readers would not be familiar with what a censer is, you could use a more general term or explain it in a footnote. See how you translated **censer** in verse 6. Alternate translation: [his container for incense … his container for incense … containers for incense … his container for incense]

Support Reference: Translate Unknowns

ULT **to the face of Yahweh**

UST in Yahweh's presence

Here, **to the face of** represents being in front of Yahweh. If it would be helpful in your language, you could use an equivalent expression or plain language. Alternate translation: [before Yahweh]

Support Reference: Metonymy

ULT **250**

UST That will be 250

Translate this number according to the conventions of your own language and culture. Alternate translation: [two hundred and fifty]

Support Reference: Numbers

ULT **a man his censer … a man his censer**
UST Each man … his pan for burning incense … Each man must burn

Moses is using **a man his censer** as a common expression of his culture to mean "each person with his own censer." If this phrase does not have that meaning in your language, you could use a comparable expression from your language that does have that meaning, or you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [all the men with their censers … each with your own censer]

Support Reference: Idiom

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
incense	incense
Yahweh	Yahweh's
Aaron	Aaron's

Numbers 16:18

ULT	UST
And they took a man his censer, and they put fire on them and set incense on them, and they stood at the opening of the tent of meeting, and Moses and Aaron.	*So, the next day each of those men brought his pan for burning incense. They all put burning coals in their pans and burned incense. Along with Moses and Aaron, they stood at the entrance to the sacred tent.*

ULT **And they took a man his censer**

UST So, {the next day} each of those men brought his pan for burning incense

Moses is using **a man his censer** as a common expression of his culture to mean "each man took his own censer." If this phrase does not have that meaning in your language, you could use a comparable expression from your language that does have that meaning, or you could state the meaning plainly. See how you translated the similar words in verse 17. Alternate translation: [And all the men took their censers]

Support Reference: Idiom

ULT **and they stood {at} the opening of the tent of meeting, and Moses and Aaron**

UST Along with Moses and Aaron, they stood at the entrance to the sacred tent

If it would be more natural in your language, you may want to put the information about **Moses and Aaron** with the information about the others who stood at the entrance. Alternate translation: [and they and Moses and Aaron stood at the opening of the tent of meeting]

Support Reference: Information Structure

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
incense	incense
tent of meeting	to the sacred tent
Moses	Moses
Aaron	Aaron

Numbers 16:19

ULT	UST
And Korah assembled all the congregation against them to the opening of the tent of meeting, and the glory of Yahweh appeared to all the congregation.	*Korah also summoned the whole Israelite community to oppose Moses and Aaron at the entrance to the sacred tent. Then Yahweh made himself present to the whole Israelite community in a glorious way.*

ULT **all the congregation**

UST the whole Israelite community

Here, the **congregation** could be: (1) the Israelite community. Alternate translation: [all the Israelite congregation]; or (2) just the men with Korah, referred to as "his congregation" in 16:5. Alternate translation: [all his congregation] or [all his followers]

Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

ULT **and the glory of Yahweh appeared**

UST Then Yahweh made himself present … in a glorious way

If your language does not use an abstract noun for the idea of **glory**, you could express the same idea in another way. See how you translated the similar clause in 14:10. Alternate translation: [and Yahweh showed himself gloriously]

Support Reference: Abstract Nouns

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Korah	Korah
assembled	also summoned
congregation	community
tent of meeting	to the sacred tent
glory	glorious
Yahweh	Yahweh

Numbers 16:21

ULT	UST
“Separate yourselves from the midst of this congregation, and I shall finish them according to a moment.”	*“Get away from this community! Then I can destroy them in an instant.”*

ULT **and I shall finish them**
UST Then I can destroy them

Yahweh is using **I shall finish them** as a common expression of the culture to mean “I will make them die” or “I will cause them to cease to exist.” If this phrase does not have that meaning in your language, you could use a comparable expression from your language that does have that meaning, or you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [and I shall end their lives] or [and I will make them experience death]
Support Reference: Idiom

ULT **according to a moment**
UST in an instant

Yahweh is using **according to a moment** as a common expression of the culture to mean “instantly” or “immediately.” If this phrase does not have that meaning in your language, you could use a comparable expression from your language that does have that meaning, or you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [instantly]
Support Reference: Idiom

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
congregation	community
moment	in an instant

Numbers 16:22

ULT	UST
And they fell on their faces and said, "God, the God of the spirits of all flesh, will one man sin and you be angry against all the congregation?"	*However, Moses and Aaron sorrowfully and fearfully bowed down before Yahweh. They said, "God, you are the God who makes everything live. Please do not act in an angry way toward the whole community when only one person did what was wrong!"*

ULT **And they fell on their faces**
UST However, Moses and Aaron {sorrowfully and fearfully} bowed down before Yahweh

Falling on their faces was a symbolic action by which Moses and Aaron showed their grief and submission to God. If it would be helpful to your readers, you could explain the significance of this action in the text of your translation or in a footnote. See how you translated the similar words in chapter 14:5. Alternate translation: [And they lay with their faces on the ground to show their grief] or [And they bowed with their faces to the ground in sorrow]
Support Reference: Symbolic Action

ULT **the God of the spirits of all flesh**
UST you are the God who makes everything live

The author is using the possessive form to describe **God** who gives or rules the **spirits** that belong to or are in **all flesh**. If a speaker of your language would not use the possessive form for this, you could express this idea in another way. Alternate translation: [the God who rules the spirits in all flesh] or [the God who gave the spirits to all flesh]
Support Reference: Possession

ULT **the spirits of all flesh**
UST who makes everything live

Moses and Aaron are using **the spirits of all flesh** as a common expression of their culture to mean "the life that is in all living things." If this phrase does not have that meaning in your language, you could use a comparable expression from your language that does have that meaning, or you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [the life that is in all living things] or [everything that lives]
Support Reference: Idiom

ULT **will one man sin and you be angry against all the congregation**
UST Please do not act in an angry way toward the whole community when only one person did what was wrong

Moses and Aaron are using the question form to protest the unfairness of punishing everyone for one person's sin. If a speaker of your language would not use the question form for that purpose, you could translate this as a statement or as an exclamation. Alternate translation: [when one man sins, surely you will not be angry against all the congregation.]
Support Reference: Rhetorical Question

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
And they fell on their faces	However, Moses and Aaron {sorrowfully and fearfully} bowed down before Yahweh
God	God
spirits	who makes everything live
sin	did what was wrong
congregation	community

Numbers 16:24

ULT	UST
"Speak to the congregation, saying, 'Be taken up from around to the dwelling of Korah, Dathan, and Abiram.'"	*"Tell this to the Israelite community: They must get away from the place where Korah, Dathan, and Abiram are staying."*

ULT **Be taken up**
UST They must get away

Here, Yahweh is speaking of moving away from Korah's dwelling as if people could be **taken up** from that place. If this meaning would not be clear in your language, you could use a comparable expression or you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [Move away]
Support Reference: Metaphor

ULT **Speak to the congregation, saying, 'Be taken up from around to the dwelling of Korah, Dathan, and Abiram**
UST Tell this to the {Israelite} community: They must get away from the place where Korah, Dathan, and Abiram are staying

If it would be clearer in your language, you could translate this so that there is not a quotation within a quotation. Alternate translation: [Tell the congregation that they must be taken up from around to the dwelling of Korah, Dathan, and Abiram.]
Support Reference: Quotes within Quotes

ULT **Be taken up**
UST They must get away

The expression **Be taken up** is a passive verbal form. If your language would not use that form, you could express the idea in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. If you need to say who does the action, the context indicates that it is the Israelites. Alternate translation: [Take yourselves up]
Support Reference: Active or Passive

ULT **from around to the dwelling of Korah, Dathan, and Abiram**
UST from the place where Korah, Dathan, and Abiram are staying

By **from around to the dwelling of Korah, Dathan, and Abiram**, Yahweh means that the people should move away from all sides of where these men were living. You could indicate this explicitly in your translation if that would be helpful to your readers. Alternate translation: [from the dwelling of Korah, Dathan, and Abiram on every side]
Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
congregation	community
to the dwelling of	are staying
Korah	Korah

Numbers 16:25

ULT	UST
And Moses rose and went to Dathan and Abiram, and the elders of Israel went after him.	*Then Moses walked to where Dathan and Abiram were staying. The Israelite leaders followed him.*

ULT **And Moses rose**
UST Then Moses

The author is using **rose** as a common expression of the culture to mean "began to do something." He is not saying that Moses got up from a seated position. If this phrase does not have that meaning in your language, you could use a comparable expression from your language that does have that meaning, or you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [And Moses got ready]
Support Reference: Idiom

ULT **and went**
UST walked

In a context such as this, your language might say "came" instead of **went**. Alternate translation: [and came]
Support Reference: Go and Come

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Moses	Moses
elders	The … leaders
Israel	Israelite

Numbers 16:26

ULT	UST
And he spoke to the congregation, saying, "Turn aside, please, from upon the tents of these wicked men, and do not touch all that is to them, lest you be swept away in all their sins."	*He told the Israelite community, "I ask that you get away from the place where these evil men have set up their tents. Avoid touching anything that belongs to them. Otherwise, you too will experience what will happen when Yahweh punishes them for what they did wrong."*

ULT **you be swept away in all their sins**

UST you too will experience what will happen when Yahweh punishes them for what they did wrong

Here, Moses is speaking as if the punishment of others' sins were a flood that could **sweep away** those who are nearby. If this meaning would not be clear in your language, you could use a comparable expression or you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [you be included when God punishes them for their sins] or [you too experience the punishment for their sins]

Support Reference: Metaphor

ULT **from upon the tents of … men**

UST from the place where … men have set up their tents

Moses is using **from upon the tents of** as a common expression of his culture to mean "from near the tents of." If this phrase does not have that meaning in your language, you could use a comparable expression from your language that does have that meaning, or you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [from near the tents of]

Support Reference: Idiom

ULT **lest you be swept away**

UST Otherwise, you too will experience what will happen when Yahweh punishes them

Moses is using the word translated as **lest** to introduce an outcome that he does not want to happen. Because of this, he first gives the people an instruction to follow so that this will not happen. Use a connector in your language that makes it clear that avoiding this outcome is the purpose of the instruction. Alternate translation: [or else you will be swept away]

Support Reference: Connect — Goal (Purpose) Relationship

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
congregation	community
please	I ask that
tents	tents
wicked	evil
sins	what they did wrong

Numbers 16:27

ULT	UST
And they were taken up from upon the dwelling of Korah, Dathan, and Abiram, from around, and Dathan and Abiram went out, standing at the opening of their tents, and their wives and their sons and their children.	*So the rest of the Israelites got far away from the place where Korah, Dathan, and Abiram were staying. Now Dathan, Abiram, their wives, and their children had left their tents and were standing at the entrances to them.*

ULT **And they were taken up**
UST So the rest of the Israelites got far away

Here, the author is speaking of moving physically away from a place as if the people were being **taken up**. If this meaning would not be clear in your language, you could use a comparable expression or you could state the meaning plainly. See how you translated the similar form in verse 24. Alternate translation: [And they moved away]
Support Reference: Metaphor

ULT **And they were taken up**
UST So the rest of the Israelites got far away

The expression **were taken up** is a passive verbal form. If your language would not use that form, you could express the idea in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. If you need to say who does the action, the context indicates that it is the Israelites. See how you translated the similar form in verse 24. Alternate translation: [And they took themselves up]
Support Reference: Active or Passive

ULT **from upon the dwelling of Korah**
UST from the place where Korah

The expression **from upon the dwelling of** is a common expression of the culture that means "from the area around" or "from near." If this phrase does not have that meaning in your language, you could use a comparable expression from your language that does have that meaning, or you could state the meaning plainly. See how you translated the similar form in verse 26. Alternate translation: [from near the dwelling of]
Support Reference: Idiom

ULT **from around**
UST were staying

The implication is that the people moved away from all sides of where the men were living. You could include this information if that would be helpful to your readers. (See how you translated the similar phrase in verse 24.) Alternate translation: [on every side]
Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

ULT **and Dathan and Abiram went out, standing {at} the opening of their tents, and their wives and their sons and their children**

UST Now Dathan, Abiram, their wives, and their children had left their tents and were standing at the entrances to them

If it would be more natural in your language, you may want to put the information about the wives, sons, and children with the information about **Dathan and Abiram** before saying that they were **standing at the opening of their tents**. Alternate translation: [and Dathan and Abiram and their wives and their sons and their children went out, standing at the opening of their tents]

Support Reference: Information Structure

ULT **and Dathan and Abiram went out**

UST Now Dathan, Abiram … had left their tents

Here, the author implies that Dathan, Abiram, and their families **went out** of their tents before the Israelites moved away from them. If it would be helpful to your readers, you could make the sequence of events more explicit. Alternate translation: [and meanwhile, Dathan and Abiram had gone out]

Support Reference: Order of Events

ULT **went out**

UST had left their tents

The implication is that Dathan and Abiram **went out** of their tents. You could include this information if that would be helpful to your readers. Alternate translation: [went out of their tents]

Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

ULT **went out**

UST had left their tents

In a context such as this, your language might say “came” instead of **went out**. Alternate translation: [came out]

Support Reference: Go and Come

ULT **and their sons and their children**

UST and their children

The implication is that **their sons** and **their children** refer to the same group, with the second phrase being more general. You could include this information if that would be helpful to your readers. Alternate translation: [and their sons and the rest of their children]

Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
the dwelling of	the place where
Korah	Korah
tents	to them
and their wives and their sons and their children	their wives, and their children

Numbers 16:28

ULT	UST
And Moses said, "By this you will know that Yahweh has sent me to do all these works, that they are not from my heart:	*Then Moses said, "I was not the one who decided to do all these things that I have done. It was Yahweh who told me to do them. Here is how you can be sure of that.*

ULT **By this**
UST Here is how you can be sure of

The phrase **By this** refers to what Moses is about to say in verses 29–30. It may be helpful to clarify this for your readers. Alternate translation: [By what I am about to say]

Support Reference: Pronouns — When to Use Them

ULT **they are … from my heart**
UST I was not the one who decided

Here, **heart** represents Moses' own thoughts, desires, or will. If it would be helpful in your language, you could use an equivalent expression or state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [from my own prompting] or [from my own choice]

Support Reference: Metonymy

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Moses	Moses
know	Here is how you can be sure of
Yahweh	Yahweh
works	that I have done

Numbers 16:29

ULT	UST
If as the death of every man these die, and the oversight of every man is counted upon them, Yahweh did not send me.	*Suppose that these men die in a normal way, like most people. In that case, you can be sure that Yahweh did not tell me to do these things.*

ULT **as the death of every man these die, and the oversight of every man is counted upon them**

UST these men die in a normal way, like most people. In that case, you can be sure that

These two phrases **as the death of every man these die** and **the oversight of every man is counted upon them** mean basically the same thing. The second emphasizes the meaning of the first by repeating the same idea with different words. If it would be helpful to your readers, you could combine them and express the emphasis in another way. Alternate translation: [as the death of every man these die in an ordinary way]

Support Reference: Parallelism

ULT **as the death of every man**

UST in a normal way, like most people

If your language does not use an abstract noun for the idea of **death**, you could express the same idea in another way. Alternate translation: [as every man dies]

Support Reference: Abstract Nouns

ULT **every man … every man**

UST in a normal way, like most people

Here the masculine term **man** has a generic sense that includes both men and women. If it would be helpful to your readers, you could use language in your translation that is clearly inclusive of both men and women. Alternate translation: [every human … every human]

Support Reference: When Masculine Words Include Women

ULT **and the oversight of every man is counted upon them**

UST in a normal way, like most people. In that case, you can be sure that

Moses is referring to death in a polite way by using the phrase **the oversight of every man is counted upon them**. Depending on what is helpful in your language, you could use a polite way of referring to this in your language, or you could state this plainly. Alternate translation: [and the fate of every man happens to them] or [and they experience death like everyone else does]

Support Reference: Euphemism

ULT **and the oversight of every man**

UST in a normal way, like most people

If your language does not use an abstract noun for the idea of **oversight**, you could express the same idea in another way. Alternate translation: [and how every man is overseen]

Support Reference: Abstract Nouns

> ULT **Yahweh did not send me**
> UST Yahweh did not tell me to do these things

Moses is leaving out some of the words that in many languages a sentence would need in order to be complete. You can supply these words from the context if that would be clearer in your language. Alternate translation: [then you will know that Yahweh did not send me]

Support Reference: Ellipsis

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Yahweh	Yahweh

Numbers 16:30

ULT	UST
But if Yahweh creates a creation, and the ground opens its mouth and swallows them and all that is to them, and they go down living to Sheol, then you will know that these men spurned Yahweh."	*On the other hand, suppose that Yahweh does something that has never happened before. Suppose that the ground under them breaks open, they and everything they have fall down into the hole, and dirt covers them so that it buries them alive. In that case, you can be sure that these men rejected Yahweh."*

ULT **and they go down living to Sheol**
UST they … fall down … so that it buries them alive

Here, Moses is speaking of death as if it were going to a place called **Sheol** that these people would enter while still alive. If this meaning would not be clear in your language, you could use a comparable expression or you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [and it is as if they arrive at the place of the dead while they are still alive] or [and they die after they are buried instead of before]
Support Reference: Metaphor

ULT **creates a creation**
UST does something that has never happened before

Moses is using a construction in which a verb and its object come from the same root. You may be able to use the same construction in your language to express the meaning here. Alternatively, your language may have another way of saying this. Alternate translation: [creates something] or [makes a creation]
Support Reference: Poetry

ULT **a creation**
UST that has never happened before

By **a creation**, Moses means something that has never happened before. You could indicate this explicitly in your translation if that would be helpful to your readers. Alternate translation: [a new thing]
Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

ULT **and the ground opens its mouth and swallows them**
UST Suppose that the ground under them breaks open … into the hole, and dirt covers them

Moses is speaking of **the ground** as if it were a living thing that could open its mouth and swallow. If it would be helpful in your language, you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [and a hole forms in the ground and engulfs them]
Support Reference: Personification

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Yahweh	Yahweh
creates	does something
creation	that has never happened before
Sheol	so that it buries them alive
know	In that case, you can be sure
spurned	rejected
Yahweh	Yahweh

Numbers 16:31

ULT	UST
And it happened, when he finished to speak all these words, that the ground that was under them was split open,	*As soon as Moses was done talking, the ground beneath those men broke open.*

ULT **that … was split open**
UST broke open

The expression **was split open** is a passive verbal form. If your language would not use that form, you could express the idea in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. If you need to say who does the action, the context indicates that it is the ground. Alternate translation: [split open] or [broke apart]
Support Reference: Active or Passive

ULT **was under them**
UST beneath those men

The pronoun **them** refers to Dathan, Abiram, and their families. It may be helpful to clarify this for your readers. Alternate translation: [under Dathan, Abiram, and their families]
Support Reference: Pronouns — When to Use Them

Numbers 16:32

ULT	UST
and the earth opened its mouth and swallowed them and their houses and every man who was to Korah and all the property,	*When it broke open, those men and their families, as well as all the people who supported Korah besides the 250 men who were burning incense and all their possessions fell into the hole.*

ULT **and their houses**
UST and their families

Here, the author is speaking of the people and animals and objects that belonged to these men as if they were **houses** in which they lived. If this meaning would not be clear in your language, you could use a comparable expression or you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [and their households]
Support Reference: Metaphor

ULT **and the earth opened its mouth and swallowed them**
UST When it broke open, those men … fell into the hole

The author is speaking of **the earth** as if it were a living thing that could open its mouth and swallow people. If it would be helpful in your language, you could state the meaning plainly. See how you translated the similar clause in verse 30. Alternate translation: [and a hole formed in the earth and engulfed them]
Support Reference: Personification

ULT **and their houses and every man who {was} to Korah and all the property**
UST and their families, as well as all the people who supported Korah {besides the 250 men who were burning incense} and all their possessions

Here, **every man** and **all the property** could refer to: (1) people and their property in addition to Dathan, Abiram, and their families. These people agreed with Korah, but they were not among the 250 men who offered incense at the sacred tent. Alternate translation: [and their houses, and in addition every man who was to Korah besides the 250 men and all their property]; or (2) Dathan, Abiram, and their families. The author is simply giving more information about them. Alternate translation: [and their houses, that is, every man who was to Korah and all their property]
Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

ULT **and every man who {was} to Korah**
UST as well as all the people who supported Korah besides the 250 men who were burning incense

The author is using **who was to Korah** as a common expression of the culture to mean "who had followed Korah" or "who had supported Korah." If this phrase does not have that meaning in your language, you could use a comparable expression from your language that does have that meaning, or you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [and every man who had followed Korah]
Support Reference: Idiom

ULT **and every man**
UST as well as all the people

Here the masculine term **man** has a generic sense that includes both men and women. If it would be helpful to your readers, you could use language in your translation that is clearly inclusive of both men and women. Alternate translation: [and every person]

Support Reference: When Masculine Words Include Women

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
earth	the hole
houses	and their families
Korah	Korah

Numbers 16:33

ULT	UST
and they went down, they and all that was to them, living to Sheol, and the earth covered over them, and they perished from the midst of the assembly.	*Dirt covered them and all their possessions so that it buried them alive. They no longer existed as part of the Israelite community.*

ULT **and they went down, they and all that {was} to them, living to Sheol**
UST and all their possessions so that it buried them alive

Here, the author is speaking of death as if it were going to a place called **Sheol** that these people would enter while still alive. If this meaning would not be clear in your language, you could use a comparable expression or you could state the meaning plainly. See how you translated the similar clause in verse 30. Alternate translation: [and it as if they arrived, they and all that was to them, at the place of the dead while they were still alive] or [and they died, they and all that was to them, after they were buried instead of before]

Support Reference: Metaphor

ULT **and the earth covered over them**
UST Dirt covered them

The author is speaking of **the earth** as if it were a living thing that could cover people. If it would be helpful in your language, you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [and they were covered with earth]

Support Reference: Personification

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Sheol	so that it buried them alive
earth	Dirt
perished	They no longer existed
assembly	community

Numbers 16:34

ULT	UST
And all Israel who was around them fled to their voice, for they said, "Lest the earth swallow us!"	*Those people screamed as they fell, and the Israelites ran away when they heard that sound. They said, "We need to run away so that we do not fall into the hole too!"*

ULT **And all Israel**
UST and the Israelites

Here, **all Israel** represents each member of the Israelite community. If it would be helpful in your language, you could use an equivalent expression or plain language. Alternate translation: [And each Israelite]
Support Reference: Metonymy

ULT **to their voice**
UST Those people screamed as they fell … when they heard that sound

The implication is that the Israelites fled because they heard the screams of those who were falling into the opening in the ground. You could include this information if that would be helpful to your readers. Alternate translation: [because of their yells as they fell] or [when they heard them shouting as they fell]
Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

ULT **to their voice**
UST Those people screamed as they fell … when they heard that sound

Here, **to their voice** represents the sounds they made when the ground opened and swallowed them. If it would be helpful in your language, you could use an equivalent expression or plain language. Alternate translation: [to the sounds they made]
Support Reference: Metonymy

ULT **for they said**
UST They said, "We need to run away

The word translated as **for** indicates that what follows is a reason for what came before. Use a connector in your language that makes it clear that what follows is a reason for what came before. Alternate translation: [and here is why: they said]
Support Reference: Connect — Reason-and-Result Relationship

ULT **Lest the earth swallow us**
UST so that we do not fall into the hole too

The implication is that the Israelites would die if they did not run away. You could include this information if that would be helpful to your readers. Alternate translation: [If we do not flee, the earth will swallow us]
Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

ULT **the earth swallow us**
UST we do … fall into the hole too

The author is speaking of **the earth** as if it were a living thing that could swallow people. If it would be helpful in your language, you could state the meaning plainly. See how you translated the similar clause in verse 30. Alternate translation: [the earth engulf them]
Support Reference: Personification

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Israel	Israelites
earth	into the hole too

Numbers 16:35

ULT	UST
And fire went out from with Yahweh, and it ate the 250 men presenting the incense.	*Also, Yahweh sent fire that destroyed the 250 men who were offering incense.*

ULT **And fire went out**
UST Also … sent fire

The author does not clarify whether the event narrated in this verse happened during or after the events narrated in the previous verses. If possible, do not use a time word or phrase to introduce this verse. Alternate translation: [In addition, fire went out]
Support Reference: Order of Events

ULT **went out**
UST sent

In a context such as this, your language might say "came out" instead of **went out**. Alternate translation: [came out]
Support Reference: Go and Come

ULT **and it ate**
UST that destroyed

Here the author is speaking of **fire** as if it were a living thing that could eat. If it would be helpful in your language, you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [and it burned up]
Support Reference: Personification

ULT **the 250**
UST the 250

Translate this number according to the conventions of your own language and culture. Alternate translation: [two hundred and fifty]
Support Reference: Numbers

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Yahweh	Yahweh
and it ate	that destroyed

Numbers 16:37

ULT	UST
"Say to Eleazar, the son of Aaron the priest, and he shall raise the censers from between the burning, and scatter the fire beyond, for they are holy.	*"The pans for burning incense that those men used are sacred. So, tell Aaron the priest's son Eleazar to collect them from the ashes. You must throw away the burning coals that were in them far away from the campsite.*

ULT **Say to Eleazar, the son of Aaron the priest, and he shall raise the censers from between the burning, and scatter the fire beyond, for they are holy**

UST The pans for burning incense {that those men used} are sacred. So, tell Aaron the priest's son Eleazar to collect them from the ashes. You must throw away the burning coals {that were in them} far away from the campsite

If it would be more natural in your language, you could reverse the order of these phrases, since the last phrase **for they are holy** gives the reason for the result that the first phrases describe. Alternate translation: [The censers are holy. Because of that, say to Eleazar, the son of Aaron the priest, and he shall raise the censers from between the burning, and scatter the fire beyond]

Support Reference: Connect — Reason-and-Result Relationship

ULT **Say to Eleazar, the son of Aaron the priest, and he shall raise the censers from between the burning, and scatter**

UST So, tell Aaron the priest's son Eleazar to collect them from the ashes. You must throw away the burning coals that were in them

If it would be more natural in your language, you could express this as a direct quotation. Alternate translation: [Tell Eleazar, the son of Aaron the priest, "Raise the censers from between the burning." And scatter]

Support Reference: Direct and Indirect Quotations

ULT **the censers**

UST them

A **censer** is a kind of container used to burn incense. If your readers would not be familiar with what a censer is, you could use a more general term or explain it in a footnote. See how you translated **censer** in verse 6. Alternate translation: [the containers for incense]

Support Reference: Translate Unknowns

ULT **from between the burning**

UST from the ashes

The implication is that the censers were to be taken from among the ashes and remains of the men who had been burned up. You could include this information if that would be helpful to your readers. Alternate translation: [from the place where the men were burned up]

Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

ULT **and scatter the fire**
UST You must throw away the burning coals that were in them

Here, Yahweh may be commanding Moses: (1) to **scatter the fire** himself. Alternate translation: [and you, scatter the fire]; or (2) to have Eleazar **scatter the fire**. Alternate translation: [and he shall scatter the fire]
Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

ULT **the fire**
UST the burning coals that were in them

Here, **fire** represents the burning coals. If it would be helpful in your language, you could use an equivalent expression or plain language. Alternate translation: [the embers]
Support Reference: Metonymy

ULT **beyond**
UST far away from the campsite

Here, the word **beyond** could refer to: (1) an area far away from the campsite. Alternate translation: [a distance from the camp]; or (2) a spread out area. In other words, the coals should be scattered in many different places. Alternate translation: [far and wide] or [in many places]
Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Eleazar	Eleazar
Aaron	Aaron
priest	priest’s
scatter	You must throw away
holy	sacred

Numbers 16:38

ULT	UST
The censers of these ones sinning against their lives, and they shall make them hammered sheets of thin plates, plating for the altar, for they presented them to the face of Yahweh, and they are holy, and they shall be for a sign for the sons of Israel."	*Those men caused themselves to die by doing what was wrong. They offered incense in those pans in my presence, and those pans are now sacred. So, have workmen hammer them into thin metal sheets and attach them to the outside of the altar. That way, they will remind the Israelites of what happened."*

ULT **The censers of these ones sinning against their lives, and they shall make them hammered sheets of thin plates, plating for the altar, for they presented them to the face of Yahweh, and they are holy**

UST Those men caused themselves to die by doing what was wrong. They offered {incense in} those pans in my presence, and those pans are now sacred. So, have {workmen} hammer them into thin metal sheets and attach them to the outside of the altar. That way

If it would be more natural in your language, you could reverse the order of these phrases, since the second phrase gives the reason for the result that the first phrase describes. Alternate translation: [These ones sinning against their lives presented the censers to the face of Yahweh, and they are holy. Because of that, they shall make them hammered sheets of thin plates, plating for the altar]

Support Reference: Connect — Reason-and-Result Relationship

ULT **The censers of these ones sinning against their lives, and they shall make them hammered sheets of thin plates**

UST Those men caused themselves to die by doing what was wrong … in those pans … So, have {workmen} hammer them into thin metal sheets

If it would be more natural in your language, you may want to put the information about what should be done with the censers before the information about how these men sinned. Alternate translation: [And they shall make the censers of these ones sinning against their lives hammered sheets of thin plates]

Support Reference: Information Structure

ULT **ones sinning against their lives**

UST caused themselves to die by doing what was wrong

Yahweh is using **ones sinning against their lives** as a common expression of the culture to mean "ones who caused their own deaths by sinning." If this phrase does not have that meaning in your language, you could use a comparable expression from your language that does have that meaning, or you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [ones sinning in a way that ends their lives] or [ones sinning with death as the result]

Support Reference: Idiom

ULT **against their lives**

UST caused themselves to die

If your language does not use an abstract noun for the idea of **lives**, you could express the same idea in another way. Alternate translation: [in such a way that they cease living]

Support Reference: Abstract Nouns

ULT **and they shall make**
UST So, have {workmen} hammer them

Here Yahweh is using the pronoun **they** in a general sense, not to refer to specific people. Use an expression for this that would be natural in your language. Alternate translation: [and people shall make]
Support Reference: Pronouns — When to Use Them

ULT **hammered sheets of thin plates**
UST So, have {workmen} hammer them into thin metal sheets

Here, **hammered sheets of thin plates** are a kind of metalwork where metal is flattened into very thin pieces. If your readers would not be familiar with what hammered sheets of thin plates are, you could use a more general term or explain it in a footnote. Alternate translation: [thin sheets of metal that they hammered into that shape]
Support Reference: Translate Unknowns

ULT **plating for the altar**
UST and attach them to the outside of the altar

Here, **plating** is a kind of thin metal that is attached to the outside of something, in this case the altar. If your readers would not be familiar with what **plating** is, you could use the name of a similar thing that your readers would recognize, or you could use a more general term. Alternate translation: [close-fitting covering for the altar]
Support Reference: Translate Unknowns

ULT **for the altar**
UST of the altar

Here, Yahweh does not state explicitly which **altar** he means. He is probably referring to the bronze altar for sacrifices, not the golden incense altar. Alternate translation: [for the altar of sacrifice]
Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

ULT **to the face of Yahweh**
UST in my presence

Here, **to the face of** represents being in front of Yahweh. If it would be helpful in your language, you could use an equivalent expression or plain language. Alternate translation: [before Yahweh]
Support Reference: Metonymy

ULT **and they shall be**
UST they will remind … of what happened

The pronoun **they** refers to the censers that were hammered into plating for the altar. It may be helpful to clarify this for your readers. Alternate translation: [and the censers that are now plating for the altar shall be]
Support Reference: Pronouns — When to Use Them

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
sinning	by doing what was wrong
altar	altar
Yahweh	in my presence
holy	sacred
sign	they will remind … of what happened
Israel	Israelites

Numbers 16:39

ULT	UST
And Eleazar the priest took the censers of bronze that the ones being burned had presented, and they hammered them as plating for the altar,	*So the priest Eleazar collected the bronze pans that the men whom the fire destroyed had offered incense in. Workmen hammered them into sheets to attach to the outside of the altar.*

ULT **the ones being burned**
UST the men whom the fire destroyed

The expression **ones being burned** is a passive verbal form. If your language would not use that form, you could express the idea in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. If you need to say who does the action, the context indicates that it is God. Alternate translation: [the ones whom the fire burned]
Support Reference: Active or Passive

ULT **and they hammered them**
UST Workmen hammered them into sheets

Here the author is using the pronoun **they** in a general sense, not to refer to specific people. Use an expression for this that would be natural in your language. See how you translated the similar form in verse 38. Alternate translation: [and people hammered them]
Support Reference: Pronouns — When to Use Them

ULT **as plating for the altar**
UST to attach to the outside of the altar

See how you translated this phrase in 16:38. Alternate translation: [close-fitting covering for the altar of sacrifice]
Support Reference: Translate Unknowns

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Eleazar	Eleazar
priest	priest
bronze	bronze
altar	altar

Numbers 16:40

ULT	UST
a memorial for the sons of Israel, so that a strange man, who is not from the seed of Aaron, shall not come near to cause incense to become smoke to the face of Yahweh, and he shall not be like Korah and like his congregation, just as Yahweh spoke in the hand of Moses to him.	*Eleazar did exactly what Yahweh commanded through Moses. The sheets remind the Israelites that any person whom Yahweh has not authorized, that is, anyone who is not a descendant of Aaron, must not approach Yahweh's presence to burn incense in a way that causes smoke to go up. Yahweh will punish anyone who is not a descendant of Aaron and who burns incense in Yahweh's presence in the same way he punished Korah and the community that he assembled.*

ULT **a strange man**

UST whom Yahweh has not authorized

Here, **strange** describes a person as if he were a foreigner when he actually is simply someone who is not authorized to perform the duties of a priest. If this meaning would not be clear in your language, you could use a comparable expression or you could state the meaning plainly. See how you translated the similar phrase "strange fire" in Numbers 3:4. Alternate translation: [an unauthorized man]

Support Reference: Metaphor

ULT **from the seed of Aaron**

UST a descendant of Aaron

Here, the author is speaking as if Aaron's descendants were actually his **seed**. If this meaning would not be clear in your language, you could use a comparable expression or you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [from the offspring of Aaron]

Support Reference: Metaphor

ULT **a memorial for the sons of Israel, so that a strange man, who {is} not from the seed of Aaron, shall not come near to cause incense to become smoke to the face of Yahweh, and he shall not be like Korah and like his congregation, just as Yahweh spoke in the hand of Moses to him**

UST Eleazar {did} exactly what Yahweh commanded through Moses. {The sheets} remind the Israelites that any person whom Yahweh has not authorized, that is, anyone who is not a descendant of Aaron, must not approach Yahweh's presence to burn incense in a way that causes smoke to go up. {Yahweh will punish} anyone {who is not a descendant of Aaron and who burns incense in Yahweh's presence} in the same way he punished Korah and the community that he assembled

If it would be more natural in your language, you may want to put the information about how **Yahweh spoke in the hand of Moses** with the information about how Eleazar was instructed before indicating that the plating would serve as a memorial to prevent unauthorized people from offering incense. Alternate translation: [just as Yahweh spoke in the hand of Moses to him. They became a memorial for the sons of Israel, so that a strange man, who is not from the seed of Aaron, shall not come near to cause incense to become smoke to the face of Yahweh, and he shall not be like Korah and like his congregation]

Support Reference: Information Structure

ULT **to the face of Yahweh**
UST Yahweh's presence

Here, **to the face of Yahweh** represents being in front of Yahweh. If it would be helpful in your language, you could use an equivalent expression or plain language. Alternate translation: [before Yahweh]
Support Reference: Metonymy

ULT **and he shall not be**
UST Yahweh will punish anyone {who is not a descendant of Aaron and who burns incense in Yahweh's presence} in the same way he punished

The phrase **and he shall not be** indicates that what follows is a result of what came before. Use a connector in your language that makes it clear that what follows is a result of what came before. Alternate translation: [lest he be] or [and so he shall not be]
Support Reference: Connect — Reason-and-Result Relationship

ULT **like Korah and like his congregation**
UST Korah and the community that he assembled

The point of this comparison is that just as **Korah and his congregation** were punished for approaching God inappropriately, so would anyone else be who violated this command. If it would be helpful in your language, you could make this point explicitly. Alternate translation: [punished as Korah and his congregation were]
Support Reference: Simile

ULT **and like his congregation**
UST and the community that he assembled

The author is using the possessive form to describe a **congregation** that is characterized by following Korah. If a speaker of your language would not use the possessive form for this, you could express this idea in another way. See how you translated the similar form in verse 5. Alternate translation: [the people who joined him]
Support Reference: Possession

ULT **in the hand of Moses**
UST through Moses

The author is using **in the hand of** as a common expression of the culture to mean "under the supervision of" or "through." If this phrase does not have that meaning in your language, you could use a comparable expression from your language that does have that meaning, or you could state the meaning plainly. See how you translated the similar phrase in 4:37. Alternate translation: [under the supervision of Moses]
Support Reference: Idiom

ULT **to him**
UST Eleazar did

The pronoun **him** refers to Eleazar. It may be helpful to clarify this for your readers. Alternate translation: [to Eleazar]
Support Reference: Pronouns — When to Use Them

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Israel	Israelites
seed	a descendant
Aaron	Aaron
incense	incense
Yahweh	Yahweh’s
Korah	Korah
congregation	community
Moses	Moses

Numbers 16:41

ULT	UST
And all the congregation of the sons of Israel murmured from the next day against Moses and against Aaron, saying, "You, you killed the people of Yahweh!"	*The next day, the whole Israelite community complained about Moses and Aaron. They said, "It is you who killed people who belong to Yahweh!"*

ULT **from the next day**
UST The next day

The author is using **from the next day** as a common expression of the culture to mean "starting on the next day." If this phrase does not have that meaning in your language, you could use a comparable expression from your language that does have that meaning, or you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [starting on the next day]
Support Reference: Idiom

ULT **You, you killed**
UST It is you who killed

Here the Israelites are stating the pronoun **you** separately, even though they repeat it twice for emphasis. The Israelites are emphasizing that they hold Moses and Aaron personally responsible. If a speaker of your language would use a repeated pronoun for the same purpose, you may want to use that construction in your translation. If not, your language may have other ways of showing that meaning here. Alternate translation: [You are the one who killed]
Support Reference: Pronouns — When to Use Them

ULT **the people of Yahweh**
UST people who belong to Yahweh

The Israelites are using the possessive form to describe **people** that are characterized by serving or worshiping **Yahweh**. If a speaker of your language would not use the possessive form for this, you could express this idea in another way. Alternate translation: [the people who serve Yahweh] or [the people who worship Yahweh]
Support Reference: Possession

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
congregation	community
Israel	Israelite
day	day
Moses	Moses
Aaron	Aaron
killed	killed
Yahweh	Yahweh

Numbers 16:42

ULT	UST
And it happened, when the congregation assembled against Moses and against Aaron, that they turned to the tent of meeting, and behold, the cloud covered it, and the glory of Yahweh appeared.	*After the community gathered together to oppose Moses and Aaron, they looked at the sacred tent. They saw the cloud directly over it and Yahweh making himself present in a glorious way.*

ULT **and behold, the cloud**
UST They saw the cloud

The author is using the term **behold** to focus his listeners' attention on what he is about to say. Your language may have a comparable expression that you can use in your translation. Alternate translation: [and look, the cloud] or [and they immediately noticed that the cloud]
Support Reference: Metaphor

ULT **the cloud covered it**
UST the cloud directly over it

By **the cloud covered it**, the author means that the cloud that represented God's presence descended upon the tent of meeting. You could indicate this explicitly in your translation if that would be helpful to your readers. Alternate translation: [it was enveloped in the cloud] or [the cloud rested on it]
Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

ULT **the cloud**
UST the cloud

The author assumes that readers will know this is **the cloud** that had been with the Israelites since their departure from Egypt and is described in Numbers 9:15–23. You could say that explicitly if that would be helpful to your readers. Alternate translation: [the cloud that had previously been over the tent]
Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

ULT **and the glory of Yahweh appeared**
UST and Yahweh making himself present in a glorious way

If your language does not use an abstract noun for the idea of **glory**, you could express the same idea in another way. See how you translated this clause in verse 19. Alternate translation: [and Yahweh showed himself gloriously]
Support Reference: Abstract Nouns

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
congregation	community
assembled	gathered
Moses	Moses
Aaron	Aaron
tent of meeting	the sacred tent
glory	glorious
Yahweh	Yahweh

Numbers 16:43

ULT	UST
And Moses and Aaron went to the face of the tent of meeting,	*Then Moses and Aaron walked to the area in front of the sacred tent.*

ULT **And Moses and Aaron went**
UST Then Moses and Aaron walked

In a context such as this, your language might say “came” instead of **went**. Alternate translation: [And Moses and Aaron came]
Support Reference: Go and Come

ULT **to the face of the tent of**
UST to the area in front of the … tent

Here, **to the face of** represents being in front of the tent of meeting. If it would be helpful in your language, you could use an equivalent expression or plain language. Alternate translation: [to the front of] or [to the area before]
Support Reference: Metonymy

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Moses	Moses
Aaron	Aaron
tent of meeting	the sacred tent

Numbers 16:45

ULT	UST
"Lift yourselves up from the midst of this congregation, and I shall finish them according to a moment." And they fell on their faces.	*"Get away from this community! Then I can destroy them in an instant." Then Aaron and Moses sorrowfully and fearfully bowed down before Yahweh.*

ULT **Lift yourselves up**
UST Get away

Here, Yahweh is speaking as if Moses and Aaron could physically **lift** themselves up and take themselves away from the assembly. If this meaning would not be clear in your language, you could use a comparable expression or you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [Move far away]
Support Reference: Metaphor

ULT **Lift yourselves up**
UST Get away

The word **yourselves** is plural here because Yahweh is addressing Moses and Aaron, so use the plural form in your translation if your language marks that distinction.
Support Reference: Forms of 'You' — Singular

ULT **and I shall finish them**
UST Then I can destroy them

Yahweh is referring to death in a polite way by using the phrase **finish them**. Depending on what is helpful in your language, you could use a polite way of referring to this in your language, or you could state this plainly. See how you translated this clause in verse 21. Alternate translation: [and I shall end their lives] or [and I will make them experience death]
Support Reference: Euphemism

ULT **according to a moment**
UST in an instant

Here Yahweh is using **according to a moment** as a common expression of the culture to mean "instantly" or "immediately." If this phrase does not have that meaning in your language, you could use a comparable expression from your language that does have that meaning, or you could state the meaning plainly. See how you translated this phrase in verse 21. Alternate translation: [instantly]
Support Reference: Idiom

ULT **And they fell on their faces**
UST Then Aaron and Moses {sorrowfully and fearfully} bowed down before Yahweh

Falling on their faces was a symbolic action by which Moses and Aaron showed grief and submission to Yahweh. If it would be helpful to your readers, you could explain the significance of this action in the text of your translation or in a footnote. See how you translated this clause in verse 22. Alternate translation: [And they lay with their faces on the ground to show their grief] or [And they bowed with their faces to the ground in sorrow]
Support Reference: Symbolic Action

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
congregation	community
moment	in an instant
And they fell … their faces	Then Aaron and Moses {sorrowfully and fearfully} bowed down … Yahweh

Numbers 16:46

ULT	UST
And Moses said to Aaron, "Take the censer, and put fire on it from upon the altar, and set incense, and bring it quickly to the congregation, and make atonement for them, for the wrath has gone out from to the face of Yahweh. The plague has begun."	*Then Moses told Aaron, "Yahweh is angry and has begun to act on it. He has caused the people to become sick with a terrible disease. So, prepare a pan, put burning coals from the altar in it, and burn incense in it. As soon as you can, take it to the community. When you offer the incense, Yahweh will accept it and remove what they did wrong."*

ULT **the wrath has gone out**

UST Yahweh is angry and has begun to act on it

Here, Moses is speaking of **the wrath** as if it were something that could physically move out from God. If this meaning would not be clear in your language, you could use a comparable expression or you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [Yahweh is angry and has sent punishment]

Support Reference: Metaphor

ULT **Take the censer, and put fire on it from upon the altar, and set incense, and bring {it} quickly to the congregation, and make atonement for them, for the wrath has gone out from to the face of Yahweh. The plague has begun**

UST Yahweh is angry and has begun to act on it. He has caused {the people to become sick with} a terrible disease. So, prepare a pan, put burning coals from the altar in it, and burn incense in it. As soon as you can, take it to the community. {When you offer the incense}, Yahweh will accept it and remove what they did wrong

If it would be more natural in your language, you could reverse the order of these clauses, since the second set of clauses (**the wrath has gone out from to the face of Yahweh. The plague has begun**) gives the reason for the result that the first set of clauses describes (**Take the censer, and put fire on it from upon the altar, and set incense, and bring it quickly to the congregation, and make atonement for them**). Alternate translation: [The wrath has gone out from to the face of Yahweh. The plague has begun. Because of that, take the censer, and put fire on it from upon the altar, and set incense, and bring it quickly to the congregation, and make atonement for them]

Support Reference: Connect — Reason-and-Result Relationship

ULT **the censer**

UST a pan

The implication is that this is the same censer Aaron had used earlier when offering incense (see Numbers 16:6–7). You could include this information if that would be helpful to your readers. Alternate translation: [your censer] or [the censer you used earlier]

Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

ULT **fire**
UST burning coals

Here, **fire** represents burning coals from the altar. If it would be helpful in your language, you could use an equivalent expression or plain language. See how you translated the similar form in verse 7. Alternate translation: [embers]
Support Reference: Metonymy

ULT **from upon the altar**
UST from the altar

By **from upon the altar**, Moses means from the altar of sacrifice where the sacred fire was kept burning. You could indicate this explicitly in your translation if that would be helpful to your readers. Alternate translation: [from upon the altar of sacrifice]
Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

ULT **and bring it**
UST take it

In a context such as this, your language might say “take” instead of **bring**. Alternate translation: [and take it]
Support Reference: Go and Come

ULT **and make atonement for them**
UST When you offer the incense, Yahweh will accept it and remove what they did wrong

If your language does not use an abstract noun for the idea of **atonement**, you could express the same idea in another way. Alternate translation: [and offer the incense to restore them to Yahweh]
Support Reference: Abstract Nouns

ULT **from to the face of Yahweh**
UST Yahweh is angry and has begun to act on it

Here, **from to the face of Yahweh** represents coming from Yahweh’s presence. If it would be helpful in your language, you could use an equivalent expression or plain language. Alternate translation: [from Yahweh’s presence]
Support Reference: Metonymy

ULT **The plague**
UST with a terrible disease

Moses is not referring to a specific, known **plague**. He means a plague that is happening. If it would be helpful to your readers, you could use an expression that would be more natural in your language. Alternate translation: [A plague]
Support Reference: Generic Noun Phrases

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Moses	Moses
Aaron	Aaron
altar	altar
incense	incense
congregation	community
atonement	When you offer the incense, Yahweh will accept it and remove what they did wrong
wrath	Yahweh is angry and has begun to act on it
Yahweh	Yahweh
plague	with a terrible disease

Numbers 16:47

ULT	UST
And Aaron took, just as Moses spoke, and he ran to the midst of the assembly. And behold, the plague had begun among the people. And he put the incense, and he made atonement for the people.	*So Aaron did what Moses told him to do. He prepared a pan, and he hurried to a place in the middle of the community. He saw that the people were already becoming sick with the terrible disease. So, he burned incense, and Yahweh accepted it and removed what the people had done wrong.*

ULT **And Aaron took**
UST So Aaron did

The author is leaving out some of the words that in many languages a sentence would need in order to be complete. You can supply these words from the context if that would be clearer in your language. Alternate translation: [And Aaron took a censer with fire in it]
Support Reference: Ellipsis

ULT **And behold**
UST He saw that

The author is using the term **behold** to focus his listeners' attention on what he is about to say. Your language may have a comparable expression that you can use in your translation. Alternate translation: [And indeed]
Support Reference: Metaphor

ULT **the plague**
UST with the terrible disease

The author is not referring to a specific, known **plague**. He means a sickness or disease that had already begun. If it would be helpful to your readers, you could use an expression that would be more natural in your language. Alternate translation: [a plague]
Support Reference: Generic Noun Phrases

ULT **And he put the incense**
UST So, he burned incense

The implication is that Aaron put the incense on the fire in the censer. You could include this information if that would be helpful to your readers. Alternate translation: [And he put the incense on the fire in the censer]
Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

ULT **and he made atonement for the people**
UST and Yahweh accepted it and removed what the people had done wrong

If your language does not use an abstract noun for the idea of **atonement**, you could express the same idea in another way. Alternate translation: [and he offered the incense to restore the people to Yahweh]
Support Reference: Abstract Nouns

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Aaron	Aaron
Moses	Moses
assembly	community
plague	with the terrible disease
incense	incense
atonement	and Yahweh accepted it and removed what the people had done wrong

Numbers 16:48

ULT	UST
And he stood between the ones dying and between the ones living. And the plague was restrained.	*Aaron stationed himself between the people who had already died and those who were still alive. Then, the people stopped getting sick with the terrible disease.*

ULT **And he stood between the ones dying and between the ones living**

UST Aaron stationed himself between the people who had already died and those who were still alive

The implication is that Aaron positioned himself where he could stop the plague from spreading to the rest of the people. You could include this information if that would be helpful to your readers. Alternate translation: [And he stood where the plague was spreading, stationing himself between the people who were dying and the people who were still alive]

Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

ULT **And the plague was restrained**

UST Then, {the people} stopped {getting sick with} the terrible disease

The expression **was restrained** is a passive verbal form. If your language would not use that form, you could express the idea in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. If you need to say who does the action, the context indicates that it is God. Alternate translation: [And the plague stopped] or [And Yahweh restrained the plague]

Support Reference: Active or Passive

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
plague	with the terrible disease

Numbers 16:49

ULT	UST
And the ones dying by the plague were 14, 700, besides the ones dying on account of the matter of Korah.	*However, 14, 700 people had already died from the terrible disease. That was in addition to the people who died when Korah and his followers opposed Moses and Aaron.*

ULT **14,700**
UST 14,700 people

Translate this number according to the conventions of your own language and culture. Alternate translation: [fourteen thousand seven hundred]
Support Reference: Numbers

ULT **on account of the matter of Korah**
UST when Korah and his followers opposed Moses and Aaron

The implication is that Korah and his followers had rebelled against Moses and Aaron, and God had killed them because of their rebellion. You could include this information if that would be helpful to your readers. Alternate translation: [because Korah and the people with him had rebelled]
Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
plague	from the terrible disease
Korah	Korah

Numbers 16:50

ULT	UST
And Aaron returned to Moses, to the opening of the tent of meeting, and the plague was restrained.	*After the people stopped getting sick with the terrible disease, Aaron went back to the entrance of the sacred tent, where Moses was.*

ULT **and the plague was restrained**
UST After {the people} stopped {getting sick with} the terrible disease

Here the word **and** introduces what happened immediately before Aaron returned to Moses. If the connection between this statement and the previous one is not clear, you may want to use a different connecting word to show how this statement relates to what comes before it. Alternate translation: [once the plague had been restrained] or [as soon as the plague was restrained]
Support Reference: Connecting Words and Phrases

ULT **and the plague was restrained**
UST After {the people} stopped {getting sick with} the terrible disease

See how you translated this clause in 16:48. Alternate translation: [and the plague stopped] or [and Yahweh restrained the plague]
Support Reference: Active or Passive

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Aaron	Aaron
Moses	Moses
tent of meeting	the sacred tent
plague	the people stopped getting sick

Numbers 17

Numbers 17 Introduction

Numbers 17 Chapter Introduction

Structure and Formatting

In this chapter, Moses places 13 staffs representing the leaders of the Israelite tribes before Yahweh. Yahweh makes Aaron's staff blossom and produce nuts, showing that Aaron is the one chosen to be priest. The Israelites then exclaim that they expect to die if they are close to the sacred tent.

1. Yahweh commands each tribal leader to provide a staff (1–7)
2. Aaron's staff produces buds, blossoms, and almonds (8–11)
3. The people express fear of dying near the tabernacle (12–13)

Religious and Cultural Concepts in This Chapter

The staffs

Yahweh instructs Moses to place 12 staffs in the sacred tent. These staffs represented the leaders of each of the Israelite tribes. That is why each staff had the name of a leader written on it. Yahweh used the staffs to show the Israelites which leader he had chosen to be priest.

Translation Issues in This Chapter

How many staffs?

It is clear that Moses placed 12 staffs in the sacred tent, one for the leader of each tribe. It is less clear whether the staff with Aaron's name on it was one of the 12 staffs or an additional 13th staff. It is most plausible that it was an additional 13th staff, so the notes and UST follow that interpretation.

"House of the fathers"

In this chapter, the phrase "house of the fathers" refers to an entire tribe, as is made clear by the number of staffs: 12. This is different than what the phrase means in Numbers 1–4, where it refers to the largest divisions of each tribe. The phrase is flexible and refers to a group of people who are related through a specific ancestor. The specific ancestor is defined by the context. So, you do not need to translate the phrase the same way you did in Numbers 1–4.

Numbers 17:1

ULT	UST
And Yahweh spoke to Moses, saying,	*Then Yahweh told Moses,*

ULT **saying**
UST Then … told

Here, the word **saying** introduces a direct quotation. See how you translated **saying** in 1:1.
Support Reference: Quotations and Quote Margins

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Yahweh	Yahweh
Moses	Moses

Numbers 17:2

ULT	UST
"Speak to the sons of Israel, and take from with them a staff, a staff for a house of a father, from with all their leaders for the house of their fathers, 12 staffs. A man, his name you shall write on his staff.	*"Tell the Israelite people to bring to you twelve walking sticks. They should bring one for each man who leads each ancestral family. You must write each leader's name on his stick.*

ULT **the sons of Israel**
UST the Israelite people

Here, **the sons of Israel** represents the people or descendants of Israel. If it would be helpful in your language, you could use an equivalent expression or plain language. Alternate translation: [the people of Israel]
Support Reference: Metonymy

ULT **a staff, a staff for a house of a father, from with all their leaders for the house of their fathers, 12 staffs**
UST twelve walking sticks. They should bring one for each man who leads each ancestral family

If it would be more natural in your language, you may want to put the information about how many staffs there were before the information about whom the staffs represented. You may also be able to combine or shorten some of the phrases. Alternate translation: [12 staffs, one for each of the leaders for the house of each of their fathers]
Support Reference: Information Structure

ULT **for a house of a father … for the house of their fathers**
UST They should bring one … each ancestral family

Here and throughout this chapter, the phrases **house of a father** and **house of their fathers** refer to whole tribes. This is unlike Numbers 3-4, where the phrases refer to the largest divisions within each tribe. If it would be helpful to your readers, you could make that idea more explicit. Alternate translation: [for an ancestral tribe … for each of their ancestral tribes]
Support Reference: Idiom

ULT **A man, his name you shall write on his staff**
UST You must write each leader's name on his stick

If it would be more natural in your language, you may want to put the information about writing before the information about each man's name. Alternate translation: [You shall write each man's name on his staff]
Support Reference: Information Structure

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Israel	Israelite
staff	walking sticks
leaders	who leads
house	each ancestral family

Numbers 17:3

ULT	UST
And the name of Aaron you shall write on the staff of Levi, for one staff is for the head of the house of their fathers.	*There must be one walking stick for each man who leads each ancestral family. So, you must also include a stick for the descendants of Levi and write Aaron's name on it.*

ULT **And the name of Aaron you shall write on the staff of Levi, for one staff {is} for the head of the house of their fathers**

UST There must be one walking stick for each man who leads each ancestral family. So, you must {also include a stick} for the descendants of Levi and write Aaron's name on it

If it would be more natural in your language, you could reverse the order of these phrases, since the second phrase gives the reason for the result that the first phrase describes. Alternate translation: [And because one staff is for the head of the house of their fathers, the name of Aaron you shall write on the staff of Levi]

Support Reference: Connect — Reason-and-Result Relationship

ULT **And the name of Aaron you shall write**

UST and write Aaron's name

If it would be more natural in your language, you may want to put the information about writing before the information about the name of Aaron. Alternate translation: [And you shall write the name of Aaron]

Support Reference: Information Structure

ULT **the staff of Levi**

UST you must {also include a stick} for the descendants of Levi

By **the staff of Levi**, Yahweh means another staff in addition to the twelve from the previous verse. See the chapter introduction for more information. You could indicate this explicitly in your translation if that would be helpful to your readers. Alternate translation: [on another staff, the staff of Levi]

Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

ULT **the staff of Levi**

UST you must {also include a stick} for the descendants of Levi

Yahweh is using the possessive form to describe a **staff** that is characterized by representing the tribe of **Levi**. If a speaker of your language would not use the possessive form for this, you could express this idea in another way. Alternate translation: [the staff that represents Levi]

Support Reference: Possession

ULT **is for the head of**

UST for each man who leads

Here Yahweh is speaking as if the leader of a tribe were the **head** of a body. If this meaning would not be clear in your language, you could use a comparable expression or you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [is for the leader of]

Support Reference: Metaphor

> ULT **the house of their fathers**
> UST each ancestral family

See how you translated this phrase in verse 2. Alternate translation: [each ancestral tribe]
Support Reference: Idiom

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Aaron	Aaron’s
Levi	Levi
house	each ancestral family

Numbers 17:4

ULT	UST
And you shall make them rest in the tent of meeting to the face of the Testimony, where I congregate with you there.	*You must place those walking sticks inside the sacred tent in front of the sacred chest. That is the place where I usually meet with you all.*

ULT **to the face of the Testimony**
UST in front of the sacred chest

Here, **face** represents the area in front of the **Testimony**. If it would be helpful in your language, you could use an equivalent expression or plain language. Alternate translation: [before the Testimony]
Support Reference: Metonymy

ULT **the Testimony**
UST the sacred chest

Here, **the Testimony** means the Ten Commandments, and here it refers to the box or chest that contained the Ten Commandments. If it would be helpful in your language, you could use an equivalent expression or plain language. Alternate translation: [the box that contained the Testimony] or [the box with the Ten Commandments in it]
Support Reference: Metonymy

ULT **where I congregate with you there**
UST That is the place where I usually meet with you all

Here, the pronoun **you** is plural and refers to Moses and the representatives of Israel. It may be helpful to clarify this for your readers. Alternate translation: [where I meet with all of you there]
Support Reference: Forms of 'You' — Singular

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
tent of meeting	inside the sacred tent
Testimony	the sacred chest

Numbers 17:5

ULT	UST
And it will be that the man whom I choose, his staff will sprout. And I will cause to subside from upon me the murmurings of the sons of Israel, which they are murmuring against you."	*Then, one of the sticks will begin to grow. That stick will belong to the man whom I have selected to be priest. In this way, I will stop the Israelites from complaining about you and Aaron."*

ULT **And I will cause to subside from upon me the murmurings of the sons of Israel**
UST In this way, I will stop the Israelites from complaining

Here Yahweh is speaking as if the **murmurings** of the Israelites were a physical burden resting **upon** him. If this meaning would not be clear in your language, you could use a comparable expression or you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [And I will end the murmurings of the sons of Israel that trouble me]
Support Reference: Metaphor

ULT **And I will cause to subside**
UST In this way, I will stop

The word translated as **And** indicates that what follows is a result of what came before. Use a connector in your language that makes it clear that what follows is a result of what came before. Alternate translation: [As a result, I will cause to subside]
Support Reference: Connect — Reason-and-Result Relationship

ULT **the murmurings of the sons of Israel, which they are murmuring against you**
UST the Israelites from complaining about you and Aaron

Yahweh is using a construction in which a verb and its object come from the same root. You may be able to use the same construction in your language to express the meaning here. Alternatively, your language may have another way of saying this. Alternate translation: [the murmurings of the sons of Israel against you] or [how the sons of Israel murmur against you]
Support Reference: Poetry

ULT **against you**
UST about you and Aaron

Here, the pronoun **you** is plural and refers to Moses and Aaron. It may be helpful to clarify this for your readers. Alternate translation: [against the two of you]
Support Reference: Forms of 'You' — Singular

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
choose	I have selected to be priest
staff	one of the sticks
Israel	Israelites

Numbers 17:6

ULT	UST
And Moses spoke to the sons of Israel, and all their leaders gave to him a staff for one leader, a staff for one leader, for the house of their fathers, 12 staffs. And the staff of Aaron was in the midst of their staffs.	*So Moses told the people what Yahweh had said. Then each of the twelve men who led each ancestral family brought to him one walking stick each. There were 12 sticks, plus the stick with Aaron's name on it.*

ULT **a staff for one leader, a staff for one leader**
UST one walking stick each

Here, the author repeats the phrase **a staff for one leader** to indicate that each leader gave one staff. If this phrase does not have that meaning for your readers, you could use a comparable expression from your language that does have that meaning, or you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [one staff from each of them]
Support Reference: Idiom

ULT **for the house of their fathers**
UST each ancestral family

See how you translated the similar expression in 17:2.
Support Reference: Idiom

ULT **And the staff of Aaron {was} in the midst of their staffs**
UST plus the stick with Aaron's name on it

Here the author implies that **the staff of Aaron** was an additional staff added to the 12 staffs from the other leaders. You could indicate this explicitly in your translation if that would be helpful to your readers. Alternate translation: [And the staff of Aaron was placed among the other 12 staffs]
Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Moses	Moses
Israel	the people
leaders	each of the twelve men who led
staff	one walking stick
leader	each
house	each ancestral family
staffs	sticks
Aaron	Aaron's

Numbers 17:7

ULT	UST
And Moses made the staffs rest to the face of Yahweh in the tent of the Testimony.	*Moses placed those walking sticks inside the sacred tent in Yahweh's presence.*

ULT **to the face of Yahweh**
UST in Yahweh's presence

Here, **face** represents the presence of Yahweh. If it would be helpful in your language, you could use an equivalent expression or plain language. Alternate translation: [before Yahweh]
Support Reference: Metonymy

ULT **in the tent of the Testimony**
UST inside the sacred tent

The author is using the possessive form to describe **the tent** that contained the **Testimony**, which is the Ten Commandments. If a speaker of your language would not use the possessive form for this, you could express this idea in another way. Alternate translation: [in the tent that contained the Testimony] or [in the tent in which were the Ten Commandments]
Support Reference: Possession

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Moses	Moses
staffs	those walking sticks
Yahweh	Yahweh's
in the tent of the Testimony	inside the sacred tent

Numbers 17:8

ULT	UST
And it happened from the next day that Moses came to the tent of the Testimony, and behold, the staff of Aaron for the house of Levi had sprouted. And it brought out a blossom and it blossomed a flower, and it ripened almonds.	*The next day, Moses entered the sacred tent. He saw that the stick with Aaron's name on it, which the descendants of Levi had contributed, had grown! It had grown buds, which grew into flowers and produced nuts that were ready to eat.*

ULT **And it happened**
UST The next day

The author is using the word translated as **it happened** to introduce a new event in the story. Use a word, phrase, or other method in your language that is natural for introducing a new event.
Support Reference: Introduction of a New Event

ULT **from the next day**
UST The next day

The author is using **from the next day** as a common expression of the culture to mean "on the day after." If this phrase does not have that meaning for your readers, you could use a comparable expression from your language that does have that meaning, or you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [on the day after]
Support Reference: Idiom

ULT **to the tent of the Testimony**
UST entered the sacred tent

See how you translated this phrase in verse 7.
Support Reference: Possession

ULT **and behold, the staff of Aaron**
UST He saw that the stick with Aaron's name on it

The author is using **behold** as a common expression of the culture to mean "pay attention to what follows." If this phrase does not have that meaning for your readers, you could use a comparable expression from your language that does have that meaning, or you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [and he saw that the staff of Aaron]
Support Reference: Idiom

ULT **the staff of Aaron for the house of Levi**
UST the stick with Aaron's name on it, which the descendants of Levi had contributed

The author is not distinguishing this **staff of Aaron** from another staff of Aaron that is not **for the house of Levi**. The author is reminding readers which tribal staff was Aaron's. Be sure that this is clear in your translation. Alternate translation: [the staff that represented the house of Levi, which was Aaron's staff,]
Support Reference: Distinguishing Versus Informing or Reminding

ULT **had sprouted. And it brought out a blossom and it blossomed a flower, and it ripened almonds**

UST had grown! It had grown buds, which grew into flowers and produced nuts that were ready to eat

Here, the author could be indicating that all these stages of growth: (1) had happened during the night, and Moses saw the final result: the **almonds**. Alternate translation: [had sprouted, brought out a blossom, blossomed a flower, and finally ripened almonds]; or (2) were present at one time when Moses saw it. Alternate translation: [was sprouting, bringing out a blossom, blossoming a flower, and ripening almonds almost all at once]

Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

ULT **a blossom … a flower**

UST buds … flowers

In this verse, the words **blossom** and **flower** are singular in form, but they refer to several blossoms and flowers as a group. If it would be helpful in your language, you could use the plural forms of these words. Alternate translation: [blossoms … flowers]

Support Reference: Collective Nouns

ULT **almonds**

UST nuts that were ready to eat

The author implies that these **almonds**, a kind of nut, were fully ripe. You could include this information if that would be helpful to your readers. Alternate translation: [almonds to full ripeness]

Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
day	day
Moses	Moses
tent	tent
staff	the stick
Aaron	Aaron’s
house	which the descendants of Levi had contributed
Levi	Levi

Numbers 17:9

ULT	UST
And Moses brought out all the staffs from to the face of Yahweh to all the sons of Israel. And they saw, and they took, a man his staff.	*Moses picked up all the sticks from Yahweh's presence in the sacred tent and took them to all the Israelites. They looked at the sticks, and then each of the leaders picked up the stick with his name on it.*

ULT **from to the face of Yahweh**
UST from Yahweh's presence in the sacred tent

Here, **face** represents the presence of Yahweh. If it would be helpful in your language, you could use an equivalent expression or plain language. Alternate translation: [from before Yahweh]
Support Reference: Metonymy

ULT **And they saw, and they took, a man his staff**
UST They looked {at the sticks}, and then each of the leaders picked up the stick with his name on it

The author is using **a man his staff** as a common expression of the culture to mean that each man **saw** and **took** his own staff. If this phrase does not have that meaning for your readers, you could use a comparable expression from your language that does have that meaning, or you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [And each one saw and then took his own staff]
Support Reference: Idiom

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Moses	Moses
staffs	the sticks
Yahweh	Yahweh's
Israel	Israelites
staff	the stick with his name on it

Numbers 17:10

ULT	UST
And Yahweh said to Moses, "Return the staff of Aaron to the face of the Testimony for keeping, for a sign for the sons of rebellion. And you shall finish their murmurings from upon me, and they shall not die."	*Then Yahweh told Moses, "Put the stick with Aaron's name on it back in front of the sacred chest to keep it safe. It will remind these rebellious people of what happened. That way, you will prevent them from complaining in my presence. Then, they will not die."*

ULT **to the face of the Testimony**
UST in front of the sacred chest

See how you translated the similar expression in 17:4.
Support Reference: Metonymy

ULT **for keeping**
UST to keep it safe

If your language does not use an abstract noun for the idea of **keeping**, you could express the same idea in another way. Alternate translation: [to be kept]
Support Reference: Abstract Nouns

ULT **for the sons of rebellion**
UST these rebellious people

Yahweh is using **the sons of rebellion** as a common expression of the culture to mean "the people who rebel." If this phrase does not have that meaning for your readers, you could use a comparable expression from your language that does have that meaning, or you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [for the people who rebel]
Support Reference: Idiom

ULT **for the sons of rebellion**
UST these rebellious people

If your language does not use an abstract noun for the idea of **rebellion**, you could express the same idea in another way. Alternate translation: [for the rebellious sons]
Support Reference: Abstract Nouns

ULT **And you shall finish their murmurings from upon me**
UST That way, you will prevent them from complaining in my presence

Here Yahweh is speaking as if the **murmurings** of the Israelites were a physical burden resting **upon** him. If this meaning would not be clear in your language, you could use a comparable expression or you could state the meaning plainly. See how you translated the similar phrase in verse 5. Alternate translation: [And you shall end their murmuring against me]
Support Reference: Metaphor

ULT **their murmurings**
UST complaining

If your language does not use an abstract noun for the idea of **murmurings**, you could express the same idea in another way. Alternate translation: [the words they murmur]
Support Reference: Abstract Nouns

> ULT **and they shall not die**
> UST Then, they will not die

Here, **and** marks **they shall not die** as the goal or purpose of **you shall finish their murmurings from upon me**. Use a connector in your language that makes it clear that this is the purpose. Alternate translation: [and that way, they shall not die]

Support Reference: Connect — Goal (Purpose) Relationship

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Yahweh	Yahweh
Moses	Moses
Return	Put … back
staff	the stick
Aaron	Aaron’s
the Testimony	the sacred chest
sign	It will remind … of what happened
rebellion	rebellious

Numbers 17:11

ULT	UST
And Moses did. Just as Yahweh had commanded him, thus he did.	*Moses did exactly what Yahweh told him to do.*

ULT **And Moses did. Just as Yahweh had commanded him, thus he did**

UST Moses did exactly what Yahweh told him to do

It might seem that the expression **thus he did** contains extra information that would not be natural to express in your language. If so, you could shorten it. Alternate translation: [And Moses did just as Yahweh had commanded him]

Support Reference: Making Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information Explicit

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Moses	Moses
Yahweh	Yahweh

Numbers 17:12

ULT	UST
And the sons of Israel said to Moses, saying, "Behold, we expire! We perish; all of us perish!	*Then the Israelites told Moses, "All of us are certainly going to die!*

ULT **Behold**
UST All of us are certainly going to die

The Israelites are using the word **Behold** to express a strong feeling of alarm and despair. There may be an equivalent word or phrase in your language that you can use in your translation to convey this feeling. If not, you could say what the Israelites were feeling, or you could say what made them afraid. Alternate translation: [Alas]
Support Reference: Exclamations

ULT **we expire! We perish; all of us perish**
UST All of us are certainly going to die

The Israelites say **we expire! We perish; all of us perish** as an extreme statement for emphasis. If it would be helpful in your language, you could use a different way to express the emphasis. Alternate translation: [we are like those who expire! It is as if we perish, as if all of us perish]
Support Reference: Hyperbole

ULT **we expire! We perish; all of us perish**
UST All of us are certainly going to die

These three phrases **we expire**, **We perish**, and **all of us perish** mean basically the same thing. The repetition emphasizes the meaning by repeating the same idea with different words. If it would be helpful to your readers, you could combine them and express the emphasis in another way. Alternate translation: [We are all going to die!]
Support Reference: Parallelism

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Israel	Israelites
Moses	Moses
perish	All of us are certainly going to die
perish	All of us are certainly going to die

Numbers 17:13

ULT	UST
Everyone coming near, the one coming near to the Dwelling of Yahweh, will die. Shall we finish to expire?"	*Every person who approaches the sacred tent where Yahweh makes himself present dies! We may all die!"*

ULT **Everyone coming near, the one coming near to the Dwelling of Yahweh, will die**
UST Every person who approaches the sacred tent {where} Yahweh {makes himself present} dies

The terms **coming near** and **the one coming near** mean similar things. The Israelites are using the two terms together for emphasis. If it would be clearer for your readers, you could express the emphasis with a single phrase. Alternate translation: [Every single one coming near to the Dwelling of Yahweh will die]

Support Reference: Making Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information Explicit

ULT **Shall we finish to expire**
UST We may all die

The Israelites are using the question form to express despair. If a speaker of your language would not use the question form for that purpose, you could translate this as a statement or as an exclamation. Alternate translation: [We will all finish to expire!]

Support Reference: Rhetorical Question

ULT **Shall we finish to expire**
UST We may all die

The Israelites are using **finish to expire** as a common expression of the culture to mean "die." If this phrase does not have that meaning for your readers, you could use a comparable expression from your language that does have that meaning, or you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [Shall we end our lives in death] or [Shall we experience death]

Support Reference: Idiom

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
the Dwelling of	the sacred tent
Yahweh	Yahweh

Numbers 18

Numbers 18 Introduction

Numbers 18 Chapter Introduction

Structure and Formatting

This chapter includes instructions about how the Levites and the priests serve at the sacred tent. It also includes regulations about which sacred things belong to the priests and to the Levites. It concludes with the requirement that the Levites give a tithe to the priests.

1. Yahweh assigns duties to the priests and Levites (1–7)
2. Yahweh gives portions of Israel's offerings to the priests (8–20)
3. Yahweh gives Israel's tithes to the Levites for their service (21–24)
4. Yahweh commands the Levites to give a tenth of their tithes to the priests (25–32)

Religious and Cultural Concepts in This Chapter

Priests and Levites

This chapter indicates that the Levites and the priests are responsible for making sure that no one defiles any of the holy things or places. The priests are responsible especially for the sacred tent and for who acts as a priest. The Levites are responsible for making sure that no one comes near the sacred tent, especially when they are setting it up, taking it down, and moving it. This chapter also makes it clear that the Levites are under the direction of the priests.

Contributions for the priests

In 18:8–19, Yahweh outlines the contributions from the Israelites that go directly to the priests. These include parts of the grain offering, sin offering, and guilt offering that the priests do not burn. These also include the firstfruits of crops and the firstborn male animals and humans. In the case of humans and clean animals, however, the priests receive money instead of the human or animal. All these contributions are very holy, so Yahweh gives them to the priests specifically.

Contributions for the Levites

In 18:20–24, Yahweh outlines the contributions from the Israelites that go directly to the Levites. The tithes are made up of one-tenth of all the produce and animals that Israelites have grown or raised. The Israelites give these tithes to Yahweh, and Yahweh gives them to the Levites instead of land.

Tithes from the Levites

In 18:25–32, Yahweh indicates that the Levites also must give tithes. They tithe directly to the priests. Once the Levites have given their tithes, they can use the rest of what they receive from the Israelites as regular food. It is not considered sacred any longer.

Translation Issues in This Chapter

"Keeping" and "service"

As in Numbers 3–4, the word "keeping" refers to keeping watch or guarding. No one else was supposed to approach the sacred items, so the Levites were required to guard these items, especially when they were transporting them. The word "service" refers to physical labor, particularly taking down and setting up the sacred tent and the items that were in it. The Levites were also responsible for these tasks. See how you translated "keeping" and "service" in Numbers 3–4.

Singular and plural "you"

In 18:1–7, both singular and plural "you" appear in many verses. See the notes on those verses for details. In 18:8–20, Yahweh only uses the singular "you," since he is addressing Aaron. In 18:21–32, every "you" is plural except the occurrences in 18:26, 30 where Yahweh tells Moses to speak.

Quotes in quotes

In 18:25–32, there are quotes inside quotes. Consider how your language indicates that a quote contains a quote. The UST models how to express the idea with only one level of quotation.

Numbers 18:1

ULT	UST
And Yahweh said to Aaron, "You and your sons and the house of your father with you shall lift up the iniquity of the holy place, and you and your sons with you shall lift up the iniquity of your priesthood.	*Yahweh told Aaron, "I will punish you, your descendants, and the rest of the descendants of Kohath when someone does something wrong concerning the things that belong in the sacred tent. I will punish only you and your descendants when someone does something wrong when they act as a priest.*

ULT **And Yahweh said to Aaron**
UST Yahweh told Aaron

The phrase **And Yahweh said to Aaron** introduces a direct quotation. Use a natural way of introducing direct quotations in your language.
Support Reference: Quotations and Quote Margins

ULT **You and your sons and the house of your father with you shall lift up the iniquity of the holy place, and you and your sons with you**
UST I will punish you, your descendants, and the rest of the descendants of Kohath when someone does something wrong concerning {the things that belong in} the sacred tent … you and your descendants

Here, **you** is singular. It refers to Aaron, so use the singular form in your translation if your language marks that distinction.
Support Reference: Forms of 'You' — Singular

ULT **and the house of your father**
UST and the rest of the descendants of Kohath

The phrase **house of your father** could refer to: (1) the clan of Kohath, one of the three major clans within the tribe of Levi. Aaron belonged to this clan. This is how the phrase "house of a father" is used in Numbers 3–4. Alternate translation: [and your ancestral family, the Kohathites,]; or (2) the tribe of Levi as a whole. This is how the phrase "house of a father" is used in Numbers 17. Alternate translation: [and your tribe, the Levites,]
Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

ULT **shall lift up the iniquity of the holy place**
UST I will punish … when someone does something wrong concerning {the things that belong in} the sacred tent

Yahweh is using **shall lift up the iniquity of the holy place** as a common expression of the culture to mean "shall be responsible for any offenses against the holy place." If this phrase does not have that meaning for your readers, you could use a comparable expression from your language that does have that meaning, or you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [shall be responsible for any offenses against the holy place]
Support Reference: Idiom

ULT **the iniquity of the holy place**
UST when someone does something wrong concerning {the things that belong in} the sacred tent

If your language does not use an abstract noun for the idea of **iniquity**, you could express the same idea in another way. Alternate translation: [the wrong done against the holy place]
Support Reference: Abstract Nouns

ULT **the holy place**
UST the things that belong in the sacred tent

The phrase **the holy place** could refer to: (1) the sacred objects that were inside the holy place. This is what the phrase means in 10:21. Alternate translation: [the things that belong in the holy place]; or (2) the sacred tent itself. This is what the phrase means in 3:38. Alternate translation: [the sacred tent]
Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

ULT **shall lift up the iniquity of your priesthood**
UST I will punish only … when someone does something wrong when they act as a priest

Yahweh is using **shall lift up the iniquity of your priesthood** as a common expression of the culture to mean "shall be responsible for any offenses relating to your priestly duties." If this phrase does not have that meaning for your readers, you could use a comparable expression from your language that does have that meaning, or you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [shall be responsible for any offenses relating to your priestly duties]
Support Reference: Idiom

ULT **the iniquity of your priesthood**
UST when someone does something wrong when they act as a priest

If your language does not use an abstract noun for the idea of **iniquity**, you could express the same idea in another way. Alternate translation: [the wrongs of your priestly duties]
Support Reference: Abstract Nouns

ULT **your priesthood**
UST when they act as a priest

The word **your** is plural here because it refers to Aaron and his sons. So use the plural form in your translation if your language marks that distinction.
Support Reference: Forms of 'You' — Singular

ULT **with you shall lift up the iniquity of the holy place**
UST I will punish … and the rest of the descendants of Kohath when someone does something wrong concerning {the things that belong in} the sacred tent

Yahweh is using **shall lift up the iniquity of the holy place** as a common expression of the culture to mean "you will be responsible for any offenses committed against the sanctuary." If this phrase does not have that meaning for your readers, you could use a comparable expression from your language that does have that meaning, or you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [shall be accountable for any wrongs committed in the holy place]
Support Reference: Idiom

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Yahweh	Yahweh
Aaron	Aaron
house	and the rest of the descendants of Kohath
iniquity	when someone does something wrong concerning
holy place	the things that belong in the sacred tent
iniquity	when someone does something wrong
priesthood	priest

Numbers 18:2

ULT	UST
And also bring near with you your brothers, the tribe of Levi, the tribe of your father, and they shall be joined to you and shall minister to you. And you and your sons with you shall be to the face of the tent of the Testimony.	*Summon your fellow Levites, who belong to your ancestral tribe. They will work for you and help you while you and your descendants act as priests at the sacred tent.*

ULT **And also bring near with you your brothers, the tribe of Levi, the tribe of your father, and they shall be joined to you and shall minister to you. And you and your sons with you {shall be} to the face of the tent of the Testimony**

UST Summon your fellow Levites, who belong to your ancestral tribe. They will work for you and help you while you and your descendants {act as priests} at the sacred tent

In this verse, **you** is singular. It refers to Aaron, so use the singular form in your translation if your language marks that distinction.

Support Reference: Forms of 'You' — Singular

ULT **and they shall be joined to you**

UST They will work for you

The expression **they shall be joined to you** is a passive verbal form. If it would be unnatural to use that form, you could express the idea in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: [they shall join themselves to you]

Support Reference: Active or Passive

ULT **shall be to the face of the tent of the Testimony**

UST act as priests at the sacred tent

Yahweh is using **to the face of the tent of the Testimony** as a common expression of the culture to mean "before the tent of the Testimony" or "in the presence of the tent of the Testimony." If this phrase does not have that meaning for your readers, you could use a comparable expression from your language that does have that meaning, or you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [{shall be} before the tent of the Testimony]

Support Reference: Idiom

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
tribe	Levites
Levi	Levites
tribe	tribe
tent	tent
Testimony	the sacred tent

Numbers 18:3

ULT	UST
And they shall keep your keeping and the keeping of all the tent. Only to the vessels of the holy place and to the altar they shall not come near, so they will not die, both they and you.	*They must guard you and the whole sacred tent. However, they must not approach the equipment for the sacred tent or the altar. That way, they will not die, and neither will you.*

ULT **Only to the vessels of the holy place and to the altar they shall not come near, so they will not die, both they and you**

UST However, they must not approach the equipment for the sacred tent or the altar. That way, they will not die, and neither will you

Here, **so** marks **they will not die, both they and you** as the goal or purpose of **they shall not come near to the vessels of the holy place and to the altar**. Use a connector in your language that makes it clear that this is the purpose.

Support Reference: Connect — Goal (Purpose) Relationship

ULT **your keeping**

UST you

Here, **your** is singular. It refers to Aaron, so use the singular form in your translation if your language marks that distinction.

Support Reference: Forms of 'You' — Singular

ULT **your keeping and the keeping of all the tent**

UST you and the whole sacred tent

If your language does not use an abstract noun for the idea of **keeping**, you could express the same idea in another way. Alternate translation: [guarding you and guarding all the tent]

Support Reference: Abstract Nouns

ULT **both they and you**

UST they … and neither will you

The word **you** is plural here because it refers to Aaron and his sons. So use the plural form in your translation if your language marks that distinction.

Support Reference: Forms of 'You' — Singular

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
tent	tent
holy place	for the sacred tent
altar	altar

Numbers 18:4

ULT	UST
And they shall be joined to you, and they shall keep the keeping of the tent of meeting for all the service of the tent. And a stranger shall not come near to you.	*They will work for you and will guard the sacred tent as they set it up and take it down. Anyone who is not a Levite must not approach where you are working.*

ULT **And they shall be joined to you**
UST They will work for you

See how you translated the similar expression in 18:2.
Support Reference: Active or Passive

ULT **to you**
UST for you

Here, **you** is singular. It refers to Aaron, so use the singular form in your translation if your language marks that distinction.
Support Reference: Forms of 'You' — Singular

ULT **the keeping of the tent of meeting**
UST and will guard the sacred tent

If your language does not use an abstract noun for the idea of **keeping**, you could express the same idea in another way. Alternate translation: [watch at the tent of meeting]
Support Reference: Abstract Nouns

ULT **the service of the tent**
UST as they set it up and take it down

If your language does not use an abstract noun for the idea of **service**, you could express the same idea in another way. Alternate translation: [the work in the tent]
Support Reference: Abstract Nouns

ULT **And a stranger**
UST Anyone who is not a Levite

A **stranger** in this context refers to a person who is not authorized to serve at the tent of meeting, that is, anyone who is not from the tribe of Levi. If your readers would not be familiar with what a **stranger** is, you could use the name of a similar concept that your readers would recognize, or you could use a more general term. Alternate translation: [And anyone not from the tribe of Levi]
Support Reference: Translate Unknowns

ULT **to you**
UST where you are working

The word **you** is plural here because it refers to Aaron and his sons. So use the plural form in your translation if your language marks that distinction.
Support Reference: Forms of 'You' — Singular

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
tent of meeting	the sacred tent
the service of	as they set it up and take it down
tent	as they set it up and take it down
And a stranger	Anyone who is not a Levite

Numbers 18:5

ULT	UST
And you shall keep the keeping of the holy place and the keeping of the altar, and there shall not be again wrath against the sons of Israel.	*You and the rest of the priests must guard the things that belong in the sacred tent and the altar. That way, I will not be angry with the Israelites again.*

ULT **And you shall keep**
UST You {and the rest of the priests} must guard

The word **you** is plural here because it refers to Aaron and his sons. So use the plural form in your translation if your language marks that distinction.
Support Reference: Forms of 'You' — Singular

ULT **the keeping of the holy place and the keeping of the altar**
UST the things that belong in the sacred tent and the altar

If your language does not use an abstract noun for the idea of **keeping**, you could express the same idea in another way. Alternate translation: [you shall guard the holy place and you shall guard the altar]
Support Reference: Abstract Nouns

ULT **the holy place**
UST the things that belong in the sacred tent

Here, as in 18:1, the phrase **the holy place** could refer to: (1) the sacred objects that were inside the holy place. This is what the phrase means in 10:21. Alternate translation: [the things that belong in the holy place]; or (2) the sacred tent itself. This is what the phrase means in 3:38. Alternate translation: [the sacred tent]
Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

ULT **wrath**
UST I will … be angry

If your language does not use an abstract noun for the idea of **wrath**, you could express the same idea in another way. Alternate translation: [Yahweh being angry]
Support Reference: Abstract Nouns

ULT **the sons of Israel**
UST the Israelites

Here the masculine term **sons** has a generic sense that includes both men and women. If it would be helpful to your readers, you could use language in your translation that is clearly inclusive of both men and women. Alternate translation: [the people of Israel]
Support Reference: When Masculine Words Include Women

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
holy place	the things that belong in the sacred tent
altar	altar
wrath	I will … be angry
Israel	Israelites

Numbers 18:6

ULT	UST
And I, behold, I have taken your brothers the Levites from the midst of the sons of Israel, a gift for you, given to Yahweh, to serve the service of the tent of meeting.	*Out of all the Israelites, I myself have appointed your fellow Levites. They belong to me, and I am giving them to you and the rest of the priests. They will set up and take down the sacred tent.*

ULT **And I, behold, I have taken**
UST I myself have appointed

The pronoun **I** refers to Yahweh, who uses this emphatic form to stress his personal action. It may be helpful to clarify this for your readers. Alternate translation: [And I, your God, have taken]
Support Reference: Pronouns — When to Use Them

ULT **your brothers**
UST your fellow

The word **your** is plural here because it refers to Aaron and his sons. So use the plural form in your translation if your language marks that distinction.
Support Reference: Forms of 'You' — Singular

ULT **the sons of Israel**
UST all the Israelites

See how you translated the similar expression in 18:5.
Support Reference: When Masculine Words Include Women

ULT **a gift for you, given to Yahweh**
UST They belong to me, and I am giving them to you and the rest of the priests

Here Yahweh is speaking of the Levites as if they were **a gift**. If this meaning would not be clear in your language, you could use a comparable expression or you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [assigned to help you, dedicated to Yahweh]
Support Reference: Metaphor

ULT **a gift for you**
UST and I am giving them to you and the rest of the priests

The word **you** is plural here because it refers to Aaron and his sons. So use the plural form in your translation if your language marks that distinction.
Support Reference: Forms of 'You' — Singular

ULT **given to Yahweh**
UST They belong to me

The expression **given to Yahweh** is a passive verbal form. If it would be unnatural to use that form, you could express the idea in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: [whom Yahweh has received as his own]
Support Reference: Active or Passive

> ULT **the service of the tent of meeting**
> UST They will set up and take down the sacred tent

If your language does not use an abstract noun for the idea of **service**, you could express the same idea in another way. Alternate translation: [the work of the tent of meeting]
Support Reference: Abstract Nouns

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Levites	Levites
Israel	Israelites
Yahweh	to me
serve	They will set up and take down
tent of meeting	the sacred tent

Numbers 18:7

ULT	UST
And you and your sons with you shall keep your priesthood for every matter of the altar and for inside the veil, and you shall serve. I give your priesthood as a service of a gift. And the stranger who comes near shall be put to death."	*You and your descendants must make sure that no one else serves as a priest. That includes everything that involves the altar and the Most Holy Place behind the curtain. You must set up and take down these parts of the sacred tent. I am appointing you to be priests who set up and take down these things, and the rest of the Israelites will pay you for doing that. If anyone who is not a Levite approaches the sacred tent, someone must execute that person."*

ULT **And you and your sons with you**
UST You and your descendants

Here, **you** is singular. It refers to Aaron, so use the singular form in your translation if your language marks that distinction.
Support Reference: Forms of 'You' — Singular

ULT **your priesthood for every matter of the altar and for inside the veil, and you shall serve. I give your priesthood {as} a service of a gift**
UST serves as a priest. {That includes} everything that involves the altar and {the Most Holy Place} behind the curtain. You must set up and take down {these parts of the sacred tent}. I am appointing you to be priests who set up and take down these things, and {the rest of the Israelites} will pay you for doing that

The words **you** and **your** are plural here because it refers to Aaron and his sons. So use the plural form in your translation if your language marks that distinction.
Support Reference: Forms of 'You' — Singular

ULT **your priesthood**
UST serves as a priest

If your language does not use an abstract noun for the idea of **priesthood**, you could express the same idea in another way. Alternate translation: [your work as priests]
Support Reference: Abstract Nouns

ULT **for every matter of the altar**
UST That includes everything that involves the altar

Yahweh is using the possessive form to describe **every matter** that is characterized by **the altar**. If a speaker of your language would not use the possessive form for this, you could express this idea in another way. Alternate translation: [for all matters relating to the altar]
Support Reference: Possession

ULT **and for inside the veil**
UST and {the Most Holy Place} behind the curtain

The **veil** is a curtain that separated the holy place from the most holy place inside the tabernacle. If your readers would not be familiar with what a **veil** is, you could use the name of a similar thing that your readers would recognize, or you could use a more general term. Alternate translation: [and for inside the curtain]
Support Reference: Translate Unknowns

ULT **and for inside the veil**
UST and {the Most Holy Place} behind the curtain

Yahweh is using the possessive form to describe the area that is characterized by being **inside the veil**. If a speaker of your language would not use the possessive form for this, you could express this idea in another way. Alternate translation: [and for what is behind the veil]
Support Reference: Possession

ULT **as a service of a gift**
UST who set up and take down these things, and {the rest of the Israelites} will pay you for doing that

If your language does not use an abstract noun for the idea of **service**, you could express the same idea in another way. Alternate translation: [{as} a gift of work to be done]
Support Reference: Abstract Nouns

ULT **as a service of a gift**
UST who set up and take down these things, and {the rest of the Israelites} will pay you for doing that

Here, the phrase **a service of a gift** could mean: (1) that the **service** the priests perform is valuable, so the priests will receive gifts from the rest of the Israelites. These gifts are described in the rest of this chapter. Alternate translation: [as a valuable service] or [as a service that will be repaid]; or (2) that the **service** is a **gift** from God to the priests. Alternate translation: [as service that is a gift] or [as a gift]
Support Reference: Possession

ULT **And the stranger who comes near**
UST If anyone who is not a Levite approaches the sacred tent

A **stranger** in this context refers to a person who is not authorized to serve as a priest. If your readers would not be familiar with what a **stranger** is, you could use the name of a similar concept that your readers would recognize, or you could use a more general term. Alternate translation: [And any unauthorized person who comes near]
Support Reference: Translate Unknowns

ULT **shall be put to death**
UST someone must execute that person

The expression **shall be put to death** is a passive verbal form. If it would be unnatural to use that form, you could express the idea in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: [must die]
Support Reference: Active or Passive

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
shall keep	must make sure that no one else
priesthood	priest
altar	altar
veil	and {the Most Holy Place} behind the curtain
serve	You must set up and take down these parts of the sacred tent
priesthood	priests

Numbers 18:8

ULT	UST
And Yahweh spoke to Aaron, "And I, behold, I have given to you the keeping of my contributions, for all the holy things of the sons of Israel. To you I have given them for a portion and to your sons for a statute of eternity.	*Yahweh told Aaron, "I myself am putting you in charge of all the sacred things that the Israelites give to me. I give these sacred things to you and to your sons for you to use. This is a permanent rule.*

ULT **And Yahweh spoke to Aaron**
UST Yahweh told Aaron

The phrase **And Yahweh spoke to Aaron** introduces a direct quotation. Use a natural way of introducing direct quotations in your language.
Support Reference: Quotations and Quote Margins

ULT **And I, behold, I have given**
UST I myself am putting

The pronoun **I** refers to Yahweh, who uses this emphatic form to stress his personal action. It may be helpful to clarify this for your readers. Alternate translation: [And I, Yahweh, have given]
Support Reference: Pronouns — When to Use Them

ULT **the keeping of my contributions**
UST in charge of … give to me

If your language does not use an abstract noun for the idea of **keeping**, you could express the same idea in another way. Alternate translation: [to keep my contributions]
Support Reference: Abstract Nouns

ULT **for a portion**
UST for you to use

If your language does not use an abstract noun for the idea of **portion**, you could express the same idea in another way. Alternate translation: [as what belongs to you]
Support Reference: Abstract Nouns

ULT **for a statute of eternity**
UST This is a permanent rule

If your language does not use an abstract noun for the idea of **statute**, you could express the same idea in another way. Alternate translation: [a lasting ordinance]
Support Reference: Abstract Nouns

ULT **for a statute of eternity**
UST This is a permanent rule

Yahweh is using **for a statute of eternity** as a common expression of the culture to mean "as a permanent rule." If this phrase does not have that meaning for your readers, you could use a comparable expression from your language that does have that meaning, or you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [as a permanent rule]
Support Reference: Idiom

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Yahweh	Yahweh
Aaron	Aaron
my contributions	give to me
holy	sacred
Israel	Israelites
statute	This is a … rule
eternity	permanent
eternity	permanent

Numbers 18:9

ULT	UST
This shall be for you from the holy thing of the holy things, from the fire: every offering of theirs, for every grain offering of theirs and for every sin offering of theirs and for every guilt offering of theirs which they return to me. It is a holy thing of holy things for you and for your sons.	*The parts of the most sacred offerings that you do not burn will be yours. That includes grain offerings, purifying offerings, and restoring sacrifices that they present to me. These most sacred offerings belong to you and your descendants.*

ULT **from the holy thing of the holy things**
UST The parts of the most sacred offerings

Yahweh is using **the holy thing of the holy things** as a common expression of the culture to mean "the most holy things." If this phrase does not have that meaning for your readers, you could use a comparable expression from your language that does have that meaning, or you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [from the most holy things]
Support Reference: Idiom

ULT **from the holy thing of the holy things**
UST The parts of the most sacred offerings

If your language does not use an abstract noun for the idea of **holy things**, you could express the same idea in another way. Alternate translation: [from the offerings that are most holy]
Support Reference: Abstract Nouns

ULT **from the fire**
UST that you do not burn

Here, **the fire** represents the offerings made by fire. If it would be helpful in your language, you could use an equivalent expression or plain language. Alternate translation: [from the offerings made by fire]
Support Reference: Metonymy

ULT **every offering of theirs, for every grain offering of theirs and for every sin offering of theirs and for every guilt offering of theirs**
UST That includes grain offerings, purifying offerings, and restoring sacrifices

If your language does not use an abstract noun for the idea of **offering**, you could express the same idea in another way. Alternate translation: [everything they sacrifice to me, for every grain sacrifice of theirs and for every sin sacrifice of theirs and for every guilt sacrifice of theirs]
Support Reference: Abstract Nouns

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
holy	sacred
holy	sacred
offering	That includes
grain offering	grain offerings
sin offering	purifying offerings
guilt offering	and restoring sacrifices
they return	they present
holy	sacred
holy	sacred

Numbers 18:10

ULT	UST
In the holy of holies you shall eat it. Every male shall eat it. It shall be holy for you.	*You must eat these sacred offerings in a very sacred place. Every man who is a priest may eat them. They are sacred and belong to you.*

ULT **In the holy of holies**
UST in a very sacred place

Here, the phrase **In the holy of holies** could indicate: (1) the area in which the priests should eat. This cannot be the Most Holy Place, since the high priest only entered that place once a year. Most likely, it refer to any area within the tabernacle and its courtyard. Alternate translation: [In a very holy place] or [Within the tabernacle area]; or (2) the manner in which the priests should eat. In other words, they treat it as holy while they eat it. Alternate translation: [In a very holy way] or [As a very holy thing]

Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

ULT **Every male shall eat it**
UST Every man {who is a priest} may eat them

Here the masculine term **male** does not have a generic sense that includes both men and women. It is used literally to refer to male priests specifically, since only males were permitted to eat the most holy offerings. Alternate translation: [Every male priest shall eat it]

Support Reference: When Masculine Words Include Women

ULT **Every male**
UST Every man who is a priest

Yahweh is not referring to a specific **male**. He means any male who is a priest in general. If it would be helpful to your readers, you could use an expression that would be more natural in your language. Alternate translation: [Any male who is a priest]

Support Reference: Generic Noun Phrases

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
holies	sacred
holy	sacred

Numbers 18:11

ULT	UST
And this is for you: the contribution of their gift, for all the raised offerings of the sons of Israel. To you I have given them and to your sons and to your daughters with you for a statute of eternity. Every clean one in your house shall eat it.	*In addition, the Israelites give me special contributions by having a priest hold them up. I am giving those special contributions to you and to your male and female descendants. This is a permanent rule. Every person in your household who is pure may eat them.*

ULT **the contribution of their gift**
UST give me special contributions

If your language does not use an abstract noun for the idea of **contribution**, you could express the same idea in another way. Alternate translation: [what they give as their gift]
Support Reference: Abstract Nouns

ULT **the raised offerings of the sons of Israel**
UST the Israelites … by having a priest hold them up

If your language does not use an abstract noun for the idea of **raised offerings**, you could express the same idea in another way. Alternate translation: [the offerings that the sons of Israel present to God]
Support Reference: Abstract Nouns

ULT **for a statute of eternity**
UST This is a permanent rule

See how you translated the similar expression in 18:8.
Support Reference: Idiom

ULT **Every clean one in your house**
UST Every person in your household who is pure

Yahweh is not referring to a specific **clean one**. He means any person who is ritually clean in general. If it would be helpful to your readers, you could use an expression that would be more natural in your language. Alternate translation: [Every person in your house who is ritually clean]
Support Reference: Generic Noun Phrases

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
the contribution	special contributions
offerings	by having a priest hold them up
Israel	Israelites
statute	This is a … rule
eternity	permanent
house	in your household

Numbers 18:12

ULT	UST
All the fat of the oil and all the fat of the new wine and grain, their firstfruits which they give to Yahweh, to you I have given them.	*The Israelites present to me some of their first batches of fresh olive oil and fresh wine and grain. I give all these things to you.*

ULT **All the fat of the oil and all the fat of the new wine and grain**
UST fresh olive oil and fresh wine and grain … all

Here, **the fat** represents the best or choicest portion. If it would be helpful in your language, you could use an equivalent expression or plain language. Alternate translation: [The best of the oil and the best of the new wine and grain]

Support Reference: Metonymy

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
oil	oil
new wine	wine
grain	grain
firstfruits	some of their first batches of
Yahweh	to me

Numbers 18:13

ULT	UST
The firstfruits of all that is in their land which they bring to Yahweh shall be for you. Every clean one in your house shall eat it.	*They will present to me some of the first batches of everything that they grow in the place where they will live. All those things belong to you. Every person in your household who is pure may eat them.*

ULT **Every clean one in your house**

UST Every person in your household who is pure

See how you translated the similar expression in 18:11.

Support Reference: Generic Noun Phrases

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
firstfruits	some of the first batches of
Yahweh	to me
house	household

Numbers 18:14

ULT	UST
Every devoted thing in Israel shall be for you.	*Everything that any Israelites permanently dedicate to me will belong to you.*

ULT **Every devoted thing**
UST Everything that … permanently dedicate to me

If your language does not use an abstract noun for the idea of **devoted**, you could express the same idea in another way. Alternate translation: [Every thing that people set apart for God]
Support Reference: Abstract Nouns

ULT **Every devoted thing**
UST Everything that … permanently dedicate to me

A **devoted thing** is something that has been irrevocably dedicated to Yahweh and cannot be taken back or used for any other purpose. If your readers would not be familiar with what a **devoted thing** is, you could use the name of a similar concept that your readers would recognize, or you could use a more general term. Alternate translation: [Everything permanently dedicated to Yahweh]
Support Reference: Translate Unknowns

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
devoted	dedicate
Israel	Israelites

Numbers 18:15

ULT	UST
Every opener of the womb for all flesh which they present to Yahweh, among the man and among the animal, shall be for you. Only redeeming you shall redeem the firstborn of the man, and the firstborn of the unclean animal you shall redeem.	*The Israelites dedicate every oldest male child and farm animal to me. Those people and things belong to you. However, sometimes the oldest male is a human or an impure animal. In those cases, you will receive money instead of the child or animal.*

ULT **Every opener of the womb**
UST every oldest male

Yahweh is using **Every opener of the womb** as a common expression of the culture to mean "every firstborn." If this phrase does not have that meaning for your readers, you could use a comparable expression from your language that does have that meaning, or you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [Every firstborn child and animal]
Support Reference: Idiom

ULT **redeeming you shall redeem**
UST In those cases, you will receive money instead of the child or animal

Yahweh is repeating forms of the verb **redeem** in order to intensify his expression of the idea that it conveys. If your language can repeat words for intensification, it would be appropriate to do that here in your translation. If not, your language may have another way of expressing the intensification. Alternate translation: [you shall surely redeem]
Support Reference: Reduplication

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
womb	oldest male
Yahweh	to me
animal	animal
redeeming	In those cases, you will receive money instead of the child or animal
redeem	In those cases, you will receive money instead of the child or animal
firstborn	sometimes the oldest male

Numbers 18:16

ULT	UST
And his redeemed ones from a son of a month you shall redeem by your valuation, silver of five shekels, by the shekel of the holy place (it is 20 gerahs).	*When you receive money instead of the child or animal, you must calculate the amount of money when the child or animal is one month old. You must receive five pieces of silver. You must use the same kind of pieces of silver that the priests use in the sacred tent. Each of these pieces of silver weighs about 11 grams.*

ULT **And his redeemed ones**
UST When you receive money instead of the child or animal

The expression **his redeemed ones** is a passive verbal form. If it would be unnatural to use that form, you could express the idea in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: [And those to be redeemed]
Support Reference: Active or Passive

ULT **from a son of a month**
UST when the child or animal is one month old

Yahweh is using **a son of a month** as a common expression of the culture to mean “from the age of one month.” If this phrase does not have that meaning for your readers, you could use a comparable expression from your language that does have that meaning, or you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [from the age of one month]
Support Reference: Idiom

ULT **by your valuation**
UST you must calculate the amount of money

If your language does not use an abstract noun for the idea of **valuation**, you could express the same idea in another way. Alternate translation: [at the price you assess]
Support Reference: Abstract Nouns

ULT **silver of five shekels**
UST five pieces of silver

If it would be helpful to your readers, you could express the value of **five shekels** of silver in modern terms. A shekel weighed about 11 grams, so five shekels would be about 55 grams of silver.
Support Reference: Biblical Weight

ULT **by the shekel of the holy place**
UST You must use the same kind of pieces of silver that {the priests} use in the sacred tent

The **shekel of the holy place** is a standard unit of weight used by the priests for official measurements. If your readers would not be familiar with what a **shekel of the holy place** is, you could use the name of a similar standard that your readers would recognize, or you could use a more general term. Alternate translation: [by the standard weight used in the holy place]
Support Reference: Translate Unknowns

> ULT **is 20 gerahs**
> UST weighs about 11 grams

If it would be helpful to your readers, you could express the value of **20 gerahs** in modern terms. A gerah was a small unit of weight, and 20 gerahs equaled one shekel, which weighed about 11 grams.

Support Reference: Biblical Weight

> ULT **is 20 gerahs**
> UST weighs about 11 grams

Here Moses is providing background information to help readers understand the weight standard being used. In your translation, introduce this information in a way that would be natural in your own language and culture.

Support Reference: Background Information

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
redeemed	When you receive money instead of the child or animal
month	month
redeem	You must receive
silver	silver
holy place	that {the priests} use in the sacred tent

Numbers 18:17

ULT	UST
Only a firstborn of an ox or a firstborn of a sheep or a firstborn of a goat you shall not redeem; they are holy. You shall splash their blood on the altar, and you shall cause their fat to become smoke, a gift for a scent of pleasing to Yahweh.	*However, you must not receive money instead of any oldest male bull, sheep, or goat. That is because they are sacred. You must splatter their blood on the altar. You must burn their fat in a way that causes smoke to go up. When you burn these offerings, I will enjoy the smell of the smoke.*

ULT **a gift for a scent of pleasing to Yahweh**
UST When you burn these offerings, I will enjoy the smell of the smoke

Yahweh is using **a gift for a scent of pleasing** as a common expression of the culture to mean "an offering that is acceptable and pleasing to Yahweh." If this phrase does not have that meaning for your readers, you could use a comparable expression from your language that does have that meaning, or you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [an offering that is acceptable and pleasing to Yahweh]

Support Reference: Idiom

ULT **a gift for a scent of pleasing**
UST When you burn these offerings … will enjoy the smell of the smoke

If your language does not use an abstract noun for the idea of **pleasing**, you could express the same idea in another way. Alternate translation: [a gift of a pleasing scent]

Support Reference: Abstract Nouns

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
firstborn	any oldest male
ox	bull
firstborn	sheep
sheep	sheep
goat	goat
redeem	you must … receive money instead of
holy	sacred
altar	altar
pleasing	will enjoy
Yahweh	I

Numbers 18:18

ULT	UST
And their flesh shall be for you; like the breast of the raised offering and like the right thigh, it shall be for you.	*Their meat will belong to you, just as the breast meat that the priest holds up in Yahweh's presence and the right thigh meat belong to you.*

ULT **like the breast of the raised offering and like the right thigh**
UST just as the breast meat that the priest holds up {in Yahweh's presence} and the right thigh meat

Yahweh is using the possessive form to describe **the breast** that is characterized by **the raised offering**. If a speaker of your language would not use the possessive form for this, you could express this idea in another way. Alternate translation: [like the breast from the raised offering and like the right thigh]

Support Reference: Possession

ULT **the raised offering**
UST that the priest holds up in Yahweh's presence

If your language does not use an abstract noun for the idea of **raised offering**, you could express the same idea in another way. Alternate translation: [the offering that is lifted up]

Support Reference: Abstract Nouns

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
offering	that the priest holds up in Yahweh's presence

Numbers 18:19

ULT	UST
All the contributions of the holy things that the sons of Israel raise to Yahweh I have given to you and to your sons and to your daughters with you for a statute of eternity. It is a covenant of salt of eternity to the face of Yahweh, for you and for your seed with you."	*Whenever the Israelites dedicate any special and sacred contribution to me, I give it to you and to your male and female descendants. This is a permanent rule. It is a permanent agreement that I am making with you and your descendants.*

ULT **the contributions of the holy things**
UST special and sacred contribution

If your language does not use an abstract noun for the idea of **contributions**, you could express the same idea in another way. Alternate translation: [what is contributed from the holy offerings]
Support Reference: Abstract Nouns

ULT **the sons of Israel**
UST the Israelites

See how you translated the similar expression in 18:5.
Support Reference: When Masculine Words Include Women

ULT **for a statute of eternity**
UST This is a permanent rule

See how you translated the similar expression in 18:8.
Support Reference: Abstract Nouns

ULT **a covenant of salt of eternity**
UST is a permanent agreement

If your language does not use an abstract noun for the idea of **covenant**, you could express the same idea in another way. Alternate translation: [the agreement Yahweh has permanently made]
Support Reference: Abstract Nouns

ULT **a covenant of salt of eternity**
UST is a permanent agreement

Here Yahweh could speak of the **covenant** as **salt** to: (1) indicate that, just as salt preserves food, so this covenant will last. Alternate translation: [a covenant that lasts, like salted food does,]; or (2) indicate that, just as grain offerings always had to include salt (see Leviticus 2:13), so the priests must always receive the contributions. Alternate translation: [an eternal covenant, like the salt requirement for grain offerings,]
Support Reference: Metaphor

ULT **to the face of Yahweh**
UST that I am making

Yahweh is using **to the face of Yahweh** as a common expression of the culture to mean "before Yahweh" or "in the presence of Yahweh." If this phrase does not have that meaning for your readers, you could use a comparable expression from your language that does have that meaning, or you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [before Yahweh]
Support Reference: Idiom

ULT **and for your seed with you**
UST and your descendants

Here, **seed** represents "descendants." If it would be helpful in your language, you could use an equivalent expression or plain language. Alternate translation: [and for your descendants with you]
Support Reference: Metonymy

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
the contributions of	special … contribution
holy	sacred
Israel	Israelites
Yahweh	to me
statute	This is a … rule
eternity	permanent
covenant	is a … agreement
Yahweh	that I am making
seed	and your descendants

Numbers 18:20

ULT	UST
And Yahweh said to Aaron, "In their land you shall not inherit, and a portion shall not be for you in their midst. I am your portion and your inheritance in the midst of the sons of Israel.	*Yahweh told Aaron, "You will not receive any land like the rest of the Israelites will. Instead of receiving land, you will act as priests for me among the Israelites.*

ULT **And Yahweh said to Aaron**
UST Yahweh told Aaron

See how you translated the similar expression in 18:1.
Support Reference: Quotations and Quote Margins

ULT **am your portion and your inheritance**
UST Instead of receiving land, you will {act as priests for} me

The terms **portion** and **inheritance** mean similar things. Yahweh is using the two terms together for emphasis. If it would be clearer for your readers, you could express the emphasis with a single phrase. Alternate translation: [am your inheritance]
Support Reference: Doublet

ULT **the sons of Israel**
UST the Israelites

Here the masculine term **sons** has a generic sense that includes both men and women. If it would be helpful to your readers, you could use language in your translation that is clearly inclusive of both men and women. Alternate translation: [of the people of Israel]
Support Reference: When Masculine Words Include Women

ULT **and a portion … and your inheritance**
UST any land … Instead of receiving land, you will {act as priests for} me

If your language does not use abstract nouns for the ideas of **portion** and **inheritance**, you could express the same ideas in other ways. Alternate translation: [and any land … and what you will receive]
Support Reference: Abstract Nouns

ULT **I {am} your portion and your inheritance**
UST Instead of receiving land, you will {act as priests for} me

Here Yahweh is speaking of himself as if he were **a portion** and **an inheritance**, that is, as if he were the land or property that Aaron would receive. If this meaning would not be clear in your language, you could use a comparable expression or you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [I am what you will possess and what you will inherit]
Support Reference: Metaphor

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Yahweh	Yahweh
Aaron	Aaron
land	land
inherit	You will … receive
inheritance	Instead of receiving land, you will {act as priests for} me
Israel	Israelites

Numbers 18:21

ULT	UST
And to the sons of Levi, behold, I have given every tithe in Israel for an inheritance, in exchange for their service which they are serving, the service of the tent of meeting.	*Listen, I assign to the Levites one tenth of all the produce and animals that belong to the Israelites. That is what they will receive instead of land in return for setting up and taking down the sacred tent.*

ULT **And to the sons of Levi, behold, I have given every tithe in Israel for an inheritance, in exchange for their service which they are serving, the service of the tent of meeting**
UST Listen, I assign to the Levites one tenth of all the produce and animals that belong to the Israelites. That is what they will receive instead of land in return for setting up and taking down the sacred tent

The phrase translated as **in exchange for** indicates that what follows is a reason for what came before. Use a connector in your language that makes it clear that what follows is a reason for what came before. Alternate translation: [And to the sons of Levi, behold, I have given every tithe in Israel for an inheritance, because of the service they are serving, the service of the tent of meeting]
Support Reference: Connect — Reason-and-Result Relationship

ULT **And to the sons of Levi**
UST to the Levites

Here the masculine term **sons** has a generic sense that includes both men and women. If it would be helpful to your readers, you could use language in your translation that is clearly inclusive of both men and women. Alternate translation: [And to the children of Levi]
Support Reference: When Masculine Words Include Women

ULT **for an inheritance**
UST That is what they will receive instead of land

If your language does not use an abstract noun for the idea of **inheritance**, you could express the same idea in another way. Alternate translation: [as what they will possess]
Support Reference: Abstract Nouns

ULT **their service … the service of the tent of meeting**
UST setting up and taking down the sacred tent

If your language does not use an abstract noun for the idea of **service**, you could express the same idea in another way. Alternate translation: [what they do … what they do at the tent of meeting]
Support Reference: Abstract Nouns

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Levi	Levites
tithe	tenth
Israel	Israelites
inheritance	That is what they will receive instead of land
serving	setting up and taking down
tent of meeting	the sacred tent

Numbers 18:22

ULT	UST
And the sons of Israel shall not again come near to the tent of meeting to lift up sin, to die.	*The other Israelites must never approach the sacred tent. Otherwise, I will punish them for what they did wrong, and they will die.*

ULT **And the sons of Israel shall not again come near to the tent of meeting to lift up sin, to die**

UST The other Israelites must never approach the sacred tent. Otherwise, I will punish them for what they did wrong, and they will die

Here, **to die** indicates the result of the Israelites coming near to the tent of meeting and incurring guilt. Use a connector in your language that makes it clear that what follows is a result of what came before. Alternate translation: [And the sons of Israel shall not again come near to the tent of meeting to lift up sin, or they will die]

Support Reference: Connect — Reason-and-Result Relationship

ULT **the sons of Israel**

UST The other Israelites

See how you translated the similar expression in 18:5.

Support Reference: When Masculine Words Include Women

ULT **to lift up sin, to die**

UST Otherwise, I will punish them for what they did wrong, and they will die

Yahweh is using **to lift up sin** as a common expression of the culture to mean "to incur guilt." If this phrase does not have that meaning for your readers, you could use a comparable expression from your language that does have that meaning, or you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [to incur guilt and die]

Support Reference: Idiom

ULT **sin**

UST Otherwise, I will punish them for what they did wrong

If your language does not use an abstract noun for the idea of **sin**, you could express the same idea in another way. Alternate translation: [what they have done wrong]

Support Reference: Abstract Nouns

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Israel	Israelites
tent of meeting	the sacred tent
sin	Otherwise, I will punish them for what they did wrong

Numbers 18:23

ULT	UST
And the Levite, he shall serve the service of the tent of meeting, and they shall bear their iniquity. It is a statute of eternity for your generations, and in the midst of the sons of Israel they shall not inherit an inheritance.	*Each Levite must set up and take down the sacred tent. I will punish only the Levites for anything they do wrong concerning the sacred tent. This is a permanent rule for you and all your descendants. So, the Levites will not receive any land like the rest of the Israelites will.*

ULT **and they shall bear their iniquity**
UST I will punish {only} the Levites for anything they do wrong concerning the sacred tent

Here, the pronoun **they** refers to the Levites. The pronoun **their** could refer to: (1) the Levites again. In this case, the Levites are responsible for their own sins concerning the holy things. Alternate translation: [and the Levites shall bear their own iniquity]; or (2) the Israelites in general. In this case, the Levites are responsible for any sins concerning the holy things. Alternate translation: [and the Levites shall the iniquity of any Israelite]
Support Reference: Pronouns — When to Use Them

ULT **shall bear their iniquity**
UST I will punish … for anything they do wrong concerning the sacred tent

Yahweh is using **shall bear their iniquity** as a common expression of the culture to mean "shall be responsible for the consequences of their offenses." If this phrase does not have that meaning for your readers, you could use a comparable expression from your language that does have that meaning, or you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [shall be responsible for the consequences of their offenses]
Support Reference: Idiom

ULT **their iniquity**
UST I will punish … for anything they do wrong concerning the sacred tent

If your language does not use an abstract noun for the idea of **iniquity**, you could express the same idea in another way. Alternate translation: [what they do wrong]
Support Reference: Abstract Nouns

ULT **It is a statute of eternity for your generations**
UST This is a permanent rule for you and all your descendants

Yahweh is using **a statute of eternity for your generations** as a common expression of the culture to mean "a permanent rule for all your descendants." If this phrase does not have that meaning for your readers, you could use a comparable expression from your language that does have that meaning, or you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [This is a permanent rule for all your descendants]
Support Reference: Idiom

ULT **It is a statute of eternity**
UST This is a permanent rule

If your language does not use an abstract noun for the idea of **statute**, you could express the same idea in another way. Alternate translation: [This is a rule that will last forever]
Support Reference: Abstract Nouns

ULT **of the sons of Israel**
UST So … like the rest of the Israelites will

See how you translated the similar expression in 18:5.
Support Reference: When Masculine Words Include Women

ULT **an inheritance**
UST any land

If your language does not use an abstract noun for the idea of **inheritance**, you could express the same idea in another way. Alternate translation: [any property]
Support Reference: Abstract Nouns

ULT **And the Levite, he shall serve**
UST Each Levite must set up and take down

The pronoun **he** refers to any individual Levite, used collectively to represent all the Levites. It may be helpful to clarify this for your readers. Alternate translation: [And each Levite shall serve]
Support Reference: Pronouns — When to Use Them

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Levite	Levite
serve	must set up and take down
tent of meeting	the sacred tent
bear	I will punish … for anything they do wrong concerning the sacred tent
iniquity	I will punish … for anything they do wrong concerning the sacred tent
statute	This is a … rule
eternity	permanent
generations	for you and all your descendants
Israel	Israelites
inherit	the Levites will … receive
inheritance	any land

Numbers 18:24

ULT	UST
For the tithe of the sons of Israel, which they raise to Yahweh as a contribution, I have given to the Levites for an inheritance. Therefore I have said to them that in the midst of the sons of Israel they shall not inherit an inheritance."	*That is because I am giving something to the Levites instead of land. I am giving them one tenth of all the produce and animals that belong to the Israelites, which they dedicate to me as a special contribution. Because of that, I have told the Levites, 'You will not receive any land like the rest of the Israelites will.'"*

ULT **the sons of Israel**
UST like the rest of the Israelites will

See how you translated the similar expression in 18:5.
Support Reference: When Masculine Words Include Women

ULT **For the tithe of the sons of Israel, which they raise to Yahweh {as} a contribution, I have given to the Levites for an inheritance. Therefore I have said to them {that} in the midst of the sons of Israel they shall not inherit an inheritance**
UST That is because I am giving {something} to the Levites instead of land. {I am giving them} one tenth of all the produce and animals that belong to the Israelites, which they dedicate to me as a special contribution. Because of that, I have told the Levites, 'You will not receive any land like the rest of the Israelites will

The word translated as **Therefore** indicates that what follows is a result of what came before. Use a connector in your language that makes it clear that what follows is a result of what came before. Alternate translation: [For the tithe of the sons of Israel, which they raise to Yahweh {as} a contribution, I have given to the Levites for an inheritance. As a result, I have said to them {that} in the midst of the sons of Israel they shall not inherit an inheritance]
Support Reference: Connect — Reason-and-Result Relationship

ULT **as a contribution … for an inheritance**
UST instead of land … as a special contribution

If your language does not use abstract nouns for the ideas of **contribution** and **inheritance**, you could express the same ideas in other ways. Alternate translation: [as their gift to him … to possess]
Support Reference: Abstract Nouns

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
tithe	tenth
Israel	Israelites
Yahweh	to me
as a contribution	as a special contribution
Levites	Levites
inheritance	instead of land
Israel	Israelites
inherit	You will … receive

Numbers 18:25

ULT	UST
And Yahweh spoke to Moses, saying,	*Yahweh told Moses,*

ULT **And Yahweh spoke to Moses, saying**
UST Yahweh told Moses

The phrase **And Yahweh spoke to Moses, saying** introduces a direct quotation. Use a natural way of introducing direct quotations in your language.
Support Reference: Quotations and Quote Margins

ULT **saying**
UST told

The term **saying** introduces a direct quotation. See how you translated **saying** in 1:1.
Support Reference: Quotations and Quote Margins

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Yahweh	Yahweh
Moses	Moses

Numbers 18:26

ULT	UST
"And to the Levites you shall speak, and you shall say to them, 'When you take from with the sons of Israel the tithe which I have given to you from with them for your inheritance, then you shall raise from it a contribution of Yahweh, a tithe from the tithe.	*"Tell the Levites that they will receive from the Israelites one tenth of all their produce and animals. I am giving those things to the Levites instead of land. When they receive that one tenth of produce and animals, they must dedicate one tenth of those things to me as a special contribution.*

ULT **and you shall say to them, 'When you take from with the sons of Israel the tithe**
UST Tell the Levites that they will receive from the Israelites one tenth of all their produce and animals … When they receive that one tenth of produce and animals

If it would be clearer in your language, you could translate this so that there is not a quotation within a quotation. Alternate translation: [and you shall say to them that when they take from the sons of Israel the tithe]
Support Reference: Quotes within Quotes

ULT **When you take from with the sons of Israel the tithe**
UST that they will receive from the Israelites one tenth of all their produce and animals … When they receive that one tenth of produce and animals

Yahweh is speaking as if the Levites receiving the tithe were a hypothetical possibility, but he means that it will certainly happen. If your language does not state something as a condition if it is certain or true, or if your readers might think that what Yahweh is saying is uncertain, then you could translate this as a confident statement. Alternate translation: [Since you take from the sons of Israel the tithe]
Support Reference: Connect — Factual Conditions

ULT **the sons of Israel**
UST the Israelites

See how you translated the similar expression in 18:5.
Support Reference: When Masculine Words Include Women

ULT **for your inheritance**
UST instead of land

If your language does not use an abstract noun for the idea of **inheritance**, you could express the same idea in another way. Alternate translation: [as what I am giving you to inherit]
Support Reference: Abstract Nouns

ULT **a contribution of Yahweh**
UST to me as a special contribution

If your language does not use an abstract noun for the idea of **contribution**, you could express the same idea in another way. Alternate translation: [what you give to Yahweh]
Support Reference: Abstract Nouns

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Levites	Levites
Israel	Israelites
tithe	tenth
inheritance	instead of land
contribution	contribution
Yahweh	to me
tithe	tenth

Numbers 18:27

ULT	UST
And your contribution shall be reckoned to you as the grain from the threshing floor and as the fullness from the winepress.	*When they dedicate that special contribution, I will consider it to be like when farmers dedicate some of the first grain that they have harvested or the grape juice they have produced.*

ULT **And your contribution shall be reckoned to you**
UST When they dedicate that special contribution, I will consider it to be

The expression **your contribution shall be reckoned to you** is a passive verbal form. If it would be unnatural to use that form, you could express the idea in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: [And Yahweh will reckon your contribution to you]
Support Reference: Active or Passive

ULT **your contribution**
UST When they dedicate that special contribution

If your language does not use an abstract noun for the idea of **contribution**, you could express the same idea in another way. Alternate translation: [what you contribute]
Support Reference: Abstract Nouns

ULT **as the grain from the threshing floor and as the fullness from the winepress**
UST like when farmers dedicate some of the first grain that they have harvested or the grape juice they have produced

The point of this comparison is that just as **the grain from the threshing floor** and **the fullness from the winepress** are dedicated to Yahweh by farmers, so the Levites' tithe of the tithe is dedicated to Yahweh. If it would be helpful in your language, you could make this point explicitly. Alternate translation: [like the grain that farmers dedicate from the threshing floor and the full produce they dedicate from the winepress]
Support Reference: Simile

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
contribution	contribution
grain	grain
threshing	like when farmers dedicate some of the first grain that they have harvested
winepress	or the grape juice they have produced

Numbers 18:28

ULT	UST
Thus you shall raise, you also, the contribution of Yahweh from all your tithes which you take from with the sons of Israel, and you shall give from it the contribution of Yahweh to Aaron the priest.	*In this way, they too must dedicate to me a special contribution. They must dedicate it from the one tenth of all the produce and animals that the Israelites give them. They must give their special contribution, which belongs to me, to the priest Aaron.*

ULT **the sons of Israel**
UST the Israelites

See how you translated the similar expression in 18:5.

Support Reference: When Masculine Words Include Women

ULT **the contribution of Yahweh**
UST to me a special contribution

See how you translated the similar expression in 18:26.

Support Reference: Abstract Nouns

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
the contribution of	a special contribution
Yahweh	to me
tithes	tenth
Israel	Israelites
Aaron	Aaron
priest	priest

Numbers 18:29

ULT	UST
From all your gifts you shall raise every contribution of Yahweh, from all its fat, its holy thing from it.'	*From everything that the Israelites give them, they must dedicate a special contribution to me. They must dedicate the best portion, which is sacred.*

ULT **every contribution of Yahweh**
UST a special contribution to me

If your language does not use an abstract noun for the idea of **contribution**, you could express the same idea in another way. Alternate translation: [everything you set apart for Yahweh]
Support Reference: Abstract Nouns

ULT **from all its fat**
UST They must dedicate the best portion

Here, **its fat** represents the best or choicest portion. If it would be helpful in your language, you could use an equivalent expression or plain language. Alternate translation: [from all the best of it]
Support Reference: Metonymy

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
contribution of	a special contribution
Yahweh	to me
its holy thing	which is sacred

Numbers 18:30

ULT	UST
And you shall say to them, ‘When you lift up its fat from it, then it shall be reckoned to the Levites like produce of a threshing floor and like produce of a winepress.	*So, tell the Levites that they must dedicate the best portion from everything that the Israelites give them. When they do that, I will consider it to be like when farmers dedicate grain that they have harvested or grape juice that they have produced.*

ULT **And you shall say to them, ‘When you lift up its fat from it**

UST So, tell the Levites that they must dedicate the best portion from everything that the Israelites give them

If it would be clearer in your language, you could translate this so that there is not a quotation within a quotation. Alternate translation: [And you shall say to them that when they lift up its fat from it]

Support Reference: Quotes within Quotes

ULT **When you lift up its fat from it**

UST that they must dedicate the best portion from everything that the Israelites give them

Yahweh is speaking as if the Levites setting apart the best portion were a hypothetical possibility, but he means that it will certainly happen. If your language does not state something as a condition if it is certain or true, or if your readers might think that what Yahweh is saying is uncertain, then you could translate this as a confident statement. Alternate translation: [Because you lift up its fat from it]

Support Reference: Connect — Factual Conditions

ULT **its fat**

UST the best portion

Here, **its fat** represents the best or choicest portion. If it would be helpful in your language, you could use an equivalent expression or plain language. Alternate translation: [the best of it]

Support Reference: Metonymy

ULT **then it shall be reckoned to the Levites**

UST When {they do that}, I will consider it to be

The expression **it shall be reckoned to the Levites** is a passive verbal form. If it would be unnatural to use that form, you could express the idea in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: [then it will count for the Levites]

Support Reference: Active or Passive

ULT **then it shall be reckoned to the Levites like produce of a threshing floor and like produce of a winepress**

UST When {they do that}, I will consider it to be like when farmers dedicate grain that they have harvested or grape juice that they have produced

Here Yahweh could mean that: (1) when the Levites give a tenth of what they receive from the rest of the Israelites, the same rules and principles apply as when Israelite farmers give a tenth of their grain or grape juice. In other words, even though the Levites do not grow their own food, they must give a tenth of the food they receive to Yahweh, just as the farmers do. Alternate translation: [then what you have dedicated will be reckoned to you Levites just as it is reckoned to farmers who dedicate the produce of a threshing floor or the produce of a winepress]; or (2) when the Levites give a tenth of what they receive from the rest of the Israelites, they may eat the rest of it as if they grew it themselves. Alternate translation: [then the rest of what you have received will be reckoned to you Levites as if you had produced it with your own threshing floors and winepresses]

Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

ULT **like produce of a threshing floor and like produce of a winepress**

UST like when farmers dedicate grain that they have harvested or grape juice that they have produced

The point of this comparison is that just as **produce of a threshing floor** and **produce of a winepress** belong fully to the farmer, so the remaining tithe belongs fully to the Levites. If it would be helpful in your language, you could make this point explicitly. Alternate translation: [as fully their own as a farmer's grain and wine]

Support Reference: Simile

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Levites	When {they do that}, I will consider it to be
produce	like when farmers dedicate grain that they have harvested
threshing	like when farmers dedicate grain that they have harvested
winepress	or grape juice that they have produced

Numbers 18:31

ULT	UST
And you shall eat it in every place, you and your house, for it is a wage for you in exchange for your service in the tent of meeting.	*The rest of what the Israelites give them is what I pay the Levites for setting up and taking down the sacred tent. So, they and their families may eat it anywhere they choose.*

ULT **is a wage**
UST is what I pay

If your language does not use an abstract noun for the idea of **wage**, you could express the same idea in another way. Alternate translation: [{is} what you earn]
Support Reference: Abstract Nouns

ULT **your service**
UST setting up and taking down

If your language does not use an abstract noun for the idea of **service**, you could express the same idea in another way. Alternate translation: [for your work in the tent of meeting]
Support Reference: Abstract Nouns

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
house	and their families
tent of meeting	the sacred tent

Numbers 18:32

ULT	UST
And you shall not lift up sin upon it when you raise its fat from it. And the holy things of the sons of Israel you shall not profane, and you shall not die.'"	*When they dedicate the best portion from everything that the Israelites give them, they will avoid defiling the sacred things that the Israelites give them. As a result, I will not punish them for doing anything wrong concerning those sacred things. That way, they will not die."*

ULT **And you shall not lift up sin**
UST As a result, I will not punish them for doing anything wrong

Yahweh is using **you shall not lift up sin** as a common expression of the culture to mean "you shall not incur guilt." If this phrase does not have that meaning for your readers, you could use a comparable expression from your language that does have that meaning, or you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [You shall not incur guilt]
Support Reference: Idiom

ULT **when you raise its fat from it**
UST When they dedicate the best portion from everything that the Israelites give them

Yahweh is speaking as if the Levites setting apart the best portion were a hypothetical possibility, but he means that it will certainly happen. If your language does not state something as a condition if it is certain or true, or if your readers might think that what Yahweh is saying is uncertain, then you could translate this as a confident statement. Alternate translation: [since you raise its fat from it]
Support Reference: Connect — Factual Conditions

ULT **its fat**
UST the best portion

See how you translated the similar expression in 18:30.
Support Reference: Metonymy

ULT **the sons of Israel**
UST that the Israelites give them

See how you translated the similar expression in 18:5.
Support Reference: When Masculine Words Include Women

ULT **sin**
UST for doing anything wrong

If your language does not use abstract nouns for the idea of **sin**, you could express the same idea in other ways. Alternate translation: [any wrong]
Support Reference: Abstract Nouns

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
sin	for doing anything wrong
holy	sacred
Israel	Israelites
profane	they will … defiling

Numbers 19

Numbers 19 Introduction

Numbers 19 Chapter Introduction

Structure and Formatting

This chapter explains how people can become clean after contact with a dead person. The ashes of a red cow are mixed with water and used in the cleansing ceremony.

1. Yahweh gives instructions for preparing the ashes of a red cow (1–10)
2. Yahweh explains how to cleanse people and objects made unclean by contact with the dead (11–22)

Religious and Cultural Concepts in This Chapter

Impurity from dead bodies

This chapter explains how dead bodies, including a burial site or even a bone from a body, make people impure. This impurity must be removed quickly. If people come in direct contact with a dead body, they must participate in this specific ritual twice over seven days. Even the person who helps them become pure is unclean until that evening. This chapter indicates how dangerous this kind of impurity is and how the Israelites must remove it.

Defiling the sacred tent

Because impurity from a dead body is so dangerous, Yahweh requires every Israelite who becomes impure in this way to cleanse themselves immediately. If anyone does not do this, their impurity makes the sacred tent impure, even if they do not visit the sacred tent. Making the sacred tent impure is a very serious crime that Yahweh will punish.

Priest or clean person

This chapter requires a priest to preside when someone burns the cow to create ashes. However, any clean person can apply the water and ashes to the people who are impure. It does not have to be a priest. In fact, because that clean person becomes unclean when he or she applies the water and ashes, it probably would not have been a priest.

Translation Issues in This Chapter

Being “cut off” from the people

The punishment for failing to purify oneself from impurity caused by a dead body was being “cut off” from the rest of the Israelites. Scholars are unsure exactly what penalty this phrase implies. It could refer to death by execution. It could refer to punishment from Yahweh in a way of his choice. It could refer to expulsion from the Israelite community. The UST and notes

follow this last option. If possible, use a word or phrase that could be understood in several of these ways. If you must specify, it is recommended that you follow the UST and notes.

Numbers 19:1

ULT	UST
And Yahweh spoke to Moses and to Aaron, saying,	*Yahweh told Moses and Aaron,*

> ULT **saying**
> UST told

The term **saying** introduces a direct quotation. See how you translated **saying** in 1:1.
Support Reference: Quotations and Quote Margins

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Yahweh	Yahweh
Moses	Moses
Aaron	Aaron

Numbers 19:2

ULT	UST
“This is the statute of the law that Yahweh has commanded, saying, ‘Speak to the sons of Israel, and they shall take to you a perfect red cow in which there is no blemish, on which a yoke has not gone up.	*Here is a rule from the instructions that I have ordered you to obey. Tell the Israelite people to bring to you, Moses, a reddish-brown cow. It must be completely healthy, with no defects. It must be a cow that no one has used to do work.*

ULT **on which a yoke has not gone up**
UST It must be a cow that no one has used to do work

Yahweh is using **on which a yoke has not gone up** as a common expression of the culture to mean “which has never been used for work.” If this phrase does not have that meaning for your readers, you could use a comparable expression from your language that does have that meaning, or you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [which has never been used for work]

Support Reference: Idiom

ULT **saying, ‘Speak to the sons of Israel, and they shall take to you**
UST Tell the Israelite people to bring to you, Moses

If it would be clearer in your language, you could translate this so that there is not a quotation within a quotation. Alternate translation: [He told Moses and Aaron to tell the sons of Israel that they should bring to them]

Support Reference: Quotes within Quotes

ULT **is the statute of the law**
UST is a rule from the instructions

Yahweh is using the possessive form to describe a statute that is characterized by the law. If a speaker of your language would not use the possessive form for this, you could express this idea in another way. Alternate translation: [is a legal statute]

Support Reference: Possession

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
statute	is a rule
law	from the instructions
Yahweh	I
Israel	Israelite
perfect	It must be completely healthy
cow	cow
blemish	defects
yoke	no one has used to do work

Numbers 19:3

ULT	UST
And you shall give it to Eleazar the priest, and he shall bring it out to the outside of the camp, and he shall slaughter it to his face.	*You, Moses and Aaron, must give the cow to the priest Eleazar. He must take it outside the area where the Israelites set up their tents. Then, someone must kill it in Eleazar's presence.*

ULT **and he shall slaughter it to his face**
UST Then, someone must kill it in Eleazar's presence

The pronoun he refers to an indefinite person who will perform the slaughtering, while the pronoun his refers to Eleazar. It may be helpful to clarify this for your readers. Alternate translation: [and someone shall slaughter it before Eleazar's face]
Support Reference: Pronouns — When to Use Them

ULT **to his face**
UST in Eleazar's presence

Here, **his face** represents his presence. If it would be helpful in your language, you could use an equivalent expression or plain language. Alternate translation: [before him]
Support Reference: Metonymy

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Eleazar	Eleazar
priest	priest
slaughter	Then, someone must kill

Numbers 19:4

ULT	UST
And Eleazar the priest shall take from its blood with his finger, and he shall sprinkle from its blood to the front of the face of the tent of meeting seven times.	*Then the priest Eleazar must dip one of his fingers in the cow's blood and flick some of the blood seven times toward the front of the sacred tent.*

> ULT **to the front of the face of the tent of meeting**
> UST toward the front of the sacred tent

Here, **the face of the tent of meeting** represents the front of the tent of meeting. If it would be helpful in your language, you could use an equivalent expression or plain language. Alternate translation: [toward the front of the tent of meeting]

Support Reference: Metonymy

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Eleazar	Eleazar
priest	priest
tent of meeting	the sacred tent
times	times

Numbers 19:5

ULT	UST
And he shall burn the cow to his eyes; its skin and its flesh and its blood, with its dung, he shall burn.	*Then someone must burn the cow while Eleazar watches. That person must burn the entire cow, including its hide, its meat, its blood, and its excrement.*

ULT **And he shall burn the cow**
UST Then someone must burn the cow

The pronoun **he** refers to an indefinite person, not to Eleazar. It may be helpful to clarify this for your readers. Alternate translation: [And someone shall burn the cow]
Support Reference: Pronouns — When to Use Them

ULT **to his eyes**
UST while Eleazar watches

Here, **his eyes** represents his sight. If it would be helpful in your language, you could use an equivalent expression or plain language. Alternate translation: [while he watches]
Support Reference: Metonymy

ULT **its skin and its flesh and its blood, with its dung, he shall burn**
UST That person must burn {the entire cow, including} its hide, its meat, its blood, and its excrement

If it would be more natural in your language, you may want to put the information about the burning before the list of the cow's parts. Alternate translation: [he shall burn its skin and its flesh and its blood and its dung]
Support Reference: Information Structure

ULT **its skin and its flesh and its blood, with its dung**
UST its hide, its meat, its blood, and its excrement

The implication is that this list refers to the entirety of the cow. You could include this information if that would be helpful to your readers. Alternate translation: [its skin and its flesh and its blood, and its dung—the entire cow]
Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
cow	cow
dung	and its excrement

Numbers 19:6

ULT	UST
And the priest shall take wood of cedar and hyssop and scarlet of worm, and he shall throw to the midst of the burning of the cow.	*After that, the priest must pick up some cedar wood, some hyssop branches, and some crimson thread. He must toss them onto the fire where the cow is burning.*

ULT **wood of cedar**
UST some cedar wood

Yahweh is using the possessive form to describe **wood** that is characterized by **cedar**. If a speaker of your language would not use the possessive form for this, you could express this idea in another way. Alternate translation: [cedar wood]
Support Reference: Possession

ULT **and hyssop**
UST some hyssop branches

A **hyssop** is a kind of small, bushy plant with aromatic leaves. If your readers would not be familiar with what a hyssop is, you could use the name of a similar thing that your readers would recognize, or you could use a more general term. Alternate translation: [and marjoram]
Support Reference: Translate Unknowns

ULT **and scarlet of worm**
UST and some crimson thread

The **scarlet of worm** is a kind of crimson-dyed thread, with the dye being made from crushed scale insects. If your readers would not be familiar with what scarlet of worm is, you could use the name of a similar thing that your readers would recognize, or you could use a more general term. Alternate translation: [and scarlet thread]
Support Reference: Translate Unknowns

ULT **the burning of the cow**
UST the fire where the cow is burning

If your language does not use an abstract noun for the idea of **burning**, you could express the same idea in another way. Alternate translation: [the fire burning the cow]
Support Reference: Abstract Nouns

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
priest	priest
cedar	cedar
cow	cow

Numbers 19:7

ULT	UST
And the priest shall wash his clothes, and he shall bathe his flesh in the water, and after he shall come to the camp. And the priest shall be unclean until the evening.	*Then the priest must wash his clothes and thoroughly bathe himself. After that, he may return to the area where the Israelites set up their tents. However, he will be impure until the sun sets on that day.*

ULT **And the priest shall wash his clothes, and he shall bathe his flesh in the water, and after he shall come to the camp. And the priest shall be unclean until the evening**

UST Then the priest must wash his clothes and thoroughly bathe himself. After that, he may return to the area where the Israelites set up their tents. However, he will be impure until the sun sets on that day

The priest's coming to the camp did not happen right after the burning of the cow. The word **afterward** shows that he first needed to wash his clothes and bathe. Your language may have a connecting phrase that you can use to show this. Alternate translation: [After the priest washes his clothes and bathes his flesh in the water, he may come to the camp. The priest will be unclean until the evening.]

Support Reference: Connect — Sequential Time Relationship

ULT **his flesh**

UST and thoroughly bathe himself

Yahweh is using **his flesh** to represent the priest's whole body. If it would be helpful in your language, you could use an equivalent expression from your culture or state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [himself]

Support Reference: Synecdoche

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
priest	priest

Numbers 19:8

ULT	UST
And the one burning it shall wash his clothes in the water, and he shall bathe his flesh in the water, and he shall be unclean until the evening.	*The person who burned the cow must also wash his or her clothes and thoroughly bathe himself or herself. That person will be impure until the sun sets on that day.*

ULT **And the one burning it**

UST The person who burned the cow

Yahweh is not referring to a specific person by the phrase **the one burning it**. He means anyone who performs this task. If it would be helpful to your readers, you could use an expression that would be more natural in your language. Alternate translation: [Anyone who burns it]

Support Reference: Generic Noun Phrases

ULT **his flesh**

UST and thoroughly bathe himself or herself

See how you translated the similar expression in 19:7. Alternate translation: [himself]

Support Reference: Synecdoche

Numbers 19:9

ULT	UST
And a clean man shall gather the ashes of the cow and make them rest from outside to the camp in a clean place. And it shall be for the congregation of the sons of Israel for keeping, for water of impurity. It is a sin offering.	*A man who is pure must collect the cow's ashes. He must put them in a pure place outside the area where the Israelites set up their tents. The Israelite community must keep the ashes safe. They will use them with water to make themselves pure. When they burn this cow it counts as a purifying sacrifice.*

ULT **the sons of Israel**
UST Israelite

Here Yahweh is speaking as if the Israelites were literally the **sons** of the patriarch Israel. He means that they are his descendants. If this meaning would not be clear in your language, you could use a comparable expression or you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [the descendants of Israel]
Support Reference: Metaphor

ULT **for keeping**
UST must keep the ashes safe

If your language does not use an abstract noun for the idea of **keeping**, you could express the same idea in another way. Alternate translation: [to keep]
Support Reference: Abstract Nouns

ULT **for water of impurity**
UST They will use them with water to make themselves pure

If your language does not use an abstract noun for the idea of **impurity**, you could express the same idea in another way. Alternate translation: [for water to cleanse those who are unclean]
Support Reference: Abstract Nouns

ULT **for water of impurity**
UST They will use them with water to make themselves pure

Here, the word translated impurity could refer to: (1) the quality of being unclean. In this case, the water is meant to be used to make pure things that are impure. Alternate translation: [for water to be used in cases of impurity] or [for water to cleanse impurity]; or (2) the act of sprinkling. Alternate translation: [for water for sprinkling]
Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

ULT **for water of impurity**
UST They will use them with water to make themselves pure

The **water of impurity** is a kind of ritual cleansing water made by mixing the ashes of the cow with fresh water. If your readers would not be familiar with what water of impurity is, you could use the name of a similar thing that your readers would recognize, or you could use a more general term. Alternate translation: [for water that removes impurity]
Support Reference: Translate Unknowns

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
gather	must collect
cow	cow’s
congregation	community
Israel	Israelite
sin	a purifying sacrifice

Numbers 19:10

ULT	UST
And the one gathering the ashes of the cow shall wash his clothes, and he shall be unclean until the evening. And it shall be for the sons of Israel and for the sojourner, the one sojourning in their midst, for a statute of eternity.	*The man who collected the cow's ashes must also wash his clothes. He will be impure until the sun sets on that day. This is a permanent rule. It applies both to the Israelites and to the foreigners who live among them.*

ULT **the one gathering the ashes of the cow**
UST The man who collected the cow's ashes

Yahweh is not referring to a specific person by the phrase **the one gathering the ashes of the cow**. He means anyone who gathers the ashes. If it would be helpful to your readers, you could use an expression that would be more natural in your language. Alternate translation: [anyone who gathers the ashes of the cow]
Support Reference: Generic Noun Phrases

ULT **for the sons of Israel**
UST both to the Israelites

Here Yahweh is speaking as if the Israelites were literally the **sons** of the patriarch Israel. He means that they are his descendants. If this meaning would not be clear in your language, you could use a comparable expression or you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [for the descendants of Israel]
Support Reference: Metaphor

ULT **and for the sojourner, the one sojourning in their midst**
UST and to the foreigners who live among them

Yahweh is not referring to a specific **sojourner**. He means any foreigner who lives among the Israelites. If it would be helpful to your readers, you could use an expression that would be more natural in your language. Alternate translation: [and for any foreigner who lives among them]
Support Reference: Generic Noun Phrases

ULT **for a statute of eternity**
UST This is a permanent rule

Yahweh is using the possessive form to describe a **statute** that is characterized by **eternity**. If a speaker of your language would not use the possessive form for this, you could express this idea in another way. Alternate translation: [for a statute that lasts forever]
Support Reference: Possession

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
gathering	The man who collected
cow	cow's
Israel	Israelites
sojourning	who live among them
statute	This is a … rule
eternity	permanent

Numbers 19:11

ULT	UST
The one touching a dying one for every person of a man shall be unclean seven days.	*Anyone who touches a human corpse will become impure for seven days.*

The ideas of “clean” and “purify” represent being acceptable to God. The ideas of “unclean,” “defile,” “impurity,” and “uncleanness” represent not being acceptable to God.
Support Reference: Metaphor

> ULT **a dying one for every person of a man**
> UST a human corpse

Alternate translation: [the dead body of any person]

Numbers 19:12

ULT	UST
He shall purify himself with it on the third day and on the seventh day. He will be clean. And if he does not purify himself on the third day and on the seventh day, he will not be clean.	*That person must have someone cleanse him or her with the water and ashes. That must happen twice: two days and six days after he or she touched a corpse. After that the person will be pure. However, suppose that the person does not have someone cleanse him or her with the water and ashes two days and six days after he or she touched a corpse. In that case, the person will not be pure.*

ULT **He shall purify himself with it on the third day and on the seventh day. He will be clean. And if he does not purify himself on the third day and on the seventh day, he will not be clean**

UST That person must have someone cleanse him or her with the water and ashes. {That must happen twice}: two days and six days after {he or she touched a corpse}. {After that} the person will be pure. However, suppose that the person does not have someone cleanse him or her {with the water and ashes} two days and six days after {he or she touched a corpse}. In that case, the person will not be pure

Here, the phrase on the seventh day in both places could go with: (1) purify himself. In this case, the purification should happen twice, on day three and on day seven. Alternate translation: [He shall purify himself with it two times, on the third day and on the seventh day. Then he will be clean. And if he does not purify himself two times, on the third day and on the seventh day, he will not be clean]; or (2) be clean. In this case, the purification happens once, on day three, and the person is clean on day seven. Alternate translation: [He shall purify himself with it on the third day, and on the seventh day he will be clean. And if he does not purify himself on the third day, then on the seventh day he will not be clean]

Support Reference: Information Structure

ULT **He shall purify himself with it on the third day and on the seventh day. He will be clean. And if he does not purify himself on the third day and on the seventh day, he will not be clean**

UST That person must have someone cleanse him or her with the water and ashes. {That must happen twice}: two days and six days after {he or she touched a corpse}. {After that} the person will be pure. However, suppose that the person does not have someone cleanse him or her {with the water and ashes} two days and six days after {he or she touched a corpse}. In that case, the person will not be pure

Yahweh uses the word **if** here to indicate a contrast between the positive result of purification and the negative result of failing to purify. In your translation, indicate this contrast in a way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: [He shall purify himself with it on the third day and on the seventh day, and he will be clean. But if he does not purify himself on the third day and on the seventh day, he will not be clean.]

Support Reference: Connect — Contrast Relationship

> ULT **He shall purify himself with it**
> UST That person must have someone cleanse him or her with the water and ashes

The pronoun **He** refers to the person who touched a dead body, and the pronoun **it** refers to the purification water. It may be helpful to clarify this for your readers. Alternate translation: [He shall purify himself with the purification water]

Support Reference: Pronouns — When to Use Them

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
He will be clean	pure
he will … be clean	pure

Numbers 19:13

ULT	UST
Every one touching a dying one in the person of the man that dies, and he does not purify himself, he has made the Dwelling of Yahweh unclean. And that person shall be cut off from Israel, for water of impurity was not splashed on him. He shall be unclean; his uncleanness is still on him.	*Suppose that someone touches a human corpse but does not have someone cleanse him or her with the water and ashes. In that case, the person has caused the sacred tent where Yahweh makes himself present to become impure. Because no one splattered the water and ashes on that person to make him or her pure, the other Israelites must drive that person out from among them. That person is and will always be impure.*

ULT **And that person shall be cut off from Israel**
UST the other Israelites must drive that person out from among them

The expression **shall be cut off from Israel** is a passive verbal form. If it would be unnatural to use that form, you could express the idea in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. If you need to say who does the action, the context indicates that it is the rest of the Israelites. Alternate translation: [the Israelites shall drive that person out from among them]
Support Reference: Active or Passive

ULT **And that person shall be cut off from Israel**
UST the other Israelites must drive that person out from among them

Yahweh is speaking as if the person being expelled from the community were being physically **cut off**. If this meaning would not be clear in your language, you could use a comparable expression or you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [And that person shall be expelled from Israel]
Support Reference: Metaphor

ULT **water of impurity was not splashed on him**
UST no one splattered the water {and ashes} on that person to make him or her pure

The expression **was not sprinkled on him** is a passive verbal form. If it would be unnatural to use that form, you could express the idea in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: [no one sprinkled the water of impurity on him]
Support Reference: Active or Passive

ULT **for water of impurity was not splashed on him**
UST Because no one splattered the water {and ashes} on that person to make him or her pure

The word translated as **for** indicates that what follows is a reason for what came before. Use a connector in your language that makes it clear that what follows is a reason for what came before. Alternate translation: [Because the water of impurity was not splashed on him]
Support Reference: Connect — Reason-and-Result Relationship

ULT **his uncleanness {is} still on him**
UST and will always be

If your language does not use an abstract noun for the idea of **uncleanness**, you could express the same idea in another way. Alternate translation: [he has not yet become clean]
Support Reference: Abstract Nouns

ULT **water of impurity**
UST the water and ashes … to make him or her pure

See how you translated this phrase in 19:9.

Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
the Dwelling of	the sacred tent
Yahweh	Yahweh
Israel	from among them

Numbers 19:14

ULT	UST
This is the law: a man, when he dies in a tent, every one coming to the tent and everyone who is in the tent shall be unclean seven days.	*Here are the instructions for when someone dies inside a tent. Everyone who was in that tent and everyone who enters that tent will become impure for seven days.*

ULT **a man, when he dies in a tent**
UST for when someone dies inside a tent

Yahweh is presenting a possible condition, that a man dies in a tent, and everyone who comes to the tent or is in the tent will be unclean. Use a natural form in your language for introducing a condition that could happen. It may be helpful to reorder this sentence so that the conditional statement is first. Alternate translation: [if a man dies in a tent]

Support Reference: Connect — Hypothetical Conditions

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
law	are the instructions
tent	tent

Numbers 19:15

ULT	UST
And every opened vessel on which there is no cover of cord, it is unclean.	*Also, every container inside that tent that has no lid covering it is impure.*

ULT **And every opened vessel**
UST Also, every container inside that tent

The expression **opened** is a passive verbal form. If it would be unnatural to use that form, you could express the idea in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: [And every vessel that is open]
Support Reference: Active or Passive

ULT **cover of cord**
UST lid

Yahweh is using the possessive form to describe a **cover** that is characterized by **cord**. If a speaker of your language would not use the possessive form for this, you could express this idea in another way. Alternate translation: [cover tied with cord]
Support Reference: Possession

Numbers 19:16

ULT	UST
And everyone who touches on the face of the field a slain one of the sword or a dying one or a bone of a man or a grave shall be unclean seven days.	*Now suppose that someone is outdoors. Suppose that person touches the place where someone buried someone, or a human bone, or a corpse. The corpse may be someone who died naturally or someone whom someone else killed. In that case, the person who touched any of those things will become impure for seven days.*

ULT **the face of the field**
UST is outdoors

Here, **the face of the field** represents "the surface of the open land." If it would be helpful in your language, you could use an equivalent expression or plain language. Alternate translation: [the surface of the open land]
Support Reference: Metonymy

ULT **a slain one of the sword**
UST or someone whom someone else killed

Here, **sword** represents "the means by which someone was killed." If it would be helpful in your language, you could use an equivalent expression or plain language. Alternate translation: [one who was killed]
Support Reference: Metonymy

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
slain	killed
sword	or someone whom someone else killed
grave	the place where someone buried someone

Numbers 19:17

ULT	UST
And they shall take for the unclean one from the dust of the burning of the sin offering, and he shall put living water on it into a vessel.	*Someone must pick up some of the ashes from the cow that they burned as a purifying sacrifice. That person must put them into a container and pour fresh water on them. That person will use the water and ashes to cleanse any impure people.*

ULT **And they shall take**
UST Someone must pick up

The pronoun **they** refers to people in general, not to specific individuals. It may be helpful to clarify this for your readers. Alternate translation: [And someone shall take]
Support Reference: Pronouns — When to Use Them

ULT **for the unclean one**
UST That person will use the water and ashes to cleanse any impure people

Yahweh is using the adjective **unclean** as a noun to mean a certain kind of person. Your language may use adjectives in the same way. If not, you can translate this adjective with an equivalent phrase. Alternate translation: [for the person who is unclean]
Support Reference: Nominal Adjectives

ULT **and he shall put living water on it**
UST That person must put them … and pour fresh water on them

The pronoun **he** refers to the person preparing the purification water, and the pronoun **it** refers to the dust of the sin offering. It may be helpful to clarify this for your readers. Alternate translation: [and that person shall put living water on the dust]
Support Reference: Pronouns — When to Use Them

ULT **living water**
UST fresh water

Yahweh is using **living water** as a common expression of the culture to mean “flowing, fresh water.” If this phrase does not have that meaning for your readers, you could use a comparable expression from your language that does have that meaning, or you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [flowing water]
Support Reference: Idiom

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
sin offering	as a purifying sacrifice

Numbers 19:18

ULT	UST
And he shall take hyssop, and a clean man shall dip it in the water, and he shall sprinkle on the tent and on all the vessels and on the persons who were there, and on the one touching the bone or the slain one or the dying one or the grave.	*Then a man who is pure must take some hyssop branches and dip them in the water. Then he must flick some of the water onto the persons or things that are unclean. That includes a tent in which someone died and all the containers and people who were in it. It also includes anyone who touches the place where someone buried someone, or a human bone, or a corpse. The corpse may be someone who died naturally or someone whom someone else killed*

ULT **and he shall sprinkle on the tent**

UST Then he must flick {some of the water onto the persons or things that are unclean}. That includes a tent in which someone died

The pronoun **he** refers to the clean man who will perform the sprinkling. It may be helpful to clarify this for your readers. Alternate translation: [and the clean man shall sprinkle on the tent]

Support Reference: Pronouns — When to Use Them

ULT **hyssop**

UST some hyssop branches

A **hyssop** is a kind of small, bushy plant. If your readers would not be familiar with what **hyssop** is, you could use the name of a similar plant that your readers would recognize, or you could use a more general term. Alternate translation: [a small, bushy plant]

Support Reference: Translate Unknowns

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
tent	tent
slain	killed
grave	the place where someone buried someone

Numbers 19:19

ULT	UST
And the clean one shall sprinkle on the unclean one on the third day and on the seventh day. And he shall purify him on the seventh day, and he shall wash his clothes and bathe in the water, and he will be clean in the evening.	*The person who is pure must flick the water on anyone who is impure twice: two days and six days after he or she became impure. Once the person who is pure cleanses the person who is impure six after he or she became impure, the person who was impure must wash his or her clothes and thoroughly bathe himself or herself. When the sun sets on that day, that person will become pure.*

ULT **And the clean one shall sprinkle on the unclean one**

UST The person who is pure must flick {the water} on anyone who is impure

Yahweh is using the adjectives **clean** and **unclean** as nouns to mean certain kinds of people. Your language may use adjectives in the same way. If not, you can translate these adjectives with equivalent phrases. Alternate translation: [And the clean person shall sprinkle on the unclean person]

Support Reference: Nominal Adjectives

ULT **and he shall wash his clothes and bathe in the water**

UST the person who was impure must wash his or her clothes and thoroughly bathe himself or herself

The pronoun **he** refers to the person who was purified, not to the one who performed the sprinkling. It may be helpful to clarify this for your readers. Alternate translation: [and the unclean person shall wash his clothes and bathe in the water]

Support Reference: Pronouns — When to Use Them

ULT **And he shall purify him**

UST Once the person who is pure cleanses the person who is impure

Here, the pronoun him refers to the unclean one. The pronoun he could refer to: (1) the clean one. In this case, the phrase refers to the clean person sprinkling the water on the unclean person. Alternate translation: [And the clean one shall purify the unclean one]; or (2) the unclean one. In this case, the phrase indicates that the unclean person must successfully complete the ritual to become clean. Alternate translation: [And the unclean one shall purify himself]

Support Reference: Pronouns — When to Use Them

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
purify	pure
and he will be clean	pure

Numbers 19:20

ULT	UST
And a man who is unclean and does not purify himself, that person shall be cut off from the midst of the assembly, for he has made the holy place of Yahweh unclean. Water of impurity was not splashed on him; he is unclean.	*Suppose that a person becomes impure and does not cleanse himself or herself. That person has caused the sacred tent where Yahweh makes himself present to become impure. So, the other Israelites must drive that person out from among them. No one splattered the water and ashes on that person to make him or her pure. So, that person remains impure.*

ULT **that person shall be cut off from the midst of the assembly**
UST the other Israelites must drive that person out from among them

The expression **shall be cut off from the midst of the assembly** is a passive verbal form. If it would be unnatural to use that form, you could express the idea in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. If you need to say who does the action, the context indicates that it is the rest of the Israelites. Alternate translation: [the rest of the Israelites shall drive that person out from the midst of the assembly]

Support Reference: Active or Passive

ULT **shall be cut off from the midst of the assembly**
UST the other Israelites must drive … out from among them

Yahweh is speaking as if the person being expelled from the community were being physically **cut off**. If this meaning would not be clear in your language, you could use a comparable expression or you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [shall be expelled from the assembly]

Support Reference: Metaphor

ULT **Water of impurity was not splashed on him**
UST No one splattered the water {and ashes} on that person to make him or her pure

See how you translated the similar expression in 19:13. The expression **was not splashed on him** is a passive verbal form. If it would be unnatural to use that form, you could express the idea in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: [No one splashed the water of impurity on him]

Support Reference: Active or Passive

ULT **Water of impurity**
UST the water and ashes … to make him or her pure

See how you translated the similar expression in 19:13. If your language does not use an abstract noun for the idea of **impurity**, you could express the same idea in another way. Alternate translation: [Water that makes people clean]

Support Reference: Abstract Nouns

> ULT **And a man who is unclean and does not purify himself, that person shall be cut off from the midst of the assembly, for he has made the holy place of Yahweh unclean. Water of impurity was not splashed on him; he {is} unclean**
> UST Suppose that a person becomes impure and does not cleanse himself or herself. That person has caused the sacred tent {where} Yahweh {makes himself present} to become impure. So, the other Israelites must drive that person out from among them. No one splattered the water {and ashes} on that person to make him or her pure. {So,} that person remains impure

The word translated as **for** indicates that what follows is a reason for what came before. Use a connector in your language that makes it clear that what follows is a reason for what came before. Alternate translation: [Because he has made the holy place of Yahweh unclean]

Support Reference: Connect — Reason-and-Result Relationship

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
purify	does … cleanse himself or herself
assembly	from among them
holy place	the sacred tent
Yahweh	Yahweh

Numbers 19:21

ULT	UST
And it shall be for them for a statute of eternity. And the one sprinkling the water of the impurity shall wash his clothes, and the one touching the water of the impurity shall be unclean until the evening.	*That is a permanent rule for the Israelites. Additionally, the person who flicked the water on anyone to make him or her pure must wash his or her clothes. Anyone who touches the water that makes people pure will become impure until the sun sets on that day.*

ULT **for a statute of eternity**
UST a permanent rule

If your language does not use an abstract noun for the idea of **eternity**, you could express the same idea in another way. Alternate translation: [for a statute that lasts forever]
Support Reference: Abstract Nouns

ULT **for a statute of eternity**
UST a permanent rule

Yahweh is using **a statute of eternity** as a common expression of the culture to mean "a permanent rule." If this phrase does not have that meaning for your readers, you could use a comparable expression from your language that does have that meaning, or you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [for a lasting regulation]
Support Reference: Idiom

ULT **the water of the impurity**
UST the water on anyone to make him or her pure

If your language does not use an abstract noun for the idea of **impurity**, you could express the same idea in another way. Alternate translation: [the water used to cleanse the unclean]
Support Reference: Abstract Nouns

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
statute	a … rule
eternity	permanent

Numbers 19:22

ULT	UST
And everything that the unclean one touches shall be unclean, and the person touching it shall be unclean until the evening.’”	*Suppose that a person who is impure touches anything. That thing will become impure. Further, anyone who touches that thing will also become impure until the sun sets on that day.”*

ULT **the unclean one**

UST Suppose that a person who is impure

See how you translated the similar expression in 19:17. Moses is using the adjective **unclean** as a noun to mean a certain kind of person. Your language may use adjectives in the same way. If not, you can translate this adjective with an equivalent phrase. Alternate translation: [the person who is unclean]

Support Reference: Nominal Adjectives

ULT **touching**

UST who touches that thing

Here, Yahweh could be referring to touching: (1) any object that the unclean person has touched. Alternate translation: [touching something that the unclean one has touched]; or (2) the unclean person. Alternate translation: [touching the unclean one]

Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

Numbers 20

Numbers 20 Introduction

Numbers 20 Chapter Introduction

Structure and Formatting

This chapter describes the deaths of Miriam and Aaron. It also tells how Moses and Aaron disobey Yahweh when the people need water. Yahweh declares that they will not lead Israel into the Promised Land.

1. Miriam dies and is buried at Kadesh (1)
2. Yahweh provides water from a rock, but Moses and Aaron disobey him (2–13)
3. Edom refuses to let Israel travel through its land (14–21)
4. Aaron dies, and Eleazar takes his place as high priest (22–29)

Religious and Cultural Concepts in This Chapter

What Moses and Aaron did wrong

In 20:12, Yahweh condemns Moses and Aaron for doing something wrong when they provided water for the people. However, Yahweh does not specify exactly which action was wrong, and scholars debate what it was. Yahweh told Moses to speak to the rock, but Moses also struck it twice with a staff. That may have been what he did wrong. Moses also spoke to the people as if he and Aaron were the ones providing the water. This may have implied that it was them instead of Yahweh. That may have been what he did wrong. Since the text does not make it explicit, it is recommended that you do not state exactly which action was wrong in your translation.

Transferring clothing

In 20:26–28, Moses must take Aaron's clothing off and put it on his son Eleazar. This clothing was specifically the clothing that Aaron wore when he did his work as high priest. Moses only removed Aaron's outer garments. He did not make Aaron completely naked. When Moses transferred the high priest clothing from Aaron to Eleazar, it symbolized that Eleazar was now high priest.

Translation Issues in This Chapter

Personifying people groups

In 20:14–21, both the messengers and the narrator often speak of the Israelites and the Edomites as if each group were one person. They use the first or third person singular for the entire group, but sometimes they also use plural forms. This alternation between singular and

plural was natural in their culture. The UST models how to translate the verses using only plural forms, without the figure of speech.

Numbers 20:1

ULT	UST
And the sons of Israel, all the congregation, came to the wilderness of Zin in the first month, and the people dwelt at Kadesh. And Miriam died there, and she was buried there.	*In the first month of the fortieth year after they left Egypt, the whole Israelite community arrived at the desolate area of Zin. They stayed at the city of Kadesh. While they were there, Miriam died, and the Israelites buried her.*

ULT **And the sons of Israel, all the congregation, came to the wilderness of Zin in the first month**

UST In the first month {of the fortieth year after they left Egypt}, the whole Israelite community arrived at the desolate area of Zin

The author is using the word translated as **And** to introduce a new event in the story. Use a word, phrase, or other method in your language that is natural for introducing a new event.

Support Reference: Introduction of a New Event

ULT **the sons of Israel**

UST Israelite

See how you translated these same phrases in Numbers 1:2. Alternate translation: [the people of Israel]

Support Reference: Metaphor

ULT **in the first month**

UST In the first month of the fortieth year after they left Egypt

This is the first month of the Hebrew calendar. It marks when God rescued the Israelites from the Egyptians. The first month is during the last part of March and the first part of April on the Western calendar.

Support Reference: Hebrew Months

ULT **in the first month**

UST In the first month of the fortieth year after they left Egypt

Here the author implies that this is the **first month** of the fortieth year since the Israelites left the land of Egypt. See the chapter introduction for more information. Alternate translation: [in the first month of the year that was forty years after they left Egypt]

Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

ULT **the wilderness of Zin**

UST the desolate area of Zin

The word “Zin” here is the Hebrew name of the wilderness.

Support Reference: Copy or Borrow Words

ULT **and the people dwelt**

UST They stayed

The phrase **the people** refers to the sons of Israel. It may be helpful to clarify this for your readers. Alternate translation: [and the Israelites dwelt]

Support Reference: Pronouns — When to Use Them

> ULT **and she was buried there**
> UST and the Israelites buried her

The expression **she was buried** is a passive verbal form. If it would be unnatural to use that form, you could express the idea in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: [they buried her there]

Support Reference: Active or Passive

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Israel	Israelite
congregation	community
wilderness	the desolate area of
month	month
Kadesh	Kadesh
Miriam	Miriam
buried	buried

Numbers 20:2

ULT	UST
And there was no water for the congregation, and they assembled against Moses and against Aaron.	*Now the community could not find any water to drink there. So, they came together to criticize Moses and Aaron.*

ULT **And there was no water for the congregation**
UST Now the community could not find any water to drink there

Here the author is providing background information to help readers understand what happens next in the story. In your translation, introduce this information in a way that would be natural in your own language and culture.
Support Reference: Background Information

ULT **And there was no water**
UST Now … could not find any water to drink there

Here, the author implies that **there was no water** in or near the city of Kadesh. If it would be helpful to your readers, you could make that explicit. Alternate translation: [And there was no water in Kadesh]
Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

ULT **and they assembled**
UST So, they came together

The pronoun **they** refers to the congregation. It may be helpful to clarify this for your readers. Alternate translation: [and the congregation assembled]
Support Reference: Pronouns — When to Use Them

ULT **and they assembled**
UST So, they came together

Alternate translation: [came as a mob]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
congregation	community
assembled	So, they came together
Moses	Moses
Aaron	Aaron

Numbers 20:3

ULT	UST
And the people contended with Moses, and they said, saying, "If only we had expired when our brothers expired to the face of Yahweh!	*The people argued with Moses. They said, "We wish that we had died when our fellow Israelites died in Yahweh's presence!*

ULT **and they said, saying**
UST They said

Here and throughout the chapter, the term **saying** introduces a direct quotation. See how you translated **saying** in 1:1.
Support Reference: Quotations and Quote Margins

ULT **If only we had expired**
UST We wish that we had died

The people are using a phrase that expresses a strong feeling, a desperate wish that they had already died. There may be an equivalent word or phrase in your language that you can use in your translation to convey this feeling. Alternate translation: [We would rather have died]
Support Reference: Exclamations

ULT **we had expired**
UST we had died

By **we**, the people mean themselves and their fellow Israelites but not those to whom they are speaking, so use the exclusive form of that word in your translation if your language marks that distinction.
Support Reference: Exclusive and Inclusive 'We'

ULT **we had expired when our brothers expired**
UST we had died when our fellow Israelites died

The people are referring to death in a polite way by using the phrase **we had expired when our brothers expired**. Depending on what is helpful for your readers, you could use a polite way of referring to this in your language, or you could state this plainly. Alternate translation: [we had died when our brothers died]
Support Reference: Euphemism

ULT **our brothers**
UST our fellow Israelites

Here the people are speaking as if their fellow Israelites were their brothers. If this meaning would not be clear in your language, you could use a comparable expression or you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [our kinsmen]
Support Reference: Metaphor

ULT **to the face of Yahweh**
UST in Yahweh's presence

Here, to the face of Yahweh represents being in Yahweh's presence. If it would be helpful in your language, you could use an equivalent expression or plain language. Alternate translation: [before Yahweh]
Support Reference: Metonymy

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Moses	Moses
Yahweh	Yahweh’s

Numbers 20:4

ULT	UST
And why have you brought the assembly of Yahweh to this wilderness to die there, we and our livestock?	*You and Aaron have taken us, the community of people who serve Yahweh, to this desolate area only so that we and our animals will die here!*

ULT **And why have you brought the assembly of Yahweh to this wilderness to die there, we and our livestock**
UST You {and Aaron} have taken us, the community of people who serve Yahweh, to this desolate area only so that we and our animals will die here

Here, the word **to** marks **die there** as the purpose of **have you brought the assembly of Yahweh to this wilderness**. Use a connector in your language that makes it clear that this is the purpose.
Support Reference: Connect — Goal (Purpose) Relationship

ULT **And why have you brought the assembly of Yahweh to this wilderness to die there**
UST You {and Aaron} have taken us, the community of people who serve Yahweh, to this desolate area only so that … will die here

The people are using the question form to rebuke Moses and Aaron for bringing them into the wilderness to die. If a speaker of your language would not use the question form for that purpose, you could translate this as a statement or as an exclamation. Alternate translation: [You have brought the assembly of Yahweh to this wilderness to die there!]
Support Reference: Rhetorical Question

ULT **have you brought**
UST You {and Aaron} have taken

The pronoun **you** refers to Moses and Aaron. It may be helpful to clarify this for your readers. Alternate translation: [have Moses and Aaron brought]
Support Reference: Pronouns — When to Use Them

ULT **the assembly of Yahweh**
UST us, the community of people who serve Yahweh

The people are using the possessive form to describe an **assembly** that is characterized by belonging to **Yahweh**. If a speaker of your language would not use the possessive form for this, you could express this idea in another way. Alternate translation: [the assembly that worships Yahweh]
Support Reference: Possession

ULT **we and our livestock**
UST we and our animals

By **we**, the people mean themselves and their fellow Israelites but not those to whom they are speaking, so use the exclusive form of that word in your translation if your language marks that distinction.
Support Reference: Exclusive and Inclusive ‘We’

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
assembly	community
Yahweh	Yahweh
wilderness	desolate area
livestock	animals

Numbers 20:5

ULT	UST
And why did you bring us up from Egypt to bring us to this evil place? It is not a place of seed and fig and vine and pomegranate, and there is no water to drink!”	*You should not have led us out of Egypt only to take us to this terrible area! Nothing grows here. There are no crops, figs, grapevines, or pomegranates. There is not even water for us to drink!”*

ULT **And why did you bring us up from Egypt to bring us to this evil place? {It is} not a place of seed and fig and vine and pomegranate, and there is no water to drink**
UST You should not have led us out of Egypt only to take us to this terrible area! Nothing grows here. There are no crops, figs, grapevines, or pomegranates. There is not even water for us to drink

Here, the word **to** marks **bring us to this evil place** as the purpose of **did you bring us up from Egypt**. Use a connector in your language that makes it clear that this is the purpose.
Support Reference: Connect — Goal (Purpose) Relationship

ULT **And why did you bring us up from Egypt to bring us to this evil place**
UST You should not have led us out of Egypt only to take us to this terrible area

The people are using the question form to rebuke Moses and Aaron for bringing them up out of Egypt to this evil place. If a speaker of your language would not use the question form for that purpose, you could translate this as a statement or as an exclamation. Alternate translation: [You should not have brought us up from Egypt to bring us to this evil place!]
Support Reference: Rhetorical Question

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Egypt	Egypt
evil	terrible
seed	There are no crops
fig	figs
vine	grapevines
pomegranate	pomegranates

Numbers 20:6

ULT	UST
And Moses and Aaron went from the face of the assembly to the opening of the tent of meeting, and they fell on their faces. And the glory of Yahweh appeared to them.	*Moses and Aaron left the Israelite community and went to the entrance of the sacred tent. There, they sorrowfully and fearfully bowed down before Yahweh. Then Yahweh made himself present to them in a glorious way.*

ULT **from the face of the assembly**
UST left the {Israelite} community

Here, **from the face of the assembly** represents being in front of the assembly. If it would be helpful in your language, you could use an equivalent expression or plain language. Alternate translation: [away from the assembly]
Support Reference: Metonymy

ULT **and they fell on their faces**
UST There, they {sorrowfully and fearfully} bowed down before Yahweh

The pronouns **they** and **their** refer to Moses and Aaron. It may be helpful to clarify this for your readers. Alternate translation: [and Moses and Aaron fell on their faces]
Support Reference: Pronouns — When to Use Them

ULT **the glory of Yahweh**
UST Yahweh … in a glorious way

Moses is using the possessive form to describe the **glory** that is characterized by belonging to **Yahweh**. If a speaker of your language would not use the possessive form for this, you could express this idea in another way. Alternate translation: [the divine glory]
Support Reference: Possession

ULT **And the glory of Yahweh appeared**
UST Then Yahweh made himself present … in a glorious way

Here, **the glory of Yahweh** represents a visible display of Yahweh himself. If it would be helpful in your language, you could use an equivalent expression or plain language. Alternate translation: [And Yahweh himself appeared]
Support Reference: Metonymy

ULT **the glory of Yahweh**
UST Yahweh … in a glorious way

If your language does not use an abstract noun for the idea of **glory**, you could express the same idea in another way. Alternate translation: [the glorious Yahweh]
Support Reference: Abstract Nouns

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Moses	Moses
Aaron	Aaron
assembly	community
tent of meeting	the sacred tent
and they fell	There, they {sorrowfully and fearfully} bowed down before Yahweh
glory	glorious
Yahweh	Yahweh

Numbers 20:8

ULT	UST
"Take the staff and assemble the congregation, you and Aaron your brother, and you shall speak to the rock to their eyes, and it will give its water. And you shall bring out for them water from the rock, and you shall make the congregation and their livestock drink."	*"Go and pick up the walking stick on which you wrote Aaron's name. Then, you and your brother Aaron must summon the Israelite community. While they are watching, you must speak to the rock that is nearby. It will pour out water. In this way, you will provide water out of the rock for the Israelites to drink, both they and their animals."*

ULT **the staff**
UST the walking stick on which you wrote Aaron's name

Here, the staff could be: (1) the staff with Aaron's name on it from Numbers 17. That was the staff that budded and produced almonds, which proved that Aaron was the priest that Yahweh had chosen. Alternate translation: [Aaron's staff that budded]; or (2) the staff that Moses used when he performed miracles in Egypt. Alternate translation: [your staff] or [the staff that you used in Egypt]
Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

ULT **and you shall speak to the rock to their eyes**
UST While they are watching, you must speak to the rock that is nearby

The pronoun **their** refers to the congregation. It may be helpful to clarify this for your readers. Alternate translation: [and you shall speak to the rock while the congregation watches]
Support Reference: Pronouns — When to Use Them

ULT **to their eyes**
UST While they are watching

Yahweh is using to their eyes as a common expression of the culture to mean "in their sight." If this phrase does not have that meaning for your readers, you could use a comparable expression from your language that does have that meaning, or you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [in their sight]
Support Reference: Idiom

ULT **and it will give its water**
UST It will pour out water

Yahweh is speaking of the rock as if it were a living thing that could **give its water**. If it would be helpful in your language, you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [and water will flow from it]
Support Reference: Personification

ULT **its water**
UST water

Yahweh is using the possessive form to describe the **water** that is characterized by coming from the rock. If a speaker of your language would not use the possessive form for this, you could express this idea in another way. Alternate translation: [the water it holds]
Support Reference: Possession

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
staff	the walking stick on which you wrote Aaron's name
assemble	Then … must summon
congregation	community
Aaron	Aaron
livestock	animals

Numbers 20:9

ULT	UST
And Moses took the staff from before the face of Yahweh, just as he commanded him.	*So Moses picked up the walking stick from where it was in the sacred tent in Yahweh's presence. He did exactly what Yahweh ordered him to do*

ULT **from before the face of Yahweh**
UST from {where it was in the sacred tent} in Yahweh's presence

Here, **from before the face of Yahweh** represents being in Yahweh's presence. If it would be helpful in your language, you could use an equivalent expression or plain language. Alternate translation: [from Yahweh's presence]
Support Reference: Metonymy

ULT **just as he commanded him**
UST He did exactly what Yahweh ordered him to do

The pronoun **he** refers to Yahweh, and the pronoun **him** refers to Moses. It may be helpful to clarify this for your readers. Alternate translation: [just as Yahweh commanded him]
Support Reference: Pronouns — When to Use Them

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Moses	Moses
Yahweh	Yahweh's

Numbers 20:10

ULT	UST
And Moses and Aaron assembled the assembly to the face of the rock, and he said to them, "Please hear, the rebellious ones! From this rock shall we bring out water for you?"	*Then Moses and Aaron summoned the Israelite community to the area in front of the rock that was nearby. Then Moses told them, "Listen to me, you people who keep defying God! I am upset that we have to make this rock pour out water for you!"*

ULT **to the face of the rock**
UST to the area in front of the rock that was nearby

The author is using **to the face of the rock** as a common expression of the culture to mean "in front of the rock." If this phrase does not have that meaning for your readers, you could use a comparable expression from your language that does have that meaning, or you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [before the rock]
Support Reference: Idiom

ULT **and he said to them**
UST Then Moses told them

The pronoun **he** refers to Moses, and the pronoun **them** refers to the assembly. It may be helpful to clarify this for your readers. Alternate translation: [and Moses said to the assembly]
Support Reference: Pronouns — When to Use Them

ULT **the rebellious ones**
UST you people who keep defying God

Moses is using the adjective **rebellious** as a noun to mean a certain kind of person. Your language may use adjectives in the same way. If not, you can translate this adjective with an equivalent phrase. Alternate translation: [you rebellious people]
Support Reference: Nominal Adjectives

ULT **From this rock shall we bring out water for you**
UST I am upset that we have to make this rock pour out water for you

Moses is using the question form to express his frustration and doubt about bringing water out of the rock for the people. If a speaker of your language would not use the question form for that purpose, you could translate this as a statement or as an exclamation. Alternate translation: [From this rock we can actually bring out water for you!]
Support Reference: Rhetorical Question

ULT **we bring out**
UST we have to make … pour out

By **we**, Moses means himself and Aaron but not the people to whom he is speaking, so use the exclusive form of that word in your translation if your language marks that distinction.
Support Reference: Exclusive and Inclusive 'We'

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Moses	Moses
Aaron	Aaron
assembled	Then … summoned
assembly	community
Please	Listen to me
rebellious	you people who keep defying God

Numbers 20:11

ULT	UST
And Moses raised his hand, and he struck the rock with his staff two times. And much water came out, and the congregation drank and their livestock.	*Then Moses lifted up the walking stick he was holding. He struck the rock twice with it, and water gushed out. Then, the Israelite community and their animals drank the water.*

ULT and the congregation drank and their livestock

UST Then, the {Israelite} community and their animals drank the water

The author is leaving out some of the words that in many languages a sentence would need in order to be complete. You can supply these words from the context if that would be clearer in your language. Alternate translation: [and the congregation drank, and their livestock drank too]

Support Reference: Ellipsis

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Moses	Moses
staff	with it
congregation	community
livestock	animals

Numbers 20:12

ULT	UST
And Yahweh said to Moses and to Aaron, "Because you did not believe in me to consecrate me to the eyes of the sons of Israel, therefore you will not bring this assembly to the land that I have given to them."	*After that, Yahweh told Moses and Aaron, "You did not trust me. You did not show the Israelite people how holy I am. Therefore, you will not lead the Israelite community into the land that I am giving them!"*

ULT **you did not believe**
UST You did not trust

The pronoun **you** refers to Moses and Aaron. It may be helpful to clarify this for your readers. Alternate translation: [the two of you did not believe]
Support Reference: Pronouns — When to Use Them

ULT **to the eyes of the sons of Israel**
UST You did not show the Israelite people how holy I am

Yahweh is using **to the eyes of the sons of Israel** as a common expression of the culture to mean "in the sight of the sons of Israel." If this phrase does not have that meaning for your readers, you could use a comparable expression from your language that does have that meaning, or you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [before the sons of Israel]
Support Reference: Idiom

ULT **that I have given to them**
UST that I am giving them

The pronoun **them** refers to the sons of Israel. It may be helpful to clarify this for your readers. Alternate translation: [that I have given to the sons of Israel]
Support Reference: Pronouns — When to Use Them

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Yahweh	Yahweh
Moses	Moses
Aaron	Aaron
believe	You did … trust
consecrate	You did not show … how holy I am
Israel	Israelite
assembly	community
land	land

Numbers 20:13

ULT	UST
They are the waters of Meribah, where the sons of Israel contended with Yahweh, and he showed himself to be holy in them.	*People call the place where the water gushed out of the rock Meribah. That means "arguing." That is because the Israelite people argued with Yahweh there. In response, Yahweh demonstrated to them that he is sacred.*

ULT They {are} the waters of Meribah

UST People call the place where the water {gushed out of the rock} Meribah. That means "arguing

Here the author is providing background information to help readers understand what happens next in the story. In your translation, introduce this information in a way that would be natural in your own language and culture.

Support Reference: Background Information

ULT in them

UST to them

Here, the pronoun them could refer to: (1) the Israelites. In this case, Yahweh showed that he is holy to the Israelites. Alternate translation: [among the Israelites]; or (2) the waters. In this case, Yahweh used the waters to show that he is holy. Alternate translation: [through the waters]

Support Reference: Pronouns — When to Use Them

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Israel	Israelite
Yahweh	Yahweh
holy	sacred

Numbers 20:14

ULT	UST
And Moses sent messengers from Kadesh to the king of Edom: "Thus says your brother Israel: 'You, you know all of the hardship that has found us.	*While the Israelites were at Kadesh, Moses had representatives visit the king of Edom. They said to the king, "Your relatives, the Israelite people, send you this message. You know very well about everything we have suffered.*

ULT **And Moses sent messengers from Kadesh**
UST While the Israelites were at Kadesh, Moses had representatives visit

The author is using the word translated as **And** to introduce a new event in the story. Use a word, phrase, or other method in your language that is natural for introducing a new event.
Support Reference: Introduction of a New Event

ULT **Thus says your brother Israel**
UST They said to the king, "Your relatives, the Israelite people, send you this message

The phrase **Thus says your brother Israel** introduces a direct quotation. In your translation, use a natural way of introducing direct quotations in your language.
Support Reference: Quotations and Quote Margins

ULT **Thus says your brother Israel: 'You, you know all of the hardship**
UST They said to the king, "Your relatives, the Israelite people, send you this message. You know very well about everything we have suffered

If it would be clearer in your language, you could translate this so that there is not a quotation within a quotation. Alternate translation: [Your brother Israel says that you know all of the hardship]
Support Reference: Quotes within Quotes

ULT **your brother Israel**
UST Your relatives, the Israelite people

Here the people of Israel are speaking as if their nation were the **brother** of the king of Edom, because the two nations descended from the brothers Jacob and Esau. If this meaning would not be clear in your language, you could use a comparable expression or you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [the nation descended from your brother Jacob]
Support Reference: Metaphor

ULT **your brother Israel**
UST Your relatives, the Israelite people

The pronoun **your** refers to the king of Edom. It may be helpful to clarify this for your readers. Alternate translation: [Edom's brother Israel]
Support Reference: Pronouns — When to Use Them

ULT **the hardship that has found us**
UST we have suffered

The people of Israel are speaking of **the hardship** as if it were a living thing that could find them. If it would be helpful in your language, you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [the hardship we have experienced]
Support Reference: Personification

ULT **the hardship**
UST we have suffered

If your language does not use an abstract noun for the idea of **hardship**, you could express the same idea in another way. Alternate translation: [the trouble]
Support Reference: Abstract Nouns

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Moses	Moses
messengers	representatives
Kadesh	Kadesh
king	king
Edom	Edom
Israel	Israelite
know	know
hardship	we have suffered

Numbers 20:15

ULT	UST
And our fathers went down to Egypt, and we dwelled in Egypt many days, and the Egyptians did evil to us and to our fathers.	*Our ancestors traveled to Egypt. Our people group lived there for a long time. While we were there, the Egyptian people treated us and our ancestors very badly.*

ULT **our fathers**
UST Our ancestors

Here the people of Israel are speaking as if their ancestors were their literal fathers. If this meaning would not be clear in your language, you could use a comparable expression or you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [our forefathers]
Support Reference: Metaphor

ULT **and we dwelled in Egypt**
UST Our people group lived there

By **we**, the people of Israel mean themselves and their ancestors but not the king of Edom to whom they are speaking, so use the exclusive form of that word in your translation if your language marks that distinction.
Support Reference: Exclusive and Inclusive 'We'

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Egypt	Egypt
Egyptians	Egyptian
evil	While we were there … treated … very badly

Numbers 20:16

ULT	UST
And we cried out to Yahweh, and he heard our voice, and he sent a messenger, and he brought us out from Egypt. And behold, we are in Kadesh, a city of the edge of your border.	*So, we pleaded with Yahweh to help us, and he listened to us. He had his angel come to us and lead us out of Egypt. And now, we are here at Kadesh, a town near the border of your region.*

ULT **And we cried out … and he heard our voice … and he brought us out**
UST So, we pleaded … to help us, and he listened to us … and lead us

By **we**, **our**, and **us**, the people of Israel mean themselves and their ancestors but not the king of Edom to whom they are speaking, so use the exclusive form of those words in your translation if your language marks that distinction.
Support Reference: Exclusive and Inclusive 'We'

ULT **and he heard our voice, and he sent a messenger, and he brought us out**
UST and he listened to us. He had his angel come to us and lead us

The pronoun **he**, used three times here, refers to Yahweh. It may be helpful to clarify this for your readers. Alternate translation: [and Yahweh heard our voice, and Yahweh sent a messenger, and Yahweh brought us out]
Support Reference: Pronouns — When to Use Them

ULT **and he heard our voice**
UST and he listened to us

Here, **our voice** represents the cry for help that the people of Israel called out. If it would be helpful in your language, you could use an equivalent expression or plain language. Alternate translation: [and he heard our plea]
Support Reference: Metonymy

ULT **a messenger**
UST his angel

Here, the messenger could be: (1) an angel that Yahweh sent to help the Israelites. Alternate translation: [an angel]; or (2) a human representative, probably Moses. Alternate translation: [a representative]
Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

ULT **And behold**
UST And now

Here the people of Israel are speaking as if there were something for the king of Edom to look at, using the word **behold** to focus his attention on what they say next. If this meaning would not be clear in your language, you could use a comparable expression or you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [And so now]
Support Reference: Metaphor

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
cried out	So, we pleaded … to help us
Yahweh	Yahweh
messenger	his angel
Egypt	Egypt
Kadesh	Kadesh

Numbers 20:17

ULT	UST
Please let us pass over in your land. We will not pass over in a field or in a vineyard, and we will not drink water of a well. We will go on the way of the king. We will not turn aside right or left until when we have passed over your border.'"	*We ask that you allow us to travel through your country. We will stay on the King's Highway, the main road, and we will not turn off that road in any direction until we have left your region. We promise not to walk through your fields or vineyards. We will not even drink any of your water."*

ULT **We will not pass over in a field or in a vineyard**
UST We promise not to walk through your fields or vineyards

By **We**, the people of Israel mean themselves but not the king of Edom to whom they are speaking, so use the exclusive form of that word in your translation if your language marks that distinction.
Support Reference: Exclusive and Inclusive 'We'

ULT **water of a well**
UST any of your water

The people of Israel are using the possessive form to describe **water** that is characterized by coming from a **well**. If a speaker of your language would not use the possessive form for this, you could express this idea in another way. Alternate translation: [water from a well]
Support Reference: Possession

ULT **on the way of the king**
UST the King's Highway, the main road

The people of Israel are using the possessive form to describe a **way** that is characterized by belonging to the **king**. If a speaker of your language would not use the possessive form for this, you could express this idea in another way. Alternate translation: [on the royal road]
Support Reference: Possession

ULT **We will not turn aside right or left**
UST and we will not turn off that road in any direction

The people of Israel are referring to all possible directions by naming two major components, the **right** and the **left**. If it would be helpful in your language, you could use an equivalent expression or plain language. Alternate translation: [We will not turn aside in any direction]
Support Reference: Merism

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Please	We ask that
land	through your country
vineyard	vineyards
well	any of your water
king	King's

Numbers 20:18

ULT	UST
And Edom said to him, "You shall not pass over in me, lest with the sword I come out to meet you."	*The king of Edom replied, "You may not travel through our country! If you try to travel through, I will have my army attack you!"*

ULT **And Edom said to him, "You shall not pass over in me, lest with the sword I come out to meet you**
UST The king of Edom replied, "You may not travel through our country! If you try {to travel through}, I will have my army attack you

Here, the word **lest** marks **with the sword I come out to meet you** as the outcome that the king of Edom warns will happen if the Israelites try to pass through. Use a connector in your language that makes it clear that avoiding this outcome is the purpose of his warning.
Support Reference: Connect — Goal (Purpose) Relationship

ULT **And Edom said to him**
UST The king of Edom replied

Here, **Edom** represents the king of Edom, its ruler, who is speaking on the nation's behalf. If it would be helpful in your language, you could use an equivalent expression or plain language. Alternate translation: [the king of Edom said to him]
Support Reference: Metonymy

ULT **You shall not pass over in me**
UST You may not travel through our country

The pronoun **me** refers to Edom and its land. It may be helpful to clarify this for your readers. Alternate translation: [You shall not pass over my land]
Support Reference: Pronouns — When to Use Them

ULT **with the sword**
UST I will have my army attack you

Here, **the sword** represents military force or armed attack. If it would be helpful in your language, you could use an equivalent expression or plain language. Alternate translation: [with my armed forces]
Support Reference: Metonymy

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Edom	Edom
sword	I will have my army attack you

Numbers 20:19

ULT	UST
And the sons of Israel said to him, "On the highway we will go up. And if we drink your water, I and my livestock, then I will give its price. Only, there is no matter, let me pass over on my feet."	*The Israelite representatives replied, "We will certainly stay on the main road. Further, suppose that we or any of our animals drink any of your water. In that case, we will pay for the water. We are not asking very much, just that you allow us to walk through your region."*

ULT **And if we drink your water, I and my livestock, then I will give its price**

UST Further, suppose that we or any of our animals drink any of your water. In that case, we will pay for the water

The people of Israel are presenting a possible condition, that they will pay for any water that they or their livestock drink. Use a natural form in your language for introducing a condition that could happen. Alternate translation: [And if we or our livestock drink your water, then we will pay for it]

Support Reference: Connect — Hypothetical Conditions

ULT **I and my livestock**

UST we or any of our animals

The pronoun **I** refers to the people of Israel, speaking as a single group. It may be helpful to clarify this for your readers. Alternate translation: [I, all Israel, and my livestock]

Support Reference: Pronouns — When to Use Them

ULT **then I will give its price**

UST In that case, we will pay for the water

The pronoun **its** refers to the water. It may be helpful to clarify this for your readers. Alternate translation: [then I will give the price of the water I drank]

Support Reference: Pronouns — When to Use Them

ULT **on my feet**

UST you allow us to walk through your region

The people of Israel are using **on my feet** as a common expression of the culture to mean "on foot" or "by walking." If this phrase does not have that meaning for your readers, you could use a comparable expression from your language that does have that meaning, or you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [walking]

Support Reference: Idiom

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Israel	Israelite
livestock	animals

Numbers 20:20

ULT	UST
And he said, "You shall not pass over." And Edom came out to meet him with a heavy people and with a strong hand.	*The king of Edom replied again, "You may not travel through our country!" Then the king of Edom sent a large and powerful army to attack the Israelites.*

ULT **And he said**
UST The king of Edom replied again

The pronoun **he** refers to the king of Edom. It may be helpful to clarify this for your readers. Alternate translation: [The king of Edom said]
Support Reference: Pronouns — When to Use Them

ULT **And Edom came out to meet him**
UST Then the king of Edom sent … to attack the Israelites

Here, **Edom** represents the people of Edom. If it would be helpful in your language, you could use an equivalent expression or plain language. Alternate translation: [And the Edomites came out to meet him]
Support Reference: Metonymy

ULT **and with a strong hand**
UST and powerful

Here, **a strong hand** represents great military power. If it would be helpful in your language, you could use an equivalent expression or plain language. Alternate translation: [and with a powerful army]
Support Reference: Metonymy

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Edom	Edom

Numbers 20:21

ULT	UST
And Edom refused to give Israel to pass over in his border. And Israel turned aside from upon him.	*In that way, the king of Edom and his people did not allow the Israelites to travel through their country. So, the Israelites chose to go a different way.*

ULT **And Edom refused to give Israel to pass over in his border. And Israel turned aside from upon him**

UST In that way, the king of Edom and his people did not allow the Israelites to travel through their country. So, the Israelites chose to go a different way

Here, **Edom** represents the Edomite king and his people, and **Israel** represents the Israelites. If it would be helpful in your language, you could use an equivalent expression or plain language. Alternate translation: [The Edomite king and his people refused to give the Israelites to pass over in their border. And the Israelites turned aside from upon them.]

Support Reference: Metonymy

ULT **in his border … from upon him**

UST their country … a different way

The pronouns **his** and **him** refer to Edom. It may be helpful to clarify this for your readers. Alternate translation: [in Edom's territory … away from Edom]

Support Reference: Pronouns — When to Use Them

ULT **And Israel turned aside from upon him**

UST So, the Israelites chose to go a different way

The author is using **turned aside from upon him** as a common expression of the culture to mean that Israel went away from Edom. If this phrase does not have that meaning for your readers, you could use a comparable expression from your language that does have that meaning, or you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [And Israel went away from him]

Support Reference: Idiom

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Edom	Edom
Israel	Israelites

Numbers 20:22

ULT	UST
And they set out from Kadesh, and the sons of Israel, all the congregation, came to Mount Hor.	*The whole Israelite community left Kadesh and traveled to Mount Hor.*

ULT **And they set out from Kadesh**
UST left Kadesh

The author is using the word translated as **And** to introduce a new event in the story. Use a word, phrase, or other method in your language that is natural for introducing a new event.
Support Reference: Introduction of a New Event

ULT **And they set out**
UST left

The pronoun **they** refers to the sons of Israel. It may be helpful to clarify this for your readers. Alternate translation: [And the Israelites set out]
Support Reference: Pronouns — When to Use Them

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Kadesh	Kadesh
Israel	Israelite
congregation	community

Numbers 20:23

ULT	UST
And Yahweh said to Moses and to Aaron at Mount Hor, on the border of the land of Edom, saying,	*So, they were at Mount Hor, which is at the edge of the area where the Edomites live. There, Yahweh told Moses and Aaron,*

ULT **the border of the land of Edom**
UST the edge of the area where the Edomites live

Moses is using the possessive form to describe a **border** that is characterized by being part of the **land of Edom**. If a speaker of your language would not use the possessive form for this, you could express this idea in another way. Alternate translation: [the border next to Edom]
Support Reference: Possession

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Yahweh	Yahweh
Moses	Moses
Aaron	Aaron
land	the area where … live
Edom	Edomites

Numbers 20:24

ULT	UST
“Aaron will be gathered to his peoples, for he will not come to the land that I have given to the sons of Israel, because you rebelled against my mouth at the waters of Meribah.	*“It is time for Aaron to die and be with his ancestors who have already died. You, Moses and Aaron, disobeyed what I said to do at Meribah, where the water gushed out of the rock. So, Aaron will not enter the land that I am giving to the Israelite people.*

ULT **Aaron will be gathered to his peoples, for he will not come to the land that I have given to the sons of Israel, because you rebelled against my mouth at the waters of Meribah**
UST It is time for Aaron to {die and} be with his ancestors {who have already died}. You, Moses and Aaron, disobeyed what I said to do at Meribah, {where} the water {gushed out of the rock}. So, Aaron will not enter the land that I am giving to the Israelite people

The word translated as **for** indicates that what follows is a reason for what came before. Use a connector in your language that makes it clear that what follows is a reason for what came before. Alternate translation: [Aaron will be gathered to his peoples because he will not come to the land that I have given to the sons of Israel, since you rebelled against my mouth at the waters of Meribah]
Support Reference: Connect — Reason-and-Result Relationship

ULT **Aaron will be gathered to his peoples**
UST It is time for Aaron to {die and} be with his ancestors who have already died

The expression **will be gathered** is a passive verbal form. If it would be unnatural to use that form, you could express the idea in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: [Aaron will join his ancestors]
Support Reference: Active or Passive

ULT **Aaron will be gathered to his peoples**
UST It is time for Aaron to {die and} be with his ancestors who have already died

Yahweh is referring to Aaron’s death in a polite way by using the phrase **will be gathered to his peoples**. Depending on what is helpful for your readers, you could use a polite way of referring to this in your language, or you could state this plainly. Alternate translation: [Aaron will die and join his ancestors]
Support Reference: Euphemism

ULT **you rebelled against my mouth**
UST You, Moses and Aaron, disobeyed what I said to do

Yahweh is using **my mouth** to represent the commands that he spoke. If it would be helpful in your language, you could use an equivalent expression from your culture or state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [you disobeyed my commands]
Support Reference: Synecdoche

> ULT **you rebelled against**
> UST You, Moses and Aaron, disobeyed

The pronoun **you** refers to Moses and Aaron. It may be helpful to clarify this for your readers. Alternate translation: [Moses and Aaron rebelled against]

Support Reference: Pronouns — When to Use Them

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Aaron	Aaron
gathered	It is time for … to {die and} be
land	land
Israel	Israelite
rebelled	You, Moses and Aaron, disobeyed

Numbers 20:26

ULT	UST
And strip Aaron of his clothes and clothe Eleazar his son with them. And Aaron will be gathered and will die there."	*There you must remove from Aaron the clothes that he wears as priest and put them on his son Eleazar. Then Aaron will die in that place."*

ULT **And Aaron will be gathered and will die there**
UST Then Aaron will die in that place

The expression **will be gathered** is a passive verbal form. If it would be unnatural to use that form, you could express the idea in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: [Aaron will join his ancestors and die there]
Support Reference: Active or Passive

ULT **And Aaron will be gathered and will die there**
UST Then Aaron will die in that place

Yahweh is referring to death in a polite way by using the phrase **will be gathered**. Depending on what is helpful for your readers, you could use a polite way of referring to this in your language, or you could state this plainly. Alternate translation: [And Aaron will die there]
Support Reference: Euphemism

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Aaron	Aaron
Eleazar	Eleazar
gathered	will die

Numbers 20:27

ULT	UST
And Moses did just as Yahweh commanded. And they went up to Mount Hor to the eyes of all the congregation.	*Moses did exactly what Yahweh told him to do. Moses, Aaron, and Eleazar walked up Mount Hor while the whole Israelite community watched.*

ULT **And they went up**
UST Moses, Aaron, and Eleazar walked up

The pronoun **they** refers to Moses, Aaron, and Eleazar. It may be helpful to clarify this for your readers. Alternate translation: [And Moses, Aaron, and Eleazar went up]
Support Reference: Pronouns — When to Use Them

ULT **to the eyes of all the congregation**
UST while the whole Israelite community watched

The author is using **to the eyes of all the congregation** as a common expression of the culture to mean "in the sight of all the congregation." If this phrase does not have that meaning for your readers, you could use a comparable expression from your language that does have that meaning, or you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [while all the congregation watched]
Support Reference: Idiom

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Moses	Moses
Yahweh	Yahweh

Numbers 20:29

ULT	UST
And all the congregation saw that Aaron expired. And all the house of Israel wept for Aaron 30 days.	*When the whole Israelite community realized that Aaron had died, they all mourned for him for 30 days.*

ULT **And all the congregation saw that Aaron expired**
UST When the whole {Israelite} community realized that Aaron had died

The phrase **all the congregation** refers to all the people of Israel. It may be helpful to clarify this for your readers. Alternate translation: [And all the people of Israel saw that Aaron expired]
Support Reference: Pronouns — When to Use Them

ULT **Aaron expired**
UST Aaron had died

Moses is referring to death in a polite way by using the word **expired**. Depending on what is helpful for your readers, you could use a polite way of referring to this in your language, or you could state this plainly. Alternate translation: [Aaron died]
Support Reference: Euphemism

ULT **all the house of Israel**
UST they all

Here, **all the house of Israel** represents the entire people of Israel. If it would be helpful in your language, you could use an equivalent expression or plain language. Alternate translation: [all the Israelites]
Support Reference: Metonymy

ULT **all the house of Israel**
UST they all

The author is using the possessive form to describe a **house** that is characterized by belonging to **Israel**. If a speaker of your language would not use the possessive form for this, you could express this idea in another way. Alternate translation: [all the Israelites]
Support Reference: Possession

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
congregation	community
Aaron	Aaron
house of Israel	they all

Numbers 21

Numbers 21 Introduction

Numbers 21 Chapter Introduction

Structure and Formatting

This chapter describes Israel's journey toward Moab and victories over enemy kings. When the people complain, Yahweh sends poisonous snakes. He then provides a way for those who are bitten to live.

1. Yahweh helps Israel defeat the king of Arad at the Battle of Hormah (1–3)
2. Yahweh sends poisonous snakes and tells Moses to make a bronze snake (4–9)
3. Israel continues the journey toward Moab (10–20)
4. Israel defeats Sihon and takes his land (21–32)
5. Israel defeats Og and takes his land (33–35)

Religious and Cultural Concepts in This Chapter

The bronze serpent

In 21:4–9, the author narrates how the Israelites complained, and God punished them by sending venomous snakes that bit them. When the Israelites ask for forgiveness and help, Yahweh has Moses create a model of a serpent made from bronze. When any Israelite had been bitten by a snake, he or she could look at the model and would recover. The author does not explain how this works, so your translation also should not state that explicitly.

Citations of poetry

In this chapter, the author cites parts of three different pieces of poetry. Each citation supports a claim that the author has made. In 21:14–15, the citation proves that the Arnon River is the border for Moab. In 21:17–18, the citation identifies which story about a well the author is speaking about. In 21:27–30, the citation proves that Sihon captured Heshbon and its territory from the Moabites. It may also prove that the Israelites defeated Sihon. Consider how you might naturally introduce and format citations of poetry that support claims the author is making.

Translation Issues in This Chapter

The Book of the Wars of Yahweh

In 21:14–15, the author cites a small section of "The Book of the Wars of Yahweh." This quotation is mostly names of places, and it does not include a main verb. The author probably

cites it because it identifies the Arnon River as the border of Moab. Consider how you might naturally quote a small, incomplete section of a larger piece of poetry.

The song of the well

In 21:17–18, the author quotes a song (or part of a song) that the Israelites sang when God provided water for them at a well. The song must have been well-known enough that it helped the readers identify which well this was. Consider how you might introduce a quote from a well-known song.

The Song of Heshbon

In 21:27–30, the author quotes from a song that is sometimes called The Song of Heshbon. It is not clear if this is the whole song. Scholars debate whether this song was sung to celebrate the Amorites defeating the Moabites or the Israelites defeating the Amorites. It is also possible that verses 27–29 celebrated the Amorites defeating the Moabites, and verse 30 celebrated the Israelites defeating the Amorites. In any of these cases, the song proves that Sihon took over the territory of the Moabites, including Heshbon. So, when the Israelites defeated Sihon, they gained all this territory. See the notes on these verses for specific translation issues.

Numbers 21:1

ULT	UST
And the Canaanite, the king of Arad, the one dwelling in the Negeb, heard that Israel had come the way of the Atharim, and he fought against Israel, and he took captive from him a captive.	*Now, the Canaanite king who ruled Arad city lived in the Negeb. Around this time, he learned that the Israelites had arrived near him by traveling on the Atharim road. So, he attacked the Israelites and captured some of them.*

ULT **And the Canaanite, the king of Arad, the one dwelling in the Negeb, heard that Israel had come the way of the Atharim**

UST Now, the Canaanite king who ruled Arad city lived in the Negeb. {Around this time,} he learned that the Israelites had arrived {near him} by traveling on the Atharim road

The event narrated in 21:1–3 may have happened before or after Aaron died, which was narrated in 20:23–29. The Hebrew word translated as “and” at the beginning of this verse does not necessarily mean that this event happened after the previous event. If it would be helpful in your language, you could introduce this event in a way that does not indicate whether it came before or after the previous event. Alternate translation: [Now it also happened that the Canaanite, the king of Arad, the one dwelling in the Negeb, heard that Israel had come the way of the Atharim]

Support Reference: Order of Events

ULT **the Canaanite, the king of Arad, the one dwelling in the Negeb**

UST Now, the Canaanite king who ruled Arad city lived in the Negeb

Here the author is introducing **the Canaanite, the king of Arad, the one dwelling in the Negeb** as a new participant in the story. Your language may have its own way of introducing new participants that you can use in your translation. Alternate translation: [the Canaanite king of Arad, who lived in the Negeb]

Support Reference: Introduction of New and Old Participants

ULT **the way of the Atharim**

UST by traveling on the Atharim road

Here, the word **Atharim** could be: (1) a proper name for a city. In this case, the road probably led to Atharim. Alternate translation: [the road to Atharim]; or (2) a word that means “spies.” In this case, this is probably the road that the Israelite men traveled on when they explored the land (see Numbers 13–14). Alternate translation: [the way the Israelite spies had traveled]

Support Reference: How to Translate Names

ULT **and he fought against Israel, and he took captive from him a captive**

UST So, he attacked the Israelites and captured some of them

The pronoun **him** refers to the nation of Israel. It may be helpful to clarify this for your readers. Alternate translation: [and he fought against Israel, and he took captive from Israel a captive]

Support Reference: Pronouns — When to Use Them

> ULT **and he took captive from him a captive**
> UST and captured some of them

This is poetic language. If your language has a way to indicate poetry, you could use it here.
Support Reference: Poetry

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Canaanite	Canaanite
king	king
Negeb	Negeb
Israel	Israelites
Israel	Israelites
captive	and captured
captive	and captured

Numbers 21:2

ULT	UST
And Israel vowed a vow to Yahweh, and they said, "If giving, you give this people into my hand, then I will devote their cities to destruction."	*Then the Israelites made a solemn promise to Yahweh. They said, "We would like you to empower us to defeat these Canaanite people. If you do, we will destroy their cities."*

ULT **And Israel vowed a vow to Yahweh, and they said**
UST Then the Israelites made a solemn promise to Yahweh. They said

The term **said** introduces a direct quotation. In your translation, use a natural way of introducing direct quotations in your language. It may not be necessary to represent this term explicitly.
Support Reference: Quotations and Quote Margins

ULT **And … vowed a vow**
UST Then … made a solemn promise

The author is using a construction in which a verb and its object come from the same root: **vowed a vow**. You may be able to use the same construction in your language to express the meaning here. Alternatively, your language may have another way of saying this. Alternate translation: [solemnly vowed]
Support Reference: Poetry

ULT **If giving, you give**
UST We would like you to empower us to defeat … If you do

The Israelites are repeating forms of the verb **give** in order to intensify their expression of the idea that it conveys. If your language can repeat words for intensification, it would be appropriate to do that here in your translation. If not, your language may have another way of expressing the intensification. Alternate translation: [If you give, give]
Support Reference: Reduplication

ULT **into my hand**
UST We would like you to empower us to defeat

Here, **hand** represents the control of a person. If it would be helpful in your language, you could use an equivalent expression or plain language. Alternate translation: [into my power]
Support Reference: Metonymy

ULT **into my hand**
UST We would like you to empower us to defeat

The pronoun **my** refers to the people of Israel, who speak of themselves here as a single person. It may be helpful to clarify this for your readers. Alternate translation: [into the hands of our people]
Support Reference: Pronouns — When to Use Them

> ULT **If giving, you give this people into my hand, then I will devote their cities to destruction**
>
> UST We would like you to empower us to defeat these {Canaanite} people. If you do, we will destroy their cities

Israel is presenting a possible condition, that they will devote the cities of the Canaanites to destruction if Yahweh gives this people into their hand. Use a natural form in your language for introducing a condition that could happen. Alternate translation: [Suppose you give this people into my hand. In that case, I will devote their cities to destruction]

Support Reference: Connect — Hypothetical Conditions

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Israel	Israelites
vowed	Then … made a solemn promise
vow	Then … made a solemn promise
Yahweh	Yahweh
devote	we will destroy
destruction	destroy

Numbers 21:3

ULT	UST
And Yahweh listened to the voice of Israel, and he gave the Canaanite, and he devoted them and their cities to destruction. And he called the name of the place Hormah.	*Yahweh heard what the Israelites asked, and he empowered them to defeat the Canaanites. The Israelites killed all the people and destroyed their cities. So they named that area Hormah, which means "destroy."*

ULT **And Yahweh listened to the voice of Israel**
UST Yahweh heard what the Israelites asked

Here, **voice** represents what the people of Israel said. If it would be helpful in your language, you could use an equivalent expression or plain language. Alternate translation: [And Yahweh listened to what Israel said]
Support Reference: Metonymy

ULT **and he gave the Canaanite**
UST and he empowered them to defeat the Canaanites

The author is leaving out some of the words that in many languages a sentence would need in order to be complete. You can supply these words from the context if that would be clearer in your language. Alternate translation: [and he gave the Canaanite into their hand]
Support Reference: Ellipsis

ULT **and he devoted them and their cities to destruction. And he called**
UST The Israelites killed all the people and destroyed their cities. So they named

The pronoun **he** refers to the people of Israel, even though Yahweh was the subject earlier in the verse. It may be helpful to clarify this for your readers. Alternate translation: [and they devoted them and their cities to destruction. And they called]
Support Reference: Pronouns — When to Use Them

ULT **Hormah**
UST Hormah, which means "destroy

The word **Hormah** is the name of a place.
Support Reference: How to Translate Names

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Yahweh	Yahweh
Israel	Israelites
Canaanite	Canaanites
devoted	The Israelites killed … and destroyed
destruction	destroyed
called	So they named

Numbers 21:4

ULT	UST
And they set out from Mount Hor by the way of the Sea of Reeds to go around the land of Edom. And the soul of the people was short on the way,	*Then the Israelites left Mount Hor and walked on the road to the Sea of Reeds. That way, they could avoid the area where the Edomites lived. Now the Israelites became very impatient while they were traveling.*

ULT **And they set out from Mount Hor**
UST Then the Israelites left Mount Hor

The author is using the word translated as **And** to introduce a new event in the story. Use a word, phrase, or other method in your language that is natural for introducing a new event.
Support Reference: Introduction of a New Event

ULT **And they set out**
UST Then the Israelites left

The pronoun **they** refers to the people of Israel. It may be helpful to clarify this for your readers. Alternate translation: [And the Israelites set out]
Support Reference: Pronouns — When to Use Them

ULT **And the soul of the people was short**
UST Now the Israelites became very impatient

The author is using **the soul of the people was short** as a common expression of the culture to mean "the people became impatient." If this phrase does not have that meaning for your readers, you could use a comparable expression from your language that does have that meaning, or you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [And the people became impatient]
Support Reference: Idiom

ULT **And they set out from Mount Hor by the way of the Sea of Reeds to go around the land of Edom**
UST Then the Israelites left Mount Hor and walked on the road to the Sea of Reeds. That way, they could avoid the area where the Edomites lived

Here, **to** marks **go around the land of Edom** as the goal or purpose of **they set out from Mount Hor by the way of the Sea of Reeds**. Use a connector in your language that makes it clear that this is the purpose.
Support Reference: Connect — Goal (Purpose) Relationship

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Sea of Reeds	Sea of Reeds
land	the area
Edom	Edomites
soul	Now the Israelites became very impatient

Numbers 21:5

ULT	UST
and the people spoke against God and against Moses, "Why have you brought us up from Egypt to die in the wilderness? For there is no bread and there is no water, and our soul loathes the worthless bread."	*So, they criticized God and Moses. They said, "We hate this terrible manna, and there is no other food or drink here! Clearly, you led us out of Egypt only so that we will die in this desolate area!"*

ULT **and the people spoke against God and against Moses**
UST So, they criticized God and Moses. They said

The term **spoke** introduces a direct quotation. In your translation, use a natural way of introducing direct quotations in your language. It may not be necessary to represent this term explicitly.
Support Reference: Quotations and Quote Margins

ULT **Why have you brought us up from Egypt to die in the wilderness**
UST you led us out of Egypt only so that we will die in this desolate area

The people are using the question form to complain against God and Moses. If a speaker of your language would not use the question form for that purpose, you could translate this as a statement or as an exclamation. Alternate translation: [You brought us up from Egypt only to die in the wilderness!]
Support Reference: Rhetorical Question

ULT **Why have you brought us up**
UST you led us … only

The pronoun **you** refers to God and Moses together. It may be helpful to clarify this for your readers. Alternate translation: [Why have you two brought us up]
Support Reference: Pronouns — When to Use Them

ULT **Why have you brought us up from Egypt to die in the wilderness**
UST you led us out of Egypt only so that we will die in this desolate area

Here, **to** marks **die in the wilderness** as the goal or purpose of **brought us up from Egypt**. Use a connector in your language that makes it clear that this is the purpose.
Support Reference: Connect — Goal (Purpose) Relationship

ULT **and our soul loathes**
UST We hate

Here, **soul** represents the appetite of the people. If it would be helpful in your language, you could use an equivalent expression or plain language. Alternate translation: [and we loathe]
Support Reference: Metonymy

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
God	God
Moses	Moses
Egypt	Egypt
wilderness	in this desolate area
bread	other food
soul	We

Numbers 21:6

ULT	UST
And Yahweh sent among the people the serpents, the fiery ones, and they bit the people, and many people from Israel died.	*So Yahweh had poisonous snakes come and bite many Israelites. After the snakes bit them, many of them died.*

ULT **the fiery ones**
UST poisonous

Here, the phrase **fiery ones** identifies what kind of serpents these were. Most likely, they were called "fiery" because of how their venom affected people, probably making people swell and have fevers. If your readers would not be familiar with what a fiery serpent is, you could use the name of a similar thing that your readers would recognize, or you could use a more general term. Alternate translation: [the venomous serpents]

Support Reference: Translate Unknowns

ULT **and they bit the people**
UST and bite many Israelites

The pronoun **they** refers to the serpents. It may be helpful to clarify this for your readers. Alternate translation: [and the serpents bit the people]

Support Reference: Pronouns — When to Use Them

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Yahweh	Yahweh
serpents	snakes
Israel	many of them

Numbers 21:7

ULT	UST
And the people came to Moses and said, "We have sinned, for we spoke against Yahweh and against you. Pray to Yahweh, and let him remove from upon us the serpent." And Moses prayed on behalf of the people.	*So the people approached Moses and said, "When we criticized Yahweh and you, we did what was wrong. Please ask Yahweh to make these snakes leave us." So Moses spoke to Yahweh about that for the people.*

ULT **And the people came to Moses and said**
UST So the people approached Moses and said

The term **said** introduces a direct quotation. In your translation, use a natural way of introducing direct quotations in your language. It may not be necessary to represent this term explicitly.
Support Reference: Quotations and Quote Margins

ULT **And the people came to Moses and said, "We have sinned, for we spoke against Yahweh and against you**
UST So the people approached Moses and said, "When we criticized Yahweh and you, we did what was wrong

The word translated as **for** indicates that what follows is a reason for what came before. Use a connector in your language that makes it clear that what follows is a reason for what came before. Alternate translation: [And the people came to Moses and said, "We have sinned because we spoke against Yahweh and against you.]
Support Reference: Connect — Reason-and-Result Relationship

ULT **and let him remove**
UST to make … leave us

The pronoun **him** refers to Yahweh. It may be helpful to clarify this for your readers. Alternate translation: [and let Yahweh remove]
Support Reference: Pronouns — When to Use Them

ULT **the serpent**
UST these snakes

The people are using **the serpent** to represent all of the serpents that Yahweh had sent among them. If it would be helpful in your language, you could use an equivalent expression from your culture or state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [the serpents]
Support Reference: Synecdoche

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Moses	Moses
sinned	we did what was wrong
Yahweh	Yahweh
Pray	Please ask
serpent	snakes
Moses	Moses
prayed	So … spoke to Yahweh about that

Numbers 21:8

ULT	UST
And Yahweh said to Moses, "Make for yourself a fiery one and put it on a banner, and it will be that all the bitten ones will see it, and he will live."	*Yahweh told Moses, "Make an image of a poisonous snake and attach it to the top of a pole. Whenever a snake bites someone, that person should gaze at the snake on the pole. Then, that person will recover."*

ULT **a fiery one**

UST an image of a poisonous snake

Yahweh is leaving out some of the words that in many languages a sentence would need in order to be complete. You can supply these words from the context if that would be clearer in your language. Alternate translation: [a fiery serpent]

Support Reference: Ellipsis

ULT **and it will be {that} all the bitten ones will see it, and he will live**

UST Whenever a snake bites someone, that person should gaze at the snake on the pole. Then, that person will recover

Yahweh is presenting a possible condition, that anyone who has been bitten will live if he looks at the image on the banner. Use a natural form in your language for introducing a condition that could happen. Alternate translation: [that whoever is bitten will live if he looks at it]

Support Reference: Connect — Hypothetical Conditions

ULT **all the bitten ones**

UST Whenever a snake bites someone

The expression **all the bitten ones** is a passive verbal form. If it would be unnatural to use that form, you could express the idea in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: [everyone whom a serpent has bitten]

Support Reference: Active or Passive

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Yahweh	Yahweh
Moses	Moses

Numbers 21:9

ULT	UST
And Moses made a serpent of bronze, and he put it on the banner. And it was that if the serpent bit a man and he looked to the serpent of the bronze, then he lived.	*So Moses made a bronze image of a snake and attached it to the top of a pole. Whenever a snake bit someone, that person would gaze at the bronze snake on the pole. Then that person would recover.*

ULT **and he put it on the banner**

UST and attached it to the top of a pole

The pronoun **it** refers to the bronze serpent that Moses made. It may be helpful to clarify this for your readers. Alternate translation: [and he put the bronze serpent on the banner]

Support Reference: Pronouns — When to Use Them

ULT **if the serpent bit a man and he looked to the serpent of the bronze, then he lived**

UST Whenever a snake bit someone, that person would gaze at the bronze snake {on the pole}. Then that person would recover

The author is presenting a possible condition, that a man who had been bitten would live if he looked at the bronze serpent. Use a natural form in your language for introducing a condition that could happen. Alternate translation: [a man who had been bitten by a serpent and looked at the bronze serpent would live]

Support Reference: Connect — Hypothetical Conditions

ULT **a man**

UST someone

Here the masculine term **man** has a generic sense that includes both men and women. If it would be helpful to your readers, you could use language in your translation that is clearly inclusive of both men and women. Alternate translation: [anyone]

Support Reference: When Masculine Words Include Women

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Moses	Moses
serpent	snake
bronze	bronze
serpent	snake

Numbers 21:10

ULT	UST
And the sons of Israel set out, and they camped at Oboth.	*Then the Israelites left that place and set up their tents at a place that people called Oboth.*

ULT **And the sons of Israel set out**
UST Then the Israelites left that place

The author is using the word translated as **And** to introduce a new event in the story. Use a word, phrase, or other method in your language that is natural for introducing a new event.
Support Reference: Introduction of a New Event

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Israel	Israelites

Numbers 21:11

ULT	UST
And they set out from Oboth, and they camped at Iye Abarim in the wilderness that is upon the face of Moab, from the rising of the sun.	*Then they left Oboth and set up their tents at a place that people called Iye Abarim. It was in the desolate area near Moab, to the east.*

ULT **is upon the face of Moab**
UST near Moab

The author is using **upon the face of** as a common expression of the culture to mean "opposite" or "facing." If this phrase does not have that meaning for your readers, you could use a comparable expression from your language that does have that meaning, or you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [{is} across from Moab]
Support Reference: Idiom

ULT **from the rising of the sun**
UST to the east

The author is using **from the rising of the sun** as a common expression of the culture to mean "to the east." If this phrase does not have that meaning for your readers, you could use a comparable expression from your language that does have that meaning, or you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [on the east side]
Support Reference: Idiom

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
wilderness	It was in the desolate area
Moab	Moab

Numbers 21:13

ULT	UST
From there they set out, and they camped from across Arnon, which is in the wilderness that goes out from the border of the Amorite. For Arnon is the border of Moab, between Moab and the Amorite.	*They left that place and set up their tents on the north side of the Arnon River. That place is part of the desolate area that goes all the way to where the Amorite people live. (The north side of the Arnon River is where the Moabite people live, and the south side of the Arnon River is where the Amorite people live.)*

ULT **For Arnon {is} the border of Moab, between Moab and the Amorite**

UST The north side of the Arnon River is where the Moabite people live, and the south side of the Arnon River is where the Amorite people live

Here the author is providing background information to help readers understand what happens next in the story. In your translation, introduce this information in a way that would be natural in your own language and culture.

Support Reference: Background Information

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
wilderness	is part of the desolate area
Amorite	Amorite
Moab	Moabite

Numbers 21:14

ULT	UST
Therefore it is said in the Book of the Wars of Yahweh, "Waheb in Suphah and the wadis of Arnon,	*The Record of Yahweh's Wars mentions this: "Waheb town in the Suphah area and the stream beds along the Arnon River,*

ULT **Therefore it is said in the Book of the Wars of Yahweh**
UST The Record of Yahweh's Wars mentions this

The phrase **it is said** introduces a direct quotation. In your translation, use a natural way of introducing direct quotations in your language. It may not be necessary to represent this term explicitly.
Support Reference: Quotations and Quote Margins

ULT **it is said**
UST mentions

The expression **it is said** is a passive verbal form. If it would be unnatural to use that form, you could express the idea in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: [people say]
Support Reference: Active or Passive

ULT **in the Book of the Wars of Yahweh**
UST The Record of Yahweh's Wars

The **Book of the Wars of Yahweh** is the name of an ancient written record. If your readers would not be familiar with what this is, you could use the name of a similar thing that your readers would recognize, or you could use a more general term. Alternate translation: [in the ancient written account called the Wars of Yahweh]
Support Reference: Translate Unknowns

ULT **the Wars of Yahweh**
UST Yahweh's Wars

The author is using the possessive form to describe the **Wars** as ones characterized by belonging to **Yahweh**, that is, wars that Yahweh fought. If a speaker of your language would not use the possessive form for this, you could express this idea in another way. Alternate translation: [the wars that Yahweh fought]
Support Reference: Possession

ULT **Therefore it is said in the Book of the Wars of Yahweh**
UST The Record of Yahweh's Wars mentions this

The word translated as **Therefore** indicates that what follows is a result of what came before. Use a connector in your language that makes this clear. Alternate translation: [As a result, it is said in the Book of the Wars of Yahweh]
Support Reference: Connect — Reason-and-Result Relationship

ULT **Waheb in Suphah and the wadis of Arnon**

UST Waheb town in the Suphah area and the stream beds along the Arnon River

The author is leaving out some of the words that in many languages a sentence would need in order to be complete. You can supply these words from the context if that would be clearer in your language. Alternate translation: [There is Waheb in Suphah, and there are the wadis of Arnon]

Support Reference: Ellipsis

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Yahweh	Yahweh’s
wadis	the stream beds

Numbers 21:15

ULT	UST
and the slope of the wadis that stretches out to the seat of Ar and leans to the border of Moab.”	*and the land where the stream beds run, as far as the town of Ar at the edge of the land of Moab.”*

ULT **and the slope of the wadis**
UST and the land where the stream beds run

The author is leaving out some of the words that in many languages a sentence would need in order to be complete. You can supply these words from the context if that would be clearer in your language. Alternate translation: [and there is the slope of the wadis]
Support Reference: Ellipsis

ULT **and the slope of the wadis that stretches out to the seat of Ar and leans to the border of Moab**
UST and the land where the stream beds run, as far as the town of Ar at the edge of the land of Moab

The author is speaking of **the slope of the wadis** as if it were a living thing that could stretch out and lean against something. If it would be helpful in your language, you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [goes as far as the seat of Ar … and is at the border of Moab]
Support Reference: Personification

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
wadis	where the stream beds run
Moab	Moab

Numbers 21:16

ULT	UST
And from there to Beer. It is the well where Yahweh said to Moses, "Gather the people, and I will give water to them."	*The Israelites left the north side of the Arnon River and traveled to Beer, which means "Well". That is the well where Yahweh had previously told Moses, "Summon the Israelites. I will provide water for them."*

ULT **And from there to Beer**

UST The Israelites left {the north side of the Arnon River} and traveled to Beer, which means "Well

The author is leaving out some of the words that in many languages a sentence would need in order to be complete. You can supply these words from the context if that would be clearer in your language. Alternate translation: [And from there they went to Beer]

Support Reference: Ellipsis

ULT **It {is} the well where Yahweh said to Moses**

UST That is the well where Yahweh had previously told Moses

Here the author is providing background information to help readers understand what happens next in the story. In your translation, introduce this information in a way that would be natural in your own language and culture.

Support Reference: Background Information

ULT **Yahweh said to Moses, "Gather the people, and I will give water to them**

UST Yahweh had previously told Moses, "Summon the Israelites. I will provide water for them

The term **said** introduces a direct quotation. In your translation, use a natural way of introducing direct quotations in your language. It may not be necessary to represent this term explicitly.

Support Reference: Quotations and Quote Margins

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
well	well
Yahweh	Yahweh
Moses	Moses
Gather	Summon

Numbers 21:17

ULT	UST
Then Israel sang this song: "Go up, well! Sing to it!	*At that time the Israelites performed this song: "May this well spring up! Let us sing about it!*

ULT **Then Israel sang this song**
UST At that time the Israelites performed this song

The author is using the word translated as **Then** to introduce a new event in the story. Use a word, phrase, or other method in your language that is natural for introducing a new event.
Support Reference: Introduction of a New Event

ULT **Then Israel sang this song**
UST At that time the Israelites performed this song

The term **sang** introduces a direct quotation. In your translation, use a natural way of introducing direct quotations in your language. It may not be necessary to represent this term explicitly.
Support Reference: Quotations and Quote Margins

ULT **Go up, well**
UST May this well spring up

The Israelites are speaking to the **well**, which they know cannot hear them. They are doing this to communicate to the people listening to them that they feel very strongly about the well. If it would be helpful in your language, you could translate these words as if they were speaking directly to the people about the well. Alternate translation: [May water flow up from the well]
Support Reference: Apostrophe

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Israel	Israelites
well	well

Numbers 21:18

ULT	UST
A well, princes excavated it, the nobles of the people dug it, with a scepter, with their staffs." And from the wilderness to Mattanah,	*This is the well that our commanders had us dig. Our leaders have special sticks that show that they rule us. They had us dig it." The Israelites left that desolate area and traveled to a place that people called Mattanah.*

ULT **princes excavated it, the nobles of the people dug it**

UST that our commanders had us dig. Our leaders … They had us dig it

These two clauses mean basically the same thing. The second emphasizes the meaning of the first by repeating the same idea with different words. If it would be helpful to your readers, you could combine them and express the emphasis in another way. Alternate translation: [the princes and nobles of the people dug it]

Support Reference: Parallelism

ULT **And from the wilderness {to} Mattanah**

UST The Israelites left that desolate area and traveled to {a place that people called} Mattanah

The author is leaving out some of the words that in many languages a sentence would need in order to be complete. You can supply these words from the context if that would be clearer in your language. Alternate translation: [And from the wilderness they traveled to Mattanah]

Support Reference: Ellipsis

ULT **A well, princes excavated it, the nobles of the people dug it, with a scepter, with their staffs**

UST This is the well that our commanders had us dig. Our leaders have special sticks that show that they rule us. They had us dig it

Here, the poet could mean that: (1) the **princes** and **nobles** authorized the digging of the well using their scepters and **staffs**. In this case, they do not dig the well themselves. Alternate translation: [A well, princes authorized its excavation, the nobles of the people authorized its construction; they authorized it with a scepter, with their staffs]; or (2) the **princes** and **nobles** dig at least part of the well themselves, using **scepter** and **staffs**. Alternate translation: [A well, princes excavated it themselves, the nobles of the people dug it themselves, using a scepter, using their staffs]

Support Reference: Metaphor

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
princes	our commanders
nobles	Our leaders
scepter	have special sticks that show that they rule us
staffs	have special sticks that show that they rule us
wilderness	The Israelites left that desolate area

Numbers 21:19

ULT	UST
and from Mattanah to Nahaliel, and from Nahaliel to Bamoth,	*The Israelites left Mattanah and traveled to a place that people called Nahaliel. They left Nahaliel and traveled to a place that people called Bamoth.*

ULT **and from Mattanah {to} Nahaliel, and from Nahaliel {to} Bamoth**

UST The Israelites left Mattanah {and traveled to a place that people called} Nahaliel. {They} left Nahaliel {and traveled to a place that people called} Bamoth

The author is leaving out some of the words that in many languages a sentence would need in order to be complete. You can supply these words from the context if that would be clearer in your language. Alternate translation: [and from Mattanah they traveled to Nahaliel, and from Nahaliel they traveled to Bamoth]

Support Reference: Ellipsis

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
to Bamoth	and traveled to a place that people called Bamoth

Numbers 21:20

ULT	UST
and from Bamoth to the valley that is in the field of Moab, the head of the Pisgah, and it looks down upon the face of the wasteland.	*They left Bamoth and traveled to a valley that was in the open country in the land of Moab. It was at the top of the hilly area that people called Pisgah. From the valley, people could look down into the desolate area north of the Dead Sea.*

ULT **and from Bamoth {to} the valley**
UST They left Bamoth {and traveled to} a valley

The author is leaving out some of the words that in many languages a sentence would need in order to be complete. You can supply these words from the context if that would be clearer in your language. Alternate translation: [and from Bamoth they traveled to the valley]
Support Reference: Ellipsis

ULT **the head of the Pisgah**
UST It was at the top of the hilly area {that people called} Pisgah

The author is speaking of the top of the Pisgah as if it were a living thing that could have a **head**. If it would be helpful in your language, you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [to the top of the Pisgah]
Support Reference: Personification

ULT **the face of the wasteland**
UST into the desolate area north of the Dead Sea

Here, **the face of** represents the surface of the wasteland that could be seen from the mountain peak. If it would be helpful in your language, you could use an equivalent expression or plain language. Alternate translation: [the surface of the wasteland]
Support Reference: Metonymy

ULT **the wasteland**
UST the desolate area north of the Dead Sea

Here, the word translated as **wasteland** could be: (1) a description of the area. Alternate translation: [the deserted area]; or (2) a name. Alternate translation: [Jeshimon]
Support Reference: How to Translate Names

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Moab	Moab
wasteland	the desolate area north of the Dead Sea

Numbers 21:21

ULT	UST
And Israel sent messengers to Sihon, the king of the Amorites, saying,	*Then the Israelites had representatives visit Sihon. He ruled the Amorite people group. The representatives said,*

ULT **And Israel sent messengers to Sihon**
UST Then the Israelites had representatives visit Sihon

The author is using the word translated as **And** to introduce a new event in the story. Use a word, phrase, or other method in your language that is natural for introducing a new event.
Support Reference: Introduction of a New Event

ULT **to Sihon, the king of the Amorites, saying**
UST Sihon. He ruled the Amorite people group. The representatives said

The term **saying** introduces a direct quotation. See how you translated **saying** in 1:1.
Support Reference: Quotations and Quote Margins

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Israel	Israelites
messengers	representatives
Sihon	Sihon
king	He ruled
Amorites	Amorite

Numbers 21:22

ULT	UST
“Let me pass over in your land. We will not turn aside into a field or into a vineyard. We will not drink water of a well. On the way of the king we will go until when we pass over your border.”	*“We ask that you allow us to travel through your country. We will stay on the King’s Highway, the main road, until we have left your region. We promise not to walk through your fields or vineyards. We will not even drink any of your water.”*

ULT **Let me pass over in your land. We will not turn aside**

UST We ask that you allow us to travel through your country … We promise not to walk through

The pronoun **me** refers to the people of Israel, even though it is singular and the following pronoun **We** is plural. It may be helpful to clarify this for your readers. Alternate translation: [Let us pass over in your land. We will not turn aside]

Support Reference: Pronouns — When to Use Them

ULT **On the way of the king**

UST on the King’s Highway, the main road

Israel is using the possessive form to describe a **way** that is characterized by belonging to the **king**. If a speaker of your language would not use the possessive form for this, you could express this idea in another way. Alternate translation: [On the main road used by the king]

Support Reference: Possession

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
land	through your country
vineyard	vineyards
well	any of your water
king	King’s

Numbers 21:23

ULT	UST
And Sihon did not give Israel to pass over in his border, and Sihon gathered all his people and went out to meet Israel toward the wilderness. And he came to Jahaz, and he fought against Israel.	*However, Sihon refused to let the Israelites travel through his country. Instead, he assembled his entire army and marched out into the desolate area to attack the Israelites. When he and his army arrived at the town of Jahaz, they attacked the Israelites.*

ULT **And Sihon did not give Israel to pass over in his border**

UST However, Sihon refused to let the Israelites travel through his country

The author is leaving out some of the words that in many languages a sentence would need in order to be complete. You can supply these words from the context if that would be clearer in your language. Alternate translation: [And Sihon did not give Israel permission to pass over in his border]

Support Reference: Ellipsis

ULT **And he came to Jahaz, and he fought against Israel**

UST When he and his army arrived at the town of Jahaz, they attacked the Israelites

The pronoun **he** refers to Sihon. It may be helpful to clarify this for your readers. Alternate translation: [And Sihon came to Jahaz, and he fought against Israel]

Support Reference: Pronouns — When to Use Them

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Sihon	Sihon
Israel	Israelites
gathered	assembled
wilderness	into the desolate area

Numbers 21:24

ULT	UST
And Israel struck him to the mouth of the sword and possessed his land from Arnon as far as Jabbok, as far as the sons of Ammon. For the border of the sons of Ammon was strong.	*The Israelites defeated and killed him and his army. They took the area he ruled for themselves. This area went from the Arnon River in the south, to the Jabbok River in the north, to the area where the Ammonites lived in the east. The Ammonites would have been difficult to defeat, so the Israelites stopped at the area where the Ammonites lived.*

ULT **And Israel struck him to the mouth of the sword**

UST The Israelites defeated and killed him and his army

The author is using the phrase **struck him to the mouth of the sword** as a common expression of the culture to mean "killed him and his army with swords." If this phrase does not have that meaning for your readers, you could use a comparable expression from your language that does have that meaning, or you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [And Israel put him to the edge of the sword] or [And Israel killed him and his people with swords]

Support Reference: Idiom

ULT **For the border of the sons of Ammon {was} strong**

UST The Ammonites would have been difficult to defeat, so the Israelites stopped at the area where the Ammonites lived

Here the author is providing background information to help readers understand what happens next in the story. In your translation, introduce this information in a way that would be natural in your own language and culture.

Support Reference: Background Information

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Israel	Israelites
sword	and killed
possessed	They took … for themselves
land	the area he ruled
Ammon	Ammonites
was strong	would have been difficult to defeat

Numbers 21:25

ULT	UST
And Israel took all these cities, and Israel dwelled in all the cities of the Amorite, in Heshbon and in all its daughters.	*So the Israelites captured all the towns where the Amorites had lived, including the town of Heshbon and all its surrounding villages. The Israelites began to live in those towns and villages.*

ULT **in all the cities of the Amorite**

UST where the Amorites had lived … in those towns and villages

The author says **all the cities of the Amorite** as an extreme statement for emphasis. If it would be helpful in your language, you could use a different way to express the emphasis. Alternate translation: [in every city of the Amorite]

Support Reference: Hyperbole

ULT **and in all its daughters**

UST and all its surrounding villages

The author is using **its daughters** as a common expression of the culture to mean "its surrounding villages." If this phrase does not have that meaning for your readers, you could use a comparable expression from your language that does have that meaning, or you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [and in all its nearby villages]

Support Reference: Idiom

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Israel	Israelites
Amorite	Amorites
Heshbon	Heshbon

Numbers 21:26

ULT	UST
For Heshbon, it was the city of Sihon, the king of the Amorite, and he had fought against the former king of Moab, and he had taken all his land from his hand as far as Arnon.	*Here is how Heshbon became the city from which Sihon ruled the Amorites: Sihon attacked one of the kings who had ruled the Moabites previously. He defeated that king's army and took over his territory, which went to the Arnon River in the south.*

ULT **For Heshbon, it {was} the city of Sihon, the king of the Amorite**
UST Here is how Heshbon became the city from which Sihon ruled the Amorites

Here the author is providing background information to help readers understand what happens next in the story. In your translation, introduce this information in a way that would be natural in your own language and culture.
Support Reference: Background Information

ULT **and he had fought against the former king of Moab, and he had taken all his land**
UST Sihon attacked one of the kings who had ruled the Moabites previously. He {defeated that king's army} and took over his territory

Here the author is providing background information to help readers understand what happens next in the story. In your translation, introduce this information in a way that would be natural in your own language and culture.
Support Reference: Background Information

ULT **and he had fought … and he had taken all his land from his hand**
UST Sihon attacked … He {defeated that king's army} and took over his territory

The pronoun **his** refers to the former king of Moab, not to Sihon. It may be helpful to clarify this for your readers. Alternate translation: [and he had fought … and he had taken all the former king of Moab's land from him]
Support Reference: Pronouns — When to Use Them

ULT **from his hand**
UST his territory

Here, **hand** represents the control of the former king of Moab. If it would be helpful in your language, you could use an equivalent expression or plain language. Alternate translation: [from his control]
Support Reference: Metonymy

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Heshbon	Heshbon
Sihon	Sihon
king	ruled
Amorite	Amorites
king	kings
Moab	Moabites
land	his territory

Numbers 21:27

ULT	UST
Therefore the ones speaking in parables say, "Come to Heshbon! Let it be built and be established, the city of Sihon!	*Poets spoke about that in this way: "Travel to Heshbon! People need to rebuild it. Then, Sihon can rule from Heshbon.*

ULT **Therefore the ones speaking in parables say, "Come to Heshbon! Let it be built and be established, the city of Sihon**

UST Poets spoke about that in this way: "Travel to Heshbon! People need to rebuild it. Then, Sihon can rule from Heshbon

The word translated as **Therefore** indicates that what follows is a result of what came before. Use a connector in your language that makes this clear. Alternate translation: [As a result, the ones speaking in parables say]

Support Reference: Connect — Reason-and-Result Relationship

ULT **Therefore the ones speaking in parables say**

UST Poets spoke about that in this way

The term **say** introduces a direct quotation. In your translation, use a natural way of introducing direct quotations in your language. It may not be necessary to represent this term explicitly.

Support Reference: Quotations and Quote Margins

ULT **Let it be built and be established**

UST People need to rebuild it

The expression **be built and be established** is a passive verbal form. If it would be unnatural to use that form, you could express the idea in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: [Let them build and establish it]

Support Reference: Active or Passive

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
parables	Poets
Heshbon	Heshbon
established	People need to rebuild it
Sihon	Sihon

Numbers 21:28

ULT	UST
For a fire went out from Heshbon, a flame from the city of Sihon. It consumed Ar of Moab, the lords of the high places of Arnon.	*Sihon's army marched from his city, Heshbon, like a fire going out and burning up everything. They destroyed the town of Ar in Moab and the people who controlled the hilltop shrines along the Arnon River.*

ULT **a fire went out from Heshbon, a flame from the city of Sihon**

UST Sihon's army marched from his city, Heshbon, like a fire going out and burning up everything

Here the poets are speaking as if Sihon's conquering army were **a fire** and **a flame** that went out from Heshbon. If this meaning would not be clear in your language, you could use a comparable expression or you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [an army went out from Heshbon, a destroying force from the city of Sihon]

Support Reference: Metaphor

ULT **It consumed Ar of Moab**

UST They destroyed the town of Ar in Moab

Here the poets are speaking of the fire as if it were a living thing that could consume **Ar of Moab** the way a person eats food. If it would be helpful in your language, you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [It destroyed Ar of Moab]

Support Reference: Personification

ULT **the lords of the high places of Arnon**

UST and the people who controlled the hilltop shrines along the Arnon River

The phrase **the lords of** is a translation of the standard written Hebrew text. You may want to follow an alternative reading from the ancient Greek translation. Alternate translation: [it swallowed the high places of Arnon]

Support Reference: Alternative Readings

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Heshbon	Heshbon
consumed	They destroyed
Moab	Moab
high places	the hilltop shrines

Numbers 21:29

ULT	UST
Woe to you, Moab! You have perished, people of Chemosh! He has given his sons as fugitives and his daughters in the captivity, to a king of Amorite, Sihon.	*How terrible for you Moabite people! You have died, you people who worship Chemosh! Chemosh let the Moabite men and women become refugees and prisoners. Sihon, who rules the Amorites, conquered them.*

ULT **Woe to you, Moab! You have perished, people of Chemosh**
UST How terrible for you Moabite people! You have died, you people who worship Chemosh

The poets are speaking to Moab, which they know cannot hear them. They are doing this to communicate to the people listening to them that they feel very strongly about the destruction of Moab. If it would be helpful in your language, you could translate these words as if they were speaking directly to the people about Moab. Alternate translation: [How terrible it is for Moab! The people of Chemosh have perished!]
Support Reference: Apostrophe

ULT **Woe to you, Moab**
UST How terrible for you Moabite people

The poets are using a phrase that expresses a strong feeling, dismay over the destruction that has come on Moab. There may be an equivalent word or phrase in your language that you can use in your translation to convey this feeling. Alternate translation: [Terrible things have happened to you, Moab]
Support Reference: Exclamations

ULT **people of Chemosh**
UST you people who worship Chemosh

The poets are using the possessive form to describe a **people** who are characterized by their worship of **Chemosh**. If a speaker of your language would not use the possessive form for this, you could express this idea in another way. Alternate translation: [worshipers of Chemosh]
Support Reference: Possession

ULT **Chemosh**
UST who worship Chemosh

The word **Chemosh** is the name of the god whom the people of Moab worshiped. If your readers would not be familiar with who this is, you could use the name of a similar thing that your readers would recognize, or you could use a more general term. Alternate translation: [their god]
Support Reference: Translate Unknowns

ULT **He has given his sons {as} fugitives and his daughters**
UST Chemosh let the Moabite men and women become refugees

The pronoun **He** refers to Chemosh, the god of Moab. It may be helpful to clarify this for your readers. Alternate translation: [Chemosh has given his sons as fugitives and his daughters]
Support Reference: Pronouns — When to Use Them

> ULT **in the captivity**
> UST and prisoners

If your language does not use an abstract noun for the idea of **captivity**, you could express the same idea in another way. Alternate translation: [as captives]

Support Reference: Abstract Nouns

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Woe	How terrible
Moab	Moabite
perished	You have died
captivity	and prisoners
king	who rules … conquered them
Amorite	Amorites
Sihon	Sihon

Numbers 21:30

ULT	UST
And we shot them. Heshbon has perished as far as Dibon. And we made desolate as far as Nophah, which is as far as Medeba."	*We Amorites defeated those Moabites! We destroyed everything from the city of Heshbon to the city of Dibon. We destroyed everything up to the place that people call Nophah, near the city of Medeba."*

ULT **And we shot them … And we made desolate**
UST We Amorites defeated those Moabites … We destroyed everything

The pronoun **we** refers to the Amorites who composed and recited this song. It may be helpful to clarify this for your readers. Alternate translation: [And we, the Amorites, shot them … And we, the Amorites, made desolate]
Support Reference: Pronouns — When to Use Them

ULT **And we shot them … And we made desolate**
UST We Amorites defeated those Moabites … We destroyed everything

Here, the pronoun **we** could refer to: (1) the Amorites who were ruled by Sihon. In this case, the pronoun **them** refers to the Moabites whom they defeated. Alternate translation: [And we, the Amorites, shot them, the Moabites … And we made desolate]; or (2) the Israelites who defeated Sihon. In this case, the pronoun **them** refers to the Amorites who were ruled by Sihon, whom the Israelites defeated. Alternate translation: [And we Israelites shot those Amorites … And we made desolate]
Support Reference: Pronouns — When to Use Them

ULT **And we shot them. Heshbon has perished as far as Dibon**
UST We Amorites defeated those Moabites! We destroyed everything from the city of Heshbon to the city of Dibon

The words **And we shot them. Heshbon has perished as far as Dibon** are a translation of the standard written Hebrew text. You may want to follow an alternative reading from the ancient Greek translation. Alternate translation: [And their descendants perished, Heshbon as far as Dibon]
Support Reference: Alternative Readings

ULT **which {is} as far as Medeba**
UST near the city of Medeba

The phrase **which is** is a translation of the standard written Hebrew text. You may want to follow an alternative reading from the ancient Greek translation. Alternate translation: [fire as far as Medeba]
Support Reference: Alternative Readings

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Heshbon	Heshbon
perished	We destroyed everything
desolate	We destroyed everything

Numbers 21:32

ULT	UST
And Moses sent to spy out Jazer, and they captured its daughters and dispossessed the Amorite who was there.	*Now Moses had some Israelites explore Jazer. Then, the Israelites attacked and took over Jazer and its surrounding villages. They made the Amorites who had lived there leave.*

ULT and they captured its daughters

UST Then, the Israelites {attacked and} took over {Jazer and} its surrounding villages

The pronoun **they** refers to the Israelites whom Moses sent. It may be helpful to clarify this for your readers. Alternate translation: [and the Israelites captured its daughters]

Support Reference: Pronouns — When to Use Them

ULT its daughters

UST Jazer and its surrounding villages

The author is using **its daughters** as a common expression of the culture to mean "its surrounding villages." If this phrase does not have that meaning for your readers, you could use a comparable expression from your language that does have that meaning, or you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [its nearby villages]

Support Reference: Idiom

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Moses	Moses
captured	Then, the Israelites {attacked and} took over
dispossessed	They made … leave
Amorite	Amorites

Numbers 21:33

ULT	UST
And they turned and went up the way of the Bashan. And Og, the king of the Bashan, went out to meet them, he and all his people, to the battle at Edrei.	*Then the Israelites turned north and went toward the region of Bashan. Og, the king of that area, and all his soldiers marched south to fight against them at the city of Edrei.*

ULT **And they turned and went up the way of the Bashan**
UST Then the Israelites turned north and went toward the region of Bashan

The author is using the word translated as **And** to introduce a new event in the story. Use a word, phrase, or other method in your language that is natural for introducing a new event.
Support Reference: Introduction of a New Event

ULT **And Og, the king of the Bashan, went out**
UST Og, the king of that area … marched south

Here the author is introducing **Og, the king of the Bashan** as a new participant in the story. Your language may have its own way of introducing new participants that you can use in your translation. Alternate translation: [Now there was a king named Og who ruled the Bashan, and he went out]
Support Reference: Introduction of New and Old Participants

ULT **to the battle {at} Edrei**
UST to fight against them at the city of Edrei

If your language does not use an abstract noun for the idea of **battle**, you could express the same idea in another way. Alternate translation: [to wage war at Edrei]
Support Reference: Abstract Nouns

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Bashan	Bashan
Og	Og
king	king

Numbers 21:34

ULT	UST
And Yahweh said to Moses, "Do not fear him, for into your hand I have given him and all his people and his land. And you shall do to him as you did to Sihon, the king of the Amorite, who was dwelling in Heshbon."	*Yahweh told Moses, "I will cause your army to defeat him and all his army. I will also cause you to capture all their land. So, do not be afraid of him. Do to him what you did to Sihon, the king of the Amorite people, who ruled in the city of Heshbon."*

ULT **And Yahweh said to Moses, "Do not fear him, for into your hand I have given him and all his people and his land**

UST Yahweh told Moses, "I will cause your army to defeat him and all his army. I will also cause you to capture all their land. So, do not be afraid of him

The word translated as **for** indicates that what follows is a reason for what came before. Use a connector in your language that makes it clear that what follows is a reason for what came before. Alternate translation: [And Yahweh said to Moses, "Do not fear him, because I have given him and all his people and his land into your hand.]

Support Reference: Connect — Reason-and-Result Relationship

ULT **And Yahweh said to Moses**

UST Yahweh told Moses

The term **said** introduces a direct quotation. In your translation, use a natural way of introducing direct quotations in your language. It may not be necessary to represent this term explicitly.

Support Reference: Quotations and Quote Margins

ULT **Do not fear him**

UST do not be afraid of him

The words translated as **Do not fear** are an imperative, but they communicate a condition rather than a command. If the imperative does not communicate a condition for your readers, then use a form in your language that communicates a condition. Alternate translation: [Since you have no need to fear him]

Support Reference: Imperatives — Other Uses

ULT **into your hand I have given him**

UST I will cause your army to defeat him

If it would be more natural in your language, you may want to put the information about Yahweh giving Og before the phrase **into your hand**. Alternate translation: [I have given him into your hand]

Support Reference: Information Structure

ULT **into your hand**

UST I will cause your army to defeat

Here, **hand** represents the control of a person. If it would be helpful in your language, you could use an equivalent expression or plain language. Alternate translation: [into your control]

Support Reference: Metonymy

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Yahweh	Yahweh
Moses	Moses
fear	afraid
land	land
Sihon	Sihon
king	king
Amorite	Amorite
Heshbon	Heshbon

Numbers 21:35

ULT	UST
And they struck him and his sons and all his people until not a survivor remained for him, and they possessed his land.	*So the Israelites killed Og, his sons, and his entire army. They did not allow any of them to remain alive. Then the Israelites took the area Og had ruled for themselves.*

ULT **And they struck him and his sons and all his people**
UST So the Israelites killed Og, his sons, and his entire army

The pronoun **they** refers to the Israelites, while the pronoun **him** refers to Og. It may be helpful to clarify this for your readers. Alternate translation: [And the Israelites struck Og and his sons and all his people]
Support Reference: Pronouns — When to Use Them

ULT **until not a survivor remained for him**
UST They did not allow any of them to remain alive

The author says **not a survivor remained for him** as an extreme statement for emphasis. If it would be helpful in your language, you could use a different way to express the emphasis. Alternate translation: [until no one was left alive]
Support Reference: Hyperbole

ULT **not a survivor remained for him**
UST They did not allow any of them to remain alive

The author is leaving out some of the words that in many languages a sentence would need in order to be complete. You can supply these words from the context if that would be clearer in your language. Alternate translation: [until not a survivor remained alive for him]
Support Reference: Ellipsis

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
and they possessed	Then the Israelites took … for themselves
land	the area Og had ruled

Numbers 22

Numbers 22 Introduction

Numbers 22 Chapter Introduction

Structure and Formatting

This chapter introduces Balak, the king of Moab, and Balaam. Balak hires Balaam to curse Israel. On Balaam's journey, Yahweh uses a donkey and an angel to warn him to speak only what Yahweh tells him.

1. Israel camps in Moab, and Balak sends for Balaam (1–20)
2. Balaam's donkey sees Yahweh's angel, and the angel warns Balaam (21–35)
3. Balak welcomes Balaam and takes him to see part of Israel's camp (36–41)

Religious and Cultural Concepts in This Chapter

Cursing

In Balak and Balaam's culture, people believed that certain people made more effective curses than others. Balaam was a person who could make an effective curse. Balak wants Balaam to say, with words, bad things that would happen to the Israelites. Then, these bad things would actually happen. People in this culture believed that this kind of curse would work because one of the gods would make the bad things happen. Consider how you might refer to spoken words that cause bad things to happen to people.

Balaam's profession

Numbers 22:7 indicates that Balak's messengers brought "divinations" with them to Balaam. This indicates that Balaam's profession was "diviner," and Joshua 13:22 confirms this by calling Balaam a "diviner." Divination included several different ways of receiving messages from gods. That included prophecy (speaking directly for a god or gods), receiving and interpreting dreams, and examining events (like the flight of birds) or animal entrails. Balaam encounters God in dreams, speaks for God, and participates in offering sacrifices. All these actions fit with his profession of diviner. Consider how you might refer to this kind of person in your translation.

Why was God angry with Balaam?

God permits Balaam to go with the messengers from Balak. However, once Balaam leaves, God is angry with him for going (22:22). The author does not indicate why God is angry. Some have speculated that Balaam's intentions are wrong (he only wants money, or he intends to say something contrary to what God wants). Others guess that Balaam is unable to understand what God wants, and so God has to open his eyes. It is recommended that you leave the tension in your translation without explaining it. This best represents what the author of the narrator chose to include.

Translation Issues in This Chapter

Introducing Balak

The author first introduces Balak in 22:2. However, the verse does not identify him as a king of Moab. In 22:4, the author again introduces Balak. This time, the verse does identify him as king of Moab. The author probably does this to build suspense. If in your language it would be helpful to introduce more information about Balak earlier, you could include some of the information from verse 4 in verse 2, as the UST does. Alternatively, you could move the information about Balak from verse 4 to verse 2.

Elders of Midian

In 22:4 and 22:7, the author mentions the elders of Midian, who are involved with asking Balaam to curse the Israelites. However, after verse 7, the author never mentions them again. Instead, the focus is on the leaders of Moab. The author may possibly imply that the elders of Midian are still involved. However, it is recommended that you do not include the elders of Midian as implied characters. The author of the passage clearly wanted to focus on the Moabite leaders only from verse 8 onwards.

Numbers 22:1

ULT	UST
And the sons of Israel set out, and they camped in the plains of Moab, from across to Jordan at Jericho.	*Then the Israelites kept traveling. They set up their tents in the flatlands that were part of Moab, on the east side of the Jordan River, across from the city of Jericho.*

ULT **And the sons of Israel set out**
UST Then the Israelites kept traveling

Based on the previous chapter, the Israelites might have **set out** from Bashan. However, Numbers 33:48 indicates that the Israelites traveled to **the plains of Moab** from the mountains of Abarim. It is possible that the previous chapter describes the movements of the army, not the rest of the Israelites. It is also possible that Numbers 33 does not include all the places where the Israelites stopped. So, it is recommended that you do not explicitly indicate where the Israelites **set out** from in this verse. Alternate translation: [And the sons of Israel moved on] or [The Israelites continued to walk]

ULT **the sons of Israel**
UST the Israelites

Here the masculine term **sons** has a generic sense that includes both men and women. If it would be helpful to your readers, you could use language in your translation that is clearly inclusive of both men and women. Alternate translation: [the descendants of Israel]
Support Reference: When Masculine Words Include Women

ULT **And the sons of Israel set out, and they camped**
UST Then the Israelites kept traveling. They set up their tents

The author is using the word translated as **And** to introduce a new event in the story. Use a word, phrase, or other method in your language that is natural for introducing a new event.
Support Reference: Introduction of a New Event

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Israel	Israelites
Moab	Moab
Jordan	Jordan River
Jericho	Jericho

Numbers 22:2

ULT	UST
And Balak the son of Zippor saw all that Israel had done to the Amorite.	*King Balak, Zippor's son, ruled Moab at that time. He learned about everything the Israelites had done to the Amorites.*

ULT **And Balak the son of Zippor saw**
UST King Balak, Zippor's son, {ruled Moab at that time}. He learned about

Here the author is introducing **Balak the son of Zippor** as a new participant in the story. Your language may have its own way of introducing new participants that you can use in your translation. Alternate translation: [There was a man named Balak the son of Zippor, and he]

Support Reference: Introduction of New and Old Participants

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Israel	Israelites
Amorite	Amorites

Numbers 22:3

ULT	UST
And Moab was very afraid from the face of the people, because it was many. And Moab felt dread from the face of the sons of Israel.	*He and his people, the Moabites, realized how many Israelites there were. So, they were extremely afraid of the Israelites.*

ULT **And Moab was very afraid from the face of the people, because it {was} many**
UST He and his people, the Moabites, realized how many Israelites there were. So, they were … afraid of the Israelites

If it would be more natural in your language, you could reverse the order of these phrases, since the second phrase gives the reason for the result that the first phrase describes. Alternate translation: [Because the people were many, Moab was very afraid from the face of the people.]
Support Reference: Connect — Reason-and-Result Relationship

ULT **And Moab was very afraid**
UST He and his people, the Moabites … they were … afraid

Here, **Moab** represents the people of Moab. If it would be helpful in your language, you could use an equivalent expression or plain language. Alternate translation: [And the people of Moab were very afraid]
Support Reference: Synecdoche

ULT **from the face of the people**
UST of the Israelites

The author is using **from the face of** as a common expression of the culture to mean "because of" or "on account of." If this phrase does not have that meaning for your readers, you could use a comparable expression from your language that does have that meaning, or you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [on account of the people]
Support Reference: Idiom

ULT **the sons of Israel**
UST extremely

See how you translated the similar expression in 22:1.
Support Reference: When Masculine Words Include Women

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Moab	Moabites
afraid	afraid
Moab	extremely
dread	extremely
Israel	extremely

Numbers 22:4

ULT	UST
And Moab said to the elders of Midian, "Now the assembly will lick up all around us, as the ox licks up the greenery of the field." And Balak the son of Zippor was the king of Moab at that time.	*The people who led the Moabites told the people who led the Midianites, "Very soon this Israelite community will destroy everything around us, just as an ox devours all the grass in a field." Now King Balak, Zippor's son, ruled Moab during this time.*

ULT **And Moab said to the elders of Midian**
UST The people who led the Moabites told the people who led the Midianites

The author is using **Moab** to represent the king and leaders of Moab. If it would be helpful in your language, you could use an equivalent expression from your culture or state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [And the leaders of Moab said to the elders of Midian]
Support Reference: Synecdoche

ULT **will lick up all around us**
UST will destroy everything around us

Moab is using **will lick up all around us** as an extreme statement for emphasis. If it would be helpful in your language, you could use a different way to express the emphasis. Alternate translation: [will consume everything around us]
Support Reference: Hyperbole

ULT **as the ox licks up the greenery of the field**
UST just as an ox devours all the grass in a field

The point of this comparison is that just as **the ox licks up the greenery of the field**, consuming it entirely, so the assembly of Israel will consume everything around Moab. If it would be helpful in your language, you could make this point explicitly. Alternate translation: [leaving nothing, just as an ox eats up all the greenery of a field]
Support Reference: Simile

ULT **And Balak the son of Zippor {was} the king of Moab at that time**
UST Now King Balak, Zippor's son, ruled Moab during this time

Here the author is providing background information to help readers understand what happens next in the story. In your translation, introduce this information in a way that would be natural in your own language and culture.
Support Reference: Background Information

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Moab	Moabites
elders	the people who led
Midian	Midianites
assembly	community
ox	ox
king	ruled
time	time

Numbers 22:5

ULT	UST
And he sent messengers to Balaam the son of Beor, to Pethor, which is on the River, the land of the sons of his people, to call for him, saying, "Behold, a people has come out from Egypt. Behold, it has covered the eye of the land, and it is dwelling in front of me.	*So King Balak had representatives visit Balaam, Beor's son. He lived in the town of Pethor near the Euphrates River. That was his native country. The representatives would ask Balaam to visit Balak. This was their message: "Listen to this! A group of people left Egypt and now they are living near me. There are so many of them that they cover the entire region.*

ULT **And he sent messengers to Balaam … to call for him**
UST So King Balak had representatives visit Balaam … The representatives would ask Balaam to visit Balak

Here, the phrase **to call for him** marks the purpose for which Balak sent the messengers to Balaam. Use a connector in your language that makes it clear that this is the purpose.
Support Reference: Connect — Goal (Purpose) Relationship

ULT **And he sent messengers**
UST So King Balak had representatives visit

The pronoun **he** refers to Balak. It may be helpful to clarify this for your readers. Alternate translation: [Balak sent messengers]
Support Reference: Pronouns — When to Use Them

ULT **to Balaam the son of Beor**
UST So King Balak had … visit Balaam, Beor's son

Here the author is introducing **Balaam the son of Beor** as a new participant in the story. Your language may have its own way of introducing new participants that you can use in your translation. Alternate translation: [to a man named Balaam, the son of Beor]
Support Reference: Introduction of New and Old Participants

ULT **the River**
UST the Euphrates River

The implication is that **the River** here refers to the Euphrates River. You could include this information if that would be helpful to your readers. Alternate translation: [the great Euphrates River]
Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

ULT **the sons of his people**
UST his native

Here the masculine term **sons** has a generic sense that includes both men and women. If it would be helpful to your readers, you could use language in your translation that is clearly inclusive of both men and women. Alternate translation: [the people of his own descent]
Support Reference: When Masculine Words Include Women

> ULT **the sons of his people**
> UST his native

The phrase **his people** is a translation of the standard written Hebrew text. You may want to follow an alternative reading that some scholars have suggested. Alternate translation: [the sons of Amaw]
Support Reference: Alternative Readings

> ULT **saying**
> UST This was their message

The term **saying** introduces a direct quotation. See how you translated **saying** in 1:1.
Support Reference: Quotations and Quote Margins

> ULT **it has covered the eye of the land**
> UST There are so many of them that they cover the entire region

Here Balak is speaking as if the surface of the land were an **eye**. If this meaning would not be clear in your language, you could use a comparable expression or you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [it has covered the surface of the land]
Support Reference: Metaphor

> ULT **it has covered the eye of the land, and it is dwelling in front of me**
> UST and now they are living near me. There are so many of them that they cover the entire region

The pronoun it refers to the people who had come out from Egypt. It may be helpful to clarify this for your readers. Alternate translation: [that people has covered the eye of the land, and that people is dwelling in front of me]
Support Reference: Pronouns — When to Use Them

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
messengers	representatives
Balaam	Balaam
the River	Euphrates River
land	That was … country
Egypt	Egypt

Numbers 22:6

ULT	UST
And now, please come, curse this people for me, for it is mightier than I. Perhaps I will be able to strike against it, and I will drive it out from the land. For I know that whom you bless is blessed, and whom you curse is cursed."	*They are more powerful than we are. So, please travel here. For my sake, call on God to do bad things to them. Then maybe my army will be able to defeat them and force them to leave my region. I ask because I believe that when you call on God to do good things to people, those good things happen to them. When you call on God to do bad things to people, those bad things happen to them."*

ULT **And now, please come, curse this people for me, for it {is} mightier than I**
UST They are more powerful than we are. So, please travel here. For my sake, call on God to do bad things to them

The word translated as **for** indicates that what follows is a reason for what came before. Use a connector in your language that makes it clear that what follows is a reason for what came before. Alternate translation: [And now, because this people is mightier than I, please come, curse it for me]
Support Reference: Connect — Reason-and-Result Relationship

ULT **please come, curse this people for me**
UST please travel here. For my sake, call on God to do bad things to them

The words translated as **come** and **curse** are imperatives, but they communicate a polite request rather than a command. If the imperative does not communicate a polite request for your readers, then use a form in your language that communicates a polite request. It may be helpful to add an expression such as "please" to make this clear. Alternate translation: [I ask that you come and curse this people for me]
Support Reference: Imperatives — Other Uses

ULT **is blessed**
UST those good things happen to them

The expression **blessed** is a passive verbal form. If it would be unnatural to use that form, you could express the idea in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. If you need to say who does the action, the context indicates that it is God. Alternate translation: [God blesses]
Support Reference: Active or Passive

ULT **is cursed**
UST those bad things happen to them

The expression **cursed** is a passive verbal form. If it would be unnatural to use that form, you could express the idea in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. If you need to say who does the action, the context indicates that it is God. Alternate translation: [God curses]
Support Reference: Active or Passive

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
curse	call on God to do bad things
and I will drive it out	and force them to leave
land	my region
know	I believe
bless	that when you call on God to do good things
blessed	those good things happen to them
curse	When you call on God to do bad things
cursed	those bad things happen to them

Numbers 22:7

ULT	UST
And the elders of Moab and the elders of Midian went, and divinations were in their hand. And they came to Balaam and spoke to him the words of Balak.	*The representatives were the people who led the Moabites and the Midianites. They had money with them to pay Balaam for his work. They traveled to Balaam and told him what Balak had said.*

ULT **and divinations {were} in their hand**
UST They had money with them to pay {Balaam} for his work

Here, **their hand** represents what they were carrying with them. If it would be helpful in your language, you could use an equivalent expression or plain language. Alternate translation: [carrying divinations with them]
Support Reference: Metonymy

ULT **and divinations {were} in their hand**
UST They had money with them to pay {Balaam} for his work

Here the author is providing background information to help readers understand what happens next in the story. In your translation, introduce this information in a way that would be natural in your own language and culture.
Support Reference: Background Information

ULT **and divinations**
UST money … to pay {Balaam} for his work

The term **divinations** refers to payments given to someone in exchange for practicing divination, the attempt to gain hidden knowledge through magical or occult means. If your readers would not be familiar with what divinations are, you could use the name of a similar thing that your readers would recognize, or you could use a more general term. Alternate translation: [payments for divining]
Support Reference: Translate Unknowns

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
elders	the people who led
Moab	Moabites
Midian	Midianites
divinations	money … to pay {Balaam} for his work
Balaam	Balaam

Numbers 22:8

ULT	UST
And he said to them, "Lodge here tonight, and I will return to you a word, just as Yahweh speaks to me." And the princes of Moab dwelled with Balaam.	*Balaam replied, "Stay here tonight. In the morning, I will answer your request. I will tell you what Yahweh tells me." So, the Moabite officials stayed there that night.*

ULT **the princes of Moab**
UST the Moabite officials

The phrase **the princes of Moab** refers to the same men whom the author called "the elders of Moab" in the previous verse. If it would be helpful to your readers, you could make this clear in your translation. Alternate translation: [these same leaders of Moab]
Support Reference: Introduction of New and Old Participants

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Yahweh	Yahweh
princes	officials
Moab	Moabite
Balaam	there

Numbers 22:9

ULT	UST
And God came to Balaam and said, "Who are these men with you?"	*During the night, God made himself present to Balaam. He asked Balaam, "Who are these men who are staying with you?"*

ULT **Who {are} these men with you**
UST Who are these men who are staying with you

God is using the question form to prompt Balaam to tell him about his visitors, not because he does not know. If a speaker of your language would not use the question form for that purpose, you could translate this as a statement or as an exclamation. Alternate translation: [Tell me about these men who are with you.]
Support Reference: Rhetorical Question

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
God	God
Balaam	Balaam

Numbers 22:10

ULT	UST
And Balaam said to God, "Balak the son of Zippor, the king of Moab, sent to me,	*Balaam replied, "King Balak, Zippor's son, rules Moab. He had these men visit me.*

ULT **And Balaam said to God, "Balak the son of Zippor, the king of Moab, sent to me**
UST Balaam replied, "King Balak, Zippor's son, rules Moab. He had {these men} visit me

If it would be clearer in your language, you could translate this so that there is not a quotation within a quotation. It may be more natural to express this whole statement as an indirect quotation, as modeled by the UST. Alternate translation: [And Balaam told God that Balak the son of Zippor, the king of Moab, had sent to him]

Support Reference: Quotes within Quotes

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Balaam	Balaam
God	replied
king	rules
Moab	Moab

Numbers 22:10-11

> ULT **Balak the son of Zippor, the king of Moab, sent to me, 'Behold, the people coming out from Egypt, and it has covered the eye of the land. Now come, curse it for me. Perhaps I will be able to fight against it and drive it out**
> UST King Balak, Zippor's son, rules Moab. He had {these men} visit me. They told me that a group of people left Egypt {and are now living near Moab}. There are so many of them that they cover the entire region. They asked me to travel there and for their sake to call upon God to do bad things to this group of people. That way, their army may be able to defeat this group of people and force them to leave that region

If it would be clearer in your language, you could translate this so that there is not a quotation within a quotation. Alternate translation: [Balak the son of Zippor, the king of Moab, sent word to me that the people coming out from Egypt have covered the eye of the land. He asked me to come and curse that people for him so that he may perhaps be able to fight against that people and drive it out.]

Support Reference: Quotes within Quotes

Numbers 22:11

ULT	UST
‘Behold, the people coming out from Egypt, and it has covered the eye of the land. Now come, curse it for me. Perhaps I will be able to fight against it and drive it out.’”	*They told me that a group of people left Egypt and are now living near Moab. There are so many of them that they cover the entire region. They asked me to travel there and for their sake to call upon God to do bad things to this group of people. That way, their army may be able to defeat this group of people and force them to leave that region.”*

ULT **and it has covered the eye of the land**

UST There are so many of them that they cover the entire region

See how you translated these same phrases in Numbers 22:5. Alternate translation: [it has covered the surface of the land]

Support Reference: Metaphor

ULT **come, curse it for me**

UST They asked me to travel there and for their sake to call upon God to do bad things to this group of people

See how you translated these same phrases in Numbers 22:6. Alternate translation: [I ask that you come and curse it for me]

ULT **and it has covered the eye of the land. Now come, curse it for me. Perhaps I will be able to fight against it and drive it out**

UST There are so many of them that they cover the entire region. They asked me to travel there and for their sake to call upon God to do bad things to this group of people. That way, their army may be able to defeat this group of people and force them to leave that region

The pronoun **it** refers to the people coming out from Egypt. It may be helpful to clarify this for your readers. Alternate translation: [and they have covered the eye of the land. Now come, curse them for me. Perhaps I will be able to fight against them and drive them out]

Support Reference: Pronouns — When to Use Them

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Egypt	Egypt
land	There are so many of them that they cover the entire region
curse	and … to call upon God to do bad things

Numbers 22:12

ULT	UST
And God said to Balaam, "You shall not go with them. You shall not curse the people, for it is blessed."	*Then God told Balaam, "You must not travel back with them! I intend to do good things to this group of people. So, you must not call on me to do bad things to this group of people."*

ULT **is blessed**

UST I intend to do good things

The expression **blessed** is a passive verbal form. If it would be unnatural to use that form, you could express the idea in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. If you need to say who does the action, the context indicates that it is God. Alternate translation: [I have blessed it]

Support Reference: Active or Passive

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
God	God
Balaam	Balaam
curse	you must … call on me to do bad things
blessed	I intend to do good things

Numbers 22:13

ULT	UST
And Balaam rose in the morning and said to the princes of Balak, "Go to your land, for Yahweh has refused to give me to go with you."	*When Balaam woke up the next morning, he told the officials who served Balak, "Yahweh will not allow me to travel back with you. So, return to your country without me."*

> ULT **And Balaam rose in the morning and said to the princes of Balak, "Go to your land, for Yahweh has refused to give me to go with you**
> UST When Balaam woke up the next morning, he told the officials who served Balak, "Yahweh will not allow me to travel back with you. So, return to your country without me

The word translated as **for** indicates that what follows is a reason for what came before. Use a connector in your language that makes it clear that what follows is a reason for what came before. Alternate translation: [And Balaam rose in the morning and said to the princes of Balak, "Because Yahweh has refused to give me to go with you, go to your land."]

Support Reference: Connect — Reason-and-Result Relationship

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Balaam	Balaam
princes	officials
land	your country
Yahweh	Yahweh

Numbers 22:15

ULT	UST
And Balak added again to send princes, more numerous and more honored than these.	*So King Balak had another group of officials visit Balaam. There were more of these officials, and they were more important than the previous officials.*

ULT **And Balak added again to send**
UST So King Balak had another … visit Balaam

Balak is using **added again** as a common expression of the culture to mean "did something again." If this phrase does not have that meaning for your readers, you could use a comparable expression from your language that does have that meaning, or you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [Balak again sent princes] or [Balak sent more princes]
Support Reference: Idiom

ULT **than these**
UST than the previous officials

The pronoun **these** refers to the princes whom Balak sent the first time. It may be helpful to clarify this for your readers. Alternate translation: [than the princes he had sent the first time]
Support Reference: Pronouns — When to Use Them

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
princes	officials
honored	and they were more important

Numbers 22:16

ULT	UST
And they came to Balaam and said to him, "Thus says Balak the son of Zippor, 'Please, do not be withheld from coming to me,	*They traveled to where Balaam was. They told him, "We speak for King Balak, Zippor's son. We ask that you do not let anything keep you from traveling back with us.*

ULT **Thus says Balak the son of Zippor, 'Please, do not be withheld from coming to me**
UST We speak for King Balak, Zippor's son. We ask that you do not let anything keep you from traveling back with us

If it would be clearer in your language, you could translate this so that there is not a quotation within a quotation. Alternate translation: [Balak the son of Zippor says that you should not let anything keep you from coming to him]
Support Reference: Quotes within Quotes

ULT **do not be withheld**
UST you do not let anything keep you

The expression **be withheld** is a passive verbal form. If it would be unnatural to use that form, you could express the idea in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: [do not allow anything to hold you back]
Support Reference: Active or Passive

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Balaam	Balaam
Please	We ask that

Numbers 22:17

ULT	UST
for honoring, I will honor you greatly, and all that you say to me I will do. And please come, curse this people for me.’”	*If you travel back with us, King Balak will reward you very much. Also, he will do everything you tell him to do. We only ask that you travel back with us. For our sake, call on God to do bad things to this people group.”*

ULT **for honoring, I will honor you**

UST If you {travel back with us}, King Balak will reward you

Balak is repeating forms of the verb **honor** in order to intensify his expression of the idea that it conveys. If your language can repeat words for intensification, it would be appropriate to do that here in your translation. If not, your language may have another way of expressing the intensification. Alternate translation: [I will surely honor you]

Support Reference: Reduplication

ULT **And please come, curse this people for me**

UST We only ask that you travel back with us. For our sake, call on God to do bad things to this people group

See how you translated these same phrases in Numbers 22:6. Alternate translation: [I ask that you come and curse this people for me]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
honoring	King Balak will reward you
honor	King Balak will reward you
please	We only ask that
curse	call on God to do bad things

Numbers 22:18

ULT	UST
And Balaam answered and said to the servants of Balak, "If Balak gives to me the fullness of his house, silver and gold, I will not be able to pass over the mouth of Yahweh my God, to do small or great.	*Balaam told the men who served King Balak, "Suppose that King Balak offered me all the money and possessions he has. Even in that case, I would not be able to disobey what Yahweh, the God I worship, tells me to do, no matter how unimportant.*

ULT **the fullness of his house**
UST all … and possessions he has

If your language does not use an abstract noun for the idea of **fullness**, you could express the same idea in another way. Alternate translation: [everything that fills his house]
Support Reference: Abstract Nouns

ULT **the mouth of Yahweh my God**
UST what Yahweh, the God I worship, tells me

Balaam is using **the mouth of Yahweh my God** to represent what Yahweh commands. If it would be helpful in your language, you could use an equivalent expression from your culture or state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [the command of Yahweh my God]
Support Reference: Synecdoche

ULT **to do small or great**
UST to do, no matter how unimportant

Balaam is referring to any action at all by naming two extremes, **small** and **great**. If it would be helpful in your language, you could use an equivalent expression or plain language. Alternate translation: [to do anything at all]
Support Reference: Merism

ULT **to do small or great**
UST to do, no matter how unimportant

Balaam is leaving out some of the words that in many languages a sentence would need in order to be complete. You can supply these words from the context if that would be clearer in your language. Alternate translation: [to do anything, whether small or great]
Support Reference: Ellipsis

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Balaam	Balaam
servants	served
house	and possessions he has
silver	the money
gold	the money
Yahweh	Yahweh
God	God

Numbers 22:19

ULT	UST
And now, please, you also dwell in this tonight, and I will know what Yahweh will add to speak with me."	*For now, I ask that you stay here tonight, just as the previous officials did. Tonight, I will find out what else Yahweh may say to me."*

ULT dwell in this tonight
UST you stay here tonight

Balaam is leaving out some of the words that in many languages a sentence would need in order to be complete. You can supply these words from the context if that would be clearer in your language. Alternate translation: [dwell in this place tonight]
Support Reference: Ellipsis

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
please	I ask that
know	Tonight, I will find out
Yahweh	Yahweh

Numbers 22:20

ULT	UST
And God came to Balaam at night and said to him, "If the men have come to call for you, rise, go with them. But only the word that I speak to you, it you shall do."	*During the night, God made himself present to Balaam. He told Balaam, "Since these men have arrived here to ask you to travel back with them, you may leave with them when you get up in the morning. However, you must do only what I tell you to do!"*

ULT **If the men have come to call for you**

UST Since these men have arrived here to ask you to travel back with them

God is speaking as if this were a hypothetical possibility, but he means that it is actually true. If your language does not state something as a condition if it is certain or true, or if your readers might think that what God is saying is uncertain, then you could translate this as a confident statement. Alternate translation: [Since the men have come to call for you]

Support Reference: Connect — Factual Conditions

ULT **But only the word that I speak to you, it you shall do**

UST However, you must do only what I tell you to do

If it would be more natural in your language, you may want to put the phrase **it you shall do** with or before the phrase **the word that I speak to you**. Alternate translation: [But you shall do only the word that I speak to you]

Support Reference: Information Structure

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
God	God
Balaam	Balaam

Numbers 22:21

ULT	UST
And Balaam rose in the morning and saddled his female donkey, and he went with the princes of Moab.	*So the next morning, Balaam got up, put a saddle on his donkey, and left with the Moabite officials.*

ULT **And Balaam rose in the morning**
UST So the next morning, Balaam got up

The author is using the word translated as **And** to introduce a new event in the story. Use a word, phrase, or other method in your language that is natural for introducing a new event.
Support Reference: Introduction of a New Event

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Balaam	Balaam
donkey	donkey
princes	officials
Moab	Moabite

Numbers 22:22

ULT	UST
And the nose of God burned because he was going. And the angel of Yahweh stationed himself in the way for an adversary to him. And he was riding on his female donkey, and two of his young men were with him.	*Then, because Balaam left with them, God was angry. So, an angel representing Yahweh stood in the road to oppose Balaam. Meanwhile, Balaam was riding on his donkey. He had two servants with him.*

ULT **And the nose of God burned**
UST Then … God was angry

The author is using the phrase **the nose of God burned** as a common expression of the culture to mean that God is angry. If this phrase does not have that meaning for your readers, use a comparable expression from your language that does have that meaning or state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [God became angry]
Support Reference: Idiom

ULT **because he was going**
UST because Balaam left with them

The pronoun **he** refers to Balaam. It may be helpful to clarify this for your readers. Alternate translation: [because Balaam was going]
Support Reference: Pronouns — When to Use Them

ULT **And the angel of Yahweh stationed himself**
UST So, an angel representing Yahweh stood

The author is introducing **the angel of Yahweh** as a new participant in the story. Your language may have its own way of introducing new participants that you can use in your translation. Alternate translation: [Now there was an angel of Yahweh who stationed himself]
Support Reference: Introduction of New and Old Participants

ULT **And he was riding on his female donkey, and two of his young men {were} with him**
UST Meanwhile, Balaam was riding on his donkey. He had two servants with him

Here the author is providing background information to help readers understand what happens next in the story. In your translation, introduce this information in a way that would be natural in your own language and culture.
Support Reference: Background Information

ULT **and two of his young men**
UST He had two servants

Here, the phrase **two of his young men** could imply: (1) that Balaam had more than these two servants, but these two went with him. Alternate translation: [two young men from his household]; or (2) that Balaam had only these two servants. Alternate translation: [and his two young men]
Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
God	God
angel	angel
Yahweh	Yahweh
adversary	to oppose
his young men	servants

Numbers 22:23

ULT	UST
And the female donkey saw the angel of Yahweh being stationed in the way, and his sword being drawn in his hand. And the female donkey turned aside from the way and went into the field. And Balaam struck the female donkey to turn her aside to the way.	*Balaam's donkey saw the angel representing Yahweh standing in the road. The angel held a sword and was ready to use it. So, the donkey turned off the road into the open country. But Balaam hit the donkey to force it back onto the road.*

ULT **and his sword being drawn in his hand**

UST The angel held a sword and was ready to use it

The expression **being drawn** is a passive verbal form. If it would be unnatural to use that form, you could express the idea in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: [and he had drawn his sword in his hand]

Support Reference: Active or Passive

ULT **And Balaam struck the female donkey to turn her aside to the way**

UST But Balaam hit the donkey to force it back onto the road

Here, the phrase **to turn her aside to the way** marks the purpose for which Balaam struck the donkey. Use a connector in your language that makes it clear that this is the purpose.

Support Reference: Connect — Goal (Purpose) Relationship

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
donkey	donkey
angel	angel
Yahweh	Yahweh
sword	sword
Balaam	Balaam

Numbers 22:24

ULT	UST
And the angel of Yahweh stood in the narrow path of the vineyards, a wall from this and a wall from that.	*Then the angel representing Yahweh stood on a narrow road between two vineyards. There were walls on both sides.*

ULT **a wall from this and a wall from that**

UST There were walls on both sides

The author is leaving out some of the words that in many languages a sentence would need in order to be complete. You can supply these words from the context if that would be clearer in your language. Alternate translation: [with a wall on this side and a wall on that side]

Support Reference: Ellipsis

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
angel	angel
Yahweh	Yahweh
vineyards	vineyards

Numbers 22:25

ULT	UST
And the female donkey saw the angel of Yahweh, and she pressed herself against the wall. And she pressed the foot of Balaam against the wall, and he added to strike her.	*When the donkey saw the angel representing Yahweh standing there, it squeezed up against the wall. When it did that, it also squeezed Balaam's foot between it and the wall. So, Balaam hit the donkey again.*

ULT **and she pressed herself**

UST it squeezed

The pronoun **she** refers to the female donkey. It may be helpful to clarify this for your readers. Alternate translation: [and the donkey pressed herself]

Support Reference: Pronouns — When to Use Them

ULT **and he added to strike her**

UST So, Balaam hit the donkey again

The author is using **added to strike** as a common expression of the culture to mean that Balaam struck the donkey again, that is, an additional time. If this phrase does not have that meaning for your readers, you could use a comparable expression from your language that does have that meaning, or you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [he hit her once more] or [he hit her again]

Support Reference: Idiom

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
donkey	donkey
angel	angel
Yahweh	Yahweh
Balaam	Balaam's

Numbers 22:26

ULT	UST
And the angel of Yahweh added to pass over, and he stood in a narrow place where there was no way to turn aside right or left.	*Then the angel representing Yahweh went further ahead. He stopped in a place that was so narrow that no one could get by on either side.*

ULT **And the angel of Yahweh added to pass over**
UST Then the angel representing Yahweh went further ahead

The author is using **added to pass over** as a common expression of the culture to mean "continued traveling onward." If this phrase does not have that meaning for your readers, you could use a comparable expression from your language that does have that meaning, or you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [continued on ahead] or [kept going]
Support Reference: Idiom

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
angel	angel
Yahweh	Yahweh

Numbers 22:27

ULT	UST
And the female donkey saw the angel of Yahweh and lay down under Balaam. And the nose of Balaam burned, and he struck the female donkey with the staff.	*When the donkey saw the angel representing Yahweh standing there, it lay down on the ground with Balaam still sitting on it. Balaam was angry, and he hit the donkey with his walking stick.*

ULT **And the nose of Balaam burned**

UST Balaam was angry

The author is using the phrase **the nose of Balaam burned** as a common expression of the culture to mean that Balaam is angry. If this phrase does not have that meaning for your readers, use a comparable expression from your language that does have that meaning or state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [Balaam became furious]

Support Reference: Idiom

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
donkey	donkey
angel	angel
Yahweh	Yahweh
Balaam	Balaam

Numbers 22:28

ULT	UST
And Yahweh opened the mouth of the female donkey, and she said to Balaam, "What have I done to you, that you have struck me these three times?"	*Then Yahweh enabled the donkey to speak! It asked Balaam, "Why have you hit me three times? How have I acted against you?"*

ULT **What have I done to you, that you have struck me these three times**
UST Why have you hit me three times? How have I acted against you

The donkey is using the question form to protest what Balaam has done, not to ask for information. If a speaker of your language would not use the question form for that purpose, you could translate this as a statement or as an exclamation. Alternate translation: [I have done nothing to you that should make you strike me these three times!]
Support Reference: Rhetorical Question

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Yahweh	Yahweh
donkey	donkey
Balaam	Balaam
times	times

Numbers 22:29

ULT	UST
And Balaam said to the female donkey, "Because you have abused me! If only there were a sword in my hand, for I would kill you now!"	*Balaam replied, "You have treated me very badly! I wish I had a sword and could kill you right now!"*

ULT **If only there were a sword in my hand, for I would kill you now**
UST I wish I had a sword and could kill you right now

Balaam is making a conditional statement that sounds hypothetical, but he knows that the condition is not true. He is stating it as a condition to show that killing the donkey is not possible for him. Use a natural form in your language for introducing a condition that the speaker believes is not true. Alternate translation: [I wish I had a sword in my hand, because then I would kill you now]

Support Reference: Connect — Contrary to Fact Conditions

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Balaam	Balaam
donkey	replied
sword	sword
kill	kill

Numbers 22:30

ULT	UST
And the female donkey said to Balaam, "Am I not your female donkey on which you have ridden from since you were until this day? Being accustomed, have I been accustomed to do thus to you?" And he said, "No."	*The donkey replied, "I am your own donkey. You have ridden on me since you bought me. Have I ever acted like this?" Balaam said, "No."*

ULT **Am I not your female donkey on which you have ridden from since you {were} until this day**

UST I am your own donkey. You have ridden on me since you bought me

The donkey is using the question form to remind Balaam of their long relationship, not to ask for information. If a speaker of your language would not use the question form for that purpose, you could translate this as a statement or as an exclamation. Alternate translation: [I am your female donkey on which you have ridden from since you were until this day.]

Support Reference: Rhetorical Question

ULT **from since you were**

UST since you bought me

The donkey is using **from since you** as a common expression of the culture to mean "from the time you first owned me." If this phrase does not have that meaning for your readers, you could use a comparable expression from your language that does have that meaning, or you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [from the time you first owned me]

Support Reference: Idiom

ULT **Being accustomed, have I been accustomed to do thus to you**

UST Have I ever acted like this

The donkey is using the question form to insist that it has never behaved this way before, not to ask for information. If a speaker of your language would not use the question form for that purpose, you could translate this as a statement or as an exclamation. Alternate translation: [I have never been accustomed to do thus to you!]

Support Reference: Rhetorical Question

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
donkey	donkey
Balaam	replied

Numbers 22:31

ULT	UST
And Yahweh uncovered the eyes of Balaam, and he saw the angel of Yahweh being stationed in the way and his sword being drawn in his hand. And he bowed and prostrated himself to his nostrils.	*Then Yahweh enabled Balaam to see the angel representing Yahweh. The angel was standing in the road. He held a sword and was ready to use it. So Balaam fearfully and respectfully bowed down before the angel.*

ULT **And Yahweh uncovered the eyes of Balaam**
UST Then Yahweh enabled Balaam to see

Here the author is speaking as if Balaam's inability to see the angel had been a covering over his **eyes** that Yahweh removed. If this meaning would not be clear in your language, you could use a comparable expression or you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [And Yahweh enabled Balaam to see]

Support Reference: Metaphor

ULT **And he bowed and prostrated himself**
UST So Balaam {fearfully and respectfully} bowed down before the angel

The terms **bowed** and **prostrated himself** mean similar things. The author is using the two terms together for emphasis. If it would be clearer for your readers, you could express the emphasis with a single phrase. Alternate translation: [And he bowed low]

Support Reference: Doublet

ULT **and prostrated himself to his nostrils**
UST So Balaam {fearfully and respectfully} bowed down before the angel

The author is using the phrase **prostrated himself to his nostrils** as a common expression of the culture to mean that Balaam lay face-down on the ground. If this phrase does not have that meaning for your readers, you could use a comparable expression from your language that does have that meaning, or you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [and lay face-down on the ground]

Support Reference: Idiom

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Yahweh	Yahweh
Balaam	Balaam
the angel of	the angel
sword	sword
bowed	bowed down
prostrated	bowed down

Numbers 22:32

ULT	UST
And the angel of Yahweh said to him, "Why have you struck your female donkey these three times? Behold, I, I have come out for an adversary, for the way is precipitous in front of me.	*The angel representing Yahweh told Balaam, "You should not have hit your donkey three times! Listen to me! I consider what you are doing to be wrong. So, I came here to oppose you.*

ULT **Why have you struck your female donkey these three times**

UST You should not have hit your donkey three times

The angel of Yahweh is using the question form to rebuke Balaam, not to ask for information. If a speaker of your language would not use the question form for that purpose, you could translate this as a statement or as an exclamation. Alternate translation: [You should not have struck your female donkey these three times]

Support Reference: Rhetorical Question

ULT **the way is precipitous in front of me**

UST I consider what you are doing to be wrong

Here the angel is speaking of Balaam's course of action as if it were a **way** or road that is steep and dangerous. If this meaning would not be clear in your language, you could use a comparable expression or you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [your course of action is reckless before me]

Support Reference: Metaphor

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
angel	angel
Yahweh	Yahweh
donkey	donkey
times	times
adversary	to oppose you

Numbers 22:33

ULT	UST
And the female donkey saw me and turned aside to my face these three times. Unless she turned aside from my face, then now I would have killed also you and kept her alive."	*Your donkey realized I was here. It tried to move away from me those three times. If it had not done that, I would have killed you already. However, I would have let the donkey live."*

ULT **Unless she turned aside from my face, then now I would have killed also you and kept her alive**

UST If it had not done that, I would have killed you already. However, I would have let the donkey live

The angel says **Unless she turned aside from my face** to introduce an imaginary situation, describing what would have happened if the donkey had not turned away. Use a natural method in your language for introducing an imaginary situation. Alternate translation: [If she had not turned away from my face, then by now I would have killed you and let her live]

Support Reference: Hypothetical Situations

ULT **she turned aside from my face**

UST it had not done that

Here, **my face** represents the angel's presence, that is, being in front of him. If it would be helpful in your language, you could use an equivalent expression or plain language. Alternate translation: [she turned aside from my presence]

Support Reference: Metonymy

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
donkey	donkey
times	times
killed	killed

Numbers 22:34

ULT	UST
And Balaam said to the angel of Yahweh, "I have sinned, for I did not know that you were being stationed to meet me in the way. And now, if it is evil in your eyes, let me return for myself."	*Then Balaam told the angel representing Yahweh, "I did not realize that you were standing in the road to confront me. Because of that, I did what was wrong. You seem to think that traveling with these men is wrong. If that is true, I will go back home."*

ULT **I have sinned, for I did not know that you {were} being stationed to meet me in the way**

UST I did not realize that you were standing in the road to confront me. Because of that, I did what was wrong

The word translated as **for** indicates that what follows is a reason for what came before. Use a connector in your language that makes it clear that what follows is a reason for what came before. Alternate translation: ["Because I did not know that you were being stationed to meet me in the way, I have sinned."]

Support Reference: Connect — Reason-and-Result Relationship

ULT **if {it is} evil in your eyes**

UST You seem to think that {traveling with these men} is wrong. If that is true

Balaam is using **in your eyes** as a common expression of the culture to mean "in your judgment" or "in your opinion." If this phrase does not have that meaning for your readers, you could use a comparable expression from your language that does have that meaning, or you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [if in your judgment {it is} evil]

Support Reference: Idiom

ULT **if {it is} evil in your eyes, let me return for myself**

UST You seem to think that {traveling with these men} is wrong. If that is true, I will go back home

Balaam is describing a possible situation in which he would return home if his going on this journey displeases the angel of Yahweh. Express this possible condition in a way that would be natural in your language. Alternate translation: [Suppose my going is evil in your eyes. Then let me return for myself]

Support Reference: Connect — Hypothetical Conditions

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Balaam	Balaam
angel	angel
Yahweh	Yahweh
sinned	I did what was wrong
know	I did … realize
evil	that {traveling with these men} is wrong
let me return	I will go back home

Numbers 22:35

ULT	UST
And the angel of Yahweh said to Balaam, "Go with the men, but only the word that I speak to you, it you shall speak." And Balaam went with the princes of Balak.	*The angel representing Yahweh replied, "You may travel with these men. However, you must say only what I tell you to say." So Balaam traveled on with the officials who served Balak.*

ULT **but only the word that I speak to you, it you shall speak**
UST However, you must say only what I tell you to say

If it would be more natural in your language, you may want to put the phrase **it you shall speak** with or before the phrase **the word that I speak to you**. Alternate translation: [but you shall speak only the word that I speak to you]
Support Reference: Information Structure

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
angel	angel
Yahweh	Yahweh
Balaam	replied
princes	officials

Numbers 22:36

ULT	UST
And Balak heard that Balaam came, and he went out to meet him to the city of Moab, which is on the border of Arnon, which is at the end of the border.	*When King Balak learned that Balaam was coming, he traveled to welcome him. He traveled to the town in Moab that is alongside the Arnon River, near the edge of his territory.*

ULT **And Balak heard that Balaam came**
UST When King Balak learned that Balaam was coming

The author is using the word translated as **And** to introduce a new event in the story. Use a word, phrase, or other method in your language that is natural for introducing a new event.
Support Reference: Introduction of a New Event

ULT **the city of Moab**
UST the town in Moab

Here, the phrase **the city of Moab** could be: (1) a reference to a specific city in Moab, which is identified by the following phrases. Alternate translation: [a specific city in Moab]; or (2) the name "Ir Moab." Alternate translation: [Ir Moab]
Support Reference: How to Translate Names

ULT **Arnon**
UST the Arnon River

The word **Arnon** is the name of a river.
Support Reference: How to Translate Names

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Balaam	Balaam
Moab	Moab

Numbers 22:37

ULT	UST
And Balak said to Balaam, "Sending, did I not send to you to call for you? Why did you not come to me? Am I truly not able to honor you?"	*When Balaam arrived, Balak told him, "I had people travel to you to ask you to visit me here! Why did you refuse to go with them at first? Surely you know that I can reward you well."*

> ULT **Sending, did I not send to you to call for you? Why did you not come to me? Am I truly not able to honor you**
>
> UST I had people travel to you to ask you to visit me here! Why did you refuse to go with them {at first}? Surely you know that I can reward you well

Balak is using the question form three times for emphasis, not to ask for information. In the first question, he stresses that he had indeed summoned Balaam; in the second, he rebukes Balaam for not coming sooner; and in the third, he asserts that he is certainly able to reward Balaam. If a speaker of your language would not use the question form for those purposes, you could translate these questions as statements or exclamations. Alternate translation: [I certainly sent to you to call for you! You should have come to me immediately! I am truly able to honor you!]

Support Reference: Rhetorical Question

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Balaam	him
call	to ask … to visit me here
truly	Surely
honor	reward you well

Numbers 22:38

ULT	UST
And Balaam said to Balak, "Behold, I have come to you. Now, being able, am I able to speak anything? The word that God puts in my mouth, it I will speak."	*Balaam replied, "Listen, I am here. But you need to know that I cannot say whatever I want. Instead, I can only say what God tells me to say."*

ULT **being able, am I able to speak anything**
UST that I cannot say whatever I want

Balaam is using the question form to stress that he cannot say whatever he wants, not to ask for information. If a speaker of your language would not use the question form for that purpose, you could translate this as a statement or as an exclamation. Alternate translation: [I am certainly not able to say anything on my own!]
Support Reference: Rhetorical Question

ULT **The word that God puts in my mouth**
UST what God tells me to say

Here Balaam is speaking as if the message that God wants him to speak were an object that God **puts** into his mouth. If this meaning would not be clear in your language, you could use a comparable expression or you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [The message that God gives me to say] or [The words that God wants me to say]
Support Reference: Metaphor

ULT **The word that God puts in my mouth, it I will speak**
UST Instead, I can only say what God tells me to say

If it would be more natural in your language, you may want to put the phrase it I will speak with or before the phrase The word that God puts in my mouth. Alternate translation: [I will speak only the word that God puts in my mouth]
Support Reference: Information Structure

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Balaam	Balaam
God	God

Numbers 22:39

ULT	UST
And Balaam went with Balak, and they came to Kiriath Huzoth.	*Then Balaam traveled with Balak to the town of Kiriath Huzoth.*

> ULT **to Kiriath Huzoth**
> UST the town of Kiriath Huzoth

The word **Kiriath Huzoth** is the name of a town.

Support Reference: How to Translate Names

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Balaam	Balaam

Numbers 22:40

ULT	UST
And Balak sacrificed cattle and sheep and sent to Balaam and to the princes who were with him.	*There, Balak offered sheep and oxen as sacrifices. He sent some of the meat to Balaam and to the officials who were with Balak.*

ULT and sent to Balaam

UST He sent {some of the meat} to Balaam

The author is leaving out some of the words that in many languages a sentence would need in order to be complete. You can supply these words from the context if that would be clearer in your language. Alternate translation: [and sent some of the meat to Balaam]

Support Reference: Ellipsis

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
sacrificed	sacrifices
cattle	oxen
sheep	sheep
Balaam	Balaam
princes	officials

Numbers 22:41

ULT	UST
And it happened in the morning that Balak took Balaam and brought him up to Bamoth Baal, and he saw from there the end of the people.	*The next morning Balak led Balaam up to the town of Bamoth Baal. From there, Balaam observed some of the Israelites at the edge of their campsite.*

ULT **And it happened in the morning**
UST The next morning

The author is using the phrase translated as **And it happened** to introduce a new event in the story. Use a word, phrase, or other method in your language that is natural for introducing a new event.
Support Reference: Introduction of a New Event

ULT **to Bamoth Baal**
UST the town of Bamoth Baal

Here, the words translated as **Bamoth Baal** could be: (1) a name for a place. Alternate translation: [to Bamoth Baal city]; or (2) a reference to the high places where people worshiped **Baal**. Alternate translation: [to the high places of Baal]
Support Reference: How to Translate Names

ULT **and he saw from there the end of the people**
UST From there, Balaam observed some of the Israelites at the edge of their campsite

The pronoun **he** refers to Balaam. It may be helpful to clarify this for your readers. Alternate translation: [and Balaam saw from there the end of the people]
Support Reference: Pronouns — When to Use Them

ULT **the end of the people**
UST some of the Israelites at the edge of their campsite

Here, the phrase **the end of the people** could refer to: (1) the nearest group of Israelites. In this case, Balaam saw only a few of the Israelites, the ones who were closest to him. Alternate translation: [the nearest edge of the people]; or (2) the farthest group of Israelites. In this case, Balaam saw all the Israelites, including the ones who were farthest from him. Alternate translation: [all the people, to their farthest edge]
Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Balaam	Balaam
Baal	Baal

Numbers 23

Numbers 23 Introduction

Numbers 23 Chapter Introduction

Structure and Formatting

In this chapter, Balaam pronounces two separate oracles that bless Israel. The first oracle focuses on how God has blessed Israel when Balak wants Balaam to curse Israel. The second oracle focuses on how God has acted for the Israelites and how strong the Israelites are.

1. Balaam gives his first message and blesses Israel (1–12)
2. Balaam gives his second message and explains that God's blessing cannot be reversed (13–26)
3. Balak takes Balaam to another place to try again (27–30)

Religious and Cultural Concepts in This Chapter

Oracles

The word translated "oracle" in verses 7 and 18 is often translated "proverb" or "parable" in other places. Balaam's speeches are too long to be considered proverbs. In this case, the word "oracle" may indicate that Balaam is speaking in paired lines (see the paragraph on "Parallelism" below) or perhaps that he has put together multiple statements that are like proverbs. Either way, it is clear that Balaam is speaking as a prophet when he delivers these oracles. Consider what word you might use to refer to poetic, prophetic speech.

Blessing and cursing

See the chapter introduction to Numbers 22 for more information on cursing. People in this culture believed that specific words, spoken by specific people, would have either good or bad effects. The words that led to good effects were blessings, and the words that led to bad effects were curses. In this chapter, Balak asks Balaam to curse the Israelites, but Balaam actually blesses them, as Yahweh commands him to do.

Different locations

After each of Balaam's oracles in this chapter, Balak requests that they move to a different location and try again. The author does not state why Balak thinks that a change in location will help Balaam curse the Israelites instead of bless them. He may have thought that a different perspective would change Balaam's mind. He may have thought that God only had power to control Balaam in certain places. Or he may have thought something else. In your translation, it should be clear that Balaam thinks that a change in location will be helpful, but it is recommended that you do not make explicit why Balak thinks the change in location will help.

Translation Issues in This Chapter

Parallelism

Hebrew poetry often expresses ideas through parallelism, where two or more lines say similar things using different words. This repetition creates emphasis and helps the reader understand the meaning more fully. Balaam's poetic oracles in this and the next chapter use parallelism frequently. When translating parallel lines, you may choose to combine them into a single statement, as the UST often does. Or, you may preserve both lines to reflect the poetic style of the original, connecting them with a word that shows repetition rather than addition. Your translation team should decide how to handle parallelism consistently throughout this chapter.

Numbers 23:1

ULT	UST
And Balaam said to Balak, "Build for me in this place seven altars, and prepare for me in this place seven bulls and seven rams."	*Then Balaam told King Balak, "Have people construct seven altars for me here. Then have people get seven bulls and seven rams ready for me here to sacrifice."*

ULT **Balak**
UST King Balak

Balak is the king of Moab. See how you translated this in Numbers 22:2.
Support Reference: How to Translate Names

ULT **and prepare for me in this {place} seven bulls and seven rams**
UST Then have people get seven bulls and seven rams ready for me here to sacrifice

The implication is that Balaam wants these bulls and rams sacrificed as burnt offerings on the altars he just asked Balak to build. You could include this information if that would be helpful to your readers. Alternate translation: [kill seven bulls and seven rams as a sacrifice]
Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Balaam	Balaam
altars	altars
bulls	bulls
rams	rams

Numbers 23:3

ULT	UST
And Balaam said to Balak, "Station yourself beside your burnt offering, and let me go. Perhaps Yahweh will encounter to meet me, and the word of what he makes me see, I will declare to you." And he went to a bare height.	*Then Balaam told Balak, "You stand here close to your wholly burned sacrifice. I will walk somewhere else. Hopefully Yahweh will make himself present to me. I will tell you whatever he shows me." Then Balaam walked to a hill with nothing on it.*

ULT **and the word of what he makes me see, I will declare to you**
UST I will tell you whatever he shows me

If it would be more natural in your language, you may want to put the information about **I will declare to you** before the information about **the word of what he makes me see**. Alternate translation: [I will declare to you the word of what he shows me]
Support Reference: Information Structure

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Balaam	Balaam
burnt offering	your wholly burned sacrifice
Yahweh	Yahweh

Numbers 23:4

ULT	UST
And God encountered Balaam, and he said to him, "I arranged the seven altars, and I made a bull and a ram go up on the altar."	*Then God made himself present to Balaam. Balaam told him, "I had people prepare seven altars. Then, I offered one bull and one ram on each altar."*

ULT **and he said to him**
UST Balaam told him

The pronoun **he** refers to Balaam, not to God. It may be helpful to clarify this for your readers. Alternate translation: [and Balaam said to God]

Support Reference: Pronouns — When to Use Them

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
God	God
Balaam	Balaam
altars	altars
bull	bull
ram	ram
altar	altar

Numbers 23:5

ULT	UST
And Yahweh put a word in the mouth of Balaam, and he said, "Return to Balak, and thus you shall speak."	*Then Yahweh told Balaam what to say. Then Yahweh said, "Go back to Balak. Tell him that message."*

ULT **And Yahweh put a word in the mouth of Balaam**
UST Then Yahweh told Balaam what to say

Here, **the mouth of Balaam** represents Balaam's ability to speak, and putting a word there means that Yahweh told Balaam what to say. If it would be helpful in your language, you could use an equivalent expression or plain language. Alternate translation: [And Yahweh gave Balaam a message to speak]

Support Reference: Metonymy

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Yahweh	Yahweh
Balaam	Balaam
Return	Go back

Numbers 23:6

ULT	UST
And he returned to him, and behold, being stationed beside his burnt offering, he and all the princes of Moab.	*So Balaam went back to Balak. He found Balak standing close to his wholly burned sacrifice. All the Moabite officials were with him.*

ULT **And he returned to him**
UST So Balaam went back to Balak

The pronoun **he** refers to Balaam, and the pronoun **him** refers to Balak. It may be helpful to clarify this for your readers. Alternate translation: [And Balaam returned to Balak]
Support Reference: Pronouns — When to Use Them

ULT **and behold**
UST He found

If the connection between this statement and the previous one is not clear, you may want to use a different connecting word to show how this statement relates to what comes before it. Alternate translation: [and there he saw]
Support Reference: Connecting Words and Phrases

ULT **being stationed beside his burnt offering**
UST Balak standing close to his wholly burned sacrifice

The pronoun **his** refers to Balak. It may be helpful to clarify this for your readers. Alternate translation: [being stationed beside Balak's burnt offering]
Support Reference: Pronouns — When to Use Them

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
burnt offering	his wholly burned sacrifice
princes	officials
Moab	Moabite

Numbers 23:7

ULT	UST
And he lifted up his oracle and said, "From Aram Balak has led me, the king of Moab from the mountains of the east: 'Come, curse Jacob for me, and come, denounce Israel.'	*Then Balaam began to speak his prophetic message: "King Balak, who rules Moab, brought me here from the hills to the east in the region of Aram. He had me travel here to call upon God to do bad things to the Israelite people.*

ULT **And he lifted up his oracle**
UST Then Balaam began to speak his prophetic message

The author is using **lifted up his oracle** as a common expression of the culture to mean that Balaam began to speak a prophetic message. If this phrase does not have that meaning for your readers, you could use a comparable expression from your language that does have that meaning, or you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [And he began to declare his prophecy]
Support Reference: Idiom

ULT **Come, curse Jacob for me, and come, denounce Israel**
UST He had me travel here to call upon God to do bad things to the Israelite people

If it would be clearer in your language, you could translate this so that there is not a quotation within a quotation. Alternate translation: [Telling me to come and curse Jacob for him and to come and denounce Israel]
Support Reference: Quotes within Quotes

ULT **Come, curse Jacob for me, and come, denounce Israel**
UST He had me travel here to call upon God to do bad things to the Israelite people

These two clauses mean basically the same thing. The second emphasizes the meaning of the first by repeating the same idea with different words. If it would be helpful to your readers, you could combine them and express the emphasis in another way. Alternate translation: [Come and utterly curse the people of Israel for me!]
Support Reference: Parallelism

ULT **Jacob … and come, denounce Israel**
UST He had me travel here to call upon God to do bad things to the Israelite people

The names **Jacob** and **Israel** represent the people who are descended from the man Jacob, who was also named Israel. If it would be helpful in your language, you could use an equivalent expression or plain language. Alternate translation: [The descendants of Jacob … the people of Israel]
Support Reference: Metonymy

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
king	who rules
Moab	Moab
curse	to call upon God to do bad things
Jacob	to the Israelite people
Israel	Israelite

Numbers 23:8

ULT	UST
What will I curse? God has not cursed. And what will I denounce? Yahweh has not denounced.	*I cannot call upon God to do bad things to these people! That is because Yahweh does not intend to do bad things to them.*

ULT **What will I curse? God has not cursed**

UST I cannot call upon God to do bad things {to these people}! That is because … does not intend to do bad things to them

Balaam is using the question form to emphasize that he cannot curse a people whom God has not cursed. If a speaker of your language would not use the question form for that purpose, you could translate this as a statement or as an exclamation. Alternate translation: [I will not curse anyone, for God has not cursed]

Support Reference: Rhetorical Question

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
God	God
Yahweh	Yahweh

Numbers 23:9

ULT	UST
For from a head of rocks I see him, and from hills I look at him. Behold, a people dwells alone, and among the nations it does not reckon itself.	*I can see them from here, from the top of this hilly and rocky area. I see that they separate themselves from all other people groups.*

ULT **For**
UST I can see them from here

The word translated as **For** indicates that what follows is a reason for what came before. Use a connector in your language that makes it clear that what follows is a reason for what came before. Alternate translation: [This is because]
Support Reference: Connect — Reason-and-Result Relationship

ULT **Behold, a people dwells alone**
UST I see that they separate themselves

Balaam is speaking of Israel's life as a distinct nation as if the people **dwells alone**, living apart from all other peoples. If this meaning would not be clear in your language, you could use a comparable expression or you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [Behold, a people lives as a nation set apart]
Support Reference: Metaphor

ULT **Behold**
UST I see that

If the connection between this statement and the previous one is not clear, you may want to use a different connecting word to show how this statement relates to what comes before it. Alternate translation: [Indeed]
Support Reference: Connecting Words and Phrases

ULT **it does not reckon itself**
UST separate themselves

Here, the word translated as **it does not reckon itself** could indicate: (1) what the Israelites think about themselves. Alternate translation: [it does not consider itself]; or (2) what other people think about the Israelites. Alternate translation: [it is reckoned] or [people do not reckon it]
Support Reference: Active or Passive

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
nations	from all other people groups

Numbers 23:10

ULT	UST
Who has counted the dust of Jacob, or a number, the fourth of Israel? May my soul die a death of upright ones, and may my end be like his!"	*There are too many Israelites to count, even if someone tried to count just one quarter of them! I wish that, when I die, I will be like one of these people who have done what is right."*

ULT **Who has counted the dust of Jacob, or a number, the fourth of Israel**
UST There are too many Israelites to count, even if someone tried to count just one quarter of them

Balaam is using the question form to emphasize that no one is able to count the people of Israel, because they are so numerous. If a speaker of your language would not use the question form for that purpose, you could translate this as a statement or as an exclamation. Alternate translation: [No one can count the dust of Jacob, or number even a fourth of Israel!]
Support Reference: Rhetorical Question

ULT **the dust of Jacob**
UST Israelites

Balaam is speaking of the descendants of Jacob as if they were **the dust of Jacob**, which is too plentiful to count. If this meaning would not be clear in your language, you could use a comparable expression or you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [the descendants of Jacob, as numerous as dust]
Support Reference: Metaphor

ULT **or a number, the fourth of Israel**
UST even if someone tried to count just one quarter of them

Balaam is leaving out some of the words that in many languages a sentence would need in order to be complete. You can supply these words from the context if that would be clearer in your language. Alternate translation: [or who has counted a number, the fourth of Israel]
Support Reference: Ellipsis

ULT **or a number, the fourth of Israel**
UST even if someone tried to count just one quarter of them

The word translated as **a number** is a translation of the standard written Hebrew text. You may want to follow an alternative reading from the ancient Greek translation, which uses the verbal form "has numbered." Alternate translation: [or who has numbered the fourth of Israel]
Support Reference: Alternative Readings

ULT **the fourth of Israel**
UST just one quarter of them

Balaam is using this possessive form to mean a fourth part of the people of Israel. If a speaker of your language would not use the possessive form for this, you could express this idea in another way. Alternate translation: [a fourth of the people of Israel]
Support Reference: Possession

ULT **the fourth of Israel**
UST just one quarter of them

The phrase **the fourth of Israel** is a translation of the standard written Hebrew text. You may want to follow an alternative reading that some scholars have suggested. Alternate translation: [the dust clouds of Israel]
Support Reference: Alternative Readings

ULT **May my soul die a death of upright ones**
UST I wish that, when I die, I will be like one of these people who have done what is right

Balaam is using a construction in which a verb and its object come from the same root. You may be able to use the same construction in your language to express the meaning here. Alternatively, your language may have another way of saying this. Alternate translation: [May I die the same death that upright people die]
Support Reference: Poetry

ULT **upright ones**
UST I will be like one of these people who have done what is right

Balaam is using the adjective **upright** as a noun to mean a certain kind of person. Your language may use adjectives in the same way. If not, you can translate this adjective with an equivalent phrase. Alternate translation: [people who are upright]
Support Reference: Nominal Adjectives

ULT **and may my end be like his**
UST I wish that, when I die, I will be like one of these people who have done what is right

The point of this comparison is that just as the upright come to a peaceful and blessed **end**, so Balaam wishes his own end to be. If it would be helpful in your language, you could make this point explicitly. Alternate translation: [and may my end be as peaceful and blessed as theirs]
Support Reference: Simile

ULT **my end**
UST I wish that, when I die

If your language does not use an abstract noun for the idea of **end**, you could express the same idea in another way. Alternate translation: [the way I finish my life]
Support Reference: Abstract Nouns

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Jacob	Israelites
Israel	them
upright ones	I will be like one of these people who have done what is right

Numbers 23:11

ULT	UST
And Balak said to Balaam, "What have you done to me? I brought you to curse my enemies, and behold, blessing, you have blessed!"	*Then Balak told Balaam, "You have acted against me! I had you come here to call on God to do bad things to those who oppose me. Instead, you have called on God to do good things to them!"*

ULT **What have you done to me**
UST You have acted against me

Balak is using the question form to rebuke Balaam and to express his frustration, not to ask for information. If a speaker of your language would not use the question form for that purpose, you could translate this as a statement or as an exclamation. Alternate translation: [Look what you have done to me!]
Support Reference: Rhetorical Question

ULT **I brought you to curse my enemies**
UST I had you come here to call on God to do bad things to those who oppose me

The word **to** marks **curse my enemies** as the purpose for which Balak **brought** Balaam. Use a connector in your language that makes it clear that this is the purpose.
Support Reference: Connect — Goal (Purpose) Relationship

ULT **blessing, you have blessed**
UST Instead, you have called on God to do good things to them

Balak is repeating forms of the verb **blessed** in order to intensify his expression of the idea that it conveys. If your language can repeat words for intensification, it would be appropriate to do that here in your translation. If not, your language may have another way of expressing the intensification. Alternate translation: [you have completely blessed them]
Support Reference: Reduplication

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Balaam	Balaam
curse	to call on God to do bad things
enemies	to those who oppose me
blessing	Instead, you have called on God to do good things to them
blessed	Instead, you have called on God to do good things to them

Numbers 23:12

ULT	UST
And he answered and said, "Is it not what Yahweh puts in my mouth, it I shall keep to speak?"	*Balaam replied, "I must be careful to say only what Yahweh tells me to say!"*

ULT **And he answered and said**
UST Balaam replied

The terms **answered and said** introduces a direct quotation. In your translation, use a natural way of introducing direct quotations in your language. It may not be necessary to represent this term explicitly.
Support Reference: Quotations and Quote Margins

ULT **Is it not what Yahweh puts in my mouth, it I shall keep to speak**
UST I must be careful to say only what Yahweh tells me to say

Balaam is using the question form to emphasize that he must say only what Yahweh tells him to say. If a speaker of your language would not use the question form for that purpose, you could translate this as a statement or as an exclamation. Alternate translation: [I must be sure to speak only what Yahweh puts in my mouth!]
Support Reference: Rhetorical Question

ULT **Yahweh puts in my mouth**
UST Yahweh tells me to say

The phrase **puts in my mouth** represents what Yahweh tells Balaam to say. If it would be helpful in your language, you could use an equivalent expression or plain language. Alternate translation: [Yahweh commands me to speak]
Support Reference: Metonymy

ULT **it I shall keep to speak**
UST I must be careful to say

If it would be more natural in your language, you may want to put the information about Balaam speaking before the information about **it**. Alternate translation: [Shall I not be careful to speak what Yahweh puts in my mouth?]
Support Reference: Information Structure

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Yahweh	Yahweh
I shall keep	I must be careful

Numbers 23:13

ULT	UST
And Balak said to him, "Please come with me to another place from which you will see him. Only his end you will see, and all of him you will not see. And curse him for me from there."	*After that, King Balak told Balaam, "I ask that you travel with me to a different place. You cannot see all the Israelites from there. You can see just the edge of their campsite. From there you must call on God to do bad things to them for my sake."*

ULT **you will see him. Only his end you will see, and all of him you will not see. And curse him for me**

UST You cannot see all the Israelites from there. You can see just the edge of their campsite … you must call on God to do bad things to them for my sake

The pronoun **him** refers to the people of Israel. It may be helpful to clarify this for your readers. Alternate translation: [you will see the people of Israel. Only their edge you will see, and all of them you will not see. And curse them for me]

Support Reference: Pronouns — When to Use Them

ULT **Only his end you will see, and all of him you will not see**

UST You cannot see all the Israelites … You can see just the edge of their campsite

If it would be more natural in your language, you may want to put the information about **all of him you will not see** before the information about **Only his end you will see**. Alternate translation: [All of him you will not see, and only his end you will see]

Support Reference: Information Structure

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
curse	you must call on God to do bad things to them

Numbers 23:14

ULT	UST
And he took him to the field of Zophim, to the head of the Pisgah. And he built seven altars and made a bull and a ram go up on the altar.	*So Balak took Balaam to part of the open country that people called Zophim. It was at the top of the hilly area that people called Pisgah. There Balak had people construct seven altars. He offered one bull and one ram on each altar.*

ULT **And he took him**

UST So Balak took Balaam

The pronoun **he** refers to Balak, and the pronoun **him** refers to Balaam. It may be helpful to clarify this for your readers. Alternate translation: [And Balak took Balaam]

Support Reference: Pronouns — When to Use Them

ULT **the head of the Pisgah**

UST the top of the hilly area {that people called} Pisgah

The author is speaking of the top of the Pisgah as if it were a living thing that could have a **head**. If it would be helpful in your language, you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [to the top of the Pisgah]

Support Reference: Personification

ULT **to the field of Zophim**

UST to part of the open country {that people called} Zophim

The word translated as **Zophim** could be: (1) a proper name. Alternate translation: [to Zophim field]; or (2) the word for “watchmen.” In this case, the field was used for guarding or watching something. Alternate translation: [to the field of watchmen] or [to Watchmen Field]

Support Reference: How to Translate Names

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
altars	altars
bull	bull
ram	ram
altar	altar

Numbers 23:16

ULT	UST
And Yahweh encountered Balaam and put a word in his mouth, and he said, "Return to Balak, and thus you shall speak."	*Then Yahweh made himself present to Balaam and told him what to say. Then Yahweh said, "Go back to Balak. Tell him that message."*

ULT **and put a word in his mouth**
UST and told him what to say

Putting a word **in his mouth** represents Yahweh telling Balaam what to say. If it would be helpful in your language, you could use an equivalent expression or plain language. Alternate translation: [and told him what he should say]
Support Reference: Metonymy

ULT **and he said**
UST Then Yahweh said

The pronoun **he** refers to Yahweh. It may be helpful to clarify this for your readers. Alternate translation: [and Yahweh said]
Support Reference: Pronouns — When to Use Them

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Yahweh	Yahweh
Balaam	Balaam
Return	Go back

Numbers 23:17

ULT	UST
And he came to him, and behold him being stationed beside his burnt offering, and the princes of Moab with him. And Balak said to him, "What has Yahweh spoken?"	*So Balaam went back to Balak. He found Balak standing close to his wholly burned sacrifice. The Moabite officials were with him. Balak asked him, "What did Yahweh say?"*

ULT **And he came to him**
UST So Balaam went back to Balak

The pronoun **he** refers to Balaam, and the pronoun **him** refers to Balak. It may be helpful to clarify this for your readers. Alternate translation: [And Balaam came to Balak]
Support Reference: Pronouns — When to Use Them

ULT **and behold him**
UST He found Balak

If the connection between this statement and the previous one is not clear, you may want to use a different connecting word to show how this statement relates to what comes before it. Alternate translation: [where he was]
Support Reference: Connecting Words and Phrases

ULT **and behold him being stationed beside his burnt offering**
UST He found Balak standing close to his wholly burned sacrifice

The pronouns **him** and **his** refer to Balak. It may be helpful to clarify this for your readers. Alternate translation: [and behold Balak being stationed beside his burnt offering]
Support Reference: Pronouns — When to Use Them

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
burnt offering	his wholly burned sacrifice
princes	officials
Moab	Moabite
Yahweh	Yahweh

Numbers 23:18

ULT	UST
And he lifted up his oracle and said, "Rise, Balak, and hear! Give ear unto me, son of him, Zippor!	*Then Balaam began to speak his prophetic message: "King Balak, Zippor's son, pay attention to what I say!*

> ULT **And he lifted up his oracle**
> UST Then Balaam began … his prophetic message

The author is using **lifted up his oracle** as a common expression of the culture to mean that Balaam began to speak a prophetic message. If this phrase does not have that meaning for your readers, you could use a comparable expression from your language that does have that meaning, or you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [And he began his prophecy]

Support Reference: Idiom

Numbers 23:19

ULT	UST
God is not a man that he lies, or a son of a man that he changes his mind. Has he said and will not do? And has he spoken and will not raise up?	*God is not a human. So, he does not speak falsely, like humans do. He always does whatever he has said he will do.*

ULT **God {is} not a man that he lies, or a son of a man**
UST God is not a human. So, he does not speak falsely, like humans do

Here the masculine terms **man** and **son of a man** have a generic sense that includes any human being, both men and women. If it would be helpful to your readers, you could use language in your translation that is clearly inclusive of both men and women. Alternate translation: [God is not a human being, that he should lie, or a mortal]
Support Reference: When Masculine Words Include Women

ULT **or a son of a man that he changes his mind**
UST is … a human. So, he does not speak falsely, like humans do

Balaam is leaving out some of the words that in many languages a sentence would need in order to be complete. You can supply these words from the context if that would be clearer in your language. Alternate translation: [and God is not a son of a man, that he should change his mind]
Support Reference: Ellipsis

ULT **Has he said and will not do**
UST He always does whatever he has said he will do

Balaam is leaving out some of the words that in many languages a sentence would need in order to be complete. You can supply these words from the context if that would be clearer in your language. Alternate translation: [Has he said he would do something and then not done it]
Support Reference: Ellipsis

ULT **Has he said and will not do? And has he spoken and will not raise up**
UST He always does whatever he has said he will do

Balaam is using the question form to emphasize that God always does what he says he will do. If a speaker of your language would not use the question form for that purpose, you could translate this as a statement or as an exclamation. Alternate translation: [He has said, and he will surely do it; he has spoken, and he will surely fulfill it!]
Support Reference: Rhetorical Question

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
God	God
lies	So, he does not speak falsely, like humans do
mind	So, he does not speak falsely, like humans do

Numbers 23:20

ULT	UST
Behold, to bless I have taken, and he has blessed, and I cannot return it.	*Listen! God told me to call on him to do good things for the Israelites. He intends to do good things for them, and I cannot change that.*

ULT **Behold, to bless I have taken**
UST Listen! God told me to call on him to do good things for the Israelites

Balaam is speaking of receiving a command to bless Israel as if it were an object that he had physically **taken**. If this meaning would not be clear in your language, you could use a comparable expression or you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [Behold, I have received a command to bless]
Support Reference: Metaphor

ULT **to bless I have taken**
UST God told me to call on him to do good things for the Israelites

If it would be more natural in your language, you may want to put the information about Balaam's receiving the command before the information about blessing. Alternate translation: [I have received the command to bless]
Support Reference: Information Structure

ULT **and he has blessed, and I cannot return it**
UST He intends to do good things {for them}, and I cannot change that

The pronoun **he** refers to God, and the pronoun **it** refers to the blessing. It may be helpful to clarify this for your readers. Alternate translation: [and God has blessed, and I cannot return the blessing]
Support Reference: Pronouns — When to Use Them

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
bless	to call on him to do good things for the Israelites
blessed	He intends to do good things for them
and I … return it	I … change that

Numbers 23:21

ULT	UST
He has not looked at iniquity in Jacob, and he has not seen trouble in Israel. Yahweh his God is with him, and the shout of a king is in him.	*Nothing bad or unfortunate will happen to the Israelites. Yahweh their God rules over them, and they rejoice about that.*

ULT **He has not looked at iniquity in Jacob, and he has not seen trouble in Israel**
UST Nothing bad or unfortunate will happen to the Israelites

Here, Balaam might mean that: (1) there will not be any of the results that come from **iniquity** and **trouble**. Alternate translation: [He has not looked at the results of iniquity in Jacob, and he has not seen the outcome of trouble in Israel]; or (2) the Israelites have not done any **iniquity** or **trouble**. Alternate translation: [He has not looked at Jacob doing iniquity, and he has not seen Israel making trouble]
Support Reference: Metonymy

ULT **He has not looked at … and he has not seen**
UST Nothing … will happen

Here, the pronouns **He** and **he** could refer to: (1) any person who observes the Israelites. Alternate translation: [No one has looked at … and no one has seen]; or (2) God. Alternate translation: [God has not looked at … and he has not seen]
Support Reference: Pronouns — When to Use Them

ULT **He has not looked at iniquity in Jacob, and he has not seen trouble in Israel**
UST Nothing bad or unfortunate will happen to the Israelites

Here, **looked at** and **seen** represent God noticing wrongdoing in order to act against it, so Balaam means that God finds no fault to punish among the people of Israel. If it would be helpful in your language, you could use an equivalent expression or plain language. Alternate translation: [He has found no fault to punish in Jacob, and he has found no wrong to act against in Israel]
Support Reference: Metonymy

ULT **iniquity**
UST bad

If your language does not use an abstract noun for the idea of **iniquity**, you could express the same idea in another way. Alternate translation: [anything wicked]
Support Reference: Abstract Nouns

ULT **trouble**
UST or unfortunate

If your language does not use an abstract noun for the idea of **trouble**, you could express the same idea in another way. Alternate translation: [anything troubling]
Support Reference: Abstract Nouns

ULT **Yahweh his God**
UST Yahweh their God

The possessive form **his God** describes the relationship between Yahweh and the people of Israel: Yahweh is the God whom they worship and who watches over them. If a speaker of your language would not use the possessive form for this, you could express this idea in another way. Alternate translation: [Yahweh, the God whom they worship]
Support Reference: Possession

ULT **and the shout of a king**
UST rules over them, and they rejoice about that

Here, the word **shout** could refer to: (1) a shout of joy for the king. Alternate translation: [and the shout of joy for a king]; or (2) a battle-cry uttered by the king, indicating the king's victory. Alternate translation: [and the battle-cry of a king in victory]
Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
iniquity	bad
Jacob	to the Israelites
trouble	or unfortunate
Israel	Israelites
Yahweh	Yahweh
God	God
king	rules over them

Numbers 23:22

ULT	UST
God is bringing them out from Egypt; as the horns of a wild ox for him.	*God led them out of Egypt. God is as strong as any wild ox.*

ULT **as the horns of a wild ox for him**
UST God is as strong as any wild ox

The point of this comparison is that just as **the horns of a wild ox** give it great power, so God gives the people of Israel great strength. If it would be helpful in your language, you could make this point explicitly. Alternate translation: [giving them strength like the powerful horns of a wild ox]
Support Reference: Simile

ULT **as the horns of a wild ox for him**
UST God is as strong as any wild ox

Here, the pronoun **him** could refer to: (1) God. In this case, it means God is like the ox. Alternate translation: [he is like the horns of a wild ox]; or (2) the Israelites. In this case, it means the Israelites are like the ox. Alternate translation: [they are like the horns of a wild ox]
Support Reference: Pronouns — When to Use Them

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
God	God
Egypt	Egypt
horns	as strong as
ox	ox

Numbers 23:23

ULT	UST
For there is no omen against Jacob, and no divination against Israel. According to the time it will be said to Jacob and to Israel, 'What has God done!'	*In fact, no one can harm the Israelites by using magic or curses. Right now, people will say about the Israelites, 'Look at the amazing things that God has done!'*

ULT **there is no omen against Jacob, and no divination against Israel**
UST no one can harm the Israelites by using magic or curses

These two clauses mean basically the same thing. The second emphasizes the meaning of the first by repeating the same idea with different words. If it would be helpful to your readers, you could combine them and express the emphasis in another way. Alternate translation: [there is certainly no divination of any kind against Israel]
Support Reference: Parallelism

ULT **there is no omen against Jacob**
UST no one can harm the Israelites by using magic

If your language does not use an abstract noun for the idea of **omen**, you could express the same idea in another way. Alternate translation: [no one can look for signs to predict harm against Jacob]
Support Reference: Abstract Nouns

ULT **divination**
UST or curses

If your language does not use an abstract noun for the idea of **divination**, you could express the same idea in another way. Alternate translation: [words spoken by diviners]
Support Reference: Abstract Nouns

ULT **it will be said to Jacob and to Israel**
UST people will say about the Israelites

The expression **it will be said** is a passive verbal form. If it would be unnatural to use that form, you could express the idea in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: [people will say to Jacob and to Israel]
Support Reference: Active or Passive

ULT **it will be said to Jacob and to Israel, 'What has God done**
UST people will say about the Israelites, 'Look at the amazing things that God has done

If it would be clearer in your language, you could translate this so that there is not a quotation within a quotation. Alternate translation: [it will be said to Jacob and Israel that God has done amazing things]
Support Reference: Quotes within Quotes

> ULT **What has God done**
> UST Look at the amazing things that God has done

The people are using a phrase that expresses a strong feeling of wonder at what God has done for the people of Israel. There may be an equivalent word or phrase in your language that you can use in your translation to convey this feeling. Alternate translation: [Look at the great things that God has accomplished]

Support Reference: Exclamations

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Jacob	can harm the Israelites
divination	or curses
Israel	Israelites
time	Right now
Jacob	about the Israelites
Israel	Israelites
God	God

Numbers 23:24

ULT	UST
Behold, a people rises up like a lioness, and like a lion it lifts itself up. It will not lie down until it eats prey and drinks blood of slain ones."	*Listen! This people group is powerful, like a pouncing lion. As a lion does not stop hunting until it catches something to eat, so they will not stop fighting until they completely defeat their enemies."*

ULT **a people rises up like a lioness, and like a lion it lifts itself up**

UST This people group is powerful, like a pouncing lion

The point of this comparison is that just as a **lioness** and a **lion** rise up with great power, so the people of Israel rise up in strength against their enemies. If it would be helpful in your language, you could make this point explicitly. Alternate translation: [a people rises up as powerfully as a lioness, and lifts itself up in strength like a lion]

Support Reference: Simile

ULT **It will not lie down until it eats prey and drinks blood of slain ones**

UST As a lion does not stop hunting until it catches something to eat, so they will not stop fighting until they completely defeat their enemies

Balaam speaks of the people of Israel as if they were a lion that **will not lie down until it eats prey and drinks blood of slain ones**, meaning that Israel will not stop fighting until it has completely defeated its enemies. If this meaning would not be clear in your language, you could use a comparable expression or you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [The people of Israel will not rest until they have completely defeated their enemies]

Support Reference: Metaphor

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
lioness	lion
lion	lion
it eats	it catches something to eat … they completely defeat their enemies
prey	it catches something to eat … they completely defeat their enemies
slain	it catches something to eat … they completely defeat their enemies

Numbers 23:25

ULT	UST
And Balak said to Balaam, "Both cursing, you shall not curse him, and blessing, you shall not bless him!"	*Then Balak told Balaam, "I see that you are not calling on God to do bad things to the Israelites. You should be silent instead of calling on God to do good things to them!"*

> ULT **Both cursing, you shall not curse him, and blessing, you shall not bless him**
> UST I see that you are not calling on God to do bad things to the Israelites. {You should be silent} instead of calling on God to do good things to them

Balak is repeating forms of the verbs **curse** and **bless** in order to intensify his expression of the ideas that they convey. If your language can repeat words for intensification, it would be appropriate to do that here in your translation. If not, your language may have another way of expressing the intensification. Alternate translation: [You shall certainly not curse him, and you shall certainly not bless him]

Support Reference: Reduplication

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Balaam	Balaam
cursing	I see that you are … calling on God to do bad things to the Israelites
curse	I see that you are … calling on God to do bad things to the Israelites
blessing	calling on God to do good things to them
bless	calling on God to do good things to them

Numbers 23:26

ULT	UST
And Balaam answered and said to Balak, "Did I not speak to you, saying, 'All that Yahweh speaks, it I must do'?"	*Balaam replied, "I already told you that I must do whatever Yahweh tells me to do!"*

ULT **And Balaam answered and said to Balak**
UST Balaam replied

Balaam **answered and said to Balak** using two speech verbs together, which was a natural way to introduce direct speech in the original language. In your translation, use a natural way of indicating direct quotations in your language.
Support Reference: Quotations and Quote Margins

ULT **Did I not speak to you, saying, 'All that Yahweh speaks, it I must do**
UST I already told you that I must do whatever Yahweh tells me to do

Balaam is using the question form to remind Balak that he had already warned him about this. If a speaker of your language would not use the question form for that purpose, you could translate this as a statement or as an exclamation. Alternate translation: [I certainly spoke to you, saying, 'All that Yahweh speaks, it I must do.']
Support Reference: Rhetorical Question

ULT **saying, 'All that Yahweh speaks, it I must do**
UST that I must do whatever Yahweh tells me to do

If it would be clearer in your language, you could translate this so that there is not a quotation within a quotation. Alternate translation: [Did I not speak to you that all that Yahweh speaks, it I must do]
Support Reference: Quotes within Quotes

ULT **All that Yahweh speaks, it I must do**
UST I must do whatever Yahweh tells me to do

If it would be more natural in your language, you may want to put the information about what Balaam must do before the information about who determines it. Alternate translation: [I must do everything that Yahweh speaks]
Support Reference: Information Structure

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Balaam	Balaam
Yahweh	Yahweh

Numbers 23:27

ULT	UST
And Balak said to Balaam, "Come, please, let me take you to another place. Perhaps it will be right in the eyes of God, and you will curse him for me from there."	*Then Balak told Balaam, "I ask that you travel with me to a different place. Maybe in that place God will consider it acceptable for you to call on him to do bad things to the Israelites for my sake."*

ULT **Come, please**
UST I ask that you travel with me

If the connection between this statement and the previous one is not clear, you may want to use a different connecting word to show how this statement relates to what comes before it. Alternate translation: [Even so, please come]
Support Reference: Connecting Words and Phrases

ULT **it will be right in the eyes of God**
UST God will consider it acceptable

Balak is using the phrase **in the eyes of God** as a common expression of the culture to mean "in the judgment of God" or "according to what pleases God." If this phrase does not have that meaning for your readers, you could use a comparable expression from your language that does have that meaning, or you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [it will please God] or [God will judge it to be right]
Support Reference: Idiom

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Balaam	Balaam
please	I ask that
right	will consider it acceptable
God	God
curse	for you to call on him to do bad things to the Israelites

Numbers 23:28

ULT	UST
And Balak took Balaam to the head of the Peor, the one looking down upon the face of the wasteland.	*So Balak had Balaam travel with him to the top of the hilly area that people called Peor. From there, people could look down into the desolate area north of the Dead Sea.*

ULT **to the head of the Peor**
UST to the top of the hilly area {that people called} Peor

The author is speaking of **the Peor** as if it were a living thing that could have a **head**. If it would be helpful in your language, you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [to the top of the Peor]
Support Reference: Personification

ULT **the face of the wasteland**
UST into the desolate area north of the Dead Sea

Here, **the face of** represents the surface of the wasteland that could be seen from the mountain peak. If it would be helpful in your language, you could use an equivalent expression or plain language. Alternate translation: [the surface of the wasteland]
Support Reference: Personification

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Balaam	Balaam
Peor	Peor
wasteland	the desolate area north of the Dead Sea

Numbers 24

Numbers 24 Introduction

Numbers 24 Chapter Introduction

Structure and Formatting

In this chapter, Balaam pronounces two more oracles that bless Israel. The first oracle focuses on how prosperous and powerful Israel will be. The second oracle focuses on a future leader of the Israelites. Finally, Balaam gives three short oracles about other nearby nations.

1. Balaam gives his third oracle, describing Israel's future prosperity and strength (1–14)
2. Balaam gives his fourth oracle, announcing a future ruler who will defeat Israel's enemies (15–19)
3. Balaam gives three short oracles about other nations and then leaves (20–25)

Religious and Cultural Concepts in This Chapter

Oracles

The word translated "oracle" in verses 3, 15, 20, 21, and 23 is often translated "proverb" or "parable" in other places. Balaam's speeches are usually too long to be considered proverbs. In this case, the word "oracle" may indicate that Balaam is speaking in paired lines (see the paragraph on "Parallelism" below) or perhaps that he has put together multiple statements that are like proverbs. Either way, it is clear that Balaam is speaking as a prophet when he delivers these oracles. Consider what word you might use to refer to poetic, prophetic speech.

Blessing and cursing

See the chapter introduction to Numbers 21 for more information on cursing. People in this culture believed that specific words, spoken by specific people, would have either good or bad effects. The words that led to good effects were blessings, and the words that led to bad effects were curses. In this chapter, Balak wants Balaam to curse the Israelites, but Balaam actually blesses them, as Yahweh commands him to do.

A prophecy about the Messiah?

Balaam's final oracle (24:15–19) seems to refer to a specific person who will be a special ruler of Israel. Scholars debate whether this specific person is David, a future Messiah, or both. The oracle itself is not totally clear about who this person will be and what this person will do. It is recommended that your translation does not make explicit whether some earlier ruler, the Messiah, or both are the subject of the oracle.

Translation Issues in This Chapter

Parallelism

Hebrew poetry often expresses ideas through parallelism, where two or more lines say similar things using different words. This repetition creates emphasis and helps the reader understand the meaning more fully. Balaam's poetic oracles in this and the previous chapter use parallelism frequently. When translating parallel lines, you may choose to combine them into a single statement, as the UST often does. Or, you may preserve both lines to reflect the poetic style of the original, connecting them with a word that shows repetition rather than addition. Your translation team should decide how to handle parallelism consistently throughout this chapter.

Quotes in quotes

In 24:11, 13, there are quotes inside quotes. Consider how your language indicates that a quote contains a quote. The UST models how to express the idea with only one level of quotations.

Numbers 24:1

ULT	UST
And Balaam saw that it was good in the eyes of Yahweh to bless Israel, and he did not go as time by time to meet omens, and he set his face to the wilderness.	*Balaam now realized that Yahweh intended to do good things to the Israelites. So, he did not go somewhere else to find out what God wished, as he had previously. Instead, he stood facing the nearby desolate area.*

ULT **And Balaam saw**
UST Balaam now realized

The author is using the word translated as **And** to introduce a new event in the story. Use a word, phrase, or other method in your language that is natural for introducing a new event.
Support Reference: Introduction of a New Event

ULT **it was good in the eyes of Yahweh**
UST Yahweh intended

The author is using **in the eyes of Yahweh** as a common expression of the culture to mean "in the judgment of Yahweh" or "according to what Yahweh approved." If this phrase does not have that meaning for your readers, you could use a comparable expression from your language that does have that meaning, or you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [Yahweh was pleased]
Support Reference: Idiom

ULT **as time by time**
UST as he had previously

The author is using **as time by time** as a common expression of the culture to mean "as he had done on previous occasions." If this phrase does not have that meaning for your readers, you could use a comparable expression from your language that does have that meaning, or you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [as he had done on previous occasions]
Support Reference: Idiom

ULT **omens**
UST to find out what God wished

If your language does not use an abstract noun for the idea of **omens**, you could express the same idea in another way. Alternate translation: [what the signs would tell him]
Support Reference: Abstract Nouns

ULT **and he set his face to the wilderness**
UST Instead, he stood facing the {nearby} desolate area

The author is using **he set his face to the wilderness** as a common expression of the culture to mean that Balaam turned and looked toward the wilderness. If this phrase does not have that meaning for your readers, you could use a comparable expression from your language that does have that meaning, or you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [and he turned and looked toward the wilderness]
Support Reference: Idiom

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Balaam	Balaam
good	intended
Yahweh	Yahweh
bless	to do good things to
Israel	Israelites
wilderness	the {nearby} desolate area

Numbers 24:2

ULT	UST
And Balaam lifted up his eyes and saw Israel dwelling according to its tribes, and the Spirit of God was upon him.	*Balaam looked at the Israelite people. All the people from each tribe had set up their tents together in groups. Then God's Spirit influenced Balaam.*

ULT **And Balaam lifted up his eyes**
UST Balaam looked at

The author is using **lifted up his eyes** as a common expression of the culture to mean that Balaam looked up and gazed ahead of himself. If this phrase does not have that meaning for your readers, you could use a comparable expression from your language that does have that meaning, or you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [And Balaam looked up]

Support Reference: Idiom

ULT **upon him**
UST Then … influenced Balaam

The pronoun **him** refers to Balaam. It may be helpful to clarify this for your readers. Alternate translation: [upon Balaam]

Support Reference: Pronouns — When to Use Them

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Balaam	Balaam
Israel	Israelite
tribes	tribe
Spirit	Spirit
God	God's

Numbers 24:3

ULT	UST
And he lifted up his oracle and said, "The declaration of Balaam, the son of him, Beor, and the declaration of the man, opened of the eye,	*He began to speak his prophetic message: "I, Balaam, Beor's son, am speaking. God has enabled me to know what to say.*

ULT **And he lifted up his oracle and said**
UST He began to speak his prophetic message

The author is using the phrase **And he lifted up his oracle and said** to introduce a direct quotation. In your translation, use a natural way of introducing direct quotations in your language.
Support Reference: Quotations and Quote Margins

ULT **The declaration of Balaam**
UST I, Balaam … am speaking

Balaam is using the possessive form to mean the message that he himself is declaring. If a speaker of your language would not use the possessive form for this, you could express this idea in another way. Alternate translation: [Balaam declares this]
Support Reference: Possession

ULT **the son of him, Beor**
UST Beor's son

Balaam is using the possessive form to mean that he is the son whose father is Beor. If a speaker of your language would not use the possessive form for this, you could express this idea in another way. Alternate translation: [the son whose father is Beor]
Support Reference: Possession

ULT **and the declaration of the man, opened of the eye**
UST God has enabled me to know what to say

Balaam is using the possessive form to mean the message spoken by the man, that is, by Balaam himself. If a speaker of your language would not use the possessive form for this, you could express this idea in another way. Alternate translation: [and the message that the man whose eye is opened speaks]
Support Reference: Possession

ULT **opened of the eye**
UST God has enabled me to know

The word translated as **opened** represents the written Hebrew text. However, some scholars have proposed that by changing the vowels of this word it would say "closed." In this case, the meaning would be that Balaam's eyes had previously been closed. You may want to follow the major translation in your area. Alternate translation: [having been closed of the eye]
Support Reference: Alternative Readings

> ULT **opened of the eye**
> UST God has enabled me to know

Here Balaam is speaking of his ability to perceive what God reveals as if it were physical sight, describing himself as **opened of the eye**. If this meaning would not be clear in your language, you could use a comparable expression or you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [who perceives clearly]

Support Reference: Metaphor

> ULT **opened of the eye**
> UST God has enabled me to know

The expression **opened of the eye** is a passive verbal form. If it would be unnatural to use that form, you could express the idea in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: [whose eye God has opened]

Support Reference: Active or Passive

> ULT **The declaration of Balaam, the son of him, Beor, and the declaration of the man, opened of the eye**
> UST I, Balaam, Beor's son, am speaking. {God} has enabled me to know what to say

These two clauses mean basically the same thing. The second emphasizes the meaning of the first by repeating the same idea with different words. If it would be helpful to your readers, you could combine them and express the emphasis in another way. Another approach would be to connect the phrases with a word that shows that the second phrase is repeating the first one, not saying something additional. See how you as a team have decided to translate the parallel phrases in poetry, and follow that approach here and throughout this chapter. Alternate translation: [This is the solemn declaration of Balaam son of Beor, the man whose eye is opened] or [The declaration of Balaam, the son of him, Beor, indeed, the declaration of the man, opened of eye]

Support Reference: Parallelism

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Balaam	Balaam

Numbers 24:4

ULT	UST
the declaration of the one hearing the words of God, who sees the vision of the Almighty, falling down and uncovered of eyes:	*I am saying what God speaks to me. God, who is completely powerful, has revealed things to me. I bow down before him, and he enables me to know what to say.*

ULT **the words of God**
UST what God

Balaam is using the possessive form to mean the words that God speaks. If a speaker of your language would not use the possessive form for this, you could express this idea in another way. Alternate translation: [the words that God speaks]
Support Reference: Possession

ULT **the vision of the Almighty**
UST God, who is completely powerful, has revealed things to

Balaam is using the possessive form to mean the vision that the Almighty reveals. If a speaker of your language would not use the possessive form for this, you could express this idea in another way. Alternate translation: [the vision that the Almighty shows him]
Support Reference: Possession

ULT **falling down**
UST I bow down before him

This could mean: (1) Balaam bows down before God in worship. Alternate translation: [prostrating himself]; or (2) Balaam has fallen into a trance or dream state. Alternate translation: [falling into a trance]
Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

ULT **and uncovered of eyes**
UST and he enables me to know what to say

Here Balaam speaks of himself as one whose **eyes** have been **uncovered,** as if a covering that prevented him from perceiving had been removed. He means that God has enabled him to perceive what God reveals to him. If this meaning would not be clear in your language, you could use a comparable expression or you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [and clearly perceiving what God shows him]
Support Reference: Metaphor

ULT **and uncovered of eyes**
UST and he enables me to know what to say

The expression **uncovered of eyes** is a passive verbal form. If it would be unnatural to use that form, you could express the idea in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: [and God uncovered his eyes]
Support Reference: Active or Passive

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
God	God
vision	has revealed things to
Almighty	God, who is completely powerful

Numbers 24:5

ULT	UST
How good are your tents, Jacob, your dwellings, Israel!	*You Israelites, the tents in which you live are very beautiful!*

ULT **How good are your tents**
UST the tents in which you live are very beautiful

Balaam is using a phrase that expresses a strong feeling of admiration. There may be an equivalent word or phrase in your language that you can use in your translation to convey this feeling. Alternate translation: [Your tents are so good]
Support Reference: Exclamations

ULT **your tents**
UST the tents in which you live

The pronoun **your** refers to the people of Israel, whom Balaam addresses. It may be helpful to clarify this for your readers. Alternate translation: [the tents of your people]
Support Reference: Pronouns — When to Use Them

ULT **your dwellings, Israel**
UST You Israelites, the tents in which you live

Balaam is leaving out some of the words that in many languages a sentence would need in order to be complete. You can supply these words from the context if that would be clearer in your language. Alternate translation: [how good are your dwellings, Israel]
Support Reference: Ellipsis

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
good	are … beautiful
tents	tents
Jacob	You Israelites
your dwellings	tents
Israel	Israelites

Numbers 24:6

ULT	UST
Like wadis they are stretched out, like gardens upon a river, like aloes Yahweh has planted, like cedars upon water.	*Your campsite is like a long stream bed or a garden near a river. It is like a forest of valuable trees that Yahweh has caused to grow in a fertile place.*

ULT **Like wadis they are stretched out**
UST Your campsite is like a long stream bed

The expression **are stretched out** is a passive verbal form. If it would be unnatural to use that form, you could express the idea in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: [They spread out like wadis]
Support Reference: Active or Passive

ULT **Like wadis they are stretched out**
UST Your campsite is like a long stream bed

The point of this comparison is that just as **wadis** are **stretched out** and green with growth, so the settlements of Israel are widespread and flourishing. If it would be helpful in your language, you could make this point explicitly. Alternate translation: [They spread out and flourish, widespread and green like river valleys]
Support Reference: Simile

ULT **like gardens upon a river**
UST or a garden near a river

The point of this comparison is that just as **gardens upon a river** are lush and well-watered, so the people of Israel are prosperous and thriving. If it would be helpful in your language, you could make this point explicitly. Alternate translation: [like well-watered gardens that grow beside a river]
Support Reference: Simile

ULT **like aloes Yahweh has planted**
UST It is like a forest of valuable trees that Yahweh has caused to grow

The point of this comparison is that just as **aloes** that **Yahweh has planted** are fragrant and pleasing, so the people of Israel are delightful and firmly established by God. If it would be helpful in your language, you could make this point explicitly. Alternate translation: [delightful and firmly established, like aloes that Yahweh has planted]
Support Reference: Simile

ULT **like cedars upon water**
UST It is like a forest of valuable trees … in a fertile place

The point of this comparison is that just as **cedars upon water** are tall, strong, and enduring, so the people of Israel are strong and firmly established. If it would be helpful in your language, you could make this point explicitly. Alternate translation: [like cedars growing by the water, they are strong and enduring]
Support Reference: Simile

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
wadis	Your campsite is like a … stream bed
Yahweh	Yahweh
planted	that … has caused to grow
cedars	It is like a forest of valuable trees

Numbers 24:7

ULT	UST
Water will flow from his buckets, and his seed will be in many waters. And his king will be higher than Agag, and his kingdom will be lifted up.	*You will always have plenty of water so that your crops grow well. The king who rules you will be very great, greater than King Agag.*

ULT **Water will flow from his buckets**
UST You will always have plenty of water

Here Balaam is speaking of the future prosperity and abundance of Israel as if it were water that would **flow from his buckets**. If this meaning would not be clear in your language, you could use a comparable expression or you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [He will have abundant prosperity]
Support Reference: Metaphor

ULT **from his buckets**
UST You will always have plenty of water

Balaam is using the possessive form to mean the buckets that belong to Israel. If a speaker of your language would not use the possessive form for this, you could express this idea in another way. Alternate translation: [from the buckets that belong to Israel]
Support Reference: Possession

ULT **and his seed**
UST so that your crops grow well

Here, the phrase **his seed** could refer to: (1) seeds from plants that will produce food. Alternate translation: [and his seeds]; or (2) descendants of the Israelites described as if they were seeds. Alternate translation: [and his offspring]
Support Reference: Collective Nouns

ULT **from his buckets**
UST You will always have plenty of water

The pronoun **his** refers to Israel as a nation. It may be helpful to clarify this for your readers. Alternate translation: [from Israel's buckets]
Support Reference: Pronouns — When to Use Them

ULT **his king**
UST The king who rules you

Balaam is using the possessive form to mean the king who will rule Israel. If a speaker of your language would not use the possessive form for this, you could express this idea in another way. Alternate translation: [the king who rules Israel]
Support Reference: Possession

ULT **and his kingdom will be lifted up**
UST will be very great

The expression **will be lifted up** is a passive verbal form. If it would be unnatural to use that form, you could express the idea in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: [and God will exalt his kingdom]
Support Reference: Active or Passive

ULT **his kingdom**
UST will be very great

If your language does not use an abstract noun for the idea of **kingdom**, you could express the same idea in another way. Alternate translation: [the land he rules]
Support Reference: Abstract Nouns

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
seed	so that your crops grow well
king	king
And … will be higher	greater
kingdom	will be very great

Numbers 24:8

ULT	UST
God is bringing him out from Egypt; as the horns of a wild ox for him. He will devour nations, his adversaries, and their bones he will crush, and with his arrows he will shatter.	*God led you Israelites out of Egypt. God is as strong as any wild ox. You will completely conquer in battle all the people who oppose you.*

ULT **as the horns of a wild ox for him**
UST God is as strong as any wild ox

See how you translated this same phrase in Numbers 23:22. Here, the pronoun **him** could refer to: (1) God. In this case, it means God is like the ox. Alternate translation: [he is like the horns of a wild ox]; or (2) the Israelites. In this case, it means the Israelites are like the ox. Alternate translation: [they are like the horns of a wild ox]

Support Reference: Pronouns — When to Use Them

ULT **He will devour nations, his adversaries**
UST You will … conquer … all the people who oppose you

Here Balaam is speaking of Israel conquering enemy nations as if Israel would **devour** them like an animal eating its prey. If this meaning would not be clear in your language, you could use a comparable expression or you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [He will completely conquer nations, his adversaries]

Support Reference: Metaphor

ULT **is bringing him out**
UST led you Israelites out

The pronoun **him** refers to Israel as a nation. It may be helpful to clarify this for your readers. Alternate translation: [is bringing Israel out]

Support Reference: Pronouns — When to Use Them

ULT **as the horns of a wild ox for him**
UST God is as strong as any wild ox

Balaam is leaving out some of the words that in many languages a sentence would need in order to be complete. You can supply these words from the context if that would be clearer in your language. Alternate translation: [he has strength like the horns of a wild ox for him]

Support Reference: Ellipsis

ULT **and their bones he will crush, and {with} his arrows he will shatter**
UST completely … in battle

Here Balaam is speaking of Israel utterly destroying its enemies as if it would crush their bones and shatter them with arrows. If this meaning would not be clear in your language, you could use a comparable expression or you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [and he will completely destroy them]

Support Reference: Metaphor

ULT **his adversaries**
UST who oppose you

Balaam is using the possessive form to mean the nations that oppose Israel. If a speaker of your language would not use the possessive form for this, you could express this idea in another way. Alternate translation: [the nations that oppose him]
Support Reference: Possession

ULT **and their bones**
UST completely

Balaam is using the possessive form to mean the bones that belong to the enemy nations. If a speaker of your language would not use the possessive form for this, you could express this idea in another way. Alternate translation: [and the bones of those nations]
Support Reference: Possession

ULT **and {with} his arrows**
UST in battle

Balaam is using the possessive form to mean the arrows that belong to Israel. If a speaker of your language would not use the possessive form for this, you could express this idea in another way. Alternate translation: [and with the arrows that belong to him]
Support Reference: Possession

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
God	God
Egypt	Egypt
horns	as strong as
ox	ox
devour	You will … conquer
nations	all the people
adversaries	who oppose you

Numbers 24:9

ULT	UST
He bowed down, he lay down like a lion, and like a lioness, who will raise him up? Ones blessing you are blessed, and ones cursing you are cursed."	*You are like a lion that is lying down. It is dangerous to provoke you. Anyone who calls on God to do good things to you will also receive good things. Anyone who calls on God to do bad things to you will also receive bad things."*

ULT **He bowed down, he lay down like a lion, and like a lioness**
UST You are like a lion that is lying down

The point of this comparison is that just as a lion and a lioness lie down securely and are dangerous to disturb, so the people of Israel are secure and formidable. If it would be helpful in your language, you could make this point explicitly. Alternate translation: [He lies down securely, as dangerous to disturb as a lion or a lioness]
Support Reference: Simile

ULT **He bowed down, he lay down**
UST that is lying down

The terms **bowed down** and **lay down** mean similar things. Balaam is using the two terms together for emphasis. If it would be clearer for your readers, you could express the emphasis with a single phrase. Alternate translation: [He crouched down]
Support Reference: Doublet

ULT **and like a lioness**
UST You are like a lion

Balaam is leaving out some of the words that in many languages a sentence would need in order to be complete. You can supply these words from the context if that would be clearer in your language. Alternate translation: [and he lay down like a lioness]
Support Reference: Ellipsis

ULT **who will raise him up**
UST It is dangerous to provoke you

Balaam is using the question form to emphasize that no one dares to rouse or challenge Israel. If a speaker of your language would not use the question form for that purpose, you could translate this as a statement or as an exclamation. Alternate translation: [no one would dare to rouse him!]
Support Reference: Rhetorical Question

ULT **Ones blessing you {are} blessed**
UST Anyone who calls on God to do good things to you will also receive good things

The expression **blessed** is a passive verbal form. If it would be unnatural to use that form, you could express the idea in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: [Ones blessing you receive blessing]
Support Reference: Active or Passive

ULT **Ones blessing you**
UST Anyone who calls on God to do good things to you

The pronoun **you** refers to Israel, whom Balaam now addresses directly. It may be helpful to clarify this for your readers. Alternate translation: [Ones blessing you Israelites]
Support Reference: Pronouns — When to Use Them

ULT **and ones cursing you {are} cursed**
UST Anyone who calls on God to do bad things to you will also receive bad things

The expression **cursed** is a passive verbal form. If it would be unnatural to use that form, you could express the idea in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: [and ones cursing you receive cursing]
Support Reference: Active or Passive

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
bowed down	that is lying down
lion	lion
lioness	lion
blessing	Anyone who calls on God to do good things to you
blessed	will also receive good things
cursing	Anyone who calls on God to do bad things to you
cursed	will also receive bad things

Numbers 24:10

ULT	UST
And the nose of Balak burned toward Balaam, and he clapped his palms. And Balak said to Balaam, "To curse my enemies I called you, and behold, blessing, you have blessed these three times.	*Then King Balak was angry with Balaam. He angrily smacked his hands together. He told Balaam, "I had you come here to call on God to do bad things to those who oppose me. Instead, you have called on God to do good things to them three times!*

ULT **And the nose of Balak burned toward Balaam**
UST Then King Balak was angry with Balaam

The author is using **the nose of Balak burned** as a common expression of the culture to mean that Balak became very angry. If this phrase does not have that meaning for your readers, you could use a comparable expression from your language that does have that meaning, or you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [Balak became very angry with Balaam]
Support Reference: Idiom

ULT **and he clapped his palms**
UST He angrily smacked his hands together

Clapping the palms together was a symbolic action by which Balak showed his anger and indignation. If it would be helpful to your readers, you could explain the significance of this action in the text of your translation or in a footnote. Alternate translation: [and he clapped his palms together to show his anger]
Support Reference: Symbolic Action

ULT **And Balak said to Balaam**
UST He told Balaam

The author is using the phrase **And Balak said to Balaam** to introduce a direct quotation. In your translation, use a natural way of introducing direct quotations in your language.
Support Reference: Quotations and Quote Margins

ULT **my enemies**
UST those who oppose me

Balak is using the possessive form to mean the people who oppose him. If a speaker of your language would not use the possessive form for this, you could express this idea in another way. Alternate translation: [those hostile to me]
Support Reference: Possession

ULT **blessing, you have blessed**
UST you have called on God to do good things to them

Balak is using **blessing, you have blessed** as a common expression of the culture to emphasize the certainty and completeness of the action. If this phrase does not have that meaning for your readers, you could use a comparable expression from your language that does have that meaning, or you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [you have surely blessed them]
Support Reference: Idiom

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Balaam	Balaam
Balaam	Balaam
curse	to call on God to do bad things to
enemies	those who oppose me
called	I had you come here
blessing	you have called on God to do good things to them
blessed	you have called on God to do good things to them
times	times

Numbers 24:11

ULT	UST
And now, flee for yourself to your place. I said, 'Honoring, I will honor you,' and behold, Yahweh has withheld you from honor."	*So, you must hurry back to your home now! I told you that I would reward you well. But listen to this: Yahweh has prevented you from receiving that reward."*

ULT **And now, flee for yourself to your place. I said, 'Honoring, I will honor you,' and behold, Yahweh has withheld you from honor**

UST So, you must hurry back to your home now! I told you that I would reward you well. But listen to this: Yahweh has prevented you from receiving that reward

Balak states a result first and then gives the reason for it. Use a connector in your language that makes it clear that what follows is a reason for what came before. Alternate translation: [I said, 'Honoring, I will honor you,' but behold, Yahweh has withheld you from honor. So now, flee for yourself to your place]

Support Reference: Connect — Reason-and-Result Relationship

ULT **flee for yourself to your place**

UST you must hurry back to your home

Balak is using **flee for yourself to your place** as a common expression of the culture to mean "go back home at once." If this phrase does not have that meaning for your readers, you could use a comparable expression from your language that does have that meaning, or you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [hurry back home right away]

Support Reference: Idiom

ULT **your place**

UST your home

Balak is using the possessive form to mean the home where Balaam lives. If a speaker of your language would not use the possessive form for this, you could express this idea in another way. Alternate translation: [the place where you live]

Support Reference: Possession

ULT **I said, 'Honoring, I will honor you**

UST I told you that I would reward you well

This includes a second-level quotation, something that Balak had said earlier quoted within his present speech. If it would be clearer in your language, you could translate this so that there is not a quotation within a quotation. Alternate translation: [I said that I would honor you greatly,]

Support Reference: Quotes within Quotes

ULT **Honoring, I will honor you**

UST I would reward you well

Balak is using **Honoring, I will honor you** as a common expression of the culture to emphasize how greatly he had intended to reward Balaam. If this phrase does not have that meaning for your readers, you could use a comparable expression from your language that does have that meaning, or you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [I will surely reward you greatly]

Support Reference: Idiom

ULT **I will honor you**
UST I would reward you

If your language does not use an abstract noun for the idea of **honor**, you could express the same idea in another way. Alternate translation: [I will cause people to greatly respect you]
Support Reference: Abstract Nouns

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Honoring	well
honor	I would reward you
Yahweh	Yahweh
honor	from receiving that reward

Numbers 24:12

ULT	UST
And Balaam said to Balak, "Did I not also speak to your messengers whom you sent to me, saying,	*Balaam replied, "You should remember what I told the representatives you had visit me. I told them*

ULT **Did I not also speak to your messengers whom you sent to me, saying**
UST You should remember what I told the representatives you had visit me. I told them

What follows is a second-level quotation, the words that Balaam spoke to the messengers. If it would be clearer in your language, you could translate this so that there is not a quotation within a quotation. Alternate translation: [Did I not also speak to your messengers whom you sent to me and tell them that]

Support Reference: Quotes within Quotes

ULT **Did I not also speak to your messengers whom you sent to me**
UST You should remember what I told the representatives you had visit me

Balaam is using the question form to remind Balak that he had already told this to Balak's messengers. If a speaker of your language would not use the question form for that purpose, you could translate this as a statement or as an exclamation. Alternate translation: [I also spoke to your messengers]

Support Reference: Rhetorical Question

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Balaam	Balaam
messengers	the representatives

Numbers 24:13

ULT	UST
'If Balak gives to me the fullness of his house, silver and gold, I will not be able to pass over the mouth of Yahweh, to do good or evil from my own heart. What Yahweh speaks, it I will speak'?	*to suppose that you, King Balak, offered me all the money and possessions you have. Even in that case, I would not be able to disobey what Yahweh tells me to do. I would not be able to do whatever I wanted, whether good or bad. Instead, I would say whatever Yahweh told me to say. That is what I told them.*

ULT **If Balak gives to me**
UST to suppose that you, King Balak, offered me

This continues a quotation within a quotation. If it would be clearer in your language, you could translate this so that there is not a quotation within a quotation. Alternate translation: [That if Balak gave to me]
Support Reference: Quotes within Quotes

ULT **the fullness of his house, silver and gold**
UST all the money and possessions you have

Balaam says **the fullness of his house, silver and gold** as an extreme statement for emphasis. If it would be helpful in your language, you could use a different way to express the emphasis. Alternate translation: [even all the silver and gold that fills his house]
Support Reference: Hyperbole

ULT **the mouth of Yahweh**
UST what Yahweh tells me to do

Here, **the mouth of Yahweh** represents "what Yahweh commands." If it would be helpful in your language, you could use an equivalent expression or plain language. Alternate translation: [what Yahweh commands]
Support Reference: Metonymy

ULT **to do good or evil**
UST I would not be able to do … whether good or bad

Balaam is referring to anything he might do by naming two opposite extremes, **good** and **evil**. If it would be helpful in your language, you could use an equivalent expression or plain language. Alternate translation: [to do anything at all]
Support Reference: Merism

ULT **good or evil**
UST whether good or bad

If your language does not use abstract nouns for the ideas of **good** and **evil**, you could express the same ideas in other ways. Alternate translation: [what is good or what is bad]
Support Reference: Abstract Nouns

ULT **from my own heart**
UST whatever I wanted

Here, **my own heart** represents “my own will” or “my own initiative.” If it would be helpful in your language, you could use an equivalent expression or plain language. Alternate translation: [from my own will]
Support Reference: Metonymy

ULT **from my own heart**
UST whatever I wanted

Balaam is using the possessive form to mean the will that belongs to himself. If a speaker of your language would not use the possessive form for this, you could express this idea in another way. Alternate translation: [according to my own will]
Support Reference: Possession

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
house	and possessions
silver	the money
gold	the money
Yahweh	Yahweh
good	good
evil	bad
Yahweh	Yahweh

Numbers 24:14

ULT	UST
And now, behold me, going to my people. Come, I will counsel you what this people will do to your people in the end of the days."	*Listen! I will go back home now. First, though, I will inform you about what the Israelites will eventually do to you Moabites."*

ULT **Come**
UST First, though

Balaam is using the word **Come** to get Balak's attention before telling him something important, not to tell him to move to a different place. If it would be helpful in your language, you could use a comparable expression from your language, or you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [Listen to me]
Support Reference: Idiom

ULT **this people will do to your people**
UST the Israelites will … do to you Moabites

Here, **this people** refers to the Israelites, while **your people** refers to the Moabites, Balak's people. It may be helpful to clarify this for your readers. Alternate translation: [the Israelites will do to your people the Moabites]
Support Reference: Pronouns — When to Use Them

ULT **in the end of the days**
UST eventually

Balaam is using **in the end of the days** as a common expression of the culture to mean "in the future" or "in days to come." If this phrase does not have that meaning for your readers, you could use a comparable expression from your language that does have that meaning, or you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [in the future]
Support Reference: Idiom

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
counsel	I will inform you

Numbers 24:15

ULT	UST
And he lifted up his oracle and said, "The declaration of Balaam, the son of him, Beor, and the declaration of the man, opened of the eye,	*He began to speak his prophetic message: "I, Balaam, Beor's son, am speaking. God has enabled me to know what to say.*

ULT **And he lifted up his oracle and said**
UST He began to speak his prophetic message

See how you translated the similar expression in 24:3.
Support Reference: Quotations and Quote Margins

ULT **opened of the eye**
UST God has enabled me to know

See how you translated the similar expression in 24:3.
Support Reference: Metaphor

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
The declaration of	am speaking
Balaam	Balaam
and the declaration of	what to say

Numbers 24:16

ULT	UST
the declaration of the one hearing the words of God, and the one knowing the knowledge of the Most High; he sees the vision of the Almighty, falling down and uncovered of eyes:	*I understand what the Most High God shows me, so I am saying what God speaks to me. God, who is completely powerful, has revealed things to me. I bow down before him, and he enables me to know what to say.*

ULT **the words of God**
UST what God speaks to me

See how you translated the similar expression in 24:4.
Support Reference: Possession

ULT **the knowledge of the Most High**
UST what the Most High God shows me

If your language does not use an abstract noun for the idea of **knowledge**, you could express the same idea in another way. Alternate translation: [what the Most High reveals]
Support Reference: Abstract Nouns

ULT **the vision of the Almighty**
UST God, who is completely powerful, has revealed things to me

See how you translated the similar expression in 24:4.
Support Reference: Possession

ULT **falling down**
UST I bow down before him

See how you translated the similar expression in 24:4.
Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

ULT **and uncovered of eyes**
UST and he enables me to know what to say

See how you translated the similar expression in 24:4.
Support Reference: Metaphor

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
God	God
knowing	I understand
knowledge	what … shows me
Most High	Most High
vision	has revealed things to me
Almighty	God, who is completely powerful

Numbers 24:17

ULT	UST
I see him, but not now; I look at him, but not near. A star has trodden from Jacob, and a scepter has risen from Israel. And it has shattered the edges of Moab and destroyed all the sons of Seth.	*I know about someone who will eventually live here. He will be an Israelite who will rule powerfully and as gloriously as a star in the sky. He will conquer the Moabites and their rulers, all the descendants of Seth.*

ULT **I see him**
UST I know about someone

The pronoun **him** refers to a future ruler who will come from Israel. It may be helpful to clarify this for your readers. Alternate translation: [I see the future ruler]
Support Reference: Pronouns — When to Use Them

ULT **A star has trodden from Jacob**
UST He will be an Israelite … and as gloriously as a star in the sky

Here Balaam is speaking of a future ruler who will come from Israel as if he were a **star**. If this meaning would not be clear in your language, you could use a comparable expression or you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [A great ruler has come from Jacob]
Support Reference: Metaphor

ULT **A star has trodden from Jacob, and a scepter has risen from Israel**
UST He will be an Israelite who will rule powerfully and as gloriously as a star in the sky

Balaam is describing a future event as if it had already happened. He speaks this way to show that the event will certainly take place. If it would be helpful in your language, you could use the future tense to express this.
Support Reference: Predictive Past

ULT **the edges of Moab**
UST the Moabites and their rulers

The word translated as **edges** could refer to: (1) the **edges** of a face, or the forehead. The forehead of Moab is a figurative description of the leaders of Moab. Alternate translation: [the forehead of Moab] or [the leaders of Moab]; or (2) the borders of the territory of **Moab**. In this case, the phrase refers to all the territory of Moab, from one edge to another. Alternate translation: [all the borders of Moab]
Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

ULT **and a scepter has risen from Israel**
UST He will be an Israelite who will rule powerfully

Here Balaam is speaking of a future ruler who will come from Israel as if he were a **scepter**. If this meaning would not be clear in your language, you could use a comparable expression or you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [and a ruler has risen from Israel]
Support Reference: Metaphor

ULT **and destroyed**
UST He will conquer

The phrase **and destroyed** is a translation of the standard written Hebrew text as we have it today. This reading, however, is rare and difficult. You may want to follow an alternative reading that scholars have proposed, or you may want to follow the major translation in your area. Alternate translation: [and the skull of]
Support Reference: Alternative Readings

ULT **the edges of Moab**
UST the Moabites and their rulers

Here, **the edges of Moab** represents "all the territory of Moab." If it would be helpful in your language, you could use an equivalent expression or plain language. Alternate translation: [all the territory of Moab]
Support Reference: Metonymy

ULT **the sons of Seth**
UST the descendants of Seth

Balaam is speaking as if the people descended from Seth were actually his **sons**. Alternate translation: [Seth's descendants]
Support Reference: Metaphor

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Jacob	He will be an Israelite
scepter	who will rule powerfully
Israel	Israelite
Moab	Moabites
destroyed	He will conquer
Seth	Seth

Numbers 24:18

ULT	UST
And Edom will be a possession, and Seir, his enemies, will be a possession, but Israel is doing strength.	*This person will take over the area where those who oppose him, the Edomites, live. The Israelites will act powerfully.*

ULT **a possession**
UST This person will take over the area

If your language does not use an abstract noun for the idea of **a possession**, you could express the same idea in another way. Alternate translation: [owned by him]
Support Reference: Abstract Nouns

ULT **his enemies**
UST those who oppose him

Here, the pronoun **his** could refer to: (1) the **star** or **scepter** from the previous verse. In this case, **his** refers to a specific ruler. Alternate translation: [that person's enemies]; or (2) the Israelites in general. Alternate translation: [their enemies] or [Israel's enemies]
Support Reference: Pronouns — When to Use Them

ULT **strength**
UST powerfully

If your language does not use an abstract noun for the idea of **strength**, you could express the same idea in another way. Alternate translation: [mighty deeds]
Support Reference: Abstract Nouns

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Edom	Edomites
possession	This person will take over the area
Seir	where … the Edomites, live
enemies	those who oppose him
possession	This person will take over the area
Israel	Israelites

Numbers 24:19

ULT	UST
And he will rule from Jacob, and he will destroy a survivor from a city.”	*This person will rule from the land where the Israelites live. He will kill anyone who survives when he conquers the cities of his enemies.”*

ULT **And he will rule**
UST This person will rule

The pronoun **he** refers to the future ruler who will come from Israel. It may be helpful to clarify this for your readers. Alternate translation: [And a ruler will rule]
Support Reference: Pronouns — When to Use Them

ULT **a survivor**
UST anyone who survives

Here, **a survivor** does not refer to a specific person. Balaam means anyone who survives in general. If it would be helpful to your readers, you could use an expression that would be more natural in your language. Alternate translation: [every survivor]
Support Reference: Generic Noun Phrases

ULT **from a city**
UST when he conquers the cities of his enemies

This phrase **a city** could refer to: (1) any city that this person conquers. Alternate translation: [from every conquered city]; or (2) a specific city, perhaps one named “Ir” or “Ar.” Alternate translation: [from the city] or [from Ar] or [from Ir]
Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
And he will rule	This person will rule
Jacob	from {the land where} the Israelites live
destroy	He will kill

Numbers 24:20

ULT	UST
And he saw Amalek, and he lifted up his oracle and said, "First of nations is Amalek, and its end is unto destruction."	*Then Balaam looked toward the place where the Amalekites lived. He began to speak his prophetic message: "The Amalekites are the most powerful group in this area. However, eventually someone will destroy them completely."*

ULT **And he saw Amalek**
UST Then Balaam looked toward the place where the Amalekites lived

The author is using the word translated as **And** to introduce a new event in the story. Use a word, phrase, or other method in your language that is natural for introducing a new event.
Support Reference: Introduction of a New Event

ULT **And he saw Amalek**
UST Then Balaam looked toward the place where the Amalekites lived

This could mean: (1) that Balaam looked toward the are where the region of Amalek was. Alternate translation: [And he looked in the direction of Amalek]; or (2) that Balaam saw the people of Amalek in a vision. Alternate translation: [And he had a vision of Amalek]
Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

ULT **and he lifted up his oracle and said**
UST He began to speak his prophetic message

See how you translated the similar expression in 24:3.
Support Reference: Quotations and Quote Margins

ULT **First of nations**
UST are the most powerful group in this area

Here, the word **first** could refer to: (1) being the most important or powerful. Alternate translation: [First in power of nations]; or (2) being the first nation to live in that area. Alternate translation: [First of nations to arrive here]; or (3) being the first to attack the Israelites. Alternate translation: [First of nations to attack Israel]
Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

ULT **First of nations**
UST are the most powerful group in this area

Balaam is using the possessive form to mean the nation that is foremost among the nations. If a speaker of your language would not use the possessive form for this, you could express this idea in another way. Alternate translation: [The foremost among the nations]
Support Reference: Possession

ULT **and its end {is} unto destruction**
UST However, eventually someone will destroy them completely

If your language does not use an abstract noun for the idea of **end**, you could express the same idea in another way. Alternate translation: [but it will finally perish completely]
Support Reference: Abstract Nouns

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Amalek	Amalekites
First of	are the most powerful group
nations	in this area
Amalek	Amalekites
destruction	destroy

Numbers 24:21

ULT	UST
And he saw the Kenite, and he lifted up his oracle and said, "Permanent is your dwelling, and set in the rock is your nest.	*Then Balaam looked toward the place where the Kenites lived. He began to speak his prophetic message: "You live in a strong and secure place, like a bird's nest on a cliff.*

ULT **And he saw the Kenite**
UST Then Balaam looked toward the place where the Kenites lived

The author is using the word translated as **And** to introduce a new event in the story. Use a word, phrase, or other method in your language that is natural for introducing a new event.
Support Reference: Introduction of a New Event

ULT **and he lifted up his oracle and said**
UST He began to speak his prophetic message

See how you translated the similar expression in 24:3.
Support Reference: Quotations and Quote Margins

ULT **is your dwelling**
UST You live

Balaam is using the possessive form to mean the place where the Kenites live. If a speaker of your language would not use the possessive form for this, you could express this idea in another way. Alternate translation: [is the place where you live]
Support Reference: Possession

ULT **and set in the rock {is} your nest**
UST like a bird's nest on a cliff

Here Balaam is speaking of the secure dwelling place of the Kenites as if it were a bird's **nest** set in the rock. If this meaning would not be clear in your language, you could use a comparable expression or you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [and your home is secure among the rocks]
Support Reference: Metaphor

ULT **and set in the rock {is} your nest**
UST like a bird's nest on a cliff

The expression **set in the rock** is a passive verbal form. If it would be unnatural to use that form, you could express the idea in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: [and you have built your nest in the rock]
Support Reference: Active or Passive

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
and set	on a cliff

Numbers 24:22

ULT	UST
Nevertheless, Kain will be to burn until when Asshur takes you captive.”	*Yet, the Asshur tribe will make you Kenites their prisoners and burn the place where you live.”*

ULT **Kain**
UST the place where you live

The word translated as **Kain** could refer to: (1) an ancestor of the Kenites. See Judges 4:11, where this person may be mentioned. Alternate translation: [you descendants of Kain]; or (2) Cain, the son of Adam. Alternate translation: [Cain]
Support Reference: How to Translate Names

ULT **to burn until when Asshur takes you captive**
UST the Asshur tribe will make you Kenites their prisoners and burn

Here, the clause **until when Asshur takes you captive** could be: (1) a statement about when the burning takes place. Alternate translation: [to burn until Asshur takes you captive]; or (2) a rhetorical question about how long Asshur will keep them as captives. Alternate translation: [to burn; until when will Asshur hold you captive?] or [to burn; Asshur will hold you captive for a long time!]
Support Reference: Rhetorical Question

ULT **to burn**
UST and burn

The verb that the ULT translates as **burn** often has this meaning in the Hebrew Bible. However, there is another verb with the same consonants that means “destroy” or “devastate,” and the author may have been using that verb here. If a translation of the Bible exists in your region, you may wish to use the reading that it uses. If a translation of the Bible does not exist in your region, you may wish to use the reading of the ULT. Alternate translation: [to destroy] or [to devastate]
Support Reference: Alternative Readings

ULT **Asshur**
UST the Asshur tribe

The word translated as **Asshur** could refer to: (1) a tribal group near the Kenites. Alternate translation: [the Asshur tribal group]; or (2) the Assyrians. Alternate translation: [Assyria]
Support Reference: How to Translate Names

ULT **takes you captive**
UST will make you Kenites their prisoners

The pronoun **you** refers to the Kenite people. It may be helpful to clarify this for your readers. Alternate translation: [takes you Kenite people captive]
Support Reference: Pronouns — When to Use Them

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Kain	the place where you live
Asshur	the Asshur tribe
captive	will make you Kenites their prisoners

Numbers 24:23

ULT	UST
And he lifted up his oracle and said, "Woe! Who will live from God setting it?	*Then Balaam began to speak his last prophetic message: "How terrible! No one can survive when God does these things!*

ULT And he lifted up his oracle and said
UST Then Balaam began to speak his {last} prophetic message

See how you translated the similar expression in 24:3.
Support Reference: Quotations and Quote Margins

ULT Woe
UST How terrible

Balaam is using a word that expresses a strong feeling of alarm and dread. There may be an equivalent word or phrase in your language that you can use in your translation to convey this feeling. Alternate translation: [How dreadful]
Support Reference: Exclamations

ULT Who will live from God setting it
UST No one can survive when God does these things

Balaam is using the question form to emphasize that no one will survive when God does this. If a speaker of your language would not use the question form for that purpose, you could translate this as a statement or as an exclamation. Alternate translation: [No one will live when God does this!]
Support Reference: Rhetorical Question

ULT from God setting it
UST when God does these things

The pronoun **it** refers to the action that God will bring about. It may be helpful to clarify this for your readers. Alternate translation: [from God bringing about these things]
Support Reference: Pronouns — When to Use Them

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Woe	How terrible
God	God

Numbers 24:24

ULT	UST
And ships from the hand of Kittim, and they will afflict Asshur, and they will afflict Eber, and he also is unto destruction.”	*People will arrive in boats from the shores of the Kittim region. They will subdue the Asshur tribe and the Eber tribe. However, someone will destroy them completely too.”*

ULT **from the hand of Kittim**
UST from the shores of the Kittim region

Here, **the hand of Kittim** represents “the shores of Kittim” or the ships that come from there. If it would be helpful in your language, you could use an equivalent expression or plain language. Alternate translation: [from the coast of Kittim]
Support Reference: Metonymy

ULT **Asshur**
UST the Asshur tribe

Here, just as in 24:22, the word translated as **Asshur** could refer to: (1) a tribal group near where the Israelites lived. Alternate translation: [the Asshur tribal group]; or (2) the Assyrians. Alternate translation: [Assyria]
Support Reference: How to Translate Names

ULT **he**
UST them

The pronoun **he** refers to Kittim, the power that afflicts Asshur and Eber. It may be helpful to clarify this for your readers. Alternate translation: [that power from Kittim]
Support Reference: Pronouns — When to Use Them

ULT **destruction**
UST someone will destroy … completely

See how you translated the similar expression in 24:20.
Support Reference: Abstract Nouns

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
afflict	They will subdue
Asshur	the Asshur tribe
afflict	and the Eber tribe
destruction	destroy

Numbers 24:25

ULT	UST
And Balaam rose and went and returned to his place, and Balak also went to his way.	*Then Balaam left that place and traveled back to his home. Balak too left that place.*

ULT **And Balaam rose**
UST Then Balaam left that place

The author is using the word translated as **And** to introduce a new event in the story. Use a word, phrase, or other method in your language that is natural for introducing a new event.
Support Reference: Introduction of a New Event

ULT **to his place**
UST to his home

The author is using the possessive form to mean the home that belongs to Balaam. If a speaker of your language would not use the possessive form for this, you could express this idea in another way. Alternate translation: [to the place where he lived]
Support Reference: Possession

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Balaam	Balaam

Numbers 25

Numbers 25 Introduction

Numbers 25 Chapter Introduction

Structure and Formatting

In this chapter, the Israelites worship Baal of Peor with the Moabites, and God punishes them. Then Phinehas kills an Israelite man and a Midianite woman who are involved in the worship, and this atones for the Israelites. God then blesses Phinehas. He also tells the Israelites to attack the Midianites.

1. Israel worships Baal of Peor, and Yahweh commands punishment (1–5)
2. Phinehas kills an Israelite man and a Midianite woman, and the plague stops (6–9)
3. Yahweh promises Phinehas and his descendants a lasting priesthood (10–13)
4. The man and woman are identified, and Yahweh commands Israel to attack Midian (14–18)

Religious and Cultural Concepts in This Chapter

What were the Israelites doing wrong?

Scholars debate what the Israelites were doing with the Midianite and Moabite women in this chapter. Some think that the Israelites were participating in cultic sexual acts with the women as part of their worship of Baal. Others think that the Israelites were marrying the women and then participating with their wives in the worship of Baal. Either way, it is clear that Israelite men were interacting with the Moabite and Midianite women, and these interactions led to the Israelites worshiping Baal. It is recommended that your translation does not indicate explicitly whether cultic sexual activity or marriage was happening.

Midianites and Moabites

In 25:1, the author indicates that the Moabites are the ones who convinced the Israelites to worship Baal. However, the woman whom Phinehas kills for doing this is a Midianite (see 25:6). Further, when Yahweh tells the Israelites to attack the people who convinced them to worship Baal, he identifies those people as the Midianites. Most likely, this area was populated by both Midianites and Moabites, and both groups of people were probably involved. So, you should leave references to both Moabites and Midianites in this chapter.

Translation Issues in This Chapter

Events narrated out of sequence

When the Israelites worship Baal, God punishes them by sending a plague. However, the author does not mention the plague until the plague is stopped (see 25:8–9). The author implies that the plague was already happening when the Israelites were mourning near the sacred tent

(see 25:6). The author may do this to keep the narration concise or to build suspense. Consider how you might indicate that the plague had already started before verses 8–9.

Numbers 25:1

ULT	UST
And Israel dwelled in the Shittim, and the people began to commit fornication with the daughters of Moab.	*Now the Israelites were living in an area that people called Shittim. While they were there, some of the Israelite men began having sex with Moabite women.*

ULT **And Israel dwelled in the Shittim**
UST Now the Israelites were living in {an area that people called} Shittim

The author is using the word translated as **And** to introduce a new event in the story. Use a word, phrase, or other method in your language that is natural for introducing a new event.
Support Reference: Introduction of a New Event

ULT **in the Shittim**
UST in {an area that people called} Shittim

The word **Shittim** is the name of a place.
Support Reference: How to Translate Names

ULT **the daughters of Moab**
UST Moabite women

The author is speaking of the Moabite women as if they were **daughters** born to the nation of Moab. Alternate translation: [the women of Moab]
Support Reference: Metaphor

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Israel	Israelites
fornication	having sex
Moab	Moabite

Numbers 25:2

ULT	UST
And they called to the people for the sacrifices of their gods, and the people ate and prostrated themselves to their gods.	*Those women invited the Israelites to attend feasts where they offered sacrifices to their gods. The Israelites ate some of the food and worshiped the gods.*

ULT **And they called to the people**
UST Those women invited the Israelites

The pronoun **they** refers to the daughters of Moab. It may be helpful to clarify this for your readers. Alternate translation: [And the daughters of Moab called to the people]
Support Reference: Pronouns — When to Use Them

ULT **for the sacrifices of their gods**
UST to attend feasts where they offered sacrifices to their gods

The author is using the possessive form to describe **sacrifices** that these people offered to **their gods**. If this is not clear in your language, you could express the meaning explicitly. Alternate translation: [for the sacrifices that they offered to their gods]
Support Reference: Possession

ULT **and prostrated themselves to their gods**
UST and worshiped the gods

Prostrating themselves was a symbolic action by which the Israelites showed worship and submission to their gods. If it would be helpful to your readers, you could explain the significance of this action in the text of your translation or in a footnote. Alternate translation: [bowed down to the ground before their gods to show that they worshiped them]
Support Reference: Symbolic Action

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
called	Those women invited
sacrifices	sacrifices
gods	gods
and … ate	ate some of the food
prostrated	worshiped
gods	gods

Numbers 25:3

ULT	UST
And Israel was yoked to Baal of Peor, and the nose of Yahweh burned against Israel.	*In this way, the Israelites associated themselves with the god Baal whom people worshiped at the town of Peor. So Yahweh was angry with the Israelites.*

ULT **And Israel was yoked to Baal of Peor**
UST In this way, the Israelites associated themselves with the god Baal whom people worshiped at the town of Peor

Here the author is speaking as if the Israelites were animals that had been **yoked to Baal of Peor**. He means that the people bound themselves to the worship of that god. If this meaning would not be clear in your language, you could use a comparable expression or you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [bound itself to the worship of Baal of Peor]
Support Reference: Metaphor

ULT **And Israel was yoked**
UST In this way, the Israelites associated themselves

The expression **was yoked** is a passive verbal form. If it would be unnatural to use that form, you could express the idea in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: [Israel yoked itself]
Support Reference: Active or Passive

ULT **and the nose of Yahweh burned against Israel**
UST So Yahweh was angry with the Israelites

The author is using the phrase **the nose of Yahweh burned against Israel** as a common expression of the culture to mean that Yahweh became very angry with the Israelites. If this phrase does not have that meaning for your readers, you could use a comparable expression from your language that does have that meaning, or you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [Yahweh became very angry with Israel]
Support Reference: Idiom

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Israel	Israelites
yoked	In this way … associated themselves
Baal	Baal
Peor	Peor
Yahweh	Yahweh
Israel	Israelites

Numbers 25:4

ULT	UST
And Yahweh said to Moses, "Take all of the heads of the people and hang them to Yahweh in front of the sun, and let the burning of the nose of Yahweh return from Israel."	*So Yahweh told Moses, "Seize the people who lead the Israelites. Execute them and display their bodies publicly before me. That way, I will stop being very angry with the Israelites."*

ULT **all of the heads of the people**
UST the people who lead the Israelites

This could mean: (1) that Moses was supposed to seize and execute all the Israelite leaders, even those who had not worshiped Baal. Alternate translation: [every one of the heads of the people]; or (2) that Moses was supposed to seize and execute only the Israelite leaders who had worshiped Baal. Alternate translation: [all of the heads of the people who worshiped Baal]
Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

ULT **the heads of the people**
UST the people who lead the Israelites

Here Yahweh is speaking of the leaders of the people as if they were the **heads** of the people. In this culture, the head was thought of as the leading part of the body. If this meaning would not be clear in your language, you could use a comparable expression or you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [the leaders of the people]
Support Reference: Metaphor

ULT **and hang them**
UST Execute them and display their bodies

Here, the word translated **hang** could mean: (1) that the leaders would be executed and their bodies hung up. Alternate translation: [and kill them and hang their bodies]; or (2) that the leaders would be impaled and their bodies left there. Alternate translation: [and impale them]
Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

ULT **to Yahweh**
UST before me

This could mean: (1) that the leaders were hung in Yahweh's presence. Alternate translation: [in Yahweh's presence]; or (2) that leaders were hung for the sake of or as a sacrifice to Yahweh. Alternate translation: [for Yahweh's sake] or [as a sacrifice to Yahweh]
Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

ULT **in front of the sun**
UST publicly

Here, **the sun** represents the open daylight, where everyone could see. Yahweh means that this should be done publicly. If it would be helpful in your language, you could use an equivalent expression or plain language. Alternate translation: [in open daylight where everyone can see]
Support Reference: Metonymy

ULT **and let the burning of the nose of Yahweh return**
UST That way, I will stop being very angry

Yahweh is using **the burning of the nose of Yahweh** as a common expression of the culture to refer to his anger, and for it to **return** means that his anger will stop. If this phrase does not have that meaning for your readers, you could use a comparable expression from your language that does have that meaning, or you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [let the fierce anger of Yahweh turn away]

Support Reference: Idiom

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Yahweh	Yahweh
Moses	Moses
hang	Execute them and display
Yahweh	before me
Yahweh	I
Israel	Israelites

Numbers 25:5

ULT	UST
And Moses said to the judges of Israel, "Kill, a man, his men, the ones being yoked to Baal of Peor."	*So Moses told the people who settled disputes among the Israelites, "Consider the people you are responsible for. Each of you must execute any of them who have associated themselves with the god Baal whom people worship at the town of Peor."*

ULT **Kill, a man, his men**

UST Consider the people you are responsible for. Each of you must execute

Moses is leaving out some of the words that in many languages a sentence would need in order to be complete. You can supply these words from the context if that would be clearer in your language. Alternate translation: [Let each one of you kill the men under his authority]

Support Reference: Ellipsis

ULT **the ones being yoked to Baal of Peor**

UST any of them who have associated themselves with the god Baal whom people worship at the town of Peor

Here Moses is speaking as if these people were animals that had been **yoked to Baal of Peor**. He means the people who bound themselves to the worship of that god. If this meaning would not be clear in your language, you could use a comparable expression or you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [the ones who have joined themselves to the worship of Baal of Peor]

Support Reference: Metaphor

ULT **the ones being yoked**

UST any of them who have associated themselves

The expression **being yoked** is a passive verbal form. If it would be unnatural to use that form, you could express the idea in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: [the ones who have yoked themselves]

Support Reference: Active or Passive

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Moses	Moses
judges	the people who settled disputes
Israel	Israelites
Kill	must execute
yoked	any of them who have associated themselves
Baal	Baal
Peor	Peor

Numbers 25:6

ULT	UST
And behold, a man from the sons of Israel came and brought near to his brothers the Midianites, to the eyes of Moses and to the eyes of all of the congregation of the sons of Israel. And they were weeping at the opening of the tent of meeting.	*Now the whole Israelite community was mourning at the entrance to the sacred tent. Just then, an Israelite man arrived with a Midianite woman. He introduced her to his relatives while Moses and the rest of the Israelites watched.*

ULT **And behold**
UST Just then

The author is using the word translated as **behold** to introduce a new event in the story. Use a word, phrase, or other method in your language that is natural for introducing a new event.
Support Reference: Introduction of a New Event

ULT **a man from the sons of Israel**
UST an Israelite man

Here the author is introducing **a man from the sons of Israel** as a new participant in the story. Your language may have its own way of introducing new participants that you can use in your translation. Alternate translation: [a certain man who was an Israelite]
Support Reference: Introduction of New and Old Participants

ULT **the Midianites**
UST with a Midianite woman

Here the author is introducing **the Midianitess**, a woman from Midian, as a new participant in the story. Your language may have its own way of introducing new participants that you can use in your translation. Alternate translation: [a certain woman from Midian]
Support Reference: Introduction of New and Old Participants

ULT **to the eyes of Moses and to the eyes of all of the congregation of**
UST the whole … community … while Moses and the rest of the Israelites watched

The author is using **to the eyes of** as a common expression of the culture to mean “in the sight of” or “in the presence of.” If this phrase does not have that meaning for your readers, you could use a comparable expression from your language that does have that meaning, or you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [in the presence of Moses … in the presence of all of the congregation]
Support Reference: Idiom

ULT **And they were weeping**
UST Now … was mourning

The pronoun **they** refers to Moses and the rest of the congregation of Israel. It may be helpful to clarify this for your readers. Alternate translation: [And Moses and all these Israelites were weeping]
Support Reference: Pronouns — When to Use Them

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Israel	Israelite
Moses	Moses
congregation	community
Israel	Israelite
weeping	mourning
tent of meeting	the sacred tent

Numbers 25:7

ULT	UST
And Phinehas, the son of Eleazar, the son of Aaron, the priest, saw, and he rose from the midst of the congregation and took a spear in his hand.	*Now Aaron had a son whose name was Eleazar. Eleazar had a son whose name was Phinehas, who was a priest. Phinehas also watched what happened with the Midianite woman. He left the Israelite community and picked up a spear.*

ULT **Phinehas, the son of Eleazar, the son of Aaron, the priest**

UST Now Aaron had a son whose name was Eleazar. Eleazar had a son whose name was Phinehas, who was a priest

Here the author is introducing **Phinehas**, a priest, as a new participant in the story. Your language may have its own way of introducing new participants that you can use in your translation. Alternate translation: [a certain priest named Phinehas, who was the son of Eleazar and the grandson of Aaron]

Support Reference: Introduction of New and Old Participants

ULT **And … saw**

UST Phinehas also watched what happened with the Midianite woman

The author is leaving out some of the words that in many languages a sentence would need in order to be complete. You can supply these words from the context if that would be clearer in your language. Alternate translation: [saw what the man had done]

Support Reference: Ellipsis

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Phinehas	Phinehas
Eleazar	Eleazar
Aaron	Aaron
priest	priest
congregation	community
spear	spear

Numbers 25:8

ULT	UST
And he went after the man of Israel to the tent, and he pierced the two of them, the man of Israel and the woman, to her stomach. And the plague was restrained from upon the sons of Israel.	*He followed the Israelite man to a special tent. There, he thrust the spear through the Israelite man and into the woman's stomach, killing them both. Then, the Israelites stopped getting sick with the terrible disease that had made many of them sick.*

ULT **to her stomach**
UST into the … stomach

The pronoun **her** refers to the Midianite woman whom the man of Israel had brought near. It may be helpful to clarify this for your readers. Alternate translation: [to the Midianite woman's stomach]
Support Reference: Pronouns — When to Use Them

ULT **And the plague was restrained**
UST Then … stopped {getting sick with} the terrible disease that had made many of them sick

The expression **was restrained** is a passive verbal form. If it would be unnatural to use that form, you could express the idea in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: [God held back the plague]
Support Reference: Active or Passive

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Israel	Israelite
tent	tent
Israel	Israelite
plague	the terrible disease that had made many of them sick
Israel	Israelites

Numbers 25:9

ULT	UST
And the ones dying by the plague were 24,000.	*However, 24,000 people had already died from the terrible disease.*

ULT **24,000**
UST 24,000 people

You could translate the number **24,000** according to the conventions of your own language and culture. Alternate translation: [twenty-four thousand]
Support Reference: Numbers

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
plague	from the terrible disease

Numbers 25:10

ULT	UST
And Yahweh spoke to Moses, saying,	*Then Yahweh told Moses,*

> ULT **And Yahweh spoke to Moses, saying**
> UST Then Yahweh told Moses

The author is using the word **saying** to introduce a direct quotation. See how you translated **saying** in 1:1.

Support Reference: Quotations and Quote Margins

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Yahweh	Yahweh
Moses	Moses

Numbers 25:11

ULT	UST
"Phinehas the son of Eleazar, the son of Aaron, the priest, has returned my heat from upon the sons of Israel by him being jealous with my jealousy in their midst, and I did not finish the sons of Israel in my jealousy.	*"Aaron's grandson, Eleazar's son, Phinehas, the priest, wanted the Israelites to worship only me as strongly as I want the Israelites to worship only me. So, I am not angry with the Israelites any longer. Otherwise, I would have killed all of them because I want them to worship only me.*

ULT **has returned my heat**
UST So, I am not angry … any longer

Here Yahweh is speaking of his anger as if it were **heat** that could be turned back. If this meaning would not be clear in your language, you could use a comparable expression or you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [has turned away my anger]
Support Reference: Metaphor

ULT **with my jealousy**
UST as strongly as I want the Israelites to worship only me

Here, Yahweh could be using the possessive form to refer to: (1) the **jealousy** that he himself feels. Alternate translation: [with the jealousy that I have]; or (2) **jealousy** for the sake of him, Yahweh. Alternate translation: [with jealousy for me]
Support Reference: Possession

ULT **by him being jealous {with} my jealousy**
UST wanted the Israelites to worship only me as strongly as I want the Israelites to worship only me

Yahweh is repeating words with related meanings, **jealous** and **jealousy**, as a common expression of the culture to emphasize how strongly Phinehas was jealous for Yahweh. If this phrase does not have that meaning for your readers, you could use a comparable expression from your language that does have that meaning, or you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [by him being intensely zealous for my honor]
Support Reference: Idiom

ULT **and I did not finish the sons of Israel in my jealousy**
UST Otherwise, I would have killed all of them because I want them to worship only me

The words **and I did not finish** introduce the result of Phinehas being jealous with Yahweh's jealousy. Use a connector in your language that makes it clear that what follows is a result of what came before. Alternate translation: [and so I did not destroy the sons of Israel in my jealousy]
Support Reference: Connect — Reason-and-Result Relationship

ULT **in my jealousy**
UST because I want them to worship only me

Yahweh is using **in my jealousy** as a common expression of the culture to refer to his zeal that his people worship him alone. If this phrase does not have that meaning for your readers, you could use a comparable expression from your language that does have that meaning, or you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [in my zeal that they worship me alone]
Support Reference: Idiom

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Phinehas	Phinehas
Eleazar	Eleazar's
Aaron	Aaron's
priest	priest
has returned	So … not … any longer
my heat	I am … angry
Israel	Israelites
jealous	wanted the Israelites to worship only me
jealousy	as strongly as I want the Israelites to worship only me
I did … finish	I would have killed
Israel	all of them
jealousy	because I want them to worship only me

Numbers 25:12

ULT	UST
Therefore say, ‘Behold me, giving to him my covenant of peace.	*So, proclaim that I am making an agreement with Phinehas to make things go well for him.*

ULT **Therefore**
UST So

The word translated as **Therefore** indicates that what follows is a result of what came before. Use a connector in your language that makes it clear that what follows is a result of what came before. Alternate translation: [Because he did that, say, ‘Behold me, giving to him my covenant of peace.]
Support Reference: Connect — Reason-and-Result Relationship

ULT **Behold me, giving to him my covenant of peace**
UST that I am making an agreement with Phinehas to make things go well for him

The words that Moses is to speak contain a quotation within a quotation. If it would be clearer in your language, you could translate this so that there is not a quotation within a quotation. Alternate translation: [Yahweh is giving to him his covenant of peace]
Support Reference: Quotes within Quotes

ULT **Behold me, giving to him**
UST that I am making … with Phinehas

Yahweh is using **Behold me, giving** as a common expression of the culture to indicate that he is about to do something, in this case, that he is now giving Phinehas his covenant. If this phrase does not have that meaning for your readers, you could use a comparable expression from your language that does have that meaning, or you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [I am about to give to him]
Support Reference: Idiom

ULT **my covenant of peace**
UST an agreement … to make things go well for him

If your language does not use an abstract noun for the idea of **peace**, you could express the same idea in another way. Alternate translation: [my covenant that he will prosper peacefully]
Support Reference: Abstract Nouns

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
covenant	an agreement
peace	to make things go well for him

Numbers 25:13

ULT	UST
And it shall be for him and for his seed after him a covenant of a priesthood of eternity, because he was jealous for his God, and he made atonement for the sons of Israel.'"	*The agreement means that he and his descendants will always be priests. I am making this agreement because Phinehas wanted the Israelites to worship only me, the God he worships. When he acted, I accepted what he did and removed what the Israelites had done wrong."*

ULT **and for his seed after him**
UST and his descendants

Here Yahweh is speaking of Phinehas's descendants as if they were his **seed**. Just as a plant grows from seed, so descendants come from a person. If this meaning would not be clear in your language, you could use a comparable expression or you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [and for his offspring who come after him]
Support Reference: Metaphor

ULT **a priesthood of eternity**
UST always … priests

If your language does not use an abstract noun for the idea of **priesthood**, you could express the same idea in another way. Alternate translation: [serving as priests forever]
Support Reference: Abstract Nouns

ULT **because he was jealous for his God**
UST I am making this agreement because Phinehas wanted the Israelites to worship only me, the God he worships

The word **because** indicates that what follows is a reason for what came before. Use a connector in your language that makes it clear that what follows is a reason for what came before.
Support Reference: Connect — Reason-and-Result Relationship

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
seed	and his descendants
covenant	The agreement means that
priesthood	priests
eternity	always
jealous	Phinehas wanted the Israelites to worship only
God	God
atonement	When he acted, I accepted what he did and removed what … had done wrong
Israel	Israelites

Numbers 25:14

ULT	UST
And the name of the man of Israel, the one being struck, who was struck with the Midianitess, was Zimri the son of Salu, a leader of a house of a father for the Simeonite.	*The name of the Israelite man whom Phinehas killed along with the Midianite woman was Zimri. He was Salu's son. He led one of the ancestral families that made up the Simeon tribe.*

ULT **the one being struck, who was struck**
UST whom {Phinehas} killed

The expressions **being struck** and **was struck** are passive verbal forms. If it would be unnatural to use those forms, you could express the idea in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: [the one whom Phinehas struck, whom he struck]
Support Reference: Active or Passive

ULT **was Zimri the son of Salu**
UST was Zimri. He was Salu's son

The words **Zimri** and **Salu** are the names of men.
Support Reference: How to Translate Names

ULT **a house of a father**
UST one of the ancestral families

The author is using **a house of a father** as a common expression of the culture to mean "clan" or "extended family." If this phrase does not have that meaning for your readers, you could use a comparable expression from your language that does have that meaning, or you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [an ancestral clan]
Support Reference: Idiom

ULT **for the Simeonite**
UST that made up the Simeon tribe

The author is not referring to a specific **Simeonite**. He means the Simeonites in general. If it would be helpful to your readers, you could use an expression that would be more natural in your language. Alternate translation: [for the Simeonites]
Support Reference: Generic Noun Phrases

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Israel	Israelite
leader	He led
house	one of the ancestral families

Numbers 25:15

ULT	UST
And the name of the woman, the one being struck, the Midianitess, was Cozbi the daughter of Zur. He was a head of peoples, a house of a father in Midian.	*The name of the Midianite woman whom Phinehas killed was Cozbi. She was Zur's daughter. Zur led one of the ancestral families that made up Midian.*

ULT **the one being struck, the Midianitess**
UST Midianite … whom {Phinehas} killed

The expression **being struck** is a passive verbal form. If it would be unnatural to use that form, you could express the idea in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: [the Midianite woman whom Phinehas struck]
Support Reference: Active or Passive

ULT **was Cozbi the daughter of Zur**
UST was Cozbi. She was Zur's daughter

The word **Cozbi** is the name of a woman, and the word **Zur** is the name of a man.
Support Reference: How to Translate Names

ULT **He**
UST Zur

The pronoun **He** refers to Zur, the father of Cozbi, not to Cozbi herself. It may be helpful to clarify this for your readers. Alternate translation: [Cozbi's father Zur]
Support Reference: Pronouns — When to Use Them

ULT **was a head of peoples, a house of a father in Midian**
UST led one of the ancestral families that made up Midian

Here, the word translated as **peoples** could refer to: (1) a division of a people group that is the same size as **a house of a father**. The phrase **a house of a father** explains for readers what **peoples** means. Alternate translation: [was a head of peoples, that is, a head of a house of a father in Midian]; or (2) a division of a people group that is made up of several individual "houses of a father." Zur would be the leader of several houses of a father. Alternate translation: [was a head of peoples, over several houses of a father in Midian]
Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

ULT **was a head of peoples**
UST led one of the ancestral families

Here the author is speaking of Zur as if he were the **head** of these people. In this culture, the head was thought of as the leading part of the body. If this meaning would not be clear in your language, you could use a comparable expression or you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [the ruler over peoples]
Support Reference: Metaphor

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
house	one of the ancestral families
Midian	Midian

Numbers 25:16

ULT	UST
And Yahweh spoke to Moses, saying,	*Then Yahweh told Moses,*

> ULT **And Yahweh spoke to Moses, saying**
> UST Then Yahweh told Moses

The author is using the word **saying** to introduce a direct quotation. See how you translated **saying** in 1:1.

Support Reference: Quotations and Quote Margins

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Yahweh	Yahweh
Moses	Moses

Numbers 25:18

ULT	UST
for they are opposing you by their deceptions with which they deceived you on the matter of Peor and on the matter of Cozbi, the daughter of the leader of Midian, their sister, the one being struck on the day of the plague on the matter of Peor."	*You must do that because they have acted against you by tricking you. They did that when they convinced the Israelites to worship the god Baal whom people worship at Peor. They also did when Cozbi visited the Israelite campsite. Her father led the Midianites, and she was one of their people. Phinehas killed her. That was when the Israelites were getting sick with a terrible disease when they worshiped the god Baal whom people worship at Peor."*

ULT **for**

UST You must do that because

The word translated as **for** indicates that what follows is the reason for the command that Yahweh gave. Use a connector in your language that makes it clear that what follows is a reason for what came before.

Support Reference: Connect — Reason-and-Result Relationship

ULT **you by their deceptions {with} which they deceived**

UST you by tricking

Yahweh is repeating words with related meanings, **deceptions** and **deceived**, as a common expression of the culture to emphasize how thoroughly the Midianites deceived the Israelites. If this phrase does not have that meaning for your readers, you could use a comparable expression from your language that does have that meaning, or you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [by thoroughly deceiving you]

Support Reference: Idiom

ULT **by their deceptions**

UST by tricking

If your language does not use an abstract noun for the idea of **deceptions**, you could express the same idea in another way. Alternate translation: [by their deceitful acts]

Support Reference: Abstract Nouns

ULT **on the matter of Peor and on the matter of Cozbi**

UST They did that when {they convinced the Israelites to worship the god Baal whom people worship} at Peor. {They also did} when Cozbi visited the Israelite campsite

Yahweh is using **on the matter of** as a common expression of the culture to mean "concerning" or "in connection with" something. If this phrase does not have that meaning for your readers, you could use a comparable expression from your language that does have that meaning, or you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [concerning Peor and concerning Cozbi … concerning Peor]

Support Reference: Idiom

ULT **their sister**
UST and she was one of their people

The pronoun **their** refers to the Midianites. It may be helpful to clarify this for your readers. Alternate translation: [the sister of the Midianites]
Support Reference: Pronouns — When to Use Them

ULT **the one being struck**
UST Phinehas killed her

The expression **being struck** is a passive verbal form. If it would be unnatural to use that form, you could express the idea in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: [the one whom Phinehas struck]
Support Reference: Active or Passive

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
deceptions	by tricking
deceived	by tricking
Peor	Peor
leader	led
Midian	Midianites
plague	the Israelites were getting sick with a terrible disease

Numbers 26

Numbers 26 Introduction

Numbers 26 Chapter Introduction

Structure and Formatting

In this chapter, Moses and Eleazar take a census of the Israelite men who are at least 20 years old and who can be soldiers. They count the Levites separately. This census shows that none of the men counted in the first census are still alive except for Moses, Caleb, and Joshua.

1. Moses and Eleazar count Israel's fighting men by tribe (1–51)
2. Yahweh explains how the land is to be divided (52–56)
3. The Levites are counted separately (57–62)
4. The count confirms that the earlier generation has died, except for Caleb and Joshua (63–65)

Religious and Cultural Concepts in This Chapter

Census

In this census, Moses and Eleazar list all the Israelite men who are able to fight or, in the case of the Levites, to serve at the sacred tent. They list the men by their clans, which are subgroups within tribes. While the author uses different words in this chapter, the general format is similar to chapter 1. See how you translated the census record there.

Subclans

For every tribe, the author lists major clans that make up that tribe. In some cases, the author also lists smaller groups within those clans. These smaller groups are sometimes called subclans. Consider what terminology you might use for major groups within a tribe and the smaller groups that make up those major groups.

Dividing the land

In 26:53–56, Yahweh gives Moses instructions on how to divide the land up among the tribes. He indicates that larger groups should receive more land than smaller groups. He also indicates that the Israelites should cast lots to see who gets what land. Scholars debate how these two strategies work together. It seems most probable that the Israelites cast lots to see where their land would be, and then they decided on the size of the area based on the size of the tribal group. The author does not directly state whether the lots were cast for each tribe, for each clan, or for each individual. Because the census earlier in the chapter focuses on individual clans, the UST indicates that these instructions are about clans.

Lots

In 26:53–56, Yahweh gives Moses instructions on how to divide up the land among the Israelites. These instructions include using lots. Using lots was a way to randomize decisions. Lots could be cast, which would mean rolling or throwing marked stones or pieces of wood to see which side would land upright. Lots could be drawn, which would mean picking marked items without looking at the marks. In this culture, people believed that the decisions, although random from a human perspective, were directed by God. Consider how you might refer to this way of making decisions, which removes human choice but leaves open divine choice.

The Levites

In 26:57–62. Moses and Eleazar count the Levites. The author states why the Levites are counted separately. They do not receive land, so they are not counted among the rest of the Israelites in this census. Additionally, every male who is at least one month old is counted, unlike the rest of the Israelites, who are counted if they are at least 20 years old. The placement of the Levites after the list of the rest of the Israelites shows that the Levites are set apart for God.

Translation Issues in This Chapter

Repetition and variation

Many of the entries in this list use the exact same wording. However, in some cases the wording is slightly different, with some words omitted or other words chosen instead. See the ULT for a representation of the differences. Unless the differences are significant, the UST generally models how to keep the entries similar.

Large numbers

The numbers in this chapter are all over 10,000. Consider how you would express large numbers in your language and use that form consistently in this chapter. See how you translated the large numbers in chapter 1.

Breaks in the list

In 26:8–11 and 26:19, the author interrupts the census list to give some details about specific people or groups within a tribe. Consider how you might introduce and format these breaks in the list.

Numbers 26:1

ULT	UST
And it happened after the plague that Yahweh spoke to Moses and to Eleazar the son of Aaron the priest, saying,	*Now after the Israelites stopped getting sick with the terrible disease, Yahweh told Moses and Aaron's son Eleazar, the priest,*

ULT **And it happened after the plague that … spoke**
UST Now after {the Israelites stopped getting sick with} the terrible disease … told

The author is using the words translated as **And it happened** to introduce a new event in the story. Use a word, phrase, or other method in your language that is natural for introducing a new event.
Support Reference: Introduction of a New Event

ULT **after the plague**
UST after {the Israelites stopped getting sick with} the terrible disease

The implication is that **the plague** is the deadly plague that Yahweh sent among the Israelites when they worshiped the Baal of Peor, as the previous chapter describes. You could include this information if that would be helpful to your readers. Alternate translation: [after the plague brought on by the people's worship of the Baal of Peor]
Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

ULT **that Yahweh spoke to Moses and to Eleazar the son of Aaron the priest, saying**
UST Yahweh told Moses and Aaron's son Eleazar, the priest

Here and throughout the chapter, the term **saying** introduces a direct quotation. See how you translated **saying** in 1:1.
Support Reference: Quotations and Quote Margins

ULT **Eleazar the son of Aaron the priest**
UST Aaron's son Eleazar, the priest

The author is not distinguishing this **Eleazar** from another Eleazar who is not **the son of Aaron the priest**. The author is reminding his readers that this Eleazar was the son of Aaron who had succeeded him as priest. Be sure that this is clear in your translation. Alternate translation: [Eleazar, who was the son of Aaron and who had become the priest]
Support Reference: Distinguishing Versus Informing or Reminding

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
plague	the Israelites stopped getting sick with the terrible disease
Yahweh	Yahweh
Moses	Moses
Eleazar	Eleazar
Aaron	Aaron's
priest	priest

Numbers 26:2

ULT	UST
“Lift up the head of all the congregation of the sons of Israel, from a son of 20 years and upward, according to the house of their fathers, everyone who goes out to war in Israel.”	*“Count all the men among the whole Israelite community. List them by their ancestral families. Only include the men who are at least 20 years old and can be soldiers.”*

ULT **Lift up the head of all the congregation of the sons of Israel**
UST Count all the men among the whole Israelite community

Yahweh is using **Lift up the head of all the congregation** as a common expression of the culture to mean “take a census of all the congregation.” If this phrase does not have that meaning for your readers, you could use a comparable expression from your language that does have that meaning, or you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [Count the total number of all the congregation of the sons of Israel]
Support Reference: Idiom

ULT **from a son of 20 years and upward**
UST Only include the men who are at least 20 years old

Yahweh is using **from a son of 20 years and upward** as a common expression of the culture to mean “who are 20 years old or older.” If this phrase does not have that meaning for your readers, you could use a comparable expression from your language that does have that meaning, or you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [from those who have reached the age of 20 and beyond]
Support Reference: Idiom

ULT **according to the house of their fathers**
UST List them by their ancestral families

Here, **house** represents “extended family.” If it would be helpful in your language, you could use an equivalent expression or plain language. Alternate translation: [according to their extended families]
Support Reference: Metonymy

ULT **everyone who goes out to war in Israel**
UST and can be soldiers

Yahweh is using **everyone who goes out to war in Israel** as a common expression of the culture to mean “every man in Israel who is able to serve as a soldier.” If this phrase does not have that meaning for your readers, you could use a comparable expression from your language that does have that meaning, or you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [everyone in Israel who is able to serve as a soldier]
Support Reference: Idiom

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
congregation	community
Israel	Israelite
years	years
house	List them by their ancestral families
Israel	and can be soldiers

Numbers 26:3

ULT	UST
And Moses spoke and Eleazar the priest to them in the plains of Moab beside the Jordan at Jericho, saying,	*At that time, the Israelites were in the flatlands that were part of Moab. They were on the east side of the Jordan River, across from Jericho. Moses and Eleazar the priest told the Israelites,*

ULT **And Moses spoke and Eleazar the priest**
UST Moses and Eleazar the priest told

If it would be more natural in your language, you may want to put the information about **Eleazar the priest** with the information about **Moses**. Alternate translation: [And Moses and Eleazar the priest spoke to them]
Support Reference: Information Structure

ULT **to them**
UST the Israelites

The pronoun **them** refers to the sons of Israel, whom Yahweh had told Moses and Eleazar to count. It may be helpful to clarify this for your readers. Alternate translation: [to the people of Israel]
Support Reference: Pronouns — When to Use Them

ULT **beside the Jordan {at} Jericho**
UST They were on the {east} side of the Jordan River, across from Jericho

The implication is that the Israelites were camped on the eastern side of the Jordan River, across the river from the city of Jericho. You could include this information if that would be helpful to your readers. Alternate translation: [beside the Jordan River on the side opposite the city of Jericho]
Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Moses	Moses
Eleazar	Eleazar
priest	priest
Moab	Moab
Jordan	Jordan River
Jericho	Jericho

Numbers 26:4

ULT	UST
“From a son of 20 years and upward, just as Yahweh commanded Moses.” And the sons of Israel, the ones coming out from the land of Egypt:	*“We are going to count all the men who are at least 20 years old. We will do exactly what Yahweh told Moses to do.” They did that. So, what follows is the record of the Israelites who left Egypt.*

ULT **From a son of 20 years and upward, just as Yahweh commanded Moses**
UST We are going to count all the men who are at least 20 years old. {We will do} exactly what Yahweh told Moses to do

Moses is leaving out some of the words that in many languages a sentence would need in order to be complete. You can supply these words from the context if that would be clearer in your language. Alternate translation: [Take a census of the people from a son of 20 years and upward, just as Yahweh commanded Moses]
Support Reference: Ellipsis

ULT **just as Yahweh commanded Moses**
UST We will do exactly what Yahweh told Moses to do

Moses is speaking of himself in the third person as **Moses** to show humility. If it would be helpful in your language, you could translate this in a humble form in the first person. Alternate translation: [just as Yahweh commanded me]
Support Reference: First, Second or Third Person

ULT **From a son of 20 years and upward, just as Yahweh commanded Moses.” And the sons of Israel, the ones coming out from the land of Egypt**
UST We are going to count all the men who are at least 20 years old. {We will do} exactly what Yahweh told Moses {to do}.” {They did that. So, what follows is the record of} the Israelites who left Egypt

Here, the quote could end with: (1) **Moses**. See ULT. (2) **upward**. Alternate translation: [“From a son of 20 years and upward,” just as Yahweh commanded Moses. And the sons of Israel, the ones coming out from the land of Egypt:]; or (3) **Egypt**. Alternate translation: [“From a son of 20 years and upward, just as Yahweh commanded Moses and the sons of Israel, the ones coming out from the land of Egypt.”]
Support Reference: Quotations and Quote Margins

ULT **And the sons of Israel, the ones coming out from the land of Egypt**
UST They did that. So, what follows is the record of the Israelites who left Egypt

The implication is that what follows is the record of the counting of **the sons of Israel**, the ones who had come out of Egypt. You could include this information if that would be helpful to your readers. Alternate translation: [And this is the record of the counting of the sons of Israel, the ones coming out from the land of Egypt:]
Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
years	years
Yahweh	Yahweh
Moses	Moses
Israel	Israelites
land	Egypt
Egypt	Egypt

Numbers 26:5

ULT	UST
Reuben was the firstborn of Israel. The sons of Reuben: Hanoch, the clan of the Hanochite; of Pallu, the clan of the Palluite;	*The firstborn son of Jacob, whose other name was Israel, was Reuben. The four tribal groups that descended from Reuben were the descendants of Hanoch, the descendants of Pallu,*

ULT **Reuben {was} the firstborn of Israel**
UST The firstborn son of {Jacob, whose other name was} Israel, was Reuben

The implication is that **Israel** here is the man Jacob, who was also named Israel, and that **Reuben** was his oldest son. You could include this information if that would be helpful to your readers. Alternate translation: [Reuben was the oldest son of Jacob, who was also called Israel]
Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

ULT **The sons of Reuben: Hanoch, the clan of the Hanochite**
UST The four tribal groups that descended from Reuben were the descendants of Hanoch

The author is leaving out some of the words that in many languages a sentence would need in order to be complete. You can supply these words from the context if that would be clearer in your language. Alternate translation: [The sons of Reuben were these: of Hanoch, the clan of the Hanochite]
Support Reference: Ellipsis

ULT **Hanoch**
UST were the descendants of Hanoch

The word **Hanoch** is the name of a man.
Support Reference: How to Translate Names

ULT **the clan of the Hanochite**
UST were the descendants of Hanoch

The author is using the possessive form **the clan of the Hanochite** to describe the clan that was descended from Hanoch. If a speaker of your language would not use the possessive form for this, you could express this idea in another way. Alternate translation: [the clan descended from Hanoch]
Support Reference: Possession

ULT **the clan of the Hanochite**
UST were the descendants of Hanoch

The author is not referring to a specific **Hanochite**. He means Hanochites in general, that is, all the people descended from Hanoch. If it would be helpful to your readers, you could use an expression that would be more natural in your language. Alternate translation: [the clan of the Hanochites]
Support Reference: Generic Noun Phrases

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Reuben	Reuben
firstborn	firstborn
Israel	Israel
Reuben	Reuben
Hanoch	were the descendants of Hanoch
clan	were the descendants of Hanoch
clan	the descendants of Pallu

Numbers 26:7

ULT	UST
These were the clans of the Reubenite. And their counted ones were 43,730.	*Moses and Eleazar listed 43,730 men from these four tribal groups that descended from Reuben.*

ULT **And their counted ones were 43,730**

UST Moses and Eleazar listed 43,730 men

The expression **their counted ones** is a passive verbal form. If it would be unnatural to use that form, you could express the idea in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: [And the men whom Moses and Eleazar counted from them numbered 43,730]

Support Reference: Active or Passive

ULT **43,730**

UST 43,730 men

Translate this number according to the conventions of your own language and culture. Alternate translation: [forty-three thousand seven hundred thirty]

Support Reference: Numbers

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
clans	from … four tribal groups

Numbers 26:9

ULT	UST
And the sons of Eliab: Nemuel and Dathan and Abiram. It is Dathan and Abiram, the called ones of the congregation, who fought against Moses and against Aaron in the congregation of Korah when they fought against Yahweh.	*Eliab had three sons, whose names were Nemuel, Dathan and Abiram. The Israelites had chosen Dathan and Abiram from the community to lead them. However, they joined the community that Korah assembled to oppose Moses and Aaron. When they did that, they opposed Yahweh.*

ULT **Nemuel and Dathan and Abiram**

UST whose names were Nemuel, Dathan and Abiram

The words **Nemuel**, **Dathan**, and **Abiram** are the names of men.

Support Reference: How to Translate Names

ULT **It {is} Dathan and Abiram, the called ones of the congregation, who fought against Moses and against Aaron in the congregation of Korah**

UST The Israelites had chosen Dathan and Abiram from the community {to lead them}. {However,} they joined the community that Korah assembled to oppose Moses and Aaron

Here Moses is providing background information to help readers understand what happens next in the story. In your translation, introduce this information in a way that would be natural in your own language and culture.

Support Reference: Background Information

ULT **the called ones of the congregation**

UST The Israelites had chosen … from the community to lead them

The expression **the called ones** is a passive verbal form. If it would be unnatural to use that form, you could express the idea in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: [the ones whom the congregation summoned]

Support Reference: Active or Passive

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
called	The Israelites had chosen … to lead them
congregation	community
Moses	Moses
Aaron	Aaron
congregation	community
Korah	Korah
Yahweh	Yahweh

Numbers 26:10

ULT	UST
And the earth opened its mouth and swallowed them and Korah when the congregation died, when the fire ate 250 men, and they were for a sign.	*Then the ground broke open, and they and Korah fell into the hole. That was when fire destroyed 250 men, and the community that Korah assembled died. What happened to them showed the Israelites what happens when people oppose Yahweh.*

ULT **And the earth opened its mouth and swallowed them**
UST Then the ground broke open, and they … fell into the hole

The author is speaking of **the earth** as if it were a living thing that could open its mouth and swallow people. If it would be helpful in your language, you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [And a large crack opened in the ground and covered over them]
Support Reference: Personification

ULT **and swallowed them and Korah when the congregation died**
UST and they and Korah fell into the hole … and the community {that Korah assembled} died

The word translated as **when** indicates that **the congregation died** at the same time that **the earth opened its mouth and swallowed them and Korah**. If it would be helpful to your readers, you could describe the time relationship more explicitly. Alternate translation: [and swallowed them and Korah at the same time that the congregation died]
Support Reference: Connect — Simultaneous Time Relationship

ULT **and swallowed them**
UST and they … fell into the hole

The pronoun **them** refers to Dathan and Abiram, whom the author named in the previous verse. It may be helpful to clarify this for your readers. Alternate translation: [and swallowed Dathan and Abiram and Korah]
Support Reference: Pronouns — When to Use Them

ULT **when the fire ate 250 men**
UST That was when fire destroyed 250 men

The author is speaking of **the fire** as if it were a living thing that could eat people. If it would be helpful in your language, you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [when the fire destroyed 250 men]
Support Reference: Personification

ULT **250**
UST 250

Translate this number according to the conventions of your own language and culture. Alternate translation: [two hundred fifty]
Support Reference: Numbers

ULT **and they were for a sign**

UST What happened to them showed the Israelites what happens when people oppose Yahweh

Here the author is speaking as if what happened to these men were **a sign** that warned other people. If this meaning would not be clear in your language, you could use a comparable expression or you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [and what happened to them warned other people]

Support Reference: Metaphor

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
earth	the ground
Korah	Korah
congregation	community
sign	showed the Israelites what happens when people oppose Yahweh

Numbers 26:11

ULT	UST
And the sons of Korah did not die.	*However, not all of the descendants of Korah died at that time.*

ULT **And the sons of Korah**

UST However … all of the descendants of Korah

Here, the word **sons** could: (1) refer to all the descendants of Korah. Alternate translation: [And Korah's offspring] or [And those descended from Korah]; or (2) refer specifically to Korah's direct children. Alternate translation: [And Korah's children]

Support Reference: Metaphor

ULT **And the sons of Korah did not die**

UST However, not all of the descendants of Korah died at that time

The author uses the word **And** here to indicate a contrast between the people who died with Korah and **the sons of Korah**. In your translation, indicate this contrast in a way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: [The sons of Korah, however, did not die]

Support Reference: Connect — Contrast Relationship

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Korah	Korah

Numbers 26:19

ULT	UST
The sons of Judah were Er and Onan, and Er died and Onan in the land of Canaan.	*Judah had two sons whose names were Er and Onan. However, they died in Canaan and had no descendants.*

ULT **The sons of Judah {were} Er and Onan, and Er died and Onan in the land of Canaan**
UST Judah had two sons whose names were Er and Onan. However, they died in Canaan and had no descendants

Here the author is providing background information to help readers understand what happens next in the story. In your translation, introduce this information in a way that would be natural in your own language and culture.
Support Reference: Background Information

ULT **were Er and Onan**
UST whose names were Er and Onan

The words **Er** and **Onan** are the names of men.
Support Reference: How to Translate Names

ULT **and Er died and Onan**
UST However, they died … and had no descendants

The author is leaving out some of the words that in many languages a sentence would need in order to be complete. You can supply these words from the context if that would be clearer in your language. Alternate translation: [and Er died and Onan died]
Support Reference: Ellipsis

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Judah	Judah
land	in Canaan
Canaan	Canaan

Numbers 26:23

ULT	UST
The sons of Issachar according to their clans: Tola, the clan of the Tolaite; of Puvah, the clan of the Punite;	*The four tribal groups that descended from Issachar were the descendants of Tola, the descendants of Puvah,*

ULT **of Puvah, the clan of the Punite**
UST were the descendants of Tola, the descendants of Puvah

The word **Puvah** is the name of a man, and **Punite** is the name of the clan that descended from him.

Support Reference: How to Translate Names

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Issachar	Issachar
clans	The {four} tribal groups
clan	were the descendants of Tola
clan	the descendants of Puvah

Numbers 26:28

ULT	UST
The sons of Joseph according to their clans: Manasseh and Ephraim.	*The tribal groups that descended from Joseph divided themselves into two tribes. These tribes were Manasseh and Ephraim.*

ULT **The sons of Joseph according to their clans: Manasseh and Ephraim**
UST The tribal groups that descended from Joseph {divided themselves into two tribes. These tribes were} Manasseh and Ephraim

The implication is that the descendants of Joseph formed two tribes, which were named after his two sons **Manasseh and Ephraim**. You could include this information if that would be helpful to your readers. Alternate translation: [The descendants of Joseph, grouped by their clans, made up two tribes named for his sons Manasseh and Ephraim.]
Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Joseph	Joseph
clans	The tribal groups
Manasseh	Manasseh
Ephraim	Ephraim

Numbers 26:33

ULT	UST
And Zelophehad the son of Hepher, there were not sons for him, but daughters. And the name of the daughters of Zelophehad were Mahlah, and Noah, Hoglah, Milcah, and Tirzah.	*Now Hepher had a son whose name was Zelophehad. Zelophehad did not have any sons. He had only daughters. Their names were Mahlah, Noah, Hoglah, Milcah, and Tirzah.*

ULT **And Zelophehad the son of Hepher, there were not sons for him**
UST Now Hepher had a son {whose name was} Zelophehad. Zelophehad did not have any sons

If it would be more natural in your language, you may want to put the information about **Zelophehad the son of Hepher** with the information about **there were not sons for him**. Alternate translation: [And Zelophehad the son of Hepher had no sons]
Support Reference: Information Structure

ULT **And Zelophehad the son of Hepher**
UST Now Hepher had a son {whose name was} Zelophehad

Here the author is introducing **Zelophehad the son of Hepher** and his daughters as new participants in the story. Your language may have its own way of introducing new participants that you can use in your translation. Alternate translation: [Now as for a certain man named Zelophehad the son of Hepher]
Support Reference: Introduction of New and Old Participants

ULT **there were not sons for him**
UST Zelophehad did not have any sons

The implication is that Zelophehad had no sons who could receive a share of the land after him. You could include this information if that would be helpful to your readers. Alternate translation: [there were no sons for him to inherit a share of the land]
Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

ULT **And the name of the daughters of Zelophehad**
UST Their names

In this verse, the word **name** is singular in form, but it refers to all five daughters of Zelophehad as a group. If it would be helpful in your language, you could use the plural form of "name." Alternate translation: [the names of the daughters of Zelophehad]
Support Reference: Collective Nouns

ULT **were Mahlah, and Noah, Hoglah, Milcah, and Tirzah**
UST were Mahlah, Noah, Hoglah, Milcah, and Tirzah

The words **Mahlah**, **Noah**, **Hoglah**, **Milcah**, and **Tirzah** are the names of women.
Support Reference: How to Translate Names

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Tirzah	Tirzah

Numbers 26:46

ULT	UST
And the name of the daughter of Asher was Serah.	*Also, Asher had a daughter whose name was Serah.*

> ULT **was Serah**
> UST was Serah

The word **Serah** is the name of a woman.

Support Reference: How to Translate Names

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Asher	Asher

Numbers 26:51

ULT	UST
These were the counted ones of the sons of Israel: 601,730.	*Moses and Eleazar listed 601,730 Israelite men in total.*

ULT **601,730**
UST 601,730

Translate this number according to the conventions of your own language and culture.
Alternate translation: [six hundred and one thousand, seven hundred and thirty]
Support Reference: Numbers

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Israel	Israelite

Numbers 26:53

ULT	UST
"To these the land shall be divided in an inheritance by the number of the names.	*"You must assign an area within Canaan to each of those tribal groups. Use the number of people in each tribal group to decide which area each one will have.*

ULT To these
UST to each of those tribal groups

The pronoun **these** refers to the tribes of Israel whose clans the author has just listed. It may be helpful to clarify this for your readers. Alternate translation: [To these tribes]
Support Reference: Pronouns — When to Use Them

ULT the land shall be divided
UST You must assign an area within Canaan

The expression **shall be divided** is a passive verbal form. If it would be unnatural to use that form, you could express the idea in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: [you shall divide the land]
Support Reference: Active or Passive

ULT in an inheritance
UST which area each one will have

If your language does not use an abstract noun for the idea of **inheritance**, you could express the same idea in another way. Alternate translation: [so that they may inherit it]
Support Reference: Abstract Nouns

ULT by the number of the names
UST Use the number of people in each tribal group to decide

Here, **the names** represents "the people whom Moses and Eleazar counted." If it would be helpful in your language, you could use an equivalent expression or plain language. Alternate translation: [by the number of the people who were counted]
Support Reference: Metonymy

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
land	within Canaan
inheritance	which area each one will have

Numbers 26:54

ULT	UST
For the many you shall increase its inheritance, and for the few you shall decrease its inheritance. A man to the mouth of its counted ones, its inheritance shall be given.	*Tribal groups with many people should receive more land. Tribal groups with few people should receive less land. Each tribal group should receive its land according to how many people you and Eleazar listed for that group.*

ULT **its inheritance … its inheritance**
UST land … land

Here, Yahweh could be speaking about: (1) the clans of the Israelites that were listed earlier. Alternate translation: [that clan's inheritance … that clan's inheritance]; or (2) the tribes of the Israelites that were listed earlier. Alternate translation: [that tribe's inheritance … that tribe's inheritance]

Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

ULT **For the many you shall increase its inheritance, and for the few you shall decrease its inheritance**
UST Tribal groups with many people should receive more land. Tribal groups with few people should receive less land

Yahweh is using the adjectives **many** and **few** as nouns to mean certain kinds of groups. Your language may use adjectives in the same way. If not, you can translate these adjectives with equivalent phrases. Alternate translation: [For the numerous tribes you shall increase its inheritance, and for the small tribes you shall decrease its inheritance]

Support Reference: Nominal Adjectives

ULT **A man to the mouth of its counted ones**
UST Each tribal group … according to how many people you and Eleazar listed for that group

Yahweh is not referring to a specific **man**. He means each of the tribes in general. If it would be helpful to your readers, you could use an expression that would be more natural in your language. Alternate translation: [Each tribe to the mouth of its counted ones]

Support Reference: Generic Noun Phrases

ULT **to the mouth of its counted ones**
UST according to how many people you and Eleazar listed for that group

Yahweh is using **to the mouth of** as a common expression of the culture to mean "in proportion to." If this phrase does not have that meaning for your readers, you could use a comparable expression from your language that does have that meaning, or you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [in proportion to the number of those counted for it]

Support Reference: Idiom

ULT **its inheritance shall be given**
UST should receive its land

The expression **shall be given** is a passive verbal form. If it would be unnatural to use that form, you could express the idea in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: [you shall give its inheritance]

Support Reference: Active or Passive

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
inheritance	land
inheritance	land
inheritance	its land

Numbers 26:55

ULT	UST
Only by lots shall the land be divided. According to the names of the tribes of their fathers they shall inherit.	*However, you must use lots to determine randomly where each tribal group will receive its land. All the tribal groups that belong to the same ancestral tribe must receive land next to each other.*

ULT **Only by lots shall the land be divided**

UST However, you must use lots to determine randomly {where each tribal group} will receive its land

The implication is that Yahweh himself would decide by means of the **lots** how the land was to be divided among the tribes. You could include this information if that would be helpful to your readers. Alternate translation: [Only by lots, through which I myself will show my decision, shall the land be divided]

Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

ULT **shall the land be divided**

UST where each tribal group will receive its land

The expression **shall the land be divided** is a passive verbal form. If it would be unnatural to use that form, you could express the idea in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: [shall you divide the land]

Support Reference: Active or Passive

ULT **the tribes of their fathers**

UST All the tribal groups that belong to the same ancestral tribe

Yahweh is using **the tribes of their fathers** as a common expression of the culture to mean "the tribes that descended from their ancestors." If this phrase does not have that meaning for your readers, you could use a comparable expression from your language that does have that meaning, or you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [the tribes descended from their ancestors]

Support Reference: Idiom

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
lots	lots
land	land
tribes	tribal
inherit	must receive land next to each other

Numbers 26:56

ULT	UST
Upon the mouth of the lot shall its inheritance be divided, between the many to the few.”	*You must use lots to determine randomly where each tribal group will receive its land. Tribal groups with many people should receive more land, and tribal groups with few people should receive less land.”*

ULT **Upon the mouth of the lot**

UST You must use lots to determine randomly

Here, **the mouth of the lot** represents “the decision that the lot indicates.” If it would be helpful in your language, you could use an equivalent expression or plain language. Alternate translation: [According to the decision that the lot indicates]

Support Reference: Metonymy

ULT **shall its inheritance be divided**

UST where each tribal group will receive its land

The expression **shall its inheritance be divided** is a passive verbal form. If it would be unnatural to use that form, you could express the idea in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: [you shall divide its inheritance]

Support Reference: Active or Passive

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
lot	lots
inheritance	its land

Numbers 26:57

ULT	UST
And these were the counted ones of the Levite according to their clans: of Gershon, the clan of the Gershonite; of Kohath, the clan of the Kohathite; of Merari, the clan of the Merarite.	*The Israelites also listed the Levite men. The three tribal groups that descended from Levi were the descendants of Gershon, the descendants of Kohath, and the descendants of Merari.*

ULT **were the counted ones of the Levite**

UST The Israelites also listed the Levite men … that descended from Levi

The author is not referring to a specific **Levite**. He means Levites in general. If it would be helpful to your readers, you could use an expression that would be more natural in your language. Alternate translation: [the counted ones of the Levites]

Support Reference: Generic Noun Phrases

ULT **of Gershon, the clan of the Gershonite; of Kohath, the clan of the Kohathite; of Merari, the clan of the Merarite**

UST were the descendants of Gershon, the descendants of Kohath, and the descendants of Merari

The words **Gershon**, **Kohath**, and **Merari** are the names of men, and **Gershonite**, **Kohathite**, and **Merarite** are the names of the clans that descended from them.

Support Reference: How to Translate Names

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Levite	Levi
clans	The {three} tribal groups
clan	were the descendants of Gershon
clan	the descendants of Kohath
clan	and the descendants of Merari

Numbers 26:58

ULT	UST
These were the clans of Levi: the clan of the Libnite, the clan of the Hebronite, the clan of the Mahlite, the clan of the Mushite, the clan of the Korahite. And Kohath fathered Amram.	*The people in those three Levite tribal groups further divided themselves into five groups. They were the descendants of Libni, the descendants of Hebron, the descendants of Mahli, the descendants of Mushi, and the descendants of Korah. Now Amram was Kohath's descendant.*

ULT **the Libnite … the Hebronite, the clan of the Mahlite, the clan of the Mushite, the clan of the Korahite**

UST the descendants of Libni, the descendants of Hebron, the descendants of Mahli, the descendants of Mushi, and the descendants of Korah

The implication is that each of these clans was named after an ancestor whom the author does not name here. You could include this information if that would be helpful to your readers. Alternate translation: [the clan descended from a man named Libni, the clan descended from a man named Hebron, the clan descended from a man named Mahli, the clan descended from a man named Mushi, the clan descended from a man named Korah]

Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

ULT **And Kohath fathered Amram**

UST Now Amram was Kohath's descendant

Here the author is providing background information to help readers understand what happens next in the story. In your translation, introduce this information in a way that would be natural in your own language and culture.

Support Reference: Background Information

ULT **And Kohath fathered Amram**

UST Now Amram was Kohath's descendant

This could mean: (1) that **Kohath** was an important ancestor of **Amram**. Alternate translation: [And Kohath was an ancestor of Amram]; or (2) that **Kohath** was Amram's father directly. Alternate translation: [And Kohath was Amram's father]

Support Reference: Kinship

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
clans	The people in those three … tribal groups
Levi	Levite
clan	the descendants of Libni
clan	the descendants of Mahli
clan	the descendants of Mahli
clan	the descendants of Mushi
clan	and the descendants of Korah
Korahite	Korah

Numbers 26:59

ULT	UST
And the name of the wife of Amram was Jochebed, a daughter of Levi, whom she bore to Levi in Egypt. And she bore to Amram Aaron and Moses and Miriam their sister.	*Amram had a wife whose name was Jochebed. She was a Levite, and her mother gave birth to her in Egypt. She and Amram had two sons, Aaron and Moses, and a daughter, Miriam.*

ULT **was Jochebed, a daughter of Levi**
UST was Jochebed. She was a Levite

The word **Jochebed** is the name of a woman.
Support Reference: How to Translate Names

ULT **a daughter of Levi, whom she bore to Levi in Egypt**
UST She was a Levite, and her mother gave birth to her in Egypt

This could mean: (1) that **Jochebed** was a descendant of **Levi**. Alternate translation: [a Levite, whom her mother bore to a Levite man in Egypt]; or (2) that **Jochebed** was an immediate daughter to **Levi**. Alternate translation: [Levi's daughter, whom her mother bore to Levi, her husband, in Egypt]
Support Reference: Kinship

ULT **whom she bore to Levi in Egypt**
UST She was a Levite, and her mother gave birth to her in Egypt

The pronoun **she** refers to the wife of Levi, whom the author does not name here. It may be helpful to clarify this for your readers. Alternate translation: [whom his wife bore to Levi in Egypt]
Support Reference: Pronouns — When to Use Them

ULT **And she bore to Amram**
UST She and Amram had

The pronoun **she** refers here to Jochebed rather than to the wife of Levi. It may be helpful to clarify this for your readers. Alternate translation: [And Jochebed bore to Amram]
Support Reference: Pronouns — When to Use Them

ULT **And she bore to Amram Aaron and Moses and Miriam their sister**
UST She and Amram had {two sons}, Aaron and Moses, and a daughter, Miriam

If it would be more natural in your language, you may want to put the information about **Aaron and Moses and Miriam their sister** before the information about **to Amram**. Alternate translation: [And she bore Aaron and Moses and Miriam their sister to Amram]
Support Reference: Information Structure

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Levi	Levite
bore	and her mother gave birth
Levi	Levite
Egypt	Egypt
bore	She … had
Aaron	Aaron
Moses	Moses
Miriam	Miriam

Numbers 26:60

ULT	UST
And were born to Aaron Nadab and Abihu, Eleazar and Ithamar.	*Aaron had sons whose names were Nadab, Abihu, Eleazar, and Ithamar.*

ULT **And were born to Aaron**
UST Aaron had sons

The expression **were born** is a passive verbal form. If it would be unnatural to use that form, you could express the idea in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: [And Aaron fathered]

Support Reference: Active or Passive

ULT **Nadab and Abihu, Eleazar and Ithamar**
UST whose names were Nadab, Abihu, Eleazar, and Ithamar

The words **Nadab**, **Abihu**, **Eleazar**, and **Ithamar** are the names of men.

Support Reference: How to Translate Names

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
And were born	had sons
Aaron	Aaron
Eleazar	Eleazar

Numbers 26:61

ULT	UST
And Nadab died and Abihu when they presented strange fire to the face of Yahweh.	*However, Nadab and Abihu died. That happened when they offered to Yahweh burning coals that he had not authorized.*

ULT **And Nadab died and Abihu**
UST However, Nadab and Abihu died

The author is leaving out some of the words that in many languages a sentence would need in order to be complete. You can supply these words from the context if that would be clearer in your language. Alternate translation: [And Nadab and Abihu died]
Support Reference: Ellipsis

ULT **strange fire**
UST burning coals that he had not authorized

The expression **strange fire** refers to a kind of burning coals that Yahweh had not authorized for use in his presence. If your readers would not be familiar with what **strange fire** is, you could use the name of a similar thing that your readers would recognize, or you could use a more general term. Alternate translation: [unauthorized fire]
Support Reference: Translate Unknowns

ULT **to the face of Yahweh**
UST to Yahweh

Here, **the face of Yahweh** represents "the presence of Yahweh." If it would be helpful in your language, you could use an equivalent expression or plain language. Alternate translation: [in the presence of Yahweh]
Support Reference: Metonymy

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Yahweh	Yahweh

Numbers 26:62

ULT	UST
And their counted ones were 23,000, every male from a son of a month and upward. For they were not counted in the midst of the sons of Israel, because an inheritance in the midst of the sons of Israel was not given to them.	*Moses and Eleazar listed 23,000 Levite men who were at least one month old. Now the Levites did not receive any land like the rest of the Israelites did. So, Moses and Eleazar listed the Levite men separately from the rest of the Israelite men.*

ULT **23,000**
UST 23,000

Translate this number according to the conventions of your own language and culture. Alternate translation: [twenty-three thousand]
Support Reference: Numbers

ULT **For they were not counted**
UST Now … Moses and Eleazar listed {the Levite men} separately

The word translated as **For** indicates that what follows is a reason for what came before. Use a connector in your language that makes it clear that what follows is a reason for what came before. Alternate translation: [This was because they were not counted]
Support Reference: Connect — Reason-and-Result Relationship

ULT **they were not counted**
UST Moses and Eleazar listed {the Levite men} separately

The expression **they were not counted** is a passive verbal form. If it would be unnatural to use that form, you could express the idea in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: [no one counted them]
Support Reference: Active or Passive

ULT **an inheritance in the midst of the sons of Israel was not given to them**
UST the Levites did not receive any land like the rest of the Israelites did

The expression **was not given** is a passive verbal form. If it would be unnatural to use that form, you could express the idea in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: [Yahweh did not give them an inheritance in the midst of the sons of Israel]
Support Reference: Active or Passive

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
month	month
Israel	Israelite
inheritance	any land
Israel	Israelites

Numbers 26:63

ULT	UST
These were the counted ones of Moses and Eleazar the priest, who counted the sons of Israel in the plains of Moab beside the Jordan at Jericho.	*Those were all the Israelite men whom Moses and Eleazar the priest listed. They listed them when the Israelites were in the flatlands that were part of Moab. They were on the east side of the Jordan River, across from Jericho.*

ULT **These {were} the counted ones of Moses and Eleazar the priest, who counted the sons of Israel in the plains of Moab beside the Jordan {at} Jericho**

UST Those were all the Israelite men whom Moses and Eleazar the priest listed. They listed them when {the Israelites were} in the flatlands that were part of Moab. {They were} on the {east} side of the Jordan River, across from Jericho

This sentence is a comment about what happened after the story as a result of the events within the story itself. This signals the end of a story. Use the natural form in your language for expressing the conclusion of a story. Alternate translation: [So that is the record of all those whom Moses and Eleazar the priest counted when they counted the sons of Israel in the plains of Moab beside the Jordan at Jericho]

Support Reference: End of Story

ULT **were the counted ones of Moses and Eleazar the priest**

UST all the Israelite men whom Moses and Eleazar the priest listed

Moses is using the possessive form **the counted ones of Moses and Eleazar the priest** to describe the people whom he and Eleazar the priest counted. If a speaker of your language would not use the possessive form for this, you could express this idea in another way. Alternate translation: [the people whom Moses and Eleazar the priest registered]

Support Reference: Possession

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Moses	Moses
Eleazar	Eleazar
priest	priest
Israel	them
Moab	Moab
Jordan	Jordan River
Jericho	Jericho

Numbers 26:64

ULT	UST
And among these there was not a man from the counted ones of Moses and Aaron the priest, who counted the sons of Israel in the wilderness of Sinai.	*Now Moses and Aaron the priest had previously listed all the Israelite men. They did that when the Israelites were in the desolate area around Sinai. None of those men were among the ones whom Moses and Eleazar the priest listed. They had all died.*

ULT **there was not a man from the counted ones of**

UST None of those men were

The author is emphasizing a positive meaning by using a negative word, **not**, together with a mild expression that is the opposite of the intended meaning. If it would be helpful in your language, you could emphasize the positive meaning in a strong way. Alternate translation: [every single one was missing from the counted ones]

Support Reference: Litotes

ULT **who counted the sons of Israel in the wilderness of Sinai**

UST had previously listed all the Israelite men. {They did that when the Israelites were} in the desolate area around Sinai

The implication is that this refers to the first census, which Moses and Aaron took in the wilderness of Sinai about 40 years earlier. You could include this information if that would be helpful to your readers. Alternate translation: [who had counted the sons of Israel in the wilderness of Sinai 40 years earlier]

Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Moses	Moses
Aaron	Aaron
priest	priest
Israel	Israelite
wilderness	They did that when the Israelites were in the desolate area
Sinai	Sinai

Numbers 26:65

ULT	UST
For Yahweh had said to them, "Dying, they shall die in the wilderness." And a man was not left from them, except Caleb the son of Jephunneh and Joshua the son of Nun.	*That happened because Yahweh had told them, "You will all die in this desolate area!" So, only two of them were still alive. Those two were Jephunneh's son, Caleb, and Nun's son, Joshua.*

ULT **For Yahweh had said to them**
UST That happened because Yahweh had told them

The word translated as **For** indicates that what follows is a reason for what came before. Use a connector in your language that makes it clear that what follows is a reason for what came before. Alternate translation: [This was because Yahweh had said to them]
Support Reference: Connect — Reason-and-Result Relationship

ULT **Dying, they shall die in the wilderness**
UST You will all die in this desolate area

The implication is that Yahweh had declared this when the Israelites refused to enter the land of Canaan, as an earlier chapter describes. You could include this information if that would be helpful to your readers. Alternate translation: [Dying, they shall die in the wilderness because they refused to enter the land of Canaan]
Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

ULT **And a man was not left from them, except Caleb the son of Jephunneh and Joshua the son of Nun**
UST So, only two of them were still alive. Those two were Jephunneh's son, Caleb, and Nun's son, Joshua

If it would appear in your language that the author was making a statement and then contradicting it, you could reword this as a positive statement. Alternate translation: [And only Caleb the son of Jephunneh and Joshua the son of Nun were left from them]
Support Reference: Connect — Exception Clauses

ULT **And a man was not left from them**
UST So … two of them were still alive

The expression **was not left** is a passive verbal form. If it would be unnatural to use that form, you could express the idea in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: [And not a man from them remained]
Support Reference: Active or Passive

ULT **the son of Jephunneh and Joshua the son of Nun**
UST Jephunneh's son … and Nun's son, Joshua

The words **Jephunneh** and **Nun** are the names of men.
Support Reference: How to Translate Names

> ULT **Dying, they shall die**
> UST You will all die

Yahweh is repeating forms of the verb **die** in order to intensify his expression of the idea that it conveys. If your language can repeat words for intensification, it would be appropriate to do that here in your translation. If not, your language may have another way of expressing the intensification. Alternate translation: [They shall certainly die]

Support Reference: Reduplication

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Yahweh	Yahweh
wilderness	in this desolate area
Caleb	Caleb
Joshua	Joshua

Numbers 27

Numbers 27 Introduction

Numbers 27 Chapter Introduction

Structure and Formatting

This chapter explains how a man's daughters can inherit his property if he has no sons. It also describes how Yahweh chooses Joshua to lead Israel after Moses.

1. Zelophehad's daughters ask to inherit their father's property, and Yahweh gives a law about inheritance (1–11)
2. Yahweh tells Moses that he will see the Promised Land but will not enter it (12–14)
3. Moses asks for a new leader, and Yahweh chooses Joshua (15–23)

Religious and Cultural Concepts in This Chapter

Children and inheritance

In this culture, when a father died, his sons usually inherited his land and property. This practice maintained land and property within one group that was descended from a single ancestor. In this chapter, the daughters of a man who had no sons make a request. They want to inherit their father's land and property. That way, a portion of their tribe's land will continue to belong to the descendants of their father, just like it will for their father's brothers. Yahweh agrees that this is the right thing to do. Daughters should inherit their father's land and property if there are no sons. Only if there are also no daughters should the land and property be inherited by other relatives, like brothers or uncles.

Commissioning Joshua

When Moses learns that he will soon die, he asks Yahweh to appoint a leader who will replace him. Yahweh tells Moses to commission Joshua. Joshua will only share some of Moses' glory, and he will have to communicate with God through the high priest instead of directly. However, he will be the next leader of the Israelites. Moses signifies this by laying his hands on Joshua.

Translation Issues in This Chapter

When does the story in 27:12–23 happen?

The Hebrew conjunction that begins the story in 27:12 does not indicate that the events narrated in this story happened immediately after the events in the story in 27:1–11. These events may have happened before or after daughters of Zelophehad asked to inherit their father's land. Consider how you might introduce the story in 27:12–23 in a way that does not indicate that the events narrated in it immediately follow the events narrated in the previous story.

Numbers 27:1

ULT	UST
And the daughters of Zelophehad the son of Hepher, the son of Gilead, the son of Machir, the son of Manasseh, of the clans of Manasseh the son of Joseph, came near. And these were the names of his daughters: Mahlah, Noah and Hoglah and Milcah and Tirzah.	*Now a man whose name was Zelophehad had five daughters. Zelophehad's father was Hepher, his father was Gilead, his father was Machir, and his father was Manasseh. So, the daughters belonged to the tribal groups descended from Manasseh, who was Joseph's son. The names of the daughters were Mahlah, Noah, Hoglah, Milcah, and Tirzah. After Moses and Eleazar listed the Israelite men, they approached Moses and Eleazar.*

ULT **And the daughters of Zelophehad the son of Hepher, the son of Gilead, the son of Machir, the son of Manasseh, of the clans of Manasseh the son of Joseph, came near**

UST Now a man whose name was Zelophehad had {five} daughters. Zelophehad's father was Hepher, his father was Gilead, his father was Machir, and his father was Manasseh. So, the daughters belonged to the tribal groups descended from Manasseh, who was Joseph's son … After {Moses and Eleazar listed the Israelite men}, they approached Moses and Eleazar

Here the author is introducing **the daughters of Zelophehad** as new participants in the story. Your language may have its own way of introducing new participants that you can use in your translation. Alternate translation: [Now there was a man named Zelophehad, the son of Hepher, the son of Gilead, the son of Machir, the son of Manasseh, of the clans of Manasseh the son of Joseph, and his daughters came near]

Support Reference: Introduction of New and Old Participants

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Gilead	Gilead
Manasseh	Manasseh
clans	So, the daughters belonged to the tribal groups
Manasseh	Manasseh
Joseph	Joseph's
Tirzah	Tirzah

Numbers 27:2

ULT	UST
And they stood to the face of Moses and to the face of Eleazar the priest and to the face of the leaders and all the congregation at the opening of the tent of meeting, saying,	*They stood at the entrance to the sacred tent in the presence of Moses, Eleazar the priest, the men who led the Israelites, and the whole Israelite community. They said,*

ULT **to the face of Moses and to the face of Eleazar the priest and to the face of the leaders**
UST in the presence of Moses, Eleazar the priest, the men who led the Israelites

Here, **the face of** represents the presence of a person. If it would be helpful in your language, you could use an equivalent expression or plain language. Alternate translation: [before Moses and before Eleazar the priest and before the leaders]
Support Reference: Metonymy

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Moses	Moses
Eleazar	Eleazar
priest	priest
leaders	the men who led the Israelites
congregation	community
tent of meeting	to the sacred tent

Numbers 27:3

ULT	UST
“Our father died in the wilderness, and he was not in the midst of the congregation, the ones congregating against Yahweh, in the congregation of Korah. For in his sin he died, and sons were not for him.	*“Our father was not part of the community that Korah assembled to gather together to oppose Yahweh. He died in the desolate area because of what he himself had done wrong, not because he opposed Yahweh. Now he did not have any sons.*

ULT **and he was not in the midst of the congregation**
UST Our father was not part of the community

The pronoun **he** refers to Zelophehad, the father of these women. It may be helpful to clarify this for your readers. Alternate translation: [and Zelophehad was not in the midst of the congregation]

Support Reference: Pronouns — When to Use Them

ULT **and sons were not for him**
UST Now he did not have any sons

The implication is that Zelophehad had no sons who could receive his property. You could include this information if that would be helpful to your readers. Alternate translation: [and he had no sons to inherit his property]

Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
wilderness	in the desolate area
congregation	community
Yahweh	Yahweh
congregation	assembled
Korah	Korah
sin	what he himself had done wrong, not because he opposed Yahweh

Numbers 27:4

ULT	UST
Why should the name of our father be taken away from the midst of his clan because there is not for him a son? Give to us a possession in the midst of the brothers of our father.”	*So, you must assign to us the land that he would have received, just as our uncles and their descendants are receiving land. Otherwise, out of all the land that belongs to our tribal group, none of it will belong to a descendant from our father because he had no sons. That would not be right!”*

ULT **Why should the name of our father be taken away from the midst of his clan because there is not for him a son**

UST Otherwise, out of all the land that belongs to our tribal group, none of it will belong to a descendant from our father because he had no sons. That would not be right

The daughters of Zelophehad are using the question form to insist that it would be wrong for their father to be forgotten among his relatives just because he had no son. If a speaker of your language would not use the question form for that purpose, you could translate this as a statement or as an exclamation. Alternate translation: [The name of our father should not be taken away from the midst of his clan just because there is not for him a son!]

Support Reference: Rhetorical Question

ULT **Why should the name of our father be taken away from the midst of his clan**

UST Otherwise, out of all the land that belongs to our tribal group, none of it will belong to a descendant from our father … That would not be right

The expression **be taken away** is a passive verbal form. If it would be unnatural to use that form, you could express the idea in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: [Why should the name of our father disappear from the midst of his clan]

Support Reference: Active or Passive

ULT **should the name of our father be taken away from the midst of his clan**

UST Otherwise, out of all the land that belongs to our tribal group, none of it will belong to a descendant from our father

Here, **the name of our father** represents the memory of him and his continuing place among his relatives. If it would be helpful in your language, you could use an equivalent expression or plain language. Alternate translation: [should the memory of our father be lost from the midst of his clan]

Support Reference: Metonymy

ULT **Give to us a possession**

UST So, you must assign to us the land that he would have received

If your language does not use an abstract noun for the idea of **a possession**, you could express the same idea in another way. Alternate translation: [Give to us land that we may own]

Support Reference: Abstract Nouns

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
clan	all the land that belongs to our tribal group
possession	the land that he would have received

Numbers 27:5

ULT	UST
And Moses presented their judgment to the face of Yahweh.	*So Moses asked Yahweh what to do about what the women had requested.*

ULT **And Moses presented their judgment**

UST So Moses asked … what to do about what the women had requested

If your language does not use an abstract noun for the idea of **judgment**, you could express the same idea in another way. Alternate translation: [And Moses presented what they were requesting to be decided]

Support Reference: Abstract Nouns

ULT **to the face of Yahweh**

UST Yahweh

Here, **the face of** represents the presence of Yahweh. If it would be helpful in your language, you could use an equivalent expression or plain language. Alternate translation: [before Yahweh]

Support Reference: Metonymy

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Moses	Moses
judgment	about what the women had requested
Yahweh	Yahweh

Numbers 27:7

ULT	UST
“The daughters of Zelophehad are speaking rightly. Giving, you shall give to them a possession of an inheritance in the midst of the brothers of their father, and you shall pass the inheritance of their father to them.	*“What Zelophehad’s daughters have requested is correct. You must assign to them the land that their father would have received. They must surely receive land, just as their uncles and their descendants are receiving land.*

ULT **a possession of an inheritance**
UST land

If your language does not use abstract nouns for the ideas of **a possession** and **an inheritance**, you could express the same ideas in another way. Alternate translation: [land that they will own and that their descendants will inherit]
Support Reference: Abstract Nouns

ULT **a possession of an inheritance**
UST land

Yahweh is using the possessive form to describe a **possession** that is characterized by **an inheritance**. If a speaker of your language would not use the possessive form for this, you could express this idea in another way. Alternate translation: [an inherited possession]
Support Reference: Possession

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
possession	land
inheritance	land
inheritance	the land

Numbers 27:8

ULT	UST
And you shall speak to the sons of Israel, saying, 'A man, when he dies and there is not a son for him, then you shall pass his inheritance to his daughter.	*Also, tell this to the Israelite people: Suppose that a man dies without having any sons. If he has a daughter, she should receive the land he had.*

ULT **A man, when he dies and there is not a son for him**
UST Suppose that a man dies without having any sons

The implication is that the man has no son who could receive his property. You could include this information if that would be helpful to your readers. Alternate translation: [A man, when he dies and there is no son to receive his property]
Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

ULT **A man, when he dies and there is not a son for him**
UST Suppose that a man dies without having any sons

Yahweh is not referring to a specific **man**. He means men in general. If it would be helpful to your readers, you could use an expression that would be more natural in your language. Alternate translation: [Suppose a man dies and there is not a son for him]
Support Reference: Generic Noun Phrases

ULT **A man, when he dies**
UST Suppose that a man dies

If it would be more natural in your language, you may want to put the information about **A man** with the information about when **he dies**. Alternate translation: [When a man dies]
Support Reference: Information Structure

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Israel	Israelite
inheritance	the land he had

Numbers 27:11

ULT	UST
And if there are not brothers for his father, then you shall give his inheritance to his flesh, the nearest to him from his clan, and he shall possess it. And it shall be for the sons of Israel for a statute of judgment, just as Yahweh has commanded Moses.'"	*If he has no uncles, his closest relative from his tribal group should receive the land he had. All the Israelites must follow this rule. They must do what Yahweh told Moses that they should do."*

ULT **to his flesh**
UST relative

Here, **his flesh** represents the closest blood relative of a person. If it would be helpful in your language, you could use an equivalent expression or plain language. Alternate translation: [to his blood relative]
Support Reference: Metonymy

ULT **And it shall be for the sons of Israel for a statute of judgment**
UST All the Israelites must follow this rule

The pronoun **it** refers to the instructions about inheritance that Yahweh has just given. It may be helpful to clarify this for your readers. Alternate translation: [And these instructions shall be for the sons of Israel for a statute of judgment]
Support Reference: Pronouns — When to Use Them

ULT **for a statute of judgment**
UST this rule

If your language does not use abstract nouns for the ideas of **a statute** and **judgment**, you could express the same ideas in another way. Alternate translation: [for deciding cases legally]
Support Reference: Abstract Nouns

ULT **just as Yahweh has commanded Moses**
UST They must do what Yahweh told Moses that they should do

Yahweh is speaking of himself in the third person as **Yahweh**. If it would be helpful in your language, you could translate this in the first person. Alternate translation: [just as I, Yahweh, have commanded Moses]
Support Reference: First, Second or Third Person

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
inheritance	the land he had
clan	from his tribal group
and he shall possess	should receive
Israel	Israelites
statute	this rule
judgment	this rule
Yahweh	Yahweh
Moses	Moses

Numbers 27:13

ULT	UST
And you shall see it and be gathered to your peoples, also you, just as Aaron your brother was gathered,	*After you look at the land, you too, like your brother Aaron, will die and be with your ancestors who have already died.*

ULT **and be gathered to your peoples**
UST will {die and} be with your ancestors who have already died

The expression **be gathered** is a passive verbal form. If it would be unnatural to use that form, you could express the idea in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: [and go to be with your peoples]
Support Reference: Active or Passive

ULT **and be gathered to your peoples**
UST will {die and} be with your ancestors who have already died

Yahweh is referring to the death of Moses in a polite way by using the phrase **be gathered to your peoples**. Depending on what is helpful for your readers, you could use a polite way of referring to this in your language, or you could state this plainly. Alternate translation: [and then die]
Support Reference: Euphemism

ULT **your peoples**
UST your ancestors who have already died

Here Yahweh is using the plural **peoples** where he could have used the singular form. This suggests that he is using the plural form to refer to all of the relatives and ancestors of Moses who had already died. If it would be helpful in your language, you could use the singular and express this idea in another way. Alternate translation: [your people who died before you]
Support Reference: Unusual Uses of the Plural

ULT **just as Aaron your brother was gathered**
UST like your brother Aaron

The expression **was gathered** is a passive verbal form. If it would be unnatural to use that form, you could express the idea in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: [just as I gathered Aaron your brother]
Support Reference: Active or Passive

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
gathered	will {die and} be
Aaron	Aaron
gathered	like

Numbers 27:14

ULT	UST
just as you rebelled against my mouth in the wilderness of Zin, in the strife of the congregation, to consecrate me in the waters to their eyes." They are the waters of Meribah Kadesh, the wilderness of Zin.	*That will happen because you and Aaron disobeyed what I said to do at the desolate area of Zin. When the Israelite community argued with you, you did not show the Israelite people how holy I am when you provided water for them." That happened in the desolate area of Zin, at Meribah Kadesh, where the water gushed out of the rock.*

ULT **you rebelled against my mouth**

UST you and Aaron disobeyed what I said to do

Here, **my mouth** represents what Yahweh had commanded. If it would be helpful in your language, you could use an equivalent expression or plain language. Alternate translation: [you rebelled against my command]

Support Reference: Metonymy

ULT **in the strife of the congregation**

UST When the {Israelite} community argued with you

If your language does not use an abstract noun for the idea of **strife**, you could express the same idea in another way. Alternate translation: [when the congregation quarreled]

Support Reference: Abstract Nouns

ULT **to consecrate me**

UST you did not show … how holy I am

The implication is that Moses and Aaron were to honor Yahweh as holy while the people were watching. You could include this information if that would be helpful to your readers. Alternate translation: [to honor me as holy]

Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

ULT **to their eyes**

UST the Israelite people

Here, **their eyes** represents the watching presence of the people. If it would be helpful in your language, you could use an equivalent expression or plain language. Alternate translation: [in their sight]

Support Reference: Metonymy

ULT **They {are} the waters of Meribah Kadesh, the wilderness of Zin**

UST That happened in the desolate area of Zin, at Meribah Kadesh, {where} the water gushed out of the rock

Here the author is providing background information to help readers understand what happens next in the story. In your translation, introduce this information in a way that would be natural in your own language and culture.

Support Reference: Background Information

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
rebelled	you and Aaron disobeyed
wilderness	at the desolate area of
strife	When … argued with you
congregation	community
consecrate	you did not show … how holy I am
Meribah Kadesh	Meribah Kadesh
wilderness	in the desolate area of

Numbers 27:16

ULT	UST
“May Yahweh, the God of the spirits of all flesh, count a man over the congregation	*“Yahweh, you are the God who makes everything live. Please appoint someone to lead this community.*

ULT **May Yahweh, the God of the spirits of all flesh, count a man over the congregation**
UST Yahweh, you are the God who makes everything live. Please appoint someone to lead this community

The implication is that Moses is asking Yahweh to appoint a man to lead **the congregation**. You could include this information if that would be helpful to your readers. Alternate translation: [May Yahweh, the God of the spirits of all flesh, appoint a man to lead the congregation]

Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

ULT **the God of the spirits of all flesh**
UST you are the God who makes everything live

Here, **all flesh** represents all living creatures. If it would be helpful in your language, you could use an equivalent expression or plain language. Alternate translation: [the God of the spirits of all living creatures]

Support Reference: Metonymy

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Yahweh	Yahweh
God	God
spirits	who makes everything live
congregation	community

Numbers 27:17

ULT	UST
who will go out to their face and who will come in to their face, and who will bring them out and who will bring them in, and the congregation of Yahweh will not be like sheep that there is not a shepherd for them."	*This person will lead them when they fight battles and will bring them home safely. Otherwise, the community that worships you, Yahweh, would be without a leader, like a flock of sheep without a shepherd."*

ULT **who will go out to their face and who will come in to their face, and who will bring them out and who will bring them in**

UST This person will lead them when they fight battles and will bring them home safely

Moses is referring to all of the activities of leading the people by naming two major components, **go out** and **come in**. If it would be helpful in your language, you could use an equivalent expression or plain language. Alternate translation: [who will lead them in all their activities and who will direct them in everything they do]

Support Reference: Merism

ULT **to their face**

UST will lead them when they fight battles

Here, **their face** represents the presence of the people, that is, being in front of them. If it would be helpful in your language, you could use an equivalent expression or plain language. Alternate translation: [before them]

Support Reference: Metonymy

ULT **and the congregation of Yahweh will not be like sheep that there is not a shepherd for them**

UST Otherwise, the community that worships you, Yahweh, would be without a leader, like a flock of sheep without a shepherd

The point of this comparison is that just as **sheep** without a shepherd have no one to lead and protect them, so **the congregation of Yahweh** would have no one to lead and protect them if Yahweh did not appoint a leader. If it would be helpful in your language, you could make this point explicitly. Alternate translation: [and the congregation of Yahweh will not be left without anyone to lead and protect them]

Support Reference: Simile

ULT **the congregation of Yahweh**

UST the community that worships you, Yahweh

Moses is using this possessive form to mean the congregation that belongs to Yahweh. It may be helpful to clarify this for your readers. Alternate translation: [the congregation that belongs to Yahweh]

Support Reference: Possession

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
congregation	community
Yahweh	Yahweh
sheep	sheep
shepherd	shepherd

Numbers 27:18

ULT	UST
And Yahweh said to Moses, "Take for yourself Joshua the son of Nun, a man in whom is a spirit, and you shall lay your hand on him.	*So Yahweh told Moses, "Summon Nun's son Joshua. I have enabled him to lead well. Place your hand on him to commission him.*

ULT **and you shall lay your hand on him**
UST Place your hand on him to commission him

Laying a hand on someone was a symbolic action by which Moses showed that he was giving Joshua authority to lead the people in his place. If it would be helpful to your readers, you could explain the significance of this action in the text of your translation or in a footnote. Alternate translation: [and you shall lay your hand on him to show that you are giving him your authority]

Support Reference: Symbolic Action

ULT **in whom {is} a spirit**
UST I have enabled him to lead well

This could mean: (1) that Joshua has a **spirit** that is wise and capable. The phrase means that he is a wise and capable man, a good leader. Alternate translation: [in whom is skill and wisdom]; or (2) that Joshua has the Holy Spirit, which empowers him. Alternate translation: [in whom is my Spirit]

Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Yahweh	Yahweh
Moses	Moses
Joshua	Joshua
spirit	I have enabled him to lead well

Numbers 27:19

ULT	UST
And you shall stand him to the face of Eleazar the priest and to the face of all the congregation, and you shall command him to their eyes.	*Have him stand in the presence of the priest Eleazar and the whole Israelite community. While they are watching, commission him.*

ULT **And you shall stand him to the face of Eleazar the priest**
UST Have him stand in the presence of the priest Eleazar

The pronoun **him** refers to Joshua, not to Eleazar. It may be helpful to clarify this for your readers. Alternate translation: [And you shall stand Joshua to the face of Eleazar the priest]
Support Reference: Pronouns — When to Use Them

ULT **to the face of Eleazar the priest and to the face of all the congregation**
UST in the presence of the priest Eleazar and the whole {Israelite} community

Here, **the face of** represents the presence of a person. If it would be helpful in your language, you could use an equivalent expression or plain language. Alternate translation: [before Eleazar the priest and before all the congregation]
Support Reference: Metonymy

ULT **to their eyes**
UST While they are watching

See how you translated the similar expression in 27:14.
Support Reference: Metonymy

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Eleazar	Eleazar
priest	priest
congregation	community

Numbers 27:20

ULT	UST
And you shall give from your splendor on him, so that all the congregation of the sons of Israel will hear.	*Share some of how glorious you are with him. That way, the whole Israelite community will obey him.*

ULT **And you shall give from your splendor on him, so that all the congregation of the sons of Israel will hear**

UST Share some of how glorious you are with him. That way, the whole Israelite community will obey him

Here, **so that** marks **all the congregation of the sons of Israel will hear** as the goal or purpose of **you shall give from your splendor on him**. Use a connector in your language that makes it clear that this is the purpose.

Support Reference: Connect — Goal (Purpose) Relationship

ULT **And you shall give from your splendor on him**

UST Share some of how glorious you are with him

If your language does not use an abstract noun for the idea of **splendor**, you could express the same idea in another way. Alternate translation: [And you shall let him share in being majestic as you are]

Support Reference: Abstract Nouns

ULT **from your splendor**

UST some of how glorious you are

Here, **your splendor** represents the authority that Yahweh had given to Moses. If it would be helpful in your language, you could use an equivalent expression or plain language. Alternate translation: [some of your authority]

Support Reference: Metonymy

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
splendor	some of how glorious you are
congregation	community
Israel	Israelite

Numbers 27:21

ULT	UST
And to the face of Eleazar the priest he shall stand, and he shall ask for him in the judgment of the Urim to the face of Yahweh. Upon his mouth they shall go out and upon his mouth they shall come in, he and all the sons of Israel with him and all the congregation."	*When Joshua must decide something, he must present himself to Eleazar the priest. Eleazar will use the Urim and Thummim in Yahweh's presence to ask Yahweh where to go and what to do. Joshua and the whole Israelite community must do whatever Yahweh says."*

ULT **And to the face of Eleazar the priest**
UST to Eleazar the priest

See how you translated the similar expression in 27:19.
Support Reference: Metonymy

ULT **and he shall ask for him**
UST to ask Yahweh

Here, the pronoun **he** could refer to: (1) Eleazar. In this case, Eleazar is asking Yahweh for the sake of Joshua. Alternate translation: [and Eleazar shall ask for Joshua]; or (2) Joshua. In this case, Joshua is asking Eleazar to ask Yahweh. Alternate translation: [and Joshua shall ask of Eleazar]

ULT **his mouth … his mouth**
UST must do whatever Yahweh says

Here, the pronoun **his** in both places could refer to: (1) God. Alternate translation: [Yahweh's mouth … his mouth]; or (2) Eleazar. Alternate translation: [Eleazar's mouth … his mouth]; or (3) Joshua. Alternate translation: [Joshua's mouth … his mouth]
Support Reference: Pronouns — When to Use Them

ULT **and he shall ask for him in the judgment of the Urim**
UST Eleazar will use the Urim and Thummim … to ask Yahweh

If your language does not use an abstract noun for the idea of **the judgment**, you could express the same idea in another way. Alternate translation: [and he shall ask for him by using the Urim to learn what has been decided]
Support Reference: Abstract Nouns

ULT **Upon his mouth they shall go out and upon his mouth they shall come in**
UST where to go and what to do … must do whatever Yahweh says

Here, **his mouth** represents what Eleazar would say after he learned the decision of Yahweh. If it would be helpful in your language, you could use an equivalent expression or plain language. Alternate translation: [According to what he says they shall go out and according to what he says they shall come in]
Support Reference: Metonymy

ULT **they shall go out and upon his mouth they shall come in**
UST where to go and what to do … must do whatever Yahweh says

Yahweh is referring to all of the activities of the people by naming two major components, **go out** and **come in**. If it would be helpful in your language, you could use an equivalent expression or plain language. Alternate translation: [they shall conduct all of their affairs]
Support Reference: Merism

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Eleazar	Eleazar
priest	priest
judgment	Eleazar will use
Yahweh	Yahweh's
Israel	Israelite
congregation	community

Numbers 27:23

ULT	UST
and he laid his hands on him, and he commanded him, just as Yahweh spoke in the hand of Moses.	*Moses placed his hands on Joshua and commissioned him. Moses did exactly what Yahweh commanded through him.*

ULT **in the hand of Moses**
UST through him

Here, **the hand of Moses** represents Moses himself as the one through whom Yahweh gave these commands. If it would be helpful in your language, you could use an equivalent expression or plain language. Alternate translation: [by means of Moses]
Support Reference: Metonymy

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Yahweh	Yahweh
Moses	through him

Numbers 28

Numbers 28 Introduction

Numbers 28 Chapter Introduction

Structure and Formatting

In this chapter, Yahweh gives instructions concerning the animals, grain, and wine that the Israelites needed to offer to him on certain days. That includes offerings for every day, for Sabbath days, for the first days of months, for the Festival of Unleavened Bread, and for the day of firstfruits during the Festival of Weeks.

1. Yahweh gives instructions for daily offerings (1–8)
2. Yahweh gives instructions for Sabbath offerings (9–10)
3. Yahweh gives instructions for monthly offerings (11–15)
4. Yahweh gives instructions for Passover and the Festival of Unleavened Bread (16–25)
5. Yahweh gives instructions for the Festival of Weeks (26–31)

Religious and Cultural Concepts in This Chapter

Grain and drink offerings

This chapter includes instructions for what the Israelites were supposed to offer along with animal sacrifices. For each male lamb, ram, and bull that they offered, they needed to offer also a specific portion of grain and wine. The portion size was different for each animal. When the Israelites included the grain and drink offerings with each animal, Yahweh was pleased.

Translation Issues in This Chapter

Quotes in quotes

Most of this chapter is part of a long quote within another quote. The ULT represents the quote within a quote. The UST models how to express the idea with only one level of quotation. Consider how your language indicates that a quote contains a quote.

“a scent of pleasing”

Multiple times in this chapter, Yahweh describes a sacrifice as “a scent of pleasing” to or for him. This phrase refers to burning the sacrifice in a way that causes smoke to go up, picturing the sacrifice as being converted to pleasant-smelling smoke by the fire and arising to Yahweh in heaven, where he would smell the smoke and be pleased. That the sacrifice was accompanied by the gift of the pleasant-smelling smoke of the sacrifice was apparently crucial to the acceptance of the offering as an appropriate sacrifice on a person’s behalf.

Second person singular and plural

Throughout this chapter, most occurrences of "you" are plural. There are a few exceptions. In 28:2–3, when Yahweh is commanding Moses what to say, "you" is singular. Further, in 28:4, 8, and 21, "you" is singular. It is possible that "you" in these verses refers to the individual person who was offering the animals.

Omitted words in the lists of offerings

Throughout this chapter, the instructions for grain offerings are given in abbreviated form. Two kinds of words are left out.

First, the verb is often omitted. Where the ULT reads simply "and two tenths of fine flour," the reader is expected to supply "you shall offer" from the earlier instructions. If your language requires a verb in such statements, you may need to include one.

Second, the unit of measure is omitted. "A tenth" and "two tenths" mean a tenth part and two tenth parts of an ephah, a standard dry measure. If your readers would be confused by a fraction with nothing to divide, you could supply the unit and translate this as "a tenth of an ephah."

Numbers 28:1

ULT	UST
And Yahweh spoke to Moses, saying,	*Yahweh told Moses,*

ULT **saying**
UST told

The term **saying** introduces a direct quotation. See how you translated **saying** in 1:1.
Support Reference: Quotations and Quote Margins

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Yahweh	Yahweh
Moses	Moses

Numbers 28:2

ULT	UST
"Command the sons of Israel and say to them, 'My offering, my bread for my gifts, a scent of my pleasing, you shall keep to present to me in its appointed time.'	*"Order the Israelite people to do this: They must make sure to offer sacrificial animals, food, and drink to me at the proper time. When they give them to me, I will enjoy the smell of the smoke when they burn them.*

ULT **Command the sons of Israel and say to them**
UST Order the Israelite people to do this

If it would be clearer in your language, you could translate this so that there is not a quotation within a quotation. Alternate translation: [Command the sons of Israel to keep presenting to me at its appointed time my offering, my bread for my gifts, a scent of my pleasing]
Support Reference: Quotes within Quotes

ULT **my bread**
UST sacrificial animals, food, and drink

Yahweh is using one kind of food, **my bread**, to mean food in general. If it would be helpful in your language, you could use an equivalent expression from your culture or state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [my food]
Support Reference: Synecdoche

ULT **for my gifts**
UST When they give them to me

Here, a **gift** is a kind of offering presented to Yahweh by burning it on the altar. If your readers would not be familiar with what a gift is in this sense, you could use the name of a similar practice that your readers would recognize, or you could use a more general term. Alternate translation: [for my offerings made by fire]
Support Reference: Translate Unknowns

ULT **you shall keep to present to me**
UST They must make sure to offer … to me

Yahweh is using **you shall keep to present to me** as a common expression of the culture to mean "you shall be careful to present to me." If this phrase does not have that meaning for your readers, you could use a comparable expression from your language that does have that meaning, or you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [you must be sure to present to me]
Support Reference: Idiom

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Israel	Israelite
offering	sacrificial animals, food, and drink
bread	sacrificial animals, food, and drink
you shall keep	They must make sure
appointed	at the proper time

Numbers 28:3

ULT	UST
And you shall say to them, 'This is the gift that you shall present to Yahweh: perfect male lambs, sons of a year, two for the day, a continual burnt offering.	*Also tell them this: Every day, they must offer to me two animals, along with food and drink. They must offer them as a wholly burned sacrifice. These animals must be healthy male sheep that are one year old.*

ULT **And you shall say to them**
UST Also tell them this

If it would be clearer in your language, you could translate this so that there is not a quotation within a quotation. Alternate translation: [And you shall tell them that this is the gift that they shall present to Yahweh: perfect male lambs, sons of a year, two for the day, a continual burnt offering]
Support Reference: Quotes within Quotes

ULT **perfect male lambs, sons of a year**
UST These animals must be healthy male sheep that are one year old

Offering animals that were **perfect**, that is, animals that had no defect, was a symbolic action by which the Israelites showed that they were giving Yahweh what was most valuable and complete. If it would be helpful to your readers, you could explain the significance of this action in the text of your translation or in a footnote. Alternate translation: [male lambs without any defect, showing that you give Yahweh the best]
Support Reference: Symbolic Action

ULT **sons of a year**
UST that are one year old

Yahweh is using **sons of a year** as a common expression of the culture to mean "one year old." If this phrase does not have that meaning for your readers, you could use a comparable expression from your language that does have that meaning, or you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [that are a year old]
Support Reference: Idiom

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Yahweh	to me
perfect	healthy
lambs	These animals must be … male sheep
year	year
day	day
burnt offering	They must offer them as a wholly burned sacrifice

Numbers 28:4

ULT	UST
The one male lamb you shall do in the morning, and the second male lamb you shall do between the evenings,	*They must offer one male sheep in the morning. They must offer the other male sheep early in the evening.*

ULT **The one male lamb you shall do in the morning**
UST They must offer one male sheep in the morning

Yahweh is using **you shall do** as a common expression of the culture to mean "you shall offer as a sacrifice." If this phrase does not have that meaning for your readers, you could use a comparable expression from your language that does have that meaning, or you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [The one male lamb you shall offer as a sacrifice in the morning]
Support Reference: Idiom

ULT **you shall do … you shall do**
UST They must offer … They must offer

The word **you** is singular here. It may refer to the individual person who offered the lamb. So use the singular form in your translation if your language marks that distinction.
Support Reference: Forms of 'You' — Singular

ULT **between the evenings**
UST early in the evening

Yahweh is using **between the evenings** as a common expression of the culture to mean "at twilight." If this phrase does not have that meaning for your readers, you could use a comparable expression from your language that does have that meaning, or you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [at twilight]
Support Reference: Idiom

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
lamb	male sheep
lamb	the … male sheep

Numbers 28:5

ULT	UST
and the tenth of the ephah of flour for a grain offering, mixed with beaten oil, the fourth of the hin,	*The grain offering for each lamb must be about two liters of flour with about one liter of olive oil in it. People must produce this olive oil by striking olives instead of pressing them.*

ULT **and the tenth of the ephah of**
UST must be about two liters of

A **tenth** means one part out of ten equal parts.
Support Reference: Fractions

ULT **and the tenth of the ephah of flour**
UST must be about two liters of flour

This **ephah** was equivalent to 22 liters or nearly two thirds of a bushel. If it would be helpful to your readers, you could express this in terms of modern measurements, either in the text or in a footnote.
Support Reference: Biblical Volume

ULT **mixed with beaten oil**
UST with … olive oil in it. {People must produce this olive oil} by striking olives instead of pressing them

The expression **mixed** is a passive verbal form. If it would be unnatural to use that form, you could express the idea in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: [which you have mixed with beaten oil]
Support Reference: Active or Passive

ULT **with beaten oil**
UST olive oil … People must produce this olive oil by striking olives instead of pressing them

Here, **beaten oil** is a kind of olive oil that people made by pounding olives rather than by pressing them. If your readers would not be familiar with what beaten oil is, you could use the name of a similar thing that your readers would recognize, or you could use a more general term. Alternate translation: [with high-quality olive oil]
Support Reference: Translate Unknowns

ULT **the fourth of**
UST about one liter of

A **fourth** means one part out of four equal parts.
Support Reference: Fractions

ULT **the fourth of the hin**
UST about one liter of

This **hin** was equivalent to about 3.7 liters or about one gallon. If it would be helpful to your readers, you could express this in terms of modern measurements, either in the text or in a footnote.
Support Reference: Biblical Volume

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
tenth	must be about two liters of
grain offering	grain offering
oil	oil

Numbers 28:6

ULT	UST
a burnt offering of continuity, the one done at Mount Sinai, for a scent of pleasing, a gift to Yahweh.	*They must offer those things to me regularly as a wholly burned sacrifice. That is what they did at Mount Sinai. Then, I will enjoy the smell of the smoke when they burn them.*

ULT **a burnt offering of continuity**
UST regularly as a wholly burned sacrifice

If your language does not use an abstract noun for the idea of **continuity**, you could express the same idea in another way. Alternate translation: [a continual burnt offering]
Support Reference: Abstract Nouns

ULT **the one done at Mount Sinai**
UST That is what they did at Mount Sinai

This could mean: (1) that the Israelites had already offered this kind of sacrifice at **Mount Sinai**. Alternate translation: [the one you already performed at Mount Sinai]; or (2) that God had already instituted this kind of sacrifice at **Mount Sinai**. Alternate translation: [the one I instituted at Mount Sinai]
Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

ULT **the one done at Mount Sinai**
UST That is what they did at Mount Sinai

The expression **done** is a passive verbal form. If it would be unnatural to use that form, you could express the idea in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: [the one that your ancestors offered at Mount Sinai]
Support Reference: Active or Passive

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
burnt offering	as a wholly burned sacrifice
Sinai	Sinai
Yahweh	to me

Numbers 28:7

ULT	UST
And its drink offering shall be the fourth of the hin for the one male lamb. In the holy place pour out a drink offering of intoxicating drink to Yahweh.	*The wine offering for each lamb must be about one liter of alcoholic drink. The priest must pour it out in my presence in the Holy Place.*

ULT **And its drink offering**
UST The wine offering

The pronoun **its** refers to the continual burnt offering that Yahweh has just described. It may be helpful to clarify this for your readers. Alternate translation: [And the drink offering for that burnt offering]
Support Reference: Pronouns — When to Use Them

ULT **In the holy place**
UST in the Holy Place

This could mean: (1) the outer room of the tabernacle, the Holy Place. Alternate translation: [In the outer room of the tabernacle]; or (2) any holy place, including courtyard around the tabernacle. Alternate translation: [In a holy area]
Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

ULT **In the holy place pour out**
UST The priest must pour … out … in the Holy Place

The implication is that the priest is the one who pours out this drink offering. You could include this information if that would be helpful to your readers. Alternate translation: [In the holy place the priest shall pour out]
Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
drink offering	The wine offering
lamb	lamb
holy place	Holy Place
drink offering	it
Yahweh	in my presence

Numbers 28:8

ULT	UST
And the second male lamb you shall do between the evenings. Like the grain offering of the morning and like its drink offering you shall do, a gift, a scent of pleasing to Yahweh.	*They must offer the other male sheep early in the evening. They must include with it the same grain and wine offerings you included with the lamb in the morning. When they give those things to me, I will enjoy the smell of the smoke when they burn them.*

ULT **you shall do … you shall do**
UST They must offer … They must include with it

The word **you** is singular here. It may refer to the individual person who offered the lamb. So use the singular form in your translation if your language marks that distinction.
Support Reference: Forms of 'You' — Singular

ULT **between the evenings**
UST early in the evening

See how you translated these same phrases in Numbers 28:4. Alternate translation: [at twilight]
Support Reference: Idiom

ULT **Like the grain offering of the morning and like its drink offering you shall do**
UST They must include with it the same grain and wine offerings you included with the lamb in the morning

Yahweh is leaving out some of the words that in many languages a sentence would need in order to be complete. You can supply these words from the context if that would be clearer in your language. Alternate translation: [Like the grain offering of the morning and like its drink offering, so you shall offer a grain offering and a drink offering with this male lamb]
Support Reference: Ellipsis

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
lamb	the … male sheep
grain offering	the same grain
drink offering	and wine offerings
Yahweh	I

Numbers 28:9

ULT	UST
And on the day of the Sabbath: two male lambs, sons of a year, perfect, and two tenths of flour, a grain offering mixed with the oil, and its drink offering;	*On each Sabbath day, they must offer two healthy male sheep that are one year old. The grain offering for both sheep must be about four liters of flour with olive oil in it, and the wine offering must be about two liters of alcoholic drink.*

ULT **And on the day of the Sabbath: two male lambs**

UST On each Sabbath day, {they must offer} two … male sheep

Yahweh is leaving out some of the words that in many languages a sentence would need in order to be complete. You can supply these words from the context if that would be clearer in your language. Alternate translation: [And on the day of the Sabbath you shall offer two male lambs]

Support Reference: Ellipsis

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Sabbath	Sabbath
lambs	male sheep
year	year
perfect	healthy
tenths	must be about four liters of
grain offering	grain offering
oil	oil
drink offering	and the wine offering must be about two liters of alcoholic drink

Numbers 28:10

ULT	UST
a burnt offering of a Sabbath on its Sabbath, upon the burnt offering of the continuity and its drink offering.	*That is the wholly burned sacrifice for the Sabbath day. They must offer it on each Sabbath day in addition to the regular wholly burned sacrifice and its wine offering.*

ULT **a burnt offering of a Sabbath on its Sabbath**
UST That is the wholly burned sacrifice for the Sabbath day. {They must offer it} on each Sabbath day

Yahweh is using **a burnt offering of a Sabbath on its Sabbath** as a common expression of the culture to mean "a burnt offering for every Sabbath." If this phrase does not have that meaning for your readers, you could use a comparable expression from your language that does have that meaning, or you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [A burnt offering to be presented on every Sabbath]

Support Reference: Idiom

ULT **upon the burnt offering of the continuity**
UST in addition to the regular wholly burned sacrifice

The implication is that the Israelites are to present this offering in addition to the continual burnt offering, not in place of it. You could include this information if that would be helpful to your readers. Alternate translation: [in addition to the regular burnt offering]

Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
burnt offering	That is the wholly burned sacrifice
Sabbath	Sabbath
Sabbath	Sabbath
burnt offering	the … wholly burned sacrifice
drink offering	and its wine offering

Numbers 28:11

ULT	UST
And at the heads of your months, you shall present a burnt offering to Yahweh: two bulls, sons of cattle, and one ram; seven male lambs, sons of a year, perfect;	*On the first day of each month, they must offer to me two young bulls, one ram, and seven male sheep that are one year old. All of them must be healthy. They must offer those animals as wholly burned sacrifices.*

ULT **And at the heads of your months**
UST On the first day of each month

Yahweh is using **at the heads of your months** as a common expression of the culture to mean "on the first day of each month." If this phrase does not have that meaning for your readers, you could use a comparable expression from your language that does have that meaning, or you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [And on the first day of every month]
Support Reference: Idiom

ULT **perfect**
UST All of them must be healthy

This could mean: (1) that all the animals were **perfect**. Alternate translation: [and all the animals must be perfect]; or (2) that the **lambs** were **perfect**. Alternate translation: [each lamb perfect]
Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

ULT **sons of cattle**
UST young

Yahweh is using **sons of cattle** as a common expression of the culture to mean "young bulls." If this phrase does not have that meaning for your readers, you could use a comparable expression from your language that does have that meaning, or you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [which are young]
Support Reference: Idiom

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
months	month
burnt offering	They must offer those animals as wholly burned sacrifices
Yahweh	to me
bulls	bulls
cattle	young
ram	ram
lambs	and … male sheep
year	year
perfect	All of them must be healthy

Numbers 28:13

ULT	UST
and a tenth, a tenth of flour, a grain offering mixed with the oil for the one male lamb; a burnt offering, a scent of pleasing, a gift to Yahweh.	*The grain offering for each male sheep must be about two liters of flour with olive oil in it. They must offer all those things as wholly burned sacrifices. When they give those things to me, I will enjoy the smell of the smoke when they burn them.*

ULT **and a tenth, a tenth of**

UST must be about two liters of

Yahweh is repeating the phrase **a tenth** in order to express the idea that this amount applies to each male lamb individually. If your language can repeat words in this way, it would be appropriate to do that here in your translation. If not, your language may have another way of expressing this idea. Alternate translation: [and one tenth of an ephah each of]

Support Reference: Reduplication

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
tenth	must be about two liters of
tenth	must be about two liters of
grain offering	grain offering
oil	oil
lamb	for … male sheep
burnt offering	They must offer all those things as wholly burned sacrifices
Yahweh	to me

Numbers 28:14

ULT	UST
And their drink offerings shall be the half of the hin for the bull, and the third of the hin for the ram, and the fourth of the hin for the male lamb, wine. This is a burnt offering of a month on its month, for the months of the year,	*The wine offering for each bull must be about two liters of wine. The wine offering for the ram must be about one and one-fourth liters of wine. The wine offering for each male sheep must be about one liter of wine. That is the wholly burned sacrifice for the first day of each month. They must offer it on the first day of each month in the year.*

ULT **And their drink offerings shall be the half of the hin for the bull, and the third of the hin for the ram, and the fourth of the hin for the male lamb, wine**

UST The wine offering for each bull must be about two liters of wine. The wine offering for the ram must be about one and one-fourth liters of wine. The wine offering for each male sheep must be about one liter of wine

If it would be more natural in your language, you may want to put the information about **wine** with the information about how much is to be presented for each animal. Alternate translation: [And their drink offerings of wine shall be the half of the hin for the bull, and the third of the hin for the ram, and the fourth of the hin for the male lamb]

Support Reference: Information Structure

ULT **shall be the half of the hin for the bull, and the third of the hin for the ram**

UST for each bull must be about two liters of … for the ram must be about one and one-fourth liters of … must be

A **half** means one part out of two equal parts. A **third** means one part out of three equal parts.

Support Reference: Fractions

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
drink offerings	The wine offering … The wine offering … The wine offering
bull	bull
ram	ram
lamb	for each male sheep
wine	wine
burnt offering	the wholly burned sacrifice
month	month
month	month
months	month
year	year

Numbers 28:15

ULT	UST
and one buck of goats for a sin offering to Yahweh, upon the burnt offering of the continuity it shall be done, and its drink offering.	*They must also offer to me a male goat as a purifying sacrifice. They must offer all those things in addition to the regular wholly burned sacrifice and its wine offering.*

ULT **and one buck of goats**
UST a male goat

Yahweh is using the possessive form to describe a **buck** that is characterized by being one of the animals called **goats**. If a speaker of your language would not use the possessive form for this, you could express this idea in another way. Alternate translation: [and one male goat]
Support Reference: Possession

ULT **upon the burnt offering of the continuity it shall be done**
UST They must offer all those things in addition to the regular wholly burned sacrifice

The expression **it shall be done** is a passive verbal form. If it would be unnatural to use that form, you could express the idea in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: [the priests shall offer it in addition to the burnt offering of the continuity]
Support Reference: Active or Passive

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
goats	goat
sin offering	as a purifying sacrifice
Yahweh	They must also offer to me
burnt offering	the … wholly burned sacrifice
drink offering	and its wine offering

Numbers 28:16

ULT	UST
And on the first month, on day 14 of the month, is the Passover of Yahweh.	*On the fourteenth day of the first month, they celebrate the Passover Celebration to honor me.*

ULT And on the first month
UST of the first month

The **first** month of the Hebrew calendar includes the last part of March and the first part of April on Western calendars. You could convert the Hebrew day and month into an approximate date on the calendar that your culture uses. However, the Jews used a lunar calendar, so if you use a solar calendar, the date will be different every year, and the translation will not be entirely accurate. So you may just want to give the number of the day and the name of the month on the Hebrew calendar and say in a footnote approximately what time of year that is on your calendar.
Support Reference: Hebrew Months

ULT on day 14 of the month
UST On the fourteenth day of the … month

If your language would not represent a number in a form such as **day 14**, you could represent this number in a form that your language would use, such as "the fourteenth day." Alternate translation: [on the fourteenth day of the month]
Support Reference: Ordinal Numbers

ULT is the Passover of Yahweh
UST they celebrate the Passover Celebration to {honor} me

Yahweh is using the possessive form to describe a **Passover** that is characterized by being celebrated in honor of Yahweh. If a speaker of your language would not use the possessive form for this, you could express this idea in another way. Alternate translation: [the Passover celebrated in honor of Yahweh]
Support Reference: Possession

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
month	month
month	month
Passover	Passover
Yahweh	to {honor} me

Numbers 28:17

ULT	UST
And on day 15 of this month is a festival. Seven days unleavened bread shall be eaten.	*On the fifteenth day of that same month, a celebration that is seven days long begins. During those seven days, everyone eats bread without yeast.*

ULT **is a festival. Seven days unleavened bread**
UST a celebration {that is seven days long begins}. During those seven days … bread without yeast

This could mean: (1) that the **festival** itself lasted for seven days. Alternate translation: [is a festival for seven days, during which unleavened bread]; or (2) that the **festival** lasted one day, but for that day and the following six days the Israelites had to eat **unleavened bread**. Alternate translation: [is a one day festival. For seven days, starting with that day, unleavened bread]

ULT **Seven days unleavened bread shall be eaten**
UST During those seven days, everyone eats bread without yeast

The expression **shall be eaten** is a passive verbal form. If it would be unnatural to use that form, you could express the idea in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: [Seven days you shall eat unleavened bread]
Support Reference: Active or Passive

ULT **Seven days**
UST During those seven days

Yahweh is using **seven days** as a common expression of the culture to mean “during each of the seven days.” If this phrase does not have that meaning for your readers, you could use a comparable expression from your language that does have that meaning, or you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [Throughout the seven days]
Support Reference: Idiom

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
month	month
festival	a celebration that is seven days long begins
unleavened bread	bread without yeast
shall be eaten	everyone eats

Numbers 28:18

ULT	UST
On the first day is an assembly of holiness; you shall not do any work of service.	*On the first day of the celebration, they must gather together for a sacred meeting. They must not do any regular work.*

ULT **is an assembly of holiness**
UST they must gather together for a sacred meeting

If your language does not use an abstract noun for the idea of **holiness**, you could express the same idea in another way. Alternate translation: [a holy assembly]
Support Reference: Abstract Nouns

ULT **any work of service**
UST any regular work

The phrase **work of service** expresses a single idea. The word **service** tells more about **work**. If it would be more natural in your language, you could express this meaning in a different way. Alternate translation: [any ordinary labor]
Support Reference: Hendiadys

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
assembly	meeting
holiness	sacred
work	work

Numbers 28:19

ULT	UST
And you shall present a gift, a burnt offering to Yahweh: two bulls, sons of cattle, and one ram, and seven male lambs, sons of a year. They shall be perfect for you.	*They must offer two young bulls, one ram, and seven male sheep that are one year old. All of them must be healthy. They must give those animals to me as wholly burned sacrifices.*

> ULT **They shall be perfect for you**
> UST All of them must be healthy

The implication is that the Israelites must choose animals that have no defects, since Yahweh accepts only animals of that kind. You could include this information if that would be helpful to your readers. Alternate translation: [They shall be without any defect, as Yahweh requires]
Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
burnt offering	as wholly burned sacrifices
Yahweh	to me
bulls	bulls
cattle	young
ram	ram
lambs	male sheep
year	year
perfect	healthy

Numbers 28:20

ULT	UST
And their grain offering: flour mixed with the oil, three tenths for the bull and two tenths for the ram, you shall do.	*The grain offering for each bull must be about six liters of flour with olive oil in it. The grain offering for the ram must be about four liters of flour with olive oil in it.*

ULT **And their grain offering: flour mixed with the oil, three tenths for the bull and two tenths for the ram, you shall do**

UST The grain offering for each bull must be about six liters of flour with olive oil in it. The grain offering for the ram must be about four liters of flour with olive oil in it

If it would be more natural in your language, you may want to put the information about what the Israelites are to **do** with the information about **their grain offering**. Alternate translation: [And you shall offer as their grain offering flour mixed with the oil, three tenths for the bull and two tenths for the ram]

Support Reference: Information Structure

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
grain offering	grain offering
oil	oil
tenths	about six liters of
bull	bull
tenths	about four liters of
ram	ram

Numbers 28:21

ULT	UST
A tenth, a tenth you shall do for the one male lamb, for the seven male lambs,	*The grain offering for each of the seven male sheep must be about two liters of flour with olive oil in it.*

ULT **you shall do**
UST must be

The word **you** is singular here. It may refer to the individual person who offered the lamb. So use the singular form in your translation if your language marks that distinction.
Support Reference: Forms of 'You' — Singular

ULT **for the one male lamb, for the seven male lambs**
UST The grain offering for each of the seven male sheep

The implication is that the Israelites are to present this amount of flour for each one of the seven male lambs. You could include this information if that would be helpful to your readers. Alternate translation: [for each one of the seven male lambs]
Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
tenth	about two liters of flour with olive oil in it
tenth	about two liters of flour with olive oil in it
lamb	The grain offering for each
lambs	of the … male sheep

Numbers 28:22

ULT	UST
and one buck, a sin offering, to make atonement for you.	*They must also offer one male goat as a purifying sacrifice, which I will accept and remove what they have done wrong.*

ULT **to make atonement for you**

UST which I will accept and remove what they have done wrong

If your language does not use an abstract noun for the idea of **atonement**, you could express the same idea in another way. Alternate translation: [to take away your sin]

Support Reference: Abstract Nouns

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
sin offering	as a purifying sacrifice
atonement	which I will accept and remove what they have done wrong

Numbers 28:23

ULT	UST
Besides the burnt offering of the morning, which is for the burnt offering of the continuity, you shall do these.	*They must offer all those things in addition to the regular wholly burned sacrifice that they offer in the morning.*

ULT **Besides the burnt offering of the morning**
UST in addition to … they offer in the morning

The word **Besides** introduces something additional. If the connection between this statement and the previous one is not clear, you may want to use a different connecting word to show how this statement relates to what comes before it. Alternate translation: [In addition to the burnt offering of the morning]
Support Reference: Connecting Words and Phrases

ULT **you shall do these**
UST They must offer all those things

The pronoun **these** refers to the offerings that Yahweh has just described. It may be helpful to clarify this for your readers. Alternate translation: [you shall offer these sacrifices]
Support Reference: Pronouns — When to Use Them

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
burnt offering	they offer
burnt offering	the … wholly burned sacrifice

Numbers 28:24

ULT	UST
Like these you shall do for the day, seven days, bread of gift, a scent of pleasing to Yahweh; upon the burnt offering of the continuity it shall be done, and its drink offering.	*They must offer the same kinds and amounts of sacrificial animals, food, and drink on each of the seven days of the celebration. I will enjoy the smell of the smoke when they burn them. They must offer all those things in addition to the regular wholly burned sacrifice and its wine offering.*

ULT **bread of gift**
UST sacrificial animals, food, and drink

Yahweh is using the possessive form to describe **bread** that is characterized by being a **gift** that the Israelites present to him. If a speaker of your language would not use the possessive form for this, you could express this idea in another way. Alternate translation: [bread that is a gift]
Support Reference: Possession

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
day	on each of
bread	sacrificial animals, food, and drink
Yahweh	I
burnt offering	the … wholly burned sacrifice
drink offering	and its wine offering

Numbers 28:25

ULT	UST
And on the seventh day shall be for you an assembly of holiness; you shall not do any work of service.	*On the seventh day of the celebration, they must gather together for a sacred meeting. They must not do any regular work.*

ULT **an assembly of holiness**
UST gather together for a sacred meeting

See how you translated this same phrase in Numbers 28:18. Alternate translation: [a holy assembly]
Support Reference: Abstract Nouns

ULT **any work of service**
UST any regular work

See how you translated this same phrase in Numbers 28:18. Alternate translation: [any ordinary work]
Support Reference: Hendiadys

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
assembly	meeting
holiness	sacred
work	work

Numbers 28:26

ULT	UST
And on the day of the firstfruits, when you present a new grain offering to Yahweh in your weeks, an assembly of holiness shall be for you; you shall not do any work of service.	*During the Celebration of Weeks, there is a day when they offer to me some of the first batches of everything that they grow, including grain offerings from the grain they recently harvested. On that day, they must gather together for a sacred meeting. They must not do any regular work.*

ULT **And on the day of the firstfruits**
UST there is a day … some of the first batches of everything that they grow

Yahweh is using the possessive form to describe a **day** that is characterized by the presenting of the **firstfruits**. If a speaker of your language would not use the possessive form for this, you could express this idea in another way. Alternate translation: [And on the day set apart for the firstfruits]
Support Reference: Possession

ULT **when you present a new grain offering to Yahweh in your weeks**
UST During the {Celebration of} Weeks … when they offer to me … including grain offerings from the grain they recently harvested

The word that the ULT translates as **when** indicates that the Israelites are to hold an assembly of holiness at the same time as when they present a new grain offering to Yahweh. If it would be helpful to your readers, you could describe the time relationship more explicitly. Alternate translation: [at the same time that you present a new grain offering to Yahweh in your weeks]
Support Reference: Connect — Simultaneous Time Relationship

ULT **in your weeks**
UST During the {Celebration of} Weeks

The implication is that the phrase **in your weeks** refers to the Festival of Weeks, which the Israelites celebrated seven weeks after they began to harvest their grain. You could include this information if that would be helpful to your readers. Alternate translation: [during your Festival of Weeks]
Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

ULT **an assembly of holiness**
UST On that day … gather together for a sacred meeting

See how you translated this same phrase in Numbers 28:25. Alternate translation: [a holy assembly]
Support Reference: Hendiadys

ULT **any work of service**
UST any regular work

See how you translated this same phrase in Numbers 28:25. Alternate translation: [any ordinary work]
Support Reference: Hendiadys

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
firstfruits	some of the first batches of everything that they grow
grain offering	grain offerings
Yahweh	to me
weeks	Weeks
assembly	meeting
holiness	sacred
work	work

Numbers 28:30

ULT	UST
one buck of goats, to make atonement for you.	*They must also offer one male goat, which I will accept and remove what they have done wrong.*

ULT **to make atonement for you**

UST which I will accept and remove what they have done wrong

See how you translated these same phrases in Numbers 28:22. Alternate translation: [to take away your sin]

Support Reference: Abstract Nouns

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
goats	goat
atonement	which I will accept and remove what they have done wrong

Numbers 28:31

ULT	UST
Besides the burnt offering of the continuity and its grain offering you shall do; they shall be perfect for you, and their drink offerings.	*They must offer all those things and the wine offerings that go with them, in addition to the regular wholly burned sacrifice and its grain and wine offerings. The animals that you offer must be healthy.*

ULT **Besides the burnt offering of the continuity and its grain offering you shall do; they shall be perfect for you, and their drink offerings**

UST They must offer {all those things} and the wine offerings that go with them, in addition to the regular wholly burned sacrifice and its grain and wine offerings. The animals {that you offer} must be healthy

If it would be more natural in your language, you may want to put the information about **their drink offerings** with the information about what the Israelites are to **do**. Alternate translation: [Besides the burnt offering of the continuity and its grain offering you shall do, and their drink offerings; they shall be perfect for you]

Support Reference: Information Structure

ULT **Besides the burnt offering of the continuity and its grain offering**

UST in addition to the regular wholly burned sacrifice and its grain … offerings

The word **Besides** introduces something additional. If the connection between this statement and the previous one is not clear, you may want to use a different connecting word to show how this statement relates to what comes before it. Alternate translation: [In addition to the burnt offering of the continuity and its grain offering]

Support Reference: Connecting Words and Phrases

ULT **and their drink offerings**

UST and the wine offerings that go with them … and wine

Here, the pronoun **their** could refer to: (1) the burnt offerings for the day of firstfruits and the **burnt offering of the continuity**. Alternate translation: [and the drink offerings for all the offerings]; or (2) just the burnt offerings for the day of firstfruits. Alternate translation: [and the drink offerings for the offerings of the day of firstfruits]; or (3) just the **burnt offering of the continuity**. Alternate translation: [and the drink offering for the burnt offering of the continuity]

Support Reference: Pronouns — When to Use Them

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
burnt offering	the … wholly burned sacrifice
grain offering	and its grain … offerings
perfect	healthy
drink offerings	and the wine offerings that go with them … and wine

Numbers 29

Numbers 29 Introduction

Numbers 29 Chapter Introduction

Structure and Formatting

In this chapter, Yahweh continues to give instructions concerning the animals, grain, and wine that the Israelites needed to offer to him on certain days. That includes the first day of the seventh month (sometimes called the Festival of Trumpets), the tenth day of the seventh month (the Day of Atonement), the seven-day festival that began on the fifteenth day of the seventh month (the Festival of Huts), and the day immediately after the Festival of Huts.

1. Yahweh gives instructions for the Festival of Trumpets (1–6)
2. Yahweh gives instructions for the Day of Atonement (7–11)
3. Yahweh gives instructions for the Festival of Huts and the final assembly (12–38)
4. Moses passes Yahweh's instructions on to Israel (39–40)

Religious and Cultural Concepts in This Chapter

Grain and drink offerings

This chapter includes instructions for what the Israelites were supposed to offer along with animal sacrifices. For each male lamb, ram, and bull that they offered, they needed to offer also a specific portion of grain and wine. The portion size was different for each animal. When the Israelites included the grain and drink offerings with each animal, Yahweh was pleased.

Translation Issues in This Chapter

Quotes in quotes

Most of this chapter is part of a long quote within another quote. The ULT represents the quote within a quote. The UST models how to express the idea with only one level of quotation. Consider how your language indicates that a quote contains a quote.

"a scent of pleasing"

Multiple times in this chapter, Yahweh describes a sacrifice as "a scent of pleasing" to or for him. This phrase refers to burning the sacrifice in a way that causes smoke to go up, picturing the sacrifice as being converted to pleasant-smelling smoke by the fire and arising to Yahweh in heaven, where he would smell the smoke and be pleased. That the sacrifice was accompanied by the gift of the pleasant-smelling smoke of the sacrifice was apparently crucial to the acceptance of the offering as an appropriate sacrifice on a person's behalf.

Repetition

The list of offerings for each day of the Festival of Huts is very repetitive. There are some minor differences in wording (represented in the ULT), and the number of bulls goes down by one each day. Beyond that, the instructions for each day are identical. Most likely, this kind of repetition represents a list or table in sentence form. The author thought that listing each item for each day was important. Because of this, it is recommended that you do not shorten the repetition. Instead, be sure that the repeated verses are translated in the same way. You could also use formatting to make these verses look more like a list and enable readers to follow the repetition better. See how you handled the repetition in Numbers 7.

Numbers 29:1

ULT	UST
And in the seventh month, on one of the month, shall be an assembly of holiness for you. You shall not do any work of service. It shall be for you a day of a loud blast.	*On the first day of the seventh month of every year, they must gather together for a sacred meeting. They must not do any regular work. On that day, they must blow trumpets.*

ULT **And in the seventh month**
UST of the seventh month of every year

The **seventh month** of the Hebrew calendar includes the last part of September and the first part of October on Western calendars. You could convert the Hebrew day and month into an approximate date on the calendar that your culture uses. However, the Jews used a lunar calendar, so if you use a solar calendar, the date will be different every year, and the translation will not be entirely accurate. So you may just want to give the number of the day and the name of the month on the Hebrew calendar and say in a footnote approximately what time of year that is on your calendar.
Support Reference: Hebrew Months

ULT **on one of the month**
UST On the first day

The text uses a cardinal number, **one**, to refer to the first day of the month. If your language would not represent a number in a form such as **one**, you could represent this number in a form that your language would use. Alternate translation: [on the first of the month]
Support Reference: Ordinal Numbers

ULT **an assembly of holiness**
UST gather together for a sacred meeting

If your language does not use an abstract noun for the idea of **holiness**, you could express the same idea in another way. Alternate translation: [an assembly dedicated to Yahweh]
Support Reference: Abstract Nouns

ULT **for you. You shall not do … for you**
UST they … They must not do … they

Here and throughout the chapter, the word **you** is plural because Yahweh is telling Moses what to the say to all the Israelites. So, use the plural form in your translation if your language marks that distinction.
Support Reference: Forms of 'You' — Singular

ULT **any work of service**
UST any regular work

The phrase **work of service** expresses a single idea. The word **service** tells more about **work**. If it would be more natural in your language, you could express this meaning in a different way. Alternate translation: [any ordinary work]
Support Reference: Hendiadys

ULT **a day of a loud blast**
UST On that day … blow trumpets

The implication is that the people would blow trumpets on this day. You could include this information if that would be helpful to your readers. Alternate translation: [a day when you sound the trumpets]

Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
month	month
month	On the first day
assembly	meeting
holiness	sacred
work	work

Numbers 29:2

ULT	UST
And you shall do a burnt offering for a scent of pleasing to Yahweh: one bull, a son of cattle; one ram; seven male lambs, sons of a year, perfect;	*They must offer one young bull, one ram, and seven male sheep that are one year old. All of them must be healthy. They must offer those animals as wholly burned sacrifices. I will enjoy the smell of the smoke when they burn them.*

ULT **for a scent of pleasing**
UST will enjoy the smell of the smoke when they burn them

Yahweh is using **a scent of pleasing** as a common expression of the culture to mean "an offering that he accepts." If this phrase does not have that meaning for your readers, you could use a comparable expression from your language that does have that meaning, or you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [as a sacrifice that is acceptable]
Support Reference: Idiom

ULT **to Yahweh**
UST I

Yahweh is speaking of himself in the third person as **Yahweh**. If it would be helpful in your language, you could translate this in the first person. Alternate translation: [to me]
Support Reference: First, Second or Third Person

ULT **one bull, a son of cattle**
UST one young bull

It might seem that the expression **one bull, a son of cattle** contains extra information that would not be natural to express in your language. If so, you could shorten it. Alternate translation: [one young bull]
Support Reference: Making Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information Explicit

ULT **sons of a year**
UST that are one year old

Yahweh is using **sons of a year** as a common expression of the culture to mean "one year old." If this phrase does not have that meaning for your readers, you could use a comparable expression from your language that does have that meaning, or you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [that are a year old]
Support Reference: Idiom

ULT **perfect**
UST All of them must be healthy

This could mean: (1) that all the animals were **perfect**. Alternate translation: [and all the animals must be perfect]; or (2) that the **lambs** were **perfect**. Alternate translation: [each lamb perfect]
Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
burnt offering	They must offer those animals as wholly burned sacrifices
Yahweh	I
bull	bull
cattle	young
ram	ram
lambs	and … male sheep
year	year
perfect	All of them must be healthy

Numbers 29:3

ULT	UST
and their grain offering, flour mixed with the oil, three tenths for the bull, two tenths for the ram,	*The grain offering for the bull must be about six liters of flour with olive oil in it. The grain offering for the ram must be about four liters of flour with olive oil in it.*

ULT **flour mixed with the oil**
UST flour with olive oil in it … flour with olive oil in it

The expression **mixed** is a passive verbal form. If it would be unnatural to use that form, you could express the idea in active form or in another way that is natural in your language.
Alternate translation: [flour that you have mixed with the oil]
Support Reference: Active or Passive

ULT **three tenths**
UST must be about six liters of

The fraction **three tenths** means three parts out of ten equal parts.
Support Reference: Fractions

ULT **three tenths**
UST must be about six liters of

The term **tenths** here refers to tenths of an ephah. An ephah was equivalent to 22 liters or nearly two thirds of a bushel. If it would be helpful to your readers, you could express this in terms of modern measurements, either in the text or in a footnote.
Support Reference: Biblical Volume

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
grain offering	grain offering
oil	oil
tenths	must be about six liters of
bull	bull
tenths	must be about four liters of
ram	ram

Numbers 29:4

ULT	UST
and one tenth for the one male lamb, for the seven male lambs;	*The grain offering for each of the seven male sheep must be about two liters of flour with olive oil in it.*

ULT **and one tenth for the one male lamb, for the seven male lambs**

UST The grain offering for each of the seven male sheep must be about two liters of flour with olive oil in it

The implication is that one tenth of an ephah of flour is required for each one of the seven lambs. You could include this information if that would be helpful to your readers. Alternate translation: [and one tenth of an ephah of flour for each one of the seven male lambs]

Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
tenth	must be about two liters of flour with olive oil in it
lamb	The grain offering for each
lambs	the … male sheep

Numbers 29:5

ULT	UST
and one buck of goats, a sin offering, to make atonement for you;	*They must also offer one male goat as a purifying sacrifice, which I will accept and remove what they have done wrong.*

ULT **and one buck of goats**
UST They must also offer one male goat

Yahweh is using the possessive form to describe a **buck** that is characterized by being one of the **goats**. If a speaker of your language would not use the possessive form for this, you could express this idea in another way. Alternate translation: [and one male goat]
Support Reference: Possession

ULT **to make atonement for you**
UST which I will accept and remove what they have done wrong

If your language does not use an abstract noun for the idea of **atonement**, you could express the same idea in another way. Alternate translation: [to take away your sin]
Support Reference: Abstract Nouns

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
goats	goat
sin offering	as a purifying sacrifice
atonement	which I will accept and remove what they have done wrong

Numbers 29:6

ULT	UST
besides the burnt offering of the month and its grain offering, and the burnt offering of the continuity and its grain offering, and their drink offerings, according to their ordinance, for a scent of pleasing, a gift to Yahweh.	*They must offer all those things and the wine offerings that go with them in addition to the wholly burned sacrifice for the first day of each month, the regular wholly burned sacrifice, and their grain and wine offerings. They must follow the instructions for those offerings. When they give those things to me, I will enjoy the smell of the smoke when they burn them.*

ULT **the burnt offering of the month**
UST the wholly burned sacrifice for the first day of each month

The implication is that **the burnt offering of the month** is the offering that Yahweh required at the beginning of every month, as described in 28:11–15. You could include this information if that would be helpful to your readers. Alternate translation: [the burnt offering required at the beginning of each month]
Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

ULT **and the burnt offering of the continuity**
UST the regular wholly burned sacrifice

If your language does not use an abstract noun for the idea of **continuity**, you could express the same idea in another way. Alternate translation: [and the burnt offering that is offered continually]
Support Reference: Abstract Nouns

ULT **and their drink offerings**
UST and the wine offerings that go with them … and wine

Here, the pronoun **their** could refer to: (1) the burnt offerings for the first day of the seventh month, the regular offering for the first day of any month, and the **burnt offering of the continuity**. Alternate translation: [and the drink offerings for all the offerings]; or (2) just the regular offering for the first day of any month and the **burnt offering of the continuity**. Alternate translation: [and the drink offerings for the first day of the month and the burnt offering of the continuity]; or (3) just the burnt offerings for the first day of the seventh month. Alternate translation: [and the drink offerings for the offerings of the first day of the seventh month]
Support Reference: Pronouns — When to Use Them

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
burnt offering	the wholly burned sacrifice
month	month
grain offering	and their grain … offerings
burnt offering	the … wholly burned sacrifice
grain offering	and their grain … offerings
drink offerings	and the wine offerings that go with them … and wine
ordinance	They must follow the instructions for those offerings
Yahweh	to me

Numbers 29:7

ULT	UST
And on ten of this seventh month shall be an assembly of holiness for you, and you shall humble your souls. You shall not do any work.	*On the tenth day of the seventh month of every year, they must gather together for a sacred meeting. They must submit themselves to me by not eating anything. They must not do any work at all.*

ULT **and you shall humble your souls**

UST They must submit themselves to me by not eating anything

Yahweh is using **you shall humble your souls** as a common expression of the culture to mean "you shall deny yourselves food and comfort." If this phrase does not have that meaning for your readers, you could use a comparable expression from your language that does have that meaning, or you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [and you shall deny yourselves food and comfort]

Support Reference: Idiom

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
month	month
assembly	meeting
holiness	sacred
humble	They must submit … to me by not eating anything
souls	themselves
work	work

Numbers 29:11

ULT	UST
one buck of goats, a sin offering, besides the sin offering of the atonement and the burnt offering of the continuity and its grain offering, and their drink offerings.	*They must also offer a male goat as a purifying sacrifice. They must offer all those things and the wine offerings that go with them in addition to the purifying sacrifice that I accept to remove their sins that they offer on this day and the regular wholly burned sacrifice and their grain and wine offerings.*

ULT **the sin offering of the atonement**

UST the purifying sacrifice that I accept to remove their sins that they offer on this day

The implication is that **the sin offering of the atonement** is the offering that Yahweh required on this one day of the year, the Day of Atonement. You could include this information if that would be helpful to your readers. Alternate translation: [the sin offering presented on this annual Day of Atonement]

Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

ULT **and their drink offerings**

UST and the wine offerings that go with them … and wine

Here, the pronoun **their** could refer to: (1) the burnt offerings for the tenth day of the seventh month, the Day of Atonement offering, and the **burnt offering of the continuity**. Alternate translation: [and the drink offerings for all the offerings]; or (2) just the offering for the Day of Atonement and the **burnt offering of the continuity**. Alternate translation: [and the drink offerings for the Day of Atonement and the burnt offering of the continuity]; or (3) just the burnt offerings for the tenth day of the seventh month. Alternate translation: [and the drink offerings for the offerings of the tenth day of the seventh month]

Support Reference: Pronouns — When to Use Them

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
goats	goat
sin offering	as a purifying sacrifice
sin offering	the purifying sacrifice
atonement	that I accept to remove their sins that they offer on this day
burnt offering	and the … wholly burned sacrifice
grain offering	and their grain … offerings
drink offerings	and the wine offerings that go with them … and wine

Numbers 29:17

ULT	UST
And on the second day: 12 bulls, sons of cattle; two rams; 14 male lambs, sons of a year, perfect;	*On the second day of the celebration, they must offer 12 young bulls, two rams, and 14 male sheep that are one year old. All of them must be healthy.*

ULT And on the second day: 12 bulls, sons of cattle

UST On the second day {of the celebration}, {they must offer} 12 young bulls

Yahweh is leaving out some of the words that in many languages a sentence would need in order to be complete. You can supply these words from the context if that would be clearer in your language. Alternate translation: [And on the second day you shall present 12 bulls, sons of cattle]

Support Reference: Ellipsis

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
bulls	bulls
cattle	young
rams	rams
lambs	male sheep
year	year
perfect	All of them must be healthy

Numbers 29:18

ULT	UST
and their grain offering and their drink offerings for the bulls, for the rams, and for the male lambs by their number according to the ordinance;	*They must follow the same instructions as the first day of the celebration for the amount of each grain and wine offering for each of the bulls, rams, and male sheep.*

ULT **by their number according to the ordinance**

UST They must follow the {same} instructions {as the first day of the celebration} for the amount of

The implication is that the amounts of grain and drink offerings for each animal are the amounts that Yahweh prescribed earlier, in 29:14–15. You could include this information if that would be helpful to your readers. Alternate translation: [by their number according to the amounts prescribed earlier]

Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
grain offering	each grain
drink offerings	and wine offering
bulls	bulls
rams	rams
lambs	and male sheep
ordinance	They must follow the {same} instructions as the first day of the celebration

Numbers 29:19

ULT	UST
and one buck of goats, a sin offering; besides the burnt offering of the continuity and its grain offering and their drink offerings.	*They must also offer a male goat as a purifying sacrifice. They must offer all those things in addition to the regular wholly burned sacrifice with its grain and wine offerings.*

ULT **and their drink offerings**
UST and wine offerings

Here, the pronoun **their** could refer to: (1) the **burnt offering of the continuity**. Alternate translation: [and its drink offering]; or (2) the special offerings for the second day of the festival as well as the **burnt offering of the continuity**. Alternate translation: [and the drink offerings for the offerings for the second day of the festival and for the burnt offering of the continuity]

Support Reference: Pronouns — When to Use Them

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
goats	goat
sin offering	as a purifying sacrifice
burnt offering	the … wholly burned sacrifice
grain offering	with its grain
drink offerings	and wine offerings

Numbers 29:35

ULT	UST
On the eighth day shall be a holiday for you. You shall not do any work of service.	*On the eighth day after the celebration began, they must gather together for a special gathering. They must not do any regular work.*

ULT **a holiday**

UST gather together for a special gathering

A **holiday** is a kind of solemn gathering that closes a festival, on which people assemble to worship and do no work. If your readers would not be familiar with what a holiday is, you could use the name of a similar thing that your readers would recognize, or you could use a more general term. Alternate translation: [a solemn closing assembly]

Support Reference: Translate Unknowns

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
a holiday	gather
work	work

Numbers 29:39

ULT	UST
These you shall do for Yahweh at your appointed times, besides your vows and your freewill offerings, for your burnt offerings, and for your grain offerings, and for your drink offerings, and for your peace offerings.'"	*They must offer all those things to me at their proper times. They must offer them in addition to the offerings that go with solemn promises, the offerings they freely choose to give, and any other wholly burned sacrifices, grain offerings, wine offerings, and fellowship sacrifices."*

ULT **These you shall do**
UST They must offer all those things

The pronoun **These** refers to all of the offerings that Yahweh has described in this chapter and the previous one. It may be helpful to clarify this for your readers. Alternate translation: [These offerings that I have described you shall do]
Support Reference: Pronouns — When to Use Them

ULT **for your burnt offerings, and for your grain offerings, and for your drink offerings, and for your peace offerings**
UST and any other wholly burned sacrifices, grain offerings, wine offerings, and fellowship sacrifices

This could mean: (1) that the offerings outlined in Numbers 28–29 are in addition to all these offerings. Alternate translation: [besides your burnt offerings, and besides your grain offerings, and besides your drink offerings, and besides your peace offerings]; or (2) that the offerings in Numbers 28–29 are these kinds of offerings. Alternate translation: [as your burnt offerings, and as your grain offerings, and as your drinking offerings, and as your peace offerings]
Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

ULT **and for your peace offerings**
UST and fellowship sacrifices

This is the end of the second-level quotation that began in 28:3, and it is also the end of the first-level quotation that began in 28:2. You may wish to mark the ends of these speeches with closing second-level and first-level quotation marks or with some other punctuation or convention that your language uses to indicate the end of a quotation within a quotation.
Support Reference: Quote Markings

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Yahweh	to me
appointed	at their proper times
vows	the offerings that go with solemn promises
freewill offerings	the offerings they freely choose to give
offerings	sacrifices
grain offerings	grain offerings
drink offerings	wine offerings
peace offerings	and fellowship sacrifices

Numbers 30

Numbers 30 Introduction

Numbers 30 Chapter Introduction

Structure and Formatting

In this chapter, Moses recounts instructions concerning vows and agreements made by women. The instructions deal with four situations: an unmarried woman living with her parents, a woman who has recently gotten married, a divorced woman or widow, and a woman who is married. In each case, if the woman is part of a man's household, the man is responsible for confirming or nullifying the woman's vow or agreement.

1. Moses explains that vows made to Yahweh must be kept (1–2)
2. A father may confirm or cancel the vow of a young woman living in his house (3–5)
3. A husband may confirm or cancel a vow his wife made before their marriage (6–8)
4. Widows and divorced women must keep their vows (9)
5. Moses explains the rules for vows made by married women (10–16)

Religious and Cultural Concepts in This Chapter

Household structure and authority

In this culture, the person who had authority over the whole household was the oldest male. So, a daughter living at home with her parents or a married woman living with her husband was under the authority of the man, whether her father or her husband. However, for a widow or divorced woman, there was no man with authority over her. Given this way of structuring households, this chapter indicates that the person in charge of the household (usually the husband or father) was responsible for confirming or nullifying any promises or agreements made by the women in the household.

Vows

Vows were promises that a person made to God. Often, the person would ask God to do something and then promise to do something or give something to God if God did what the person asked. Consider how you might refer to this kind of solemn promise made to God.

Oaths

Oaths were statements that confirmed promises and commitments. Oaths could call God as witness, or they could specify the consequences if the promise or commitment was broken. Consider how you might refer to this kind of solemn confirming statement.

Bonds

The word translated as “bond” in this chapter occurs only here in the Hebrew Bible. Scholars debate exactly what it means. It could refer to a promise not to do something, while “vow” refers to a promise to do something. More likely, it refers to a binding agreement, sometimes written, with a person or people. The UST follows that interpretation. Consider how you might refer to a binding agreement between people.

Translation Issues in This Chapter

What is the class of the woman in 30:10–15?

Some scholars argue that 30:10–15 or 30:10–12 continues to speak about the same woman as 30:9 does: a divorced or widowed woman. In this case, 30:10–15 or 30:10–12 refer to the time before the woman was widowed or divorced. Other scholars argue that 3:10–15 deal with a new situation: a woman who is married when she makes vows or agreements. This seems to make more sense of the present tense verbs in 30:12. The UST follows this interpretation.

Numbers 30:1

ULT	UST
And Moses spoke to the heads of the tribes of the sons of Israel, saying, "This is the word that Yahweh has commanded:	*Moses told the men who led the Israelite tribes, "I will tell you what Yahweh instructed me about solemn promises.*

ULT **the heads of the tribes**
UST the men who led the … tribes

The author is speaking as if the leaders of the tribes of Israel were the **heads** of those tribes. If this meaning would not be clear in your language, you could use a comparable expression or you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [the leaders of the tribes]
Support Reference: Metaphor

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Moses	Moses
tribes	tribes
Israel	Israelite
Yahweh	Yahweh

Numbers 30:2

ULT	UST
A man, when he vows a vow to Yahweh or swears an oath to bind a bond on his life, he shall not profane his word. According to everything going out from his mouth he shall do.	*Suppose that a man makes a solemn promise to Yahweh or commits to a formal agreement with a pledge. In that case, the man must do everything that he said he would do. He must not fail to do all of it.*

ULT **A man, when he vows a vow to Yahweh or swears an oath to bind a bond on his life, he shall not profane his word**

UST Suppose that a man makes a solemn promise to Yahweh or commits to a formal agreement with a pledge … He must not fail to do all of it

Moses is presenting a possible condition, that a man might make a vow or swear an oath to Yahweh. Use a natural form in your language for introducing a condition that could happen. It may also be helpful to reorder this sentence so that the conditional statement comes first. Alternate translation: [If a man vows a vow to Yahweh or swears an oath to bind a bond on his life, he shall not profane his word]

Support Reference: Connect — Hypothetical Conditions

ULT **to bind a bond on his life**

UST commits to a formal agreement

Here and throughout the chapter, the word **bond** could mean: (1) that the person has formally committed to an agreement with someone. Alternate translation: [to commit to a binding contract]; or (2) that the person has made a promise to abstain from something. Alternate translation: [to refrain from doing something]

Support Reference: Metaphor

ULT **A man**

UST a man

Moses is not referring to a specific **man**. He means men in general. If it would be helpful to your readers, you could use an expression that would be more natural in your language. Alternate translation: [Any man]

Support Reference: Generic Noun Phrases

ULT **he vows a vow to Yahweh or swears an oath to bind a bond on his life**

UST makes a solemn promise to Yahweh or commits to a formal agreement with a pledge

Moses is using a construction in which a verb and its object come from the same root. You may be able to use the same construction in your language to express the meaning here. Alternatively, your language may have another way of saying this.

Support Reference: Poetry

ULT **to bind a bond on his life**
UST commits to a formal agreement

Moses is using **to bind a bond on his life** as a common expression of the culture to mean "to place himself under a binding obligation." If this phrase does not have that meaning for your readers, you could use a comparable expression from your language that does have that meaning, or you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [to place himself under a binding obligation]
Support Reference: Idiom

ULT **he shall not profane his word**
UST He must not fail to do all of it

Moses is using **he shall not profane his word** as a common expression of the culture to mean "he must not break his promise." If this phrase does not have that meaning for your readers, you could use a comparable expression from your language that does have that meaning, or you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [he must not break his promise]
Support Reference: Idiom

ULT **According to everything going out from his mouth**
UST everything that he said he would do

Here, **going out from his mouth** represents what the man has said. If it would be helpful in your language, you could use an equivalent expression or plain language. Alternate translation: [According to everything that he has spoken]
Support Reference: Metonymy

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Yahweh	Yahweh
swears	with a pledge
oath	with a pledge
profane	He must … fail

Numbers 30:3

ULT	UST
And a woman, when she vows a vow to Yahweh and binds a bond in the house of her father in her youth,	*Suppose that there is a young unmarried woman who still lives with her parents. Suppose that she makes a solemn promise to Yahweh or commits to a formal agreement.*

ULT **And a woman**

UST there is a … woman

Moses is not referring to a specific **woman**. He means women in general. If it would be helpful to your readers, you could use an expression that would be more natural in your language. Alternate translation: [And any woman]

Support Reference: Generic Noun Phrases

ULT **in the house of her father in her youth**

UST young unmarried … who still lives with her parents

The implication is that this woman is young and unmarried and so is still living under the authority of her father. You could include this information if that would be helpful to your readers. Alternate translation: [in the house of her father while she is still young and unmarried]

Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Yahweh	Yahweh
house	who still lives with her parents

Numbers 30:4

ULT	UST
and her father hears her vow and her bond that she bound on her life, and her father keeps silent to her, then all her vows shall stand, and every bond that she bound on her life shall stand.	*Suppose that her father learns about her solemn promise or the formal agreement to which she committed. If he does not say anything about it, then her solemn promise or the formal agreement to which she committed remains valid.*

ULT **and her father keeps silent to her**
UST If he does not say anything about it

Moses is using **keeps silent to her** as a common expression of the culture to mean "says nothing to oppose what she has done." If this phrase does not have that meaning for your readers, you could use a comparable expression from your language that does have that meaning, or you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [and her father says nothing to oppose what she has done]
Support Reference: Idiom

ULT **then all her vows shall stand**
UST then her solemn promise … remains valid

Moses is using **shall stand** as a common expression of the culture to mean "will remain in force." If this phrase does not have that meaning for your readers, you could use a comparable expression from your language that does have that meaning, or you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [then all her vows shall remain in force]
Support Reference: Idiom

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
vow	about her solemn promise
bond	or the formal agreement
bound	she committed
vows	her solemn promise
bond	the formal agreement
bound	she committed

Numbers 30:5

ULT	UST
And if her father forbids her on the day of his hearing, all her vows and her bonds that she bound on her life shall not stand, and Yahweh will forgive her, for her father forbade her.	*However, if her father opposes what she said when he learns about it, then her solemn promise or the formal agreement to which she committed is no longer valid. It was her father who opposed what she said, so Yahweh will forgive her for failing to do what she said.*

ULT **on the day of his hearing**
UST when he learns about it

Moses is using **on the day of his hearing** as a common expression of the culture to mean "at the time when he learns about it." If this phrase does not have that meaning for your readers, you could use a comparable expression from your language that does have that meaning, or you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [when he hears about it]
Support Reference: Idiom

ULT **and Yahweh will forgive her**
UST Yahweh will forgive her for failing to do what she said

The implication is that Yahweh will forgive her for not doing what she vowed to do. You could include this information if that would be helpful to your readers. Alternate translation: [and Yahweh will forgive her for not doing what she vowed to do]
Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

ULT **for her father forbade her**
UST It was her father who opposed what she said, so

The word translated as **for** indicates that what follows is a reason for what came before. Use a connector in your language that makes it clear that what follows is a reason for what came before. Alternate translation: [because her father forbade her]
Support Reference: Connect — Reason-and-Result Relationship

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
vows	her solemn promise
bonds	or the formal agreement
bound	she committed
Yahweh	Yahweh
forgive	forgive

Numbers 30:6

ULT	UST
And if being, she is for a man, and her vows are upon her, or the thoughtless speech of her lips that she bound on her life,	*Suppose that there is a woman who has made a solemn promise or carelessly committed to a formal agreement. Suppose that she marries a man while that promise or agreement is still valid.*

ULT **And if being, she is for a man**

UST Suppose that … Suppose that she marries a man

Moses is repeating forms of the verb **being** in order to intensify his expression of the idea that it conveys. If your language can repeat words for intensification, it would be appropriate to do that here in your translation. If not, your language may have another way of expressing the intensification. Alternate translation: [And if she indeed becomes the wife of a man]

Support Reference: Reduplication

ULT **she is for a man**

UST Suppose that she marries a man

Moses is using **she is for a man** as a common expression of the culture to mean "she becomes the wife of a man." If this phrase does not have that meaning for your readers, you could use a comparable expression from your language that does have that meaning, or you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [she becomes the wife of a man]

Support Reference: Idiom

ULT **the thoughtless speech of her lips**

UST carelessly

Here, **her lips** represent what she has said. If it would be helpful in your language, you could use an equivalent expression or plain language. Alternate translation: [her thoughtless spoken words]

Support Reference: Metonymy

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
vows	there is a woman who has made a solemn promise
bound	committed to a formal agreement

Numbers 30:8

ULT	UST
And if, on the day of her husband's hearing, he forbids her, then he breaks her vow that is upon her and the thoughtless speech of her lips that she bound on her life, and Yahweh will forgive her.	*However, if her husband opposes what she said when he learns about it, then he nullifies her solemn promise or the formal agreement to which she carelessly committed that was still valid. In that case, Yahweh will forgive her for failing to do what she said.*

ULT **And if, on the day of her husband's hearing, he forbids her**

UST However, if her husband opposes what she said when he learns about it

If it would be more natural in your language, you may want to put the information about her husband forbidding her before the information about the day when he hears about her vow. Alternate translation: [And if her husband forbids her on the day of his hearing]

Support Reference: Information Structure

ULT **then he breaks her vow**

UST then he nullifies her solemn promise

Moses is using **breaks her vow** as a common expression of the culture to mean "cancels her vow." If this phrase does not have that meaning for your readers, you could use a comparable expression from your language that does have that meaning, or you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [then he cancels her vow]

Support Reference: Idiom

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
vow	her solemn promise
bound	the formal agreement to which she … committed
Yahweh	Yahweh
forgive	forgive

Numbers 30:9

ULT	UST
And the vow of a widow and one driven out, everything that she bound on her life, shall stand upon her.	*Suppose that there is a woman whose husband has died or divorced her. Suppose that she makes a solemn promise or commits to a formal agreement. In that case, her promise or agreement is always valid.*

ULT **and one driven out**
UST or divorced her

The expression **driven out** is a passive verbal form. If it would be unnatural to use that form, you could express the idea in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: [and one whom her husband has sent away]
Support Reference: Active or Passive

ULT **and one driven out**
UST or divorced her

Moses is using **one driven out** as a common expression of the culture to mean "a woman whose husband has divorced her." If this phrase does not have that meaning for your readers, you could use a comparable expression from your language that does have that meaning, or you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [and a divorced woman]
Support Reference: Idiom

ULT **shall stand upon her**
UST In that case, her promise or agreement is always valid

The implication is that no one else has the authority to cancel what such a woman has promised. You could include this information if that would be helpful to your readers. Alternate translation: [shall stand upon her, since no one has the authority to cancel it]
Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
vow	Suppose that she makes a solemn promise
bound	or commits to a formal agreement

Numbers 30:10

ULT	UST
And if in the house of her husband she vowed, or bound a bond on her life with an oath,	*Suppose that there is a married woman. Suppose that she makes a solemn promise or commits to a formal agreement with a pledge while she is living with her husband.*

ULT **And if {in} the house of her husband she vowed**

UST Suppose that {there is a married woman. Suppose that} she makes a solemn promise … while she is living with her husband

Here, Moses could be speaking about: (1) a new situation, that of a woman who is married when she makes the vow or agreement. This situation is the topic of 30:10–15. Alternate translation: [And as for a married woman, if in the house of her husband she vowed]; or (2) the same situation, that of a widowed or divorced woman. In this case, Moses is explaining what the instructions are for vows and agreements she made before her husband died or divorced her. This situation is the topic of 30:10–12 or 30:10–15, and the tense of the verbs in those verses should be changed to the far past. Alternate translation: [And if she had previously vowed in the house of her husband before he died or divorced her]

Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
house	while she is living with her husband
vowed	Suppose that she makes a solemn promise
bound	commits to
bond	a formal agreement
oath	with a pledge

Numbers 30:11

ULT	UST
and her husband hears, and he keeps silent to her—he does not forbid her—then all her vows shall stand, and every bond that she bound on her life shall stand.	*Suppose that her husband learns about her promise or agreement. If he does not say anything about it or oppose what she said, then her solemn promise or the formal agreement to which she committed remains valid.*

ULT **and he keeps silent to her—he does not forbid her**

UST If he does not say anything about it or oppose what she said

The terms **keeps silent to her** and **does not forbid her** mean similar things. Moses is using the two terms together for emphasis. If it would be clearer for your readers, you could express the emphasis with a single phrase. Alternate translation: [and he says nothing at all to oppose her]

Support Reference: Doublet

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
vows	her solemn promise
bond	or the formal agreement
bound	she committed

Numbers 30:12

ULT	UST
And if breaking, her husband breaks them on the day of his hearing, all that goes out of her lips for her vows and for the bond of her life shall not stand. Her husband has broken them, and Yahweh will forgive her.	*However, if her husband nullifies her promise or agreement when he learns about it, then everything she said with regard to the solemn promise or the formal agreement to which she committed is no longer valid. It was her husband who nullified what she said, so Yahweh will forgive her for failing to do what she said.*

ULT **And if breaking, her husband breaks them**

UST However, if her husband nullifies her promise or agreement

Moses is repeating forms of the verb **breaks** in order to intensify his expression of the idea that it conveys. If your language can repeat words for intensification, it would be appropriate to do that here in your translation. If not, your language may have another way of expressing the intensification. Alternate translation: [And if her husband completely cancels them]

Support Reference: Reduplication

ULT **all that goes out of her lips for her vows and for the bond of her life shall not stand. Her husband has broken them**

UST then everything she said with regard to the solemn promise or the formal agreement to which she committed is no longer valid. It was her husband who nullified what she said

Moses does not use a connecting word here, but the second sentence gives the reason for the result that the first sentence describes. If it would be more natural in your language, you could state the reason first and use a connector such as “because.” Alternate translation: [because her husband has broken them, all that goes out of her lips for her vows and for the bond of her life shall not stand]

Support Reference: Connect — Reason-and-Result Relationship

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
vows	with regard to the solemn promise
bond	or the formal agreement to which she committed
Yahweh	Yahweh
forgive	forgive

Numbers 30:13

ULT	UST
Every vow and every oath of a bond to humble a soul, her husband may make it stand, and her husband may break it.	*Whenever a married woman makes a solemn promise or a formal agreement with a pledge to abstain from something, her husband can confirm that it is valid, or he can nullify it.*

ULT **Every vow and every oath of a bond to humble a soul, her husband may make it stand**

UST Whenever a married woman makes a solemn promise or a formal agreement with a pledge to abstain from something, her husband can confirm that it is valid

If it would be more natural in your language, you may want to put the information about what her husband may do before the information about the vows and oaths that he may act on. Alternate translation: [Her husband may make stand every vow and every oath of a bond to humble a soul]

Support Reference: Information Structure

ULT **oath of a bond**

UST or a formal agreement with a pledge

Moses is using the possessive form to describe an **oath** that is characterized by a **bond**. If a speaker of your language would not use the possessive form for this, you could express this idea in another way. Alternate translation: [a binding oath]

Support Reference: Possession

ULT **to humble a soul**

UST to abstain from something

Moses is using **to humble a soul** as a common expression of the culture to mean "to deny oneself something, such as by going without food." If this phrase does not have that meaning for your readers, you could use a comparable expression from your language that does have that meaning, or you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [to deny oneself something]

Support Reference: Idiom

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
vow	Whenever a married woman makes a solemn promise
oath	with a pledge
bond	or a formal agreement
humble	to abstain from something
soul	to abstain from something

Numbers 30:14

ULT	UST
And if keeping silent, her husband keeps silent to her from day to day, then he makes stand all her vows or all her bonds that are on her. He has made them stand because he kept silent to her on the day of his hearing.	*Now suppose that her husband does not say anything about it for several days. In that case, he has confirmed that her solemn promise or the formal agreement to which she committed is valid. He did not say anything about it when he learned about it, so he has confirmed that it is valid.*

ULT **And if keeping silent, her husband keeps silent to her**
UST Now suppose that her husband does not say anything about it

Moses is repeating forms of the verb **keeps silent** in order to intensify his expression of the idea that it conveys. If your language can repeat words for intensification, it would be appropriate to do that here in your translation. If not, your language may have another way of expressing the intensification. Alternate translation: [And if her husband remains completely silent toward her]
Support Reference: Reduplication

ULT **from day to day**
UST for several days

Moses is using **from day to day** as a common expression of the culture to mean "as one day follows another." If this phrase does not have that meaning for your readers, you could use a comparable expression from your language that does have that meaning, or you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [as one day follows another]
Support Reference: Idiom

ULT **then he makes stand all her vows**
UST In that case, he has confirmed that her solemn promise … is valid

Moses is using **makes stand** as a common expression of the culture to mean "confirms that they remain in force." If this phrase does not have that meaning for your readers, you could use a comparable expression from your language that does have that meaning, or you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [then he confirms all her vows]
Support Reference: Idiom

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
vows	her solemn promise
bonds	the formal agreement

Numbers 30:15

ULT	UST
And if breaking, he breaks them after his hearing, then he shall lift up her iniquity."	*However, suppose that he nullifies the promise or agreement some time after he learns about it. In that case, Yahweh will punish him for what his wife did wrong by failing to do what she said."*

ULT **then he shall lift up her iniquity**

UST In that case, Yahweh will punish him for what his wife did wrong by failing to do what she said

Moses is using **he shall lift up her iniquity** as a common expression of the culture to mean "he will bear the guilt for what she did not do." If this phrase does not have that meaning for your readers, you could use a comparable expression from your language that does have that meaning, or you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [then he shall bear the guilt for what she did not do]

Support Reference: Idiom

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
iniquity	for what his wife did wrong by failing to do what she said

Numbers 30:16

ULT	UST
These are the statutes that Yahweh commanded Moses, between a man to his wife, between a father to his daughter in her youth in the house of her father.	*Yahweh gave those instructions to Moses. They deal with a husband and his wife and a father and his young unmarried daughter who still lives with her parents.*

ULT **between a man to his wife, between a father to his daughter**
UST They deal with a husband and his wife and a father and his … unmarried daughter

Moses is using **between a man to his wife, between a father to his daughter** as a common expression of the culture to mean “concerning the relationship of a man to his wife and of a father to his daughter.” If this phrase does not have that meaning for your readers, you could use a comparable expression from your language that does have that meaning, or you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [concerning the relationship of a man to his wife and of a father to his daughter]

Support Reference: Idiom

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
statutes	instructions
Yahweh	Yahweh
Moses	Moses
house	who still lives with her parents

Numbers 31

Numbers 31 Introduction

Numbers 31 Chapter Introduction

Structure and Formatting

This chapter describes Israel's war against Midian. After the battle, Moses gives instructions about the captives and about cleansing the soldiers and captured goods. The goods are divided, and portions are given to Yahweh.

1. Yahweh commands Israel to attack Midian, and Israel wins the battle (1–12)
2. Moses gives instructions about the captives and purification after battle (13–24)
3. The captives, animals, and goods are divided, with portions given to Yahweh (25–47)
4. The army's officers bring gold as an offering to Yahweh (48–54)

Religious and Cultural Concepts in This Chapter

War for Yahweh

When the Israelites fought wars that Yahweh commanded them to fight, they sometimes killed all the men of the people they were fighting. That is what they do when they defeat the Midianites in this chapter. While God does not give explicit instructions, Moses also requires the Israelites to kill the boys and the women who have had sex. These actions are very violent, and scholars interpret the meaning in different ways. It is recommended that translations simply represent the violence.

Purity and impurity

This chapter refers back to concepts that were important in Numbers 19. Those concepts include impurity because of dead bodies and the special water that the Israelites could use to cleanse this impurity. In this chapter, the soldiers, captives, and plunder are impure. The people must be cleansed by washing with the special water as they wait outside the camp for seven days. The plunder must be cleansed by the special water and, in some cases, by fire. Once everything is cleansed, the people and plunder may enter the Israelite camp.

The levy for Yahweh and the Levites

This chapter refers to a "levy" from the plunder that the Israelites needed to pay to Yahweh and to the Levites. Moses first divided the plunder in half. One half was for the soldiers who had fought in the battle. From this half, they had to give one out of every 500 people and animals to Yahweh as the "levy." Yahweh then granted this levy to Eleazar and the rest of the priests. From the other half that belonged to the rest of the Israelites, they had to give one out of every 50 people and animals to the Levites. Some translations refer to this "levy" as a tax or a tribute. Consider how you might refer to the levy in your language.

Translation Issues in This Chapter

Balaam

This chapter refers to the same Balaam from Numbers 22–24. The Israelites killed him when they attacked the Midianites (see 31:8). Later in the chapter (31:16), Moses indicates that Balaam was the one who told the Midianites to convince the Israelites to worship Baal of Peor, which is narrated in Numbers 25. Consider how you can make it clear to your readers that this chapter refers to the same Balaam from Numbers 22–24 and the same event from Numbers 25.

Hyperbole

In this chapter, the narrator speaks as if the Israelites had completely destroyed all the Midianite men and cities and had taken every single thing that the Midianites owned. However, it is clear from later stories that many Midianites were not killed (for example, see the story in Judges 6). The narrator may be using hyperbole to indicate that the Israelites defeated and killed many Midianites. Or, the narrator may mean that the Israelites defeated and killed all the men in a specific group of Midianites. It is recommended that you preserve the strong language in your translation, but you could include a footnote explaining what the extreme language may mean.

Large numbers

There are many large numbers in this chapter, including many over 10,000. Consider how you would express large numbers in your language and use that form consistently in this chapter. See how you translated the large numbers in chapter 1.

Numbers 31:2

ULT	UST
"Avenge the vengeance of the sons of Israel from with the Midianites. Afterward you shall be gathered to your peoples."	*"Have the Israelites punish the Midianites for what they did to you all. Then you will die and be with your ancestors who have already died."*

ULT **Avenge the vengeance of the sons of Israel**
UST Have the Israelites punish … for what they did to you all

Yahweh is using a construction in which a verb and its object come from the same root. You may be able to use the same construction in your language to express the meaning here. Alternatively, your language may have another way of saying this. Alternate translation: [Avenge the sons of Israel]
Support Reference: Poetry

ULT **the vengeance of the sons of Israel**
UST the Israelites … for what they did to you all

Yahweh is using the possessive form to describe the **vengeance** that he will take on behalf of **the sons of Israel**, not vengeance that they take on their own. If a speaker of your language would not use the possessive form for this, you could express this idea in another way. Alternate translation: [vengeance on behalf of the sons of Israel]
Support Reference: Possession

ULT **you shall be gathered to your peoples**
UST you will {die and} be with your ancestors who have already died

The expression **you shall be gathered** is a passive verbal form. If it would be unnatural to use that form, you could express the idea in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: [you will join your people]
Support Reference: Active or Passive

ULT **you shall be gathered to your peoples**
UST you will {die and} be with your ancestors who have already died

Yahweh is referring to Moses dying in a polite way by using the phrase **you shall be gathered to your peoples**. Depending on what is helpful for your readers, you could use a polite way of referring to this in your language, or you could state this plainly. Alternate translation: [you shall die]
Support Reference: Euphemism

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Avenge	Have … punish
vengeance	for what they did to you all
Israel	Israelites
Midianites	Midianites
gathered	you will {die and} be with

Numbers 31:3

ULT	UST
And Moses spoke to the people, saying, "Equip from with you men for the army. And they shall be against Midian to give the vengeance of Yahweh on Midian.	*So Moses told the Israelites, "Some of you men must prepare yourselves to fight. You will fight against the Midianites, and Yahweh will use you to punish them.*

ULT **Equip from with you men for the army. And they shall be against Midian to give the vengeance of Yahweh on Midian**

UST Some of you men must prepare yourselves to fight. You will fight against the Midianites, and Yahweh will use you to punish them

Here, **to** marks **give the vengeance of Yahweh on Midian** as the goal or purpose of the command **Equip from with you men for the army**. Use a connector in your language that makes it clear that this is the purpose. Alternate translation: [in order to carry out Yahweh's revenge against Midian]

Support Reference: Connect — Goal (Purpose) Relationship

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Moses	Moses
Midian	Midianites
vengeance	will use you to punish
Yahweh	Yahweh
Midian	them

Numbers 31:4

ULT	UST
A thousand for the tribe, a thousand for the tribe for all the tribes of Israel you shall send for the army.”	*Each Israelite tribe must have 1,000 men go to fight the Midianites.”*

ULT A thousand

UST 1,000 men

Translate this number according to the conventions of your own language and culture.
Alternate translation: [1,000]

Support Reference: Numbers

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
tribe	1,000 men
tribe	1,000 men
tribes	tribe
Israel	Israelite

Numbers 31:5

ULT	UST
And were selected from the thousands of Israel a thousand for the tribe, 12,000 equipped ones of an army.	*So, out of the many Israelite men, 1,000 men from each tribe prepared themselves to fight the Midianites. There were 12,000 men in all.*

ULT **And were selected from the thousands of Israel a thousand for the tribe**
UST So, out of the many Israelite men, 1,000 men from each tribe prepared themselves

If it would be more natural in your language, you may want to put the information about **a thousand for the tribe** before the information about how they **were selected from the thousands of Israel**. Alternate translation: [And a thousand for the tribe were selected from the thousands of Israel]

Support Reference: Information Structure

ULT **And were selected from the thousands of Israel**
UST So, out of the many Israelite men … prepared themselves

The expression **were selected** is a passive verbal form. If it would be unnatural to use that form, you could express the idea in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: [And the people selected from the thousands of Israel]

Support Reference: Active or Passive

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Israel	Israelite
tribe	tribe

Numbers 31:6

ULT	UST
And Moses sent them, a thousand for the tribe for the army, them and Phinehas the son of Eleazar the priest for the army, and the vessels of the holy place and the trumpets of the alarm were in his hand.	*Then, Moses had them go to fight the Midianites. One thousand men from each tribe went, and Eleazar's son Phinehas, the priest, went with them. Phinehas took with him some of the equipment for the sacred tent and the trumpets that they would sound in a special way to communicate.*

ULT **and the vessels of the holy place**
UST some of the equipment for the sacred tent

The author is using the possessive form to describe **vessels** that are characterized by their use in **the holy place**. If a speaker of your language would not use the possessive form for this, you could express this idea in another way. Alternate translation: [and the vessels used in the holy place]
Support Reference: Possession

ULT **and the trumpets of the alarm**
UST and the trumpets that they would sound in a special way to communicate

The author is using the possessive form to describe **the trumpets** that were blown to sound **the alarm** in battle. If a speaker of your language would not use the possessive form for this, you could express this idea in another way. Alternate translation: [and the trumpets for sounding the alarm]
Support Reference: Possession

ULT **were in his hand**
UST Phinehas took with him

Here, **hand** represents the charge or care of a person. If it would be helpful in your language, you could use an equivalent expression or plain language. Alternate translation: [in his care]
Support Reference: Metonymy

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Moses	Moses
tribe	tribe
Phinehas	Phinehas
Eleazar	Eleazar's
priest	priest
holy place	for the sacred tent
trumpets	trumpets
alarm	that they would sound in a special way to communicate

Numbers 31:8

ULT	UST
And they killed the kings of Midian upon their slain ones: Evi and Rekem and Zur and Hur and Reba, the five kings of Midian; and Balaam the son of Beor they killed by the sword.	*In addition to the soldiers they killed, the Israelites also killed the five men who ruled the Midianites: Evi, Rekem, Zur, Hur, and Reba. They also killed Beor's son, Balaam.*

ULT **and Balaam the son of Beor they killed by the sword**

UST They also killed Beor's son, Balaam

If it would be more natural in your language, you may want to put the information about **they killed** before the information about **Balaam the son of Beor**. Alternate translation: [and they killed Balaam the son of Beor by the sword]

Support Reference: Information Structure

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
killed	killed
kings	the … men who ruled
Midian	Midianites
slain	killed
kings	five
Midian	five
Balaam	Balaam
killed	killed
sword	They … killed

Numbers 31:9

ULT	UST
And the sons of Israel took captive the women of Midian and their children, and they plundered all their animal and all their livestock and all their strength.	*The Israelites captured the Midianite women and children. They took away all the farm animals and valuable things that belonged to the Midianites.*

ULT **their animal**

UST all the farm animals

In this verse, the word **animal** is singular in form, but it refers to all the animals belonging to the Midianites as a group. If it would be helpful in your language, you could use the plural form of "animal." Alternate translation: [their animals]

Support Reference: Collective Nouns

ULT **all their strength**

UST valuable things that belonged to the Midianites

Here, **strength** represents the wealth and possessions of the Midianites. If it would be helpful in your language, you could use an equivalent expression or plain language. Alternate translation: [all their goods]

Support Reference: Metonymy

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Israel	Israelites
captive	captured
Midian	Midianite
plundered	They took away
animal	animals
livestock	animals
their strength	valuable things that belonged to the Midianites

Numbers 31:10

ULT	UST
And all their cities with their dwellings and all their encampments they burned with the fire.	*They burned down all the towns and settlements where the Midianites lived.*

ULT **And all their cities with their dwellings and all their encampments they burned with the fire**

UST They burned down all the towns and settlements where the Midianites lived

If it would be more natural in your language, you may want to put the information about **they burned with the fire** before the information about **all their cities with their dwellings and all their encampments**. Alternate translation: [And they burned with the fire all their cities with their dwellings and all their encampments]

Support Reference: Information Structure

ULT **their cities with their dwellings and all their encampments**

UST the towns and settlements where the Midianites lived

The pronoun **their** refers to the Midianites. It may be helpful to clarify this for your readers. Alternate translation: [all the cities of the Midianites with their dwellings and all the encampments of the Midianites]

Support Reference: Pronouns — When to Use Them

ULT **they burned with the fire**

UST They burned down

The pronoun **they** refers to the Israelite soldiers. It may be helpful to clarify this for your readers. Alternate translation: [the Israelite soldiers burned with the fire]

Support Reference: Pronouns — When to Use Them

Numbers 31:11

ULT	UST
And they took all the plunder and all the spoil, among the man and among the animal,	*They collected everything that they had captured, including the people and the farm animals.*

ULT **And they took**
UST They collected

The pronoun **they** refers to the Israelite soldiers who fought against Midian. It may be helpful to clarify this for your readers. Alternate translation: [And the Israelite soldiers took]
Support Reference: Pronouns — When to Use Them

ULT **among the man**
UST including the people

In this verse, the word **the man** is singular in form, but it refers to the people they captured as a group. If it would be helpful in your language, you could use a plural form. Alternate translation: [among the people]
Support Reference: Collective Nouns

ULT **and among the animal**
UST and the farm animals

In this verse, the word **animal** is singular in form, but it refers to the animals the Israelites captured as a group. If it would be helpful in your language, you could use the plural form of "animal." Alternate translation: [and among the animals]
Support Reference: Collective Nouns

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
plunder	everything that they had captured
spoil	everything that they had captured
animal	animals

Numbers 31:12

ULT	UST
and they brought to Moses and to Eleazar the priest and to the congregation of the sons of Israel the captive and the spoil and the plunder to the camp, to the plains of Moab, which are beside the Jordan at Jericho.	*They took the prisoners and everything that they had captured to where the Israelites had set up their tents. That was in the flatlands that were part of Moab, on the east side of the Jordan River, across from Jericho. They presented all those things to Moses, Eleazar the priest, and the rest of the Israelite community.*

ULT **and they brought**
UST They took

The pronoun **they** refers to the Israelite soldiers who fought against Midian. It may be helpful to clarify this for your readers. Alternate translation: [and the Israelite soldiers brought]
Support Reference: Pronouns — When to Use Them

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Moses	Moses
Eleazar	Eleazar
priest	priest
congregation	community
Israel	Israelite
captive	the prisoners
spoil	and everything that they had captured
plunder	and everything that they had captured
Moab	Moab
Jordan	Jordan River
Jericho	Jericho

Numbers 31:13

ULT	UST
And Moses and Eleazar the priest and all the leaders of the congregation went out to meet them to the outside of the camp.	*Now Moses, Eleazar the priest, and all the men who led the Israelite community had walked outside the area where the Israelites set up their tents to welcome the soldiers.*

ULT **to meet them**
UST to welcome the soldiers

The pronoun **them** refers to the Israelite soldiers returning from the battle. It may be helpful to clarify this for your readers. Alternate translation: [to meet the Israelite soldiers]

Support Reference: Pronouns — When to Use Them

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Moses	Moses
Eleazar	Eleazar
priest	priest
leaders	the men who led
congregation	community

Numbers 31:14

ULT	UST
And Moses was angry against the counted ones of the strength, the princes of the thousands and the princes of the hundreds, the ones coming from the army of the battle.	*Moses became angry with some of the soldiers who had returned from fighting the Midianites. Specifically, he became angry with the commanders over groups of 1,000 and 100 soldiers.*

ULT **the counted ones of the strength**

UST some of the soldiers

Here, **strength** represents the fighting force of Israel. If it would be helpful in your language, you could use an equivalent expression or plain language. Alternate translation: [the enrolled men of the army]

Support Reference: Metonymy

ULT **the princes of the thousands and the princes of the hundreds**

UST Specifically, {he became angry with} the commanders over groups of 1,000 and 100 soldiers

Moses is using the possessive form to describe **princes** who are characterized by leading **thousands** and **hundreds** of soldiers. If a speaker of your language would not use the possessive form for this, you could express this idea in another way. Alternate translation: [the princes who commanded thousands of soldiers and the princes who commanded hundreds of soldiers]

Support Reference: Possession

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Moses	Moses
princes	Specifically, {he became angry with} the commanders
princes	and 100 soldiers

Numbers 31:15

ULT	UST
And Moses said to them, "Have you kept every female alive?	*He told them, "You should not have allowed all the Midianite women to live!*

ULT Have you kept every female alive

UST You should not have allowed all the {Midianite} women to live

Moses is using the question form to rebuke the commanders for sparing the Midianite women. If a speaker of your language would not use the question form for that purpose, you could translate this as a statement or as an exclamation. Alternate translation: [You should not have kept every female alive!]

Support Reference: Rhetorical Question

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Moses	He

Numbers 31:16

ULT	UST
Behold, they were to the sons of Israel by the word of Balaam to select unfaithfulness against Yahweh on the matter of Peor, and the plague was among the congregation of Yahweh.	*Remember, these are the women who did to us Israelites what Balaam said. Many of us stopped being loyal to Yahweh when they convinced the Israelite men to worship the god Baal, whom people worship at Peor. Because of that, many people in our community that worships Yahweh became sick with a terrible disease.*

ULT **Behold**
UST Remember

Moses is using the term **Behold** to focus his listeners' attention on what he is about to say. Your language may have a comparable expression that you can use in your translation. Alternate translation: [Pay attention]
Support Reference: Foreground Information

ULT **they**
UST these are the women

The pronoun **they** refers to the Midianite women whom the soldiers kept alive. It may be helpful to clarify this for your readers. Alternate translation: [these women]
Support Reference: Pronouns — When to Use Them

ULT **by the word of Balaam**
UST what Balaam said

Here, **word** represents the advice that Balaam gave. If it would be helpful in your language, you could use an equivalent expression or plain language. Alternate translation: [by following what Balaam advised]
Support Reference: Metonymy

ULT **to select unfaithfulness**
UST Many of us stopped being loyal

If your language does not use an abstract noun for the idea of **unfaithfulness**, you could express the same idea in another way. Alternate translation: [to choose to act unfaithfully]
Support Reference: Abstract Nouns

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Israel	Israelites
Balaam	Balaam
unfaithfulness	Many of us stopped being loyal
Yahweh	Yahweh
Peor	Peor
plague	became sick with a terrible disease
congregation	community
Yahweh	Yahweh

Numbers 31:17

ULT	UST
And now, kill every male among the children, and kill every woman having known a man to the bed of a male.	*So, you must kill every boy and every woman who has had sex with a man.*

ULT **having known a man to the bed of a male**
UST who has had sex with a man

Moses is referring to sexual relations in a polite way by using the phrase **having known a man to the bed of a male**. Depending on what is helpful for your readers, you could use a polite way of referring to this in your language, or you could state this plainly. Alternate translation: [who has slept with a man]

Support Reference: Euphemism

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
kill	kill
kill	kill
having known	who has had sex with a man

Numbers 31:18

ULT	UST
And keep alive for you all children among the women who have not known a bed of a male.	*However, you must allow every girl who has not had sex with a man to live among you.*

ULT **who have not known a bed of a male**

UST who has not had sex with a man

Moses is referring to sexual relations in a polite way by using the phrase **who have not known a bed of a male**. Depending on what is helpful for your readers, you could use a polite way of referring to this in your language, or you could state this plainly. Alternate translation: [who have never had sexual relations with a man]

Support Reference: Euphemism

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
have … known	has … had sex with a man

Numbers 31:19

ULT	UST
And you, camp to the outside of the camp seven days. All ones killing a person and all ones touching a slain one, you shall purify yourselves on the third day and on the seventh day, you and your captive.	*As for you all, you must stay outside the area where the Israelites set up their tents for seven days. Every one of you who has killed someone or who has touched a corpse must cleanse himself or herself two days and six days after it happened. That applies both to you and to your prisoners.*

ULT **a slain one**

UST a corpse

Moses is using the adjective **slain** as a noun to mean a certain kind of person, that is, a person who has been killed. Your language may use adjectives in the same way. If not, you can translate this adjective with an equivalent phrase. Alternate translation: [a person who has been killed]

Support Reference: Nominal Adjectives

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
killing	killed
slain	a corpse
purify	must cleanse himself or herself
captive	and to your prisoners

Numbers 31:20

ULT	UST
And every cloth and every vessel of skin and every work of goats and every vessel of wood you shall purify."	*You must also cleanse each piece of clothing and every item that people made out of animal skin, goat hair, or wood."*

ULT **And every cloth and every vessel of skin and every work of goats and every vessel of wood you shall purify**

UST You must also cleanse each piece of clothing and every item that people made out of animal skin, goat hair, or wood

If it would be more natural in your language, you may want to put the information about **you shall purify** before the information about **every cloth and every vessel of skin and every work of goats and every vessel of wood**. Alternate translation: [And you shall purify every cloth and every vessel of skin and every work of goats and every vessel of wood]

Support Reference: Information Structure

ULT **and every work of goats**

UST goat hair

Moses is using the possessive form to describe **work** that is characterized by **goats**, that is, items made from goat hair. If a speaker of your language would not use the possessive form for this, you could express this idea in another way. Alternate translation: [and every item made from goat hair]

Support Reference: Possession

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
work	goat hair
goats	goat
purify	You must … cleanse

Numbers 31:23

ULT	UST
every thing that goes in the fire, you shall pass in the fire, and it will be clean; only in water of impurity it shall be purified. And all that does not go in the fire, you shall pass in the water.	*those things will not burn up. So, you must put them in a fire and also cleanse them using the water and ashes that make things pure. Then they will become pure. As for things that will burn up, you must put them in that special water to cleanse them.*

ULT **every thing that goes in the fire, you shall pass in the fire, and it will be clean; only in water of impurity it shall be purified. And all that does not go in the fire, you shall pass in the water**

UST those things will not burn up. So, you must put them in a fire and also cleanse them using the water {and ashes} that make things pure. Then they will become pure. As for things that will burn up, you must put them in that {special} water to cleanse them

Eleazar uses the word **only** here to indicate a contrast between passing objects through the fire and purifying them with the water of impurity. In your translation, indicate this contrast in a way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: [every thing that goes in the fire, you shall pass in the fire, and it will be clean; but it must also be purified in water of impurity. And all that does not go in the fire you shall pass in the water]

Support Reference: Connect — Contrast Relationship

ULT **in water of impurity**

UST using the water {and ashes} that make things pure

If your language does not use an abstract noun for the idea of **impurity**, you could express the same idea in another way. Alternate translation: [in water that cleanses what is impure]

Support Reference: Abstract Nouns

ULT **it shall be purified**

UST cleanse them

The expression **it shall be purified** is a passive verbal form. If it would be unnatural to use that form, you could express the idea in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: [you shall purify it]

Support Reference: Active or Passive

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
and it will be clean	pure
purified	cleanse them

Numbers 31:26

ULT	UST
"Lift up the head of the spoil of the captive, among the man and among the animal, you and Eleazar the priest and the heads of the fathers of the congregation.	*"You, Eleazar the priest, and the men who lead the ancestral families that make up the Israelite community must count everything that you have captured, including the people and the farm animals.*

ULT **Lift up the head of the spoil of the captive**
UST must count everything that you have captured

Yahweh is using **Lift up the head** as a common expression of the culture to mean "take a count." If this phrase does not have that meaning for your readers, you could use a comparable expression from your language that does have that meaning, or you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [Take a count of the spoil of the captive]
Support Reference: Idiom

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
spoil	everything that you have captured
captive	everything that you have captured
animal	animals
Eleazar	Eleazar
priest	priest
congregation	community

Numbers 31:27

ULT	UST
And you shall divide the spoil between the seizers of the battle, the ones having gone out for the army, and between all the congregation.	*Then, you must give half of what you captured to the soldiers who fought against the Midianites. You must give the other half to the rest of the Israelite community.*

ULT **the seizers of the battle**
UST to the soldiers

Yahweh is using **the seizers of the battle** as a common expression of the culture to mean the soldiers who fought in the battle. If this phrase does not have that meaning for your readers, you could use a comparable expression from your language that does have that meaning, or you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [the soldiers who fought in the battle]

Support Reference: Idiom

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
spoil	of what you captured
congregation	community

Numbers 31:28

ULT	UST
And you shall raise a levy for Yahweh from with the men of the battle, the ones having gone out for the army, one life from the 500, from the man and from the cattle and from the donkeys and from the flock.	*You must require the soldiers who fought against the Midianites to give me one out of every 500 people, oxen, donkeys, and sheep and goats that they received.*

ULT **one life from the 500**

UST one out of every 500

Here, **life** represents an individual person or animal. If it would be helpful in your language, you could use an equivalent expression or plain language. Alternate translation: [one individual out of every 500]

Support Reference: Metonymy

ULT **for Yahweh**

UST me

Yahweh is speaking of himself in the third person as **Yahweh**. If it would be helpful in your language, you could translate this in the first person. Alternate translation: [for me]

Support Reference: First, Second or Third Person

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
And you shall raise	You must require
Yahweh	me
cattle	oxen
donkeys	donkeys
flock	and sheep and goats that they received

Numbers 31:29

ULT	UST
You shall take from their half and give the contribution of Yahweh to Eleazar the priest.	*You must transfer to Eleazar the priest what the soldiers give to me from what they received.*

ULT **the contribution of Yahweh**
UST what the soldiers give to me

Yahweh is speaking of himself in the third person as **Yahweh**. If it would be helpful in your language, you could translate this in the first person. Alternate translation: [my contribution]
Support Reference: First, Second or Third Person

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
the contribution of	what the soldiers give
Yahweh	to me
Eleazar	Eleazar
priest	priest

Numbers 31:30

ULT	UST
And from the half of the sons of Israel you shall take one seized one from the 50, from the man, from the cattle, from the donkeys, and from the flock, from all the animal, and you shall give them to the Levites, the ones keeping the keeping of the Dwelling of Yahweh."	*Also, you must transfer to the Levites one out of every 50 people and animals, including oxen, donkeys, and sheep and goats, that the rest of the Israelites received. The Levites guard the sacred tent."*

ULT **the ones keeping the keeping of the Dwelling of Yahweh**
UST The Levites guard the sacred tent

Yahweh is using **keeping the keeping** as a common expression of the culture to mean "performing the duties." If this phrase does not have that meaning for your readers, you could use a comparable expression from your language that does have that meaning, or you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [the ones performing the duties of the Dwelling of Yahweh]

Support Reference: Idiom

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Israel	Israelites
seized	one
cattle	including oxen
donkeys	donkeys
flock	and sheep and goats
animal	animals
Levites	Levites
the ones keeping	guard
the Dwelling of	the sacred tent
Yahweh	the sacred tent

Numbers 31:32

ULT	UST
And the spoil, the rest of the plunder that the people of the army plundered: 675,000 flock,	*Here is a record of how many people and animals the soldiers captured. They captured 675,000 sheep and goats.*

ULT **the rest of the plunder that the people of the army plundered**
UST how many people and animals the soldiers captured

This could mean: (1) whatever **plunder** was left after the battle. Alternate translation: [the plunder that the people of the army plundered that was left after the battle]; or (2) whatever **plunder** was left after each soldier had taken some items for himself. Alternate translation: [the plunder that individual soldiers did not take]

Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

ULT **the rest of the plunder that the people of the army plundered: 675,000 flock**
UST how many people and animals the soldiers captured. {They captured} 675,000 sheep and goats

The author is leaving out some of the words that in many languages a sentence would need in order to be complete. You can supply these words from the context if that would be clearer in your language. Alternate translation: [the rest of the plunder that the people of the army plundered was 675,000 flock]

Support Reference: Ellipsis

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
spoil	how many people and animals
plunder	how many people and animals
plundered	captured
flock	sheep and goats

Numbers 31:35

ULT	UST
and a life of a man, from the women who had not known a bed of a male, every life, 32,000.	*They captured 32,000 women who had not had sex with a man.*

ULT **and a life of a man**

UST women

The author is not referring to a specific **man**. He means people in general. If it would be helpful to your readers, you could use an expression that would be more natural in your language. Alternate translation: [and lives of human beings]

Support Reference: Generic Noun Phrases

ULT **who had not known a bed of a male**

UST who had not had sex with a man

See how you translated these same phrases in Numbers 31:18. Alternate translation: [who have never had sexual relations with a man]

Support Reference: Euphemism

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
had … known	had … had sex

Numbers 31:36

ULT	UST
And the half was the portion of the ones having gone out in the army. The number of the flock: 337,500.	*The soldiers who had fought against the Midianites received one out of every two people and animals. They received 337,500 sheep and goats.*

> ULT **The number of the flock: 337,500**
> UST They received 337,500 sheep and goats

The author is leaving out some of the words that in many languages a sentence would need in order to be complete. You can supply these words from the context if that would be clearer in your language. Alternate translation: [The number of the flock that they received was 337,500]
Support Reference: Ellipsis

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
flock	sheep and goats

Numbers 31:42

ULT	UST
And from the half of the sons of Israel, which Moses divided from the men having fought—	*Then Moses gave the other one out of every two people and animals to the rest of the Israelites.*

ULT **And from the half of the sons of Israel, which Moses divided from the men having fought**

UST Then Moses gave the other one out of every two people and animals to the rest of the Israelites

This sentence begins here but is interrupted by the list in the following verses and completed in verse 47. If it would be more natural in your language, you may want to put the information about **the half of the sons of Israel** with the information in verse 47 about what Moses took from it. Alternate translation: [And Moses took the following from the half of the sons of Israel, which he divided from the men having fought]

Support Reference: Information Structure

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Israel	Israelites
Moses	Moses

Numbers 31:49

ULT	UST
And they said to Moses, "Your servants have lifted up the head of the men of the battle who were in our hand, and a man from us is not missing.	*They told him, "We who serve you have counted the soldiers whom we commanded when we fought against the Midianites. All of them returned safely.*

ULT **have lifted up the head of**
UST have counted

The soldiers are using **have lifted up the head** as a common expression of the culture to mean "have counted." If this phrase does not have that meaning for your readers, you could use a comparable expression from your language that does have that meaning, or you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [have taken a count of]
Support Reference: Idiom

ULT **and a man from us is not missing**
UST All of them returned safely

The commanders are not referring to a specific **man**. They mean anyone at all. If it would be helpful to your readers, you could use an expression that would be more natural in your language. Alternate translation: [and not one of us is missing]
Support Reference: Generic Noun Phrases

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Moses	him
servants	serve

Numbers 31:50

ULT	UST
And we have presented the offering of Yahweh, a man what he found, a vessel of gold—armlet, and bracelet, signet ring, earring, and ornament—to make atonement for our lives to the face of Yahweh."	*So, each of us is presenting to Yahweh the golden jewelry that we collected. That includes arm bands, wrist bands, rings, decorations for ears, and necklaces. By doing that, we will ransom ourselves from Yahweh, who kept us safe."*

ULT **a vessel of gold—armlet, and bracelet, signet ring, earring, and ornament**

UST the golden jewelry … That includes arm bands, wrist bands, rings, decorations for ears, and necklaces

The phrase **vessel of gold** could be: (1) a general statement that describes each specific ornament. Alternate translation: [—any armlet, bracelet, signet ring, earring, and ornament made out of gold]; or (2) a specific type of ornament. Alternate translation: [—vessel of gold, armlet, bracelet, signet ring, earring, and ornament]

Support Reference: Information Structure

ULT **to make atonement for our lives to the face of Yahweh**

UST By doing that, we will ransom ourselves from Yahweh, who kept us safe

This could mean: (1) that the commanders realize that God was the one who kept them alive. Because of that, it was as if God owned their lives. They wanted to ransom their lives from God by paying the gold jewelry. Alternate translation: [to redeem our lives from Yahweh]; or (2) that commanders know that they had sinned or become unclean. They had killed many people. So, they wanted to make sure that God forgave them for what they had done wrong. Alternate translation: [so that Yahweh accepts them and removes our sins]; or (3) that they had taken a census of the soldiers. It is possible that it was customary to pay a ransom to God after taking a census. [to pay in Yahweh's presence for each of us who was counted]

Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

ULT **to the face of Yahweh**

UST from Yahweh, who kept us safe

Here, **face** represents the presence of Yahweh. If it would be helpful in your language, you could use an equivalent expression or plain language. Alternate translation: [in the presence of Yahweh]

Support Reference: Metonymy

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
offering	So … is presenting
Yahweh	Yahweh
gold	golden
atonement	By doing that, we will ransom
Yahweh	Yahweh

Numbers 31:51

ULT	UST
And Moses and Eleazar the priest took the gold from with them, every vessel of work.	*So Moses and Eleazar the priest received from them those items that people had made out of gold.*

ULT **every vessel of work**
UST those items that people had made out of

The author is using the possessive form to describe a **vessel** that is characterized by the **work** that went into making it. If a speaker of your language would not use the possessive form for this, you could express this idea in another way. Alternate translation: [every skillfully crafted item]

Support Reference: Possession

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Moses	Moses
Eleazar	Eleazar
priest	priest
gold	gold
work	that people had made out of

Numbers 31:53

ULT	UST
The men of the army had plundered, a man for himself.	*Those items came from what each of the soldiers had taken for himself.*

ULT **The men of the army had plundered, a man for himself**
UST Those items came from what each of the soldiers had taken for himself

Here the author is providing background information to help readers understand what happens next in the story. In your translation, introduce this information in a way that would be natural in your own language and culture.
Support Reference: Background Information

ULT **The men of the army had plundered, a man for himself**
UST Those items came from what each of the soldiers had taken for himself

This could mean: (1) that the soldiers had taken items for themselves, and it was from those items that they dedicated the gold jewelry to Yahweh. Alternate translation: [The gold came from what the men of the army had plundered, a man for himself]; or (2) that only the commanders of the army dedicated the gold jewelry to Yahweh. The individual soldiers kept what they had **plundered**. Alternate translation: [However, the men of the army kept, a man for himself, what he had plundered]
Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
plundered	Those items came from what … had taken

Numbers 31:54

ULT	UST
And Moses and Eleazar the priest took the gold from with the princes of the thousands and the hundreds, and they brought it to the tent of meeting, a memorial for the sons of Israel to the face of Yahweh.	*When Moses and Eleazar the priest received the gold items from the commanders over groups of 1,000 and 100 soldiers, they put them in the sacred tent. That way, Yahweh would think about the Israelites.*

ULT **a memorial for the sons of Israel to the face of Yahweh**

UST That way, Yahweh would think about the Israelites

This could mean: (1) that Yahweh will remember the Israelites. Alternate translation: [so Yahweh would remember the sons of Israel]; or (2) that the Israelites will remember what Yahweh did for them. Alternate translation: [where it will be in Yahweh's presence to remind the Israelites of what had happened]

Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Moses	Moses
Eleazar	Eleazar
priest	priest
gold	gold
princes	the commanders
tent of meeting	the sacred tent
memorial	would think about
Israel	Israelites
Yahweh	Yahweh

Numbers 32

Numbers 32 Introduction

Numbers 32 Chapter Introduction

Structure and Formatting

In this chapter, Moses, Joshua, Eleazar, and the Israelite leaders make an agreement with the leaders of the tribes of Gad and Reuben. This agreement specifies that the soldiers from Gad and Reuben must help the rest of the Israelites conquer the land west of the Jordan River. However, once that is done, the people of Gad and Reuben receive land on the east side of the Jordan River. The chapter also briefly recounts some people from Manasseh who also conquered and received land on the east side of the Jordan River.

1. Reuben and Gad ask to settle east of the Jordan (1–5)
2. Moses warns them against discouraging the other Israelites from entering Canaan (6–15)
3. Reuben and Gad promise to help the other tribes take the land (16–27)
4. Moses confirms the agreement and gives land east of the Jordan to Reuben, Gad, and half the tribe of Manasseh (28–42)

Religious and Cultural Concepts in This Chapter

Land on the east side and west side of the Jordan River

The land of Canaan itself was on the west side of the Jordan River. However, the Israelites conquered some land on the east side of the Jordan River. People from Gad, Reuben, and part of the tribe of Manasseh wanted to receive this land on the east side of the Jordan. Moses initially rejects their desire, but eventually he allows them to receive this land as long as they help the rest of the Israelites conquer the land of Canaan on the west side of the Jordan River.

Translation Issues in This Chapter

What did the Reubenites and Gadites request?

When the people from the tribes of Reuben and Gad request land on the east side of the Jordan River, they do not specify exactly what they mean. They may mean that they will settle in that land and refuse to help the rest of the Israelites conquer Canaan. This is what Moses thinks they mean. They may mean that they will settle in that land but will still help the rest of the Israelites conquer Canaan. This is what they offer in response to Moses' rejection of their initial request. If possible, you should preserve this ambiguity in your translation of their initial request.

Quotes in quotes

In 32:11–12, there is a quote inside a quote. Consider how your language indicates that a quote contains a quote. The UST models how to express the idea with only one level of quotation.

Timing of events

The events that the author narrates in 32:39–42 almost certainly did not happen after the events narrated earlier in the chapter. They probably happened sometime around the events narrated in Numbers 21. Additionally, each specific battle that the author narrates may have happened at the same time or in a different sequence. Consider how you can introduce these events so that it is clear they do not follow the previous events in chronological sequence.

Numbers 32:1

ULT	UST
And the livestock for the sons of Reuben and for the sons of Gad was many, very mighty. And they saw the land of Jazer and the land of Gilead, and behold, the place was a place of livestock.	*Now the people from the tribes of Reuben and Gad had very many animals. They noticed that the Jazer region and the Gilead region were good places for animals to live.*

ULT **for the sons of Reuben and for the sons of Gad was many, very mighty**
UST the people from the tribes of Reuben and Gad had very many

The terms **many** and **very mighty** mean similar things. The author is using the two terms together for emphasis. If it would be clearer for your readers, you could express the emphasis with a single phrase. Alternate translation: [extremely numerous]

Support Reference: Doublet

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
livestock	animals
Reuben	Reuben
Gad	Gad
mighty	very
land	the … region
land	the … region
Gilead	Gilead
livestock	animals

Numbers 32:2

ULT	UST
And the sons of Gad and the sons of Reuben came and said to Moses and to Eleazar the priest and to the leaders of the congregation, saying,	*So, leaders from the tribes of Gad and Reuben approached Moses, Eleazar the priest, and the men who led the Israelite community. They said,*

ULT and said to
UST Moses … They said

See how you translated the similar expression in 5:12. This also occurs in verse 25.
Support Reference: Quotations and Quote Margins

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Gad	Gad
Reuben	Reuben
Moses	Moses
Eleazar	Eleazar
priest	priest
leaders	and the men who led
congregation	community

Numbers 32:3

ULT	UST
“Ataroth, and Dibon, and Jazer, and Nimrah, and Heshbon, and Elealeh, and Sebam, and Nebo, and Beon,	*“We want to speak about the region that includes the towns of Ataroth, Dibon, Jazer, Nimrah, Heshbon, Elealeh, Sebam, Nebo, and Beon.*

> ULT **Ataroth, and Dibon, and Jazer, and Nimrah, and Heshbon, and Elealeh, and Sebam, and Nebo, and Beon**
>
> UST We want to speak about the region that includes the towns of Ataroth, Dibon, Jazer, Nimrah, Heshbon, Elealeh, Sebam, Nebo, and Beon

The words **Ataroth**, **Dibon**, **Jazer**, **Nimrah**, **Heshbon**, **Elealeh**, **Sebam**, **Nebo**, and **Beon** are the names of towns.

Support Reference: How to Translate Names

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Heshbon	Heshbon

Numbers 32:4

ULT	UST
the land that Yahweh struck to the face of the congregation of Israel, it is a land of livestock, and to your servants is livestock."	*Yahweh enabled us, the Israelite community, to capture that region. It is a good place for animals to live, and we have many animals.*

ULT **to the face of the congregation of Israel**
UST us, the Israelite community

Here, **the face** represents the presence of the Israelites. If it would be helpful in your language, you could use an equivalent expression or plain language. Alternate translation: [in the presence of the congregation of Israel]
Support Reference: Metonymy

ULT **struck**
UST enabled … to capture

The sons of Gad and the sons of Reuben are using **struck** as a common expression of the culture to mean "conquered." If this phrase does not have that meaning for your readers, you could use a comparable expression from your language that does have that meaning, or you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [conquered]
Support Reference: Idiom

ULT **is a land of livestock**
UST a good place for animals to live

The sons of Gad and Reuben are using the possessive form to describe a **land** that is characterized by **livestock**. If a speaker of your language would not use the possessive form for this, you could express this idea in another way. Alternate translation: [{is} a land suitable for livestock]
Support Reference: Possession

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
land	that region
Yahweh	Yahweh
congregation	community
Israel	Israelite
land	a good place for animals to live
livestock	animals
servants	and we
livestock	animals

Numbers 32:5

ULT	UST
And they said, "If we have found favor in your eyes, let this land be given to your servants for a possession. May you not pass us over the Jordan."	*So, please treat us kindly by giving us that region to live in! We do not want to cross over the Jordan River."*

ULT **If we have found favor in your eyes**
UST please treat us kindly

See how you translated this expression in 11:15.
Support Reference: Idiom

ULT **let this land be given to your servants**
UST by giving us that region

The expression **be given** is a passive verbal form. If it would be unnatural to use that form, you could express the idea in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: [give this land to your servants]
Support Reference: Active or Passive

ULT **to your servants**
UST us

Even though the sons of Gad and the sons of Reuben are addressing Moses directly, they are speaking of themselves in the third person as **your servants** to show respect. If it would be helpful in your language, you could translate this in a respectful form in the first person. Alternate translation: [to us, your servants]
Support Reference: First, Second or Third Person

ULT **for a possession**
UST to live in

If your language does not use an abstract noun for the idea of **possession**, you could express the same idea in another way. Alternate translation: [to possess]
Support Reference: Abstract Nouns

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
favor	please treat us kindly
land	region
servants	us
possession	to live in
Jordan	Jordan River

Numbers 32:6

ULT	UST
And Moses said to the sons of Gad and to the sons of Reuben, "Will your brothers go to the battle, and you, you will dwell here?	*Moses replied, "Your fellow Israelites are about to fight their enemies. It is not right for you to stay here!*

ULT **Will your brothers go to the battle, and you, you will dwell here**
UST Your fellow Israelites are about to fight {their enemies}. It is not right for you to stay here

Moses is using the question form to rebuke these men. If a speaker of your language would not use the question form for that purpose, you could translate this as a statement or as an exclamation. Alternate translation: [You must not dwell here while your brothers go to the battle!]
Support Reference: Rhetorical Question

ULT **and you, you will dwell here**
UST It is not right for you to stay here

Moses is stating the pronoun **you** twice for emphasis. He is doing this to stress the contrast between these men and their fellow Israelites. If a speaker of your language would use a repeated pronoun for the same purpose, you may want to use that construction in your translation. If not, your language may have other ways of showing this emphasis.
Support Reference: Pronouns — When to Use Them

ULT **And Moses said**
UST Moses replied

See how you translated the similar expression in 11:11. This also occurs in verses 20 and 29.
Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Moses	Moses
Gad	replied
Reuben	replied

Numbers 32:7

ULT	UST
And why do you forbid the heart of the sons of Israel from passing over to the land that Yahweh has given to them?	*You are convincing the rest of the Israelites not to travel to the land that Yahweh is giving to us Israelites. That is not right!*

ULT **And why do you forbid the heart of the sons of Israel from passing over**
UST You are convincing the rest of the Israelites not to travel … That is not right

Moses is using the question form to rebuke these men. If a speaker of your language would not use the question form for that purpose, you could translate this as a statement or as an exclamation. Alternate translation: [How wrong it is that you are discouraging the heart of the sons of Israel from passing over]

Support Reference: Rhetorical Question

ULT **the sons of Israel**
UST the rest of the Israelites

See how you translated the similar expression in 1:2. This also occurs in verses 9, 17, 18, and 28.

Support Reference: Metaphor

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Israel	Israelites
land	land
Yahweh	Yahweh

Numbers 32:8

ULT	UST
Thus your fathers did when I sent them from Kadesh Barnea to see the land.	*You are doing the same kind of thing that your ancestors did. That happened when I had some of your ancestors travel from Kadesh Barnea to find out what Canaan was like.*

ULT **Thus your fathers did**

UST You are doing the same kind of thing that your ancestors did

Here Moses is speaking as if the ancestors of these men were their **fathers**. If this meaning would not be clear in your language, you could use a comparable expression or you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [Thus your ancestors did]

Support Reference: Metaphor

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Kadesh Barnea	Kadesh Barnea
land	Canaan

Numbers 32:9

ULT	UST
And they went up as far as Wadi Eshcol, and they saw the land, and they forbade the heart of the sons of Israel not to go to the land that Yahweh had given to them.	*They walked all the way to Eshcol Stream Bed and found out what Canaan was like. When they returned, they convinced the rest of the Israelites not to travel to the land that Yahweh was giving to them.*

ULT and they forbade the heart of the sons of Israel

UST When they returned, they convinced the rest of the Israelites not

Here Moses is speaking as if the will and courage of the Israelites were their **heart**. If this meaning would not be clear in your language, you could use a comparable expression or you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [and they weakened the resolve of the sons of Israel]

Support Reference: Metaphor

ULT Wadi Eshcol

UST Eshcol Stream Bed

See how you translated this name in 13:23.

Support Reference: How to Translate Names

ULT go to

UST travel to

See how you translated the similar expression in 23:17. This also occurs in verses 17 and 19.

Support Reference: Pronouns — When to Use Them

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Wadi	Stream Bed
land	Canaan
Israel	Israelites
land	land
Yahweh	Yahweh

Numbers 32:10

ULT	UST
And the nose of Yahweh burned on that day, and he swore, saying,	*So, Yahweh was angry at that time. He solemnly stated*

ULT **And the nose of Yahweh burned**
UST So, Yahweh was angry

Moses is using **the nose of Yahweh burned** as a common expression of the culture to mean "Yahweh became very angry." If this phrase does not have that meaning for your readers, you could use a comparable expression from your language that does have that meaning, or you could state the meaning plainly. This also occurs in verse 13. Alternate translation: [Yahweh became furious]

Support Reference: Idiom

ULT **on that day**
UST at that time

By **on that day**, Moses means the time when the spies gave their report to the people, not necessarily a specific 24-hour period. You could indicate this explicitly in your translation if that would be helpful to your readers. Alternate translation: [when that happened]

Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Yahweh	Yahweh
and he swore	He solemnly stated

Numbers 32:11

ULT	UST
'If the men, the ones going up from Egypt, from a son of 20 years and upward, see the ground that I swore to Abraham, to Isaac, and to Jacob! For they did not fill after me,	*that they had not obeyed him completely. So, he promised that none of the men who had left Egypt and who were at least 20 years old would experience the land that he promised Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob that he would give to their descendants.*

ULT **If the men, the ones going up from Egypt, from a son of 20 years and upward, see the ground**

UST he promised that none of the men who had left Egypt and who were at least 20 years old would experience the land

Following the custom of the culture, Yahweh is swearing an oath by stating the first part of a condition ("if") but not the second part ("then"). If it would be helpful to your readers, you could explicitly state the second part of this condition. Alternate translation: [The men, the ones going up from Egypt, from a son of 20 years and upward, will certainly not see the ground]

Support Reference: Oath Formulas

ULT **from a son of 20 years and upward**

UST and who were at least 20 years old

See how you translated **from a son of 20 years and upward** in 1:3.

Support Reference: Idiom

ULT **they did not fill after me**

UST that they had not obeyed him completely

Yahweh is using **they did not fill after me** as a common expression of the culture to mean "they were not completely loyal to me." If this phrase does not have that meaning for your readers, you could use a comparable expression from your language that does have that meaning, or you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [they were not wholeheartedly devoted to me]

Support Reference: Idiom

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Egypt	Egypt
years	years
I swore	he promised … that he would give to their descendants
Abraham	Abraham
Isaac	Isaac
Jacob	Jacob

Numbers 32:12

ULT	UST
except Caleb the son of Jephunneh the Kenizzite and Joshua the son of Nun, because they filled after Yahweh.'	*However, he stated that this did not apply to two men, who did obey him completely. They are Jephunneh's son, Caleb, from the Kenizzite tribal group, and Nun's son, Joshua.*

ULT **except Caleb the son of Jephunneh the Kenizzite and Joshua the son of Nun**
UST However, he stated that this did not apply to two men … They are Jephunneh's son, Caleb, from the Kenizzite tribal group, and Nun's son, Joshua

If it would appear in your language that Yahweh was making a statement and then contradicting it, you could reword this as a positive statement. Alternate translation: [Only Caleb the son of Jephunneh the Kenizzite and Joshua the son of Nun will see it, because they followed Yahweh completely]
Support Reference: Connect — Exception Clauses

ULT **they filled after Yahweh**
UST did obey him completely

Even though Yahweh is the one speaking, he is referring to himself in the third person as **Yahweh**. If it would be helpful in your language, you could translate this in the first person. Alternate translation: [they filled after me]
Support Reference: First, Second or Third Person

ULT **Nun**
UST Nun's

See how you translated this name in 11:28. This also occurs in verse 28.
Support Reference: How to Translate Names

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Caleb	Caleb
Joshua	Joshua
Yahweh	him

Numbers 32:13

ULT	UST
And the nose of Yahweh burned against Israel, and he made them wander in the wilderness 40 years, until the finishing of all the generation, the ones doing the evil in the eyes of Yahweh.	*Yahweh was angry with the Israelites, so he had them roam around in the desolate area for 40 years. They roamed around until all the adults who had done what Yahweh considered wrong had died.*

ULT **all the generation, the ones doing the evil in the eyes of Yahweh**
UST all the adults who had done what Yahweh considered wrong

Moses is not distinguishing this **generation** from another generation that was not **doing the evil in the eyes of Yahweh**. Moses is reminding his listeners that every adult of that generation had done evil. Be sure that this is clear in your translation. Alternate translation: [all that generation, who had all done what was evil in the eyes of Yahweh]

Support Reference: Distinguishing Versus Informing or Reminding

ULT **the ones doing the evil in the eyes of Yahweh**
UST who had done what Yahweh considered wrong

Moses is using **doing the evil in the eyes of Yahweh** as a common expression of the culture to mean "doing what Yahweh considers to be evil." If this phrase does not have that meaning for your readers, you could use a comparable expression from your language that does have that meaning, or you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [the ones doing what Yahweh considers to be evil]

Support Reference: Idiom

ULT **the finishing of**
UST had died

See how you translated the similar expression in 14:35.

Support Reference: Idiom

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Yahweh	Yahweh
Israel	Israelites
wilderness	in the desolate area
years	years
generation	the adults
evil	wrong
Yahweh	Yahweh

Numbers 32:14

ULT	UST
And behold, you have risen instead of your fathers, a brood of sinful men, to sweep away more upon the burning of the nose of Yahweh to Israel.	*And yet, now you are acting just like your ancestors by doing what is wrong together! You are making Yahweh even angrier with the Israelites.*

ULT **to sweep away**
UST You are making

The phrase **to sweep away** is a translation of the standard written Hebrew text as we have it today. This reading, however, does not seem to make sense. You may want to follow an alternative reading from the ancient Greek translation, or you may want to follow the major translation in your area. Alternate translation: [to add]

Support Reference: Alternative Readings

ULT **a brood of sinful men**
UST by doing what is wrong together

Here Moses is speaking of these men as if they were a **brood** produced by sinful men. He means that they are behaving sinfully as their fathers did. If it would be clearer in your language, you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [men who sin just as your fathers did]

Support Reference: Metaphor

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
sinful	what is wrong
sweep	You are making
Yahweh	Yahweh
Israel	Israelites

Numbers 32:15

ULT	UST
For you will return from after him, and he will add still to make him rest in the wilderness, and you will destroy all this people."	*If you do this, you will stop obeying Yahweh. Then, he will make us Israelites go back to the desolate area. So, you will be the ones who harmed all the Israelites."*

ULT **you will return from after him**

UST you will stop obeying Yahweh

Moses is using **you will return from after him** as a common expression of the culture to mean "you will stop following Yahweh." If this phrase does not have that meaning for your readers, you could use a comparable expression from your language that does have that meaning, or you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [you will turn away from following him]

Support Reference: Idiom

ULT **and he will add still to make him rest in the wilderness, and you will destroy all this people**

UST Then, he will make us Israelites go back to the desolate area. So, you will be the ones who harmed all the Israelites

In this verse, the word **him** is singular in form, but it refers to all the Israelites as a group. If it would be helpful in your language, you could use the plural form of "him." Alternate translation: [and he will add still to make them rest in the wilderness, and you will destroy all this people]

Support Reference: Collective Nouns

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
wilderness	to the desolate area
destroy	So, you will be the ones who harmed

Numbers 32:16

ULT	UST
And they came near to him and said, "We will build pens of a flock for our livestock here, and cities for our children.	*Then the leaders from the tribes of Gad and Reuben approached Moses again. They said, "We would like to construct walls here to protect our animals. We would like to fortify towns here to protect our families.*

ULT **pens of a flock**
UST walls

The term **pens of a flock** describes enclosures, often built of stone, in which people kept their sheep and goats safe. If your readers would not be familiar with what pens of a flock are, you could use the name of a similar thing that your readers would recognize, or you could use a more general term. This also occurs in verse 36. Alternate translation: [walled enclosures]
Support Reference: Translate Unknowns

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
flock	walls
livestock	animals

Numbers 32:17

ULT	UST
And we, we will be equipped, being hurried, to the face of the sons of Israel, until whenever we have brought them to their place. And our children will dwell in the cities of the fortification from the face of the dwellers of the land.	*As for us who can be soldiers, we will quickly prepare to lead the rest of the Israelites to fight their enemies. We will fight along with them until they can live in the area we conquer. Meanwhile, our families will be safe from the people who live nearby because they will live in the towns we fortified.*

ULT **And we, we will be equipped**
UST As for us {who can be soldiers}, we will … prepare

The sons of Gad and the sons of Reuben are stating the pronoun **we** twice for emphasis. They are doing this to stress that they themselves will fight along with the other Israelites. If a speaker of your language would use a repeated pronoun for the same purpose, you may want to use that construction in your translation. If not, your language may have other ways of showing this emphasis.

Support Reference: Pronouns — When to Use Them

ULT **being hurried**
UST quickly

This could mean: (1) that the people will act quickly. Alternate translation: [as fast as possible]; or (2) that the people will be ready to fight. Alternate translation: [ready to fight]

Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

ULT **we will be equipped, being hurried**
UST we will quickly prepare

The expressions **be equipped** and **being hurried** are passive verbal forms. If it would be unnatural to use those forms, you could express the idea in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: [we will arm ourselves and hurry]

Support Reference: Active or Passive

ULT **from the face of the dwellers of the land**
UST will be safe from the people who live nearby

The sons of Gad and the sons of Reuben are using **from the face of the dwellers of the land** as a common expression of the culture to mean that their children would be “safe from the people who lived in the land.” If this phrase does not have that meaning for your readers, you could use a comparable expression from your language that does have that meaning, or you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [protected from the people who live in the land]

Support Reference: Idiom

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Israel	Israelites
fortification	we fortified
land	the people who live nearby

Numbers 32:19

ULT	UST
For we will not inherit with them from across to the Jordan and beyond, for our inheritance has come to us from across the Jordan toward the sunrise."	*We propose this because we have already received land on the east side of the Jordan River. So, we will not receive any land on the west side of the Jordan River."*

ULT **our inheritance has come to us**
UST we have already received land

If your language does not use an abstract noun for the idea of **inheritance**, you could express the same idea in another way. Alternate translation: [we have already received what we will inherit]
Support Reference: Abstract Nouns

ULT **and beyond**
UST on the west side of

See how you translated the similar expression in 15:23.
Support Reference: Idiom

ULT **toward the sunrise**
UST on the east side of

The sons of Gad and the sons of Reuben are using **toward the sunrise** as a common expression of the culture to mean "toward the east." If this phrase does not have that meaning for your readers, you could use a comparable expression from your language that does have that meaning, or you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [toward the east]
Support Reference: Idiom

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
inherit	we will … receive any land
Jordan	Jordan River
inheritance	land
Jordan	Jordan River

Numbers 32:20

ULT	UST
And Moses said to them, "If you do this word, if you are equipped to the face of Yahweh for the battle,	*Moses replied, "Suppose that you do what you have proposed. You must prepare to fight in Yahweh's presence.*

ULT **If you do this word, if you are equipped to the face of Yahweh for the battle**
UST Suppose that you do what you have proposed. You must prepare to fight in Yahweh's presence

Moses is presenting a possible condition: the sons of Gad and the sons of Reuben will receive this land only if they arm themselves and fight along with the other Israelites. Use a natural form in your language for introducing a condition that could happen. Alternate translation: [Suppose you do what you have said, and suppose you arm yourselves for battle in the presence of Yahweh]
Support Reference: Connect — Hypothetical Conditions

ULT **if you are equipped to the face of Yahweh**
UST You must prepare … in Yahweh's presence

The expression **are equipped** is a passive verbal form. If it would be unnatural to use that form, you could express the idea in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: [if you arm yourselves before Yahweh]
Support Reference: Active or Passive

ULT **to the face of Yahweh**
UST in Yahweh's presence

See how you translated the similar expression in 5:16. This also occurs in verses 21, 22, 27, 29, and 32.
Support Reference: Metonymy

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Moses	Moses
Yahweh	Yahweh's

Numbers 32:21

ULT	UST
and every equipped one passes over the Jordan for you to the face of Yahweh until he has dispossessed his enemies from his face,	*All the soldiers among you must go to the west side of the Jordan River in Yahweh's presence. They must stay there until Yahweh has made all the people who oppose him leave.*

ULT **every equipped one**
UST All the soldiers

Moses is using the adjective **equipped** as a noun to mean a certain kind of person. Your language may use adjectives in the same way. If not, you can translate this adjective with an equivalent phrase. This also occurs in verses 27 and 29. Alternate translation: [every man who is equipped for battle]
Support Reference: Nominal Adjectives

ULT **until he has dispossessed his enemies from his face**
UST They must stay there until Yahweh has made all the people who oppose him leave

The pronouns **he** and **his** refer to Yahweh. It may be helpful to clarify this for your readers. Alternate translation: [until Yahweh has driven out the enemies of Yahweh from before him]
Support Reference: Pronouns — When to Use Them

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Jordan	Jordan River
Yahweh	Yahweh's
dispossessed	Yahweh has made … leave
enemies	all the people who oppose him

Numbers 32:22

ULT	UST
and the land is subdued to the face of Yahweh, then after you shall return, and you will be innocent from Yahweh and from Israel, and this land will be for you for a possession to the face of Yahweh.	*Once the whole area belongs to Yahweh, then you may go back home. In that case, you have not done anything wrong to Yahweh or your fellow Israelites. So, Yahweh will give you this area east of the Jordan.*

ULT **and the land is subdued to the face of Yahweh**
UST Once the whole area belongs to Yahweh

The expression **is subdued** is a passive verbal form. If it would be unnatural to use that form, you could express the idea in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: [and you subdue the land in the presence of Yahweh]
Support Reference: Active or Passive

ULT **and you will be innocent from Yahweh and from Israel**
UST In that case, you have not done anything wrong to Yahweh or your fellow Israelites

Moses is using **you will be innocent from Yahweh and from Israel** as a common expression of the culture to mean "you will have no further obligation to Yahweh or to the rest of the Israelites." If this phrase does not have that meaning for your readers, you could use a comparable expression from your language that does have that meaning, or you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [and you will have no further obligation to Yahweh or to the rest of the Israelites]
Support Reference: Idiom

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
land	Once the whole area
Yahweh	Yahweh
you shall return	you may go back home
innocent	not done anything wrong
Yahweh	Yahweh
Israel	Israelites
land	area east of the Jordan
possession	give
Yahweh	Yahweh

Numbers 32:23

ULT	UST
But if you do not do so, behold, you have sinned against Yahweh, and know your sin, that it will find you.	*Suppose that you do not do what you have proposed. In that case, you will have done what is wrong to Yahweh. You should realize that Yahweh will punish you for that.*

> ULT **your sin, that it will find you**
> UST that Yahweh will punish you for that

Moses is speaking of **your sin** as if it were a living thing that could find the person who committed it. If it would be helpful in your language, you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [that Yahweh will hold you accountable for your sin]

Support Reference: Personification

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
sinned	you will have done what is wrong
Yahweh	Yahweh
know	You should realize
sin	that Yahweh will punish you for that

Numbers 32:24

ULT	UST
Build for you cities for your children and pens for your flock, and the thing going out from your mouth you shall do.”	*So, you may fortify towns to protect your families. You may construct walls to protect your sheep and goats. However, you must then do what you said you would do.”*

ULT **and the thing going out from your mouth you shall do**

UST However, you must then do what you said you would do

Moses is using **the thing going out from your mouth** as a common expression of the culture to mean “what you have promised.” If this phrase does not have that meaning for your readers, you could use a comparable expression from your language that does have that meaning, or you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [and you shall do what you have promised]

Support Reference: Idiom

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
flock	to protect your sheep and goats

Numbers 32:25

ULT	UST
And the sons of Gad and the sons of Reuben said to Moses, saying, "Your servants will do just as my master is commanding.	*The leaders from the tribes of Gad and Reuben told Moses, "Sir, we will do exactly what you have told us to do.*

ULT **my master is commanding**
UST Sir … you have told us to do

Even though the sons of Gad and the sons of Reuben are addressing Moses directly, they are speaking of him in the third person as **my master** to show respect. If it would be helpful in your language, you could translate this in a respectful form in the second person. Alternate translation: [you, sir, are commanding]

Support Reference: First, Second or Third Person

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Gad	Gad
Reuben	Reuben
Moses	Moses
servants	we
master	Sir

Numbers 32:26

ULT	UST
Our children, our wives, our livestock, and all our animal will be there in the cities of the Gilead.	*We who can be soldiers will leave our children, wives, farm animals, and other animals in the towns here in the Gilead region.*

ULT and all our animal

UST and other animals

See how you translated the similar expression in 31:9.

Support Reference: Generic Noun Phrases

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
livestock	animals
our animal	animals
Gilead	Gilead

Numbers 32:28

ULT	UST
And Moses commanded for them Eleazar the priest and Joshua the son of Nun and the heads of the fathers of the tribes for the sons of Israel.	*Then Moses told Eleazar the priest, Nun's son Joshua, and the men who led the ancestral families that made up the Israelite tribes what to do with the people from the tribes of Gad and Reuben.*

ULT **the heads of**

UST the men who led

The author is using **the heads of** as a common expression of the culture to mean "the leaders of." If this phrase does not have that meaning for your readers, you could use a comparable expression from your language that does have that meaning, or you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [the chiefs of] or [the leaders of]

Support Reference: Idiom

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Moses	Moses
Eleazar	Eleazar
priest	priest
Joshua	Joshua
tribes	tribes
Israel	Israelite

Numbers 32:30

ULT	UST
But if they do not pass over, being equipped, with you, then they shall possess in your midst in the land of Canaan."	*On the other hand, suppose that their soldiers do not go to the west side of the Jordan River with you. In that case, they will have to receive land with you in Canaan on the west side of the Jordan River."*

ULT **But if they do not pass over, being equipped, with you**

UST On the other hand, suppose that their soldiers do not go to the west side {of the Jordan River} with you

The expression **being equipped** is a passive verbal form. If it would be unnatural to use that form, you could express the idea in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: [But if they do not equip themselves for battle and pass over with you]

Support Reference: Active or Passive

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
possess	In that case, they will have to receive land
land	in Canaan on the west side of the Jordan River
Canaan	Canaan

Numbers 32:32

ULT	UST
We, we will pass over, being equipped, to the face of Yahweh to the land of Canaan, and with us will be the possession of our inheritance from across to the Jordan."	*The soldiers among us will go to Canaan on the west side of the Jordan River in Yahweh's presence. After that, we will receive land to live in on this east side of the Jordan River."*

ULT **We, we will pass over**
UST among us will go … on the west side of the Jordan River

The sons of Gad and the sons of Reuben are stating the pronoun **We** twice for emphasis. They are doing this to stress that they themselves will cross the Jordan with the other Israelites. If a speaker of your language would use a repeated pronoun for the same purpose, you may want to use that construction in your translation. If not, your language may have other ways of showing this emphasis.

Support Reference: Pronouns — When to Use Them

ULT **We, we will pass over, being equipped**
UST The soldiers among us will go … on the west side of the Jordan River

See how you translated these similar phrases in Numbers 32:30.

Support Reference: Active or Passive

ULT **will be the possession of our inheritance**
UST will receive land to live in

See how you translated the similar expression in 27:7.

Support Reference: Abstract Nouns

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Yahweh	Yahweh's
land	to Canaan
Canaan	Canaan
possession	will receive
inheritance	land to live in
Jordan	Jordan River

Numbers 32:33

ULT	UST
And Moses gave to them, to the sons of Gad and to the sons of Reuben and to the half of the tribe of Manasseh the son of Joseph, the kingdom of Sihon the king of the Amorite and the kingdom of Og the king of the Bashan, the land to its cities in the borders, the cities of the land all around.	*So Moses gave land to the people from the tribes of Gad and Reuben and to half of the people from the tribe of Manasseh, who descended from Joseph. He gave them all the cities that were there and the land around the cities. That land had previously belonged to the Amorite people group, whom Sihon had ruled, and to the people who lived in the region of Bashan, whom Og had ruled.*

ULT **and to the half of the tribe of Manasseh the son of Joseph**
UST and to half of the people from the tribe of Manasseh, who descended from Joseph

Here the author is introducing **the half of the tribe of Manasseh** as a new participant in the story. Your language may have its own way of introducing new participants that you can use in your translation. Alternate translation: [and to another group as well, the half of the tribe of Manasseh, who descended from Joseph]

Support Reference: Introduction of New and Old Participants

ULT **the Amorite**
UST the Amorite people group

The author is not referring to a specific **Amorite** person. He means the Amorite people in general. If it would be helpful to your readers, you could use an expression that would be more natural in your language. Alternate translation: [the Amorites]

Support Reference: Generic Noun Phrases

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Moses	Moses
Gad	Gad
Reuben	Reuben
tribe	tribe
Manasseh	Manasseh
Joseph	Joseph
kingdom	That land had previously belonged to
Sihon	Sihon
king	whom … had ruled
Amorite	Amorite
kingdom	and to
Og	Og
king	whom … had ruled
Bashan	Bashan
land	land
land	that were there

Numbers 32:38

ULT	UST
and Nebo and Baal Meon (being changed of name) and Sibmah. And they called by names the names of the cities that they built.	*Nebo, Baal Meon, and Sibmah. They named these cities that they fortified. Later, people renamed Nebo and Baal Meon.*

ULT **being changed of name**
UST Later, people renamed Nebo and Baal Meon

The phrase **being changed of name** could apply to: (1) just **Nebo** and **Baal Meon**. Alternate translation: [the names of these two towns were changed]; or (2) some of the previous town names. Alternate translation: [the names of some of these towns were changed]; or (3) just **Baal Meon**. Alternate translation: [the name of this town was changed]

Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

ULT **being changed of name**
UST Later, people renamed Nebo and Baal Meon

The expression **being changed** is a passive verbal form. If it would be unnatural to use that form, you could express the idea in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. If you need to say who does the action, it could be: (1) Israelites at some later time. Alternate translation: [the Israelites later changed the names]; or (2) the people of Reuben when they fortified the cities. Alternate translation: [the Reubenites changed their names]

Support Reference: Active or Passive

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Baal	Baal
called	They named

Numbers 32:39

ULT	UST
And the sons of Machir the son of Manasseh went to Gilead and captured it, and he dispossessed the Amorite that was in it.	*The descendants of Manasseh's son Machir traveled to the Gilead region. They made the Amorite people who lived there leave, and they took the land that those people had lived in.*

ULT **And the sons of Machir the son of Manasseh went to Gilead and captured it, and he dispossessed the Amorite**

UST The descendants of Manasseh's son Machir traveled to the Gilead region. They made the Amorite people … leave, and they took the land that those people had lived in

In this verse, the word **he** is singular in form, but it refers to all the descendants of Machir as a group. If it would be helpful in your language, you could use the plural form of "he." Alternate translation: [And the sons of Machir the son of Manasseh went to Gilead and captured it, and they dispossessed the Amorite]

Support Reference: Collective Nouns

ULT **the Amorite**

UST the Amorite people

The author is not referring to a specific **Amorite**. He means the Amorite people in general. If it would be helpful to your readers, you could use an expression that would be more natural in your language. Alternate translation: [the Amorites]

Support Reference: Generic Noun Phrases

ULT **the son of Manasseh**

UST Manasseh's son

See how you translated the similar expression in 1:34. This also occurs in verses 40 and 41.

Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Manasseh	Manasseh's
Gilead	Gilead
captured	and they took the land that those people had lived in
dispossessed	They made … leave
Amorite	Amorite

Numbers 32:41

ULT	UST
And Jair the son of Manasseh went and captured their villages, and he called them Havvoth Jair.	*A descendant of Manasseh, whose name was Jair, traveled with his relatives to some small towns in the Gilead region that belonged to the Amorite people. He attacked and took those towns and called them Havvoth Jair.*

ULT **and captured their villages**

UST to some small towns {in the Gilead region} that belonged to the Amorite people. He attacked and took those towns

The pronoun **their** refers to the Amorites who lived in the region of Gilead. It may be helpful to clarify this for your readers. Alternate translation: [and captured the villages of the Amorites]

Support Reference: Pronouns — When to Use Them

ULT **Havvoth Jair**

UST Havvoth Jair

The words **Havvoth Jair** are the name of a group of villages. The name means “the tent villages of Jair.”

Support Reference: How to Translate Names

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Manasseh	Manasseh
captured	He attacked and took those towns
called	called

Numbers 32:42

ULT	UST
And Nobah went and captured Kenath and its daughters, and he called it Nobah, by his name.	*A man whose name was Nobah and others with him traveled to the town of Kenath and its surrounding villages. They attacked and took them. Nobah called the town by his own name: Nobah.*

ULT **Kenath and its daughters**

UST to the town of Kenath and its surrounding villages

Here the author is speaking as if the villages surrounding Kenath were its **daughters**. If this meaning would not be clear in your language, you could use a comparable expression or you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [Kenath and the villages around it]

Support Reference: Metaphor

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
captured	They attacked and took them
called	called

Numbers 33

Numbers 33 Introduction

Numbers 33 Chapter Introduction

Structure and Formatting

In this chapter, the narrator records places where the Israelites camped on the way from Egypt to the plains of Moab. At the end of the chapter, Yahweh gives Moses instructions on how the Israelites should conquer and divide the land.

1. Moses records the stages of Israel's journey (1–2)
2. Israel's journey from Egypt to the plains of Moab is listed (3–49)
3. Yahweh commands Israel to drive out Canaan's inhabitants, destroy their places of worship, and divide the land (50–56)

Religious and Cultural Concepts in This Chapter

Dividing the land

In 33:54, Yahweh gives Moses instructions on how to divide the land up among the tribes. He indicates that larger groups should receive more land than smaller groups. He also indicates that the Israelites should cast lots to see who gets what land. Scholars debate how these two strategies work together. It seems most probable that the Israelites cast lots to see where their land would be, and then they decided on the size of the area based on the size of the tribal group. See how you translated the similar instructions in 26:53–56.

Lots

In 33:54, Yahweh gives Moses instructions on how to divide up the land among the Israelites. These instructions include using lots. Using lots was a way to randomize decisions. Lots could be cast, which would mean rolling or throwing marked stones or pieces of wood to see which side would land upright. Lots could be drawn, which would mean picking marked items without looking at the marks. In this culture, people believed that the decisions, although random from a human perspective, were directed by God. Consider how you might refer to this way of making decisions, which removes human choice but leaves open divine choice. See how you translated the instructions concerning lots in 26:53–56.

Translation Issues in This Chapter

Unknown locations

Many of the places named in this chapter are unknown to contemporary scholars. Not only is it uncertain where the places were, but it is also uncertain what kind of places they were. Each of the place names could be a town, a wadi, a hill, an oasis, or something else. Because of this uncertainty, it is recommended that you refer to these places as generically as you can.

Numbers 33:1

ULT	UST
These are the departures of the sons of Israel, who went out from the land of Egypt according to their armies in the hand of Moses and Aaron.	*What follows is a list of the places where the Israelites stayed after they left Egypt by their army divisions. Moses and Aaron were in charge of them.*

ULT **These {are} the departures of the sons of Israel**
UST What follows is a list of the places where the Israelites stayed

See how you translated the similar expression in 10:28.
Support Reference: Abstract Nouns

ULT **the sons of Israel**
UST the Israelites

See how you translated the similar expression in 1:2. This also occurs in verses 3, 5, 38, 40, and 51.
Support Reference: Metaphor

ULT **in the hand of Moses and Aaron**
UST Moses and Aaron were in charge of them

Here, **the hand of Moses and Aaron** represents the leadership and direction of Moses and Aaron. If it would be helpful in your language, you could use an equivalent expression or plain language. Alternate translation: [under the leadership of Moses and Aaron]
Support Reference: Metonymy

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Israel	Israelites
land	Egypt
Egypt	Egypt
Moses	Moses
Aaron	Aaron

Numbers 33:2

ULT	UST
And Moses wrote their goings out according to their departures upon the mouth of Yahweh. And these were their departures according to their goings out.	*Yahweh told Moses to write down each of the places where the Israelites stayed, and so he did. Here are each of the places where the Israelites stayed.*

> ULT **upon the mouth of Yahweh**
> UST Yahweh told

See how you translated the similar expression in 3:16. This also occurs in verse 38.
Support Reference: Idiom

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Moses	Moses
Yahweh	Yahweh

Numbers 33:3

ULT	UST
And they set out from Rameses in the first month, on day 15 of the first month. From the next day of the Passover, the sons of Israel went out with a hand being high to the eyes of all the Egyptians,	*On the fifteenth day of the first month of that year, the day after the Passover Celebration, the Israelites left the city of Rameses in Egypt. They left defiantly while all the Egyptian people watched them.*

ULT **with a hand being high**
UST defiantly

The author is using **with a hand being high** as a common expression of the culture to mean "boldly and defiantly." If this phrase does not have that meaning for your readers, you could use a comparable expression from your language that does have that meaning, or you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [in triumph]
Support Reference: Idiom

ULT **to the eyes of all the Egyptians**
UST while all the Egyptian people watched them

Here, **the eyes of all the Egyptians** represents what the Egyptians were able to see. If it would be helpful in your language, you could use an equivalent expression or plain language. Alternate translation: [in full view of all the Egyptians]
Support Reference: Metonymy

ULT **in the first month**
UST of the first month of that year

See how you translated the similar expression in 9:1.
Support Reference: Hebrew Months

ULT **From the next day of**
UST the day after

See how you translated the similar expression in 16:41.
Support Reference: Idiom

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
month	month
month	month
day	day
Passover	Passover
Israel	They
Egyptians	Egyptian
Egyptians	Egyptian

Numbers 33:4

ULT	UST
and the Egyptians were burying those against whom Yahweh had struck, every firstborn, and against their gods Yahweh did judgments.	*Yahweh had killed every oldest male Egyptian. He had punished the gods they worshiped. So, when the Israelites were leaving, the Egyptians were burying the bodies of all their oldest male children.*

ULT Yahweh did judgments

UST He had punished

If your language does not use an abstract noun for the idea of **judgments**, you could express the same idea in another way. Alternate translation: [Yahweh punished them]

Support Reference: Abstract Nouns

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Egyptians	Egyptians
burying	burying
Yahweh	Yahweh
firstborn	oldest male Egyptian
gods	gods
Yahweh	He
judgments	had punished

Numbers 33:5

ULT	UST
And the sons of Israel set out from Rameses and camped at Succoth.	*So, the Israelites left the city of Rameses and set up their tents at a place that people called Succoth.*

ULT at Succoth
UST at {a place that people called} Succoth

The word **Succoth** is the name of a place. This also occurs in verse 6.
Support Reference: How to Translate Names

ULT And the sons of Israel set out
UST So, the Israelites left

See how you translated the similar expression in 21:10.
Support Reference: Introduction of a New Event

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Israel	Israelites
Succoth	Succoth

Numbers 33:6

ULT	UST
And they set out from Succoth and camped at Etham, which is at the end of the wilderness.	*They left Succoth and set up their tents at a place that people called Etham. Etham is at the edge of the desolate area.*

ULT **is at the end of the wilderness**
UST is at the edge of the desolate area

The author is using **at the end of the wilderness** as a common expression of the culture to mean “at the edge of the wilderness.” If this phrase does not have that meaning for your readers, you could use a comparable expression from your language that does have that meaning, or you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [at the outer edge of the wilderness]

Support Reference: Idiom

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Succoth	Succoth
wilderness	the desolate area

Numbers 33:7

ULT	UST
And they set out from Etham and returned upon Pi Hahiroth, which is upon the face of Baal Zephon, and camped to the face of Migdol.	*They left Etham and went back toward a place that people called Pi Hahiroth, which is near a place that people called Baal Zephon. They set up their tents in front of a place that people called Migdol.*

ULT **is upon the face of Baal Zephon**
UST is near {a place that people called} Baal Zephon

The author is using **upon the face of Baal Zephon** as a common expression of the culture to mean “in front of Baal Zephon.” If this phrase does not have that meaning for your readers, you could use a comparable expression from your language that does have that meaning, or you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [in front of Baal Zephon]
Support Reference: Idiom

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Baal	Baal

Numbers 33:8

ULT	UST
And they set out from the face of Hahiroth and passed over in the midst of the sea to the wilderness, and they went a way of three days in the wilderness of Etham and camped at Marah.	*They left the area in front of Hahiroth and walked through the Sea of Reeds to the desolate area. They traveled through the desolate area of Etham for three days. Then, they set up their tents at a place that people called Marah.*

ULT **from the face of Hahiroth**

UST the area in front of Hahiroth

Some ancient manuscripts read “from the face of Hahiroth.” The ULT follows that reading. Other ancient manuscripts read “from Pi Hahiroth.” If a translation of the Bible exists in your region, you may wish to use the reading that it uses. If a translation of the Bible does not exist in your region, you may wish to use the reading of the ULT.

Support Reference: Textual Variants

ULT **a way of three days**

UST for three days

The author is using **a way of three days** as a common expression of the culture to mean “a journey that took three days to travel.” If this phrase does not have that meaning for your readers, you could use a comparable expression from your language that does have that meaning, or you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [on a journey that took three days]

Support Reference: Idiom

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
the sea	Sea of Reeds
wilderness	to the desolate area
wilderness	through the desolate area of

Numbers 33:10

ULT	UST
And they set out from Elim and camped upon the Sea of Reeds.	*They left Elim and set up their tents next to the Sea of Reeds.*

ULT **upon the Sea of**
UST next to the Sea of

See how you translated the similar expression in 13:29.

Support Reference: Idiom

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Sea of Reeds	Sea of Reeds

Numbers 33:14

ULT	UST
And they set out from Alush and camped at Rephidim, and there was not water there for the people to drink.	*They left Alush and set up their tents at a place that people called Rephidim. There, the Israelites could not find any water to drink.*

ULT **and there was not**

UST could not find

See how you translated the similar expression in 16:40.

Support Reference: Connect — Reason-and-Result Relationship

Numbers 33:15

ULT	UST
And they set out from Rephidim and camped in the wilderness of Sinai.	*They left Rephidim and set up their tents in the desolate area around Sinai.*

ULT **in the wilderness of Sinai**
UST in the desolate area around Sinai

See how you translated the similar expression in 1:1. This also occurs in verse 16.
Support Reference: Translate Unknowns

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
wilderness	in the desolate area
Sinai	Sinai

Numbers 33:16

ULT	UST
And they set out from the wilderness of Sinai and camped at Kibroth Hattaavah.	*They left the desolate area around Sinai and set up their tents at a place that they called Kibroth Hattaavah.*

ULT at Kibroth Hattaavah

UST at {a place that they called} Kibroth Hattaavah

See how you translated this name in 11:34. This also occurs in verse 17.

Support Reference: How to Translate Names

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
wilderness	the desolate area
Sinai	Sinai

Numbers 33:17

ULT	UST
And they set out from Kibroth Hattaavah and camped at Hazeroth.	*They left Kibroth Hattaavah and set up their tents at a place that people called Hazeroth.*

ULT **at Hazeroth**

UST at {a place that people called} Hazeroth

See how you translated this name in 11:35. This also occurs in verse 18.

Support Reference: How to Translate Names

Numbers 33:36

ULT	UST
And they set out from Ezion Geber and camped in the wilderness of Zin (it is Kadesh).	*They left Ezion Geber and set up their tents at the city of Kadesh in the desolate area of Zin.*

ULT **in the wilderness of Zin (it {is} Kadesh**
UST at the city of Kadesh in the desolate area of Zin

This could mean: (1) that **Kadesh** was the specific location within **the wilderness of Zin** where the Israelites camped. Alternate translation: [in the wilderness of Zin (specifically at Kadesh)]; or (2) that **Kadesh** was another name for **the wilderness of Zin**. Alternate translation: [in the wilderness of Zin (also known as Kadesh)]
Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

ULT **in the wilderness of Zin**
UST in the desolate area of Zin

See how you translated the similar expression in 20:1.
Support Reference: Copy or Borrow Words

ULT **it {is} Kadesh**
UST at the city of Kadesh

Here the author is providing background information to help readers understand what happens next in the story. In your translation, introduce this information in a way that would be natural in your own language and culture.
Support Reference: Background Information

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
wilderness	in the desolate area of
Kadesh	Kadesh

Numbers 33:37

ULT	UST
And they set out from Kadesh and camped at Mount Hor, at the end of the land of Edom.	*They left Kadesh and set up their tents at Mount Hor, which is at the edge of the area where the Edomites live.*

ULT **And they set out from Kadesh**
UST They left Kadesh

See how you translated the similar expression in 20:22.
Support Reference: Introduction of a New Event

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Kadesh	Kadesh
land	the area
Edom	Edomites

Numbers 33:38

ULT	UST
And Aaron the priest went up to Mount Hor upon the mouth of Yahweh, and he died there in year 40 of the going out of the sons of Israel from the land of Egypt, in the fifth month, on one of the month.	*It was the first day of the fifth month of the fortieth year after the Israelite people had left Egypt. Aaron the priest walked up Mount Hor, as Yahweh had commanded him. Then, he died there.*

ULT **on one of the month**

UST It was the first day

See how you translated this phrase in 29:1.

Support Reference: Ordinal Numbers

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Aaron	Aaron
priest	priest
Yahweh	Yahweh
year	year
Israel	Israelite
land	Egypt
Egypt	Egypt
month	month
month	It was the first day

Numbers 33:39

ULT	UST
And Aaron was a son of 123 years when he died on Mount Hor.	*When Aaron died at Mount Hor, he was 123 years old.*

ULT **was a son of 123 years**
UST was 123 years old

The author is using **a son of 123 years** as a common expression of the culture to mean "123 years old." If this phrase does not have that meaning for your readers, you could use a comparable expression from your language that does have that meaning, or you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [123 years of age]
Support Reference: Idiom

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Aaron	he
years	years

Numbers 33:40

ULT	UST
And the Canaanite, the king of Arad (and he was dwelling in the Negeb in the land of Canaan), heard of the coming of the sons of Israel.	*At that time, the Canaanite king who ruled Arad city lived in the Negeb in Canaan. He learned that the Israelites had arrived near him.*

ULT **and he was dwelling in the Negeb in the land of Canaan**
UST lived in the Negeb in Canaan

Here the author is providing background information to help readers understand what happens next in the story. In your translation, introduce this information in a way that would be natural in your own language and culture.
Support Reference: Background Information

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Canaanite	Canaanite
king	king
Negeb	Negeb
land	in Canaan
Canaan	Canaan
Israel	Israelites

Numbers 33:41

ULT	UST
And they set out from Mount Hor and camped at Zalmonah.	*They left Mount Hor and set up their tents at a place that people called Zalmonah.*

ULT **And they set out from Mount Hor**
UST They left Mount Hor

See how you translated the similar expression in 21:4.

Support Reference: Introduction of a New Event

Numbers 33:47

ULT	UST
And they set out from Almon Diblathaim and camped in the mountains of the Abarim, to the face of Nebo.	*They left Almon Diblathaim and set up their tents at the Abarim mountain range, in front of Mount Nebo.*

ULT **in the mountains of the Abarim**
UST at the Abarim mountain range

The word **Abarim** is the name of a place, a range of mountains. This also occurs in verse 48.
Support Reference: How to Translate Names

ULT **Nebo**
UST Mount Nebo

This name could refer to: (1) a mountain within the **Abarim** range. Alternate translation: [Nebo mountain]; or (2) a city near the **Abarim** range. Alternate translation: [the city of Nebo]
Support Reference: How to Translate Names

Numbers 33:48

ULT	UST
And they set out from the mountains of the Abarim and camped in the plains of Moab beside the Jordan at Jericho.	*They left the Abarim mountain range and set up their tents in the flatlands that were part of Moab. They were on the east side of the Jordan River, across from Jericho.*

ULT **beside the Jordan {at} Jericho**
UST They were on the {east} side of the Jordan River, across from Jericho

See how you translated this phrase in 26:3. This also occurs in verse 50.
Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Moab	Moab
Jordan	Jordan River
Jericho	Jericho

Numbers 33:50

ULT	UST
And Yahweh spoke to Moses in the plains of Moab beside the Jordan at Jericho, saying,	*While the Israelites were in the flatlands that were part of Moab, on the east side of the Jordan River, across from Jericho, Yahweh told Moses,*

ULT **And Yahweh spoke**
UST Yahweh told

See how you translated the similar expression in 1:48.
Support Reference: Connect — Reason-and-Result Relationship

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Yahweh	Yahweh
Moses	Moses
Moab	Moab
Jordan	Jordan River
Jericho	Jericho

Numbers 33:51

ULT	UST
“Speak to the sons of Israel and say to them, ‘When you are passing over the Jordan to the land of Canaan,	*“Tell this to the Israelite people: They will go to Canaan on the west side of the Jordan River.*

ULT **Speak to the sons of Israel and say to them**
UST Tell this to the Israelite people

If it would be clearer in your language, you could translate this so that there is not a quotation within a quotation. Alternate translation: [Speak to the sons of Israel and say to them that]
Support Reference: Quotes within Quotes

ULT **and say to them**
UST Tell this

See how you translated the similar expression in 5:12.
Support Reference: Quotations and Quote Margins

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Israel	Israelite
Jordan	Jordan River
land	Canaan
Canaan	Canaan

Numbers 33:52

ULT	UST
then you shall dispossess all the dwellers of the land from your face, and you shall destroy all their carved figures, and all the images of their molten metal you shall destroy, and all their high places you shall destroy.	*When they do, they must make all the people who live there leave. They must smash all the sacred statues that those people made out of stone and metal. They must tear down all those people's hilltop shrines.*

ULT **all the dwellers of the land**
UST all the people who live there

Yahweh is using the possessive form to describe **the dwellers** who are characterized by living in **the land**. If a speaker of your language would not use the possessive form for this, you could express this idea in another way. Alternate translation: [all the people who dwell in the land]
Support Reference: Possession

ULT **from your face**
UST When they do, they must make … leave

Here, **your face** represents the presence of the people of Israel. If it would be helpful in your language, you could use an equivalent expression or plain language. Alternate translation: [from before you]
Support Reference: Metonymy

ULT **and all the images of their molten metal you shall destroy**
UST They must smash all the sacred statues … and metal

In this clause, the object comes before the verb, unlike the clauses before and after it. If it would be more natural in your language, you could change the order of these words. Alternate translation: [and you shall destroy all the images of their molten metal]
Support Reference: Information Structure

ULT **their high places**
UST those people's hilltop shrines

Here, **high places** are a kind of shrine that the people of Canaan built on hilltops for worshiping their gods. If your readers would not be familiar with what high places are, you could use the name of a similar thing that your readers would recognize, or you could use a more general term. Alternate translation: [their hilltop worship sites]
Support Reference: Translate Unknowns

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
dispossess	When they do, they must make … leave
land	there
destroy	They must smash
carved figures	that those people made out of stone
images	statues
destroy	They must smash
destroy	They must tear down

Numbers 33:53

ULT	UST
And you shall possess the land and dwell in it, because to you I have given the land to possess it.	*I have granted Canaan to you, so take it for your own and live there.*

ULT **And you shall possess the land and dwell in it, because to you I have given the land to possess it**

UST I have granted Canaan to you, so take it for your own and live there

The word translated as **because** indicates that what follows is a reason for what came before. Use a connector in your language that makes it clear that what follows is a reason for what came before. Alternate translation: [And you shall possess the land and dwell in it, for this reason: I have given the land to you to possess it]

Support Reference: Connect — Reason-and-Result Relationship

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
possess	take … for your own
land	it
land	Canaan
possess	to you

Numbers 33:54

ULT	UST
And you shall inherit the land by lot, according to your clans. For the many you shall increase its inheritance, and for the few you shall decrease its inheritance. To where it goes out for it, there the lot shall be for it. According to the tribes of your fathers you shall inherit.	*They must use lots to determine randomly where each tribal group will receive its land. They must follow whatever they determine using lots. Tribal groups with many people should receive more land. Tribal groups with few people should receive less land. All the tribal groups that belong to the same ancestral tribe must receive land next to each other.*

ULT **you shall increase … you shall decrease**
UST more … less

The word **you** in the phrase **you shall increase** is plural. The word **you** in the phrase **you shall decrease** is singular. So use the proper singular and plural forms in your translation if your language marks that distinction.
Support Reference: Forms of 'You' — Singular

ULT **for it … for it**
UST They must follow whatever they determine using lots

In both places, the pronoun **it** could refer to: (1) each individual clan. Alternate translation: [for each clan … for that clan]; or (2) each individual person within a clan. Alternate translation: [for each person … for that person]
Support Reference: Pronouns — When to Use Them

ULT **For the many … and for the few**
UST Tribal groups with many people … Tribal groups with few people

Yahweh is using the adjectives **the many** and **the few** as nouns to mean certain kinds of groups of people. Your language may use adjectives in the same way. If not, you can translate these adjectives with equivalent phrases. Alternate translation: [For the clans that have many people … and for the clans that have few people]
Support Reference: Nominal Adjectives

ULT **To where it goes out for it**
UST whatever they determine using lots

Yahweh is using **To where it goes out for it** as a common expression of the culture to mean "wherever the lot assigns the land to a clan." If this phrase does not have that meaning for your readers, you could use a comparable expression from your language that does have that meaning, or you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [Whatever place falls to a clan]
Support Reference: Idiom

ULT **According to the tribes of your fathers**
UST All the tribal groups that belong to the same ancestral tribe

See how you translated this expression in 26:55.
Support Reference: Idiom

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
inherit	where … will receive
land	land
lot	lots
clans	each tribal group
inheritance	should receive … land
inheritance	should receive … land
lot	They must follow
tribes	tribal
inherit	must receive land next to each other

Numbers 33:55

ULT	UST
And if you do not dispossess the dwellers of the land from your face, then whom you leave from them shall be for splinters in your eyes and for thorns in your sides, and they shall oppose you upon the land in which you are dwelling.	*However, suppose that the Israelites do not force the people who live in Canaan to leave. In that case, all the people who are still there will act against them while they live there. Those people will be like sharp plants digging into their skin.*

ULT **And if you do not dispossess the dwellers of the land from your face, then whom you leave from them shall be**

UST However, suppose that the Israelites do not force the people who live in Canaan to leave. In that case, all the people who are still there

Yahweh is presenting a possible condition, that the Israelites might not dispossess the dwellers of the land. Use a natural form in your language for introducing a condition that could happen. Alternate translation: [But suppose that you do not dispossess the dwellers of the land from your face. In that case, whom you leave from them shall be]

Support Reference: Connect — Hypothetical Conditions

ULT **for splinters in your eyes and for thorns in your sides**

UST Those people will be like sharp plants digging into their skin

Here Yahweh is speaking as if the people who remained in the land were **splinters in your eyes** and **thorns in your sides**. If this meaning would not be clear in your language, you could use a comparable expression or you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [for a constant source of irritation and painful trouble to you]

Support Reference: Metaphor

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
dispossess	the Israelites do … force … to leave
land	in Canaan
thorns	Those people will be like sharp plants digging into their skin
land	there

Numbers 34

Numbers 34 Introduction

Numbers 34 Chapter Introduction

Structure and Formatting

This chapter describes the borders of the land Israel will receive in Canaan. Yahweh also names the leaders who will divide the land among the tribes.

1. Yahweh describes Canaan's southern, western, northern, and eastern borders (1–12)
2. Moses explains which tribes will receive land west of the Jordan (13–15)
3. Yahweh names the leaders who will divide the land (16–29)

Religious and Cultural Concepts in This Chapter

The borders of Canaan

In the first part of this chapter, Yahweh outlines the borders of Canaan. He describes a shape that is almost a rectangle. He starts at the southeast corner, which is the bottom of the Sea of Salt. The south side is a curved line from there to the Mediterranean Sea. The west side simply follows the Mediterranean Sea. The north side begins in the west at the Mediterranean Sea and goes east, somewhere above the Sea of Chinnereth. The east side begins somewhere above the Sea of Chinnereth and goes south to the southern part of the Sea of Salt. While the Israelites did not succeed in conquering all this territory, this is the area that Yahweh instructed them to conquer.

Inheriting the land

In the second half of this chapter, Yahweh speaks of leaders "inheriting the land." This phrase refers to the process of dividing the land up into sections. The leaders would then assign each section to a tribal group or family. They would do this using lots (see the chapter introduction to Numbers 33 for more information on lots). Yahweh ensures that at least one leader from each tribe was involved in this process.

Translation Issues in This Chapter

Unknown locations

Much like in chapter 33, many of the place names in the first half of this chapter are unknown. Not only is it uncertain where the places were, but it is also uncertain what kind of places they were. Each of the place names could be a town, a wadi, a hill, an oasis, or something else. Because of this uncertainty, it is recommended that you refer to most of these places as generically as you can.

Numbers 34:1

ULT	UST
And Yahweh spoke to Moses, saying,	*Yahweh told Moses,*

> ULT **And Yahweh spoke to Moses, saying**
> UST Yahweh told Moses

See how you translated the similar expression in 18:25. This also occurs in verse 16.
Support Reference: Quotations and Quote Margins

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Yahweh	Yahweh
Moses	Moses

Numbers 34:2

ULT	UST
“Command the sons of Israel and say to them, ‘When you are going to the land of Canaan, this is the land that will fall to you in an inheritance, the land of Canaan according to its borders.	*“Order the Israelite people to do this: When they enter Canaan, they must receive it as their own land up to the following boundaries.*

ULT **and say to them, ‘When you are going to the land of Canaan**
UST Order … to do this: When they enter Canaan

If it would be clearer in your language, you could translate this so that there is not a quotation within a quotation. Alternate translation: [and tell them that when they are going to the land of Canaan]
Support Reference: Quotes within Quotes

ULT **that will fall to you**
UST they must receive it

Here, **will fall to you** represents “will be assigned to you by casting lots.” If it would be helpful in your language, you could use an equivalent expression or plain language. Alternate translation: [that will be assigned to you by casting lots]
Support Reference: Metonymy

ULT **in an inheritance**
UST as their own land

If your language does not use an abstract noun for the idea of **inheritance**, you could express the same idea in another way. Alternate translation: [so that you may inherit it]
Support Reference: Abstract Nouns

ULT **the sons of Israel**
UST the Israelite people

See how you translated the similar expression in 1:2. This also occurs in verses 13 and 29.
Support Reference: Metaphor

ULT **and say to them**
UST Order … to do this

See how you translated the similar expression in 5:12.
Support Reference: Quotations and Quote Margins

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Israel	Israelite
land	Canaan
Canaan	Canaan
land	must receive it
inheritance	as their own land
land	up to the following boundaries
Canaan	up to the following boundaries

Numbers 34:3

ULT	UST
And the edge of the south shall be for you from the wilderness of Zin upon the hands of Edom. And the border of the south shall be for you from the end of the Sea of Salt to the east.	*The southern boundary will pass through the desolate area of Zin, near the area where the Edomites live. The southeastern corner will be at the southern edge of the Sea of Salt.*

ULT **upon the hands of Edom**
UST near the area where the Edomites live

Yahweh is using **upon the hands of Edom** as a common expression of the culture to mean "alongside the border of Edom." If this phrase does not have that meaning for your readers, you could use a comparable expression from your language that does have that meaning, or you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [along the border of Edom]
Support Reference: Idiom

ULT **from the wilderness of Zin**
UST through the desolate area of Zin

See how you translated the similar expression in 20:1.
Support Reference: Copy or Borrow Words

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
wilderness	through the desolate area of
Edom	Edomites
the Sea of	the Sea of

Numbers 34:6

ULT	UST
And the border of the west, and it shall be for you the Great Sea and a border. This shall be for you the border of the west.	*The western boundary will be the Mediterranean Sea.*

ULT **and it shall be for you the Great Sea and a border**
UST The … boundary will be the Mediterranean Sea

Yahweh is using **it shall be for you the Great Sea and a border** as a common expression of the culture to mean "the Great Sea and its coast will be your border." If this phrase does not have that meaning for your readers, you could use a comparable expression from your language that does have that meaning, or you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [and the Great Sea and its coast shall be your border]

Support Reference: Idiom

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
the Great Sea	the Mediterranean Sea

Numbers 34:11

ULT	UST
And the border shall go down from Shepham to the Riblah, from east of Ain. And the border shall go down and strike upon the shoulder of the Sea of Chinnereth to the east.	*From Shepham, it will extend south to a place that people call Riblah, which is to the east of a place that people call Ain. From there, it will extend south to the hills on the east side of the Sea of Chinnereth.*

ULT **and strike upon the shoulder of the Sea of Chinnereth**

UST From there … will extend {south} to the hills … the Sea of Chinnereth

Here, Yahweh is speaking of the hillside along **the Sea of Chinnereth** as if it were the **shoulder** of a person. He means the slope that rises from the shore of the sea. If it would be helpful in your language, you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [and reach the slope along the Sea of Chinnereth]

Support Reference: Metaphor

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
the Sea	the Sea

Numbers 34:13

ULT	UST
And Moses commanded the sons of Israel, saying, "This is the land that you shall inherit by lot, which Yahweh has commanded to give to the nine tribes and the half of the tribe.	*So Moses told the Israelite people, "The area within those boundaries is what you will receive as your land. You must use lots to determine randomly where each tribal group will receive its land. Yahweh has declared that he grants that area to nine and one half of your tribes.*

ULT **to the nine tribes and the half of**

UST to nine and one half of your tribes

This means the remaining tribes of Israel who will live on the west side of the Jordan River in the land of Canaan. The tribes of Reuben and Gad and the half tribe of Manasseh had already received their land on the east side of the Jordan River.

Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Moses	Moses
Israel	Israelite
land	The area
inherit	you will receive as your land
lot	lots
Yahweh	Yahweh
tribes	tribes
tribe	and one half of

Numbers 34:14

ULT	UST
For they have taken, the tribe of the sons of the Reubenite according to the house of their fathers and the tribe of the sons of the Gadite according to the house of their fathers, and the half of the tribe of Manasseh have taken their inheritance.	*As for the other two and one half tribes, they are the descendants of Reuben and the descendants of Gad, including all their ancestral families, and half of the descendants of Manasseh. They have already received land.*

ULT **For**
UST As for

The word **For** indicates that what follows is the reason why Moses said in the previous verse that Yahweh was giving this land to only nine and a half tribes. Use a connector in your language that makes it clear that what follows is a reason for what came before.
Support Reference: Connect — Reason-and-Result Relationship

ULT **the Reubenite … the Gadite**
UST Reuben … Gad

In this verse, the words **the Reubenite** and **the Gadite** are singular in form, but they refer to all the descendants of Reuben and all the descendants of Gad as groups. If it would be helpful in your language, you could use plural forms for these words.
Support Reference: Collective Nouns

ULT **according to the house of their fathers**
UST including all their ancestral families

See how you translated the similar expression in 1:2.
Support Reference: Metaphor

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
tribe	tribes
house	including all their ancestral families
tribe	tribes
house	including all their ancestral families
tribe	the descendants of
Manasseh	Manasseh
inheritance	land

Numbers 34:15

ULT	UST
The two tribes and the half of the tribe have taken their inheritance from across to the Jordan at Jericho to the east, toward the sunrise.”	*They received it on the east side of the Jordan River, across from Jericho.”*

ULT **from across to the Jordan**
UST on the … side of the Jordan River

Moses is using **from across to the Jordan** as a common expression of the culture to mean “on the other side of the Jordan River,” which here is the east side. If this phrase does not have that meaning for your readers, you could use a comparable expression from your language that does have that meaning, or you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [on the other side of the Jordan River]

Support Reference: Idiom

ULT **to the east, toward the sunrise**
UST east

See how you translated the similar expression in 2:3.

Support Reference: Making Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information Explicit

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
tribes	They
tribe	They
inheritance	it
Jordan	Jordan River
Jericho	Jericho

Numbers 34:17

ULT	UST
“These are the names of the men who will inherit the land for you: Eleazar the priest and Joshua the son of Nun.	*“There are two men who will help the Israelites decide who receives what land. They are Eleazar the priest and Nun’s son, Joshua.*

ULT **who will inherit the land for you**
UST who will help the Israelites decide who receives what land

Yahweh is using **who will inherit the land for you** as a common expression of the culture to mean “who will divide the land among you as your inheritance.” These men will not receive the land for themselves. If this phrase does not have that meaning for your readers, you could use a comparable expression from your language that does have that meaning, or you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [who will distribute the land to you as your inheritance]

Support Reference: Idiom

ULT **Nun**
UST Nun’s

See how you translated this name in 11:28.

Support Reference: How to Translate Names

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
inherit	will help … decide who receives what
land	land
Eleazar	Eleazar
priest	priest
Joshua	Joshua

Numbers 34:18

ULT	UST
And one leader, one leader from a tribe you shall take to inherit the land.	*Additionally, out of the men who lead each tribe, one man from each tribe must also help the Israelites decide who receives what land.*

ULT **And one leader, one leader from a tribe**
UST Additionally, out of the men who lead each tribe, one man from each tribe

Yahweh is using **one leader, one leader from a tribe** as a common expression of the culture to mean "one leader from each tribe." If this phrase does not have that meaning for your readers, you could use a comparable expression from your language that does have that meaning, or you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [And one leader from each tribe]
Support Reference: Idiom

ULT **to inherit the land**
UST must also help the Israelites decide who receives what land

Yahweh is using **to inherit the land** as a common expression of the culture to mean "to divide the land among the Israelites as their inheritance." If this phrase does not have that meaning for your readers, you could use a comparable expression from your language that does have that meaning, or you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [to divide the land among the Israelites as their inheritance]
Support Reference: Idiom

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
leader	Additionally, out of the men who lead each tribe
leader	man
tribe	tribe
inherit	must also help the Israelites decide who receives what
land	land

Numbers 34:19

ULT	UST
And these are the names of the men: for the tribe of Judah, Caleb the son of Jephunneh;	*What follows are those leaders' names. Jephunneh's son, Caleb, is from the tribe of Judah.*

This is the list of men who will help divide the land among the tribes.

Support Reference: How to Translate Names

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
tribe	tribe
Judah	Judah
Caleb	Caleb

Numbers 34:28

ULT	UST
and for the tribe of the sons of Naphtali, a leader, Pedahel the son of Ammihud."	*Ammihud's son, Pedahel, is a man who leads the tribe of Naphtali."*

This concludes the list of men who will help divide the land among the tribes.

Support Reference: How to Translate Names

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
tribe	tribe
Naphtali	Naphtali
leader	is a man who leads

Numbers 34:29

ULT	UST
These are whom Yahweh commanded to make the sons of Israel inherit in the land of Canaan.	*Those are the men whom Yahweh told to help the Israelites decide who received what land in Canaan.*

ULT **These {are} whom**
UST Those are the men whom

The pronoun **These** refers to the men whose names Yahweh has just listed. It may be helpful to clarify this for your readers. Alternate translation: [These men whose names Yahweh has just listed are the ones whom]

Support Reference: Pronouns — When to Use Them

ULT **to make the sons of Israel inherit**
UST to help the Israelites decide who received what

The author is using **to make the sons of Israel inherit** as a common expression of the culture to mean "to divide the land among the Israelites as their inheritance." If this phrase does not have that meaning for your readers, you could use a comparable expression from your language that does have that meaning, or you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [to distribute to the sons of Israel their portions as an inheritance]

Support Reference: Idiom

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Yahweh	Yahweh
Israel	Israelites
inherit	to help … decide who received what
land	land
Canaan	Canaan

Numbers 35

Numbers 35 Introduction

Numbers 35 Chapter Introduction

Structure and Formatting

This chapter gives instructions for towns and pastureland for the Levites. Six towns will be places of refuge for people who kill someone by accident. The chapter explains how to distinguish murder (intentional killing) from manslaughter (unintentional killing) and how each case must be handled.

1. Yahweh commands Israel to give towns and pastureland to the Levites (1–8)
2. Yahweh commands Israel to set apart six cities of refuge (9–15)
3. Yahweh gives laws about murder, manslaughter, and protection in cities of refuge (16–29)
4. Yahweh requires witnesses for a murder conviction and forbids payments that would cancel the required punishment (30–34)

Religious and Cultural Concepts in This Chapter

Cities of refuge

Six of the cities that the Israelites were supposed to give to the Levites functioned as cities of refuge. When a person killed someone, he or she normally deserved to be killed by the dead person's close relative. However, if the person killed someone by accident, the person could flee to one of the six cities. If he or she stayed in that city, the dead person's close relative was not allowed to kill him or her. In this way, the city provided refuge, or safety, for someone who unintentionally killed someone else. Eventually, that person would stand trial to confirm whether they killed someone unintentionally or intentionally.

One redeeming the blood

This chapter describes a close relative of a person who was killed as "one redeeming the blood." This phrase fits with what Yahweh says in 35:33–34. When a person kills someone (sheds their blood), redemption or atonement needs to be accomplished. The close relative could accomplish this redemption by killing the murderer. In this way, they "redeemed the blood" of their relative and made things right before God.

Intentional and unintentional killing

This chapter distinguishes carefully between intentional killing (murder) and unintentional killing (manslaughter). The criteria for deciding between murder and manslaughter include the weapon used, the way the person died, the relationship between the people, and whether the action was intentional or accidental. Consider what words you might use to distinguish between murder (intentional killing) and manslaughter (unintentional killing).

The death of the high priest

Yahweh indicates that a person who killed someone unintentionally would have to stay in a city of refuge until the high priest died. What the high priest's death accomplishes is not directly stated. Most likely, the high priest's death atoned for all the unintentional killings during his time as high priest. This is like the sacrifices offered on the Day of the Atonement, which atoned for many sins committed throughout the year. However, since Yahweh does not make the function of the high priest's death explicit, it is recommended that you also do not make it explicit in your translation.

Polluting the land

In 35:33–34, Yahweh explains that whenever someone is killed, it pollutes or defiles the land where the Israelites live. This is not good, since Yahweh was present with the Israelites in the land. Because Yahweh was present, both the Israelites and their land needed to be pure. So, it was very important for the Israelites to deal with murder and manslaughter properly. Only executing a murderer and keeping a manslayer in a city of refuge would keep the land pure. These verses provide the motivation for following the commands earlier in the chapter.

Translation Issues in This Chapter

Metonymy with blood

Yahweh refers to "blood" ten times in this chapter. Blood can refer to death, or even more specifically to murder. It can also refer to the guilt from killing someone. See the UST for the meaning in each case. Blood is an important figure of speech in the Bible, so if possible include references to blood in your translation.

Singular and plural "you"

Most instances of "you" in this chapter are plural. The only exceptions are when Yahweh is speaking directly to Moses in 35:2 and 35:10 and when Yahweh addresses each individual Israelite at the beginning of 35:34.

Numbers 35:1

ULT	UST
And Yahweh spoke to Moses in the plains of Moab beside the Jordan at Jericho, saying,	*While the Israelites were in the flatlands that were part of Moab, on the east side of the Jordan River, across from Jericho, Yahweh told Moses,*

ULT **beside the Jordan {at} Jericho**
UST on the {east} side of the Jordan River, across from Jericho

See how you translated the similar expression in 26:3.
Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Yahweh	Yahweh
Moses	Moses
Moab	Moab
Jordan	Jordan River
Jericho	Jericho

Numbers 35:2

ULT	UST
“Command the sons of Israel, and they shall give to the Levites from the inheritance of their possession cities to dwell. And pastureland for the cities around them you shall give to the Levites.	*“Tell the Israelites to set aside some of the cities that they will receive for the Levites to live in. They must also set aside the fields surrounding those cities for the Levites.*

ULT **Command the sons of Israel, and they shall give to the Levites from the inheritance of their possession cities to dwell**

UST Tell the Israelites to set aside some of the cities that they will receive for the Levites to live in

If it would be more natural in your language, you could express this as a direct quotation. Alternate translation: [Command the sons of Israel, ‘You shall give to the Levites from the inheritance of your possession cities to dwell in’]

Support Reference: Direct and Indirect Quotations

ULT **and they shall give to the Levites from the inheritance of their possession cities to dwell**

UST to set aside some of the cities that they will receive for the Levites to live in

The implication is that the Levites would not receive a territory of their own, as the other tribes would, so the other tribes needed to give them cities to live in. You could include this information if that would be helpful to your readers. Alternate translation: [and since the Levites will not receive a territory of their own, they shall give to the Levites from the inheritance of their possession cities to dwell in]

Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

ULT **from the inheritance of their possession**

UST that they will receive

Yahweh is using the possessive form to describe an **inheritance** that is characterized by being the **possession** of the tribes of Israel. If a speaker of your language would not use the possessive form for this, you could express this idea in another way. Alternate translation: [from the inheritance that they will possess]

Support Reference: Possession

ULT **you shall give to the Levites**

UST They must also set aside … for the Levites

The pronoun **you** refers to the Israelites, not to Moses. It may be helpful to clarify this for your readers. This also occurs in verses 4, 6, and 7. Alternate translation: [you Israelites shall give to the Levites]

Support Reference: Pronouns — When to Use Them

ULT **the sons of Israel**

UST the Israelites

See how you translated the similar expression in 1:2. This also occurs in verses 8, 10, 15, and 34.

Support Reference: Metaphor

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Israel	Israelites
Levites	Levites
inheritance	that they will receive
possession	that they will receive
Levites	Levites

Numbers 35:3

ULT	UST
And the cities shall be for them to dwell, and their pasturelands shall be for their animal and for their property and for all their living thing.	*The Levites will live in those cities. They will keep their farm animals, some of their possessions, and any other animals they have in the fields surrounding those cities.*

> ULT **and for their property**
> UST some of their possessions

This could mean: (1) items that they would use for farming or tending animals. Alternate translation: [and for their farming equipment]; or (2) sheep and goats. Alternate translation: [and for their flock]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
animal	animals

Numbers 35:4

ULT	UST
And the pasturelands of the cities that you shall give to the Levites shall be from the wall of the city and outside 1,000 cubits all around.	*The fields surrounding the cities that the Israelites set aside for the Levites must be 460 meters wide when you measure from the city edges.*

ULT **1,000 cubits**

UST must be 460 meters

These **cubits** were a unit of measurement corresponding to the distance between an average person's elbow and middle fingertip, or about 46 centimeters or 18 inches. So 1,000 cubits would be about 460 meters or 1,500 feet. If it would be helpful to your readers, you could express this distance in modern measurements, either in the text or in a footnote. Alternate translation: [about 1,500 feet]

Support Reference: Biblical Distance

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Levites	Levites

Numbers 35:4-5

> ULT **And the pasturelands of the cities that you shall give to the Levites {shall be} from the wall of the city and outside 1,000 cubits all around. And you shall measure from outside to the city the edge to the east 2,000 by the cubit, and the edge of the south 2,000 by the cubit, and the edge of the west 2,000 by the cubit, and the edge of the north 2,000 by the cubit, and the city in the midst**
>
> UST The fields surrounding the cities that the Israelites set aside for the Levites must be 460 meters wide when you measure from the city edges. On each of the four sides, the fields must be 920 meters wide when you measure along the city edge. The city itself must be in the center

This could mean: (1) that there was a block of land along each side of the city that was 1,000 cubits deep and 2,000 cubits long. Alternate translation: [And the pasturelands of the cities that you shall give to the Levites shall be 1,000 cubits, measured directly away from the wall of the city all around. And you shall measure the width of the land on each side: the edge to the east 2,000 by the cubit, and the edge of the south 2,000 by the cubit, and the edge of the west 2,000 by the cubit, and the edge of the north 2,000 by the cubit, and the city in the midst]; or (2) that the land on each side of the city was 1,000 cubits deep. Ignoring the size of the city itself, that would create a square that measured 2,000 cubits on each side. Alternate translation: [And the pasturelands of the cities that you shall give to the Levites shall be from the wall of the city and outside 1,000 cubits all around. So, you shall measure the total land outside the city: the edge to the east 2,000 by the cubit, and the edge of the south 2,000 by the cubit, and the edge of the west 2,000 by the cubit, and the edge of the north 2,000 by the cubit. Adjust the shape of this area to include the city in the middle]; or (3) that the city had sides that were 2,000 cubits long. So, when the land was measured from the center of the town, the edge of the land was 2,000 cubits away. When the land was measured from the edge of the town, the edge of the land was 1,000 cubits away. Alternate translation: [And the pasturelands of the cities that you shall give to the Levites shall be 1,000 cubits all around when you measure from the wall outward. When you measure from the center of the city to each edge: the edge to the east 2,000 by the cubit, and the edge of the south 2,000 by the cubit, and the edge of the west 2,000 by the cubit, and the edge of the north 2,000 by the cubit]

Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

Numbers 35:5

ULT	UST
And you shall measure from outside to the city the edge to the east 2,000 by the cubit, and the edge of the south 2,000 by the cubit, and the edge of the west 2,000 by the cubit, and the edge of the north 2,000 by the cubit, and the city in the midst. This shall be for them the pasturelands of the cities.	*On each of the four sides, the fields must be 920 meters wide when you measure along the city edge. The city itself must be in the center. That is the size of the fields surrounding each of the cities for the Levites.*

ULT **the edge to the east 2,000 by the cubit**

UST On each of the four sides, the fields must be 920 meters wide

A **cubit** was a unit of measurement corresponding to the distance between an average person's elbow and middle fingertip, or about 46 centimeters or 18 inches. So 2,000 cubits would be about 920 meters or 3,000 feet. If it would be helpful to your readers, you could express this distance in modern measurements, either in the text or a footnote. The same distance is given for each of the other three sides in this verse. Alternate translation: [the edge to the east about 3,000 feet]

Support Reference: Biblical Distance

Numbers 35:6

ULT	UST
And the cities that you shall give to the Levites shall be the six cities of refuge, which you shall give for the fleeing there of the one having killed; and besides them you shall give 42 cities.	*Six of the cities that the Israelites set aside for the Levites must be cities to which people can flee in order to be safe. If someone kills another person, then he or she can run to one of these cities and be safe. The Israelites must also set aside 42 more cities for the Levites.*

ULT **for the fleeing there of the one having killed**

UST someone kills another person, then he or she can run to one of these cities and be safe

The implication is that **the one having killed** is someone who has killed another person and is fleeing to one of these cities to be safe from anyone who wants to kill him in revenge. You could include this information if that would be helpful to your readers. This also occurs in verse 11. Alternate translation: [for the fleeing there of the one having killed another person, so that he may be safe from anyone seeking revenge]

Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Levites	Levites
refuge	to which people can flee in order to be safe
killed	kills

Numbers 35:7

ULT	UST
All of the cities that you shall give to the Levites shall be 48 cities, them and their pasturelands.	*Altogether, the Israelites must set aside 48 cities for the Levites, including the fields surrounding them.*

ULT **them and their pasturelands**
UST including the fields surrounding them

Yahweh is leaving out some of the words that in many languages a sentence would need in order to be complete. You can supply these words from the context if that would be clearer in your language. Alternate translation: [you shall give them together with their pasturelands]
Support Reference: Ellipsis

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Levites	Levites

Numbers 35:8

ULT	UST
And the cities that you shall give from the possession of the sons of Israel: from with the many you shall increase, and from with the few you shall decrease. A man according to the mouth of his inheritance that they inherit shall give from his cities to the Levites."	*Tribes with more land must set aside more cities, and tribes with less land must set aside fewer cities. The people from each tribe must set aside these cities for the Levites from among the cities in the land that they will receive."*

ULT **from with the many you shall increase, and from with the few you shall decrease**
UST Tribes with more land must set aside more cities, and tribes with less land must set aside fewer cities

Yahweh is using the adjectives **many** and **few** as nouns to mean tribes that have much land and tribes that have little land. Your language may use adjectives in the same way. If not, you can translate these adjectives with equivalent phrases. Alternate translation: [from with the tribes that have much land you shall increase, and from with the tribes that have little land you shall decrease]
Support Reference: Nominal Adjectives

ULT **A man**
UST The people from each tribe

Here the masculine term **man** has a generic sense that includes both men and women. If it would be helpful to your readers, you could use language in your translation that is clearly inclusive of both men and women. Alternate translation: [Each one]
Support Reference: When Masculine Words Include Women

ULT **according to the mouth of his inheritance**
UST in the land

Yahweh is using **according to the mouth of his inheritance** as a common expression of the culture to mean "in proportion to the size of the land that he inherits." If this phrase does not have that meaning for your readers, you could use a comparable expression from your language that does have that meaning, or you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [in proportion to the size of his inheritance]
Support Reference: Idiom

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
possession	these cities
Israel	these cities
inheritance	in the land
inherit	they will receive
Levites	Levites

Numbers 35:9

ULT	UST
And Yahweh spoke to Moses, saying,	*Yahweh told Moses,*

> ULT **And Yahweh spoke to Moses, saying**
> UST Yahweh told Moses

See how you translated the similar expression in 18:25.

Support Reference: Quotations and Quote Margins

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Yahweh	Yahweh
Moses	Moses

Numbers 35:10

ULT	UST
“Speak to the sons of Israel and say to them, ‘When you are passing over the Jordan to the land of Canaan,	*“Tell this to the Israelite people: They will go to Canaan on the west side of the Jordan River.*

ULT **Speak to the sons of Israel and say to them**
UST Tell this to the Israelite people

See how you translated this expression in 33:51.
Support Reference: Quotes within Quotes

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Israel	Israelite
Jordan	Jordan River
land	to Canaan
Canaan	Canaan

Numbers 35:11

ULT	UST
then you shall make happen for you cities; cities of refuge they shall be for you. And shall flee there one having killed, one having struck a person by mistake.	*When they do, they must choose certain cities to which people can flee in order to be safe. If someone kills another person accidentally, then he or she can run to one of those cities and be safe.*

ULT **then you shall make happen for you cities**

UST When they do, they must choose certain cities

Yahweh is using **make happen for you cities** as a common expression of the culture to mean "select cities for this purpose." If this phrase does not have that meaning for your readers, you could use a comparable expression from your language that does have that meaning, or you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [then you shall designate cities for yourselves]

Support Reference: Idiom

ULT **one having struck a person by mistake**

UST If someone kills another person accidentally

If your language does not use an abstract noun for the idea of **mistake**, you could express the same idea in another way. This also occurs in verse 15. Alternate translation: [one having struck a person without meaning to]

Support Reference: Abstract Nouns

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
refuge	to which people can flee in order to be safe
killed	kills

Numbers 35:12

ULT	UST
And they will be for you the cities for refuge from one redeeming, and the one having killed will not die until his standing to the face of the congregation for the judgment.	*When a person kills someone, a close relative of the dead person often seeks to kill that person to avenge his or her relative. If that person is in one of these cities, then the close relative may not kill him or her. Instead, with the Israelite community watching, the leaders must decide whether that person deserves to die.*

ULT **for refuge from one redeeming**

UST a close relative of the dead person often seeks to kill that person to avenge his or her relative. If that person is in one of these cities

The **one redeeming** is a kind of close relative who has the responsibility to avenge the death of a family member by killing the person who killed him. If your readers would not be familiar with what this is, you could use the name of a similar role that your readers would recognize, or you could use a more general term. Alternate translation: [for refuge from the relative seeking revenge]

Support Reference: Translate Unknowns

ULT **to the face of the congregation**

UST with the Israelite community watching

See how you translated this expression in 16:9.

Support Reference: Metonymy

ULT **for the judgment**

UST the leaders must decide whether that person deserves to die

If your language does not use an abstract noun for the idea of **judgment**, you could express the same idea in another way. Alternate translation: [so that they may judge him]

Support Reference: Abstract Nouns

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
refuge	If that person is in one of these cities
redeeming	a close relative of the dead person often seeks to kill that person to avenge his or her relative
killed	kills
congregation	community
judgment	the leaders must decide whether that person deserves to die

Numbers 35:14

ULT	UST
The three cities you shall give from across to the Jordan, and the three cities you shall give in the land of Canaan; cities of refuge they shall be.	*Three of those cities must be on the east side of the Jordan River. The other three must be on the west side in Canaan. They will be cities to which people can flee in order to be safe.*

> ULT **from across to the Jordan**
> UST on the east side of the Jordan River

See how you translated the similar expression in 34:15.

Support Reference: Idiom

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Jordan	Jordan River
land	on the west side in Canaan
Canaan	Canaan
refuge	to which people can flee in order to be safe

Numbers 35:15

ULT	UST
For the sons of Israel and for the sojourner and for the temporary resident in their midst these six cities shall be for refuge, for the fleeing there of everyone having struck a person by mistake.	*If anyone kills another person accidentally, then he or she can run to one of those six cities and be safe. That applies to Israelites, foreigners, and anyone who is living among them temporarily.*

ULT **and for the sojourner and for the temporary resident**
UST foreigners, and anyone who is living … temporarily

A **sojourner** is a kind of foreigner who lived among the Israelites for a long time, and a **temporary resident** is a kind of foreigner who stayed among them for a shorter time. If your readers would not be familiar with these kinds of people, you could use the names of similar kinds of people that your readers would recognize, or you could use more general terms. Alternate translation: [and for the long-term foreigner and for the short-term foreigner]

Support Reference: Translate Unknowns

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Israel	Israelites
and for the sojourner	foreigners
refuge	and be safe

Numbers 35:16

ULT	UST
But if he struck him with a vessel of iron and he died, he is one having killed. Dying, the one having killed shall be put to death.	*Suppose that a person hits someone with an iron tool and kills him or her. In that case, that person is a murderer. Someone must certainly execute that murderer.*

ULT **But if he struck him with a vessel of iron and he died**
UST Suppose that a person hits someone with an iron tool and kills him or her

Yahweh is presenting a possible condition: that a person might strike someone with an object made of iron and cause that person to die. Use a natural form in your language for introducing a condition that could happen. Alternate translation: [But suppose he struck him with a vessel of iron and he died]
Support Reference: Connect — Hypothetical Conditions

ULT **he struck him with a vessel of iron and he died, he {is} one having killed**
UST a person hits someone with an iron tool and kills him or her. In that case, that person is a murderer

The pronouns **he** and **him** refer to different people in this verse. The first **he** and the last **he** refer to the person who struck someone, while **him** and the second **he** refer to the person who was struck. It may be helpful to clarify this for your readers. Alternate translation: [the attacker struck the other person with a vessel of iron and that person died, the attacker is one having killed]
Support Reference: Pronouns — When to Use Them

ULT **with a vessel of iron**
UST with an iron tool

The implication is that the word **vessel** refers here to any tool or object, not only to a container. You could include this information if that would be helpful to your readers. Alternate translation: [with an object made of iron]
Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

ULT **Dying, the one having killed shall be put to death**
UST Someone must certainly execute that murderer

Yahweh is repeating forms of the verb translated as **Dying** and **put to death** in order to intensify his expression of the idea that it conveys. If your language can repeat words for intensification, it would be appropriate to do that here in your translation. If not, your language may have another way of expressing the intensification. This also occurs in verses 17, 18, 21, and 31. Alternate translation: [The one having killed must certainly be put to death]
Support Reference: Reduplication

> ULT **the one having killed shall be put to death**
> UST Someone must … execute that murderer

The expression **shall be put to death** is a passive verbal form. If it would be unnatural to use that form, you could express the idea in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. If you need to state who would do the action, the context indicates that it would be the close relative who avenges the dead person. This also occurs in verses 17, 18, 21, and 31. Alternate translation: [the avenger shall put the one having killed to death]

Support Reference: Active or Passive

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
iron	iron
killed	is a murderer
killed	that murderer

Numbers 35:17

ULT	UST
And if with a stone of a hand, by which he dies, he struck him and he died, he is one having killed. Dying, the one having killed shall be put to death.	*Suppose that a person is holding a stone that could kill a person. Suppose that he or she hits someone with it and kills him or her. In that case, that person is a murderer. Someone must certainly execute that murderer.*

ULT **with a stone of a hand**

UST a person is holding a stone

Yahweh is using the possessive form to describe a **stone** that is characterized by being small enough to hold in a **hand**. If a speaker of your language would not use the possessive form for this, you could express this idea in another way. Alternate translation: [with a stone small enough to hold in his hand]

Support Reference: Possession

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
stone	stone
killed	is a murderer
killed	that murderer

Numbers 35:19

ULT	UST
The one redeeming the blood, he, he shall kill the one having killed. In his meeting with him, he, he shall kill him.	*It is the close relative of the dead person who must kill the murderer to avenge his or her relative. Whenever the close relative finds the murderer, he or she must kill the murderer.*

ULT **The one redeeming the blood**

UST the close relative of the dead person … to avenge his or her relative

Here, **the blood** represents "the death of a relative whom someone killed." The person **redeeming the blood** is the close relative who had the responsibility to avenge that death. If it would be helpful in your language, you could use an equivalent expression or plain language. This also occurs in verses 21, 24, 25, and 27. Alternate translation: [The one avenging the death of his relative]

Support Reference: Metonymy

ULT **In his meeting with him**

UST Whenever the close relative finds the murderer

Yahweh is using **In his meeting with him** as a common expression of the culture to mean "whenever he finds him." If this phrase does not have that meaning for your readers, you could use a comparable expression from your language that does have that meaning, or you could state the meaning plainly. This also occurs in verse 21. Alternate translation: [As soon as he finds him]

Support Reference: Idiom

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
redeeming	the close relative of the dead person … to avenge his or her relative
kill	kill
killed	the murderer
meeting	Whenever the close relative finds
kill	kill

Numbers 35:21

ULT	UST
or in hostility he struck him with his hand, and he died, dying, the one having struck shall be put to death; he is one having killed. The one redeeming the blood shall kill the one having killed in his meeting with him.	*Or, suppose that a person was opposing someone, hit him or her, and killed him or her. In all those cases, that person is a murderer. Someone must certainly execute that murderer. It is the close relative of the dead person who must kill the murderer to avenge his or her relative whenever he or she finds the murderer.*

ULT **he struck him with his hand**

UST hit him or her

The implication is that the person struck the other person with his bare **hand** without using any weapon, and yet he killed him intentionally. You could include this information if that would be helpful to your readers. Alternate translation: [he struck him with just his fist, without using any weapon]

Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
killed	is a murderer
redeeming	It is the close relative of the dead person … to avenge his or her relative
kill	kill
killed	the murderer
meeting	whenever he or she finds

Numbers 35:22

ULT	UST
But if in suddenness, not in hostility, he pushed him, or he threw upon him any vessel not on purpose,	*However, suppose that a person was not opposing someone but suddenly shoved him or her. Or suppose that the person accidentally threw a tool at him or her.*

ULT **But if**

UST However, suppose that

Yahweh uses the word **But** here to indicate a contrast between the cases in which a person kills someone on purpose, which the previous verses describe, and the cases in which a person kills someone by accident, which this verse and the next verse describe. In your translation, indicate this contrast in a way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: [On the other hand, if]

Support Reference: Connect — Contrast Relationship

ULT **in suddenness**

UST but suddenly

If your language does not use an abstract noun for the idea of **suddenness**, you could express the same idea in another way. Alternate translation: [unexpectedly]

Support Reference: Abstract Nouns

Numbers 35:23

ULT	UST
or with any stone, by which he dies, while not seeing, and he made fall upon him, and he died, and he was not an enemy to him and was not seeking his evil,	*Or suppose that the person dropped a stone that could kill a person on him or her without realizing that he or she was there. In each of those cases, suppose that the person was not opposing or trying to harm the other person, and yet he or she died.*

ULT **or with any stone, by which he dies, while not seeing**

UST Or suppose that … a stone that could kill a person … without realizing that he or she was there

Yahweh is leaving out some of the words that in many languages a sentence would need in order to be complete. You can supply these words from the context if that would be clearer in your language. Alternate translation: [or if with any stone by which a person could die, while he did not see the other person]

Support Reference: Ellipsis

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
stone	stone
enemy	was … opposing
seeking	trying
evil	to harm

Numbers 35:24

ULT	UST
then the congregation shall judge between the one having struck and between the one redeeming the blood according to these ordinances.	*In each of those cases, the Israelite community must decide whether the person who killed someone is not a murderer or whether the close relative of the dead person should kill the person to avenge his or her relative. They must follow these instructions when they decide.*

ULT **the one redeeming the blood**

UST the close relative of the dead person {should kill the person} to avenge his or her relative

Here the word “blood” is a metonym for the murder. See how you translated this phrase in Numbers 35:19. Alternate translation: [the one who avenges the murder] or [the relative seeking vengeance]

Support Reference: Metonymy

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
congregation	community
judge	must decide
redeeming	the close relative of the dead person {should kill the person} to avenge his or her relative
ordinances	instructions

Numbers 35:25

ULT	UST
And the congregation shall deliver the one having killed from the hand of the one redeeming the blood, and the congregation shall return him to the city of his refuge where he fled. And he shall dwell in it until the death of the great priest whom he anointed with the oil of the holy place.	*The Israelite community must keep any person who unintentionally killed someone safe from the dead person's close relative, who wants to kill that person to avenge his or her relative. The community must send that person back to the city where he or she ran to be safe. The person must live there until the high priest dies. That is the priest on whom someone poured the sacred oil.*

ULT **from the hand of the one redeeming the blood**

UST from the dead person's close relative, who wants to kill that person to avenge his or her relative

Here, **hand** represents "power" or "control." If it would be helpful in your language, you could use an equivalent expression or plain language. Alternate translation: [from the power of the one redeeming the blood]

Support Reference: Metonymy

ULT **until the death of the great priest**

UST until the high priest dies

The implication is that the death of the **great priest**, that is, the high priest, would end the time that the person who killed someone had to stay in the city of refuge. After that, he could safely return home. You could include this information if that would be helpful to your readers. This also occurs in verse 28. Alternate translation: [only until he may safely return home at the death of the high priest]

Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

ULT **whom he anointed**

UST That is the priest on whom someone poured

The pronoun **he** does not refer to the person who killed someone. It refers to an unspecified person who anointed the priest. It may be helpful to clarify this for your readers. Alternate translation: [whom another person anointed]

Support Reference: Pronouns — When to Use Them

ULT **with the oil of the holy place**

UST the sacred oil

Yahweh is using the possessive form to describe **oil** that is characterized by being set apart for use in **the holy place**. If a speaker of your language would not use the possessive form for this, you could express this idea in another way. Alternate translation: [with the oil that is set apart for use in the holy place]

Support Reference: Possession

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
congregation	community
deliver	must keep … safe
killed	killed
redeeming	the dead person's close relative, who wants to kill that person to avenge his or her relative
congregation	community
refuge	to be safe
priest	priest
anointed	someone poured
oil	oil
holy place	sacred

Numbers 35:26

ULT	UST
But if going out, the one having killed goes out beyond the border of the city of his refuge where he flees,	*However, suppose that the person who unintentionally killed someone walks past the edges of the city where he or she ran to be safe.*

ULT **But if going out, the one having killed goes out**
UST However, suppose that the person who {unintentionally} killed someone walks past

Yahweh is repeating forms of the verb translated as **going out** and **goes out** in order to intensify his expression of the idea that it conveys. If your language can repeat words for intensification, it would be appropriate to do that here in your translation. If not, your language may have another way of expressing the intensification. Alternate translation: [But if the one having killed actually goes out]

Support Reference: Reduplication

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
killed	killed
refuge	to be safe

Numbers 35:27

ULT	UST
and the one redeeming the blood finds him from outside to the border of the city of his refuge, and the one redeeming the blood kills the one having killed, there is not to him blood.	*Then, suppose that the dead person's close relative encounters the person who unintentionally killed someone outside the edges of that city and kills that person. In that case, the close relative is not guilty of murder.*

ULT **there is not to him blood**

UST In that case, the close relative is not guilty of murder

Yahweh is using **there is not to him blood** as a common expression of the culture to mean "the one redeeming the blood is not guilty of murder." If this phrase does not have that meaning for your readers, you could use a comparable expression from your language that does have that meaning, or you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [he is not guilty of murder]

Support Reference: Idiom

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
redeeming	the dead person's close relative
refuge	that city
redeeming	and kills
kills	kills
killed	that person

Numbers 35:29

ULT	UST
And these shall be for you for a statute of judgment for your generations in all of your dwellings.	*All the Israelites and their descendants must follow those rules wherever they live.*

ULT for a statute of judgment
UST rules

See how you translated the similar expression in 27:11.

Support Reference: Abstract Nouns

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
statute	rules
judgment	rules
generations	and their descendants

Numbers 35:30

ULT	UST
Everyone having struck a person, to the mouth of witnesses he shall kill the one having killed. And one witness shall not answer against a person to die.	*Suppose that someone killed someone else and people testify that it was intentional. In that case, someone must execute the murderer. However, suppose that only one person testifies. In that case, no one can execute that person.*

ULT **Everyone having struck a person, to the mouth of witnesses he shall kill the one having killed**

UST Suppose that someone killed someone else and people testify {that it was intentional}. In that case, someone must execute the murderer

If it would be more natural in your language, you may want to put the information about **Everyone having struck a person** with the information about **the one having killed**, since both phrases refer to the same person. Alternate translation: [To the mouth of witnesses he shall kill everyone who has struck and killed a person]

Support Reference: Information Structure

ULT **to the mouth of witnesses**

UST and people testify that it was intentional

Here, **mouth** represents "testimony," what the witnesses say about what happened. If it would be helpful in your language, you could use an equivalent expression or plain language. Alternate translation: [on the testimony of witnesses]

Support Reference: Metonymy

ULT **he shall kill the one having killed**

UST In that case, someone must execute the murderer

The pronoun **he** does not refer to the person who killed someone. It refers to whoever carries out the execution, such as the close relative who avenges the dead person. It may be helpful to clarify this for your readers. Alternate translation: [the one redeeming the blood shall kill the one having killed]

Support Reference: Pronouns — When to Use Them

ULT **And one witness shall not answer against a person**

UST However, suppose that only one person testifies. In that case, no one … that person

Yahweh is using **answer against a person** as a common expression of the culture to mean "testify against a person." If this phrase does not have that meaning for your readers, you could use a comparable expression from your language that does have that meaning, or you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [And one witness shall not testify against a person]

Support Reference: Idiom

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
witnesses	testify
kill	In that case, someone must execute
killed	the murderer
witness	However, suppose that … person
shall … answer	testifies

Numbers 35:31

ULT	UST
And you shall not take a ransom for a life of one having killed, who is wicked to die, for dying, he shall be put to death.	*The Israelites must not accept money in exchange for allowing a murderer, who deserves to die, to live. Instead, someone must certainly execute that murderer.*

ULT **who is wicked to die**
UST who deserves to die

Yahweh is using **who is wicked to die** as a common expression of the culture to mean "who is guilty and deserves to die." If this phrase does not have that meaning for your readers, you could use a comparable expression from your language that does have that meaning, or you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [who is guilty and deserves to be executed]

Support Reference: Idiom

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
ransom	money in exchange
killed	a murderer
wicked	deserves

Numbers 35:32

ULT	UST
And you shall not take a ransom to flee to the city of his refuge, to return to dwell in the land until the death of the priest.	*As for someone who should run to one of those six cities to be safe, the Israelites must not accept money in exchange for allowing that person to go back to his or her own land before the high priest dies.*

> ULT **And you shall not take a ransom to flee to the city of his refuge, to return to dwell in the land**
>
> UST As for someone who should run to {one of those six} cities to be safe, the Israelites must not accept money in exchange for allowing that person to go back to his or her own land

The implication is that someone could offer a ransom payment in order to be allowed to leave the city of refuge before the death of the high priest. You could include this information if that would be helpful to your readers. Alternate translation: [And you shall not accept payment from someone in exchange for allowing him to leave the city of his refuge and return to live in his own land before the death of the priest]

Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
ransom	money in exchange
refuge	to be safe
to return	for allowing that person to go back
land	land
priest	priest

Numbers 35:33

ULT	UST
And you shall not pollute the land in which you are, for the blood, it pollutes the land, and atonement for the land shall not be made for the blood that was poured out in it, except by the blood of the one pouring it out.	*When a person kills someone, it makes the land they live in impure. So, they must not make the land impure. The only way to make the land pure again is to kill the murderer.*

ULT **for the blood, it pollutes the land**
UST When a person kills someone, it makes the land … impure. So

Here, **the blood** represents "the killing of a person." If it would be helpful in your language, you could use an equivalent expression or plain language. Alternate translation: [for murder pollutes the land]
Support Reference: Metonymy

ULT **and atonement for the land shall not be made for the blood that was poured out in it, except by the blood of the one pouring it out**
UST The only way to make the land pure again is to kill the murderer

If it would appear in your language that Yahweh was making a statement and then contradicting it, you could reword this as a positive statement. Alternate translation: [and atonement for the land can be made for the blood that was poured out in it only by the blood of the one pouring it out]
Support Reference: Connect — Exception Clauses

ULT **and atonement for the land shall not be made**
UST The only way to make the land pure

The expression **shall not be made** is a passive verbal form. If it would be unnatural to use that form, you could express the idea in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: [and you cannot make atonement for the land]
Support Reference: Active or Passive

ULT **for the blood that was poured out in it**
UST again

The expression **was poured out** is a passive verbal form. If it would be unnatural to use that form, you could express the idea in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: [for the blood that someone poured out in it]
Support Reference: Active or Passive

ULT **by the blood of the one pouring it out**
UST is to kill the murderer

Yahweh is using **the blood of the one pouring it out** as a common expression of the culture to mean "the death of the person who killed someone." If this phrase does not have that meaning for your readers, you could use a comparable expression from your language that does have that meaning, or you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [by the death of the person who killed someone]
Support Reference: Idiom

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
land	land
land	land

Numbers 35:34

ULT	UST
And you shall not make unclean the land in which you are dwelling, in the midst of which I am dwelling, for I, Yahweh, am dwelling in the midst of the sons of Israel.'"	*I am Yahweh. I am present with the Israelites in their land. So, they must not make the land they live in impure."*

ULT **And you shall not make unclean the land in which you are dwelling**
UST they must not make the land they live in impure

The word **you** in the phrase **you shall not make unclean** is singular here because Yahweh is speaking to each individual Israelite. So use the singular form in your translation if your language marks that distinction. The word **you** in the phrase **you are dwelling** is plural because Yahweh is speaking to all the Israelites. So use the plural form in your translation if your language marks that distinction.
Support Reference: Forms of 'You' — Singular

ULT **And you shall not make unclean the land in which you are dwelling, in the midst of which I am dwelling, for I, Yahweh, am dwelling in the midst of the sons of Israel**
UST I am Yahweh. I am present with the Israelites in their land. So, they must not make the land they live in impure

The word translated as **for** indicates that what follows is a reason for what came before. Use a connector in your language that makes it clear that what follows is a reason for what came before. Alternate translation: [And because I, Yahweh, am dwelling in the midst of the sons of Israel, you shall not make unclean the land in which you are dwelling, in the midst of which I am dwelling]
Support Reference: Connect — Reason-and-Result Relationship

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
land	land
Yahweh	Yahweh
Israel	Israelites

Numbers 36

Numbers 36 Introduction

Numbers 36 Chapter Introduction

Structure and Formatting

In this chapter, Moses gives Yahweh's instructions concerning keeping ancestral land within a tribe when daughters inherit that land. He gives specific instructions for Zelophehad's daughters, which continue from 27:1–11, and then more general instructions. Daughters that inherit land must marry someone from the same tribe to keep ancestral land within that tribe. The chapter ends with a brief conclusion to this section of Numbers.

1. Manasseh's clan leaders raise a concern about land passing to another tribe through marriage (1–4)
2. Yahweh commands women who inherit land to marry within their father's tribe (5–9)
3. Zelophehad's daughters obey and marry within their tribe (10–12)
4. Closing summary of the commands given on the plains of Moab (13)

Religious and Cultural Concepts in This Chapter

Property, marriage, and inheritance

In this culture, when a woman married a man, the man would be in charge of any property or possessions that the woman had. If the woman had inherited land from her father, that land would now belong to her husband. If the husband was from a different tribe than the wife, the land would permanently belong to a different tribe than the tribe of the wife's father. This situation is what the leaders of Manasseh wish to avoid. Yahweh tells Moses to agree with them and require women who have inherited land to marry within their tribe. That way, the property would continue to belong to their father's tribe.

Translation Issues in This Chapter

Marriage within the tribe or the clan?

In 36:6 and 36:8, Moses indicates whom daughters who inherit may marry. It is possible that he means that they must marry someone from the same tribe and clan as their father. It is possible that he means only that they must marry someone from the same tribe as their father. The UST follows that interpretation. See the notes on these verses for alternate translations.

Numbers 36:1

ULT	UST
And the heads of the fathers for the clan of the sons of Gilead, the son of Machir, the son of Manasseh, from the clans of the sons of Joseph, came near, and they spoke to the face of Moses and to the face of the leaders, the heads of the fathers for the sons of Israel.	*Now there was a tribal group that was one of the tribal groups that descended from Joseph. Specifically, this tribal group descended from Gilead, whose father was Machir, whose father was Manasseh. The men who led the extended families that made up this tribal group approached Moses and the men who led the Israelite ancestral families and talked with them.*

ULT **the heads of the fathers**

UST The men who led the extended families that made up this tribal group

The author is leaving out some of the words that in many languages a sentence would need in order to be complete. You can supply these words from the context if that would be clearer in your language. Alternate translation: [the heads of the fathers' families]

Support Reference: Ellipsis

ULT **to the face of Moses and to the face of the leaders**

UST Moses and the men

Here, **to the face of** represents "into the presence of." If it would be helpful in your language, you could use an equivalent expression or plain language. Alternate translation: [to Moses and to the leaders]

Support Reference: Metonymy

ULT **for the sons of Israel**

UST Israelite

See how you translated the similar expression in 1:2. This also occurs in verses 2–5, 7–9, and 13.

Support Reference: Metaphor

ULT **the son of Manasseh**

UST whose father was Manasseh

See how you translated the similar expression in 1:34. This also occurs in verse 12.

Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
clan	Specifically, this tribal group
Gilead	Gilead
Manasseh	Manasseh
clans	Now there was a tribal group that was one of the tribal groups
Joseph	Joseph
Moses	Moses
leaders	and the men
Israel	Israelite

Numbers 36:2

ULT	UST
And they said, "Yahweh commanded my lord to give the land in inheritance by lot to the sons of Israel, and my lord was commanded by Yahweh to give the inheritance of Zelophehad our brother to his daughters.	*They said, "Yahweh told you, sir, to use lots to determine randomly where each of the Israelite tribal groups will receive its land. Yahweh also told you, sir, to assign the land that our relative Zelophehad would have received to his daughters.*

ULT **Yahweh commanded my lord to give the land**
UST Yahweh told you, sir … will receive its land

Even though the leaders of the clan of Gilead are addressing Moses directly, they are speaking of him in the third person as **my lord** to show respect. If it would be helpful in your language, you could translate this in a respectful form in the second person. Alternate translation: [Yahweh commanded you, sir, to give the land]
Support Reference: First, Second or Third Person

ULT **in inheritance**
UST where

If your language does not use a noun for the idea of **inheritance**, you could express the same idea in another way. Alternate translation: [to be inherited]
Support Reference: Abstract Nouns

ULT **and my lord was commanded by Yahweh**
UST Yahweh also told you, sir

The expression **was commanded** is a passive verbal form. If it would be unnatural to use that form, you could express the idea in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: [and Yahweh also commanded my lord]
Support Reference: Active or Passive

ULT **the inheritance of Zelophehad our brother**
UST the land that our relative Zelophehad would have received

The leaders are using the term **brother** to describe Zelophehad as someone who was descended from the same ancestor as they were, that is, a member of their own clan. If it would be helpful in your language, you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [the inheritance of Zelophehad our fellow clansman]
Support Reference: Metaphor

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Yahweh	Yahweh
lord	sir
land	land
inheritance	where
lot	lots
Israel	Israelite
lord	sir
Yahweh	Yahweh
inheritance	the land that … would have received

Numbers 36:3

ULT	UST
And they will be for wives to one from the sons of the tribes of the sons of Israel, and their inheritance will be taken away from the inheritance of our fathers, and it will be added upon the inheritance of the tribe that they will be for them. And from the lot of our inheritance it will be taken away.	*However, suppose that they marry men from other Israelite tribes. In that case, the land that they received will belong to the tribe of the men whom they married. It will no longer belong to our tribe. In this way, we will lose some of the land that our tribal group received.*

ULT **And they will be for wives to one from the sons of the tribes of the sons of Israel**

UST However, suppose that they marry men from other Israelite tribes

The leaders are using **they will be for wives to** as a common expression of the culture to mean "they will marry." If this phrase does not have that meaning for your readers, you could use a comparable expression from your language that does have that meaning, or you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [And they will marry men from the sons of the tribes of the sons of Israel]

Support Reference: Idiom

ULT **and their inheritance will be taken away from the inheritance of our fathers, and it will be added upon the inheritance of the tribe**

UST In that case, the land that they received will belong to the tribe … It will no longer belong to our tribe

The expressions **will be taken away** and **will be added** are passive verbal forms. If it would be unnatural to use that form, you could express the idea in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: [and their husbands will take their inheritance away from the inheritance of our fathers, and they will add it to the inheritance of the tribe]

Support Reference: Active or Passive

ULT **from the inheritance of our fathers**

UST to our tribe

The leaders are using the term **fathers** to mean "ancestors." If it would be helpful in your language, you could state the meaning plainly. This also occurs in verse 8. Alternate translation: [from the inheritance of our ancestors]

Support Reference: Metaphor

ULT **the tribe that they will be for them**

UST the tribe of the men whom they married

The leaders are using **that they will be for them** as a common expression of the culture to mean "into which they will marry." If this phrase does not have that meaning for your readers, you could use a comparable expression from your language that does have that meaning, or you could state the meaning plainly. This also occurs in verse 4. Alternate translation: [the tribe into which they will marry]

Support Reference: Idiom

ULT **And from the lot of our inheritance**
UST In this way … some of the land that our tribal group received

Here, **lot** represents "the portion of land that was assigned by lot." If it would be helpful in your language, you could use an equivalent expression or plain language. Alternate translation: [And from the portion of land that was assigned to us by lot as our inheritance]
Support Reference: Metonymy

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
tribes	tribes
Israel	Israelite
inheritance	It
inheritance	to our tribe
inheritance	In that case, the land that they received will belong to
tribe	tribe
lot	In this way … that our tribal group received
inheritance	some of the land

Numbers 36:4

ULT	UST
And if the Jubilee is for the sons of Israel, then their inheritance will be added upon the inheritance of the tribe that they will be for them, and from the inheritance of the tribe of our fathers their inheritance will be taken away."	*Also, when it is the year for restoring for the Israelite people, the land that they received will still belong to the tribe of the men whom they married. In this way, we will lose some of the land that belongs to our ancestral tribe."*

ULT **And if the Jubilee is for the sons of Israel, then their inheritance will be added upon the inheritance of the tribe**

UST Also, when it is the year for restoring for the Israelite people, the land that they received will still belong to the tribe

The leaders are speaking as if this were a hypothetical possibility, but they mean that it is actually true. The Jubilee would certainly come. If your language does not state something as a condition if it is certain or true, or if your readers might think that what the leaders are saying is uncertain, then you could translate this as a confident statement. Alternate translation: [And when the Jubilee comes for the sons of Israel, their inheritance will be added upon the inheritance of the tribe]

Support Reference: Connect — Factual Conditions

ULT **the Jubilee**

UST the year for restoring

The **Jubilee** was a kind of special year that occurred every fiftieth year, when land that had been sold was returned to the family that originally owned it. If your readers would not be familiar with what the Jubilee was, you could use the name of a similar thing that your readers would recognize, or you could use a more general term. Alternate translation: [the special fiftieth year for giving land back to its original owners]

Support Reference: Translate Unknowns

ULT **the tribe of our fathers**

UST our ancestral tribe

See how you translated the similar expression in 26:55. This also occurs in verse 7. This also occurs in verses 6–8.

Support Reference: Idiom

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Israel	Israelite
inheritance	the land that they received
tribe	tribe

Numbers 36:5

ULT	UST
And Moses commanded the sons of Israel upon the mouth of Yahweh, saying, “The tribe of the sons of Joseph is speaking rightly.	*Then Moses told the Israelite people what Yahweh commanded him to say. He said, “The men who lead this tribe that descends from Joseph have said this correctly.*

ULT **The tribe of the sons of Joseph is speaking rightly**
UST The men who lead this tribe that descends from Joseph have said this correctly

Here, **tribe** represents “the leaders of the tribe” who spoke to Moses. If it would be helpful in your language, you could use an equivalent expression or plain language. Alternate translation: [The leaders from the tribe of the sons of Joseph are speaking rightly]
Support Reference: Metonymy

ULT **upon the mouth of Yahweh**
UST what Yahweh commanded him to say

See how you translated the similar expression in 3:16.
Support Reference: Idiom

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Moses	Moses
Israel	Israelite
Yahweh	Yahweh
tribe	tribe
Joseph	Joseph

Numbers 36:6

ULT	UST
This is the word that Yahweh has commanded for the daughters of Zelophehad, saying, 'To the good in their eyes they will be for wives, only to the clan of the tribe of their father they will be for wives.'	*Here is what Yahweh has ordered Zelophehad's daughters to do. They may marry anyone they like, as long as the man belongs to a tribal group within the same tribe as their father.*

ULT **only to the clan of the tribe of their father**
UST as long as … belongs to a tribal group within the same tribe as their father

This could mean: (1) that they can marry into any clan within the tribe of their father. Alternate translation: [only to any clan of the tribe of their father]; or (2) that they can marry only someone from the same clan as their father. Alternate translation: [only to the same tribe and clan as their father]

Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

ULT **saying, 'To the good in their eyes they will be for wives, only to the clan of the tribe of their father they will be for wives**
UST has ordered … They may marry anyone they like, as long as the man belongs to a tribal group within the same tribe as their father

If it would be clearer in your language, you could translate this so that there is not a quotation within a quotation. Alternate translation: [that to the good in their eyes they will be for wives, only to the clan of the tribe of their father they will be for wives]

Support Reference: Quotes within Quotes

ULT **To the good in their eyes**
UST anyone they like

Moses is using **To the good in their eyes** as a common expression of the culture to mean "to whomever they think is best." If this phrase does not have that meaning for your readers, you could use a comparable expression from your language that does have that meaning, or you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [To whomever they consider best]

Support Reference: Idiom

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Yahweh	Yahweh
good	anyone they like
clan	belongs to a tribal group
tribe	tribe

Numbers 36:7

ULT	UST
And an inheritance for the sons of Israel shall not go around from tribe to tribe, for a man in the inheritance of the tribe of his fathers, the sons of Israel shall cling.	*Land that belongs to one tribe must never transfer to another tribe. Each Israelite must ensure that the land that he or she receives continues to belong to his or her ancestral tribe.*

ULT **And an inheritance for the sons of Israel shall not go around from tribe to tribe**
UST Land that belongs to one tribe must never transfer to another tribe

Here Moses is speaking as if an inheritance were able to **go around** from one tribe to another. It means that land must not pass from the ownership of one tribe to another tribe. If this meaning would not be clear in your language, you could use a comparable expression or you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [And the ownership of an inheritance for the sons of Israel shall not pass from one tribe to another tribe]

Support Reference: Metaphor

ULT **a man in the inheritance of the tribe of his fathers**
UST Each … the land that he or she receives … to his or her ancestral tribe

Moses is not referring to a specific **man**. He means men in general. If it would be helpful to your readers, you could use an expression that would be more natural in your language. Alternate translation: [each person in the inheritance of the tribe of his fathers]

Support Reference: Generic Noun Phrases

ULT **shall cling**
UST must ensure that … continues to belong

Here Moses is speaking as if each Israelite would **cling** to the inheritance of his ancestral tribe. It means that each Israelite would keep the land that belonged to his ancestral tribe. If this meaning would not be clear in your language, you could use a comparable expression or you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [shall remain]

Support Reference: Metaphor

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
inheritance	Land
Israel	Land
tribe	tribe
inheritance	the land that he or she receives
tribe	tribe

Numbers 36:8

ULT	UST
And every daughter possessing an inheritance from the tribes of the sons of Israel shall be for a wife to one from the clan of the tribe of her father, so that the sons of Israel will possess, a man the inheritance of his fathers.	*Every Israelite woman who receives land from her father must marry a man who belongs to a tribal group within the same tribe as her father. That way, each Israelite will ensure that his or her ancestral land continues to belong to him or her.*

ULT **from the clan of the tribe of her father**

UST who belongs to a tribal group within the same tribe as her father

As in verse 6, his could mean: (1) that the woman can marry into any clan within the tribe of her father. Alternate translation: [from any clan of the tribe of her father]; or (2) that the woman can marry only someone from the same clan as her father. Alternate translation: [from the same tribe and clan as her father]

Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
possessing	who receives
inheritance	land from her father
tribes	Israelite
Israel	Israelite
clan	who belongs to a tribal group
tribe	tribe
Israel	Israelite
possess	will ensure that … continues to belong to him or her
inheritance	his or her … land

Numbers 36:9

ULT	UST
And an inheritance shall not go around from a tribe to another tribe, for a man in his inheritance, the tribes of the sons of Israel will cling."	*Land that belongs to one tribe must never transfer to another tribe. Each Israelite must ensure that the land that he or she receives continues to belong to his or her ancestral tribe."*

ULT **a man**

UST Each Israelite

Moses is not referring to a specific **man**. He means each person among **the tribes of the sons of Israel**. If it would be helpful to your readers, you could use an expression that would be more natural in your language. Alternate translation: [each person]

Support Reference: Generic Noun Phrases

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
inheritance	Land
tribe	tribe
Israel	his or her ancestral tribe

Numbers 36:11

ULT	UST
And Mahlah, Tirzah, and Hoglah, and Milcah, and Noah, the daughters of Zelophehad, were to the sons of their uncles for wives.	*Zelophehad's daughters were Mahlah, Tirzah, Hoglah, Milcah, and Noah. They married the sons of their father's brothers.*

ULT **to the sons of their uncles**

UST the sons of their father's brothers

Your language may have its own term or expression for this relationship. The phrase **the sons of their uncles** refers to the sons of their father's brothers. Alternate translation: [to their cousins on their father's side]

Support Reference: Kinship

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Tirzah	Tirzah

Numbers 36:12

ULT	UST
From the clans of the sons of Manasseh, the son of Joseph, they were for wives, and their inheritance was upon the tribe of the clan of their father.	*They married men who belonged to the tribal groups that descended from Manasseh, whose father was Joseph. So, the land that they received continued to belong to the tribe to which their father's tribal group belonged.*

ULT **and their inheritance was upon the tribe of the clan of their father**

UST So, the land that they received continued to belong to the tribe to which their father's tribal group belonged

The author is using **their inheritance was upon** as a common expression of the culture to mean "their inheritance remained with." If this phrase does not have that meaning for your readers, you could use a comparable expression from your language that does have that meaning, or you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [and their inheritance stayed with the tribe of the clan of their father]

Support Reference: Idiom

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
clans	men who belonged to the tribal groups
Manasseh	Manasseh
Joseph	Joseph
inheritance	the land that they received
tribe	tribe
clan	to which … tribal group belonged

Numbers 36:13

ULT	UST
These are the commandments and the ordinances that Yahweh commanded in the hand of Moses to the sons of Israel in the plains of Moab beside the Jordan at Jericho.	*Those are the rules and instructions that Yahweh gave to the Israelites through Moses while they were in the flatlands that were part of Moab, on the east side of the Jordan River, across from Jericho.*

ULT **These {are} the commandments and the ordinances that Yahweh commanded**
UST Those are the rules and instructions that Yahweh gave

This verse is a comment that summarizes **the commandments and the ordinances** that Yahweh gave in the preceding chapters. This signals the end of the book of Numbers. Use the natural form in your language for expressing the conclusion of a story. Alternate translation: [In conclusion, these are the commandments and the ordinances that Yahweh commanded]
Support Reference: End of Story

ULT **are the commandments and the ordinances**
UST are the rules and instructions

The terms **commandments** and **ordinances** mean similar things. Moses is using the two terms together for emphasis. If it would be clearer for your readers, you could express the emphasis with a single phrase. Alternate translation: [all the commands]
Support Reference: Doublet

ULT **in the hand of Moses**
UST through Moses

See how you translated the similar expression in 4:37.
Support Reference: Idiom

ULT **beside the Jordan {at} Jericho**
UST on the {east} side of the Jordan River, across from Jericho

See how you translated the similar expression in 26:3.
Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
ordinances	and instructions
Yahweh	Yahweh
Moses	Moses
Israel	Israelites
Moab	Moab
Jordan	Jordan River
Jericho	Jericho

Appendix: Translation Academy

First, Second or Third Person

Normally a speaker refers to himself as "I" and the person he is speaking to as "you." Sometimes in the Bible a speaker refers to himself or to the person he is speaking to with terms other than "I" or "you."

Description

- First person — This is how a speaker normally refers to himself. English uses the pronouns "I" and "we." (Also: me, my, mine; us, our, ours)
- Second person — This is how a speaker normally refers to the person or people he is speaking to. English uses the pronoun "you." (Also: your, yours)
- Third person — This is how a speaker refers to someone else. English uses the pronouns "he," "she," "it," and "they." (Also: him, his, her, hers, its; them, their, theirs) Noun phrases like "the man" or "the woman" are also third person.

Reason This Is a Translation Issue

Sometimes in the Bible a speaker uses the third person to refer to himself or to the people he is speaking to. Readers might think that the speaker was referring to someone else. They might not understand that he meant "I" or "you."

Examples From the Bible

Sometimes people used the third person instead of "I" or "me" to refer to themselves.

> But David said to Saul, "**Your servant** used to keep **his** father's sheep." (1 Samuel 17:34 ULT)

David referred to himself in the third person as "your servant" and used "his." He was calling himself Saul's servant in order to show his humility before Saul.

> Then Yahweh answered Job out of a fierce storm and said,
> "… Do you have an arm like **God's**? Can you thunder with a voice like **his**?" (Job 40:6, 9 ULT)

God referred to himself in the third person with the words "God's" and "his." He did this to emphasize that he is God, and he is powerful.

Sometimes people use the third person instead of "you" or "your" to refer to the person or people they are speaking to.

> Abraham answered and said, "Look, I have undertaken to speak to my Lord, even though I am only dust and ashes!" (Genesis 18:27 ULT)

Abraham was speaking to the Lord, and referred to the Lord as "My Lord" rather than as "you." He did this to show his humility before God.

> So also my heavenly Father will do to you, if **each of you** does not forgive **his** brother from your heart. (Matthew 18:35 ULT)

After saying "each of you," Jesus used the third person "his" instead of "your."

Translation Strategies

If using the third person to mean "I" or "you" would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider using it. If not, here are some other options.

(1) Use the third person phrase along with the pronoun "I" or "you."
(2) Simply use the first person ("I") or second person ("you") instead of the third person.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Use the third person phrase along with the pronoun "I" or "you."

> But David said to Saul, "**Your servant** used to keep **his** father's sheep." (1 Samuel 17:34)
>
> > But David said to Saul, "**I, your servant**, used to keep **my** father's sheep."

(2) Simply use the first person ("I") or second person ("you") instead of the third person.

> Then Yahweh answered Job out of a fierce storm and said, "… Do you have an arm like **God's**? Can you thunder with a voice like **his**?" (Job 40:6, 9 ULT)
>
> > Then Yahweh answered Job out of a fierce storm and said, "… Do you have an arm like **mine**? Can you thunder with a voice like **mine**?"
>
> So also my heavenly Father will do to you if **each of you** does not forgive **his** brother from your heart. (Matthew 18:35 ULT)
>
> > So also my heavenly Father will do to you if **each of you** does not forgive **your** brother from your heart.

Numbers References:

Numbers 8:10 Numbers 8:11 Numbers 8:13 Numbers 10:9 Numbers 10:10 Numbers 10:29 Numbers 11:11 Numbers 11:23 Numbers 12:6 Numbers 12:8 Numbers 14:17 Numbers 14:18 Numbers 14:21 Numbers 15:3 Numbers 15:4 Numbers 15:4 Numbers 15:7 Numbers 15:8 Numbers 15:9 Numbers 15:10 Numbers 15:13 Numbers 15:14 Numbers 15:15 Numbers 15:19 Numbers 15:21 Numbers 15:22 Numbers 15:23 Numbers 15:25 Numbers 15:28 Numbers 15:30 Numbers 15:31 Numbers 15:38 Numbers 15:39 Numbers 15:40 Numbers 26:4 Numbers 27:11 Numbers 29:2 Numbers 31:28 Numbers 31:29 Numbers 32:5 Numbers 32:12 Numbers 32:25 Numbers 36:2

Abstract Nouns

Description

Abstract nouns are nouns that refer to attitudes, qualities, events, or situations. These are things that cannot be seen or touched in a physical sense, such as happiness, weight, unity, friendship, health, and reason. This is a translation issue because some languages may express a certain idea with an abstract noun, while others would need a different way to express it.

Remember that nouns are words that refer to a person, place, thing, or idea. Abstract nouns are the nouns that refer to ideas. These can be attitudes, qualities, events, situations, or even relationships between those ideas. These are things that cannot be seen or touched in a physical sense, such as joy, peace, creation, goodness, contentment, justice, truth, freedom, vengeance, slowness, length, weight, and many, many more.

Some languages, such as Biblical Greek and English, use abstract nouns a lot. They provide a way of giving names to actions or qualities. With names, people who speak these languages can talk about the concepts as though they were things. For example, in languages that use abstract nouns, people can say, "I believe in the forgiveness of sin." But some languages do not use abstract nouns very much. In these languages, speakers may not have the two abstract nouns "forgiveness" and "sin," but they would express the same meaning in other ways. For example, they would express, "I believe that God is willing to forgive people after they have sinned," by using verb phrases instead of nouns for those ideas.

Reason This Is a Translation Issue

The Bible that you translate from may use abstract nouns to express certain ideas. Your language might not use abstract nouns for some of those ideas. Instead, it might use phrases to express those ideas. Those phrases will use other kinds of words such as adjectives, verbs, or adverbs to express the meaning of the abstract noun. For example,

"What is its **weight**?" could be expressed as "How much does it **weigh**?" or "How **heavy** is it?"

Examples From the Bible

> From **childhood** you have known the sacred writings … (2 Timothy 3:15a ULT)

The abstract noun "childhood" refers to when someone was a child.

> But **godliness** with **contentment** is great **gain**. (1 Timothy 6:6 ULT)

The abstract nouns "godliness" and "contentment" refer to being godly and content. The abstract noun "gain" refers to something that benefits or helps someone.

> Today **salvation** has come to this house, because he too is a son of Abraham. (Luke 19:9 ULT)

The abstract noun "salvation" here refers to being saved.

> The Lord does not move slowly concerning his promises, as some consider **slowness** to be (2 Peter 3:9a ULT)

The abstract noun "slowness" refers to the lack of speed with which something is done.

> He will both bring to light the hidden things of darkness and reveal the **purposes** of the heart. (1 Corinthians 4:5b ULT)

The abstract noun "purposes" refers to the things that people want to do and the reasons they want to do them.

Translation Strategies

If an abstract noun would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider using it. If not, here is another option:

(1) Reword the sentence with a phrase that expresses the meaning of the abstract noun. Instead of a noun, the new phrase will use a verb, an adverb, or an adjective to express the idea of the abstract noun.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Reword the sentence with a phrase that expresses the meaning of the abstract noun. Instead of a noun, the new phrase will use a verb, an adverb, or an adjective to express the idea of the abstract noun. Alternative translations are indented below the Scripture example.

> … from **childhood** you have known the sacred writings … (2 Timothy 3:15a ULT)
>
> > Ever since **you were a child** you have known the sacred writings.

But **godliness** with **contentment** is great **gain**. (1 Timothy 6:6 ULT)

> But **being godly** and **content** is very **beneficial**. But we **benefit** greatly when we **are godly** and **content**. But we **benefit** greatly when we **honor and obey God** and when we are **happy with what we have**.

Today **salvation** has come to this house, because he too is a son of Abraham. (Luke 19:9 ULT)

> Today the people in this house **have been saved** … Today God **has saved** the people in this house …

The Lord does not move slowly concerning his promises, as some consider **slowness** to be. (2 Peter 3:9a ULT)

> The Lord does not move slowly concerning his promises, as some consider **moving slowly** to be.

He will bring to light the hidden things of darkness and reveal the **purposes** of the heart. (1 Corinthians 4:5b ULT)

> He will bring to light the hidden things of darkness and reveal **the things that people want to do and the reasons that they want to do them**.

Numbers References:

Numbers 1:53 Numbers 3:7 Numbers 3:10 Numbers 3:26 Numbers 3:31 Numbers 3:32 Numbers 3:36 Numbers 3:36 Numbers 3:46 Numbers 3:48 Numbers 3:49 Numbers 4:4 Numbers 4:7 Numbers 4:16 Numbers 4:16 Numbers 4:19 Numbers 4:23 Numbers 4:24 Numbers 4:26 Numbers 4:27 Numbers 4:27 Numbers 4:28 Numbers 4:30 Numbers 4:31 Numbers 4:32 Numbers 4:33 Numbers 4:35 Numbers 4:47 Numbers 4:49 Numbers 5:6 Numbers 5:7 Numbers 5:8 Numbers 5:8 Numbers 5:12 Numbers 5:15 Numbers 5:18 Numbers 5:18 Numbers 5:19 Numbers 5:24 Numbers 5:25 Numbers 5:29 Numbers 5:31 Numbers 6:4 Numbers 6:5 Numbers 6:7 Numbers 6:7 Numbers 6:8 Numbers 6:9 Numbers 6:9 Numbers 6:9 Numbers 6:11 Numbers 6:12 Numbers 6:12 Numbers 6:13 Numbers 6:19 Numbers 6:21 Numbers 6:21 Numbers 6:26 Numbers 7:5 Numbers 7:5 Numbers 7:7 Numbers 7:8 Numbers 7:9 Numbers 7:10 Numbers 7:11 Numbers 7:84 Numbers 7:88 Numbers 8:4 Numbers 8:11 Numbers 8:12 Numbers 8:19 Numbers 8:19 Numbers 8:21 Numbers 8:22 Numbers 8:24 Numbers 8:25 Numbers 8:26 Numbers 10:2 Numbers 10:8 Numbers 10:10 Numbers 10:10 Numbers 10:12 Numbers 10:28 Numbers 11:1 Numbers 11:4 Numbers 11:11 Numbers 11:11 Numbers 11:15 Numbers 11:15 Numbers 11:20 Numbers 14:10 Numbers 14:13 Numbers 14:17 Numbers 14:18 Numbers 14:18 Numbers 14:18 Numbers 14:19 Numbers 14:19 Numbers 14:21 Numbers 14:22 Numbers 14:34 Numbers 14:34 Numbers 15:15 Numbers 15:25 Numbers 15:28 Numbers 15:35 Numbers 16:9 Numbers 16:10 Numbers 16:19 Numbers 16:29 Numbers 16:29 Numbers 16:38 Numbers 16:42 Numbers 16:46 Numbers 16:47 Numbers 17:10 Numbers 17:10 Numbers 17:10 Numbers 18:1 Numbers 18:1 Numbers 18:3 Numbers 18:4 Numbers 18:4 Numbers 18:5 Numbers 18:5 Numbers 18:6 Numbers 18:7 Numbers 18:7 Numbers 18:8 Numbers 18:8 Numbers 18:8 Numbers 18:9 Numbers 18:9 Numbers 18:11 Numbers 18:11 Numbers 18:14 Numbers 18:16 Numbers 18:17 Numbers 18:18 Numbers 18:19 Numbers 18:19 Numbers 18:19 Numbers 18:20 Numbers 18:21 Numbers 18:21 Numbers 18:22 Numbers 18:23 Numbers 18:23 Numbers 18:23 Numbers 18:24 Numbers 18:26 Numbers 18:26 Numbers 18:27 Numbers 18:28 Numbers 18:29 Numbers 18:31 Numbers 18:31 Numbers 18:32 Numbers 19:6 Numbers 19:9 Numbers 19:9 Numbers 19:13 Numbers 19:20 Numbers 19:21 Numbers 19:21 Numbers 20:6 Numbers 20:14 Numbers 21:29 Numbers 21:33 Numbers 22:18 Numbers 23:10 Numbers 23:21 Numbers 23:21 Numbers 23:23 Numbers 23:23 Numbers 24:1 Numbers 24:7 Numbers 24:11 Numbers 24:13 Numbers 24:16 Numbers 24:18 Numbers 24:18 Numbers 24:20 Numbers 24:24 Numbers 25:12 Numbers 25:13 Numbers 25:18 Numbers 26:53 Numbers 27:4 Numbers 27:5 Numbers 27:7 Numbers 27:11 Numbers 27:14 Numbers 27:20 Numbers 27:21 Numbers 28:6 Numbers 28:18 Numbers 28:22 Numbers 28:25 Numbers 28:30 Numbers 29:1 Numbers 29:5 Numbers 29:6 Numbers 31:16 Numbers 31:23 Numbers 32:5 Numbers 32:19 Numbers 32:32 Numbers 33:1 Numbers 33:4 Numbers 34:2 Numbers 35:11 Numbers 35:12 Numbers 35:22 Numbers 35:29 Numbers 36:2

Active or Passive

Some languages use both active and passive sentences. In active sentences, the subject does the action. In passive sentences, the subject is the one that receives the action. Here are some examples with their subjects bolded:

- Active: **My father** built the house in 2010.
- Passive: **The house** was built in 2010.

Translators whose languages do not use passive sentences will need to know how they can translate passive sentences that they find in the Bible. Other translators will need to decide when to use a passive sentence and when to use the active form.

Description

Some languages have both active and passive forms of sentences.

- In the active form, the subject does the action and is always mentioned.
- In the passive form, the action is done to the subject, and the one who does the action is not always mentioned.

In the examples of active and passive sentences below, we have bolded the subject.

- active: **My father** built the house in 2010.
- passive: **The house** was built by my father in 2010.
- passive: **The house** was built in 2010. (This does not tell who did the action.)

Reasons This Is a Translation Issue

All languages use active forms. Some languages use passive forms, and some do not. Some languages use passive forms only for certain purposes, and the passive form is not used for the same purposes in all of the languages that use it.

Purposes for the Passive

- The speaker is talking about the person or thing the action was done to, not about the person who did the action.
- The speaker does not want to tell who did the action.
- The speaker does not know who did the action.

Translation Principles Regarding the Passive

- Translators whose language does not use passive forms will need to find another way to express the idea.
- Translators whose language has passive forms will need to understand why the passive is used in a particular sentence in the Bible and decide whether or not to use a passive form for that purpose in his translation of the sentence.

Examples From the Bible

> Then their shooters shot at your soldiers from off the wall, and some of the king's servants **were killed**, and your servant Uriah the Hittite **was killed** too. (2 Samuel 11:24 ULT)

This means that the enemy's shooters shot and killed some of the king's servants, including Uriah. The point is what happened to the king's servants and Uriah, not who shot them. The purpose of the passive form here is to keep the focus on the king's servants and Uriah.

> When the men of the city arose early in the morning, and see, the altar of Baal **was torn down**. (Judges 6:28a ULT)

The men of the town saw what had happened to the altar of Baal, but they did not know who broke it down. The purpose of the passive form here is to communicate this event from the perspective of the men of the town.

> It would be better for him if a millstone **were put** around his neck and he **were thrown** into the sea. (Luke 17:2a ULT)

This describes a situation in which a person ends up in the sea with a millstone around his neck. The purpose of the passive form here is to keep the focus on what happens to this person. Who does these things to the person is not important.

Translation Strategies

If your language would use a passive form for the same purpose as in the passage that you are translating, then use a passive form. If you decide that it is better to translate without a passive form, here are some strategies that you might consider.

(1) Use the same verb in an active sentence and tell who or what did the action. If you do this, try to keep the focus on the person receiving the action.
(2) Use the same verb in an active sentence, and do not tell who or what did the action. Instead, use a generic expression like “they” or “people” or “someone.”
(3) Use a different verb.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Use the same verb in an active sentence and tell who did the action. If you do this, try to keep the focus on the person receiving the action.

> A loaf of bread **was given** him every day from the street of the bakers. (Jeremiah 37:21b ULT)
>
> > **The king’s servants gave** Jeremiah a loaf of bread every day from the street of the bakers.

(2) Use the same verb in an active sentence, and do not tell who did the action. Instead, use a generic expression like “they” or “people” or “someone.”

> It would be better for him if a millstone **were put** around his neck and he **were thrown** into the sea. (Luke 17:2a ULT)
>
> > It would be better for him if **they were to put** a millstone around his neck and **throw** him into the sea.
> > It would be better for him if **someone were to put** a heavy stone around his neck and **throw** him into the sea.

(3) Use a different verb in an active sentence.

> A loaf of bread **was given** him every day from the street of the bakers. (Jeremiah 37:21 ULT)
>
> > He **received** a loaf of bread every day from the street of the bakers.

Numbers References:

Numbers 1:16 Numbers 1:17 Numbers 1:22
Numbers 1:45 Numbers 1:46 Numbers 1:47
Numbers 1:51 Numbers 2:4 Numbers 2:9
Numbers 2:32 Numbers 3:3 Numbers 3:9
Numbers 3:16 Numbers 3:22 Numbers 3:39
Numbers 3:43 Numbers 4:26 Numbers 4:36
Numbers 4:37 Numbers 4:38 Numbers 4:42
Numbers 4:46 Numbers 4:48 Numbers 4:49
Numbers 5:8 Numbers 5:13 Numbers 5:13
Numbers 5:13 Numbers 5:13 Numbers 5:14
Numbers 5:15 Numbers 5:20 Numbers 5:27
Numbers 5:28 Numbers 5:28 Numbers 5:29
Numbers 6:4 Numbers 6:12 Numbers 6:15
Numbers 6:15 Numbers 6:19 Numbers 6:20
Numbers 7:2 Numbers 7:10 Numbers 7:13
Numbers 7:14 Numbers 7:84 Numbers 7:86
Numbers 7:88 Numbers 8:8 Numbers 8:11
Numbers 8:13 Numbers 8:16 Numbers 9:7
Numbers 9:13 Numbers 9:17 Numbers 9:21
Numbers 9:22 Numbers 10:9 Numbers 10:11
Numbers 10:17 Numbers 11:22 Numbers
11:26 Numbers 11:26 Numbers 11:30
Numbers 11:33 Numbers 12:12 Numbers
12:14 Numbers 12:14 Numbers 12:14
Numbers 12:15 Numbers 12:15 Numbers
13:22 Numbers 13:28 Numbers 14:21
Numbers 14:29 Numbers 14:42 Numbers 15:4
Numbers 15:6 Numbers 15:9 Numbers 15:11
Numbers 15:24 Numbers 15:25 Numbers
15:26 Numbers 15:28 Numbers 15:30
Numbers 15:31 Numbers 15:34 Numbers
15:34 Numbers 15:35 Numbers 16:2 Numbers
16:24 Numbers 16:27 Numbers 16:31
Numbers 16:39 Numbers 16:48 Numbers
16:50 Numbers 18:2 Numbers 18:4 Numbers
18:6 Numbers 18:7 Numbers 18:16 Numbers
18:27 Numbers 18:30 Numbers 19:13
Numbers 19:13 Numbers 19:15 Numbers
19:20 Numbers 19:20 Numbers 20:1 Numbers
20:24 Numbers 20:26 Numbers 21:8 Numbers
21:14 Numbers 21:27 Numbers 22:6 Numbers
22:6 Numbers 22:12 Numbers 22:16 Numbers
22:23 Numbers 23:9 Numbers 23:23 Numbers
24:3 Numbers 24:4 Numbers 24:6 Numbers
24:7 Numbers 24:9 Numbers 24:9 Numbers
24:21 Numbers 25:3 Numbers 25:5 Numbers
25:8 Numbers 25:14 Numbers 25:15 Numbers
25:18 Numbers 26:7 Numbers 26:9 Numbers
26:53 Numbers 26:54 Numbers 26:55
Numbers 26:56 Numbers 26:60 Numbers
26:62 Numbers 26:62 Numbers 26:65
Numbers 27:4 Numbers 27:13 Numbers 27:13
Numbers 28:5 Numbers 28:6 Numbers 28:15
Numbers 28:17 Numbers 29:3 Numbers 30:9
Numbers 31:2 Numbers 31:5 Numbers 31:23
Numbers 32:5 Numbers 32:17 Numbers 32:20
Numbers 32:22 Numbers 32:30 Numbers
32:32 Numbers 32:38 Numbers 35:16
Numbers 35:33 Numbers 35:33 Numbers 36:2
Numbers 36:3

Apostrophe

Description

An apostrophe is a figure of speech in which a speaker turns his attention away from his listeners and speaks to someone or something that he knows cannot hear him. He does this to tell his listeners his message or feelings about that person or thing in a very strong way.

Reason This Is a Translation Issue

Many languages do not use apostrophe, and readers could be confused by it. They may wonder who the speaker is talking to, or think that the speaker is crazy to talk to things or people who cannot hear.

Examples from the Bible

> Mountains of Gilboa, let there not be dew or rain on you. (2 Samuel 1:21a ULT)

King Saul was killed on Mount Gilboa, and David sang a sad song about it. By telling these mountains that he wanted them to have no dew or rain, he showed how sad he was.

> Jerusalem, Jerusalem, who kills the prophets and stones those sent to you. (Luke 13:34a ULT)

Jesus was expressing his feelings for the people of Jerusalem in front of his disciples and a group of Pharisees. By speaking directly to Jerusalem as though its people could hear him, Jesus showed how deeply he cared about them.

> He cried against the altar by the word of Yahweh: "**Altar**, **altar**! This is what Yahweh says, 'See, … on you they will burn human bones.'" (1 Kings 13:2 ULT)

The man of God spoke as if the altar could hear him, but he really wanted the king, who was standing there, to hear him.

Translation Strategies

If apostrophe would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider using it. But if this way of speaking would be confusing to your people, let the speaker continue speaking to the people that are listening to him as he tells **them** his message or feelings about the people or thing that cannot hear him. See the example below.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

> He cried against the altar by the word of Yahweh: "**Altar**, **altar**! This is what Yahweh says, 'See, … on you they will burn human bones.'" (1 Kings 13:2 ULT)
>
> > He said this about the altar: "This is what Yahweh says **about this altar.** 'See, … they will burn people's bones on **it**.'"
>
> **Mountains of Gilboa**, let there not be dew or rain on **you.** (2 Samuel 1:21a ULT)
>
> > **As for these mountains of Gilboa**, let there not be dew or rain on **them**.

Numbers References:

Numbers 21:17 Numbers 21:29

Statements — Other Uses

Description

Normally statements are used to give information. Sometimes they are used in the Bible for other functions.

Reason This Is a Translation Issue

Some languages would not use a statement for some of the functions that statements are used for in the Bible.

Examples From the Bible

Statements are normally used to give **information**. All of the sentences in John 1:6-8 below are statements, and their function is to give information.

> There was a man who was sent from God, whose name was John. He came as a witness in order to testify about the light, that all might believe through him. John was not the light, but came that he might testify about the light. (John 1:6-8 ULT)

A statement can also be used as a **command** to tell someone what to do. In the examples below, the high priest used statements with the verb "will" to tell people what to do.

> He commanded them, saying, "This is what you **must** do. A third of you who come on the Sabbath **will** keep watch over the king's house, and a third **will** be at the Sur Gate, and a third at the gate behind the guardhouse." (2 Kings 11:5 ULT)

A statement can also be used to give **instructions**. The speaker below was not just telling Joseph about something Joseph would do in the future; he was telling Joseph what he needed to do.

> She will give birth to a son, and **you will call his name Jesus**, for he will save his people from their sins. (Matthew 1:21 ULT)

A statement can also be used to make a **request**. The man with leprosy was not just saying what Jesus was able to do. He was also asking Jesus to heal him.

> Behold, a leper came to him and bowed before him, saying, "Lord, if you are willing, **you are able to make me clean**." (Matthew 8:2 ULT)

A statement can also be used to **perform** something. By telling Adam that the ground was cursed because of him, God actually cursed it.

> … **cursed is the ground** because of you; (Genesis 3:17b ULT)

By telling a man that his sins were forgiven, **Jesus forgave** the man's sins.

> When Jesus saw their faith, he said to the paralyzed man, "**Son, your sins are forgiven**." (Mark 2:5 ULT)

Translation Strategies

(1) If the function of a statement would not be understood correctly in your language, **use a sentence type** that would express that function.
(2) If the function of a statement would not be understood correctly in your language, **add a sentence type** that would express that function.
(3) If the function of a statement would not be understood correctly in your language, **use a verb form** that would express that function.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) If the function of a statement would not be understood correctly in your language, use a sentence type that would express that function.

> She will give birth to a son, and **you will call his name Jesus**, for he will save his people from their sins. (Matthew 1:21 ULT)

The phrase “you will call his name Jesus” is an instruction. It can be translated using the sentence type of a normal instruction.

> She will give birth to a son. **Name him Jesus**, because he will save his people from their sins.

(2) If the function of a statement would not be understood correctly in your language, add a sentence type that would express that function.

> Lord, if you are willing, **you are able to make me clean**. (Matthew 8:2 ULT)

The function of “you are able” is to make a request. In addition to the statement, a request can be added.

> Lord, you are able to make me clean. If you are willing, **please do so**.
> OR:
> Lord, if you are willing, **please heal me**. I know that you are able to do so.

(3) If the function of a statement would not be understood correctly in your language, use a verb form that would express that function.

> She will give birth to a son, and **you will call his name Jesus**, for he will save his people from their sins. (Matthew 1:21 ULT)
>
> > She will give birth to a son, and **you must call his name Jesus**, for he will save his people from their sins.
>
> Son, your sins are forgiven. (Mark 2:5 ULT)
>
> > Son, I forgive your sins.
> > OR:
> > Son, God hereby forgives your sins.

Numbers References:

Numbers 6:20 Numbers 9:10 Numbers 9:20 Numbers 9:21

Distinguishing Versus Informing or Reminding

Description

In some languages, phrases that modify a noun can be used with the noun for two different purposes. They can either (1) distinguish the noun from other similar items, or (2) they can give more information about the noun. That information could be new to the reader, or a reminder about something the reader might already know. Other languages use modifying phrases with a noun only for distinguishing the noun from other similar things. When people who speak these languages hear a modifying phrase along with a noun, they assume that its function is to distinguish one item from another similar item.

When the phrase that modifies a noun is a relative clause (a phrase that starts with a word such as “who” or“which”), some languages use a comma to mark the difference between (1) making a distinction between similar items and (2) giving more information about an item. Without the comma, the sentence below communicates that the added phrase is making a distinction:

- Mary gave some of the food to **her sister who was very thankful**.
  - If her sister was usually thankful, the phrase “who was thankful” could distinguish this sister of Mary’s from another sister who was not usually thankful.

With the comma, the phrase is giving more information:

- Mary gave some of the food to **her sister, who was very thankful**.
  - This same phrase can be used to give us more information about Mary’s sister. It tells us about how Mary’s sister responded when Mary gave her the food. In this case it does not distinguish one sister from another sister.

Reasons This Is a Translation Issue

- Many source languages of the Bible use phrases that modify a noun both for distinguishing the noun from another similar item and also for giving more information about the noun. You (the translator) must be careful to understand which meaning the author intended in each case.
- Some languages use phrases that modify a noun only for distinguishing the noun from another similar item. When translating a phrase that is used for giving more information, translators who speak these languages will need to separate the phrase from the noun. Otherwise, people who read it or hear it will think that the phrase is meant to distinguish the noun from other similar items.

Examples From the Bible

Examples of words and phrases that are used to distinguish one item from other possible items:

(These usually do not cause any problem in translation.)

> The curtain is to separate **the holy place** from **the most holy place**. (Exodus 26:33b ULT)

The words "holy" and "most holy" distinguish two different places from each other and from any other place.

> A foolish son is a grief to his father, and bitterness to **the woman who bore him**. (Proverbs 17:25 ULT)

The phrase "who bore him" distinguishes which woman the son is bitterness to. He is not bitterness to all women, but to his mother.

Examples of words and phrases that are used to give added information or a reminder about an item:

(These are a translation issue for languages that do not use these.)

> … for **your righteous judgments** are good. (Psalm 119:39b ULT)

The word "righteous" simply reminds us that God's judgments are righteous. It does not distinguish his righteous judgments from his unrighteous judgments, because all of his judgments are righteous.

> You must surely open your hand to your brother, **to your needy and to your poor** in your land. (Deuteronomy 15:11 ULT)

The phrases "to your needy and to your poor" give further information about "your brother." They do not refer to a separate group of people.

> How can Sarah, **who is 90 years old**, bear a son? (Genesis 17:17b ULT)

The phrase "who is 90 years old" is a reminder of Sarah's age. It tells why Abraham was asking the question. He did not expect that a woman who was that old could bear a child. He was not distinguishing one woman named Sarah from another woman named Sarah who was a different age.

> I will wipe away mankind **whom I have created** from the surface of the earth. (Genesis 6:7 ULT)

The phrase "whom I have created" is a reminder of the relationship between God and mankind. It is the reason God had the right to wipe away mankind. There is not another mankind that God did not create.

> I hate those who serve **worthless** idols (Psalm 31:6 ULT)

By saying "worthless idols," David was commenting about all idols and giving his reason for hating those who serve them. He was not distinguishing worthless idols from valuable idols.

Translation Strategies

If readers would understand the purpose of a phrase with a noun, then consider keeping the phrase and the noun together. For languages that use words or phrases with a noun only to distinguish one item from another, here are

some strategies for translating phrases that are used to inform or remind.

(1) Put the information in another part of the sentence and add words that show its purpose.
(2) Use one of your language's ways for expressing that this is just added information. It may be by adding a small word, or by changing the way the voice sounds. Sometimes changes in the voice can be shown with punctuation marks, such as parentheses or commas.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Put the information in another part of the sentence and add words that show its purpose.

> I hate those who serve **worthless** idols (Psalm 31:6 ULT)
>
> > **Because idols are worthless**, I hate those who serve them.
>
> … for your **righteous** judgments are good. (Psalm 119:39b ULT)
>
> > … for your judgments are good **because they are righteous**.
>
> Can Sarah, **who is 90 years old**, bear a son? (Genesis 17:17b ULT)
>
> > Can Sarah bear a son **even when she is 90 years old**?
>
> > You must surely open your hand to your brother, **to your needy and to your poor** in your land. (Deuteronomy 15:11 ULT)

> > You must surely open your hand to any of **your needy and poor brothers** in your land.

(2) Use one of your language's ways for expressing that this is just added information.

> You are my Son, **whom I love**. I am pleased with you. (Luke 3:22 ULT)
>
> > You are my Son. **I love you** and I am pleased with you.
>
> > **Receiving my love**, you are my Son. I am pleased with you.

> You must surely open your hand to your brother, **to your needy and to your poor** in your land. (Deuteronomy 15:11 ULT)

> > You must surely open your hand to your brother **who is needy and poor** in your land.

Numbers References:

Numbers 3:3 Numbers 3:46 Numbers 17:8 Numbers 26:1 Numbers 32:13

Doublet

Description

We are using the word "doublet" to refer to two words or phrases that are used together and either mean the same thing or mean very close to the same thing. Often they are joined with the word "and." Unlike Hendiadys, in which one of the words modifies the other, in a doublet the two words or phrases are equal and are used to emphasize or intensify the one idea that is expressed by the two words or phrases.

A very similar issue is the repetition of the same word or phrase for emphasis, usually with no other words between them. Because these figures of speech are so similar and have the same effect, we will treat them here together.

Reason This Is a Translation Issue

In some languages people do not use doublets. Or they may use doublets, but only in certain situations, so a doublet might not make sense in their language in some verses. People might think that the verse is describing two ideas or actions, when it is only describing one. In this case, translators may need to find some other way to express the meaning expressed by the doublet.

Examples From the Bible

> He has one people **scattered** and **dispersed** among the peoples (Esther 3:8 ULT)

The bolded words mean the same thing. Together they mean the people were spread out.

> He attacked two men **more righteous** and **better** than himself. (1 Kings 2:32b ULT)

This means that they were "much more righteous" than he was.

> You have decided to prepare **false** and **deceptive** words. (Daniel 2:9b ULT)

This means that they had decided to lie, which is another way of saying that they intended to deceive people.

> … like of a lamb **without blemish** and **without spot**. (1 Peter 1:19b ULT)

This means that he was like a lamb that did not have any defect—not even one.

> Then they approached {and} woke him up, saying, **"Master! Master!** We are perishing!" (Luke 8:24 ULT)

The repetition of "Master" means that the disciples called to Jesus urgently and continually.

Translation Strategies

If a doublet would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider using it. If not, consider these strategies.

(1) Translate only one of the words or phrases.
(2) If the doublet is used to intensify the meaning, translate one of the words or phrases and add a word that intensifies it such as "very" or "great" or "many."
(3) If the doublet is used to intensify or emphasize the meaning, use one of your language's ways of doing that.

Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Translate only one of the words.

> You have decided to prepare **false** and **deceptive** words. (Daniel 2:9b ULT)
>
> > "You have decided to prepare **false** things to say."

(2) If the doublet is used to intensify the meaning, translate one of the words and add a word that intensifies it such as "very" or "great" or "many."

> He has one people **scattered** and **dispersed** among the peoples (Esther 3:8 ULT)
>
> > "He has one people **very spread out**."

(3) If the doublet is used to intensify or emphasize the meaning, use one of your language's ways of doing that.

> … like a lamb **without blemish** and **without spot**. (1 Peter 1:19b ULT)
>
> - English can emphasize this with "any" and "at all."
>
> > "… like a lamb **without any blemish at all**."

> Then they approached {and} woke him up, saying, **"Master! Master!** We are perishing!" (Luke 8:24 ULT)
>
> > Then they approached {and} woke him up, **urgently shouting, "Master!** We are perishing!"

Numbers References:

Numbers 4:19 Numbers 14:5 Numbers 18:20 Numbers 22:31 Numbers 24:9 Numbers 30:11 Numbers 32:1 Numbers 36:13

Ellipsis

Description

An ellipsis[^1] occurs when a speaker or writer leaves out one or more words that normally should be in the sentence. The speaker or writer does this because he knows that the hearer or reader will understand the meaning of the sentence and supply the words in his mind when he hears or reads the words that are there. For example:

> So the wicked will not stand in the judgment, **nor sinners in the assembly of the righteous**. (Psalm 1:5 ULT)

There is ellipsis in the second part because "nor sinners in the assembly of the righteous" is not a complete sentence. The speaker assumes that the hearer will understand what it is that sinners will not do in the assembly of the righteous by filling in the action from the previous clause. With the action filled in, the complete sentence would read:

> > So the wicked will not stand in the judgment, nor **will** sinners **stand** in the assembly of the righteous.

[^1]: English has a punctuation symbol which is also called an ellipsis. It is a series of three dots (…) used to indicate an intentional omission of a word, phrase, sentence or more from text without altering its original meaning. This translationAcademy article is not about the punctuation mark, but about the concept of omission of words that normally should be in the sentence.

Two Types of Ellipsis

1. A Relative Ellipsis happens when the reader has to supply the omitted word or words from the context. Usually the word is in the previous sentence, as in the example above.

2. An Absolute Ellipsis happens when the omitted word or words are not in the context, but the phrases are common enough in the language that the reader is expected to supply what is missing from this common usage or from the nature of the situation.

Reason This Is a Translation Issue

Readers who see incomplete sentences or phrases may not know that there is information missing that the writer expects them to fill in. Or readers may understand that there is information missing, but they may not know what information is missing because they do not know the original biblical language, culture, or situation as the original readers did. In this case, they may fill in the wrong information. Or readers may misunderstand the ellipsis if they do not use ellipsis in the same way in their language.

Examples From the Bible

Relative Ellipsis

> He makes Lebanon skip like a calf **and Sirion like a young ox**. (Psalm 29:6 ULT)

The writer wants his words to be few and to make good poetry. The full sentence with the information filled in would be:

> He makes Lebanon skip like a calf and **he makes** Sirion **skip** like a young ox.
>
> Watch carefully, therefore, how you walk —**not as unwise but as wise**. (Ephesians 5:15b ULT)

The information that the reader must understand in the second parts of these sentences can be filled in from the first parts:

> Watch carefully, therefore, how you walk—**walk** not as unwise but **walk** as wise,

Absolute Ellipsis

> Then when he had come near, he asked him, “What do you want me to do for you?” And so he said, “Lord, **that I might recover my sight**.” (Luke 18:40b-41 ULT)

It seems that the man answered in an incomplete sentence because he wanted to be polite and not directly ask Jesus for healing. He knew that Jesus would understand that the only way he could receive his sight would be for Jesus to heal him. The complete sentence would be:

> “Lord, **I want you to heal me so** that I might receive my sight.”
>
> To Titus, a true son in our common faith. Grace and peace from God the Father and Christ Jesus our Savior. (Titus 1:4 ULT)

The writer assumes that the reader will recognize this common form of a blessing or wish, so he does not need to include the full sentence, which would be:

> To Titus, a true son in our common faith. **May you receive** grace and peace from God the Father and Christ Jesus our Savior.

Translation Strategies

If ellipsis would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider using it. If not, here is another option:

(1) Add the missing words to the incomplete phrase or sentence.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Add the missing words to the incomplete phrase or sentence.

> So the wicked will not stand in the judgment, nor **sinners in the assembly** of the righteous. (Psalm 1:5 ULT)
>
> > So the wicked will not stand in the judgment, and **sinners will not stand in the assembly** of the righteous.
>
> Then when he had come near, he asked him, “What do you want me to do for you?” And so he said, “Lord, **that I might recover my sight**.” (Luke 18:40b-41 ULT)
>
> > Then when the man was near, Jesus asked him, “What do you want me to do for you?” He said, “Lord, **I want you to heal me** that I might receive my sight.”
>
> He makes Lebanon skip like a calf **and Sirion like a young ox**. (Psalm 29:6 ULT)
>
> > He makes Lebanon skip like a calf, and **he makes** Sirion **skip** like a young ox.

Numbers References:

Numbers 1:17 Numbers 3:32 Numbers 3:46 Numbers 4:4 Numbers 4:49 Numbers 6:16 Numbers 7:2 Numbers 7:5 Numbers 7:9 Numbers 7:9 Numbers 7:13 Numbers 7:14 Numbers 7:18 Numbers 7:24 Numbers 7:72 Numbers 7:85 Numbers 7:85 Numbers 7:86 Numbers 7:86 Numbers 9:5 Numbers 9:21 Numbers 10:4 Numbers 10:11 Numbers 11:8 Numbers 11:12 Numbers 11:14 Numbers 11:17 Numbers 11:19 Numbers 11:21 Numbers 11:25 Numbers 11:31 Numbers 12:7 Numbers 13:23 Numbers 14:16 Numbers 14:19 Numbers 14:20 Numbers 14:23 Numbers 14:27 Numbers 16:5 Numbers 16:5 Numbers 16:29 Numbers 16:47 Numbers 20:11 Numbers 21:3 Numbers 21:8 Numbers 21:14 Numbers 21:15 Numbers 21:16 Numbers 21:18 Numbers 21:19 Numbers 21:20 Numbers 21:23 Numbers 21:35 Numbers 22:18 Numbers 22:19 Numbers 22:24 Numbers 22:40 Numbers 23:10 Numbers 23:19 Numbers 23:19 Numbers 24:5 Numbers 24:8 Numbers 24:9 Numbers 25:5 Numbers 25:7 Numbers 26:4 Numbers 26:5 Numbers 26:19 Numbers 26:61 Numbers 28:8 Numbers 28:9 Numbers 29:17 Numbers 31:32 Numbers 31:36 Numbers 35:7 Numbers 35:23 Numbers 36:1

Euphemism

Description

A euphemism is a mild or polite way of referring to something that is unpleasant, embarrassing, or socially unacceptable, such as death or activities usually done in private.

> … they found Saul and his sons **fallen** on Mount Gilboa. (1 Chronicles 10:8b ULT)

This means that Saul and his sons “were dead.” It is a euphemism because the important thing was not that Saul and his sons had fallen but that they were dead. Sometimes people do not like to speak directly about death because it is unpleasant.

Reason This Is a Translation Issue

Different languages use different euphemisms. If the target language does not use the same euphemism as in the source language, readers may not understand what it means and they may think that the writer means only what the words literally say.

Examples From the Bible

> … where there was a cave. Saul went inside to **cover his feet**. (1 Samuel 24:3b ULT)

The original hearers would have understood that Saul went into the cave to use it as a toilet, but the writer wanted to avoid offending or distracting them, so **he did not say specifically** what Saul did or what he left in the cave.

> But Mary said to the angel, “How will this be, since I have not **known a man**?” (Luke 1:34 ULT)

In order **to be polite**, Mary uses a euphemism to say that she has never had sexual intercourse with a man.

Translation Strategies

If euphemism would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider using it. If not, here are other options:

(1) Use a euphemism from your own culture.
(2) State the information plainly without a euphemism if it would not be offensive.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Use a euphemism from your own culture.

> … where there was a cave. Saul went inside to **cover his feet**. (1 Samuel 24:3b ULT) — Some languages might use euphemisms like these:
>
> > "… where there was a cave. Saul went into the cave to **dig a hole**"
> >
> > "… where there was a cave. Saul went into the cave to **have some time alone**"
>
> But Mary said to the angel, "How will this be, since I have not **known a man**?" (Luke 1:34 ULT)
>
> > But Mary said to the angel, "How will this be, since I have not **slept with a man**?"

(2) State the information plainly without a euphemism if it would not be offensive.

> They found Saul and his sons **fallen** on Mount Gilboa. (1 Chronicles 10:8b ULT)
>
> > "They found Saul and his sons **dead** on Mount Gilboa."

Numbers References:

Numbers 5:13 Numbers 5:19 Numbers 5:20 Numbers 5:21 Numbers 16:29 Numbers 16:45 Numbers 20:3 Numbers 20:24 Numbers 20:26 Numbers 20:29 Numbers 27:13 Numbers 31:2 Numbers 31:17 Numbers 31:18 Numbers 31:35

Order of Events

Description

In the Bible, events are not always told in the order in which they occurred. Sometimes the author wanted to discuss something that happened at an earlier time than the event that he just talked about. This can be confusing to the reader.

Reason This Is a Translation Issue

Readers might think that the events happened in the order that they are told. It is important to help them understand the correct order of events.

Examples From the Bible

> He even added this to them all: he locked John up in prison. Now it came about, when all the people were baptized, Jesus also was baptized. (Luke 3:20-21 ULT)

This could sound like John baptized Jesus after John was locked up in prison, but John baptized Jesus before John was locked up in prison.

> Just as Joshua had said to the people, the seven priests carrying seven trumpets of rams' horns before Yahweh went forward and blew the trumpets, and the ark of the covenant of Yahweh followed after them. But Joshua commanded the people, saying, "Do not shout nor let your voice be heard, nor let any word leave your mouth until the day I tell you to shout. Then you must shout." (Joshua 6:8,10 ULT)

This could sound like Joshua gave the order not to shout after the army had already started their march, but he had given that order before they started marching.

> Who is worthy to open the scroll and break its seals? (Revelation 5:2b ULT)

This sounds like a person must first open the scroll and then break its seals, but the seals

that lock the scroll must be broken before the scroll can be unrolled.

Translation Strategies

(1) If your language uses phrases or time words to show that an event happened before one that was already mentioned, consider using one of them.
(2) If your language uses verb tense or aspect to show that an event happened before one that was already mentioned, consider using that. (See the section on "Aspect" of Verbs.)
(3) If your language prefers to tell events in the order that they occurred, consider reordering the events so they they are in that order. This may require putting two or more verses together (like 5-6). (See Verse Bridges.)

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) If your language uses phrases, time words or tenses to show that an event happened before the one just mentioned, consider using one of them.

> 20 he even added this to them all: he locked John up in prison. Now it came about, when all the people were baptized, Jesus also was baptized. (Luke 3:20-21 ULT)
>
> > 20 But then Herod … had John locked up in prison. 21 **Before John was put in prison,** while all the people were being baptized by John, Jesus also was baptized.
>
> Who is worthy to open the scroll and break its seals? (Revelation 5:2b ULT)
>
> > Who is worthy to open the scroll **after** breaking its seals?

(2) If your language uses verb tense or aspect to show that an event happened before one that was already mentioned, consider using that.

> Just as Joshua had said to the people, the seven priests carrying seven trumpets of rams' horns before Yahweh went forward and blew the trumpets, But Joshua commanded the people, saying, "Do not shout nor let your voice be heard, nor let any word leave your mouth until the day I tell you to shout. Then you must shout." (Joshua 6:8,10 ULT)
>
> > 8 Just as Joshua had said to the people, the seven priests carried the seven trumpets of rams' horns before Yahweh, as they advanced, they gave a blast on the trumpets 10 But Joshua **had commanded** the people, saying, "Do not shout. No sound must leave your mouths until the day I tell you to shout. Only then must you shout."

(3) If your language prefers to tell events in the order that they occur, consider reordering the events. This may require putting two or more verses together (like 5-6).

> 8 Just as Joshua had said to the people, the seven priests carrying seven trumpets of rams' horns before Yahweh went forward and blew the trumpets, But Joshua commanded the people, saying, "Do not shout nor let your voice be heard, nor let any word leave your mouth until the day I tell you to shout. Then you must shout." (Joshua 6:8,10 ULT)
>
> > 8,10 Joshua commanded the people, saying, "Do not shout. No sound must leave your mouths until the day I tell you to shout. Only then must you shout." Then just as Joshua had said to the people, the seven priests carried the seven trumpets of rams horns before Yahweh, as they advanced, they gave a blast on the trumpets…
>
> Who is worthy to open the scroll and break its seals? (Revelation 5:2b ULT)
>
> > Who is worthy to break the seals and open the scroll?

You may also want to watch the video at https://ufw.io/figs_events.

Numbers References:

Numbers 1:48 Numbers 7:1 Numbers 7:2 Numbers 9:1 Numbers 9:15 Numbers 10:11 Numbers 11:10 Numbers 13:17 Numbers 13:22 Numbers 15:1 Numbers 15:32 Numbers 15:37 Numbers 16:27 Numbers 16:35 Numbers 21:1

Exclamations

Description

Exclamations are words or sentences that show strong feeling such as surprise, joy, fear, or anger. In the ULT and UST, they usually have an exclamation mark (!) at the end. The mark shows that it is an exclamation. The situation and the meaning of what the people said helps us understand what feelings they were expressing. In the example below from Matthew 8, the speakers were terribly afraid. In the example from Matthew 9, the speakers were amazed, because something happened that they had never seen before.

> Save us, Lord; we are about to die! (Matthew 8:25b ULT)

> When the demon had been driven out, the mute man spoke. The crowds were astonished and said, “This has never been seen before in Israel!” (Matthew 9:33 ULT)

Reason This Is a Translation Issue

Languages have different ways of showing that a sentence communicates strong emotion.

Examples From the Bible

Some exclamations have a word that shows feeling. The sentences below have “Oh” and “Ah.” The word “oh” here shows the speaker’s amazement.

> **Oh**, the depth of the riches both of the wisdom and the knowledge of God! (Romans 11:33 ULT)

The word “Alas” below shows that Gideon was very frightened.

> When Gideon saw that he was the angel of Yahweh, Gideon lamented, "**Alas**, O my Lord Yahweh, for because of this I have seen the angel of Yahweh face to face!" (Judges 6:22 ULT)

Some exclamations start with a question word such as "how" or "why," even though they are not questions. The sentence below shows that the speaker is amazed at how unsearchable God's judgments are.

> **How** unsearchable are his judgments, and his ways beyond discovering! (Romans 11:33b ULT)

Some exclamations in the Bible do not have a main verb. The exclamation below shows that the speaker is disgusted with the person he is speaking to.

> You worthless person! (Matthew 5:22b ULT)

Translation Strategies

(1) If an exclamation in your language needs a verb, add one. Often a good verb is "is" or "are."
(2) Use an exclamation word from your language that shows the strong feeling.
(3) Translate the exclamation word with a sentence that shows the feeling.
(4) Use a word that emphasizes the part of the sentence that brings about the strong feeling.
(5) If the strong feeling is not clear in the target language, then tell how the person felt.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) If an exclamation in your language needs a verb, add one. Often a good verb is "is" or "are."

> You worthless person! (Matthew 5:22b ULT)
>
> > "You **are** such a worthless person!"

> Oh, the depth of the riches both of the wisdom and the knowledge of God! (Romans 11:33b ULT)
>
> > "Oh, the riches of the wisdom and the knowledge of God **are** so deep!"

(2) Use an exclamation word from your language that shows the strong feeling. In the first suggested translation below, the word "wow" shows that they were astonished. In the second suggested translation, the expression "Oh no" shows that something terrible or frightening has happened.

> They were extremely astonished, saying, "He has done everything well. He even makes the deaf hear and the mute speak." (Mark 7:37 ULT)
>
> > "They were extremely astonished, saying, '**Wow**! He has done everything well. He even makes the deaf to hear and the mute to speak.'"

> Alas, oh my Lord Yahweh! For because of this I have seen the angel of Yahweh face to face! (Judges 6:22b ULT)
>
> > "**Oh no**, Lord Yahweh! I have seen the angel of Yahweh face to face!"

(3) Translate the exclamation word with a sentence that shows the feeling.

> "**Alas,** O my Lord Yahweh, for because of this I have seen the angel of Yahweh face to face!" (Judges 6:22 ULT)
>
> > "Lord Yahweh, **what will happen to me**? For I have seen the angel of Yahweh face to face!"
> > "**Help**, Lord Yahweh! For I have seen the angel of Yahweh face to face!"

(4) Use a word that emphasizes the part of the sentence that brings about the strong feeling.

> How unsearchable are his judgments, and his ways beyond discovering! (Romans 11:33b ULT)
>
> > "His judgments are **so** unsearchable and his ways are **far** beyond discovering!"

(5) If the strong feeling is not clear in the target language, then tell how the person felt.

> When Gideon saw that he was the angel of Yahweh, Gideon lamented, "**Alas,** O my Lord Yahweh, for because of this I have seen the angel of Yahweh face to face!" (Judges 6:22 ULT)
>
> > Gideon understood that this was the angel of Yahweh. **He was terrified** and said, "**Alas**, Lord Yahweh! I have seen the angel of Yahweh face to face!"

Numbers References:

Numbers 14:2 Numbers 17:12 Numbers 20:3 Numbers 21:29 Numbers 23:23 Numbers 24:5 Numbers 24:23

Exclusive and Inclusive 'We'

Description

Some languages have more than one form of "we": an inclusive form that means "I and you" and an exclusive form that means "I and someone else but not you." The exclusive form excludes the person being spoken to. The inclusive form includes the person being spoken to and possibly others. This is also true for "us," "our," "ours," and "ourselves." Some languages have inclusive forms and exclusive forms for each of these. Translators whose language has separate exclusive and inclusive forms for these words will need to understand what the speaker meant so that they can decide which form to use.

See the pictures. The people on the right are the people that the speaker is talking to. The yellow highlight shows who the inclusive "we" and the exclusive "we" refer to.





Reason This Is a Translation Issue

The Bible was first written in the Hebrew, Aramaic, and Greek languages. Like English, these languages do not have separate exclusive and inclusive forms for "we." If your language has separate exclusive and inclusive forms of "we," then you will need to understand what the speaker meant so that you can decide which form of "we" to use.

Examples From the Bible

Exclusive

> They said, "There are not more than five loaves of bread and two fish with us—unless **we** go and buy food for all these people." (Luke 9:13 ULT)

In the second clause, the disciples are talking about some of them going to buy food. They were speaking to Jesus, but Jesus was not going to buy food. So languages that have inclusive and exclusive forms of “we” would use the **exclusive** form there.

> **We** have seen it, and **we** bear witness to it. **We** are announcing to you the eternal life, which was with the Father, and which has been made known to **us**. (1 John 1:2 ULT)

John is telling people who have not seen Jesus what he and the other apostles have seen. So languages that have inclusive and exclusive forms of “we” and “us” would use the **exclusive** forms in this verse.

Inclusive

> The shepherds said one to each other, “Let **us** now go to Bethlehem, and see this thing that has happened, which the Lord has made known to **us**.” (Luke 2:15b ULT)

The shepherds were speaking to one another. When they said “us,” they were including the people they were speaking to, so languages that have inclusive and exclusive forms of “we” and “us” would use the **inclusive** form in this verse.

> Now it happened that on one of those days, he indeed got into a boat with his disciples, and he said to them, “Let **us** go over to the other side of the lake.” So they set sail. (Luke 8:22 ULT)

When Jesus said “us,” he was referring to himself and to the disciples he was speaking to, so languages that have inclusive and exclusive forms of “we” and “us” would use the **inclusive** form in this verse.

Numbers References:

Numbers 10:29 Numbers 10:31 Numbers 11:5 Numbers 11:6 Numbers 12:2 Numbers 12:11 Numbers 13:27 Numbers 13:28 Numbers 13:30 Numbers 13:31 Numbers 13:32 Numbers 13:33 Numbers 14:2 Numbers 14:3 Numbers 14:4 Numbers 14:7 Numbers 14:8 Numbers 14:40 Numbers 20:3 Numbers 20:4 Numbers 20:10 Numbers 20:15 Numbers 20:16 Numbers 20:17

Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

Assumed knowledge is whatever a speaker assumes his audience knows before he speaks and gives them some kind of information. The speaker does not give the audience this information because he believes that they already know it.

When the speaker does give the audience information, he can do so in two ways. The speaker gives explicit information in what he states directly. Implicit Information is what the speaker does not state directly because he expects his audience to be able to learn it from other things he says.

Description

When someone speaks or writes, he has something specific that he wants people to know or do or think about. He normally states this directly. This is explicit information.

The speaker assumes that his audience already knows certain things that they will need to think about in order to understand this information. Normally he does not tell people these things, because they already know them. This is called assumed knowledge.

The speaker does not always directly state everything that he expects his audience to learn from what he says. Implicit information is information that he expects people to learn from what he says even though he does not state it directly.

Often, the audience understands this implicit information by combining what they already know (assumed knowledge) with the explicit information that the speaker tells them directly.

Reasons This Is a Translation Issue

All three kinds of information are part of the speaker's message. If one of these kinds of information is missing, then the audience will not understand the message. Because the target translation is in a language that is very different from the biblical languages and is made for an audience that lives in a very different time and place than the people in the Bible, many times the assumed knowledge or the implicit information is missing from the message. In other words, modern readers do not know everything that the original speakers and hearers in the Bible knew. When these things are important for understanding the message, it is helpful if you include this information in the text or in a footnote.

Examples From the Bible

> Then a scribe came to him and said, "Teacher, I will follow you wherever you go." Jesus said to him, "Foxes **have holes**, and the birds of the sky **have nests**, but the Son of Man has nowhere to lay his head." (Matthew 8:19-20 ULT)

Jesus did not say what foxes and birds use holes and nests for, because he assumed that the scribe would have known that foxes sleep in holes in the ground and birds sleep in their nests. This is **assumed knowledge**.

Jesus did not directly say here "I am the Son of Man" but, if the scribe did not already know it, then that fact would be **implicit information** that he could learn because Jesus referred to himself that way. Also, Jesus did not state explicitly that he travelled a lot and did not have a house that he slept in every night. That is **implicit information** that the scribe could learn when Jesus said that he had nowhere to lay his head.

> Woe to you, Chorazin! Woe to you, Bethsaida! If the mighty deeds had been done in **Tyre and Sidon** which were done in you, they would have repented long ago in sackcloth and ashes. But I say to you, it will be more tolerable for Tyre and Sidon at the **day of judgment** than for you. (Matthew 11:21-22 ULT)

Jesus assumed that the people he was speaking to knew that Tyre and Sidon were very wicked, and that the day of judgment is a time when God will judge every person. Jesus also knew that the people he was talking to believed that they were good and

did not need to repent. Jesus did not need to tell them these things. This is all **assumed knowledge**.

An important piece of **implicit information** here is that the people he was speaking to would be judged more severely than the people of Tyre and Sidon would be judged **because** they did not repent.

> Why do your disciples violate the traditions of the elders? For **they do not wash their hands when they eat bread**. (Matthew 15:2 ULT)

One of the traditions of the elders was a ceremony in which people would wash their hands in order to be ritually clean before eating. People thought that in order to be righteous, they had to follow all the traditions of the elders. This was **assumed knowledge** that the Pharisees who were speaking to Jesus expected him to know. By saying this, they were accusing his disciples of not following the traditions, and thus not being righteous. This is **implicit information** that they wanted him to understand from what they said.

Translation Strategies

If readers have enough assumed knowledge to be able to understand the message, along with any important implicit information that goes with the explicit information, then it is good to leave that knowledge unstated and leave the implicit information implicit. If the readers do not understand the message because one of these is missing for them, then follow these strategies:

(1) If readers cannot understand the message because they do not have certain assumed knowledge, then provide that knowledge as explicit information.
(2) If readers cannot understand the message because they do not know certain implicit information, then state that information clearly, but try to do it in a way that does not imply that the information was new to the original audience.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) If readers cannot understand the message because they do not have certain assumed knowledge, then provide that knowledge as explicit information.

> Jesus said to him, “Foxes **have holes**, and the birds of the sky **have nests**, but the Son of Man has nowhere to lay his head.” (Matthew 8:20 ULT)

The assumed knowledge was that the foxes slept in their holes and birds slept in their nests.

> Jesus said to him, “Foxes **have holes to live in**, and the birds of the sky **have nests to live in**, but the Son of Man has nowhere to lay his head and sleep.”

> It will be more tolerable for **Tyre and Sidon** at the day of judgment than for you (Matthew 11:22 ULT)

The assumed knowledge was that the people of Tyre and Sidon were very, very wicked. This can be stated explicitly.

> At the day of judgment, it will be more tolerable for **those cities of Tyre and Sidon, whose people were very wicked**, than it will be for you. or At the day of judgment, It will be more tolerable for those **wicked cities, Tyre and Sidon,** than for you.

> Why do your disciples violate the traditions of the elders? For **they do not wash their hands** when they eat bread. (Matthew 15:2 ULT)

The assumed knowledge was that one of the traditions of the elders was a ceremony in which people would wash their hands in order to be ritually clean before eating, which they must do to be righteous. It was not to remove germs from their hands to avoid sickness, as a modern reader might think.

> Why do your disciples violate the traditions of the elders? For **they do not go through the ceremonial handwashing ritual of righteousness** when they eat bread.

(2) If readers cannot understand the message because they do not know certain implicit information, then state that information clearly, but try to do it in a way that does not imply that the information was new to the original audience.

> Then a scribe came to him and said, "Teacher, I will follow you wherever you go." Jesus said to him, "Foxes have holes, and the birds of the sky have nests, but the Son of Man has nowhere to lay his head." (Matthew 8:19-20 ULT)

The implicit information is that Jesus himself is the Son of Man. Other implicit information is that if the scribe wanted to follow Jesus, then, like Jesus, he would have to live without a house.

> Jesus said to him, "Foxes have holes, and the birds of the sky have nests, but **I, the Son of Man**, have **no home to rest in. If you want to follow me, you will live as I live**."
>
> It will be more tolerable for Tyre and Sidon at the day of judgment than for you (Matthew 11:22 ULT)

The implicit information is that God would not only judge the people; he would punish them. This can be made explicit.

> At the day of judgment, God will **punish Tyre and Sidon**, cities whose people were very wicked, **less severely than he will punish you**.
> or:
> At the day of judgment, God will **punish you more severely** than Tyre and Sidon, cities whose people were very wicked.

Modern readers may not know some of the things that the people in the Bible and the people who first read it knew. This can make it hard for them to understand what a speaker or writer says, and to learn things that the speaker left implicit. Translators may need to state some things explicitly in the translation that the original speaker or writer left unstated or implicit.

Numbers References:

Numbers 1:1 Numbers 1:2 Numbers 1:2 Numbers 1:2 Numbers 1:3 Numbers 1:3 Numbers 1:4 Numbers 1:4 Numbers 1:16 Numbers 1:20 Numbers 1:20-43 Numbers 1:34 Numbers 1:42 Numbers 1:44 Numbers 1:50 Numbers 1:51 Numbers 1:52 Numbers 1:53 Numbers 1:54 Numbers 2:3 Numbers 2:3 Numbers 2:3 Numbers 2:7 Numbers 2:9 Numbers 2:10 Numbers 2:17 Numbers 2:31 Numbers 3:9 Numbers 3:10 Numbers 3:10 Numbers 3:12 Numbers 3:12 Numbers 3:13 Numbers 3:15 Numbers 3:19 Numbers 3:20 Numbers 3:25 Numbers 3:25 Numbers 3:26 Numbers 3:31 Numbers 3:31 Numbers 3:37 Numbers 3:38 Numbers 3:43 Numbers 3:45 Numbers 3:46 Numbers 3:46 Numbers 3:48 Numbers 3:48 Numbers 3:49 Numbers 3:49 Numbers 3:50 Numbers 4:2 Numbers 4:5 Numbers 4:6 Numbers 4:6 Numbers 4:7 Numbers 4:8 Numbers 4:10 Numbers 4:11 Numbers 4:11 Numbers 4:12 Numbers 4:13 Numbers 4:13 Numbers 4:14 Numbers 4:15 Numbers 4:16 Numbers 4:19 Numbers 4:19 Numbers 4:20 Numbers 4:22 Numbers 4:22 Numbers 4:24 Numbers 4:25 Numbers 4:25 Numbers 4:25 Numbers 4:27 Numbers 4:27 Numbers 4:29 Numbers 4:32 Numbers 4:32 Numbers 4:34 Numbers 5:2 Numbers 5:2 Numbers 5:7 Numbers 5:8 Numbers 5:8 Numbers 5:8 Numbers 5:13 Numbers 5:16 Numbers 5:17 Numbers 5:17 Numbers 5:19 Numbers 5:21 Numbers 5:23 Numbers 5:23 Numbers 5:26 Numbers 5:28 Numbers 5:31 Numbers 6:2 Numbers 6:5 Numbers 6:7 Numbers 6:7 Numbers 6:9 Numbers 6:11 Numbers 6:12 Numbers 6:13 Numbers 6:15 Numbers 6:18 Numbers 6:20 Numbers 6:20 Numbers 6:21 Numbers 7:1 Numbers 7:5 Numbers 7:8 Numbers 7:15 Numbers 7:89 Numbers 7:89 Numbers 7:89 Numbers 8:2 Numbers 8:2 Numbers 8:3 Numbers 8:3 Numbers 8:4 Numbers 8:7 Numbers 8:8 Numbers 8:10 Numbers 8:11 Numbers 8:12 Numbers 8:16 Numbers 8:16 Numbers 8:17 Numbers 8:18 Numbers 8:26 Numbers 8:26 Numbers 8:26 Numbers 9:6 Numbers 9:7 Numbers 9:8 Numbers 9:8 Numbers 9:10 Numbers 9:13 Numbers 9:14 Numbers 9:14 Numbers 9:15 Numbers 9:16 Numbers 9:16 Numbers 9:18 Numbers 9:20 Numbers 9:21 Numbers 9:22 Numbers 10:2 Numbers 10:2 Numbers 10:3 Numbers 10:5 Numbers 10:5 Numbers 10:6 Numbers 10:6 Numbers 10:6 Numbers 10:7 Numbers 10:10 Numbers 10:10 Numbers 10:11 Numbers 10:11 Numbers 10:12 Numbers 10:14 Numbers 10:14 Numbers 10:17 Numbers 10:18 Numbers 10:21 Numbers 10:28 Numbers 10:28 Numbers 10:29 Numbers 10:33 Numbers 10:33 Numbers 10:34 Numbers 10:36 Numbers 10:36 Numbers 11:1 Numbers 11:4 Numbers 11:4 Numbers 11:6 Numbers 11:9 Numbers 11:10 Numbers 11:11 Numbers 11:17 Numbers 11:19 Numbers 11:20 Numbers 11:21 Numbers 11:24 Numbers 11:25 Numbers 11:25 Numbers 11:26 Numbers 11:28 Numbers 11:29 Numbers 11:31 Numbers 11:31 Numbers 11:32 Numbers 11:33 Numbers 11:35 Numbers 12:4 Numbers 12:7 Numbers 12:8 Numbers 12:8 Numbers 12:9 Numbers 12:14 Numbers 12:15 Numbers 13:8 Numbers 13:11 Numbers 13:16 Numbers 13:18 Numbers 13:19 Numbers 13:19 Numbers 13:20 Numbers 13:21 Numbers 13:23 Numbers 13:26 Numbers 13:30 Numbers 13:33 Numbers 14:3 Numbers 14:10 Numbers 14:12 Numbers 14:12 Numbers 14:13 Numbers 14:14 Numbers 14:18 Numbers 14:18 Numbers 14:25 Numbers 14:25 Numbers 14:31 Numbers 14:31 Numbers 14:33 Numbers 14:34 Numbers 14:35 Numbers 14:37 Numbers 14:40 Numbers 14:42 Numbers 14:44 Numbers 14:45 Numbers 14:45 Numbers 15:3 Numbers 15:3 Numbers 15:3 Numbers 15:4 Numbers 15:4 Numbers 15:5 Numbers 15:5 Numbers 15:6 Numbers 15:8 Numbers 15:9 Numbers 15:11 Numbers 15:12 Numbers 15:14 Numbers 15:15 Numbers 15:16 Numbers 15:20 Numbers 15:20 Numbers 15:21 Numbers 15:24 Numbers 15:25 Numbers 15:26 Numbers 15:29 Numbers 15:32 Numbers 15:32 Numbers 15:33 Numbers 15:33 Numbers 15:38 Numbers 15:38 Numbers 15:39 Numbers 16:1 Numbers 16:2 Numbers 16:5 Numbers 16:5 Numbers 16:8 Numbers 16:10 Numbers 16:12 Numbers 16:15 Numbers 16:15 Numbers 16:19 Numbers 16:24 Numbers 16:27 Numbers 16:27 Numbers 16:27 Numbers 16:30 Numbers 16:32 Numbers 16:34 Numbers 16:34 Numbers 16:37 Numbers 16:37 Numbers 16:37 Numbers 16:38 Numbers 16:42 Numbers 16:42 Numbers 16:46 Numbers 16:46 Numbers 16:47 Numbers 16:48 Numbers 16:49 Numbers 17:3 Numbers 17:6 Numbers 17:8 Numbers 17:8 Numbers 18:1 Numbers 18:1 Numbers 18:5 Numbers 18:10 Numbers 18:30 Numbers 19:5 Numbers 19:9 Numbers 19:13 Numbers 19:22 Numbers 20:1 Numbers 20:2 Numbers 20:8 Numbers 20:16 Numbers 22:5 Numbers 22:22 Numbers 22:41 Numbers 23:1 Numbers 23:21 Numbers 24:4 Numbers 24:16 Numbers 24:17 Numbers 24:19 Numbers 24:20 Numbers 24:20 Numbers 25:4 Numbers 25:4 Numbers 25:4 Numbers 25:15 Numbers 26:1 Numbers 26:3 Numbers 26:4 Numbers 26:5 Numbers 26:28 Numbers 26:33 Numbers 26:54 Numbers 26:55 Numbers 26:58 Numbers 26:64

Numbers 26:65 Numbers 27:3 Numbers 27:8 Numbers 27:14 Numbers 27:16 Numbers 27:18 Numbers 28:6 Numbers 28:7 Numbers 28:7 Numbers 28:10 Numbers 28:11 Numbers 28:19 Numbers 28:21 Numbers 28:26 Numbers 29:1 Numbers 29:2 Numbers 29:4 Numbers 29:6 Numbers 29:11 Numbers 29:18 Numbers 29:39 Numbers 30:3 Numbers 30:5 Numbers 30:9 Numbers 30:10 Numbers 31:32 Numbers 31:50 Numbers 31:53 Numbers 31:54 Numbers 32:6 Numbers 32:10 Numbers 32:17 Numbers 32:38 Numbers 32:39 Numbers 33:36 Numbers 33:48 Numbers 34:13 Numbers 35:1 Numbers 35:2 Numbers 35:4-5 Numbers 35:6 Numbers 35:16 Numbers 35:21 Numbers 35:25 Numbers 35:32 Numbers 36:1 Numbers 36:6 Numbers 36:8 Numbers 36:13

Making Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information Explicit

Description

Some languages have ways of saying things that are natural for them but sound strange when translated into Other Languages. One of the reasons for this is that some languages say things explicitly that some Other Languages would leave as implicit information.

Reasons This Is a Translation Issue

If you translate all of the explicit information from the source language into the explicit information in the target language, it could sound foreign, unnatural, or perhaps even unintelligent if the target language would not make that information explicit. Instead, it is best to leave that kind of information implicit in the target language.

Examples from the Bible

> **And** Abimelech came to the tower and fought against it and drew near to the door of the tower **to burn it with fire**. (Judges 9:52 ESV)

In Biblical Hebrew, it is normal to start most sentences with a conjunction such as “and” to show the connection between sentences. In English, it is not natural to do so, it is quite tiresome for the English reader, and it gives the impression that the author is uneducated. In English, it is best to leave the idea of connection between sentences implicit in most cases and not translate the conjunction explicitly.

In Biblical Hebrew, it is normal to say that something was burned with fire. In English, the idea of fire is included in the action of burning, and so it is unnatural to state both ideas explicitly. It is enough to say that something was burned and leave the idea of fire implicit.

> But the centurion **answered and said**, "Lord, I am not worthy that you should enter under my roof" (Matthew 8:8a ULT)

In the biblical languages, it was normal to introduce direct speech with two verbs of speaking. One verb indicated the action, and the other introduced the words of the speaker. English speakers do not do this, so it is very unnatural and confusing to use two verbs. For the English speaker, the idea of speaking is included in the idea of answering. Using two verbs in English implies two separate speeches, rather than just one. So in English, it is better to use only one verb of speaking.

Translation Strategies

(1) If the explicit information of the source language sounds natural in the target language, then translate it as explicit information.
(2) If the explicit information does not sound natural in the target language or seems unnecessary or confusing, leave the explicit information implicit. Only do this if the reader can understand this information from the context. You can test this by asking the reader a question about the passage.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) If the explicit information of the source language sounds natural in the target language, then translate it as explicit information.

- There would be no change to the text using this strategy, so no examples are given here.

(2) If the explicit information does not sound natural in the target language or seems unnecessary or confusing, make the explicit information implicit. Only do this if the reader can understand this information from the context. You can test this by asking the reader a question about the passage.

> **And** Abimelech came to the tower and fought against it and drew near to the door of the tower **to burn it with fire**. (Judges 9:52 ESV)
>
> > Abimelech came to the tower and fought against it, and he approached the door of the tower **to burn it**. (Or) … **to set it on fire**.

In English, it is clear that the action of this verse follows the action of the previous verse without the use of the connector "and" at the beginning, so it was omitted. Also, the words "with fire" were left out, because this information is communicated implicitly by the word "burn." An alternative translation for "to burn it" is "to set it on fire." It is not natural in English to use both "burn" and "fire," so the English translator should choose only one of them. You can test if the readers understood the implicit information by asking, "How would the door burn?" If they knew it was by fire, then they have understood the implicit information. Or, if you chose the second option, you could ask, "What happens to a door that is set on fire?" If the readers answer, "It burns," then they have understood the implicit information.

> But the centurion **answered and said**, "Lord, I am not worthy that you should enter under my roof" (Matthew 8:8a ULT)
>
> > The centurion **answered**, "Lord, I am not worthy that you should enter under my roof"

In English, the information that the centurion responded by speaking is included in the verb "answered," so the verb "said" can be left implicit. You can test if the readers understood the implicit information by asking, "How did the centurion answer?" If they knew it was by speaking, then they have understood the implicit information.

> **He opened his mouth** and taught them, saying, (Matthew 5:2 ULT)
>
> > **He began to** teach them, saying, (Or) He taught them, saying,

In English, it would be very strange to include the information that Jesus opened his

mouth when he spoke. That information is included in the verbs “taught” and “saying,” so that phrase can be omitted and that information left implicit. However, “he opened his mouth” is an idiom that indicates the beginning of a speech, so that information may be included, or it may also be left implicit.

Numbers References:

Numbers 1:22 Numbers 1:44 Numbers 1:54 Numbers 2:3 Numbers 3:3 Numbers 3:12 Numbers 3:15 Numbers 3:16 Numbers 3:20 Numbers 3:21 Numbers 3:22 Numbers 3:27 Numbers 3:33 Numbers 3:39 Numbers 3:51 Numbers 4:12 Numbers 4:14 Numbers 4:16 Numbers 4:33 Numbers 4:46 Numbers 5:3 Numbers 5:4 Numbers 5:14 Numbers 5:27 Numbers 6:9 Numbers 6:9 Numbers 7:1 Numbers 7:19 Numbers 7:72 Numbers 8:16 Numbers 8:20 Numbers 9:17 Numbers 9:18 Numbers 9:20 Numbers 11:1 Numbers 11:18 Numbers 11:20 Numbers 11:32 Numbers 12:8 Numbers 12:10 Numbers 13:17 Numbers 13:21 Numbers 13:22 Numbers 13:26 Numbers 13:30 Numbers 13:31 Numbers 13:32 Numbers 14:2 Numbers 14:10 Numbers 14:13 Numbers 14:25 Numbers 14:37 Numbers 14:40 Numbers 14:40 Numbers 14:41 Numbers 14:42 Numbers 14:44 Numbers 14:45 Numbers 15:12 Numbers 15:14 Numbers 15:15 Numbers 15:16 Numbers 15:26 Numbers 15:28 Numbers 15:29 Numbers 15:35 Numbers 15:36 Numbers 16:7 Numbers 16:11 Numbers 16:17 Numbers 17:11 Numbers 17:13 Numbers 29:2 Numbers 34:15

When to Keep Information Implicit

Description

Sometimes it is better not to state assumed knowledge or implicit information explicitly. This page gives some direction about when not to do this.

Translation Principles

- If a speaker or author intentionally left something unclear, do not try to make it more clear.
- If the original audience did not understand what the speaker meant, do not make it so clear that your readers would find it strange that the original audience did not understand.
- If you need to explicitly state some assumed knowledge or implicit information, try to do it in a way that does not make your readers think that the original audience needed to be told those things.
- Do not make implicit information explicit if it confuses the message or leads the reader to forget what the main point is.
- Do not make assumed knowledge or implicit information explicit if your readers already understand it.

Examples From the Bible

> From the eater came forth food;
> and from the strong one came forth sweetness. (Judges 14:14 ULT)

This was a riddle. Samson purposely said this in a way that it would be hard for his enemies to know what it meant. Do not make it clear that the eater and the strong thing was a lion and that the sweet thing to eat was honey.

> Jesus said to them, “Take heed and beware of the yeast of the Pharisees and Sadducees.” They reasoned among themselves saying, “It is because we did not take bread.” (Matthew 16:6-7 ULT)

Some possible implicit information here is that the disciples should beware of the false teaching of the Pharisees and Sadducees. But

Jesus' disciples did not understand this. They thought that Jesus was talking about real yeast and bread. So it would not be appropriate to state explicitly that the word "yeast" here refers to false teaching. The disciples did not understand what Jesus meant until they heard what Jesus said in Matthew 16:11.

> "How is it that you do not understand that I was not speaking to you about bread? Beware of the yeast of the Pharisees and Sadducees." Then they understood that he was not telling them to beware of yeast in bread, but to beware of the teaching of the Pharisees and Sadducees. (Matthew 16:11-12 ULT)

Only after Jesus explained that he was not talking about bread did they realize that he was talking about the false teaching of the Pharisees. Therefore, it would be wrong to explicitly state the implicit information in Matthew 16:6.

Translation Strategies

Because we recommend that translators not change this kind of passage to make it more clear, this page does not have any translation strategies.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

Because we recommend that translators not change this kind of passage to make it more clear, this page does not have any translation strategies applied.

Numbers References:

Numbers 10:32 Numbers 11:32 Numbers 12:1

When Masculine Words Include Women

In the Bible, sometimes the words "men," "brothers," and "sons" refer only to men. At other times, those words include both men and women. In those places where the writer meant both men and women, you (the translator) need to translate it in a way that does not limit the meaning to men.

Description

In some languages a word that normally refers to men can also be used in a more general way to refer to both men and women. For example, the Bible sometimes says "brothers" when it refers to both brothers and sisters.

Also in some languages, the masculine pronouns "he" and "him" can be used in a more general way for any person if it is not important whether the person is a man or a woman. In the example below, the pronoun is "his," but it is not limited to males.

> A wise son makes **his** father rejoice but a foolish son brings grief to **his** mother. (Proverbs 10:1 ULT)

Reason This Is a Translation Issue

- In some cultures words like "man," "brother," and "son" can only be used to refer to men. If those words are used in a translation in a more general way, people will think that what is being said does not apply to women.
- In some cultures, the masculine pronouns "he" and "him" can only refer to men. If a masculine pronoun is used, people will think that what is said does not apply to women.

Translation Principles

When a statement applies to both men and women, translate it in such a way that people will be able to understand that it applies to both.

Examples From the Bible

> Now we want you to know, **brothers**, the grace of God that has been given to the churches of Macedonia. (2 Corinthians 8:1 ULT)

This verse is addressing the believers in Corinth, not only men, but **men and women**.

> Then said Jesus to his disciples, "If anyone wants to follow me, **he** must deny **himself**, take up **his** cross, and follow me." (Matthew 16:24 ULT)

Jesus was not speaking only of men, but of **men and women**.

Caution: Sometimes masculine words are used specifically to refer to men. Do not use words that would lead people to think that they include women. The words below are specifically about men.

> Moses said, 'If **someone** dies, not having children, **his brother** must marry **his** wife and have children for **his brother**.' (Matthew 22:24 ULT)

Translation Strategies

If people would understand that that masculine words like "man," "brother," and "he" can include women, then consider using them. Otherwise, here are some ways for translating those words when they include women.

(1) Use a noun that can be used for both men and women.
(2) Use a word that refers to men and a word that refers to women.
(3) Use pronouns that can be used for both men and women.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Use nouns that can be used for both men and women.

> The wise **man** dies just like the fool dies. (Ecclesiastes 2:16b ULT)
>
> > "The wise **person** dies just like the fool dies."
> > "Wise **people** die just like fools die."

(2) Use a word that refers to men and a word that refers to women.

> For we do not want you to be uninformed, **brothers**, about the troubles that happened to us in Asia. (2 Corinthians 1:8) — Paul was writing this letter to both men and women.
>
> > "For we do not want you to be uninformed, **brothers and sisters**, about the troubles that happened to us in Asia."

(3) Use pronouns that can be used for both men and women.

> "If anyone wants to follow me, he must deny himself, take up his cross, and follow me." (Matthew 16:24 ULT)

English speakers can change the masculine singular pronouns, "he," "himself," and "his" to plural pronouns that do not mark gender, "they," "themselves," and "their" in order to show that it applies to all people, not just men.

> "If **people** want to follow me, **they** must deny **themselves**, take up **their** cross, and follow me."

Numbers References:

Numbers 1:52 Numbers 2:34 Numbers 3:13 Numbers 5:6 Numbers 5:7 Numbers 5:8 Numbers 5:8 Numbers 6:2 Numbers 8:17 Numbers 9:6 Numbers 9:7 Numbers 9:10 Numbers 9:13 Numbers 9:14 Numbers 11:10 Numbers 12:6 Numbers 13:32 Numbers 14:22 Numbers 14:33 Numbers 15:4 Numbers 15:14 Numbers 15:27 Numbers 15:28 Numbers 15:30 Numbers 15:31 Numbers 16:29 Numbers 16:32 Numbers 18:5 Numbers 18:6 Numbers 18:10 Numbers 18:19 Numbers 18:20 Numbers 18:21 Numbers 18:22 Numbers 18:23 Numbers 18:24 Numbers 18:26 Numbers 18:28 Numbers 18:32 Numbers 21:9 Numbers 22:1 Numbers 22:3 Numbers 22:5 Numbers 23:19 Numbers 35:8

Generic Noun Phrases

Description

Generic noun phrases refer to people or things in general rather than to specific individuals or things. This happens frequently in proverbs, because proverbs tell about things that are true about people in general.

> Can **a man** walk on hot coals without scorching his feet?
> So is **the man who goes in to his neighbor's wife**;
> **the one who touches her** will not go unpunished. (Proverbs 6:28-29 ULT)

The phrases in bold above do not refer to a specific man. They refer to any man who does these things.

Reason This Is a Translation Issue

Different languages have different ways of showing that noun phrases refer to something in general. You (the translator) should refer to these general ideas in ways that are natural in your language.

Examples From the Bible

> The **righteous person** is kept away from trouble and it comes upon **the wicked** instead. (Proverbs 11:8 ULT)

The bold phrases above do not refer to a specific person but to anyone who does what is right or anyone who is wicked.

> People curse **the man who refuses to sell grain**. (Proverbs 11:26 ULT)

This does not refer to a particular man, but to any person who refuses to sell grain.

> Yahweh gives favor to **a good man**, but he condemns **a man who makes evil plans**. (Proverbs 12:2 ULT)

The phrase "a good man" does not refer to a particular man, but to any person who is good. The phrase "a man who makes evil plans" does not refer to a particular man, but to any person who makes evil plans.

Translation Strategies

If your language can use the same wording as in the ULT to refer to people or things in general rather than to specific individuals or things, consider using the same wording. If not, here are some strategies you might use.

(1) Use the word "the" in the noun phrase.
(2) Use the word "a" in the noun phrase.
(3) Use the word "any," as in "any person" or "anyone."
(4) Use the plural form, as in "people."
(5) Use any other way that is natural in your language.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Use the word "the" in the noun phrase.

> Yahweh gives favor to **a good man**, but he condemns **a man who makes evil plans**. (Proverbs 12:2 ULT)
>
> > "Yahweh gives favor to **the good man**, but he condemns **the man who makes evil plans**." (Proverbs 12:2)

(2) Use the word "a" in the noun phrase.

> People curse **the man** who refuses to sell grain. (Proverbs 11:26 ULT)
>
> > "People curse **a man** who refuses to sell grain."

(3) Use the word "any," as in "any person" or "anyone."

> People curse **the man** who refuses to sell grain. (Proverbs 11:26 ULT)
>
> > "People curse **any man** who refuses to sell grain."

(4) Use the plural form, as in "people" (or in this sentence, "men").

> People curse **the man** who refuses to sell grain. (Proverbs 11:26 ULT)
>
> > "People curse **men** who refuse to sell grain"

(5) Use any other way that is natural in your language.

> People curse **the man** who refuses to sell grain. (Proverbs 11:26 ULT)
>
> > "People curse **whoever** refuses to sell grain."

Numbers References:

Numbers 1:52 Numbers 2:2 Numbers 2:34 Numbers 3:21 Numbers 3:23 Numbers 3:24 Numbers 3:27 Numbers 3:30 Numbers 3:33 Numbers 4:18 Numbers 4:24 Numbers 4:27 Numbers 4:28 Numbers 4:34 Numbers 4:37 Numbers 5:23 Numbers 6:13 Numbers 6:15 Numbers 6:21 Numbers 7:5 Numbers 7:9 Numbers 7:13 Numbers 7:85 Numbers 7:86 Numbers 8:8 Numbers 8:17 Numbers 8:24 Numbers 8:25 Numbers 8:26 Numbers 9:14 Numbers 9:14 Numbers 10:10 Numbers 11:8 Numbers 11:8 Numbers 11:10 Numbers 11:20 Numbers 11:27 Numbers 12:3 Numbers 12:6 Numbers 12:10 Numbers 13:23 Numbers 13:23 Numbers 13:29 Numbers 13:33 Numbers 14:12 Numbers 14:25 Numbers 14:37 Numbers 14:43 Numbers 14:45 Numbers 15:6 Numbers 15:9 Numbers 15:15 Numbers 15:16 Numbers 15:26 Numbers 15:29 Numbers 15:30 Numbers 15:35 Numbers 15:36 Numbers 16:14 Numbers 16:46 Numbers 16:47 Numbers 18:10 Numbers 18:11 Numbers 18:13 Numbers 19:8 Numbers 19:10 Numbers 19:10 Numbers 24:19 Numbers 25:14 Numbers 26:5 Numbers 26:54 Numbers 26:57 Numbers 27:8 Numbers 30:2 Numbers 30:3 Numbers 31:35 Numbers 31:49 Numbers 32:26 Numbers 32:33 Numbers 32:39 Numbers 36:7 Numbers 36:9

Go and Come

Description

Different languages have different ways of determining whether to use the words "go" or "come" and whether to use the words "take" or "bring" when talking about motion. For example, when saying that they are approaching a person who has called them, English speakers say "I am coming," while Spanish speakers say "I am going." You will need to study the context in order to understand what is meant by the words "go" and "come" (and also "take" and "bring"), and then translate those words in a way that your readers will understand which direction people are moving in.

Reason This Is a Translation Issue

Different languages have different ways of talking about motion. The biblical languages or your source language may use the words "go" and "come" or "take" and "bring" differently than your language uses them. If these words are not translated in the way that is natural in your language, your readers may be confused about which direction people are moving.

Examples From the Bible

> Yahweh said to Noah, "**Come**, you and all your household, into the ark." (Genesis 7:1 ULT)

In some languages, this would lead people to think that Yahweh was in the ark.

> But you will be free from my oath if you **come** to my relatives and they will not give her to you. Then you will be free from my oath. (Genesis 24:41 ULT)

Abraham was speaking to his servant. Abraham's relatives lived far away from where he and his servant were standing and he wanted his servant to **go** to them, not **come** toward Abraham.

> When you have **come** to the land that Yahweh your God gives you, and when you take possession of it and begin to live in it … (Deuteronomy 17:14a ULT)

Moses is speaking to the people in the wilderness. They had not yet gone into the land that God was giving them. In some languages, it would make more sense to say, "When you have **gone** into the land …"

> They **brought** him up to the temple in Jerusalem to present him to the Lord. (Luke 2:22b ULT)

In some languages, it might make more sense to say that they **took** or **carried** Jesus to the temple.

> Then see, there was a man whose name was Jairus, and he was a leader of the synagogue. And falling at the feet of Jesus, he begged him to come to his house. (Luke 8:41 ULT)

The man was not at his house when he spoke to Jesus. He wanted Jesus to **go** with him to his house.

> What did you go out into the desert to see? A reed shaken by the wind? (Luke 7:24b ULT)

In some languages, it might make more sense to ask what did you come out to see.

Translation Strategies

If the word used in the ULT would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider using it. If not, here are other strategies.

(1) Use the word "go," "come," "take," or "bring" that would be natural in your language.
(2) Use another word that expresses the right meaning.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Use the word "go," "come," "take," or "bring" that would be natural in your language.

> But you will be free from my oath if you **come** to my relatives and they will not give her to you. (Genesis 24:41 ULT)
>
> > But you will be free from my oath if you **go** to my relatives and they will not give her to you.

> What did you go out into the desert to see? A reed shaken by the wind? (Luke 7:24b ULT)
>
> > What did you come out into the desert to see? A reed shaken by the wind?

(2) Use another word that expresses the right meaning.

> When you have **come** to the land that Yahweh your God gives you, and when you take possession of it and begin to live in it … (Deuteronomy 17:14 ULT)
>
> > "When you have **arrived** in the land that Yahweh your God gives you, and when you take possession of it and begin to live in it …"

> Yahweh said to Noah, "**Come**, you and all your household, into the ark …" (Genesis 7:1 ULT)
>
> > Yahweh said to Noah, "**Enter**, you and all your household, into the ark …"

> What did you go out into the desert to see? A reed shaken by the wind? (Luke 7:24b ULT)
>
> > What did you travel out into the desert to see? A reed shaken by the wind?

Numbers References:

Numbers 10:29 Numbers 11:16 Numbers 11:20 Numbers 11:24 Numbers 11:26 Numbers 12:4 Numbers 12:5 Numbers 14:24 Numbers 14:31 Numbers 15:2 Numbers 15:18 Numbers 15:18 Numbers 15:41 Numbers 16:25 Numbers 16:27 Numbers 16:35 Numbers 16:43 Numbers 16:46

Hendiadys

Description

In a hendiadys, a speaker uses two words that mean different things and that are connected with “and.” These two words work together to express a single idea. Usually one of the words is the primary idea and the other word further describes the primary one.

> … his own **kingdom and glory.** (1 Thessalonians 2:12b ULT)

Though “kingdom” and “glory” are both nouns, “glory” actually tells what kind of kingdom it is: it is a **kingdom of glory** or **a glorious kingdom**.

Two phrases connected by “and” can also be a hendiadys when they refer to a single person, thing, or event.

> while we look forward to receiving **the blessed hope and appearing of the glory** of **our great God and Savior Jesus Christ**. (Titus 2:13b ULT)

Titus 2:13 contains two hendiadyses. “The blessed hope” and “appearing of the glory” refer to the same thing and serve to strengthen the idea that the return of Jesus Christ is greatly anticipated and wonderful. Also, “our great God” and “Savior Jesus Christ” refer to one person, not two.

Reasons This Is a Translation Issue

- Often a hendiadys contains an abstract noun. Some languages may not have a noun with the same meaning.
- Many languages do not use the hendiadys, so people may not understand that the second word is further describing the first one.
- Many languages do not use the hendiadys, so people may not understand that only one person or thing is meant, not two.

Examples From the Bible

> For I will give you **a mouth and wisdom** … (Luke 21:15a ULT)

“A mouth” and “wisdom” are nouns, but in this figure of speech “wisdom” describes what comes from the mouth.

> If you are willing and obedient … (Isaiah 1:19a ULT)

“Willing” and “obedient” are adjectives, but “willing” describes “obedient.”

Translation Strategies

If the hendiadys would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider using it. If not, here are other options:

(1) Substitute the describing noun with an adjective that means the same thing.
(2) Substitute the describing noun with a phrase that means the same thing.
(3) Substitute the describing adjective with an adverb that means the same thing.
(4) Substitute other parts of speech that mean the same thing and show that one word or phrase describes the other.
(5) If it is unclear that only one thing is meant, change the phrase so that this is clear.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Substitute the describing noun with an adjective that means the same thing.

> For I will give you **a mouth and wisdom** … (Luke 21:15a ULT)
>
> > For I will give you **wise words** …
>
> Walk in a manner that is worthy of God, who calls you into **his own kingdom and glory**. (1 Thessalonians 2:12b ULT)
>
> > You should walk in a manner that is worthy of God, who calls you to **his own glorious kingdom**.

(2) Substitute the describing noun with a phrase that means the same thing.

> For I will give you **a mouth and wisdom** … (Luke 21:15a ULT)
>
> > for I will give you **words of wisdom**.
>
> You should walk in a manner that is worthy of God, who calls you into **his own kingdom and glory**. (1 Thessalonians 2:12b ULT)
>
> > You should walk in a manner that is worthy of God, who calls you to **his own kingdom of glory**.

(3) Substitute the describing adjective with an adverb that means the same thing.

> If you are willing and obedient … (Isaiah 1:19a ULT)
>
> > If you are **willingly obedient** …

(4) Substitute other parts of speech that mean the same thing and show that one word or phrase describes the other.

> If you are willing and obedient … (Isaiah 1:19a ULT)

The adjective "obedient" can be substituted with the verb "obey."

> > if you **obey willingly** …

(4) and (5) If it is unclear that only one thing is meant, change the phrase so that this is clear.

> We look forward to receiving **the blessed hope and appearing of the glory** of **our great God and Savior Jesus Christ**. (Titus 2:13b ULT)

The noun "glory" can be changed to the adjective "glorious" to make it clear that Jesus' appearing is what we hope for. Also, "Jesus Christ" can be moved to the front of the phrase and "great God and Savior" put into a relative clause that describes the one person, Jesus Christ.

> > We look forward to receiving **what we are longing for, the blessed and glorious appearing** of **Jesus Christ, who is our great God and Savior**.

Numbers References:

Numbers 2:4 Numbers 2:6 Numbers 2:8 Numbers 2:11 Numbers 2:13 Numbers 2:15 Numbers 2:19 Numbers 2:21 Numbers 2:23 Numbers 2:26 Numbers 2:28 Numbers 2:30 Numbers 5:21 Numbers 10:30 Numbers 12:11 Numbers 13:23 Numbers 15:22 Numbers 16:5 Numbers 28:18 Numbers 28:25 Numbers 28:26 Numbers 28:26 Numbers 29:1

Hyperbole

Description

A speaker or writer can use exactly the same words to say something that he means as completely true, or as generally true, or as a hyperbole. This is why it can be hard to decide how to understand a statement. For example, the sentence below could mean three different things.

It rains here every night.

1. The speaker means this as literally true if he means that it really does rain here every night.
2. The speaker means this as a **generalization** if he means that it rains here most nights.
3. The speaker means this as a **hyperbole** if he wants to say that it rains more than it actually does, usually in order to express a strong attitude toward the amount or frequency of rain, such as being annoyed or being happy about it.

Hyperbole

In hyperbole, a figure of speech that uses exaggeration, a speaker deliberately describes something with an extreme or even unreal statement, usually to show his strong feeling or opinion about it. He expects people to understand that he is exaggerating.

> They will not leave **stone upon stone in you.** (Luke 19:44b ULT)

This is an exaggeration. It means that the enemies will completely destroy Jerusalem.

> Moses was educated in **all the wisdom of the Egyptians.** (Acts 7:22a ULT)

This hyperbole means that he had learned everything an Egyptian education could offer.

Generalization

This is a statement that is true most of the time or in most situations that it could apply to.

> The one who ignores instruction **will have poverty and shame,**
> but **honor will come** to him who learns from correction. (Proverbs 13:18)

These generalizations tell about what normally happens to people who ignore instruction and what normally happens to people who learn from correction. There may be some exceptions to these statements, but they are generally true.

> And when you pray, do not make useless repetitions as **the Gentiles do, for they think that they will be heard because of their many words.** (Matthew 6:7)

This generalization tells about what Gentiles were known for doing. Many Gentiles did this. It does not matter if a few did not. The point was that the hearers should not join in this well-known practice.

Even though a hyperbole or a generalization may have a strong-sounding word like “all,” “always,” “none,” or “never,” it does not necessarily mean **exactly** “all,” “always,” “none,” or “never.” It simply means “most,” “most of the time,” “hardly any,” or “rarely.”

Reason This Is a Translation Issue

1. Readers need to be able to understand whether or not a statement is literally true.
2. If readers realize that a statement is not literally true, they need to be able to understand whether it is a hyperbole, a generalization, or a lie. (Though the Bible is completely true, it tells about people who did not always tell the truth.)

Examples From the Bible

Examples of Hyperbole

> If your hand causes you to stumble, **cut it off**. It is better for you to enter into life maimed … (Mark 9:43a ULT)

When Jesus said to cut off your hand, he meant that we should **do whatever extreme things** we need to do in order not to sin. He used this hyperbole to show how extremely important it is to try to stop sinning.

> The Philistines gathered together to fight against Israel with 3,000 chariots, 6,000 men to drive the chariots, and troops **as numerous as the sand on the seashore**. (1 Samuel 13:5a ULT)

The bolded phrase is an exaggeration for the purpose of expressing the emotion that the Philistine army was overwhelming in number. It means that there were **many, many** soldiers in the Philistine army.

> But as his anointing teaches you **everything** and is true and is not a lie, and just as it has taught you, remain in him. (1 John 2:27b ULT)

This is a hyperbole. It expresses the assurance that God's Spirit teaches us about **all things that we need to know**. God's Spirit does not teach us about everything that it is possible to know.

> When they found him, they also said to him, "**Everyone** is looking for you." (Mark 1:37 ULT)

The disciples probably did not mean that everyone in the city was looking for Jesus, but that **many people** were looking for him, or that all of Jesus' closest friends there were looking for him. This is an exaggeration for the purpose of expressing the emotion that they and many others were worried about him.

Examples of Generalization

> Can **any good thing** come out of Nazareth? (John 1:46b ULT)

This rhetorical question is meant to express the generalization that there is nothing good in Nazareth. The people there had a reputation for being uneducated and not strictly religious. Of course, there were exceptions.

> One of them, of their own prophets, has said, "**Cretans are always liars, evil beasts, lazy bellies**." (Titus 1:12 ULT)

This is a generalization that means that Cretans had a reputation to be like this because, in general, this is how Cretans behaved. It is possible that there were exceptions.

> **A lazy hand causes a person to be poor, but the hand of the diligent person gains riches.** (Proverbs 10:4 ULT)

This is generally true, and it reflects the experience of most people. It is possible that there are exceptions in some circumstances.

Caution

- Do not assume that something is an exaggeration just because it seems to be impossible. God does miraculous things.

> They saw Jesus **walking on the sea** and coming near the boat. (John 6:19b ULT)

This is not hyperbole. Jesus really walked on the water. It is a literal statement.

- Do not assume that the word "all" is always a generalization that means "most."

> Yahweh is righteous in **all** his ways and gracious in **all** he does. (Psalms 145:17 ULT)

Yahweh is always righteous. This is a completely true statement.

Translation Strategies

If the hyperbole or generalization would be natural and people would understand it and not think that it is a lie, consider using it. If not, here are other options.

(1) Express the meaning without the exaggeration.
(2) For a generalization, show that it is a generalization by using a phrase like "in general" or "in most cases."
(3) For a hyperbole or a generalization, add a word like "many" or "almost" to show that the hyperbole or generalization is not meant to be exact.
(4) For a hyperbole or a generalization that has a word like "all," "always," "none," or "never," consider deleting that word.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Express the meaning without the exaggeration.

> The Philistines gathered together to fight against Israel: 3,000 chariots, 6,000 men to drive the chariots, and troops **as numerous as the sand on the seashore**. (1 Samuel 13:5a ULT)
>
> > The Philistines gathered together to fight against Israel: 3,000 chariots, 6,000 men to drive the chariots, and **a great number of troops**.

(2) For a generalization, show that it is a generalization by using a phrase like "in general" or "in most cases."

> **The one who ignores instruction will have poverty and shame.** (Proverbs 13:18a ULT)
>
> > **In general,** the one who ignores instruction will have poverty and shame
>
> When you pray, do not make useless repetitions as the **Gentiles do,** for they think that they will be heard because of their many words. (Matthew 6:7 ULT)
>
> > And when you pray, do not make useless repetitions as the Gentiles **generally** do, for they think that they will be heard because of their many words.

(3) For a hyperbole or a generalization, add a word like "many" or "almost" to show that the hyperbole or generalization is not meant to be exact.

> The **whole** country of Judea and **all** the people of Jerusalem went out to him. (Mark 1:5a ULT)
>
> > **Almost all** the country of Judea and **almost all** the people of Jerusalem went out to him.
> > or:
> >
> > **Many** of the country of Judea and **many** of the people of Jerusalem went out to him.

(4) For a hyperbole or a generalization that has a word like "all," "always," "none," or "never," consider deleting that word.

> The **whole** country of Judea and **all** the people of Jerusalem went out to him. (Mark 1:5a ULT)
>
> > The country of Judea and the people of Jerusalem went out to him.

Numbers References:

Numbers 17:12 Numbers 21:25 Numbers 21:35 Numbers 22:4 Numbers 24:13

Hypothetical Situations

Consider these phrases: “If the sun stopped shining …” “What if the sun stopped shining …” “Suppose the sun stopped shining …” and “If only the sun had not stopped shining.” We use such expressions to set up hypothetical situations, imagining what might have happened or what could happen in the future but probably will not. We also use them to express regret or wishes. Hypothetical expressions occur often in the Bible. You (the translator) need to translate them in a way that people will know that the event did not actually happen and so that they will understand why the event was imagined.

Description

Hypothetical situations are situations that are not real. They can be in the past, present, or future. Hypothetical situations in the past and present have not happened, are not happening now, and ones in the future are not expected to happen.

People sometimes tell about conditions and what would happen if those conditions were met, but they know that these things have not happened or probably will not happen. (The conditions comprise a phrase that starts with “if.”)

- If he had lived to be 100 years old, he would have seen his grandson’s grandson. (But he did not.)
- If he lived to be 100 years old, he would still be alive today. (But he is not.)
- If he lives to be 100 years old, he will see his grandson’s grandson. (But he probably will not.)

People sometimes express wishes about things that have not happened or that are not expected to happen.

- I wish he had come.
- I wish he were here.
- I wish he would come.

People sometimes express regrets about things that have not happened or that are not expected to happen.

- If only he had come.
- If only he were here.
- If only he would come.

Reason This Is a Translation Issue

- Translators need to recognize the different kinds of hypothetical situations in the Bible and understand that they are unreal.
- Translators need to know their own language’s ways of talking about different kinds of hypothetical situations.

Examples From the Bible

Hypothetical Situations in the Past

> “Woe to you, Chorazin! Woe to you, Bethsaida! **If the mighty deeds had been done** in Tyre and Sidon which were done in you, **they would have repented** long ago in sackcloth and ashes.” (Matthew 11:21 ULT)

Here in Matthew 11:21, Jesus said that **if** the people living in the ancient cities of Tyre and Sidon had been able to see the miracles that he performed, they would have repented long ago. The people of Tyre and Sidon did not actually see his miracles, and they did not repent. He said this to rebuke the people of Chorazin and Bethsaida who had seen his miracles and yet did not repent.

> Martha then said to Jesus, “Lord, **if you had been here, my brother would not have died**.” (John 11:21 ULT)

Martha said this to express her wish that Jesus would have come sooner so that her brother would not have died. But Jesus did not come sooner and her brother did die.

Hypothetical Situations in the Present

> And no man puts new wine into old wineskins. **But if he did do that, the new wine would burst the wineskins, and it would be spilled out, and the wineskins would be destroyed**. (Luke 5:37 ULT)

Jesus told about what would happen if a person were to put new wine into old wineskins. But no one would do that. He used this imaginary situation as an example to show that there are times when it is unwise to mix new things with old things. He did this so that people could understand why his disciples were not fasting as people traditionally did.

> Jesus said to them, "What man would there be among you, who, **if he had just one sheep, and if this sheep fell into a deep hole on the Sabbath, would not grasp hold of it and lift it out**?" (Matthew 12:11 ULT)

Jesus asked the religious leaders what they would do on the Sabbath if one of their sheep fell into a hole. He was not saying that their sheep would fall into a hole. He used this imaginary situation to show them that they were wrong to judge him for healing people on the Sabbath.

Hypothetical Situation in the Future

> **Unless those days are shortened, no flesh would be saved**. But for the sake of the elect, those days will be shortened. (Matthew 24:22 ULT)

Jesus was talking about a future time when very bad things would happen. He told what would happen if those days of trouble were to last a long time. He did this to show how bad those days will be—so bad that if they lasted a long time, no one would be saved. But then he clarified that God will shorten those days of trouble so that the elect (those he has chosen) will be saved.

Expressing Emotion About a Hypothetical Situation

People sometimes talk about hypothetical situations in order to express regrets and wishes. Regrets are about the past and wishes are about the present and future.

> The Israelites said to them, "**If only we had died by Yahweh's hand in the land of Egypt when we were sitting by the pots of meat and were eating bread to the full.** For you have brought us out into this wilderness to kill our whole community with hunger." (Exodus 16:3 ULT)

Here the Israelites were afraid that they would have to suffer and die of hunger in the wilderness, and so they wished that they had stayed in Egypt and died there with full stomachs. They were complaining, expressing regret that this had not happened.

> I know what you have done, and that you are neither cold nor hot. **I wish that you were either cold or hot!** (Revelation 3:15 ULT)

Jesus wished that the people were either hot or cold, but they are neither. He was rebuking them, expressing anger at this.

Translation Strategies

Find out how people speaking your language show:

- that something could have happened, but did not.
- that something could be true now, but is not.
- that something could happen in the future, but will not unless something changes.
- that they wish for something, but it does not happen.
- that they regret that something did not happen.

Use your language's ways of showing these kinds of things.

You may also want to watch the video at https://ufw.io/figs_hypo.

Numbers References:

Numbers 12:14 Numbers 22:33

Idiom

An idiom is a figure of speech made up of a group of words that, as a whole, has a meaning that is different from what one would understand from the meanings of the individual words. Someone from outside of the culture usually cannot understand an idiom without someone inside the culture explaining its true meaning. Every language uses idioms. Some English examples are:

- You are pulling my leg. (This means, "You are teasing me by telling me something that is not true.")
- Do not push the envelope. (This means, "Do not take a matter to its extreme.")
- This house is under water. (This means, "The debt owed for this house is greater than its actual value.")
- We are painting the town red. (This means, "We are going around town tonight celebrating very intensely.")

Description

An idiom is a phrase that has a special meaning to the people of the language or culture who use it. Its meaning is different than what a person would understand from the meanings of the individual words that form the phrase.

> he **set his face** to go to Jerusalem. (Luke 9:51b ULT)

The words "set his face" is an idiom that means "decided."

Sometimes people may be able to understand an idiom from another culture, but it might sound like a strange way to express the meaning.

> I am not worthy that you would **come under my roof**. (Luke 7:6b ULT)

The phrase "come under my roof" is an idiom that means "enter my house."

> Put these words **into your ears**. (Luke 9:44a ULT)

This idiom means “Listen carefully and remember what I say.”

Purpose: An idiom is probably created in a culture somewhat by accident when someone describes something in an unusual way. But, when that unusual way communicates the message powerfully and people understand it clearly, other people start to use it. After a while, it becomes a normal way of talking in that language.

Reasons This Is a Translation Issue

- People can easily misunderstand idioms in the original languages of the Bible if they do not know the cultures that produced the Bible.
- People can easily misunderstand idioms that are in the source language Bibles if they do not know the cultures that made those translations.
- It is useless to translate idioms literally (according to the meaning of each word) when the target language audience will not understand what they mean.

Examples From the Bible

> Then all Israel came to David at Hebron and said, “Look, we are your **flesh and bone**.” (1 Chronicles 11:1 ULT)

This means, “We and you belong to the same race, the same family.”

> The children of Israel went out **with a high hand**. (Exodus 14:8b ASV)

This means, “The Israelites went out defiantly.”

> the one who **lifts up my head** (Psalm 3:3b ULT)

This means, “the one who helps me.”

Translation Strategies

If the idiom would be clearly understood in your language, consider using it. If not, here are some other options.

(1) Translate the meaning plainly without using an idiom.

(2) Use a different idiom that people use in your own language that has the same meaning.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Translate the meaning plainly without using an idiom.

> Then all Israel came to David at Hebron and said, “Look, we are your **flesh and bone**.” (1 Chronicles 11:1 ULT)
>
> > Look, we all **belong to the same nation**.

> Then he **set his face** to go to Jerusalem. (Luke 9:51b ULT)
>
> > He started to travel to Jerusalem, **determined to reach it**.

> I am not worthy that you would come **under my roof**. (Luke 7:6b ULT)
>
> > I am not worthy that you should enter **my house**.

(2) Use an idiom that people use in your own language that has the same meaning.

> Put these words **into your ears.** (Luke 9:44a ULT)
>
> > **Be all ears** when I say these words to you.

> My **eyes grow dim** from grief. (Psalm 6:7a ULT)
>
> > I am crying my **eyes out**

Numbers References:

Numbers 1:2 Numbers 1:3 Numbers 1:44 Numbers 1:49 Numbers 2:2 Numbers 2:17 Numbers 3:1 Numbers 3:3 Numbers 3:4 Numbers 3:4 Numbers 3:12 Numbers 3:13 Numbers 3:13 Numbers 3:15 Numbers 3:16 Numbers 3:26 Numbers 3:39 Numbers 3:40 Numbers 3:51 Numbers 4:2 Numbers 4:3 Numbers 4:3 Numbers 4:7 Numbers 4:8 Numbers 4:15 Numbers 4:19 Numbers 4:20 Numbers 4:22 Numbers 4:23 Numbers 4:23 Numbers 4:26 Numbers 4:27 Numbers 4:28 Numbers 4:30 Numbers 4:33 Numbers 4:35 Numbers 4:37 Numbers 4:37 Numbers 4:47 Numbers 4:49 Numbers 4:49 Numbers 4:49 Numbers 5:2 Numbers 5:3 Numbers 5:7 Numbers 5:7 Numbers 5:10 Numbers 5:14 Numbers 5:15 Numbers 5:17 Numbers 5:18 Numbers 5:25 Numbers 5:30 Numbers 6:2 Numbers 6:3 Numbers 6:5 Numbers 6:5 Numbers 6:6 Numbers 6:9 Numbers 6:11 Numbers 6:12 Numbers 6:12 Numbers 6:14 Numbers 6:14 Numbers 6:17 Numbers 6:19 Numbers 6:20 Numbers 6:21 Numbers 6:26 Numbers 7:5 Numbers 7:7 Numbers 7:8 Numbers 7:8 Numbers 7:11 Numbers 7:86 Numbers 8:7 Numbers 8:15 Numbers 8:16 Numbers 8:17 Numbers 8:22 Numbers 8:24 Numbers 8:24 Numbers 8:24 Numbers 8:25 Numbers 8:25 Numbers 9:3 Numbers 9:5 Numbers 9:6 Numbers 9:7 Numbers 9:7 Numbers 9:10 Numbers 9:10 Numbers 9:11 Numbers 9:13 Numbers 9:14 Numbers 9:17 Numbers 9:20 Numbers 9:22 Numbers 9:23 Numbers 10:10 Numbers 10:13 Numbers 10:14 Numbers 10:21 Numbers 10:25 Numbers 10:29 Numbers 10:31 Numbers 10:31 Numbers 10:33 Numbers 11:1 Numbers 11:2 Numbers 11:4 Numbers 11:6 Numbers 11:9 Numbers 11:10 Numbers 11:10 Numbers 11:11 Numbers 11:12 Numbers 11:13 Numbers 11:15 Numbers 11:21 Numbers 11:22 Numbers 11:25 Numbers 11:29 Numbers 11:31 Numbers 11:32 Numbers 11:32 Numbers 11:33 Numbers 11:33 Numbers 12:2 Numbers 12:3 Numbers 12:8 Numbers 12:9 Numbers 12:12 Numbers 12:14 Numbers 12:15 Numbers 13:2 Numbers 13:20 Numbers 13:26 Numbers 13:29 Numbers 13:29 Numbers 13:30 Numbers 13:31 Numbers 14:3 Numbers 14:4 Numbers 14:6 Numbers 14:14 Numbers 14:18 Numbers 14:22 Numbers 14:29 Numbers 14:29 Numbers 14:32 Numbers 14:33 Numbers 14:34 Numbers 14:35 Numbers 14:38 Numbers 14:43 Numbers 15:3 Numbers 15:8 Numbers 15:23 Numbers 15:23 Numbers 15:27 Numbers 15:34 Numbers 15:35 Numbers 15:36 Numbers 15:39 Numbers 16:2 Numbers 16:3 Numbers 16:7 Numbers 16:9 Numbers 16:12 Numbers 16:13 Numbers 16:14 Numbers 16:15 Numbers 16:17 Numbers 16:17 Numbers 16:18 Numbers 16:21 Numbers 16:21 Numbers 16:22 Numbers 16:25 Numbers 16:26 Numbers 16:27 Numbers 16:32 Numbers 16:38 Numbers 16:40 Numbers 16:41 Numbers 16:45 Numbers 17:2 Numbers 17:3 Numbers 17:6 Numbers 17:6 Numbers 17:8 Numbers 17:8 Numbers 17:9 Numbers 17:10 Numbers 17:13 Numbers 18:1 Numbers 18:1 Numbers 18:1 Numbers 18:2 Numbers 18:8 Numbers 18:9 Numbers 18:11 Numbers 18:15 Numbers 18:16 Numbers 18:17 Numbers 18:19 Numbers 18:22 Numbers 18:23 Numbers 18:23 Numbers 18:32 Numbers 19:2 Numbers 19:17 Numbers 19:21 Numbers 20:8 Numbers 20:10 Numbers 20:12 Numbers 20:19 Numbers 20:21 Numbers 20:27 Numbers 21:4 Numbers 21:11 Numbers 21:11 Numbers 21:24 Numbers 21:25 Numbers 21:32 Numbers 22:3 Numbers 22:15 Numbers 22:22 Numbers 22:25 Numbers 22:26 Numbers 22:27 Numbers 22:30 Numbers 22:31 Numbers 22:34 Numbers 23:7 Numbers 23:18 Numbers 23:27 Numbers 24:1 Numbers 24:1 Numbers 24:1 Numbers 24:2 Numbers 24:10 Numbers 24:10 Numbers 24:11 Numbers 24:11 Numbers 24:14 Numbers 24:14 Numbers 25:3 Numbers 25:4 Numbers 25:6 Numbers 25:11 Numbers 25:11 Numbers 25:12 Numbers 25:14 Numbers 25:18 Numbers 25:18 Numbers 26:2 Numbers 26:2 Numbers 26:2 Numbers 26:54 Numbers 26:55 Numbers 28:2 Numbers 28:3 Numbers 28:4 Numbers 28:4 Numbers 28:8 Numbers 28:10 Numbers 28:11 Numbers 28:11 Numbers 28:17 Numbers 29:2 Numbers 29:2 Numbers 29:7 Numbers 30:2 Numbers 30:2 Numbers 30:4 Numbers 30:4 Numbers 30:5 Numbers 30:6 Numbers 30:8 Numbers 30:9 Numbers 30:13 Numbers 30:14 Numbers 30:14 Numbers 30:15 Numbers 30:16 Numbers 31:26 Numbers 31:27 Numbers 31:30 Numbers 31:49 Numbers 32:4 Numbers 32:5 Numbers 32:10 Numbers 32:11 Numbers 32:11 Numbers 32:13 Numbers 32:13 Numbers 32:15 Numbers 32:17 Numbers 32:19 Numbers 32:19 Numbers 32:22 Numbers 32:24 Numbers 32:28 Numbers 33:2 Numbers 33:3 Numbers 33:3 Numbers 33:6 Numbers 33:7 Numbers 33:8 Numbers 33:10 Numbers 33:39 Numbers 33:54 Numbers 33:54 Numbers 34:3 Numbers 34:6 Numbers 34:15 Numbers 34:17 Numbers 34:18 Numbers 34:18 Numbers 34:29 Numbers 35:8 Numbers 35:11 Numbers 35:14 Numbers 35:19 Numbers 35:27 Numbers 35:30 Numbers 35:31 Numbers 35:33 Numbers 36:3 Numbers 36:3 Numbers 36:4 Numbers 36:5 Numbers 36:6 Numbers 36:12 Numbers 36:13

Imperatives — Other Uses

Description

Imperative sentences are mainly used to express a desire or requirement that someone do something. In the Bible, sometimes imperative sentences have other uses.

Reason This Is a Translation Issue

Some languages would not use an imperative sentence for some of the functions that they are used for in the Bible.

Examples From the Bible

Speakers often use imperative sentences to tell or ask their listeners to do something. In Genesis 26, God spoke to Isaac and told him not to go to Egypt but to live where God would tell him to live.

> Now Yahweh appeared to him and said, "**Do not go down** to Egypt; **live** in the land that I tell you to live in." (Genesis 26:2 ULT)

Sometimes imperative sentences in the Bible have other uses.

Imperatives that make things happen

God can make things happen by commanding that they happen. Jesus healed a man by commanding that the man be healed. The man could not do anything to obey the command, but Jesus caused him to be healed by commanding it. (In this context, the command "Be clean" means to "be healed" so that others around would know that it was safe to touch the man again.)

> "I am willing. **Be clean**." Immediately he was cleansed of his leprosy. (Matthew 8:3b ULT)

In Genesis 1, God commanded that there should be light, and by commanding it, he caused it to exist. Some languages, such as the Hebrew of the Bible, have commands that are in the third person. English does not do that, and so it must turn the third-person command into a general, second-person command, as in the ULT:

> God said, "**Let there be** light," and there was light. (Genesis 1:3 ULT)

Languages that have third-person commands can follow the original Hebrew, which translates into English as something like "light must be."

Imperatives that function as blessings

In the Bible, God blesses people by using imperatives. This indicates what his will is for them.

> God blessed them and said to them, "**Be fruitful**, and **multiply**. **Fill** the earth, and **subdue** it. **Have dominion** over the fish of the sea, over the birds of the sky, and over every living thing that moves upon the earth." (Genesis 1:28 ULT)

Imperatives that function as conditions

An imperative sentence can also be used to tell the **condition** under which something will happen. The proverbs mainly tell about life and things that often happen. The purpose of Proverbs 4:6 below is not primarily to give a command, but to teach what people can expect to happen **if** they love wisdom.

> **Do not abandon** wisdom and she will watch over you;
> **love** her and she will keep you safe. (Proverbs 4:6 ULT)

The purpose of Proverbs 22:6, below, is to teach what people can expect to happen if they teach their children the way they should go.

> **Teach** a child the way he should go, and when he is old he will not turn away from that instruction. (Proverbs 22:6 ULT)

Imperatives that function as good results

An imperative sentence can also describe a desirable result. In Proverbs 3:3-4, several

imperatives give instructions, then the final imperative describes the good outcome of following those instructions.

> Do not let covenant faithfulness and trustworthiness leave you;
> tie them on your neck, write them on the tablet of your heart,
> and **find favor** and good insight in the eyes of God and man! (Proverbs 3:3-4 ULT)

Translation Strategies

(1) If people would not use an imperative sentence for one of the functions in the Bible, try using a statement instead.
(2) If people would not understand that a sentence is used to cause something to happen, add a connecting word like "so" to show that what happened was a result of what was said.
(3) If people would not use a command as a condition, translate it as a statement with the words "if" and "then."

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) If people would not use an imperative sentence for one of the functions in the Bible, try using a statement instead.

> **Be clean**. (Matthew 8:3b ULT)
>
> > **You are now clean.**
> > **I now cleanse you.**

God said, "**Let there be** light," and there was light. (Genesis 1:3 ULT)

> God said, "**There is now** light" and there was light.

God blessed them and said to them, "**Be fruitful**, and **multiply**. **Fill** the earth, and **subdue** it. **Have dominion** over the fish of the sea, over the birds of the sky, and over every living thing that moves upon the earth." (Genesis 1:28 ULT)

> God blessed them and said to them, "**My will for you is that you be fruitful**, and **multiply**. **Fill** the earth, and **subdue** it. **I want you to have dominion** over the fish of the sea, over the birds of the sky, and over every living thing that moves upon the earth."

> Do not let covenant faithfulness and trustworthiness leave you;
> tie them on your neck, write them on the tablet of your heart,
> **and find favor** and good insight in the eyes of God and man! (Proverbs 3:3-4 ULT)
>
> > Do not let covenant faithfulness and trustworthiness leave you;
> > tie them on your neck, write them on the tablet of your heart,
> > **then you will find favor** and good insight in the eyes of God and man!

(2) If people would not understand that a sentence is used to cause something to happen, add a connecting word like "so" to show that what happened was a result of what was said.

> God said, "**Let there be** light," and there was light. (Genesis 1:3 ULT)
>
> > God said, 'Let there be light,' **so** there was light.
> > God said, "Light must be;" **as a result**, there was light.

(3) If people would not use a command as a condition, translate it as a statement with the words “if” and “then.”

> Teach a child the way he should go, and when he is old he will not turn away from that instruction. (Proverbs 22:6 ULT)

Translated as:

> “**If** you teach a child the way he should go,
> **then** when he is old he will not turn away from that instruction.”

Numbers References:

Numbers 5:19 Numbers 10:35 Numbers 10:36 Numbers 21:34 Numbers 22:6

Information Structure

Description

Different languages arrange the parts of the sentence in different ways. In English, a sentence normally has the subject first, then the verb, then the object, then other modifiers, like this: Peter painted his house yesterday.

Many other languages normally put these things in a different order such as: Painted yesterday Peter his house.

Although all languages have a normal order for parts of a sentence, this order can change depending on what information the speaker or writer considers to be the most important.

Suppose that someone is answering the question, “What did Peter paint yesterday?” The person asking the question already knows all of the information in our sentence above except for the object, “his house.” Therefore, that becomes the most important part of the information, and a person answering in English might say “His house is what Peter painted (yesterday).”

This puts the most important information first, which is normal for English. Many Other Languages would normally put the most important information last. In the flow of a text, the most important information is usually what the writer considers to be new information for the reader. In some languages the new information comes first, and in others it comes last.

Reasons This Is a Translation Issue

- Different languages arrange the parts of a sentence in different ways. If you (the translator) copy the order of the parts of a sentence from the source, it may not make sense in your language.
- Different languages put important or new information in different places in the sentence. If you keep the important or new information in the same place that it had in the source language, it may be confusing or give the wrong message in your language.

Examples From the Bible

> They all ate until they were satisfied. (Mark 6:42 ULT)

The parts of this sentence were in a different order in the original Greek source language. They were like this: And they ate all and they were satisfied.

In English, this means that the people ate everything. But the next verse says that they took up twelve baskets full of leftover pieces of food. In order for this to not be so confusing, the translators of the ULT put the parts of the sentence in the right order for English.

> And the day began to end, and the twelve came to him and said, “Send the crowd away so that, going into the surrounding villages and countryside, they may find lodging and food, because we are here in an desolate place.” (Luke 9:12 ULT)

In this verse, what the disciples say to Jesus puts the important information first, that he should send the crowd away. In languages that put the important information last, people would understand that the reason that they gave, being in an isolated place, is the most important part of their message to Jesus. They might then think that the disciples are afraid of the spirits in that place, and that sending the people to buy food is a way to protect them from the spirits. That is the wrong message.

> Woe to you when all men speak well of you, for their fathers treated the false prophets in the same way. (Luke 6:26 ULT)

In this verse, the most important part of the information is first, that “woe” is coming on the people for what they are doing. The reason that supports that warning comes last. This could be confusing for people who expect the important information to come last.

Translation Strategies

(1) Study how your language arranges the parts of a sentence, and use that order in your translation.

(2) Study where your language puts the new or important information, and rearrange the order of information so that it follows the way it is done in your language.

Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Study how your language arranges the parts of a sentence, and use that order in your translation.

This is the verse in the original Greek order:

> And he went out from there and came to the hometown his, and they followed him the disciples his. (Mark 6:1)

The ULT has put this into the normal order for English:

> Now Jesus went out from there and came to his hometown, and his disciples followed him. (Mark 6:1 ULT)

(2) Study where your language puts the new or important information and rearrange the order of information so that it follows the way it is done in your language.

> And the day began to end, and the twelve came and said to him, “Send the crowd away so that, going into the surrounding villages and countryside, they may find lodging and food, because we are here in a desolate place.” (Luke 9:12 ULT)

If your language puts the important information last, you can change the order of the verse.

> Now the day was about to come to an end, and the twelve came to him and said, “Because we are here in an desolate place, send the crowd away that they may go into the surrounding villages and countryside to find lodging and food.”
>
> Woe to you, when all men speak well of you, for that is how their ancestors treated the false prophets. (Luke 6:26 ULT)

If your language puts the important information last, you can change the order of the verse.

> When all men speak well of you, which is just as people's ancestors treated the false prophets, then woe to you!

Numbers References:

Numbers 3:4 Numbers 3:4 Numbers 3:41 Numbers 3:42 Numbers 4:5 Numbers 4:29 Numbers 6:7 Numbers 6:15 Numbers 10:32 Numbers 11:1 Numbers 11:18 Numbers 11:26 Numbers 11:29 Numbers 11:30 Numbers 14:5 Numbers 14:21-22 Numbers 14:27 Numbers 14:28 Numbers 16:1 Numbers 16:18 Numbers 16:27 Numbers 16:38 Numbers 16:40 Numbers 17:2 Numbers 17:2 Numbers 17:3 Numbers 19:5 Numbers 19:12 Numbers 21:34 Numbers 22:20 Numbers 22:35 Numbers 22:38 Numbers 23:3 Numbers 23:12 Numbers 23:13 Numbers 23:20 Numbers 23:26 Numbers 26:3 Numbers 26:33 Numbers 26:59 Numbers 27:8 Numbers 28:14 Numbers 28:20 Numbers 28:31 Numbers 30:8 Numbers 30:13 Numbers 31:5 Numbers 31:8 Numbers 31:10 Numbers 31:20 Numbers 31:42 Numbers 31:50 Numbers 33:52 Numbers 35:30

Litotes

Description

Litotes is a figure of speech in which the speaker expresses a strong positive meaning by negating a word or phrase that means the opposite of the meaning that he intends. For example, someone could intend to communicate that something is extremely good by describing it as "not bad." The difference between a litotes and a double negative is that a litotes heightens the positive meaning beyond what a plain positive statement would do, and a double negative does not. In the example above, the literal meaning of "not bad," taken as a plain double negative, would be "acceptable" or even "good." But if the speaker intended it as a litotes, then the meaning is "very good" or "extremely good."

Reason This Is a Translation Issue

Some languages do not use litotes. People who speak those languages might not understand that a statement using litotes actually strengthens the positive meaning. Instead, they might think that it weakens or even cancels the positive meaning.

Examples From the Bible

> For you yourselves know, brothers, that our coming to you was **not useless**, (1 Thessalonians 2:1 ULT)

By using litotes, Paul emphasized that his visit with them was **very** useful.

> Now when it became day, there was **no small disturbance** among the soldiers over what therefore had happened to Peter. (Acts 12:18 ULT)

By using litotes, Luke emphasized that there was a **lot** of excitement or anxiety among the soldiers about what happened to Peter. (Peter had been in prison, and even though there were soldiers guarding him, he escaped when an angel let him out. So they were very agitated.)

> But you, Bethlehem, in the land of Judah,
> are **not the least** among the leaders of Judah,
> for from you will come a ruler
> who will shepherd my people Israel.
> (Matthew 2:6 ULT)

By using litotes, the prophet emphasized that Bethlehem would be a **very important city**.

Translation Strategies

If the litotes would be understood correctly, consider using it.

(1) If the meaning with the negative would not be clear, give the **positive** meaning in a strong way.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) If the meaning with the negative would not be clear, give the **positive** meaning in a strong way.

> For you yourselves know, brothers, that our coming to you was **not useless**. (1 Thessalonians 2:1 ULT)
>
> > "For you yourselves know, brothers, our visit to you **did much good**."

> Now when it became day, there was **no small disturbance** among the soldiers over what therefore had happened to Peter. (Acts 12:18 ULT)
>
> > "Now when it became day, there was **great excitement** among the soldiers, regarding what had happened to Peter."
> >
> > or:
> > "Now when it became day, the soldiers were **very concerned** because of what had happened to Peter."

Numbers References:

Numbers 9:12 Numbers 26:64

Merism

Definition

Merism is a figure of speech in which a person refers to something by speaking of two extreme parts of it. By referring to the extreme parts, the speaker intends to include also everything in between those parts.

> "I am **the alpha and the omega**," says the Lord God, "the one who is, and who was, and who is to come, the Almighty." (Revelation 1:8 ULT)
>
> I am **the alpha and the omega**, **the first and the last**, **the beginning and the end**. (Revelation 22:13, ULT)

Alpha and omega are the first and last letters of the Greek alphabet. This is a merism that includes everything from the beginning to the end. It means eternal.

> … I praise you, Father, Lord of **heaven and earth** …, (Matthew 11:25b ULT)

Heaven and earth is a merism that includes everything that exists.

Reason This is a Translation Issue

Some languages do not use merism. The readers of those languages may think that the phrase only applies to the items mentioned. They may not realize that it refers to those two things and everything in between.

Examples From the Bible

> **From the rising of the sun to its setting**, Yahweh's name should be praised. (Psalm 113:3 ULT)

This bolded phrase is a merism because it speaks of the east and the west and everywhere in between. It means "everywhere."

> He will bless those who honor him, both **young and old**. (Psalm 115:13)

The bolded phrase is merism because it speaks of old people and young people and everyone in between. It means “everyone.”

Translation Strategies

If the merism would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider using it. If not, here are other options:

(1) Identify what the merism refers to without mentioning the parts.
(2) Identify what the merism refers to and include the parts.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Identify what the merism refers to without mentioning the parts.

> I praise you, Father, Lord of **heaven and earth**. (Matthew 11:25b ULT)
>
> > I praise you, Father, Lord of **everything**.

> **From the rising of the sun to its setting**, Yahweh’s name should be praised. (Psalm 113:3 ULT)
>
> > **In all places**, people should praise Yahweh’s name.

(2) Identify what the merism refers to and include the parts.

> I praise you, Father, Lord of **heaven and earth**. (Matthew 11:25b ULT)
>
> > I praise you, Father, Lord of **everything, including both what is in heaven and what is on earth**.

> He will bless those who honor him, both **young and old**. (Psalm 115:13 ULT)
>
> > He will bless **all those** who honor him, regardless of whether they are **young or old**.

Numbers References:

Numbers 6:4 Numbers 8:4 Numbers 20:17 Numbers 22:18 Numbers 24:13 Numbers 27:17 Numbers 27:21

Metaphor

Description

A metaphor is a figure of speech in which someone speaks of one thing as if it were a different thing because he wants people to think about how those two things are alike.

For example, someone might say, “The girl I love is a red rose.”

A girl and a rose are very different things, but the speaker considers that they are alike in some way. The hearer’s task is to understand in what way they are alike.

The Parts of a Metaphor

The example above shows us that a metaphor has three parts. In this metaphor, the speaker is talking about “the girl I love.” This is the **Topic**. The speaker wants the hearer to think about what is similar between her and “a red rose.” The red rose is the **Image** to which he compares the girl. Most probably, he wants the hearer to consider that they are both beautiful. This is the **Idea** that the girl and the rose both share, and so we may also call it the **Point of Comparison**.

Every metaphor has three parts:

- The **Topic**, the item being immediately discussed by the writer/speaker.
- The **Image**, the physical item (object, event, action, etc.) which the speaker uses to describe the topic.
- The **Idea**, the abstract concept or quality that the physical **Image** brings to the mind of the hearer when he thinks of how the **Image** and the **Topic** are similar. Often, the **Idea** of a metaphor is not explicitly stated in the Bible, but it is only implied from the context. The hearer or reader usually needs to think of the **Idea** himself.

Using these terms, we can say that a metaphor is a figure of speech that uses a physical **Image** to apply an abstract **Idea** to the speaker’s **Topic**.

Usually, a writer or speaker uses a metaphor in order to express something about a **Topic**, with at least one **Point of Comparison** (**Idea**) between the **Topic** and the **Image**. Often in metaphors, the **Topic** and the **Image** are explicitly stated, but the **Idea** is only implied. The writer/speaker often uses a metaphor in order to invite the readers/listeners to think about the similarity between the **Topic** and the **Image** and to figure out for themselves the **Idea** that is being communicated.

Speakers often use metaphors in order to strengthen their message, to make their language more vivid, to express their feelings better, to say something that is hard to say in any other way, or to help people remember their message.

Sometimes speakers use metaphors that are very common in their language. However, sometimes speakers use metaphors that are uncommon, and even some metaphors that are unique. When a metaphor has become very common in a language, often it becomes a "passive" metaphor, in contrast to uncommon metaphors, which we describe as being "active." Passive metaphors and active metaphors each present a different kind of translation problem, which we will discuss below.

Passive Metaphors

A passive metaphor is a metaphor that has been used so much in the language that its speakers no longer regard it as one concept standing for another. Linguists often call these "dead metaphors." Passive metaphors are extremely common. Examples in English include the terms "table **leg**," "family **tree**," "book **leaf**" (meaning a page in a book), or the word "crane" (meaning a large machine for lifting heavy loads). English speakers simply think of these words as having more than one meaning. Examples of passive metaphors in Biblical Hebrew include using the word "hand" to represent "power," using the word "face" to represent "presence," and speaking of emotions or moral qualities as if they were "clothing."

Patterned Pairs of Concepts Acting as Metaphors

Many ways of metaphorical speaking depend on pairs of concepts, where one underlying concept frequently stands for a different underlying concept. For example, in English, the direction "up" (the Image) often represents the concepts of "more" or "better" (the Idea). Because of this pair of underlying concepts, we can make sentences such as "The price of gasoline is going **up**," "A **highly** intelligent man," and also the opposite kind of idea: "The temperature is going **down**," and "I am feeling very **low**."

Patterned pairs of concepts are constantly used for metaphorical purposes in the world's languages because they serve as convenient ways to organize thought. In general, people like to speak of abstract qualities (such as power, presence, emotions, and moral qualities) as if they were body parts, or as if they were objects that could be seen or held, or as if they were events that could be watched as they happened.

When these metaphors are used in normal ways, it is rare that the speaker and audience regard them as figurative speech. Examples of metaphors in English that go unrecognized are:

- "Turn the heat **up**." More is spoken of as up.
- "Let us **go ahead** with our debate." Doing what was planned is spoken of as walking or advancing.
- "You **defend** your theory well." Argument is spoken of as war.
- "A **flow** of words." Words are spoken of as liquids.

English speakers do not view these as metaphorical expressions or figures of speech, so it would be wrong to translate them into other languages in a way that would lead people to pay special attention to them as figurative speech. For a description of important patterns of this kind of metaphor in biblical languages, please see Biblical Imagery — Common Patterns and the pages it will direct you to.

When translating something that is a passive metaphor into another language, do not treat it as a metaphor. Instead, just use the best expression for that thing or concept in the target language.

Active Metaphors

These are metaphors that people recognize as one concept standing for another concept, or one thing for another thing. Metaphors make people think about how the one thing is like the other thing, because in most ways the two things are very different. People also easily recognize these metaphors as giving strength and unusual qualities to the message. For this reason, people pay attention to these metaphors. For example,

> But for you who fear my name, the sun of righteousness will rise with healing in its wings. (Malachi 4:2a ULT)

Here, God speaks about his salvation as if it were the sun rising in order to shine its rays on the people whom he loves. He also speaks of the sun's rays as if they were wings. Also, he speaks of these wings as if they were bringing medicine that would heal his people. Here is another example:

> And he said to them, "Go and tell that fox …" (Luke 13:32a ULT)

Here, "that fox" refers to King Herod. The people listening to Jesus certainly understood that Jesus was intending for them to apply certain characteristics of a fox to Herod. They probably understood that Jesus intended to communicate that Herod was evil, either in a cunning way or as someone who was destructive, murderous, or who took things that did not belong to him, or all of these.

Active metaphors require the translator's special care to make a correct translation. To do so, you need to understand the parts of a metaphor and how they work together to produce meaning.

> Jesus said to them, "I am the bread of life; he who comes to me will not be hungry, and he who believes in me will never be thirsty." (John 6:35 ULT)

In this metaphor, Jesus called himself the bread of life. The **Topic** is "I" (meaning Jesus himself) and the **Image** is "bread." Bread was the primary food that people ate in that place and time. The similarity between bread and Jesus is that people need both to live. Just as people need to eat food in order to have physical life, people need to trust in Jesus in order to have eternal life. The **Idea** of the metaphor is "life." In this case, Jesus stated the central Idea of the metaphor, but often the Idea is only implied.

Purposes of Metaphor

- One purpose of metaphor is to teach people about something that they do not know (the **Topic**) by showing that it is like something that they already do know (the **Image**).
- Another purpose is to emphasize that something (the **Topic**) has a particular quality (the **Idea**) or to show that it has that quality in an extreme way.
- Another purpose is to lead people to feel the same way about the **Topic** as they would feel about the **Image**.

Reasons This Is a Translation Issue

- People may not recognize that something is a metaphor. In other words, they may mistake a metaphor for a literal statement, and thus, misunderstand it.
- People may not be familiar with the thing that is used as an image, and so, not be able to understand the metaphor.
- If the topic is not stated, people may not know what the topic is.
- People may not know the points of comparison that the speaker wants them to understand. If they fail to think of these points of comparison, they will not understand the metaphor.
- People may think that they understand the metaphor, but they do not. This can happen when they apply points of comparison from their own culture, rather than from the biblical culture.

Translation Principles

- Make the meaning of a metaphor as clear to the target audience as it was to the original audience.

- Do not make the meaning of a metaphor more clear to the target audience than you think it was to the original audience.

Examples From the Bible

> Listen to this word, **you cows of Bashan**, (Amos 4:1q ULT)

In this metaphor Amos speaks to the upper-class women of Samaria ("you," the Topic) as if they were cows (the Image). Amos does not say what similarity(s) he intends between these women and cows. He wants the reader to think of them, and he fully expects that readers from his culture will easily do so. From the context, we can see that he means that the women are like cows in that they are fat and interested only in feeding themselves. If we were to apply similarities from a different culture, such as that cows are sacred and should be worshiped, we would get the wrong meaning from this verse.

NOTE: Amos does not actually mean that the women are cows. He speaks to them as human beings.

> Yet, Yahweh, you are our father; **we are the clay**. **You are our potter**; and we all are the work of your hand. (Isaiah 64:8 ULT)

The example above has two related metaphors. The Topic(s) are "we" and "you," and the Image(s) are "clay" and "potter." The similarity between a potter and God is the fact that both make what they wish out of their material. The potter makes what he wishes out of the clay, and God makes what he wishes out of his people. The Idea being expressed by the comparison between the potter's clay and "us" is that **neither the clay nor God's people have a right to complain about what they are becoming**.

> Jesus said to them, "Take heed and beware of **the yeast of the Pharisees and Sadducees**." The disciples reasoned among themselves and said, "It is because we did not take bread." (Matthew 16:6-7 ULT)

Jesus used a metaphor here, but his disciples did not realize it. When he said "yeast," they thought he was talking about bread, but "yeast" was the Image in his metaphor, and the Topic was the teaching of the Pharisees and Sadducees. Since the disciples (the original audience) did not understand what Jesus meant, it would not be good to state clearly here what Jesus meant.

Translation Strategies

If people would understand the metaphor in the same way that the original readers would have understood it, go ahead and use it. Be sure to test the translation to make sure that people do understand it in the right way.

If people do not or would not understand it, here are some other strategies.

(1) If the metaphor is a common expression in the source language or expresses a patterned pair of concepts in a biblical language (that is, it is a passive metaphor), then express the **Idea** in the simplest way preferred by your language.
(2) If the metaphor seems to be an active metaphor, you can translate it literally **if you think that the target language also uses this metaphor in the same way to mean the same thing as in the Bible**. If you do this, be sure to test it to make sure that the language community understands it correctly.
(3) If the target audience does not realize that it is a metaphor, then change the metaphor to a simile. Some languages do this by adding words such as "like" or "as." See Simile.
(4) If the target audience would not know the **Image**, see Translate Unknowns for ideas on how to translate that image.
(5) If the target audience would not use that **Image** for that meaning, use an image from your own culture instead. Be sure that it is an image that could have been possible in Bible times.
(6) If the target audience would not know what the **Topic** is, then state the topic clearly. (However, do not do this if the original audience did not know what the Topic was.)
(7) If the target audience would not know the intended similarity (the **Idea**) between the topic and the image, then state it clearly.
(8) If none of these strategies is satisfactory, then simply state the **Idea** plainly without using a metaphor.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) If the metaphor is a common expression in the source language or expresses a patterned pair of concepts in a biblical language (that is, a passive metaphor), then express the Idea in the simplest way preferred by your language.

> Then, see, one of the leaders of the synagogue, named Jairus, came, and when he saw him, **fell at his feet**. (Mark 5:22 ULT)
>
> > Then one of the leaders of the synagogue, named Jairus, came, and when he saw him, **immediately bowed down in front of him**.

(2) If the metaphor seems to be an active metaphor, you can translate it literally **if you think that the target language also uses this metaphor in the same way to mean the same thing as in the Bible**. If you do this, be sure to test it to make sure that the language community understands it correctly.

> But Jesus said to them, "He wrote this commandment to you because of your **hardness of heart.**" (Mark 10:5 ULT)
>
> > It was because of your **hard hearts** that he wrote you this law.

We made no change to this one, but it must be tested to make sure that the target audience correctly understands this metaphor.

(3) If the target audience does not realize that it is a metaphor, then change the metaphor to a simile. Some languages do this by adding words such as "like" or "as."

> Yet, Yahweh, you are our father; we **are the clay.** You **are our potter**; and we all are the work of your hand. (Isaiah 64:8 ULT)
>
> > And yet, Yahweh, you are our father; we are **like** clay. You are **like** a potter; and we all are the work of your hand.

(4) If the target audience would not know the **Image**, see Translate Unknowns for ideas on how to translate that image.

> Saul, Saul, why do you persecute me? It is hard for you **to kick against a goad**. (Acts 26:14b ULT)
>
> > Saul, Saul, why do you persecute me? It is hard for you to **kick against a pointed stick**.

(5) If the target audience would not use that **Image** for that meaning, use an image from your own culture instead. Be sure that it is an image that could have been possible in Bible times.

> Yet, Yahweh, you are our father; we are the **clay**. You are our **potter**; and we all are the work of your hand. (Isaiah 64:8 ULT)
>
> > "And yet, Yahweh, you are our father; we are the **wood**. You are our **carver**; and we all are the work of your hand."
> > "And yet, Yahweh, you are our father; we are the **string**. You are the **weaver**; and we all are the work of your hand."

(6) If the target audience would not know what the **Topic** is, then state the topic clearly. (However, do not do this if the original audience did not know what the topic was.)

> Yahweh lives; may **my rock** be praised. May the God of my salvation be exalted. (Psalm 18:46 ULT)
>
> > Yahweh lives; **He is my rock**. May he be praised. May the God of my salvation be exalted.

(7) If the target audience would not know the intended similarity between the Topic and the Image, then state it clearly.

> Yahweh lives; may **my rock** be praised. May the God of my salvation be exalted. (Psalm 18:46 ULT)
>
> > Yahweh lives; may he be praised because he is the rock **under which I can hide from my enemies**. May the God of my salvation be exalted.
>
> Saul, Saul, why do you persecute me? It is hard for you **to kick against a goad**. (Acts 26:14 ULT)
>
> > Saul, Saul, why do you persecute me? You **fight against me and hurt yourself like an ox that kicks against its owner's pointed stick**.

(8) If none of these strategies are satisfactory, then simply state the idea plainly without using a metaphor.

> I will make you to become **fishers of men**. (Mark 1:17b ULT)
>
> > I will make you to become **people who gather men**.
> > Now you gather fish. I will make you **gather people**.

To learn more about specific metaphors, see Biblical Imagery — Common Patterns.

Numbers References:

Numbers 1:2 Numbers 1:2 Numbers 1:2 Numbers 1:4 Numbers 1:4 Numbers 1:4 Numbers 1:5 Numbers 1:16 Numbers 1:16 Numbers 1:16 Numbers 1:17 Numbers 1:18 Numbers 1:44 Numbers 1:44 Numbers 1:45 Numbers 1:45 Numbers 1:47 Numbers 1:47 Numbers 1:49 Numbers 1:51 Numbers 1:53 Numbers 2:3 Numbers 2:3 Numbers 2:32 Numbers 2:33 Numbers 2:34 Numbers 3:4 Numbers 3:9 Numbers 3:12 Numbers 3:12 Numbers 3:15 Numbers 3:15 Numbers 3:25 Numbers 3:29 Numbers 3:36 Numbers 4:2 Numbers 4:2 Numbers 4:2 Numbers 4:3 Numbers 4:18 Numbers 4:23 Numbers 5:12 Numbers 5:19 Numbers 5:19 Numbers 5:19 Numbers 5:20 Numbers 5:20 Numbers 5:21 Numbers 5:27 Numbers 5:28 Numbers 5:29 Numbers 5:29 Numbers 5:31 Numbers 6:6 Numbers 6:10 Numbers 6:12 Numbers 6:25 Numbers 6:26 Numbers 6:27 Numbers 7:2 Numbers 7:2 Numbers 7:2 Numbers 7:7 Numbers 7:9 Numbers 7:15 Numbers 7:15 Numbers 7:17 Numbers 7:87 Numbers 7:88 Numbers 8:6 Numbers 8:8 Numbers 8:11 Numbers 8:13 Numbers 8:15 Numbers 8:16 Numbers 8:19 Numbers 8:21 Numbers 8:24 Numbers 8:25 Numbers 8:26 Numbers 9:13 Numbers 9:13 Numbers 10:4 Numbers 10:8 Numbers 10:10 Numbers 10:35 Numbers 10:36 Numbers 10:36 Numbers 11:4 Numbers 11:6 Numbers 11:11 Numbers 11:12 Numbers 11:12 Numbers 11:12 Numbers 11:12 Numbers 11:14 Numbers 11:14 Numbers 11:15 Numbers 11:17 Numbers 11:17 Numbers 11:17 Numbers 11:20 Numbers 11:23 Numbers 11:25 Numbers 11:25 Numbers 11:25 Numbers 11:26 Numbers 11:29 Numbers 11:31 Numbers 12:5 Numbers 12:10 Numbers 12:11 Numbers 13:2 Numbers 13:3 Numbers 13:19 Numbers 13:27 Numbers 13:32 Numbers 13:33 Numbers 14:1 Numbers 14:4 Numbers 14:8 Numbers 14:9 Numbers 14:9 Numbers 14:14 Numbers 14:18 Numbers 14:18 Numbers 14:19 Numbers 14:23 Numbers 14:23 Numbers 14:24 Numbers 14:24 Numbers 14:24 Numbers 14:33 Numbers 14:33 Numbers 14:34 Numbers 14:36 Numbers 14:37 Numbers 14:40 Numbers 14:41 Numbers 14:42 Numbers 14:43 Numbers 14:45 Numbers 15:8 Numbers 15:9 Numbers 15:19 Numbers 15:20 Numbers 15:24 Numbers 15:30 Numbers 15:30 Numbers 15:31 Numbers 15:31 Numbers 15:31 Numbers 15:39 Numbers 15:39 Numbers 16:2 Numbers 16:3 Numbers 16:7 Numbers 16:8 Numbers 16:9 Numbers 16:10 Numbers 16:10 Numbers 16:13 Numbers 16:14 Numbers 16:14 Numbers 16:15 Numbers 16:15 Numbers 16:24 Numbers

16:26 Numbers 16:27 Numbers 16:30 Numbers 16:32 Numbers 16:33 Numbers 16:40 Numbers 16:40 Numbers 16:42 Numbers 16:45 Numbers 16:46 Numbers 16:47 Numbers 17:3 Numbers 17:5 Numbers 17:10 Numbers 18:6 Numbers 18:19 Numbers 18:20 Numbers 19:9 Numbers 19:10 Numbers 19:11 Numbers 19:13 Numbers 19:20 Numbers 20:1 Numbers 20:3 Numbers 20:14 Numbers 20:15 Numbers 20:16 Numbers 21:18 Numbers 21:28 Numbers 22:5 Numbers 22:11 Numbers 22:31 Numbers 22:32 Numbers 22:38 Numbers 23:9 Numbers 23:10 Numbers 23:20 Numbers 23:24 Numbers 24:3 Numbers 24:4 Numbers 24:7 Numbers 24:8 Numbers 24:8 Numbers 24:15 Numbers 24:16 Numbers 24:17 Numbers 24:17 Numbers 24:17 Numbers 24:21 Numbers 25:1 Numbers 25:3 Numbers 25:4 Numbers 25:5 Numbers 25:11 Numbers 25:13 Numbers 25:15 Numbers 26:10 Numbers 26:11 Numbers 30:1 Numbers 30:2 Numbers 32:7 Numbers 32:8 Numbers 32:9 Numbers 32:14 Numbers 32:42 Numbers 33:1 Numbers 33:55 Numbers 34:2 Numbers 34:11 Numbers 34:14 Numbers 35:2 Numbers 36:1 Numbers 36:2 Numbers 36:3 Numbers 36:7 Numbers 36:7

Metonymy

Description

Metonymy is a figure of speech in which an item (either physical or abstract) is called not by its own name, but by the name of something closely associated with it. A metonym is a word or phrase used as a substitute for something that it is associated with.

> … and **the blood** of Jesus his Son cleanses us from every sin. (1 John 1:7b ULT)

The blood represents Christ's death.

> And he took **the cup** in the same way after supper, saying, "**This cup** is the new covenant in my blood, which is poured out for you." (Luke 22:20 ULT)

The cup represents the wine that is in the cup.

Metonymy can be used

- as a shorter way of referring to something
- to make an abstract idea more meaningful by referring to it with the name of a physical object associated with it

Reason This Is a Translation Issue

The Bible uses metonymy very often. Speakers of some languages are not familiar with metonymy and they may not recognize it when they read it in the Bible. If they do not recognize the metonymy, they will not understand the passage or, worse yet, they will get a wrong understanding of the passage. Whenever a metonym is used, people need to be able to understand what it represents.

Examples From the Bible

> The Lord God will give to him **the throne** of his father David. (Luke 1:32b ULT)

A throne represents the authority of a king. "Throne" is a metonym for "kingly

authority," "kingship," or "reign." This means that God would make him become a king who would follow King David.

> Then immediately his **mouth** was opened (Luke 1:64a ULT)

The mouth here represents the power to speak. This means that he was able to talk again.

> Who warned you to flee from **the wrath** that is coming? (Luke 3:7b ULT)

The word "wrath" or "anger" is a metonym for "punishment." God was extremely angry with the people and, as a result, he would punish them.

Translation Strategies

If people would easily understand the metonym, consider using it. Otherwise, here are some options.

(1) Use the metonym along with the name of the thing it represents.

(2) Use only the name of the thing the metonym represents.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Use the metonym along with the name of the thing it represents.

> And he took the cup in the same way after the supper, saying, "**This cup** is the new covenant in my blood, which is poured out for you." (Luke 22:20 ULT)
>
> > He took the cup in the same way after supper, saying, "**The wine in this cup** is the new covenant in my blood, which is poured out for you."

This verse also contains a second metonym: The cup, (representing the wine it contains) also represents the new covenant made with the blood Christ shed for us.

(2) Use the name of the thing the metonym represents.

> The Lord God will give him **the throne** of his father David. (Luke 1:32b ULT)
>
> > "The Lord God will give him **the kingly authority** of his father, David."
> > or:
> > "The Lord God will **make him king** like his ancestor, King David."

> Who warned you to flee from **the wrath** that is coming? (Luke 3:7b ULT)
>
> > "Who warned you to flee from God's coming **punishment**?"

To learn about some common metonymies, see Biblical Imagery — Common Metonymies.

Numbers References:

Numbers 1:3 Numbers 2:2 Numbers 2:3 Numbers 2:9 Numbers 2:10 Numbers 2:17 Numbers 3:4 Numbers 3:4 Numbers 3:6 Numbers 3:7 Numbers 3:13 Numbers 3:38 Numbers 3:49 Numbers 4:4 Numbers 4:5 Numbers 4:15 Numbers 4:15 Numbers 4:16 Numbers 4:18 Numbers 4:19 Numbers 4:20 Numbers 5:7 Numbers 5:8 Numbers 5:13 Numbers 5:16 Numbers 5:18 Numbers 5:18 Numbers 5:25 Numbers 5:30 Numbers 5:30 Numbers 5:31 Numbers 6:4 Numbers 6:5 Numbers 6:7 Numbers 6:9 Numbers 6:9 Numbers 6:11 Numbers 6:12 Numbers 6:16 Numbers 6:19 Numbers 6:20 Numbers 7:3 Numbers 7:3 Numbers 7:9 Numbers 7:10 Numbers 7:10 Numbers 7:84 Numbers 7:88 Numbers 8:2 Numbers 8:3 Numbers 8:7 Numbers 8:9 Numbers 8:10 Numbers 8:11 Numbers 8:13 Numbers 8:22 Numbers 9:6 Numbers 9:18 Numbers 9:20 Numbers 9:23 Numbers 9:23 Numbers 10:2 Numbers 10:5 Numbers 10:6 Numbers 10:9 Numbers 10:10 Numbers 10:10 Numbers 10:13 Numbers 10:21 Numbers 10:31 Numbers 10:33 Numbers 10:33 Numbers 10:35 Numbers 11:1 Numbers 11:7 Numbers 11:18 Numbers 11:20 Numbers 11:23 Numbers 11:23 Numbers 11:24 Numbers 11:31 Numbers 12:3 Numbers 12:6 Numbers 12:7 Numbers 13:3 Numbers 13:20 Numbers 13:22 Numbers 13:29 Numbers 13:33 Numbers 14:5 Numbers 14:13 Numbers 14:14 Numbers 14:18 Numbers 14:20 Numbers 14:22 Numbers 14:28 Numbers 14:31 Numbers 14:37 Numbers 14:39 Numbers 14:41 Numbers 14:42 Numbers 14:43 Numbers 15:15 Numbers 15:23 Numbers 15:24 Numbers 15:25 Numbers 15:28 Numbers 15:31 Numbers 15:39 Numbers 16:2 Numbers 16:7 Numbers 16:7 Numbers 16:9 Numbers 16:14 Numbers 16:16 Numbers 16:17 Numbers 16:28 Numbers 16:34 Numbers 16:34 Numbers 16:37 Numbers 16:38 Numbers 16:40 Numbers 16:43 Numbers 16:46 Numbers 16:46 Numbers 17:2 Numbers 17:4 Numbers 17:4 Numbers 17:7 Numbers 17:9 Numbers 17:10 Numbers 18:9 Numbers 18:12 Numbers 18:19 Numbers 18:29 Numbers 18:30 Numbers 18:32 Numbers 19:3 Numbers 19:4 Numbers 19:5 Numbers 19:16 Numbers 19:16 Numbers 20:3 Numbers 20:6 Numbers 20:6 Numbers 20:9 Numbers 20:16 Numbers 20:18 Numbers 20:18 Numbers 20:20 Numbers 20:20 Numbers 20:21 Numbers 20:29 Numbers 21:2 Numbers 21:3 Numbers 21:5 Numbers 21:20 Numbers 21:26 Numbers 21:34 Numbers 22:7 Numbers 22:33 Numbers 23:5 Numbers 23:7 Numbers 23:12 Numbers 23:16 Numbers 23:21 Numbers 23:21 Numbers 24:13 Numbers 24:13 Numbers 24:17 Numbers 24:24 Numbers 25:4 Numbers 26:2 Numbers 26:53 Numbers 26:56 Numbers 26:61 Numbers 27:2 Numbers 27:4 Numbers 27:5 Numbers 27:11 Numbers 27:14 Numbers 27:14 Numbers 27:16 Numbers 27:17 Numbers 27:19 Numbers 27:19 Numbers 27:20 Numbers 27:21 Numbers 27:21 Numbers 27:23 Numbers 30:2 Numbers 30:6 Numbers 31:6 Numbers 31:9 Numbers 31:14 Numbers 31:16 Numbers 31:28 Numbers 31:50 Numbers 32:4 Numbers 32:20 Numbers 33:1 Numbers 33:3 Numbers 33:52 Numbers 34:2 Numbers 35:12 Numbers 35:19 Numbers 35:24 Numbers 35:25 Numbers 35:30 Numbers 35:33 Numbers 36:1 Numbers 36:3 Numbers 36:5

Nominal Adjectives

Description

In some languages an adjective can be used to refer to a class of things that the adjective describes. When it does, it acts like a noun. For example, the word “rich” is an adjective. Here are two sentences that show that “rich” is an adjective.

> **The rich man** had huge numbers of flocks and herds. (2 Samuel 12:2 ULT)

The adjective “rich” comes before the word “man” and describes “man.”

> **He will not be rich**; his wealth will not last. (Job 15:29a ULT)

The adjective “rich” comes after the verb “be” and describes “He.”

Here is a sentence that shows that “rich” can also function as a noun.

> **The rich** must not give more than the half shekel, and **the poor** must not give less. (Exodus 30:15b ULT)

In Exodus 30:15, the word “rich” acts as a noun in the phrase “the rich,” and it refers to rich people. The word “poor” also acts as a noun and refers to poor people.

Reason This Is a Translation Issue

- Many times in the Bible adjectives are used as nouns to describe a group of people.
- Some languages do not use adjectives in this way.
- Readers of these languages may think that the text is talking about one particular person when it is really talking about the group of people whom the adjective describes.

Examples From the Bible

> The scepter of wickedness must not rule in the land of **the righteous**. (Psalms 125:3a ULT)

“The righteous” here are people who are righteous, not one particular righteous person.

> Blessed are **the meek**. (Matthew 5:5a ULT)

“The meek” here are all people who are meek, not one particular meek person.

Translation Strategies

If your language uses adjectives as nouns to refer to a class of people, consider using the adjectives in this way. If it would sound strange, or if the meaning would be unclear or wrong, here is another option:

(1) Use the adjective with a plural form of the noun that the adjective describes.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Use the adjective with a plural form of the noun that the adjective describes.

> The scepter of wickedness must not rule in the land of **the righteous**. (Psalms 125:3a ULT)
>
> > The scepter of wickedness must not rule in the land of **righteous people**.

> Blessed are **the meek**. (Matthew 5:5a ULT)
>
> > Blessed are **people who are meek**.

Numbers References:

Numbers 19:17 Numbers 19:19 Numbers 19:22 Numbers 20:10 Numbers 23:10 Numbers 26:54 Numbers 31:19 Numbers 32:21 Numbers 33:54 Numbers 35:8

Parallelism

Description

Parallelism is a poetic device in which two phrases or clauses that are similar in structure or idea are used together. The following are some of the different kinds of parallelism.

- The second clause or phrase means the same as the first. This is called synonymous parallelism.
- The second clarifies or strengthens the meaning of the first.
- The second completes what is said in the first.
- The second says something that contrasts with the first, but adds to the same idea.

Parallelism is most commonly found in Old Testament poetry, such as in the books of Psalms and Proverbs. It also occurs in Greek in the New Testament, both in the four gospels and in the apostles' letters.

This article will only discuss synonymous parallelism, the kind in which the two parallel phrases mean the same thing, because that is the kind that presents a problem for translation. Note that we use the term "synonymous parallelism" for long phrases or clauses that have the same meaning. We use the term "doublet" for words or very short phrases that mean basically the same thing and are used together.

In the poetry of the original languages, synonymous parallelism has several effects:

- It shows that something is very important by saying it more than once and in more than one way.
- It helps the hearer to think more deeply about the idea by saying it in different ways.
- It makes the language more beautiful and raises it above the ordinary way of speaking.

Reason This Is a Translation Issue

Some languages would not use synonymous parallelism. They would either think it odd that someone said the same thing twice, or, since it is in the Bible, they would think that the two phrases must have some difference in meaning. For them it would be confusing, rather than beautiful. They would not understand that the repetition of the idea in different words serves to emphasize the idea.

Examples From the Bible

> Your word is a lamp to my feet
>
> and a light for my path. (Psalm 119:105 ULT)

Both parts of the sentence are metaphors saying that God's word teaches people how to live. That is the single idea. The words "lamp" and "light" are similar in meaning because they refer to light. The words "my feet" and "my path" are related because they refer to a person walking. Walking is a metaphor for living.

> You make him to rule over the works of your hands;
>
> you have put all things under his feet (Psalm 8:6 ULT)

Both lines say that God made man the ruler of everything. "To rule over" is the same idea as putting things "under his feet," and "the works of your [God's] hands" is the same idea as "all things."

> Yahweh sees everything a person does
>
> and watches all the paths he takes. (Proverbs 5:21 ULT)

The first phrase and the second phrase mean the same thing. There are three ideas that are the same between these two phrases. "Sees" corresponds to "watches," "everything… does" corresponds to "all the paths…takes," and "a person" corresponds to "he."

> Praise Yahweh, all you nations;
>
> exalt him, all you peoples! (Psalm 117:1 ULT)

Both parts of this verse tell people everywhere to praise Yahweh. The words ‘Praise’ and ‘exalt’ mean the same thing. The words ‘Yahweh’ and ‘him’ refer to the same person. The terms ‘all you nations’ and ‘all you peoples’ refer to the same people.

> For Yahweh has a lawsuit with his people,
>
> and he will fight in court against Israel. (Micah 6:2b ULT)

The two parts of this verse say that Yahweh has a serious disagreement with his people, Israel. These are not two different disagreements or two different groups of people.

Translation Strategies

For most kinds of parallelism, it is good to translate both of the clauses or phrases. For synonymous parallelism, it is good to translate both clauses if people in your language understand that the purpose of saying something twice is to strengthen a single idea. But if your language does not use parallelism in this way, then consider using one of the following translation strategies.

(1) Combine the ideas of both clauses into one.
(2) If it appears that the clauses are used together to show that what they say is really true, you could combine the ideas of both clauses into one and include words that emphasize the truth such as “truly” or “certainly.”
(3) If it appears that the clauses are used together to intensify an idea in them, you could combine the ideas of both clauses into one and use words like “very,” “completely,” or “all.”

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Combine the ideas of both clauses into one.

> Until now you have dealt deceitfully with me and you have spoken lies to me. (Judges 16:13, ULT)

Delilah expressed this idea twice to emphasize that she was very upset.

> > Until now you have deceived me with your lies.
>
> Yahweh sees everything a person does and watches all the paths he takes. (Proverbs 5:21 ULT)

The phrase “all the paths he takes” is a metaphor for “all he does.”

> > Yahweh pays attention to everything a person does.
>
> For Yahweh has a lawsuit with his people, and he will fight in court against Israel. (Micah 6:2 ULT)

This parallelism describes one serious disagreement that Yahweh had with one group of people. If this is unclear, the phrases can be combined:

> > For Yahweh has a lawsuit with his people, Israel.

(2) If it appears that the clauses are used together to show that what they say is really true, you could combine the ideas of both clauses into one and include words that emphasize the truth such as “truly” or “certainly.”

> Yahweh sees everything a person does and watches all the paths he takes. (Proverbs 5:21 ULT)
>
> > Yahweh truly sees everything a person does.
>
> You make him to rule over the works of your hands; you have put all things under his feet (Psalm 8:6 ULT)
>
> > You have certainly made him to rule over everything that you have created.

(3) If it appears that the clauses are used together to intensify an idea in them, you

could combine the ideas of both clauses into one and use words like “very,” “completely” or “all.”

> Until now you have dealt deceitfully with me and you have spoken lies to me. (Judges 16:13, ULT)
>
> > All you have done is lie to me.
>
> Yahweh sees everything a person does and watches all the paths he takes. (Proverbs 5:21 ULT)
>
> > Yahweh sees absolutely everything that a person does.

Numbers References:

Numbers 3:38 Numbers 5:10 Numbers 5:12 Numbers 5:13 Numbers 5:14 Numbers 5:28 Numbers 9:3 Numbers 9:14 Numbers 11:22 Numbers 12:6 Numbers 14:1 Numbers 14:35 Numbers 16:3 Numbers 16:5 Numbers 16:29 Numbers 17:12 Numbers 21:18 Numbers 23:7 Numbers 23:23 Numbers 24:3

Predictive Past

Description

The predictive past is a figure of speech that uses the past tense to refer to things that will happen in the future. This is sometimes done in prophecy to show that the event will certainly happen. It is also called the prophetic perfect.

> Therefore my people have gone into captivity for lack of understanding; their honored leaders go hungry, and their common people have nothing to drink. (Isaiah 5:13 ULT)

In the example above, the people of Israel had not yet gone into captivity, but God spoke of their going into captivity as if it had already happened because he had decided that they certainly would go into captivity.

Reason This Is a Translation Issue:

Readers who are not aware of the past tense being used in prophecy to refer to future events may find it confusing.

Examples From the Bible

> Now Jericho was tightly closed because of the sons of Israel. No one went out and no one came in. Yahweh said to Joshua, “See, I have delivered Jericho, and its king, and its powerful soldiers into your hand.” (Joshua 6:1-2 ULT)

> For to us a child has been born, to us a son has been given;
> and the rule will be on his shoulder.
> (Isaiah 9:6a ULT)

In the examples above, God spoke of things that would happen in the future as if they had already happened.

> But even Enoch, the seventh from Adam, prophesied about them, saying, “Look! The Lord came with thousands and thousands of his holy ones.” (Jude 1:14 ULT)

Enoch was speaking of something that would happen in the future, but he used the past tense when he said "the Lord came."

Translation Strategies

If the past tense would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider using it. If not, here are some other options.

(1) Use the future tense to refer to future events.
(2) If it refers to something in the immediate future, use a form that would show that.
(3) Some languages may use the present tense to show that something will happen very soon.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Use the future tense to refer to future events.

> For to us a child **has been born**, to us a son **has been given**. (Isaiah 9:6a ULT)
>
> > For to us a child **will be born**, to us a son **will be given**.

(2) If it refers to something that would happen very soon, use a form that shows that.

> Yahweh said to Joshua, "See, I have delivered Jericho, and its king, and its powerful soldiers into your hand." (Joshua 6:2 ULT)
>
> > Yahweh said to Joshua, "See, I **am about to deliver** over to you Jericho, its king, and its powerful soldiers."

(3) Some languages may use the present tense to show that something will happen very soon.

> Yahweh said to Joshua, "See, I have delivered Jericho, and its king, and its powerful soldiers into your hand." (Joshua 6:2 ULT)
>
> > Yahweh said to Joshua, "See, I **am delivering** over to you Jericho, its king, and its powerful soldiers."

Numbers References:

Numbers 24:17

Personification

Description

Personification is a figure of speech in which someone speaks of something as if it could do things that animals or people can do. People often do this because it makes it easier to talk about things that we cannot see:

Such as wisdom:

> Does not Wisdom call out? (Proverbs 8:1a ULT)

Or sin:

> Sin crouches at the door. (Genesis 4:7b ULT)

People also use personification because it is sometimes easier to talk about people's relationships with non-human things such as wealth as if they were relationships between people.

> You cannot serve God and wealth. (Matthew 6:24b ULT)

In each case, the purpose of the personification is to highlight a certain characteristic of the non-human thing. As in metaphor, the reader needs to think of the way that the thing is like a certain kind of person.

Reasons This Is a Translation Issue

- Some languages do not use personification.
- Some languages use personification only in certain situations.

Examples From the Bible

> You cannot **serve** God and wealth. (Matthew 6:24b ULT)

Jesus speaks of wealth as if it were a master whom people might serve. Loving money and basing one's decisions on it is like serving it as a slave would serve his master.

> Does not Wisdom **call** out? Does not Understanding **raise her voice**? (Proverbs 8:1 ULT)

The author speaks of wisdom and understanding as if they were woman who calls out to teach people. This means that they are not something hidden, but something obvious that people should pay attention to.

Translation Strategies

If the personification would be understood clearly, consider using it. If it would not be understood, here are some other ways for translating it.

(1) Add words or phrases to make the human (or animal) characteristic clear.
(2) In addition to Strategy (1), use words such as "like" or "as" to show that the sentence is not to be understood literally.
(3) Find a way to translate it without the personification.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Add words or phrases to make the human (or animal) characteristic clear.

> **Sin crouches** at the door. (Genesis 4:7b ULT) — God speaks of sin as if it were a wild animal that is waiting for the chance to attack. This shows how dangerous sin is. An additional phrase can be added to make this danger clear.

> > **Sin** is at your door, **waiting to attack you.**

(2) In addition to Strategy (1), use words such as "like" or "as" to show that the sentence is not to be understood literally.

> Sin crouches at the door. (Genesis 4:7b ULT) — This can be translated with the word "as."

> > Sin is crouching at the door, **just as a wild animal does as it waits to attack a person.**.

(3) Find a way to translate it without the personification.

> Even the **winds and the sea obey him**. (Matthew 8:27b ULT) — The men speak of the "wind and the sea" as if they are able to hear and obey Jesus, just as people can. This could also be translated without the idea of obedience by speaking of Jesus controlling them.
>
> > He even **controls the winds and the sea**.

NOTE: We have broadened our definition of "personification" to include "zoomorphism" (speaking of other things as if they had animal characteristics) and "anthropomorphism" (speaking of non-human things as if they had human characteristics) because the translation strategies for them are the same.

Numbers References:

Numbers 1:51 Numbers 2:17 Numbers 6:21 Numbers 9:17 Numbers 9:18 Numbers 9:19 Numbers 9:22 Numbers 10:12 Numbers 10:14 Numbers 10:18 Numbers 10:33 Numbers 10:35 Numbers 10:36 Numbers 11:1 Numbers 12:5 Numbers 12:10 Numbers 13:20 Numbers 13:32 Numbers 14:14 Numbers 14:40 Numbers 14:44 Numbers 14:44 Numbers 16:30 Numbers 16:32 Numbers 16:33 Numbers 16:34 Numbers 16:35 Numbers 20:8 Numbers 20:14 Numbers 21:15 Numbers 21:20 Numbers 21:28 Numbers 23:14 Numbers 23:28 Numbers 23:28 Numbers 26:10 Numbers 26:10 Numbers 32:23

Possession

Description

In English, the grammatical form that commonly indicates possession is also used to indicate a variety of relationships between people and objects or people and other people. In English, that grammatical relationship is shown by using the word "**of**," by using **an apostrophe and the letter "s"**, or by using a **possessive pronoun**. The following examples are different ways to indicate that my grandfather owns a house.

- the house **of** my grandfather
- my **grandfather's** house
- **his** house

Possession is used in Hebrew, Greek, and English for a variety of situations. Here are a few common situations that it is used for.

- Ownership — Someone owns something.

> The clothes of me - my clothes — The clothes that I own

- Social Relationship — Someone has some kind of social relationship with another.

> The mother of John — John's mother - the woman who gave birth to John, or the woman who cared for John

> A teacher of Israel - Israel's teacher — a person who teaches Israel

- Association — A particular thing is associated with a particular person, place, or thing.

> The sickness of David - David's sickness — the sickness that David is experiencing

> the fear of the Lord — the fear that is appropriate for a human being to have when relating to the Lord

- Contents — Something has something in it.

> a bag of clothes — a bag that has clothes in it, or a bag that is full of clothes

- Part and whole: One thing is part of another.

> my head — the head that is part of my body

> the roof of a house — the roof that is part of a house

In some languages there is a special form of possession, termed **inalienable possession.** This form of possession is used for things that cannot be removed from you, as opposed to things you could lose. In the examples above, *my head* and *my mother* are examples of inalienable possession (at least in some languages), while *my clothes* or *my teacher* would be alienably possessed. What may be considered alienable vs. inalienable may differ by language. In languages that mark the difference, the expression of inalienable possession and alienable possession will be different.

Reasons This Is a Translation Issue

- You (the translator) need to understand the relationship between two ideas represented by the two nouns when one is in the grammatical relationship of possessing the other.
- Some languages do not use grammatical possession for all of the situations that your source text Bible might use it for.

Examples From the Bible

Ownership — In the example below, the son owned the money.

> The younger son … wasted his wealth by living recklessly. (Luke 15:13b)

Social Relationship — In the example below, the disciples were people who learned from John.

> Then **the disciples of John** came to him. (Matthew 9:14a ULT)

Association — In the example below, the gospel is the message associated with Paul because he preaches it.

> Remember Jesus Christ, raised from the dead, from the seed of David, according to **my gospel**, (2 Timothy 2:8 ULT)

Material — In the example below, the material used for making the crowns was gold.

> On their heads were something like **crowns of gold.** (Revelation 9:7b)

Contents — In the example below, the cup has water in it.

> For whoever gives you **a cup of water** to drink … will not lose his reward. (Mark 9:41 ULT)

Part of a whole — In the example below, the door was a part of the palace.

> But Uriah slept at **the door of the king's palace.** (2 Samuel 11:9a ULT)

Part of a group — In the example below, "us" refers to the whole group and "each one" refers to the individual members.

> Now to **each one of us** grace has been given according to the measure of the gift of Christ. (Ephesians 4:7 ULT)

Events and Possession

Sometimes one or both of the nouns is an abstract noun that refers to an event or action. In the examples below, the abstract nouns are in **bold** print. These are just some of the relationships that are possible between two nouns when one of them refers to an event.

Subject — Sometimes the word after "of" tells who would do the action named by the first noun. In the example below, **John baptized people**.

> The **baptism of John**, was it from heaven or from men? Answer me. (Mark 11:30)

In the example below, **Christ loves us**.

> Who will separate us from the **love of Christ**? (Romans 8:35)

Object — Sometimes the word after "of" tells who or what something would happen to. In the example below, **people love money**.

> For the **love of money** is a root of all kinds of evil. (1 Timothy 6:10a ULT)

Instrument — Sometimes the word after "of" tells how something would happen. In the example below, God would **punish people by sending enemies to attack them with swords**.

> Then be afraid of the sword, because wrath brings **the punishment of the sword**. (Job 19:29a ULT)

Representation — In the example below, John was baptizing people who were repenting of their sins. They were being baptized to show that they were repenting. Their **baptism represented their repentance**.

> John came, baptizing in the wilderness and preaching **a baptism of repentance** for the forgiveness of sins. (Mark 1:4 ULT)

Strategies for learning what the relationship is between the two nouns

(1) Read the surrounding verses to see if they help you to understand the relationship between the two nouns.
(2) Read the verse in the UST. Sometimes it shows the relationship clearly.
(3) See what the notes say about it.

Translation Strategies

If possession would be a natural way to show a particular relationship between two nouns, consider using it. If it would be strange or hard to understand, consider these.

(1) Use an adjective to show that one noun describes the other.
(2) Use a verb to show how the two are related.
(3) If one of the nouns refers to an event, translate it as a verb.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Use an adjective to show that one noun describes the other.

> On their heads were something like **crowns of gold.** (Revelation 9:7b)
>
> > "On their heads were **gold crowns**"

(2) Use a verb to show how the two are related.

> Whoever gives you **a cup of water** to drink … will not lose his reward. (Mark 9:41 ULT)
>
> > Whoever gives you a **cup that has water in it** to drink … will not lose his reward.
>
> Wealth is worthless on **the day of wrath.** (Proverbs 11:4a ULT)
>
> > Wealth is worthless on **the day when God shows his wrath**.
> > or:
> > Wealth is worthless on the **day when God punishes people because of his wrath**.

(3) If one of the nouns refers to an event, translate it as a verb. (In the example below, there are two possession relationships, "punishment of Yahweh" and "your God.")

> Notice that I am not speaking to your children, who have not known or seen **the punishment of Yahweh your God.** (Deuteronomy 11:2a ULT)
>
> > Notice that I am not speaking to your children who have not known or seen **how Yahweh, the God whom you worship, punished the people of Egypt**.
>
> You will only observe and see the **punishment of the wicked**. (Psalms 91:8 ULT)
>
> > You will only observe and see **how Yahweh punishes the wicked**.
>
> You will receive **the gift of the Holy Spirit**. (Acts 2:38b ULT)
>
> > You will receive the **Holy Spirit, whom God will give to you**.

Numbers References:

Numbers 1:2 Numbers 1:4 Numbers 1:5 Numbers 1:22 Numbers 1:50 Numbers 1:53 Numbers 3:6 Numbers 3:8 Numbers 3:21 Numbers 3:27 Numbers 3:33 Numbers 3:47 Numbers 3:49 Numbers 3:49 Numbers 3:50 Numbers 3:51 Numbers 4:5 Numbers 4:6 Numbers 4:7 Numbers 4:7 Numbers 4:7 Numbers 4:8 Numbers 4:9 Numbers 4:9 Numbers 4:9 Numbers 4:11 Numbers 4:11 Numbers 4:12 Numbers 4:13 Numbers 4:16 Numbers 4:16 Numbers 4:16 Numbers 4:16 Numbers 4:18 Numbers 4:25 Numbers 4:26 Numbers 4:32 Numbers 5:6 Numbers 5:8 Numbers 5:9 Numbers 5:15 Numbers 5:15 Numbers 5:18 Numbers 5:19 Numbers 5:21 Numbers 5:23 Numbers 5:24 Numbers 5:27 Numbers 5:29 Numbers 6:3 Numbers 6:4 Numbers 6:5 Numbers 6:5 Numbers 6:7 Numbers 6:9 Numbers 6:13 Numbers 6:15 Numbers 6:15 Numbers 6:17 Numbers 6:17 Numbers 6:18 Numbers 6:18 Numbers 6:20 Numbers 6:20 Numbers 7:13 Numbers 7:16 Numbers 7:17 Numbers 7:85 Numbers 7:86 Numbers 7:87 Numbers 7:88 Numbers 8:4 Numbers 8:9 Numbers 8:11 Numbers 8:19 Numbers 8:20 Numbers 9:7 Numbers 9:13 Numbers 9:15 Numbers 9:19 Numbers 10:8 Numbers 10:10 Numbers 10:12 Numbers 10:33 Numbers 10:34 Numbers 11:1 Numbers 11:3 Numbers 11:7 Numbers 11:15 Numbers 11:17 Numbers 11:20 Numbers 11:21 Numbers 12:5 Numbers 12:6 Numbers 12:16 Numbers 13:3 Numbers 13:26 Numbers 13:32 Numbers 14:5 Numbers 14:14 Numbers 14:25 Numbers 15:2 Numbers 15:15 Numbers 15:19 Numbers 15:20 Numbers 15:24 Numbers 15:38 Numbers 16:3 Numbers 16:5 Numbers 16:6 Numbers 16:11 Numbers 16:16 Numbers 16:22 Numbers 16:40 Numbers 16:41 Numbers 17:3 Numbers 17:7 Numbers 17:8 Numbers 18:7 Numbers 18:7 Numbers 18:7 Numbers 18:18 Numbers 19:2 Numbers 19:6 Numbers 19:10 Numbers 19:15 Numbers 20:4 Numbers 20:6 Numbers 20:8 Numbers 20:17 Numbers 20:17 Numbers 20:23 Numbers 20:29 Numbers 21:14 Numbers 21:22 Numbers 21:29 Numbers 23:10 Numbers 23:21 Numbers 24:3 Numbers 24:3 Numbers 24:3 Numbers 24:4 Numbers 24:4 Numbers 24:7 Numbers 24:7 Numbers 24:8 Numbers 24:8 Numbers 24:8 Numbers 24:10 Numbers 24:11 Numbers 24:13 Numbers 24:16 Numbers 24:16 Numbers 24:20 Numbers 24:21 Numbers 24:25 Numbers 25:2 Numbers 25:11 Numbers 26:5 Numbers 26:63 Numbers 27:7 Numbers 27:17 Numbers 28:15 Numbers 28:16 Numbers 28:24 Numbers 28:26 Numbers 29:5 Numbers 30:13 Numbers 31:2 Numbers 31:6 Numbers 31:6 Numbers 31:14

Numbers 31:20 Numbers 31:51 Numbers 32:4
Numbers 33:52 Numbers 35:2 Numbers 35:17
Numbers 35:25

Direct and Indirect Quotations

Description

There are two kinds of quotations: direct quotations and indirect quotations.

A direct quotation occurs when someone reports what another person said from the viewpoint of that original speaker. People usually expect that this kind of quotation will represent the original speaker's exact words. In the example below, John would have said "I" when referring to himself, so the narrator, who is reporting John's words, uses the word "I" in the quotation to refer to John. To show that these are John's exact words, many languages put the words between quotation marks: "".

- John said, "**I** do not know at what time **I** will arrive."

An indirect quotation occurs when a speaker reports what someone else said, but in this case, the speaker is reporting it from his own point of view instead and not from the original person's point of view. This kind of quotation usually contains changes in pronouns, and it often includes changes in time, in word choices, and in length. In the example below, the narrator refers to John as "he" in the quotation and uses the word "would" to replace the future tense, indicated by "will."

- John said that **he** did not know at what time **he** would arrive.

Reason This Is a Translation Issue

In some languages, reported speech can be expressed by either direct or indirect quotations. In other languages, it is more natural to use one than the other. There may be a certain meaning implied by using one rather than the other. So for each quotation, translators need to decide whether it is best to translate it as a direct quotation or as an indirect quotation.

Examples From the Bible

The verses in the examples below contain both direct and indirect quotations. In the explanation below the verse, we have marked in bold the words that are quoted.

> And he commanded him to tell no one, but, “Go, show yourself to the priest and offer a sacrifice for your cleansing, according to what Moses commanded, for a testimony to them.” (Luke 5:14 ULT)

- Indirect quote: He commanded him **to tell no one**,
- Direct quote: but told him, “**Go, show yourself to the priest …**”

> And being asked by the Pharisees when the kingdom of God was coming, he answered them and said, “The kingdom of God is not coming with careful observation. Neither will they say, ‘Look, here it is!’ or ‘There it is!’ For indeed, the kingdom of God is among you.” (Luke 17:20-21 ULT)

- Indirect quote: Being asked by the Pharisees **when the kingdom of God was coming,**
- Direct quote: he answered them and said, “**The kingdom of God is not coming with careful observation. Neither will they say, ‘Look. here it is!’ or ‘There it is!’ For indeed, the kingdom of God is among you.**”
- Direct quotes: Neither will they say, ‘**Look, here it is!**’ or, ‘**There it is!**’

Translation Strategies

If the kind of quote used in the source text would work well in your language, consider using it. If the kind of quote used in that context is not natural for your language, follow these strategies.

(1) If a direct quote would not work well in your language, change it to an indirect quote.
(2) If an indirect quote would not work well in your language, change it to a direct quote.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) If a direct quote would not work well in your language, change it to an indirect quote.

> And he commanded him to tell no one, but, “**Go, show yourself to the priest and offer a sacrifice for your cleansing, according to what Moses commanded, for a testimony to them.**” (Luke 5:14 ULT)
>
> > He commanded him to tell no one, but **to go and show himself to the priest and offer a sacrifice for his cleansing according to what Moses commanded, for a testimony to them**.

(2) If an indirect quote would not work well in your language, change it to a direct quote.

> And he commanded him **to tell no one,** but, “Go, show yourself to the priest and offer a sacrifice for your cleansing, according to what Moses commanded, for a testimony to them.” (Luke 5:14 ULT)
>
> > He commanded him, “**Tell no one**. But go and show yourself to the priest and offer a sacrifice for your cleansing according to what Moses commanded, for a testimony to them.”

You may also want to watch the video at https://ufw.io/figs_quotations.

Numbers References:

Numbers 9:4 Numbers 14:10 Numbers 14:31 Numbers 16:37 Numbers 35:2

Quote Markings

Description

Some languages use quotation marks to mark off direct quotes from the rest of the text. English uses the mark “ immediately before a quote and ” immediately after it.

- John said, “I do not know when I will arrive.”

Quotation marks are not used with indirect quotes.

- John said that he did not know when he would arrive.

When there are several layers of quotations inside of other quotations, it might be hard for readers to understand who is saying what. Alternating two kinds of quotation marks can help careful readers to keep track of them. In English, the outermost quotation has double quote marks, and the next quotation within it has single marks. If there is a third embedded quote, that quotation again has double quotation marks.

- Mary said, “John said, ‘I do not know when I will arrive.’ ”
- Bob said, “Mary told me, ‘John said, “I do not know when I will arrive.” ’ ”

Some languages use other kinds of quotation marks: Here are some examples: , ‘ ’ „ “ ” ‹ › « » ⁊ — .

Examples From the Bible

The examples below show the kind of quotation markings used in the ULT.

A quotation with only one layer

A first layer direct quote has double quotation marks around it.

> So the king replied, “That is Elijah the Tishbite.” (2 Kings 1:8b ULT)

Quotations with two layers

A second layer direct quote has single quotation marks around it. We have printed it and the phrase in bold type for you to see them clearly.

> They asked him, “Who is the man who said to you, **‘Pick it up and walk’**?” (John 5:12 ULT)
>
> He sent two of the disciples, saying, “Go into the village ahead of you. As you enter, you will find a colt that has never been ridden. Untie it and bring it to me. If any one asks you, **‘Why are you untying it?’** you will say thus, **‘The Lord has need of it.’**” (Luke 19:29b-31 ULT)

A quotation with three layers

A third layer direct quote has double quotation marks around it. We have printed it in bold type for you to see them clearly.

> Abraham said, “Because I thought, ‘Surely there is no fear of God in this place, and they will kill me because of my wife.’ Besides, she is indeed my sister, the daughter of my father, but not the daughter of my mother; and she became my wife. When God caused me to leave my father’s house and travel from place to place, I said to her, ‘You must show me this faithfulness as my wife: At every place where we go, say about me, “**He is my brother**.”’” (Genesis 20:11-13 ULT)

A quotation with four layers

A fourth layer direct quote has single quotation marks around it. We have printed it in bold for you to see it clearly.

> They said to him, “A man came to meet us who said to us, ‘Go back to the king who sent you, and say to him, “Yahweh says this: **‘Is it because there is no God in Israel that you sent men to consult with Baal Zebub, the god of Ekron? Therefore you will not come down from the bed to which you have gone up; instead, you will certainly die.’** ” ’ ” (2 Kings 1:6 ULT)

Quote Marking Strategies

Here are some ways you may be able to help readers see where each quote starts and ends so they can more easily know who said what.

(1) Alternate two kinds of quote marks to show layers of direct quotation. English alternates double quote marks and single quote marks.
(2) Translate one or some of the quotes as indirect quotes in order to use fewer quote marks, since indirect quotes do not need them. (See Direct and Indirect Quotations.)
(3) If a quotation is very long and has many layers of quotation in it, indent the main overall quote, and use quote marks only for the direct quotes inside of it.

Examples of Quote Marking Strategies Applied

(1) Alternate two kinds of quotation marks to show layers of direct quotation as shown in the ULT text below.

> They said to him, “A man came to meet us who said to us, ‘Go back to the king who sent you, and say to him, “Yahweh says this: ‘Is it because there is no God in Israel that you sent men to consult with Baal Zebub, the god of Ekron? Therefore you will not come down from the bed to which you have gone up; instead, you will certainly die.’”’” (2 Kings 1:6 ULT)

(2) Translate one or more of the quotes as indirect quotes in order to use fewer quotation marks, since indirect quotes do not need them. In English, the word “that” can introduce an indirect quote. In the example below, everything after the word “that” is an indirect quote of what the messengers said to the king. Within that indirect quote, there are some direct quotes marked with double and single quotation marks.

> They said to him, “A man came to meet us who said to us, ‘Go back to the king who sent you, and say to him, “Yahweh says this: ‘Is it because there is no God in Israel that you sent men to consult with Baal Zebub, the god of Ekron? Therefore you will not come down from the bed to which you have gone up; instead, you will certainly die.’”’” (2 Kings 1:6 ULT)

> They told him **that** a man came to meet them who said to them, “Go back to the king who sent you, and say to him, ‘Yahweh says this: “Is it because there is no God in Israel that you sent men to consult with Baal Zebub, the god of Ekron? Therefore you will not come down from the bed to which you have gone up; instead, you will certainly die.”’”

(3) If a quotation is very long and has many layers of quotation in it, indent the main overall quote, and use quote marks only for the direct quotes inside of it.

> They said to him, “A man came to meet us who said to us, ‘Go back to the king who sent you, and say to him, “Yahweh says this: ‘Is it because there is no God in Israel that you sent men to consult with Baal Zebub, the god of Ekron? Therefore you will not come down from the bed to which you have gone up; instead, you will certainly die.’”’” (2 Kings 1:6 ULT)

> They said to him,
>
> > A man came to meet us who said to us, “Go back to the king who sent you, and say to him, ‘Yahweh says this: “Is it because there is no God in Israel that you sent men to consult with Baal Zebub, the god of Ekron? Therefore you will not come down from the bed to which you have gone up; instead, you will certainly die.”’”

Numbers References:

Numbers 1:15 Numbers 29:39

Quotes within Quotes

Description

A quotation may have a quote within it, and quotes that are inside of other quotes can also have quotes within them. When a quote has quotes within it, we say there are "layers" of quotation, and each of the quotes is a layer. When there are many layers of quotes inside of quotes, it can be hard for listeners and readers to know who is saying what. Some languages use a combination of direct quotes and indirect quotes to make it easier.

Reasons This Is a Translation Issue

1. When there is a quote within a quote, the listener needs to know who the pronouns refer to. For example: if a quote that is inside a quote has the word "I," the listener needs to know whether "I" refers to the speaker of the inner quote or the outer quote.
2. Some languages make this clear by using different kinds of quotes when there are quotes within quotes. They may use direct quotes for some and indirect quotes for others.
3. Some languages do not use indirect quotes.

Examples From the Bible

A quotation with only one layer

> But Paul said, "I, however, was indeed born a citizen." (Acts 22:28b ULT)

Quotations with two layers

> Jesus answered and said to them, "Be careful that no one leads you astray. For many will come in my name. They will say, 'I am the Christ,' and will lead many astray." (Matthew 24:4-5 ULT)

The outermost layer is what Jesus said to his disciples. The second layer is what other people will say.

> Jesus answered, “You say that I am a king.” (John 18:37b ULT)

The outermost layer is what Jesus said to Pilate. The second layer is what Pilate said about Jesus.

A quotation with three layers

> Abraham said, “… I said to her, ‘You must show me this faithfulness as my wife: At every place where we go, say about me, **“He is my brother.”**’” (Genesis 20:11a, 13 ULT)

The outermost layer is what Abraham responded to Abimelech. The second layer is what Abraham had told his wife. The third layer is what he wanted his wife to say. (We have bolded the third layer.)

A quotation with four layers

> They said to him, “A man came to meet us who said to us, ‘Go back to the king who sent you, and say to him, “Yahweh says this: **‘Is it because there is no God in Israel that you sent men to consult with Baal- Zebub, the god of Ekron? Therefore you will not come down from the bed to which you have gone up; instead, you will certainly die.’**”’” (2 Kings 1:6 ULT)

The outermost layer is what the messengers said to the king. The second layer is what the man who had met the messengers told them. The third is what that man wanted the messengers to say to the king. The fourth is what Yahweh said. (We have bolded the fourth layer.)

Translation Strategies

Some languages use only direct quotes. Other languages use a combination of direct quotes and indirect quotes. In those languages it might sound strange and perhaps even be confusing if there are many layers of direct quotes.

(1) Translate all of the quotes as direct quotes.
(2) Translate one or some of the quotes as indirect quotes. (See Direct and Indirect Quotations.)

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Translate all of the quotes as direct quotes. In the example below we have bolded the indirect quotes in the ULT and the quotes that we have changed to direct quotes below it.

> Festus presented to the king the things concerning Paul, saying, “There is a certain man was left here as a prisoner by Felix. So I am uncertain about the things concerning this matter. I asked **if he was willing to go to Jerusalem and there to be judged concerning these things**. But when Paul appealed **to keep him in custody for the decision of the emperor**, I ordered him **to be held in custody until when I could send him to Caesar**.” (Acts 25:14b, 20-21 ULT)
>
> > Festus presented Paul’s case to the king. He said, “A certain man was left behind here by Felix as a prisoner. I was uncertain about the things concerning this matter. I asked him, **‘Will you go to Jerusalem to be judged there concerning these things?’** But when Paul said, **‘I want to be kept in custody for the emperor’s decision,’** I told the guard, **‘Keep him in custody until when I can send him to Caesar.’**”

(2) Translate one or some of the quotes as indirect quotes. In English the word “that” can come before indirect quotes. It is bolded in the examples below. The pronouns that changed because of the indirect quote are also bolded.

> And Yahweh spoke to Moses, saying, “I have heard the complaints of the sons of Israel. Speak to them and say, ‘During the evenings you will eat meat, and in the morning you will be satisfied with bread. And you will know that I am Yahweh your God.’” (Exodus 16:11-12 ULT)
>
> > And Yahweh spoke to Moses, saying, “I have heard the complaints of the sons of Israel. Tell them **that** during the evenings **they** will eat meat, and in the morning **they** will be satisfied with bread. And **they** will know that I am Yahweh **their** God.’”
>
> They said to him, “A man came to meet us who said to us, ‘Go back to the king who sent you, and say to him, “Yahweh says this: ‘Is it because there is no God in Israel that you sent men to consult with Baal-Zebub, the god of Ekron? Therefore you will not come down from the bed to which you have gone up; instead, you will certainly die.’”””” (2 Kings 1:6 ULT)
>
> > They told him **that** a man had come to meet **them** who said to **them**, “Go back to the king who sent you, and tell him **that** Yahweh says this: ‘Is it because there is no God in Israel that you sent men to consult with Baal Zebub, the god of Ekron? Therefore you will not come down from the bed to which you have gone up; instead, you will certainly die.’”

Numbers References:

Numbers 5:6 Numbers 5:12 Numbers 5:19-20 Numbers 5:21-22 Numbers 5:22 Numbers 6:2 Numbers 6:23 Numbers 6:23-26 Numbers 8:2 Numbers 9:10 Numbers 9:14 Numbers 10:29 Numbers 11:12 Numbers 11:13 Numbers 11:18 Numbers 11:19 Numbers 11:20 Numbers 11:21 Numbers 14:17-18 Numbers 14:28 Numbers 14:29 Numbers 14:30 Numbers 14:31 Numbers 14:32 Numbers 14:33 Numbers 14:34 Numbers 15:2 Numbers 15:18 Numbers 15:38 Numbers 16:24 Numbers 18:26 Numbers 18:30 Numbers 19:2 Numbers 20:14 Numbers 22:10 Numbers 22:10-11 Numbers 22:16 Numbers 23:7 Numbers 23:23 Numbers 23:26 Numbers 24:11 Numbers 24:12 Numbers 24:13 Numbers 25:12 Numbers 28:2 Numbers 28:3 Numbers 33:51 Numbers 34:2 Numbers 35:10 Numbers 36:6

Reduplication

Description

Writers and speakers in the Bible sometimes repeat the same word or forms of the same word. This is to increase the intensity, completeness, or certainty of the action that the word describes, or to otherwise increase the emotional impact of the word.

Reason This Is a Translation Issue

Some languages may not repeat words to increase the intensity, completeness, or certainty of an action, or they may not repeat words to increase the level of emotion that they communicate. In these cases, repeated words may appear to be a mistake or may indicate that the speaker is unable to speak correctly.

Examples From the Bible

To the woman he said, “To multiply I will multiply your pain and your childbearing…” (Genesis 3:16 ULT)

The speaker is repeating forms of the verb “multiply” in order to intensify the idea of multiplying.

To be circumcised he must be circumcised (Genesis 17:13)

The speaker is repeating forms of the verb “circumcise” in order to increase the certainty that this must happen.

Begin, possess, to possess his land (Deuteronomy 2:31 ULT)

Moses repeats the word “possess” to emphasize the completeness of the action of possessing the land.

My God, my God, why have you forsaken me? (Psalm 22:1 ULT)

The writer repeats “my God” to increase the level of emotion that he wants to communicate; he is crying out desperately to God.

“Fallen, fallen has Babylon the Great…” (Revelation 14:8 ULT)

The angel repeats the word “fallen” in order to show deep emotion in this lament for the ruined city of Babylon.

Translation Strategies

If repeating words would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, then do the same in your translation. If not, here are some other options:

(1) If your language would not repeat words to increase the intensity, completeness, or certainty of an action, then use a different word or phrase to add that meaning.
(2) If your language would not repeat words to increase emotional intensity, then use an emotional word to do that.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) If your language would not repeat words to increase the intensity, completeness, or certainty of an action, then use a different word or phrase to add that meaning.

> To the woman he said, “To multiply I will multiply your pain and your childbearing…” (Genesis 3:16 ULT)
>
> > To the woman he said, “I will greatly multiply your pain and your childbearing…”

> To be circumcised he must be circumcised (Genesis 17:13 ULT)
>
> > He certainly must be circumcised
> > Or By all means, he must be circumcised

> Begin, possess, to possess his land (Deuteronomy 2:31 ULT)
>
> > Begin to completely possess his land
> > Or Enter his land until you completely possess it

(2) If your language would not repeat words to increase emotional intensity, then use an emotional word to do that.

> My God, my God, why have you forsaken me? (Psalm 22:1 ULT)
>
> > You are my God! Why, then, have you forsaken me?
> > Or My God, oh, why have you forsaken me?
>
> "Fallen, fallen has Babylon the Great…" (Revelation 14:8 ULT)
>
> > "Alas, Babylon the Great has fallen!

Numbers References:

Numbers 3:9 Numbers 3:47 Numbers 5:12 Numbers 8:16 Numbers 9:10 Numbers 11:15 Numbers 11:32 Numbers 12:14 Numbers 13:30 Numbers 14:7 Numbers 14:18 Numbers 15:31 Numbers 15:35 Numbers 16:13 Numbers 18:15 Numbers 21:2 Numbers 22:17 Numbers 23:11 Numbers 23:25 Numbers 26:65 Numbers 28:13 Numbers 30:6 Numbers 30:12 Numbers 30:14 Numbers 35:16 Numbers 35:26

Reflexive Pronouns

Description

All languages have ways of showing that the same person fills two different roles in a sentence. English does this by using reflexive pronouns. These are pronouns that refer to someone or something that has already been mentioned in a sentence. In English the reflexive pronouns are: "myself," "yourself," "himself," "herself," "itself," "ourselves," "yourselves," and "themselves." In English, these pronouns can also be used to emphasize the person to whom they refer. Other languages may have other ways to do both of these things.

Reason This Is a Translation Issue

- Languages have different ways of showing that the same person fills two different roles in a sentence. For those languages, translators will need to know how to translate the English reflexive pronouns.
- The reflexive pronouns in English also have other functions.

Uses of Reflexive Pronouns

- To show that the same person or things fills two different roles in a sentence
- To emphasize a person or thing in the sentence
- To show that someone or something did something alone or was alone

Examples From the Bible

To show that the same person or thing fills two different roles in a sentence

> If **I** testify about **myself**, my testimony is not true. (John 5:31 ULT)
>
> Now the Passover of the Jews was near, and **many** went up to Jerusalem from the country before the Passover in order to purify **themselves**. (John 11:55 ULT)

To emphasize a person or thing in the sentence

> **Jesus himself** was not baptizing, but his disciples were. (John 4:2 ULT)

> So they left the crowd, taking Jesus with them, just as he was, in the boat. There also were other boats with him. Then a violent windstorm arose and the waves were breaking into the boat so that the boat was already full of water. But **Jesus himself** was in the stern, asleep on the cushion. (Mark 4:36-38a ULT)

> Then Festus answered that Paul was being held at Caesarea but that **he himself** was about to depart soon. (Acts 25:4 ULT)

To show that someone did something alone, or that something was alone

> When Jesus realized that they were about to come and seize him by force to make him king, he withdrew again up the mountain **by himself**. (John 6:15 ULT)

> He saw the linen cloths lying there and the cloth that had been on his head. **It** was not lying with the linen cloths but was folded up in a place **by itself**. (John 20:6b-7 ULT)

Translation Strategies

If a reflexive pronoun would have the same function in your language, consider using it. If not, here are some other strategies.

(1) In some languages people put something on the verb to show that the object of the verb is the same as the subject.
(2) In some languages people emphasize a certain person or thing by referring to it in a special place in the sentence.
(3) In some languages people emphasize a certain person or thing by adding something to that word or putting another word with it.
(4) In some languages people show that someone did something alone by using a word like "alone."
(5) In some languages people show that something was alone by using a phrase that tells about where it was.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) In some languages people modify the verb to show that the object of the verb is the same as the subject.

> If I testify about **myself**, my testimony is not true. (John 5:31)
>
> > "If I **self-testify**, my testimony is not true."

> Now the Passover of the Jews was near, and many went up to Jerusalem from the country before the Passover in order to **purify themselves**. (John 11:55)
>
> > "Now the Passover of the Jews was near, and many went up to Jerusalem out from country before the Passover in order to **self-purify**."

(2) In some languages people emphasize a certain person or thing by referring to it in a special place in the sentence.

> **He himself** took our sickness and bore our diseases. (Matthew 8:17 ULT)
>
> > "**The one who** took our sickness and bore our diseases **was Jesus**."

> **Jesus himself** was not baptizing, but his disciples were. (John 4:2)
>
> > "**It was not Jesus who** was baptizing, but his disciples."

(3) In some languages people emphasize a certain person or thing by adding something to that word or putting another word with it.

> But Jesus said this to test Philip, for he **himself** knew what he was going to do. (John 6:6)
>
> > But Jesus said this to test Philip, for, **as for him, he** knew what he was going to do.

> Then Festus answered that Paul was being held at Caesarea but that **he himself** was about to depart soon. (Acts 25:4 ULT)
>
> > Then Festus answered that Paul was being held at Caesarea but that, **for his part, he** was about to depart soon.

(4) In some languages people show that someone did something alone by using a word like "alone."

> When Jesus realized that they were about to come and seize him by force to make him king, he withdrew again up the mountain **by himself**. (John 6:15)
>
> > "When Jesus realized that they were about to come and seize him by force to make him king, he withdrew again **alone** up the mountain."

(5) In some languages people show that something was alone by using a phrase that tells about where it was.

> He saw the linen cloths lying there and the cloth that had been on his head. It was not lying with the linen cloths but was folded up in a place **by itself**. (John 20:6b-7 ULT)
>
> > "He saw the linen cloths lying there and the cloth that had been on his head. It was not lying with the linen cloths but was folded up and lying **in it's own place**."

Numbers References:

Numbers 1:50 Numbers 5:14

Rhetorical Question

A rhetorical question is a question that a speaker asks when he is more interested in expressing his attitude about something than in getting information about it. Speakers use rhetorical questions to express deep emotion or to encourage hearers to think deeply about something. The Bible contains many rhetorical questions, often to express surprise, to rebuke or scold the hearer, or to teach. Speakers of some languages use rhetorical questions for other purposes as well.

Description

A rhetorical question is a question that strongly expresses the speaker's attitude toward something. Often the speaker is not looking for information at all. Or, if he is asking for information, it is not usually the information that the question appears to ask for. The speaker is more interested in expressing his attitude than in getting information.

> But those who stood by said, "**Are you insulting the high priest of God?**"(Acts 23:4 ULT)

The people who asked Paul this question were not asking if he was insulting God's high priest. Rather, they used this question to accuse Paul of insulting the high priest.

The Bible contains many rhetorical questions. These rhetorical questions might be used for the purposes: of expressing attitudes or feelings, rebuking people, teaching something by reminding people of something they know and encouraging them to apply it to something new, or introducing something they want to talk about.

Reasons This Is a Translation Issue

- Some languages do not use rhetorical questions; for them a question is always a request for information.
- Some languages use rhetorical questions, but for purposes that are different or more limited than in the Bible.

- Because of these differences between languages, some readers might misunderstand the purpose of a rhetorical question in the Bible.

Examples From the Bible

> Do you not still rule the kingdom of Israel? (1 Kings 21:7b ULT)

Jezebel used the question above **to remind** King Ahab of something he already knew: he still ruled the kingdom of Israel. The rhetorical question made her point more strongly than if she had merely stated it, because it forced Ahab to admit the point himself. She did this in order **to rebuke** him for being unwilling to take over a poor man's property. She was implying that, since he was the king of Israel, he had the power to take the man's property.

> **Will a virgin forget her jewelry, a bride her veils?** Yet my people have forgotten me for days without number! (Jeremiah 2:32 ULT)

God used the question above **to remind** his people of something they already knew: a young woman would never forget her jewelry or a bride forget her veils. He then **rebuked** his people for forgetting him who is so much greater than those things.

> But you, why do you judge your brother? And you also, why do you despise your brother? (Romans 14:10 ULT)

Paul used these rhetorical questions **to rebuke** the Romans for doing what they should not do.

> Why did I not die when I came out from the womb? (Job 3:11a ULT)

Job used the question above **to show deep emotion**. This rhetorical question expresses how sad he was that he did not die as soon as he was born. He wished that he had not lived.

> And how has this happened to me that the mother of my Lord would come to me? (Luke 1:43 ULT)

Elizabeth used the question above **to show how surprised and happy she was** that the mother of her Lord came to her.

> Or what man is there among you, of whom his son will ask for a loaf of bread, but he will give him a stone? (Matthew 7:9 ULT)

Jesus used the question above **to remind** the people of something they already knew: a good father would never give his son something bad to eat. By introducing this point, Jesus could go on **to teach them** about God with his next rhetorical question:

> Therefore, if you who are evil know how to give good gifts to your children, how much more will your Father who is in heaven give good things to those who ask him? (Matthew 7:11 ULT)

Jesus used this question **to teach** the people in an emphatic way that God gives good things to those who ask him.

> **What is the kingdom of God like, and what can I compare it to?** It is like a mustard seed that a man took and threw into his garden … (Luke 13:18b-19a ULT)

Jesus used the question above **to introduce what he was going to talk about**. He was about to compare the kingdom of God to something. In this case, he compared the kingdom of God to a mustard seed.

Translation Strategies

In order to translate a rhetorical question accurately, first be sure that the question you are translating truly is a rhetorical question and is not an information question. Ask yourself, "Does the person asking the question already know the answer to the question?" If so, it is a rhetorical question. Or, if no one answers the question, did the person who asked it expect to receive an answer? If not, it is a rhetorical question.

When you are sure that the question is rhetorical, then be sure that you understand the purpose for the rhetorical question. Is it to encourage or rebuke or shame the hearer? Is it to bring up a new topic? Is it to express

surprise or other emotion? Is it to do something else?

When you know the purpose of the rhetorical question, then think of the most natural way to express that purpose in the target language. It might be as a question, or a statement, or an exclamation.

If using the rhetorical question would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider doing so. If not, here are other options:

(1) Add the answer after the question.
(2) Change the rhetorical question to a statement or exclamation.
(3) Change the rhetorical question to a statement, and then follow it with a short question.
(4) Change the form of the question so that it communicates in your language what the original speaker communicated in his.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Add the answer after the question.

> **Will a virgin forget her jewelry, a bride her veils?** Yet my people have forgotten me for days without number! (Jeremiah 2:32 ULT)
>
> > Will a virgin forget her jewelry, a bride her veils? **Of course not!** Yet my people have forgotten me for days without number!

> Or what man is there among you, of whom his son will ask for a loaf of bread, but he will give him a stone? (Matthew 7:9 ULT)
>
> > Or what man is there among you, of whom his son will ask for a loaf of bread, but he will give him a stone? **None of you would do that!**

(2) Change the rhetorical question to a statement or exclamation.

> **What is the kingdom of God like, and what can I compare it to?** It is like a mustard seed. (Luke 13:18-19a ULT)
>
> > **This is what the kingdom of God is like.** It is like a mustard seed …

> **Are you insulting the high priest of God?** (Acts 23:4b ULT) (Acts 23:4 ULT)
>
> > **You should not insult God's high priest!**

> **Why did I not die when I came out from the womb?** (Job 3:11a ULT)
>
> > **I wish I had died when I came out from the womb!**

> **And how has this happened to me that the mother of my Lord should come to me?** (Luke 1:43 ULT)
>
> > **How wonderful it is that the mother of my Lord has come to me!**

(3) Change the rhetorical question to a statement, and then follow it with a short question.

> **Do you not still rule** the kingdom of Israel? (1 Kings 21:7b ULT)
>
> > You still rule the kingdom of Israel, **do you not?**

(4) Change the form of the question so that it communicates in your language what the orignal speaker communicated in his.

> Or what man is there among you, of whom his son will ask for a loaf of bread, but he will give him a stone? (Matthew 7:9 ULT)
>
> > If your son asks you for a loaf of bread, **would you give him a stone**?

> **Will a virgin forget her jewelry, a bride her veils**? Yet my people have forgotten me for days without number! (Jeremiah 2:32 ULT)
>
> > **What virgin would forget her jewelry, and what bride would forget her veils**? Yet my people have forgotten me for days without number!

> But you, **why do you judge your brother**? And you also, **why do you despise your brother**? (Romans 14:10 ULT)
>
> > Do you think it is good to judge your brother? Do you think it is good to despise your brother?

Numbers References:

Numbers 9:7 Numbers 11:4 Numbers 11:11 Numbers 11:12 Numbers 11:13 Numbers 11:18 Numbers 11:20 Numbers 11:22 Numbers 11:23 Numbers 11:29 Numbers 11:29 Numbers 12:2 Numbers 12:8 Numbers 12:14 Numbers 14:3 Numbers 14:3 Numbers 14:11 Numbers 14:27 Numbers 14:41 Numbers 16:3 Numbers 16:9 Numbers 16:9-10 Numbers 16:10 Numbers 16:11 Numbers 16:13 Numbers 16:14 Numbers 16:22 Numbers 17:13 Numbers 20:4 Numbers 20:5 Numbers 20:10 Numbers 21:5 Numbers 22:9 Numbers 22:28 Numbers 22:30 Numbers 22:30 Numbers 22:32 Numbers 22:37 Numbers 22:38 Numbers 23:8 Numbers 23:10 Numbers 23:11 Numbers 23:12 Numbers 23:19 Numbers 23:26 Numbers 24:9 Numbers 24:12 Numbers 24:22 Numbers 24:23 Numbers 27:4 Numbers 31:15 Numbers 32:6 Numbers 32:7

Simile

Description

A simile is a comparison of two things that are not normally thought to be similar. The simile focuses on a particular trait the two items have in common, and it includes the words “like,” “as,” or “than.”

> When he saw the crowds, he had compassion for them, because they were troubled and discouraged, **like sheep not having a shepherd**. (Matthew 9:36)

Jesus compared the crowds of people to sheep without a shepherd. Sheep grow frightened when they do not have a good shepherd to lead them in safe places. The crowds were like that because they did not have good religious leaders.

> See, I send you out **as sheep in the midst of wolves**, so be as wise **as the serpents** and harmless **as the doves**. (Matthew 10:16 ULT)

Jesus compared his disciples to sheep and their enemies to wolves. Wolves attack sheep; Jesus’ enemies would attack his disciples.

> For the word of God is living and active and sharper **than any two-edged sword**. (Hebrews 4:12a ULT)

God’s word is compared to a two-edged sword. A two-edged sword is a weapon that can easily cut through a person’s flesh. God’s word is very effective in showing what is in a person’s heart and thoughts.

Purposes of Simile

- A simile can teach about something that is unknown by showing how it is similar to something that is known.
- A simile can emphasize a particular trait, sometimes in a way that gets people’s attention.
- Similes help form a picture in the mind or help the reader experience what he is reading about more fully.

Reasons This Is a Translation Issue

- People may not know how the two items are similar.
- People may not be familiar with both of the items being compared.

Examples From the Bible

> Suffer hardship with me, **as a good soldier** of Christ Jesus. (2 Timothy 2:3 ULT)

In this simile, Paul compares suffering with what soldiers endure, and he encourages Timothy to follow their example.

> Just as the lightning flashing from a place under the sky shines to another place under the sky, so will the Son of Man be. (Luke 17:24b ULT)

This verse does not tell how the Son of Man will be like the lightning. But in context we can understand from the verses before it that just as lighting flashes suddenly and everyone can see it, the Son of Man will come suddenly and everyone will be able to see him. No one will have to be told about it.

Translation Strategies

If people would understand the correct meaning of a simile, consider using it. If they would not, here are some strategies you can use:

(1) If people do not know how the two items are alike, tell how they are alike. However, do not do this if the meaning was not clear to the original audience.
(2) If people are not familiar with the item that something is compared to, use an item from your own culture. Be sure that it is one that could have been used in the cultures of the Bible. If you use this strategy, you may want to put the original item in a footnote.
(3) Simply describe the item without comparing it to another.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) If people do not know how the two items are alike, tell how they are alike. However, do not do this if the meaning was not clear to the original audience.

> See, I send you out **as sheep in the midst of wolves.** (Matthew 10:16a ULT)
> — This compares the danger that Jesus' disciples would be in with the danger that sheep are in when they are surrounded by wolves.
>
> > See, I send **you out among wicked people** and you will be in danger from them **as sheep are in danger when they are among wolves**.

For the word of God is living and active and sharper **than any two-edged sword**. (Hebrews 4:12a ULT)

> For the word of God is living and active and **more powerful than a very sharp two-edged sword**.

(2) If people are not familiar with the item that something is compared to, use an item from your own culture. Be sure that it is one that could have been used in the cultures of the Bible. If you use this strategy, you may want to put the original item in a footnote.

> See, I send you out **as sheep in the midst of wolves**, (Matthew 10:16a ULT)
> — If people do not know what sheep and wolves are, or that wolves kill and eat sheep, you could use some other animal that kills another.
>
> > See, I send you out **as chickens in the midst of wild dogs**.

How often did I long to gather your children together, just **as a hen gathers her chickens under her wings**, but you were not willing! (Matthew 23:37b ULT)

> How often I wanted to gather your children together, **as a mother closely watches over her infants**, but you refused!

If you have faith **as a grain of mustard** … (Matthew 17:20)

> If you have faith even as small **as a tiny seed**,

(3) Simply describe the item without comparing it to another.

> See, I send you out **as sheep in the midst of wolves**. (Matthew 10:16a ULT)
>
> > See, I send you out among **people who will want to harm you**.
>
> How often did I long to gather your children together, just **as a hen gathers her chickens under her wings**, but you were not willing! (Matthew 23:37b ULT)
>
> > How often I wanted to **protect you**, but you refused!

Numbers References:

Numbers 9:15 Numbers 11:1 Numbers 11:7 Numbers 11:7 Numbers 11:12 Numbers 12:10 Numbers 12:12 Numbers 13:33 Numbers 14:15 Numbers 16:40 Numbers 18:27 Numbers 18:30 Numbers 22:4 Numbers 23:10 Numbers 23:22 Numbers 23:24 Numbers 24:6 Numbers 24:6 Numbers 24:6 Numbers 24:6 Numbers 24:9 Numbers 27:17

Synecdoche

Description

Synecdoche is a figure of speech in which a speaker uses a part of something to refer to the whole thing, or uses the whole to refer to a part.

> **My soul** magnifies the Lord. (Luke 1:46b ULT)

Mary was was very happy about what the Lord was doing, so she said “my soul,” which means the inner, emotional part of herself, to refer to her whole self.

> So **the Pharisees** said to him, “Look, why are they doing that which is not lawful?” (Mark 2:24a ULT)

The Pharisees who were standing there did not all say the same words at the same time. Instead, it is more likely that one man representing the group said those words.

Reasons This Is a Translation Issue

- Some readers may not recognize the synecdoche and thus misunderstand the words as a literal statement.
- Some readers may realize that they are not to understand the words literally, but they may not know what the meaning is.

Example From the Bible

> Then I looked on all the deeds that **my hands** had accomplished. (Ecclesiastes 2:11a ULT)

“My hands” is a synecdoche for the whole person because clearly the arms and the rest of the body and the mind were also involved in the person’s accomplishments. The hands are chosen to represent the person because they are the parts of the body most directly involved in the work.

Translation Strategies

If the synecdoche would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider using it. If not, here is another option:

(1) State specifically what the synecdoche refers to.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) State specifically what the synecdoche refers to.

> "**My soul** magnifies the Lord." (Luke 1:46b ULT)
>
> > "**I** magnify the Lord."
>
> So **the Pharisees** said to him … (Mark 2:24a ULT)
>
> > **A representative of the Pharisees** said to him …
>
> Then I looked on all the deeds that **my hands** had accomplished. (Ecclesiastes 2:11a ULT)
>
> > I looked on all the deeds that **I** had accomplished

Numbers References:

Numbers 1:2 Numbers 1:18 Numbers 1:20 Numbers 1:22 Numbers 3:47 Numbers 5:18 Numbers 7:89 Numbers 15:19 Numbers 19:7 Numbers 19:8 Numbers 20:24 Numbers 21:7 Numbers 22:3 Numbers 22:4 Numbers 22:18 Numbers 28:2

Forms of You

Singular, Dual, and Plural

Some languages have more than one word for "you" based on how many people the word "you" refers to. The **singular** form refers to one person, and the **plural** form refers to more than one person. Some languages also have a **dual** form which refers to two people, and some languages have other forms that refer to three or four people.

You may also want to watch the video at https://ufw.io/figs_younum.

Sometimes in the Bible a speaker uses a singular form of "you" even though he is speaking to a crowd. For help with translating these, we suggest you read:

- Singular Pronouns that Refer to Groups

Formal and Informal

Some languages have more than one form of "you" based on the relationship between the speaker and the person he or she is talking to. People use the **formal** form of "you" when speaking to someone who is older, or has higher authority, or is someone they do not know very well. People use the **informal** form when speaking to someone who is not older, or does not have higher authority, or is a family member or close friend.

You may also want to watch the video at https://ufw.io/figs_youform.

For help with translating these, we suggest you read:

- Forms of "You" — Formal or Informal

Masculine and Feminine

Some languages have a **masculine** form and a **feminine** form of the word for "you." People use the **masculine** form when speaking to a man or boy and the **feminine** form when speaking to a woman or girl.

English does not make any of the above distinctions, so they are absent in the ULT.

Please be aware of this and use the appropriate forms of “you” if your language does make any of these distinctions.

Numbers References:

Numbers 5:3

Forms of ‘You’ — Dual/Plural

Description

Some languages have a singular form of “you” for when the word “you” refers to just one person, and a plural form for when the word “you” refers to more than one person. Some languages also have a dual form of “you” for when the word “you” refers to only two people. Translators who speak one of these languages will always need to know what the speaker meant so they can choose the right word for “you” in their language. Other languages, such as English, have only one form, which people use regardless of how many people it refers to.

The Bible was first written in the Hebrew, Aramaic, and Greek languages. These languages all have a singular form of “you” and a plural form of “you.” When we read the Bible in those languages, the pronouns and verb forms show us whether the word “you” refers to one person or more than one person. However, they do not show us whether it refers to only two people or more than two people. When the pronouns do not show us how many people the word “you” refers to, we need to look at the context to see how many people the speaker was speaking to.

Reasons This Is a Translation Issue

- Translators who speak a language that has distinct singular, dual, and plural forms of “you” will always need to know what the speaker meant so they can choose the right word for “you” in their language.
- Many languages also have different forms of the verb depending on whether the subject is singular or plural. So even if there is no pronoun meaning “you,” translators of these languages will need to know if the speaker was referring to one person or more than one.

Often the context will make it clear whether the word “you” refers to one person or more than one. If you look at the other pronouns in the sentence, they will help you know how many people the speaker was addressing.

Examples From the Bible

> Then **James and John**, the sons of Zebedee, came up to him, saying to him, "Teacher, we desire that you to do for us whatever we ask you." 36 So he said to them, "What do **you** want me to do for **you**?" (Mark 10:35-36 ULT)

Jesus is asking the two, James and John, what they want him to do for them. If the target language has a dual form of "you," use that. If the target language does not have a dual form, then the plural form would be appropriate.

> Jesus sent out two of his disciples and said to them, "Go into the village opposite us. As soon as **you** enter it, **you** will find a colt tied there, on which no one has yet sat. Untie it and bring it to me." (Mark 11:1b-2 ULT)

The context makes it clear that Jesus is addressing two people. If the target language has a dual form of "you," use that. If the target language does not have a dual form, then the plural form would be appropriate.

> James, a servant of God and of the Lord Jesus Christ, to the twelve tribes who are in the dispersion: Greetings. Consider it all joy, my brothers, when **you** experience various troubles. You know that the testing of **your** faith produces endurance. (James 1:1-3 ULT)

James wrote this letter to many people, so the word "you" refers to many people. If the target language has a plural form of "you," it would be best to use it here.

Strategies for finding out how many people "you" refers to

(1) Look at the translationNotes to see if they tell whether "you" refers to one person or more than one person.
(2) Look at the UST to see if it says anything that would show you whether the word "you" refers to one person or more than one person.
(3) If you have a Bible that is written in a language that distinguishes "you" singular from "you" plural, see which form of "you" that Bible has in that sentence.
(4) Look at the context to see who the speaker was talking to and who responded.

You may also want to watch the video at https://ufw.io/figs_youdual.

Numbers References:

Numbers 1:4 Numbers 1:5

Forms of 'You' — Singular

Description

Some languages have a **singular** form of "you" for when the word "you" refers to just one person, and a **plural** form for when the word "you" refers to more than one person. Translators who speak one of these languages will always need to know what the speaker meant so they can choose the right word for "you" in their language. Other languages, such as English, have only one form, which people use regardless of how many people it refers to.

The Bible was first written in the Hebrew, Aramaic, and Greek languages. These languages all have both a singular form of "you" and a plural form of "you." When we read the Bible in those languages, the pronouns and verb forms show us whether the word "you" refers to one person or more than one. When we read the Bible in a language that does not have different forms of you, we need to look at the context to see how many people the speaker was speaking to.

Reason This Is a Translation Issue

- Translators who speak a language that has distinct singular and plural forms of "you" will always need to know what the speaker meant so they can choose the right word for "you" in their language.
- Many languages also have different forms of the verb depending on whether the subject is singular or plural. So even if there is no pronoun meaning "you," translators of these languages will need to know if the speaker was referring to one person or more than one.

Often the context will make it clear whether the word "you" refers to one person or more than one. If you look at the other pronouns in the sentence, they will help you know the number of people the speaker was speaking to. Sometimes Greek and Hebrew speakers used the singular form of "you" even though they were speaking to a group of people. (See Forms of 'You' — Singular to a Crowd.)

Examples From the Bible

> But he said, "All these things **I** have kept from my youth." But when he heard this, Jesus said to him, "One thing is still lacking to **you**. All things, as much as **you** have, **sell** all and **distribute** to the poor, and **you** will have treasure in heaven—and **come**, **follow** me." (Luke 18:21-22 ULT)

The ruler was speaking about just himself when he said "I." This shows us that when Jesus said "you" he was referring only to the ruler and he used the singular form. So languages that have singular and plural forms of "you" need the singular form here, as well as for the verbs "sell," distribute," "come," and "follow."

> The angel said to him, "**Dress yourself** and **put on your** sandals." So he did that. He said to him, "**Put on your** outer garment and **follow** me." (Acts 12:8 ULT)

The angel used singular forms here and the context makes it clear that he was speaking to one person and that only one person did what the the angel commanded. So languages that have singular and plural forms of "you" would need the singular form here for "yourself" and "your." Also, if verbs have different forms for singular and plural subjects, then the verbs "dress," "put on," and "follow" need the form that indicates a singular subject.

> All the ones {who are} with me greet **you**. **Greet** the ones loving us in faith. Grace {be} with all of **you**. (Titus 3:15 ULT)

Paul wrote this letter to one person, Titus, so most of the time the word "you" in this letter is singular and refers only to Titus. In this verse, the first "you" is singular, so the greeting is for Titus, as well as the instruction to greet the others there. The second "you," however, is plural, so the blessing is for Titus and for all of the believers there in Crete.

> "Having gone, **search** carefully for the young child, and after **you** have found him, **report** to me so that I also, having come, might worship him." (Matthew 2:8 ULT)

Since Herod is speaking to all of the learned men, the word "you" and the commands "search" and "report" are plural.

Strategies for finding out how many people "you" refers to

(1) Look at the notes to see if they tell whether "you" refers to one person or more than one person.
(2) Look at the UST to see if it says anything that would show you whether the word "you" refers to one person or more than one person.
(3) If you have a Bible that is written in a language that distinguishes "you" singular from "you" plural, see which form of "you" that Bible has in that sentence.
(4) Look at the context to see how many people the speaker was talking to and who responded.

You may also want to watch the video at https://ufw.io/figs_younum.

Numbers References:

Numbers 1:2 Numbers 1:3 Numbers 1:49 Numbers 1:50 Numbers 3:9 Numbers 4:2 Numbers 4:27 Numbers 4:29 Numbers 4:32 Numbers 6:24 Numbers 6:25 Numbers 6:26 Numbers 10:2 Numbers 10:3 Numbers 10:4 Numbers 10:5 Numbers 10:6 Numbers 10:7 Numbers 10:8 Numbers 10:9 Numbers 10:10 Numbers 11:23 Numbers 13:2 Numbers 14:25 Numbers 14:28 Numbers 15:5 Numbers 15:6 Numbers 15:7 Numbers 15:8 Numbers 15:10 Numbers 15:12 Numbers 15:29 Numbers 16:10 Numbers 16:11 Numbers 16:45 Numbers 17:4 Numbers 17:5 Numbers 18:1 Numbers 18:1 Numbers 18:2 Numbers 18:3 Numbers 18:3 Numbers 18:4 Numbers 18:4 Numbers 18:5 Numbers 18:6 Numbers 18:6 Numbers 18:7 Numbers 18:7 Numbers 28:4 Numbers 28:8 Numbers 28:21 Numbers 29:1 Numbers 33:54 Numbers 35:34

Collective Nouns

Description

A collective noun is a singular noun that refers to a group of something. Examples: a **family, clan,** or **tribe** is a group of people who are related to each other; a **flock** is a group of birds or sheep; a **fleet** is a group of ships; and an **army** is a group of soldiers.

Many collective nouns are used exclusively as a singular replacement for a group as in the examples above. Frequently in the Bible the name of an ancestor is used, through a process of metonymy, as a collective noun referencing the group of his descendants. In the Bible, sometimes the singular noun will take a singular verb form, other times it will take a plural verb form. This may depend on how the author is thinking about the group, or whether the action is being done as a group or as individuals.

Reason This is a Translation Issue

There are several issues that require care when translating collective nouns. Further care is needed because the language you are translating into may not use collective nouns in the same way as the language you are translating from. Issues include:

1. The source language may have a collective noun for a group that the target language does not and vice-versa. You may have to translate a collective noun with a plural noun in your language, or you may need to translate a plural noun with a collective noun in your language.
2. Subject-verb agreement. Different languages or dialects may have different rules about using singular or plural verbs with collective nouns. Examples (from Wikipedia):
   - a singular noun with a singular verb: The team *is* in the dressing room.
   - a singular noun with a plural verb which is correct in British, but not American, English: The team *are* fighting among themselves. The team *have* finished the project.

3. Pronoun agreement. Similar to the previous, care needs to be taken to use the correct pronoun plurality and possibly gender or noun class to agree with the number/gender/class of the noun used. See the biblical examples below.
4. Clarity of referent. Especially if there is a mismatch in your translation between the verb and noun or pronoun concerning any of the factors above, readers may be confused about who or what is being referenced.

Examples from the Bible

> And Joab and all the **army** which was with him arrived (2 Samuel 3:23a ULT)

The word in bold is written in singular form in both Hebrew and English, but it refers to a group of warriors that fight together.

> and though the **flock** is cut off from the fold and there are no cattle in the stalls. (Habakkuk 3:17b ULT)

The word in bold is singular and refers to a group of sheep.

> And he went out again beside the sea, and all the **crowd** was coming to him, and he was teaching **them**. (Mark 2:13 ULT)

Note in this example that the noun is singular but the pronoun is plural. This may or may not be allowed or natural in your language.

> Do not let **your heart** be troubled. **You** believe in God; believe also in me. (John 14:1 ULT)

In this verse, the words translated "your" and "you" are plural, referring to many people. The word "heart" is singular in form, but it refers to all of their hearts as a group.

> And he shall take the **hair** of the head of his separation. And he shall put **it** on the fire that is under the sacrifice of the peace offerings. (Num 6:18b ULT)

The word **hair** is singular, but it refers to many hairs, not just one.

> And Pharaoh said, "Who is Yahweh that I should listen to his voice to let **Israel** go? I do not know Yahweh; and moreover, I will not let **Israel** go." (Exodus 5:2 ULT)

Here, "Israel" is singular, but means "the Israelites" by metonymy.

Translation Strategies

If your language has a collective (singular) noun that refers to the same group as referenced by the collective noun in the source text, then translate the word using that term. If not, here are some strategies to consider:

(1) Translate the collective noun with a plural noun.
(2) Add a plural word to the collective noun so that you can use a plural verb and pronouns.
(3) Use a phrase to describe the group that the collective noun references. A useful strategy here can be to use a general collective noun that refers to a group of people or things.
(4) If your language uses a collective noun for something that is a plural noun in the source language, you can translate the plural noun as a collective noun and, if necessary, change the form of the verb and any pronouns so that they agree with the singular noun.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Translate the collective noun with a plural noun.

> And Pharaoh said, "Who is Yahweh that I should listen to his voice to let **Israel** go? I do not know Yahweh; and moreover, I will not let **Israel** go." (Exodus 5:2 ULT)

And Pharaoh said, "Who is Yahweh that I should listen to his voice to let **the Israelites** go? I do not know Yahweh; and moreover, I will not let **the Israelites** go."

> And he shall take the **hair** of the head of his separation. And he shall put **it** on the fire that is under the sacrifice of the peace offerings. (Num 6:18b ULT)

And he shall take the **hairs** of the head of his separation. And he shall put **them** on the fire that is under the sacrifice of the peace offerings.

(2) Add a plural word to the collective noun so that you can use a plural verb and pronouns.

> And Joab and all the **army** which was with him arrived (2 Samuel 3:23a ULT)

And Joab and all the **army men who were** with him arrived

> And he went out again beside the sea, and all the **crowd** was coming to him, and he was teaching **them**. (Mark 2:13 ULT)

And he went out again beside the sea, and all the **people of the crowd were** coming to him, and he was teaching **them**.

(3) Use a phrase to describe the group that the collective noun references. A useful strategy here can be to use a general collective noun that refers to a group of people or things.

> and though the **flock** is cut off from the fold and there are no cattle in the stalls. (Habakkuk 3:17b ULT)

and though the **group of sheep** is cut off from the fold and there are no cattle in the stalls.

> And Pharaoh said, “Who is Yahweh that I should listen to his voice to let **Israel** go? I do not know Yahweh; and moreover, I will not let **Israel** go.” (Exodus 5:2 ULT)

And Pharaoh said, “Who is Yahweh that I should listen to his voice to let **the people of Israel** go? I do not know Yahweh; and moreover, I will not let **the people of Israel** go.”

(4) If your language uses a collective noun for something that is a plural noun in the source language, you can translate the plural noun as a collective noun and, if necessary, change the form of the verb and any pronouns so that they agree with the singular noun.

> Now this John had his clothing from the **hairs** of a camel and a leather belt around his waist (Matthew 3:4a ULT)

Now this John had his clothing from the **hair** of a camel and a leather belt around his waist

> You shall not make for yourself a carved figure nor any likeness that {is} in **the heavens** above, or that {is} in the earth beneath, or that {is} in **the waters** under the earth. (Deuteronomy 5:8 ULT)

You shall not make for yourself a carved figure nor any likeness that is in **heaven** above, or that is in the earth beneath, or that is in **the water** under the earth.

Numbers References:

Numbers 3:3 Numbers 3:41 Numbers 3:45 Numbers 6:15 Numbers 7:3 Numbers 7:10 Numbers 7:11 Numbers 7:87 Numbers 8:4 Numbers 11:6 Numbers 11:32 Numbers 13:20 Numbers 13:26 Numbers 13:27 Numbers 14:1 Numbers 14:14 Numbers 17:8 Numbers 24:7 Numbers 26:33 Numbers 31:9 Numbers 31:11 Numbers 31:11 Numbers 32:15 Numbers 32:39 Numbers 34:14

Connect — Contrary to Fact Conditions

Conditional Relationships

Conditional connectors connect two clauses to indicate that one of them will happen when the other one happens. In English, the most common way to connect conditional clauses is with the words, "if … then." Often, however, the word "then" is not stated.

Contrary-to-Fact Conditions

Description

A Contrary-to-Fact Condition is a condition that sounds hypothetical, but the speaker is already certain that it is NOT true.

Reason This Is a Translation Issue

Usually there are no special words that indicate a Contrary-to-Fact Condition. The writer assumes that the reader knows that it is NOT a true condition. For this reason it often requires knowledge of implied information to know that it is not true. If this kind of condition is difficult for translators to communicate, they may want to consider using the same strategies that they used for Rhetorical Questions or Implied Information.

Examples From OBS and the Bible

> But **if Baal is God**, worship him! (Story 19 Frame 6 OBS)

> Elijah came near to all the people and said, "How long will you keep changing your mind? If Yahweh is God, follow him. But **if Baal is God**, then follow him." Yet the people did not answer him a word. (1 Kings 18:21 ULT)

Baal is not God. Elijah is not suggesting that Baal might be God, and he does not want the people to follow Baal. But Elijah used a conditional statement to show them that what they were doing was wrong. In the example above, we see two conditions that have the same construction. The first one, "If Yahweh is God," is a Factual Condition because Elijah is certain that it is true. The second one, "if Baal is God," is a Contrary-to-Fact Condition because Elijah is certain that it is not true. You will need to consider if people would say both of these in the same way in your language or if they would say them in different ways.

> But his wife replied to him, "**If Yahweh had desired to kill us**, he would not have taken from our hand the whole burnt offering and the offering. He would not have shown us all these things, and at this time would he have not allowed us to hear about this." (Judges 13:23 ULT)

Manoah's wife thinks that the second part of her conditional statement is not true, therefore the first part is also not true. God received their burnt offering; therefore, He does not want to kill them.

> "**If only we had died** by Yahweh's hand in the land of Egypt, sitting by a pot of meat and eating bread to the full." (Exodus 16b:3 ULT)

Of course the people speaking here did not die in Egypt, and so this is a Contrary-to-Fact condition that is used to express a wish.

> "Woe to you, Chorazin! Woe to you, Bethsaida! **If the mighty deeds had been done** in Tyre and Sidon which were done in you, **they would have repented** long ago in sackcloth and ashes." (Matthew 11:21 ULT)

The English reader knows that these last two examples are Contrary-to-Fact conditions because of the past-tense verbs used in the first part (they are not things that might happen). The last example also has a second part that uses "would have." These words also signal something that did not happen.

Translation Strategies

If Contrary-to-Fact conditions are clear in your language, then use them as they are.

(1) If the condition leads the reader to think that the speaker believes something that is false, then restate the condition as something

that others believe.
(2) If the condition leads the reader to think that the speaker is suggesting that the first part is true, then restate it as a statement that it is not true.
(3) If the condition is expressing something that did not happen but the speaker wanted it to happen, restate it as a wish.
(4) If the condition is expressing something that did not happen, restate it as a negative statement.
(5) Often Factual and Contrary-to-Fact conditions are used to make reasoned arguments for a change in behavior. If translators are struggling to know the best way to translate them, it could be helpful to discuss how this is done in their language community. If someone is trying to convince people to change their behavior, how do they do that? It may be possible to adapt similar strategies when translating these conditions.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) If the condition leads the reader to think that the speaker believes something that is false, then restate the condition as something that others believe.

> But **if Baal is God**, worship him! (Story 19 Frame 6 OBS)

> > If you believe that Baal is God, then worship him!

(2) If the condition leads the reader to think that the speaker is suggesting that the first part is true, then restate it as a statement that it is not true.

> > If Baal is not God, then you should not worship him!

But his wife replied to him, "**If Yahweh had desired to kill us**, he would not have taken from our hand the whole burnt offering and the offering. He would not have shown us all these things, and at this time would he have not allowed us to hear about this." (Judges 13:23 ULT)

> > "**Yahweh does not want to kill us**, or he would not have received the burnt offering and the offering we gave him."

(3) If the condition is expressing something that did not happen but the speaker wanted it to happen, restate it as a wish.

> "**If only we had died** by Yahweh's hand in the land of Egypt, sitting by a pot of meat and eating bread to the full." (Exodus 16b:3 ULT)

> > "**I wish we had died** by Yahweh's hand in the land of Egypt…"

(4) If the condition is expressing something that did not happen, restate it as a negative statement.

> "Woe to you, Chorazin! Woe to you, Bethsaida! **If the mighty deeds had been done** in Tyre and Sidon which were done in you, **they would have repented** long ago in sackcloth and ashes." (Matthew 11:21 ULT)

> > "Woe to you, Chorazin! Woe to you, Bethsaida! The mighty deeds which were done in you **were not done** in Tyre and Sidon. But **if they had been done there, those people would have repented** long ago in sackcloth and ashes."

(5) Often Factual and Contrary-to-Fact Conditions are used to make reasoned arguments for a change in behavior. If translators are struggling to know the best way to translate them, it could be helpful to discuss how this is done in their language community. If someone is trying to convince people to change their behavior, how do they do that? It may be possible to adapt similar strategies when translating these conditions.

> But **if Baal is God**, worship him! (Story 19 Frame 6 OBS)

> > Is Baal the one who is truly God? Should you worship him?

> "Woe to you, Chorazin! Woe to you, Bethsaida! **If the mighty deeds had been done** in Tyre and Sidon which were done in you, **they would have repented** long ago in sackcloth and ashes." (Matthew 11:21 ULT)

> > "Woe to you, Chorazin! Woe to you, Bethsaida! You think that you are better than Tyre and Sidon, but you are not! **They would have repented** long ago in sackcloth and ashes at seeing the mighty deeds that you have seen! **You should be like them**!"

Numbers References:

Numbers 22:29

Connect — Factual Conditions

Conditional Relationships

Conditional connectors connect two clauses to indicate that one of them will happen when the other one happens. In English, the most common way to connect conditional clauses is with the words, "if … then." Often, however, the word "then" is not stated.

Factual Conditions

Description

A Factual Condition is a condition that sounds hypothetical but is already certain or true in the speaker's mind. In English, a sentence containing a Factual Condition can use the words "even though," "since," or "this being the case" to indicate that it is a factual condition and not a hypothetical condition.

Reason This Is a Translation Issue

Some languages do not state something as a condition if it is certain or true. Translators from these languages may misunderstand the original languages and think that the condition is uncertain. This would lead to mistakes in their translations. Even if the translators understand that the condition is certain or true, the readers may misunderstand it. In this case, it would be best to translate it as a statement of fact rather than as a conditional statement.

Examples From OBS and the Bible

> "**If** Yahweh is God, worship him!" (Story 19 Frame 6 OBS)

> Elijah came near to all the people and said, "How long will you keep changing your mind? **If Yahweh is God**, follow him. But if Baal is God, then follow him." Yet the people did not answer him a word. (1 Kings 18:21 ULT)

This sentence has the same construction as a hypothetical condition. The condition is "if

Yahweh is God." If that is true, then the Israelites should worship Yahweh. But the prophet Elijah does not question whether or not Yahweh is God. In fact, he is so certain that Yahweh is God that later in the passage he pours water all over his sacrifice. He is confident that God is real and that he will burn even an offering that is completely wet. Over and over again, the prophets taught that Yahweh is God, so the people should worship him. The people did not worship Yahweh, however, even though He is God. By putting the statement or instruction into the form of a Factual Condition, Elijah is trying to get the Israelites to understand more clearly what they should do.

> "A son honors his father, and a servant honors his master. **If** I, then, am a father, where is my honor? **If** I am a master, where is the reverence for me?" says Yahweh of hosts to you priests, who despise my name. (Malachi 1:6 ULT)

Yahweh has said that he is a father and a master to Israel, so even though this sounds like a hypothetical condition because it begins with "if," it is not hypothetical. This verse begins with the proverb that a son honors his father. Everyone knows that is right. But the Israelites are not honoring Yahweh. The other proverb in the verse says that a servant honors his master. Everyone knows that is right. But the Israelites are not honoring Yahweh, so it seems that he is not their master. But Yahweh is the master. Yahweh uses the form of a hypothetical condition to demonstrate that the Israelites are wrong. The second part of the condition that should occur naturally is not happening, even though the conditional statement is true.

Translation Strategies

If using the form of a hypothetical condition is confusing or would make the reader think that the speaker doubts what he is saying in the first part of the sentence, then use a statement instead. Words such as "since" or "you know that …" or "it is true that …" can be helpful to make the meaning clear.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

> "**If** Yahweh is God, worship him!" (Story 19 Frame 6 OBS)
>
> > "**It is true that** Yahweh is God, so worship him!"

> "A son honors his father, and a servant honors his master. **If** I, then, am a father, where is my honor? **If** I am a master, where is the reverence for me?" says Yahweh of hosts to you priests, who despise my name. (Malachi 1:6 ULT)
>
> > "A son honors his father, and a servant honors his master. **Since** I, then, am a father, where is my honor? **Since** I am a master, where is the reverence for me?"

Numbers References:

Numbers 18:26 Numbers 18:30 Numbers 18:32 Numbers 22:20 Numbers 36:4

Connect — Hypothetical Conditions

Conditional Relationships

Conditional connectors connect two clauses to indicate that one of them will happen when the other one happens. In English, the most common way to connect conditional clauses is with the words "if … then." Often, however, the word "then" is not stated.

Hypothetical Condition

Description

A Hypothetical Condition is a condition in which the second event (the "then" clause) will only take place if the first event (the "if" clause) takes place or is fulfilled in some way. Sometimes what takes place is dependent on the actions of other people.

Reason This Is a Translation Issue

It is important that translators understand whether or not something is a Hypothetical Condition so that they translate it in the correct way. For example, some of God's promises to Israel were conditional, based on whether or not Israel obeyed God. However, many of God's promises to Israel were not conditional; God would keep these promises whether or not the Israelites obeyed. It is important that you (the translator) know the difference between these two types of promises and communicate each one accurately in your own language. Also, sometimes conditions are stated in an order different than the order in which they would happen. If the target language would state the clauses in a different order, then you will need to make that adjustment.

Examples From OBS and the Bible

> God promised to bless the people and protect them, **if** they obeyed these laws. But he said he would punish them **if** they did not obey them (Story 13 Frame 7 OBS)

There are two hypothetical conditions in this frame. In both of these conditions, the first event (the "if clause") is stated after the "then" clause. If this is unnatural or confusing, the clauses can be restated in the more natural order. The first hypothetical condition is: if the Israelites obeyed God, then God would bless and protect them. The second hypothetical condition is: if the Israelites did not obey God, then God would punish them.

> If you do what is right, will you not be accepted? (Genesis 4:7a ULT)

If Cain does what is right, then he will be accepted. The only way for Cain to be accepted is by doing what is right.

> … **if** this plan or this work is of men, it will be overthrown. But **if** it is of God, you will not be able to overthrow them. (Acts 5:38b-39aULT)

There are two hypothetical conditions here: (1) If it is true that this plan is of men, then it will be overthrown; (2) If it is true that this plan is of God, then it cannot be overthrown.

Translation Strategies

(1) If the order of clauses makes the hypothetical condition confusing, then change the order of the clauses.

(2) If it is not clear where the second event is, mark that part with a word like "then."

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) If the order of clauses makes the hypothetical condition confusing, then change the order of the clauses.

> God promised to bless the people and protect them **if** they obeyed these laws. But he said he would punish them **if** they did not obey them. (Story 13 Frame 7 OBS)

> If the people obeyed these laws, God promised he would bless them and protect them. But **if** they did not obey these laws, God said that he would punish them.

(2) If it is not clear where the second event is, mark that part with a word like "then."

> God promised to bless the people and protect them, **if** they obeyed these laws. But he said he would punish them **if** they did not obey them. (Story 13 Frame 7 OBS)

> If the people obeyed these laws, **then** God promised he would bless them and protect them. But **if** they did not obey these laws, **then** God said that he would punish them.

> … **if** this plan or this work is of men, it will be overthrown. But **if** it is of God, you will not be able to overthrow them; (Acts 5:38b-39a ULT)

> … **if** this plan or this work is of men, **then** it will be overthrown. But **if** it is of God, **then** you will not be able to overthrow them;

Numbers References:

Numbers 10:32 Numbers 11:15 Numbers 12:6 Numbers 14:8 Numbers 14:15 Numbers 19:14 Numbers 20:19 Numbers 21:2 Numbers 21:8 Numbers 21:9 Numbers 22:34 Numbers 30:2 Numbers 32:20 Numbers 33:55 Numbers 35:16

Connect — Exception Clauses

Exceptional Relationship

Description

Exceptional relationship connectors exclude one or more items or people from a group.

Reason This Is a Translation Issue

English indicates exceptional relationships by first describing a group (Part 1) and then stating what is not in that group by using words like "except," "but not," "other than," "besides," "unless," "however … not," and "only" (Part 2). Some languages do not indicate in this way that one or more items or people are excluded from a group. Instead, they have other ways of doing this. In some languages this type of construction does not make sense because the exception in Part 2 seems to contradict the statement in Part 1. Translators need to understand who (or what) is in the group and who (or what) is excluded in order to be able to accurately communicate this in their language.

Examples From OBS and the Bible

> God told Adam that he could eat from **any** tree in the garden **except** from the tree of the knowledge of good and evil. (OBS Story 1 Frame 11)

> But if you will not redeem it, then tell me so that I may know, for there is **no one** to redeem it **besides** you, and I am after you. (Ruth 4:4b ULT)

> David attacked them from the twilight to the evening of the next day. **Not** a man escaped **except for** 400 young men, who rode on camels and fled. (1 Samuel 30:17 ULT)

> The man said, "Let me go, for the dawn is breaking." Jacob said, "I will **not** let you go **unless** you bless me." (Genesis 32:26 ULT)

Translation Strategies

If the way that Exceptional Clauses are marked in the source language is also clear in your language, then translate the Exceptional Clauses in the same way.

(1) Very often, the exception in Part 2 contradicts something that was negated in Part 1. In this case, the translator can phrase the same idea without the contradiction by deleting the negative and using a word like "**only**."
(2) Reverse the order of the clauses so that the exception is stated first, and then the larger group is named second.

Examples of Translation Strategy Applied

(1) Very often, the exception in Part 2 contradicts something that was negated in Part 1. In this case, the translator can phrase the same idea without the contradiction by deleting the negative and using a word like "**only**."

> David attacked them from the twilight to the evening of the next day. **Not a man escaped except for 400 young men**, who rode on camels and fled. (1 Samuel 30:17 ULT)

- Part 1: (**Not** a man escaped)
- Part 2: (**except for** 400 young men)

> > David attacked them from the twilight to the evening of the next day. **Only** 400 young men escaped; they rode on camels and fled.

> But if you will not redeem it, then tell me so that I may know, for there is **no one** to redeem it **besides** you, and I am after you. (Ruth 4:4 ULT)
>
> > But if you will not redeem it, then tell me so that I may know, for **you are first in line to redeem it {only you can redeem it}**, and I am after you.

> The man said, "Let me go, for the dawn is breaking." Jacob said, "I will **not** let you go **unless** you bless me." (Genesis 32:26 ULT)
>
> > The man said, "Let me go, for the dawn is breaking." Jacob said, "I will let you go **only if** you bless me."

(2) Reverse the order of the clauses, so that the exception is stated first, and then the larger group is named second.

> God told Adam that he could eat from **any** tree in the garden **except** from the tree of the knowledge of good and evil. (OBS Story 1 Frame 11)
>
> > God told Adam that he could **not** eat from the tree of the knowledge of good and evil, but he could eat from **any other** tree in the garden.

Numbers References:

Numbers 10:30 Numbers 11:6 Numbers 14:30-31 Numbers 26:65 Numbers 32:12 Numbers 35:33

Connect — Contrast Relationship

Logical Relationships

Some connectors establish logical relationships between two phrases, clauses, sentences, or chunks of text.

Contrast Relationship

Description

A contrast relationship is a logical relationship in which one event or item is in contrast or opposition to another.

Reason This Is a Translation Issue

In Scripture, many events did not happen as the people involved intended or expected them to happen. Sometimes people acted in ways that were not expected, whether good or bad. Often it was God at work, changing the events. These events were often pivotal. It is important that translators understand and communicate these contrasts. In English, contrast relationships are often indicated by the words “but,” “although,” “even though,” “though,” “yet,” or “however.”

Examples From OBS and the Bible

> You tried to do evil when you sold me as a slave, **but** God used the evil for good! (Story 8 Frame 12 OBS)

Joseph’s brothers’ evil plan to sell Joseph is contrasted with God’s good plan to save many people. The word “but” marks the contrast.

> For who is greater, the one who reclines at the table or the one who serves? Is it not the one who reclines at the table? **Yet** I am among you as one who serves. (Luke 22:27 ULT)

Jesus contrasts the proud way that human leaders behave with the humble way that he behaves. The contrast is marked by the word “yet.”

> The hill country will also be yours. **Though** it is a forest, you will clear it and it will become yours to its farthest borders, for you will drive out the Canaanites, even **though** they have chariots of iron, and even **though** they are strong. (Joshua 17:18 ULT)

It was unexpected that the Israelites, who had been slaves in Egypt, would be able to conquer and lay claim to the promised land.

Translation Strategies

If your language uses contrast relationships in the same way as in the text, then use them as they are.

(1) If the contrast relationship between the clauses is not clear, then use a connecting word or phrase that is more specific or more clear.
(2) If it is more clear in your language to mark the other clause of the contrast relationship, then use a connecting word on the other clause.
(3) If your language shows a contrast relationship in a different way, then use that way.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) If the contrast relationship between the clauses is not clear, then use a connecting word or phrase that is more specific or more clear.

> For who is greater, the one who reclines at table or the one who serves? Is it not the one who reclines at table? **Yet** I am among you as one who serves. (Luke 22:27 ULT)
>
> > For who is greater, the one who reclines at table or the one who serves? Is it not the one who reclines at table? **Unlike that person**, I am among you as one who serves.

(2) If it is more clear in your language to mark the other clause of the contrast relationship, then use a connecting word on the other clause.

> The hill country will also be yours. **Though** it is a forest, you will clear it and it will become yours to its farthest borders, for you will drive out the Canaanites, even **though** they have chariots of iron, and even **though** they are strong. (Joshua 17:18 ULT)
>
> > The hill country will also be yours. It is a forest, **but** you will clear it and it will become yours to its farthest borders. They have chariots of iron, and they are strong, **but** you will drive out the Canaanites.

(3) If your language shows a contrast relationship in a different way, then use that way.

> {David} found favor in the sight of God, and he asked if he might find a dwelling place for the house of Jacob. **However**, Solomon built the house for him. **But** the Most High does not live in houses made with hands. (Acts 7:46-48a ULT)
>
> > [David] found favor in the sight of God, and he asked if he might find a dwelling place for the house of Jacob. **But** it was, Solomon, **not David**, who built the house for God. **Even though Solomon built him a house**, the Most High does not live in houses made with hands.

Numbers References:

Numbers 1:47 Numbers 2:33 Numbers 19:12 Numbers 26:11 Numbers 31:23 Numbers 35:22

Connect — Goal (Purpose) Relationship

Logical Relationships

Some connectors establish logical relationships between two phrases, clauses, sentences, or chunks of text.

Goal (or Purpose) Relationship

Description

A Goal Relationship is a logical relationship in which the second event is the purpose or goal of the first event. In order for something to be a goal relationship, someone must do the first event with the intention that it will cause the second event.

Reason This Is a Translation Issue

In Scripture, the goal or purpose may be stated either first or second. But in some languages, the goal or purpose must always occur in the same position (either first or second) in order for that logical relationship to be understood. You (the translator) need to understand the relationship between the two parts and communicate those accurately in your language. This may require changing the order of the two events. It may also require specific words to indicate that one is the goal or purpose of the other. Words commonly used to indicate a goal relationship in English are “in order to,” “in order that” or “so that.” It is important that the translator recognize the words that signal a goal relationship and translate that relationship in a natural way.

Examples From OBS and the Bible

> She became angry and falsely accused Joseph **so that he was arrested and sent to prison**. (Story 8 Frame 5 OBS)

The goal or purpose of the woman’s false accusation was to get Joseph arrested and sent to prison.

> Meanwhile Gideon, his son, was threshing out wheat at the winepress **in order to hide from the presence of Midian**. (Judges 6:11b ULT)

Here the prepositional phrase begins with "in order to."

> Now if I have found favor in your eyes, show me your ways **so that I may know you and continue to find favor in your eyes**. Remember that this nation is your people. (Exodus 33:13 ULT)

Moses wants God to show him God's ways for the goal or purpose of Moses knowing God and continuing to find favor with God.

> Even be sure to pull some out from the bundles for her and leave it **for her to glean**, and do not rebuke her! (Ruth 2:16 ULT)

The goal or purpose of Boaz instructing the men to pull out the grain from their bundles and leave it was for Ruth to gather (glean) it.

> The shepherds said to each other, "Let us indeed go over as far as Bethlehem, **and let us see this thing that has happened**, which the Lord has made known to us." (Luke 2:15 ULT)

The purpose of going to Bethlehem was to see the thing that had happened. Here the purpose is not marked and might be misunderstood.

> "… if you want **to enter into life**, keep the commandments." (Matthew 19:17b ULT)

The goal of keeping the commandments is to enter into life.

> Do not turn from it to the right or to the left **so that you may be wise** in everything in which you walk. (Joshua 1:7c ULT)

The purpose of not turning away from the instructions that Moses gave to the Israelites was so that they would be wise.

> But when the vine growers saw the son, they said among themselves, 'This is the heir. Come, let us kill him **and take over his inheritance**.' So they took him, threw him out of the vineyard and killed him. (Matt 21:38-39 ULT)

The purpose of the vine growers killing the heir was so they could take his inheritance. They state both events as a plan, joining them only with "and." Then the word "so" marks the reporting of the first event, but the second event (the goal or purpose) is not stated.

Translation Strategies

If your language uses Goal or Purpose relationships in the same way as in the text, then use them as they are.

(1) If the construction of the Goal statement is unclear, change it to one that is more clear. (2) If the order of the statements makes the Goal statement unclear or confusing for the reader, then change the order.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) If the construction of the goal statement is unclear, change it to one that is more clear.

> "Even be sure to pull some out from the bundles for her and leave it **for her to glean**, and do not rebuke her!" (Ruth 2:16 ULT)
>
> > "Even be sure to pull some out from the bundles for her and leave it **so that she can glean it**, and do not rebuke her!"

> The shepherds said to each other, "Let us indeed go over as far as Bethlehem, **and let us see this thing that has happened**, which the Lord has made known to us." (Luke 2:15 ULT)
>
> > The shepherds said to each other, "Let us indeed go over as far as Bethlehem **so that we can see this thing that has happened**, which the Lord has made known to us."

(2) If the order of the statements makes the goal statement unclear or confusing for the reader, then change the order.

> "… if you want **to enter into life**, keep the commandments." (Matthew 19:17bULT)
>
> > "… keep the commandments if you want **to enter into life**." or: "… keep the commandments **so that you can enter into life**."

> But when the vine growers saw the son, they said among themselves, 'This is the heir. Come, let us kill him **and take over his inheritance**.' So they took him, threw him out of the vineyard and killed him. (Matt 21:38-39 ULT)

(1) and (2)

> But when the vine growers saw the son, they said among themselves, 'This is the heir. Come, let us kill him **and take over his inheritance**.' So they took him, threw him out of the vineyard and killed him. (Matt 21:38-39 ULT)
>
> > But when the vine growers saw the son, they said among themselves, 'This is the heir. Come, let us kill him **so that we can take over his inheritance**.' So they took him, threw him out of the vineyard and killed him **so that they could take over his inheritance**.

Numbers References:

Numbers 4:19 Numbers 15:40 Numbers 16:26
Numbers 17:10 Numbers 18:3 Numbers 20:4
Numbers 20:5 Numbers 20:18 Numbers 21:4
Numbers 21:5 Numbers 22:5 Numbers 22:23
Numbers 23:11 Numbers 27:20 Numbers 31:3

Connect — Reason-and-Result Relationship

Logical Relationships

Some connectors establish logical relationships between two phrases, clauses, sentences, or chunks of text.

Reason-and-Result Relationships

Description

A reason-and-result relationship is a logical relationship in which one event is the **reason** or cause for another event. The second event, then, is the **result** of the first event.

Reason This Is a Translation Issue

A reason-and-result relationship can look forward — "I did Y because I wanted X to happen." But usually it is looking backward — "X happened, and so I did Y." Also, it is possible to state the reason either before or after the result. Many languages have a preferred order for the reason and the result, and it will be confusing for the reader if they are in the opposite order. Common words used to indicate a reason-and-result relationship in English are "because," "so," "therefore," and "for." Some of these words can also be used to indicate a goal relationship, so translators need to be aware of the difference between a goal relationship and a reason-and-result relationship. It is necessary for translators to understand how the two events are connected, and then communicate them clearly in their language.

If the reason and result are stated in different verses, it is still possible to put them in a different order. If you change the order of the verses, then put the verse numbers together at the beginning of the group of verses that were rearranged like this: 1-2. This is called a Verse Bridge.

Examples From OBS and the Bible

> The Jews were amazed, **because** Saul had tried to kill believers, and now he believed in Jesus! (Story 46 Frame 6 OBS)

The **reason** is the change in Saul — that he had tried to kill people who believed in Jesus, and now he himself believed in Jesus. The **result** is that the Jews were amazed. "Because" connects the two ideas and indicates that what follows it is a reason.

> Behold, a great storm arose on the sea, **so that** the boat was covered with the waves. (Matthew 8:24a ULT)

The **reason** is the great storm, and the **result** is that the boat was covered with the waves. The two events are connected by "so that." Notice that the term "so that" often indicates a goal relationship, but here the relationship is reason-and-result. This is because the sea cannot think and therefore does not have a goal.

> God blessed the seventh day and sanctified it, **because** in it he rested from all his work which he had done in his creation. (Genesis 2:3 ULT)

The **result** is that God blessed and sanctified the seventh day. The **reason** is because he rested on the seventh day from his work.

> "Blessed are the poor, **for** yours is the kingdom of God." (Luke 6:20b ULT)

The **result** is that the poor are blessed. The **reason** is that the kingdom of God is theirs.

> But he raised up in their place their sons that Joshua circumcised, being uncircumcised, **because** they had not been circumcised on the way. (Joshua 5:7 ULT)

The **result** is that Joshua circumcised the boys and men who had been born in the wilderness. The **reason** was that they had not been circumcised while they were journeying.

Translation Strategies

If your language uses reason-and-result relationships in the same way as in the text, then use them as they are.

(1) If the order of the clauses is confusing for the reader, then change the order.

(2) If the relationship between the clauses is not clear, then use a more clear connecting word.

(3) If it is more clear to put a connecting word in the clause that does not have one, then do so.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

> God blessed the seventh day and sanctified it, **because** in it he rested from all his work which he had done in his creation. (Genesis 2:3 ULT)

(1) God rested on the seventh day from all his work which he had done in his creation. **That is why** he blessed the seventh day and sanctified it.

> Blessed are the poor, **for** yours is the kingdom of God. (Luke 6:20 ULT)

(1) The kingdom of God belongs to you who are poor. **Therefore**, the poor are blessed.

(2) Blessed are the poor, **because** yours is the kingdom of God.

(3) **The reason that** the poor are blessed **is because** yours is the kingdom of God.

> Behold, a great storm arose on the sea, **so that** the boat was covered with the waves. (Matthew 8:24a ULT)

(1) Behold, the boat was covered with the waves **because** a great storm arose on the sea.

(2) Behold, a great storm arose on the sea, **with the result that** the boat was covered with the waves.

(3) Behold, **because** a great storm arose on the sea, the boat was covered with the waves.

> **Since** he was not able to find out anything for certain because of the noise, he ordered that he be brought into the fortress. (Acts 21:34b ULT)

(1) The captain ordered that Paul be brought into the fortress, **because** he could not tell anything because of all the noise.

(2) **Because** the captain could not tell anything because of all the noise, he ordered that Paul be brought into the fortress.

(3) The captain could not tell anything because of all the noise, **so** he ordered that Paul be brought into the fortress.

Numbers References:

Numbers 1:48 Numbers 1:53 Numbers 3:4 Numbers 3:12 Numbers 3:16 Numbers 3:42 Numbers 3:49 Numbers 4:15 Numbers 4:20 Numbers 4:34 Numbers 5:3 Numbers 5:6 Numbers 5:15 Numbers 5:27 Numbers 6:7 Numbers 6:9 Numbers 6:27 Numbers 7:9 Numbers 8:19 Numbers 9:6 Numbers 9:19 Numbers 10:9 Numbers 10:29 Numbers 10:35 Numbers 11:3 Numbers 11:13 Numbers 11:14 Numbers 11:18 Numbers 11:18 Numbers 11:34 Numbers 12:1 Numbers 13:30 Numbers 13:31 Numbers 14:9 Numbers 14:13 Numbers 14:16 Numbers 14:40 Numbers 14:42 Numbers 14:42 Numbers 14:43 Numbers 15:25 Numbers 15:26 Numbers 15:31 Numbers 15:34 Numbers 15:40 Numbers 16:3 Numbers 16:34 Numbers 16:37 Numbers 16:38 Numbers 16:40 Numbers 16:46 Numbers 17:3 Numbers 17:5 Numbers 18:21 Numbers 18:22 Numbers 18:24 Numbers 19:13 Numbers 19:20 Numbers 20:24 Numbers 21:7 Numbers 21:14 Numbers 21:27 Numbers 21:34 Numbers 22:3 Numbers 22:6 Numbers 22:13 Numbers 22:34 Numbers 23:9 Numbers 24:11 Numbers 25:11 Numbers 25:12 Numbers 25:13 Numbers 25:18 Numbers 26:62 Numbers 26:65 Numbers 30:5 Numbers 30:12 Numbers 33:14 Numbers 33:50 Numbers 33:53 Numbers 34:14 Numbers 35:34

Connect — Background Information

Time Relationship

Some connectors establish time relationships between two phrases, clauses, sentences, or chunks of text.

Background Clause

Description

A background clause is one that describes something that is ongoing. Then, in the same sentence, another clause indicates an event that begins to happen during that time. These events are also simultaneous events, but they have the further relationship of background event and main event because the event that is already happening serves as the background for the other event, the one that is in focus. The background event simply provides the time frame or other context for the main event or events.

Reason This Is a Translation Issue

Languages indicate a shift in time in different ways. You (the translator) need to understand how these shifts in time are indicated in the original languages in order to communicate them clearly in your own language. Background clauses often indicate a time that began long before the event that is in focus. Translators need to understand how both the source language and the target language communicate background events. Some English words that indicate background events are “now,” “when,” “while,” and “during.” Those words can also indicate simultaneous events. To tell the difference, ask yourself if all of the events seem to be equal in importance and started at about the same time. If so, they are probably simultaneous events. But if an event(s) is ongoing and another event(s) just started, then the ongoing event(s) is probably background to the other event(s). Some common phrases that indicate background events are “in those days” and “at that time.”

Examples From OBS and the Bible

> **When** Solomon was old, he also worshiped their gods. (OBS Story 18 Frame 3)

Solomon began to worship foreign gods at a time when he was old. Being old is the background event. Worshiping other gods is the main event.

> And his parents went **every year** to Jerusalem to the Feast of the Passover. And when he was 12 years old, they went up according to the custom of the feast. (Luke 2:41-42 ULT)

The first event—going to Jerusalem—is ongoing and started long ago. We know this because of the words "every year." Going to Jerusalem is the background event. Then an event begins that started during the time "when he was twelve years old." So the main event is the specific time Jesus and his family traveled to Jerusalem for the Passover festival **when he was twelve years old.**

> And it came about that, **while** they were there, the days were fulfilled for her to give birth. (Luke 2:6 ULT)

Being in Bethlehem is the background event. The birth of the baby is the main event.

> And in the fifteenth year of the reign of Tiberius Caesar—**while** Pontius Pilate was governor of Judea, and Herod was tetrarch of Galilee, and his brother Philip was tetrarch of the region of Ituraea and Trachonitis, and Lysanias was tetrarch of Abilene, **during** the high priesthood of Annas and Caiaphas—the word of God came to John, the son of Zechariah, in the wilderness. (Luke 3:1-2 ULT)

This example begins with five background clauses (marked by commas), signalled as background by the words "while" and "during." Then the main event happens: "the word of God came to John."

Translation Strategies

If the way that the Background Clauses are marked is also clear in your language, then translate the Background Clauses as they are.

(1) If the connecting word does not make it clear that what follows is a Background Clause, use a connecting word that communicates this more clearly.
(2) If your language marks Background Clauses in a different way than using connecting words (such as by using different verb forms), then use that way.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

> And in the fifteenth year of the reign of Tiberius Caesar—**while** Pontius Pilate was governor of Judea, and Herod was tetrarch of Galilee, and his brother Philip was tetrarch of the region of Ituraea and Trachonitis, and Lysanias was tetrarch of Abilene, **during** the high priesthood of Annas and Caiaphas—the word of God came to John, the son of Zechariah, in the wilderness. (Luke 3:1-2 ULT)

(1) If the connecting word does not make it clear that what follows is a background clause, use a connecting word that communicates this more clearly.

> **It happened during the time that** Pontius Pilate was governor of Judea, **and during the time that** Herod was tetrarch of Galilee, **and during the time that** his brother Philip was tetrarch of the region of Ituraea and Trachonitis, **and during the time that** Lysanias was tetrarch of Abilene, **and also during the time that** Annas and Caiaphas were high priests—**that** the word of God came to John son of Zechariah in the wilderness.

(2) If your language marks background clauses in a different way than using connecting words, such as with different verb forms, then use that way.

> Pontius Pilate **was governing** Judea, and Herod **was ruling over** Galilee, and his brother Philip **was ruling over** the region of Ituraea and Trachonitis, and Lysanias **was ruling over** Abilene, and Annas and Caiaphas **were being** high priests—the word of God **came** to John son of Zechariah in the wilderness.

Example of Differences in Time Relationship Connecting Words:

Category	Example
Background setting	Yahweh's word was rare **in those days**;
Background repeated	there was no frequent prophetic vision.
Introduction of main event	**At that time**, **when** Eli
Background	**whose** eyesight had begun to grow dim so that he could not see well,
Simultaneous background	was lying down in his own bed.
Simultaneous background	The lamp of God **had not yet** gone out,
Simultaneous background	**and** Samuel was lying down to sleep in the temple of Yahweh,
Simultaneous background	where the ark of God was.
Main event	**Yahweh called to Samuel**,
Sequential event	who said, "Here I am." (1 Sam 3:1-4 ULT)

In the above example, the first two lines talk about a condition that was going on for a long time. This is the general, long-term background. We know this from the phrase "in those days." After the introduction of the main event ("At that time,"), there are several lines of simultaneous background. The first one is introduced by "when," and then three more follow, with the last connected by "and." The background clause introduced by "where" explains a little more about the background clause before it. Then the main event happens, followed by more events. Translators will need to think about the best way to show these relationships in their language.

Numbers References:

Numbers 5:25

Connect — Sequential Time Relationship

Time Relationships

Some connectors establish time relationships between two phrases, clauses, sentences, or chunks of text.

Sequential Clause

Description

A sequential clause is a time relation that connects two events in which one happens and then the other happens.

Reason This Is a Translation Issue

Languages indicate sequences of events in different ways; some use ordering, some use connecting words, some even use relative tense (Relative tense is a tense that refers to a time in relation to a reference point in the context.) Connecting words that may indicate sequence are words such as "then," "later," "after," "afterward," "before," "first," and "when." Translators need to be certain that they communicate the order of the events in a way that is natural in their language. This may require ordering clauses differently than in the original languages.

Examples From OBS and the Bible

> **When** Joseph came to his brothers, they kidnapped him and sold him to some slave traders. (OBS Story 8 Frame 2)

First Joseph came to his brothers, and then they kidnapped and sold him. We know this because of the connecting word "**when**." The translator needs to decide the best way to communicate this sequence clearly and correctly.

> It was as sweet as honey in my mouth, but **after** I ate it, my stomach became bitter. (Revelation 10:10b ULT)

The event of the first clause occurs first, and the event of the last clause occurs later. We know this because of the connecting word "**after**." The translator needs to decide the best way to communicate this sequence clearly and correctly.

> For **before** the child knows to refuse the evil and choose the good, the land whose two kings you dread will be desolate (Isaiah 7:16 ULT)

The event of the first clause occurs after the event of the second clause. First the land they dread will be desolate, and then the child will know to refuse evil and choose good. We know this because of the connecting word "**before**." However, stating the clauses in this order may communicate the wrong order of events in your language. The translator may have to change the order so that the clauses come in the order that they happen. Or it may be possible to keep the order of the original language text and mark the ordering of sequence so that it is clear to the readers. You (the translator) need to decide the best way to communicate this sequence clearly and correctly.

> Then Mary arose in those days **and** quickly went into the hill country, to a city of Judah, **and** she entered into the house of Zechariah **and** greeted Elizabeth. (Luke 1:39-40 ULT)

Here the general connector "**and**" connects four events. These are sequential events—each happens after the one before it. We know this because that is the only way that these events would happen. So in English, the general connector "and" is enough to make the sequence clear for events such as these. You will need to decide if this also communicates this sequence clearly and correctly in your language.

Translation Strategies

If the sequence of events is clear in your language, then translate the sequence as it is.

(1) If the connecting word is not clear, use a connecting word that communicates the sequence more clearly.
(2) If the clauses are in an order that makes the sequence unclear, put the clauses in an order that is more clear.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) If the connecting word is not clear, use a connecting word that communicates the sequence more clearly.

> Then Mary arose in those days **and** quickly went into the hill country, to a city of Judah, **and** she entered into the house of Zechariah **and** greeted Elizabeth. (Luke 1:39-40 ULT)
>
> > Then Mary arose in those days. **Then** she quickly went into the hill country, to a city of Judah. **Then** she entered into the house of Zechariah, **and then** she greeted Elizabeth.

> For **before** the child knows to refuse the evil and choose the good, the land whose two kings you dread will be desolate (Isaiah 7:16 ULT)
>
> > For the time will come when the child knows to refuse the evil and choose the good, **but even before that time**, the land whose two kings you dread will be desolate.

(2) If the clauses are in an order that makes the sequence unclear, put the clauses in an order that is more clear.

> For the land whose two kings you dread will be desolate **before** the child knows to refuse the evil and choose the good.

For more about sequences of events, see Sequence of Events.

Numbers References:

Numbers 8:15 Numbers 19:7

Connect — Simultaneous Time Relationship

Time Relationships

Some connectors establish time relationships between two phrases, clauses, sentences, or chunks of text.

Simultaneous Clause

Description

A simultaneous clause is a time relationship that connects two or more events that occur at the same time.

Reason This Is a Translation Issue

Languages indicate in many different ways that events occur simultaneously. These ways may vary based on whether or not something is causing the events to occur simultaneously. Connecting words that may indicate simultaneous events are words such as “while,” “as,” and “during.” Often the Bible does not state a relationship between the events but simply says they occurred at the same time. It is important that you (the translator) know when a time relationship is implied and when it is not implied so that you can communicate it clearly. A simultaneous clause communicates that events happened at the same time but it does not indicate that one event caused the other. That would be a reason-and-result relationship.

Examples From OBS and the Bible

> Joseph served his master well, **and** God blessed Joseph. (OBS Story 8 Frame 4)

Two events happened while Joseph was a slave to a wealthy government official: Joseph served well, and God blessed Joseph. There is no indication of a reason-and-result (cause and effect) relationship between the two, or that the first event happened, and then the second event happened.

> But in truth I say to you that there were many widows in Israel **during** the days of Elijah. (Luke 4:25b ULT)

The connecting word "**during**" tells us clearly that two things happened at the same time, but one event did not cause the other.

> And the people were waiting for Zechariah, **and** they were wondering at his delaying in the temple. (Luke 1:21 ULT)

The people were both waiting and wondering at the same time. The general connector "**and**" indicates this.

> **While** they were looking intensely into heaven **as** he was going up, suddenly, two men stood by them in white clothing. (Acts 1:10 ULT)

Three events happened at the same time — the disciples looking, Jesus going up, and two men standing. The connector words "**while**" and "**as**" tell us this.

Translation Strategies

If the way that the simultaneous clauses are marked also is clear in your language, then translate the simultaneous clauses as they are.

(1) If the connecting word does not make it clear that the simultaneous clauses are happening at the same time, use a connecting word that communicates this more clearly.
(2) If it is not clear which clause the simultaneous clause is connected to, and that they are happening at the same time, mark all of the clauses with a connecting word.
(3) If your language marks events as simultaneous in a different way than using connecting words, then use that way.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

Below, each Bible verse will be restated in three different ways, according to the translation strategies in the list above. Each restatement will have the same number as the translation strategy that it is using.

> And the people were waiting for Zechariah, **and** they were wondering at his delaying in the temple. (Luke 1:21 ULT)

(1) Now **while** the people were waiting for Zechariah, they were wondering at his delaying in the temple.

(2) Now **while** the people were waiting for Zechariah, they were **also** wondering at his delaying in the temple.

(3) Now the people were waiting for Zechariah, wondering at his delaying in the temple.

> **While** they were looking intently into heaven **as** he was going up, suddenly, two men stood by them in white clothing. (Acts 1:10 ULT)

(1) And **during the time** they were looking intently into heaven **while** he was going up, suddenly, two men stood by them in white clothing.

(2) And **while** they were looking intently into heaven **as** he was going up, suddenly, **at that same time** two men stood by them in white clothing.

(3) They were looking intently into heaven; he was going up **when** they saw two men standing by them in white clothing.

Numbers References:

Numbers 3:7 Numbers 26:10 Numbers 28:26

Connecting Words and Phrases

Description

As humans, we write our thoughts in phrases and sentences. We usually want to communicate a series of thoughts that are connected to each other in different ways. **Connecting words and phrases** show how these thoughts are related to each other. For example, we can show how the following thoughts are related by using the Connecting Words in bold type:

- It was raining, **so** I opened my umbrella.
- It was raining, **but** I did not have an umbrella. **So** I got very wet.

Connecting words or phrases can connect phrases or clauses within a sentence. They can connect sentences to each other. They can also connect entire chunks to one another in order to show how the chunk before relates to the chunk after the connecting word. Very often, the connecting words that connect entire chunks to one another are either conjunctions or adverbs.

> It was raining, but I did not have an umbrella, so I got very wet.
>
> **Now** I must change my clothes. Then I will drink a cup of hot tea and warm myself by the fire.

In the above example, the word **now** connects the two short chunks of text, showing the relationship between them. The speaker must change his clothes, drink hot tea, and warm himself because of something that happened earlier (that is, he got wet in the rain).

Sometimes people might not use a connecting word because they expect the context to help the readers understand the relationship between the thoughts. Some languages do not use connecting words as much as other languages do. They might say:

- It was raining. I did not have an umbrella. I got very wet.

You (the translator) will need to use the method that is most natural and clear in the target language. But in general, using connecting words whenever possible helps the reader to understand the ideas in the Bible most clearly.

Reasons This Is a Translation Issue

- You need to understand the relationship between paragraphs, between sentences, and between parts of sentences in the Bible, and how connecting words and phrases can help you to understand the relationship between the thoughts that they are connecting.
- Each language has its own ways of showing how thoughts are related.
- You need to know how to help readers understand the relationship between the thoughts in a way that is natural in your language.

Translation Principles

- You need to translate in a way that readers can understand the same relationship between thoughts that the original readers would have understood.
- Whether or not a connecting word is used is not as important as readers being able to understand the relationship between the ideas.

The Different Types of Connections

Listed below are different types of connections between ideas or events. These different types of connections can be indicated by using different connecting words. When we write or translate something, it is important to use the right connecting word so that these connections are clear for the reader. If you would like additional information, simply click the colored, hyperlinked word to be directed to a page containing definitions and examples for each type of connection.

- Sequential Clause — a time relationship between two events in which one happens and then the other happens.

- Simultaneous Clause — a time relationship between two or more events that occur at the same time.
- Background Clause — a time relationship in which the first clause describes a long event that is happening at the time when the beginning of the second event happens, which is described in the second clause.
- Exceptional Relationship — one clause describes a group of people or items, and the other clause excludes one or more items or people from the group.
- Hypothetical Condition — the second event will only take place if the first one takes place. Sometimes what takes place is dependent on the actions of other people.
- Factual Condition — a connection that sounds hypothetical but is already certain or true, so that the condition is guaranteed to happen.
- Contrary-to-Fact Condition — a connection that sounds hypothetical but is already certain that it is not true. See also: Hypothetical Statements.
- Goal Relationship — a logical relationship in which the second event is the purpose or goal of the first.
- Reason and Result Relationship — a logical relationship in which one event is the reason for the other event, the result.
- Contrast Relationship — one item is being described as different or in opposition to another.

Examples from the Bible

> I did not immediately consult with flesh and blood. I did not go up to Jerusalem to those who were apostles before me. **Instead**, I went to Arabia and then returned to Damascus. **Then** after three years, I went up to Jerusalem to visit Cephas, and I stayed with him 15 days. (Galatians 1:16b-18 ULT)

The word “instead” introduces something that contrasts with what was said before. The contrast here is between what Paul did not do and what he did do. The word “then” introduces a sequence of events. It introduces something that Paul did after he returned to Damascus.

> **Therefore,** whoever breaks the least one of these commandments **and** teaches others to do so will be called least in the kingdom of heaven. **But** whoever keeps them and teaches them, that one will be called great in the kingdom of heaven. (Matthew 5:19 ULT)

The word “therefore” links this section with the section before it, signaling that the section that came before gave the reason for this section. “Therefore” usually links sections larger than one sentence. The word “and” links only two actions within the same sentence, that of breaking commandments and teaching others. In this verse the word “but” contrasts what one group of people will be called in God’s kingdom with what another group of people will be called.

> We place nothing as a stumbling block in front of anyone, **so that** our ministry might not be discredited. **Instead**, we commend ourselves in everything as God’s servants. (2 Corinthians 6:3-4 ULT)

Here the words “so that” connect what follows as the reason for what came before; the reason that Paul does not place stumbling blocks is that he does not want his ministry brought into disrepute. “Instead” contrasts what Paul does (prove by his actions that he is God’s servant) with what he said he does not do (place stumbling blocks).

General Translation Strategies

See each type of Connecting Word above for specific strategies

If the way the relationship between thoughts is shown in the ULT would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, then consider using it. If not, here are some other options.

(1) Use a connecting word (even if the ULT does not use one).
(2) Do not use a connecting word if it would be strange to use one and people would understand the right relationship between the thoughts without it.
(3) Use a different connecting word.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Use a connecting word (even if the ULT does not use one).

> Jesus said to them, "Come follow me, and I will make you to become fishers of men." Then immediately they left the nets and followed him. (Mark 1:17-18 ULT)

They followed Jesus because he told them to. Some translators may want to mark this clause with the connecting word "so."

> Jesus said to them, "Come follow me, and I will make you to become fishers of men." **So**, immediately they left the nets and followed him.

(2) Do not use a connecting word if it would be odd to use one, and if people would understand the right relationship between the thoughts without it.

> Therefore, whoever breaks the least one of these commandments **and** teaches others to do so will be called least in the kingdom of heaven. **But** whoever keeps them and teaches them, that one will be called great in the kingdom of heaven. (Matthew 5:19 ULT)

Some languages would prefer not to use connecting words here because the meaning is clear without them and using them would be unnatural. They might translate like this:

> Therefore, whoever breaks the least one of these commandments, teaching others to do so as well, will be called least in the kingdom of heaven. Whoever keeps them and teaches them, that one will be called great in the kingdom of heaven.

> I did not immediately consult with flesh and blood. I did not go up to Jerusalem to those who were apostles before me. **Instead**, I went to Arabia and then returned to Damascus. **Then** after three years, I went up to Jerusalem to visit Cephas, and I stayed with him 15 days. (Galatians 1:16b-18 ULT) (Galatians 1:16-18 ULT)

Some languages might not need the words "instead" or "then" here. They might translate like this:

> > I did not immediately consult with flesh and blood, nor did I go up to Jerusalem to those who had become apostles before me. I went to Arabia and then returned to Damascus. After three years I went up to Jerusalem to visit Cephas, and I stayed with him 15 days.

(3) Use a different connecting word.

> Therefore, whoever breaks the least one of these commandments **and** teaches others to do so will be called least in the kingdom of heaven. **But** whoever keeps them and teaches them, that one will be called great in the kingdom of heaven. (Matthew 5:19 ULT)

Instead of a word like "therefore," a language might need a phrase to indicate that there was a section before it that gave the reason for the section that follows. Also, the word "but" is used here because of the contrast between the two groups of people. But in some languages, the word "but" would show that what comes after it is surprising because of what came before it. So "and" might be clearer for those languages. They might translate like this:

> **Because of that**, whoever breaks the least one of these commandments and teaches others to do so will be called least in the kingdom of heaven. **And** whoever keeps them and teaches them, that one will be called great in the kingdom of heaven.

Numbers References:

Numbers 8:7 Numbers 8:14 Numbers 9:2 Numbers 10:10 Numbers 11:29 Numbers 14:9 Numbers 14:13 Numbers 14:17 Numbers 14:23 Numbers 14:29 Numbers 14:37 Numbers 14:43 Numbers 16:50 Numbers 23:6 Numbers 23:9 Numbers 23:17 Numbers 23:27 Numbers 28:23 Numbers 28:31

Alternative Readings

Description

In some places in the traditional Hebrew text of the Bible as we have it today, there are words or phrases that some scribes or translators have thought to be incorrect or unacceptable in some way. Their proposals for what the text was originally can be put into three groups.

1. Corrections of the scribes

Sometimes it seems that the earlier scribe made an error while copying the text, and so a later scribe recommended a correction. In other cases, a later scribe wanted to update the spelling, grammar, or vocabulary, or he wanted to replace objectionable words with something more acceptable. In many cases, the later scribes put notes in the margin that tell people who are reading the Scriptures out loud to say something different from what is in the written text. Scribes developed this system both to preserve wording that they thought might be original and to encourage readers to speak a more acceptable or understandable word or phrase.

1. Readings from ancient translations

Sometimes there are words or phrases in the Hebrew text that do not seem to make sense or it seems that there are words missing. In these cases, we can look to ancient translations of the Hebrew that may have been made before the problem entered the Hebrew text, such as the ancient Greek and Syriac translations. It may be that these translations preserve the original reading in these places.

1. Proposals of modern scholars

Some of the words or phrases that do not seem to make sense in the Hebrew text as we have it today are equally problematic in the ancient translations. This may mean that the problem entered the Hebrew text before the ancient translation was made. In some of these cases, scholars have proposed that the scribe mistook one word for a different word that has a very similar spelling. Also, the original Hebrew text contained only the consonants of the words and the vowels were added hundreds of years later. In some cases, it seems that the later scribe divided the consonants incorrectly or added the vowels of the wrong word. In these cases, scholars have proposed that a simple correction would be to group the consonants differently or to change the vowels.

Reasons This Is a Translation Issue

In order to make the best translation possible, translators need to know what is the best source text for their translation. Wherever there may be errors or problems in the source text, they need to know what both ancient scribes and modern scholars consider to be the most likely solution to that problem that best represents what the original text said.

Examples from the Bible

> **when** they spoke to him day after day, he did not listen to them. (Esther 3:4 text)

In the margin of the Hebrew text, a scribe has suggested a different word:

> **as** they spoke to him day after day, he did not listen to them. (Esther 3:4 margin)

In the following examples of the Hebrew text from Ruth, Naomi is speaking to Ruth about visiting Boaz at the threshing floor. In the Hebrew text, Naomi speaks as though she were doing these actions herself. This may be because the child that will be born to Ruth and Boaz will be considered to belong to Naomi (Ruth 4:16-17). But to avoid confusion, a scribe made a note in the margin to read the text as instructions to Ruth:

> **I will go down** to the threshing floor (Ruth 3:3 text)

> **go down** to the threshing floor (Ruth 3:3 margin)

> Then go and uncover his feet **and I will lie down** (Ruth 3:4 text)

> Then go and uncover his feet **and lie down** (Ruth 3:4 margin)

In the following examples, it seems that the Hebrew scribe skipped over the numbers. They can be supplied, however, from some manuscripts of the ancient Greek translation:

> Saul {was} a son of **a year** in his becoming king, and he reigned over Israel **two years**. (1 Sam 13:1 ULT)

> Saul {was} a son of **thirty years** in his becoming king, and he reigned over Israel **forty-two years**. (ancient Greek translation)

In Psalm 103:5, the word "ornaments" does not seem to make any sense. It seems that the scribe mistook it for a similar word that means "existence." Modern scholars propose using that other word instead:

> The one satisfying your **ornaments** with good; (Psalm 103:5 ULT)

> The one satisfying your **existence** with good; (proposed alternate reading)

Translation Strategies

• Decide which reading to follow: Discuss as a team whether you will translate the written text or translate the reading that marginal notes or modern scholars suggest. It may be best to decide this on a case-by-case basis. If a translation of the Bible already exists in your region and the readers of your translation will be familiar with it, consider using the readings that it translates.

• Use footnotes for significant differences: If the written text and the marginal or suggested text have different meanings or implications that could affect readers' understanding of the text, provide a footnote to explain both readings.

• Consider how your translation will sound when read aloud: Even if you decide generally to translate the written text, you may wish to follow the marginal instructions and substitute different language when the written text uses words that might not be appropriate for public reading. You can put the reading of the written text in a footnote.

• Consult church communities and leaders for difficult cases: For readings that may be controversial or theologically sensitive, discuss options with church communities and leaders as part of the translation-checking process.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(Ruth 3:4) Then go and uncover his feet and lie down^1^

^1^From the marginal reading. The Hebrew says, "…and I will lie down."

(1 Samuel 13:1) Saul {was} a son of thirty years in his becoming king, and he reigned over Israel forty-two years.^2^

^2^From the ancient Greek translation. The Hebrew says, "Saul {was} a son of a year in his becoming king, and he reigned over Israel two years."

(Psalm 103:5) The one satisfying your ornaments with good;^3^

^3^The original reading may have been, "The one satisfying your existence with good;"

This page answers the question:

Why does the ULT have some different readings from other Bible translations?

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

• Textual Variants (How to handle differences between manuscripts)

• Create Accurate Translations (Ensuring the meaning is faithfully communicated)

• Create Church-Approved Translations (Involving church networks in the translation process)

Next we recommend you learn about:

• Create Authoritative Translations

Numbers References:

Numbers 21:28 Numbers 21:30 Numbers 21:30 Numbers 22:5 Numbers 23:10 Numbers 23:10 Numbers 24:3 Numbers 24:17 Numbers 24:22 Numbers 32:14

Biblical Distance

Description

The following terms are the most common measures for distance or length that were originally used in the Bible. Most of these are based on the sizes of the hand and forearm.

- The **handbreadth** was the width of the palm of a man's hand.
- The **span** or handspan was the width of a man's hand with the fingers spread out.
- The **cubit** was the length of a man's forearm, from the elbow to the tip of the longest finger.
- The **"long" cubit** is used only in Ezekiel 40-48. It is the length of a normal cubit plus a span.
- The **stadium** (plural, **stadia**) referred to a certain footrace that was about 185 meters in length. Some older English versions translated this word as "furlong," which referred to the average length of a plowed field.

The metric values in the table below are close but not exactly equal to the biblical measures. The biblical measures probably differed in exact length from time to time and place to place. The equivalents below are an attempt to give an average measurement.

Original Measure	Metric Measure
handbreadth	8 centimeters
span	23 centimeters
cubit	46 centimeters
"long" cubit	54 centimeters
stadia	185 meters

Translation Principles

1. The people in the Bible did not use modern measures such as meters, liters, and kilograms. Using the original measures can help readers know that the Bible really was written long ago in a time when people used those measures.
2. Using modern measures can help readers understand the text more easily.

3. Whatever measure you use, it would be good, if possible, to tell about the other kind of measure in the text or a footnote.
4. If you do not use the Biblical measures, try not to give the readers the idea that the measurements are exact. For example, if you translate one cubit as ".46 meters" or even as "46 centimeters," readers might think that the measurement is exact. It would be better to say "half a meter," "45 centimeters," or "50 centimeters."
5. Sometimes it can be helpful to use the word "about" to show that a measurement is not exact. For example, Luke 24:13 says that Emmaus was 60 stadia from Jerusalem. This can be translated as "about ten kilometers" from Jerusalem.
6. When God tells people how long something should be, and when people make things according to those lengths, do not use "about" in the translation. Otherwise it will give the impression that God did not care exactly how long something should be.

Translation Strategies

(1) Use the measurements from the ULT. These are the same kinds of measurements that the original writers used. Spell them in a way that is similar to the way they sound or are spelled in the ULT. (See Copy or Borrow Words.)
(2) Use the metric measurements given in the UST. The translators of the UST have already figured how to represent the amounts in the metric system.
(3) Use measurements that are already used in your language. In order to do this you would need to know how your measurements relate to the metric system and figure out each measurement.
(4) Use the measurements from the ULT and include measurements that your people know in the text or a note.
(5) Use measurements that your people know, and include the measurements from the ULT in the text or in a note.

Translation Strategies Applied

The strategies are all applied to Exodus 25:10 below.

> They are to make an ark of acacia wood. Its length must be two and a half cubits; its width will be one cubit and a half; and its height will be one cubit and a half. (Exodus 25:10 ULT)

(1) Use the measurements given in the ULT. These are the same kinds of measurements that the original writers used. Spell them in a way that is similar to the way they sound or are spelled in the ULT. (See Copy or Borrow Words.)

> "They are to make an ark of acacia wood. Its length must be **two and a half kubits**; its width will be **one kubit and a half**; and its height will be **one kubit and a half**."

(2) Use the metric measurements given in the UST. The translators of the UST have already figured how to represent the amounts in the metric system.

> "They are to make an ark of acacia wood. Its length must be **one meter**; its width will be **two thirds of a meter**; and its height will be **two thirds of a meter**."

(3) Use measurements that are already used in your language. In order to do this you would need to know how your measurements relate to the metric system and figure out each measurement. For example, if you measure things using the standard meter length, you could translate it as below.

> "They are to make an ark of acacia wood. Its length must be **one meter**; its width will be **two thirds of a meter**; and its height will be **two thirds of a meter**."

(4) Use the measurements from the ULT and include measurements that your people know in the text or a note. The following shows both measurements in the text.

> "They are to make an ark of acacia wood. Its length must be **two and a half cubits (one meter)**; its width will be **one cubit and a half (two thirds of a meter)**; and its height will be **one cubit and a half (two thirds of a meter)**."

(5) Use measurements that your people know, and include the measurements from the ULT in the text or in a note. The following shows the ULT measurements in notes.

> "They are to make an ark of acacia wood. Its length must be **one meter**; [1] its width will be **two thirds of a meter**; [2] and its height will be **two thirds of a meter**."

The footnotes would look like:

> "They are to make an ark of acacia wood. Its length must be **one meter**; [1] its width will be **two thirds of a meter**; [2] and its height will be **two thirds of a meter**."

The footnotes would look like:

> [1] two and a half cubits
> [2] one cubit and a half

Numbers References:

Numbers 11:31 Numbers 35:4 Numbers 35:5

Blessings

Description

Blessings are short sayings that people use to ask God to do something good for another person. In the Bible, the person saying the blessing speaks or writes directly to the person who will receive the blessing. The person who says the blessing does not directly speak to God, but it is understood that God is the one who will do the good thing mentioned. It is also understood that God hears the blessing, whether he is mentioned by name or not.

Reason This Is a Translation Issue

Each language has its own ways of saying blessings. There are many blessings in the Bible. They need to be translated in the way that people say blessings in your language, so that people recognize them as blessings and understand what one person wants God to do for another.

Examples From the Bible

In the Bible, people often said a blessing when they met someone or when they were leaving someone or sending someone off.

In the book of Ruth, when Boaz meets his workers in the fields, he greets them with a blessing:

> Then behold, Boaz coming from Bethlehem! And he said to the reapers, "Yahweh be with you." And they said to him, "May Yahweh bless you." (Ruth 2:4 ULT)

Similarly, when Rebekah leaves her family, they say farewell with a blessing:

> They blessed Rebekah, and said to her, "Our sister, may you be the mother of thousands of ten thousands, and may your descendants possess the gate of those who hate them." (Genesis 24:60 ULT)

In a similar way, the writers of letters in the New Testament often wrote a blessing at the

beginning of their letters as well as at the end. Here are examples from the beginning and end of Paul's second letter to Timothy:

> Grace, mercy, and peace from God the Father and Christ Jesus our Lord. (2 Tim 1:2 ULT)
> The Lord be with your spirit. Grace be with you. (2 Tim 4:22 ULT)

Translation Strategies

Find out how people say blessings in your language. Collect a list of common blessings, noting the form of the verb, the use of certain words, and the words that are not used in a blessing but would normally be in a sentence. Also find out what differences there might be between blessings that people use when they are speaking to each other and when they are writing to each other.

If translating a blessing literally would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider doing that. If not, here are some options:

1. Add a verb if that is natural in your language.
2. Mention God as the subject of a blessing if that is natural in your language.
3. Translate the blessing in a form that is natural and clear in your language.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Add a verb if that is natural in your language.

> The Lord with your spirit. The grace with you. (2 Tim 4:22, literal from the Greek)

In the Greek of this verse, there is no verb 'be.' However, in blessings in English, it is natural to use a verb. The idea that the 'grace' from God will be or remain with the person is implied in Greek.

The Lord **be** with your spirit. Grace **be** with you. (2 Tim 4:22 ULT)

(2) Mention God as the subject of a blessing if that is natural in your language.

If people expect a blessing to refer to God in your language, you might have to provide 'God' as the subject or as the source of the blessing. In Greek and Hebrew, usually God is not explicitly mentioned in the blessing, but it is implied that God is the one acting to show his kindness to the person being addressed.

> The Lord be with your spirit. Grace be with you. (2 Tim 4:22 ULT)

The Lord be with your spirit. **May God give** grace to you.

> They blessed Rebekah, and said to her, "Our sister, may you be the mother of thousands of ten thousands, and may your descendants possess the gate of those who hate them." (Genesis 24:60 ULT)

They blessed Rebekah, and said to her, "Our sister, may **God grant that** you be the mother of thousands of ten thousands, and may **God empower** your descendants **to** possess the gate of those who hate them."

(3) Translate the blessing in a form that is natural and clear in your language.

Here are some ideas for ways that people might say a blessing in their language.

> The Lord be with your spirit. Grace be with you. (2 Tim 4:22 ULT)

May the Lord be with your spirit. May God cause his grace to be with you.

May you have God's presence with you. May you experience grace from God.

> "Our sister, may you be the mother of thousands of ten thousands, and may your descendants possess the gate of those who hate them." (Genesis 24:60 ULT)

"Our sister, we pray to God that you may be the mother of thousands of ten thousands, and appeal to him that your descendants may possess the gate of those who hate them."

"Our sister, by God's power you will be the mother of thousands of ten thousands, and

your descendants will possess the gate of those who hate them.”

Numbers References:

Numbers 6:24-26

Biblical Money

Description

In early Old Testament times, people weighed their metals, such as silver and gold, and would pay a certain weight of that metal in order to buy things. Later, people started to make coins that each contained a standard amount of a certain metal. The daric is one such coin. In New Testament times, people used silver and copper coins.

The two tables below show some of the most well-known units of money found in the Old Testament (OT) and New Testament (NT). The table for Old Testament units shows what kind of metal was used and how much it weighed. The table for New Testament units shows what kind of metal was used and how much it was worth in terms of a day’s wage.

Unit in OT	**Metal**	**Weight**
daric	gold coin	8.4 grams
shekel	various metals	11 grams
talent	various metals	33 kilograms
Unit in NT	**Metal**	**Day’s Wage**
denarius/ denarii	silver coin	1 day
drachma	silver coin	1 day
mite	copper coin	1/64 day
shekel	silver coin	4 days
talent	silver	6,000 days

Translation Principle

Do not use modern money values since these change from year to year. Using them will cause the Bible translation to become outdated and inaccurate.

Translation Strategies

The value of most money in the Old Testament was based on its weight. So when translating these weights in the Old Testament, see Biblical Weight. The strategies below are for translating the value of money in the New Testament.

(1) Use the Bible term and spell it in a way that is similar to the way it sounds. (See Copy or Borrow Words.)
(2) Describe the value of the money in terms of what kind of metal it was made of and how many coins were used.
(3) Describe the value of the money in terms of what people in Bible times could earn in one day of work.
(4) Use the biblical term and give the equivalent amount in the text or a footnote.
(5) Use the biblical term and explain it in a footnote.

Translation Strategies Applied

The translations strategies are all applied to Luke 7:41 below.

> The one owed 500 denarii, and the other, 50. (Luke 7:41b ULT)

1. Use the Bible term and spell it in a way that is similar to the way it sounds. (See Copy or Borrow Words.)

> > "The one owed **500 denali**, and the other, **50**."

1. Describe the value of the money in terms of what kind of metal it was made of and how many pieces or coins were used.

> > "The one owed **500 silver coins**, and the other, **50**."

(3) Describe the value of the money in terms of what people in Bible times could earn in one day of work.

> > "The one owed **500 days' wages**, and the other, **50**."

(4) Use the Bible term and give the equivalent amount in the text or a footnote.

> > "The one owed **500 denarii** 1, and the other owed **50 denarii**. 2"

The footnotes would look like:

> > [1] 500 days' wages [2] 50 days' wages

(5) Use the Bible term and explain it in a footnote.

> "The one owed **500 denarii**,1 and the other, **50**." (Luke 7:41 ULT)
>
> [1] A denarius was the amount of silver that people could earn in one day of work.

Numbers References:

Numbers 3:47

Biblical Volume

Description

The following terms are the most common units of volume used in the Bible to state how much a certain container could hold. The containers and measurements are given for both liquids (such as wine) and dry solids (such as grain). The metric values are not exactly equal to the biblical measures. The biblical measures probably differed in exact amount from time to time and place to place. The equivalents below are an attempt to give an average measurement.

Type	Original Measure	Liters
Dry	omer	2 liters
Dry	ephah	22 liters
Dry	homer	220 liters
Dry	cor	220 liters
Dry	seah	7.7 liters
Dry	lethek	114.8 liters
Liquid	metrete	40 liters
Liquid	bath	22 liters
Liquid	hin	3.7 liters
Liquid	kab	1.23 liters
Liquid	log	0.31 liters

Translation Principles

- The people in the Bible did not use modern measures such as meters, liters, and kilograms. Using the original measures can help readers know that the Bible really was written long ago in a time when people used those measures.
- Using modern measures can help readers understand the text more easily.
- Whatever measures you use, it would be good, if possible, to tell about the other kinds of measures in the text or a footnote.
- If you do not use the biblical measures, try not to give the readers the idea that the measurements are exact. For example, if you translate one hin as “3.7 liters,” readers might think that the measurement is exactly 3.7 liters, not 3.6 or 3.8. It would be better to use a more approximate measure such as “three and a half liters” or “four liters.”
- When God tells people how much of something to use, and when people use those amounts in obedience to him, do not say “about” in the translation. Otherwise it will give the impression that God did not care exactly how much they used.

When the unit of measure is stated

Translation Strategies

(1) Use the measurements from the ULT. These are the same kinds of measurements that the original writers used. Spell them in a way that is similar to the way they sound or are spelled in the ULT. (See Copy or Borrow Words.)
(2) Use the metric measurements given in the UST. The translators of the UST have already figured how to represent the amounts in the metric system.
(3) Use measurements that are already used in your language. In order to do this you would need to know how your measurements relate to the metric system and figure out each measurement.
(4) Use the measurements from the ULT and include measurements that your people know in the text or a note.
(5) Use measurements that your people know, and include the measurements from the ULT in the text or in a note.

Translation Strategies Applied

The strategies are all applied to Isaiah 5:10 below.

> For a ten-yoke vineyard will yield only one bath, and one homer of seed will yield only an ephah. (Isaiah 5:10 ULT)

(1) Use the measurements from the ULT. These are the same kinds of measurements that the original writers used. Spell them in a way that is similar to the way they sound or

are spelled in the ULT. (See Copy or Borrow Words.)

> "For a ten-yoke vineyard will yield only one **bat**, and one **homer** of seed will yield only an **efa**."

(2) Use the measurements given in the UST. Usually they are metric measurements. The translators of the UST have already figured how to represent the amounts in the metric system.

> "For a ten-yoke vineyard will yield only **22 liters** and **220 liters** of seed will yield only **22 liters**."

> "For a ten-yoke vineyard will yield only **22**, and **ten baskets** of seed will yield only **one basket**."

(3) Use measurements that are already used in your language. In order to do this you would need to know how your measurements relate to the metric system and figure out each measurement.

> "For a ten-yoke vineyard will yield only **six gallons**, and **six and a half bushels** of seed will yield only **20 quarts**."

(4) Use the measurements from the ULT and include measurements that your people know in the text or a note. The following shows both measurements in the text.

> "For a ten-yoke vineyard will yield only **one bath (six gallons)**, and **one homer (six and a half bushels)** of seed will yield only **an ephah (20 quarts)**."

(5) Use measurements that your people know, and include the measurements from the ULT in the text or in a note. The following shows the ULT measurements in footnotes.

> "For a ten-yoke vineyard will yield only 22 liters[1], and 220 liters[2] of seed will yield only 22 liters[3]."

The footnotes would look like:

> [1] one bath
> [2] one homer
> [3] one ephah

When the unit of measure is implied

Sometimes the Hebrew does not specify a particular unit of volume but only uses a number. In these cases, many English versions, including the ULT and UST, add the word "measure."

> When you came to a heap of **20 measures** of grain, there were only **ten**, and when you came to the wine vat to draw out **50 measures** of wine, there were only 20. (Haggai 2:16 ULT)

Translation Strategies

(1) Translate literally by using the number without a unit.
(2) Use a generic word like "measure" or "quantity" or "amount."
(3) Use the name of an appropriate container, such as "basket" for grain or "jar" for wine.
(4) Use a unit of measure that you are already using in your translation.

Translation Strategies Applied

The strategies are all applied to Haggai 2:16 below.

> When you came to a heap of **20 measures** of grain, there were only **ten**, and when you came to the wine vat to draw out **fifty measures** of wine, there were only **20**. (Haggai 2:16 ULT)

(1) Translate literally by using the number without a unit.

> When you came to a heap of **20** of grain, there were only **ten**, and when you came to the wine vat to draw out **50** of wine, there were only **20**.

(2) Use a generic word like "measure" or "quantity" or "amount."

> When you came to a heap of **20 amounts** of grain, there were only **ten**, and when you came to the wine vat to draw out **fifty amounts** of wine, there were only **20**.

(3) Use the name of an appropriate container, such as “basket” for grain or “jar” for wine.

> When you came to a heap of **20 baskets** of grain, there were only **ten**, and when you came to the wine vat to draw out **50 jars** of wine, there were only **20**.

(4) Use a unit of measure that you are already using in your translation.

> When you came to a heap for **20 liters** of grain, there were only **ten liters**, and when you came to the wine vat to draw out **50 liters** of wine, there were only **20 liters**.

Numbers References:

Numbers 5:15 Numbers 11:32 Numbers 15:4 Numbers 15:4 Numbers 15:5 Numbers 15:6 Numbers 15:6 Numbers 15:7 Numbers 15:9 Numbers 15:9 Numbers 15:10 Numbers 28:5 Numbers 28:5 Numbers 29:3

Biblical Weight

Description

The following terms are the most common units of weight in the Bible. The term “shekel” means “weight,” and many other weights are described in terms of the shekel. Some of these weights were used for money. The metric values in the table below are not exactly equal to the biblical measures. The biblical measures differed in exact amount from time to time and place to place. The equivalents below are only an attempt to give an average measurement.

Original Measure	Shekels	Grams	Kilograms
shekel	1 shekel	11 grams	-
bekah	1/2 shekel	5.7 grams	-
pim	2/3 shekel	7.6 grams	-
gerah	1/20 shekel	0.57 grams	-
mina	50 shekels	550 grams	1/2 kilogram
talent	3,000 shekels	-	34 kilograms

Translation Principles

1. The people in the Bible did not use modern measures such as meters, liters, and kilograms. Using the original measures can help readers know that the Bible really was written long ago in a time when people used those measures.
2. Using modern measures can help readers understand the text more easily.
3. Whatever measure you use, it would be good, if possible, to tell about the other kind of measure in the text or a footnote.
4. If you do not use the biblical measures, try not to give the readers the idea that the measurements are exact. For example, if you translate one gerah as “.57 grams,” readers might think that the measurement is exact. It would be better to say “half a gram.”

5. Sometimes it can be helpful to use the word "about" to show that a measurement is not exact. For example, 2 Samuel 21:16 says that Goliath's spear weighed 300 shekels. Instead of translating this as "3300 grams" or "3.3 kilograms," it can be translated as "about three and one half kilograms."
6. When God tells people how much something should weigh, and when people use those weights, do not say "about" in the translation. Otherwise, it will give the impression that God did not care exactly how much the thing should weigh.

Translation Strategies

(1) Use the measurements from the ULT. These are the same kinds of measurements that the original writers used. Spell them in a way that is similar to the way they sound or are spelled in the ULT. (See Copy or Borrow Words.)
(2) Use the metric measurements given in the UST. The translators of the UST have already figured how to represent the amounts in the metric system.
(3) Use measurements that are already used in your language. In order to do this, you would need to know how your measurements relate to the metric system and figure out each measurement.
(4) Use the measurements from the ULT and include measurements that your people know in the text or a note.
(5) Use measurements that your people know, and include the measurements from the ULT in the text or in a note.

Translation Strategies Applied

The strategies are all applied to Exodus 38:29 below.

> The bronze from the wave offering weighed **70 talents and 2,400 shekels**. (Exodus 38:29 ULT)

(1) Use the measurements from the ULT. These are the same kinds of measurements that the original writers used. Spell them in a way that is similar to the way they sound or are spelled in the ULT. (See Copy or Borrow Words.)

> "The bronze from the wave offering weighed **70 talents and 2,400 sekeles**."

(2) Use the metric measurements given in the UST. The translators of the UST have already figured how to represent the amounts in the metric system.

> "The bronze from the wave offering weighed **2,400 kilograms**."

(3) Use measurements that are already used in your language. In order to do this you would need to know how your measurements relate to the metric system and figure out each measurement.

> "The bronze from the wave offering weighed **5,300 pounds**."

(4) Use the measurements from the ULT and include measurements that your people know in the text or a footnote. The following shows both measurements in the text.

> "The bronze from the wave offering weighed **70 talents (2,380 kilograms)** and **2,400 shekels (26.4 kilograms)**."

(5) Use measurements that your people know, and include the measurements from the ULT in the text or in a footnote. The following shows the ULT measurements in notes.

> "The bronze from the offering weighed **70 talents and 2,400 shekels**. 1"

The footnote would look like:

> [1] This was a total of about 2,400 kilograms.

Numbers References:

Numbers 3:47 Numbers 7:13 Numbers 7:13 Numbers 7:14 Numbers 7:85 Numbers 7:85 Numbers 7:85 Numbers 7:86 Numbers 7:86 Numbers 18:16 Numbers 18:16

Fractions

Description

A fraction is a number that represents part of a whole. When an item is divided into several equal parts, a fraction refers to one or more of those parts.

For the drink offering, you must offer **a third** of a hin of wine. (Numbers 15:7a ULT)

A hin is a container of a set size which is used for measuring wine and other liquids. The people were to think about dividing a hin container into three equal parts, filling up only one of those parts and offering that amount.

> … **a third** of the ships were destroyed. (Revelation 8:9b ULT)

There were many ships. If all those ships were divided into three equal groups of ships, one group of ships was destroyed.

Most fractions in English simply have the letters “th” added to the end of the number, such as fourth, sixth, ninth, tenth.

| Number of parts the whole is divided into | Fraction | | -------- | -------- | | four | fourth | | ten | tenth | | one hundred | one hundredth | | one thousand | one thousandth |

Some fractions in English do not follow that pattern.

| Number of parts the whole is divided into | Fraction | | -------- | -------- | | two | half | | three | third | | five | fifth |

Reason This is a Translation Issue

Some languages do not use fractions. They may simply talk about parts or groups, but they do not use fractions to tell how big a part is or how many parts are included in a group.

Examples From the Bible

> Now to the **half-tribe** of Manasseh, Moses had given a possession in Bashan, but to the other **half**, Joshua gave a possession among their brothers across the Jordan on the west. (Joshua 22:7 ULT)

The tribe of Manasseh divided into two groups. The phrase “the half-tribe of Manasseh” refers one of those groups. The phrase “the other half” refers to the other group.

> So the four angels who had been prepared for that hour, that day, that month, and that year, were released so that they would kill **a third** of mankind. (Revelation 9:15 ULT)

If all the people in the world were to be divided into three equal groups, then the number of people in one group would be killed.

> You must also prepare **a fourth** of a hin of wine as the drink offering. (Numbers 15:5 ULT)

They were to imagine dividing a hin of wine into four equal parts and prepare the amount equal to one of them.

Translation Strategies

If a fraction in your language would give the right meaning, consider using it. If not, you could consider these strategies.

(1) Tell the number of parts or groups that the item would be divided into, and then tell the number of parts or groups that is being referred to.
(2) For measurements such as for weight and length, use a unit that your people might know or the unit in the UST.
(3) For measurements, use ones that are used in your language. In order to do that you would need to know how your measurements relates to the metric system and figure out each measurement.

Examples of These Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Tell the number of parts or groups that the item would be divided into, and then tell the number of parts or groups that is being referred to.

> **A third** of the ocean became red like blood (Revelation 8:8 ULT)
>
> > It was like they **divided** the ocean **into three parts**, and **one part** of the ocean became blood.
>
> Then you must offer with the bull a grain offering of **three-tenths** of an ephah of fine flour mixed with **half a hin** of oil. (Numbers 15:9 ULT)
>
> > … then you must **divide** an ephah of fine flour **into ten parts** and **divide** a hin of oil **into two parts**. Then mix **three of those parts** of the flour with **one of the parts** of oil. Then you must offer that grain offering along with the bull.

(2) For measurements, use the measurements that are given in the UST. The translators of the UST have already figured how to represent the amounts in the metric system.

> … **two-thirds of a shekel** … (1 Samuel 13:21b ULT)
>
> … **eight grams** of silver … (1 Samuel 13:21b UST)
>
> … **three-tenths of an ephah** of fine flour mixed with **half a hin** of oil. (Numbers 15:9b ULT)
>
> > … **six and one-half liters** of finely ground flour mixed with **two liters** of olive oil. (Numbers 15:9b UST)

(3) For measurements, use ones that are used in your language. In order to do that you would need to know how your measurements relates to the metric system and figure out each measurement.

> … **three-tenths of an ephah** of fine flour mixed with **half a hin** of oil. (Numbers 15:9b ULT)
>
> > **six quarts** of fine flour mixed with **two quarts** of oil.

Numbers References:

Numbers 5:7 Numbers 5:15 Numbers 15:4 Numbers 15:5 Numbers 15:6 Numbers 15:7 Numbers 15:9 Numbers 15:10 Numbers 28:5 Numbers 28:5 Numbers 28:14 Numbers 29:3

Hebrew Months

Description

The Hebrew calendar used in the Bible has twelve months. Unlike the western calendar, its first month begins in the spring of the northern hemisphere. Sometimes a month is called by its name (Aviv, Ziv, Sivan), and sometimes it is called by its order in the Hebrew calendar year (first month, second month, third month).

Reasons This Is a Translation Issue

- Readers may be surprised to read of months that they have never heard of, and they may wonder how those months correspond to the months that they use.
- Readers may not realize that phrases such as "the first month" or "the second month" refer to the first or second month of the Hebrew calendar, not some other calendar.
- Readers may not know when the first month of the Hebrew calendar begins.
- The Bible may tell about something happening in a certain month, but readers will not be able to fully understand what is said about it if they do not know what season of the year that was.

List of Hebrew Months

This is a list of the Hebrew months with information about them that may be helpful in the translation.

Aviv — (This month was called **Nisan** after the Babylonian exile.) This is the first month of the Hebrew calendar. It marks when God brought the people of Israel out of Egypt. It is at the beginning of the spring season when the late rains come and people begin to harvest their crops. It is during the last part of March and the first part of April on western calendars. The Passover celebration started on Aviv 10; the Festival of Unleavened Bread was right after that, and the Festival of Harvest was a few weeks after that.

Ziv — This is the second month of the Hebrew calendar. This is during the harvest season. It is during the last part of April and the first part of May on Western calendars.

Sivan — This is the third month of the Hebrew calendar. It is at the end of the harvest season and the beginning of the dry season. It is during the last part of May and the first part of June on Western calendars. The Feast of Weeks is celebrated on Sivan 6.

Tammuz — This is the fourth month of the Hebrew calendar. It is during the dry season. It is during the last part of June and the first part of July on Western calendars.

Ab — This is the fifth month of the Hebrew calendar. It is during the dry season. It is during the last part of July and the first part of August on Western calendars.

Elul — This is the sixth month of the Hebrew calendar. It is at the end of the dry season and the beginning of the rainy season. It is during the last part of August and the first part of September on Western calendars.

Ethanim — This is the seventh month of the Hebrew calendar. This is during the early rain season which would soften the land for sowing. It is during the last part of September and the first part of October on Western calendars. The Feast of Ingathering and the Day of Atonement are celebrated in this month.

Bul — This is the eighth month of the Hebrew calendar. It is during the rainy season when people plough their fields and sow seed. It is during the last part of October and the first part of November on Western calendars.

Kislev — This is the ninth month of the Hebrew calendar. This is at the end of the sowing season and the beginning of the cold season. It is during the last part of November and the first part of December on Western calendars.

Tebeth — This is the tenth month of the Hebrew calendar. It is during the cold season when there may be rain and snow. It is during

the last part of December and the first part of January on Western calendars.

Shebat — This is the eleventh month of the Hebrew calendar. This is the coldest month of the year, and it has heavy rainfall. It is during the last part of January and the first part of February on Western calendars.

Adar — This is the twelfth and last month of the Hebrew calendar. This is during the cold season. It is during the last part of February and the first part of March on western calendars. The feast called Purim is celebrated in Adar.

Examples From the Bible

> Today you are going out, in **the month of Aviv**. (Exodus 13:4 ULT)

> You must eat unleavened bread from evening of the fourteenth day **in the first month of the year**, until evening of the twenty-first day of the month. (Exodus 12:18 ULT)

Translation Strategies

You may need to make some information about the months explicit. (See Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information.)

(1) Tell the number of the Hebrew month.
(2) Use the names for months that people know.
(3) State clearly what season the month occurred in.
(4) Refer to the time in terms of the season rather than in terms of the Hebrew name of the month. (If possible, use a footnote to show the Hebrew month and day.)

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

The examples below use these two verses.

> At that time, you will appear before me in **the month of Aviv**, which is fixed for this purpose. It was in this month that you came out from Egypt. (Exodus 23:15b ULT)

> It will always be a statute for you that in **the seventh month, on the tenth day of the month,** you must humble yourselves and do no work. (Leviticus 16:29a ULT)

(1) Tell the number of the Hebrew month.

> At that time, you will appear before me in **the first month of the year**, which is fixed for this purpose. It was in this month that you came out from Egypt.

(2) Use the months that people know.

> At that time, you will appear before me in **the month of March**, which is fixed for this purpose. It was in this month that you came out from Egypt.

> It will always be a statute for you that **on the day I choose in late September** you must humble yourselves and do no work.

(3) State clearly what season the month occurs in.

> It will always be a statute for you that **in the autumn, on the tenth day of the seventh month,** you must humble yourselves and do no work.

(4) Refer to the time in terms of the season rather than in terms of the month.

> It will always be a statute for you that in **the day I choose in early autumn**[1] you must humble yourselves and do no work.

The footnote would look like:

> [1] The Hebrew says, “the seventh month, on the tenth day of the month.”

Numbers References:

Numbers 1:1 Numbers 9:1 Numbers 9:5 Numbers 9:11 Numbers 10:11 Numbers 20:1 Numbers 28:16 Numbers 29:1 Numbers 33:3

Kinship

Description

Kinship terms refer to those words used to describe people related to one another in familial relationships. These terms vary widely in their specificity from language to language. They range from the (Western) nuclear or immediate family (father-son, husband-wife) out to broad clan relationships in other cultures.

Reason This Is a Translation Issue

Depending on the language translators may need to use specific terms to designate the accurate kinship relationship. In some languages a different term may be used based on siblings' birth order. In others, the side of the family (father's or mother's), age, marital status, etc. may determine the term used. Different terms may be used based on the gender of the speaker and/or addressee. Translators may need to make sure they know the exact relationship between two related people in the Bible to find the correct term. Sometimes these terms are difficult even for native speakers to remember and translators may need to seek community help in finding the correct term. Another complicating issue is that the Bible may not give enough information about the relationship for translators to determine the correct term in the language being translated into. In this case, translators will have to use a more general term or simply pick a satisfactory term based on the limited information available.

Sometimes terms that seem like kinship terms are used for people who are not necessarily related. For instance, an older person may refer to a younger man or woman as "my son" or "my daughter."

Examples from the Bible

> Then Yahweh said to Cain, "Where is Abel **your brother**?" He said, "I do not know. Am I **my brother's** keeper?" (Genesis 4:9 ULT)

Abel was Cain's younger brother.

> Jacob sent and called Rachel and Leah to the field to his flock and said to them, "I see **your father's** attitude toward me has changed, but the God of my father has been with me." (Genesis 31:4-5 ULT)

Jacob is referring here to his father-in-law. In some languages there may be a specific term for a man's father-in-law, however, in this case it is better to retain the form **your father** as Jacob may be using it to distance himself from Laban.

> And Moses was shepherding the flock of Jethro **his father-in-law**, the priest of Midian. (Exodus3:1a ULT)

Unlike the previous instance, if your language has a term for a man's father-in-law this is a good place to use it.

> And **his sister** stationed herself at a distance to know what would be done to him. (Exodus 2:4 ULT)

From context we know that this was Miriam, Moses's older sister. In some languages this may require a specific term. In others, the term for older sister may be only used when the younger sibling is addressing and/or referring to his or her sister.

> Then she and **her daughters-in-law** arose to return from the fields of Moab (Ruth 1:6a ULT)

Ruth & Orpah are Naomi's daughters-in-law.

> Then she said, "Look, your sister-in-law has turned back to her people and to her gods." (Ruth 1:15 ULT)

Orpah had been the wife of Ruth's husband's brother. This may be a different term in your language than if she had been Ruth's husband's sister.

> Then Boaz said to Ruth, "Will you not listen to me, **my daughter**?" (Ruth 2:8a ULT)

Boaz is not Ruth's father; he is simply using the term to address a younger woman.

> And behold, **your relative** Elizabeth—she also has conceived a son in her old age, and this is the sixth month for her who was called barren. (Luke 1:36 ULT)

While the KJV translated this as **cousin**, the term simply means a related woman.

Translation Strategies

(1) Find out the exact relationship specified and translate using the term your language uses.

(2) If the text does not specify the relationship as clearly as your language would, either:

(a) settle on a more general term.

(b) use a specific term if required by your language, choosing the one that is most likely to be correct.

Translation Strategies Applied

This is not an issue in English, so the following illustrations draw on other languages.

In Korean, there are several terms for brother and sister, the use of them depends on the speaker's (or referent's) sex and birth order. Examples are from the Korean Living Bible, found on biblegateway.com

> Genesis 30:1 Rachel is jealous of her "eonni," which is the term a woman uses for her older sister.
>
> Genesis 34:31 Simeon and Levi refer to Dinah as "nui," a general term for sister.
>
> Genesis 37:16 Joseph refers to his brothers as "hyeong," which is the term a man uses for his older brother(s).
>
> Genesis 45:12 Joseph refers to Benjamin as "dongsaeng," which roughly means sibling, usually younger.

In Russian, in-law terms are complex. For instance, "nevéstka" is the term for a brother's (or brother-in-law's) wife; a woman uses the same term for her daughter-in-law but her husband would call the same daughter-in-law "snoxá." Examples from the Russian Synodal Version.

> Genesis 38:25 Tamar sends a message to her father-in-law, Judah. The term used is "svekor." This is used for a woman's husband's father.
>
> Exodus 3:1 Moses is watching his father-in-law's herd. The term used is "test'." This is used for a man's wife's father.

Numbers References:

Numbers 6:7 Numbers 10:29 Numbers 26:58 Numbers 26:59 Numbers 36:11

How to Translate Names

Description

The Bible contains the names of many people, groups of people, and places. Some of these names may sound strange and be hard to say. Sometimes readers may not know what a name refers to, and sometimes they may need to understand what a name means. This page will help you see how you can translate these names and how you can help people understand what they need to know about them.

Meaning of names

Most names in the Bible have meaning. Most of the time, names in the Bible are used simply to identify the people and places they refer to, but sometimes the meaning of a name is especially important.

> For this **Melchizedek**, king of Salem, priest of God Most High, was the one who met Abraham returning from the slaughter of the kings and blessed him. (Hebrews 7:1 ULT)

Here the writer uses the name "Melchizedek" primarily to refer to a man who had that name, and the title "king of Salem" tells us that he ruled over a certain city.

> His name first indeed means "king of righteousness," and then also "king of Salem," that is, "king of peace." (Hebrews 7:2b ULT)

Here the writer explains the meanings of Melchizedek's name and title because those things tell us more about the person. Other times, the writer does not explain the meaning of a name because he expects the reader to already know the meaning. If the meaning of the name is important to understand the passage, you can include the meaning in the text or in a footnote.

Reasons This Is a Translation Issue

- Readers may not know some of the names in the Bible. They may not know whether a name refers to a person or place or something else.
- Readers may need to understand the meaning of a name in order to understand the passage.
- Some names may have different sounds or combinations of sounds that are not used in your language or are unpleasant to say in your language. For strategies to address this problem, see Borrow Words.
- Some people and places in the Bible have two names. Readers may not realize that two names refer to the same person or place.

Examples From the Bible

> Then you crossed over the **Jordan** and came to **Jericho**, and the men of Jericho, and the **Amorites** … fought against you, but I gave them into your hand. (Joshua 24:11 ULT)

Readers might not know that "Jordan" is the name of a river, "Jericho" is the name of a city, and "Amorites" is the name of a group of people.

> She said, "Do I really continue to see, even after he has seen me?" Therefore, the well was called **Beer Lahai Roi**. (Genesis 16:13b-14a ULT)

Readers may not understand the second sentence if they do not know that "Beer Lahai Roi" means "Well of the Living One who sees me."

> And she called his name **Moses** and she said, "For out of the water I drew him." (Exodus 2:10b ULT)

Readers may not understand why she said this if they do not know that the name Moses sounds like the Hebrew words "pull out."

> **Saul** was in agreement with his execution. (Acts 8:1a ULT)
>
> But when the apostles, Barnabas and **Paul**, heard of it, they tore their clothing. (Acts 14:14a ULT)

Readers may not know that the names Saul and Paul refer to the same person.

Translation Strategies

(1) If readers cannot easily understand from the context what kind of a thing a name refers to, you can add a word to clarify it.
(2) If readers need to understand the meaning of a name in order to understand what is said about it, copy the name and tell about its meaning either in the text or in a footnote.
(3) Or if readers need to understand the meaning of a name in order to understand what is said about it, and that name is used only once, translate the meaning of the name instead of copying the name.
(4) If a person or place has two different names, use one name most of the time and the other name only when the text tells about the person or place having more than one name or when it says something about why the person or place was given that name. Write a footnote when the source text uses the name that is used less frequently.
(5) Or if a person or place has two different names, then use whatever name is given in the source text, and add a footnote that gives the other name.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) If readers cannot easily understand from the context what kind of a thing a name refers to, you can add a word to clarify it.

> Then you crossed over the **Jordan** and came to **Jericho**, and the men of Jericho, and the **Amorites** … fought against you, but I gave them into your hand. (Joshua 24:11 ULT)
>
> > You went over the **Jordan River** and came to the **city of Jericho**. The men of Jericho fought against you, along with **the tribe of the Amorites.**
>
> At that hour, certain Pharisees approached, saying to him, “Leave and go away from here, because **Herod** wants to kill you.” (Luke 13:31 ULT)
>
> > At that hour, certain Pharisees approached, saying to him, “Go and leave here, because **King Herod** wants to kill you.”

(2) If readers need to understand the meaning of a name in order to understand what is said about it, copy the name and tell about its meaning either in the text or in a footnote.

> And she called his name **Moses** and she said, “For out of the water I drew him.” (Exodus 2:10b ULT)
>
> > She called his name **Moses (which sounds like ‘drawn out’),** and she said, “For out of the water I drew him.”

(3) Or if readers need to understand the meaning of a name in order to understand what is said about it, and that name is used only once, translate the meaning of the name instead of copying the name.

> She said, “Do I really continue to see, even after he has seen me?” Therefore, the well was called **Beer Lahai Roi**. (Genesis 16:13b-14a ULT)
>
> > She said, “Do I really continue to see, even after he has seen me?” Therefore, the well was called **Well of the Living One who sees me**.

(4) If a person or place has two different names, use one name most of the time and the other name only when the text tells about the person or place having more than one name or when it says something about why

the person or place was given that name. Write a footnote when the source text uses the name that is used less frequently. For example, Paul is called “Saul” before Acts 13 and “Paul” after Acts 13. You could translate his name as “Paul” all of the time, except in Acts 13:9 where it talks about him having both names.

> … a young man named **Saul**. (Acts 7:58b ULT)
>
> > … a young man named **Paul** 1

The footnote would look like:

> > [1] Most versions say “Saul” here, but most of the time in the Bible he is called “Paul.”

Then later in the story, you could translate this way:

> But **Saul**, who is also called **Paul**, was filled with the Holy Spirit; (Acts 13:9)
>
> > But **Saul**, who is also called **Paul**, was filled with the Holy Spirit;

(5) Or if a person or place has two names, use whatever name is given in the source text, and add a footnote that gives the other name. For example, you could write “Saul” where the source text has “Saul” and “Paul” where the source text has “Paul.”

> a young man named **Saul** (Acts 7:58 ULT)
>
> > a young man named **Saul**

The footnote would look like:

> > [1] This is the same man who is called Paul beginning in Acts 13.

Then later in the story, you could translate this way:

> But **Saul**, who is also called **Paul**, was filled with the Holy Spirit; (Acts 13:9)
>
> > But **Saul**, who is also called **Paul**, was filled with the Holy Spirit;

Then after the story has explained the name change, you could translate this way.

> It came about in Iconium that **Paul** and Barnabas entered together into the synagogue (Acts 14:1 ULT)
>
> > It came about in Iconium that **Paul**[1] and Barnabas entered together into the synagogue

The footnote would look like:

> > [1] This is the same man who was called Saul before Acts 13.

Numbers References:

Numbers 1:5-15 Numbers 1:20 Numbers 2:3 Numbers 3:21 Numbers 3:24 Numbers 3:27 Numbers 3:30 Numbers 3:33 Numbers 3:35 Numbers 7:12 Numbers 10:14 Numbers 10:17 Numbers 10:21 Numbers 10:29 Numbers 11:3 Numbers 11:28 Numbers 11:34 Numbers 11:35 Numbers 12:1 Numbers 12:16 Numbers 13:4 Numbers 13:16 Numbers 13:21 Numbers 13:22 Numbers 13:22 Numbers 13:23 Numbers 13:24 Numbers 14:6 Numbers 14:45 Numbers 16:1 Numbers 16:12 Numbers 21:1 Numbers 21:3 Numbers 21:20 Numbers 22:36 Numbers 22:36 Numbers 22:39 Numbers 22:41 Numbers 23:1 Numbers 23:14 Numbers 24:22 Numbers 24:22 Numbers 24:24 Numbers 25:1 Numbers 25:14 Numbers 25:15 Numbers 26:5 Numbers 26:9 Numbers 26:19 Numbers 26:23 Numbers 26:33 Numbers 26:46 Numbers 26:57 Numbers 26:59 Numbers 26:60 Numbers 26:65 Numbers 32:3 Numbers 32:9 Numbers 32:12 Numbers 32:41 Numbers 33:5 Numbers 33:16 Numbers 33:17 Numbers 33:47 Numbers 33:47 Numbers 34:17 Numbers 34:19 Numbers 34:28

Numbers

Description

There are many numbers in the Bible. They can be written as words (“five”) or as numerals (“5”). Some numbers are very large, such as “two hundred” (200), “twenty-two thousand” (22,000), or “one hundred million” (100,000,000). Some languages do not have words for all of these numbers. Translators need to decide how to translate numbers and whether to write them as words or numerals.

Some numbers are exact and others are rounded.

> Abram was **86** years old when Hagar bore Ishmael to Abram. (Genesis 16:16 ULT)

Eighty-six (86) is an exact number.

> That day about **3,000** of the people died. (Exodus 32:28b ULT)

Here the number three thousand (3,000) is a round number. It may have been a little more than that or a little less than that. The word “about” shows that it is not an exact number.

Reason This Is a Translation Issue

Some languages do not have words for some of these numbers.

Translation Principles

- Exact numbers should be translated as closely and specifically as they can be.
- Rounded numbers can be translated more generally.

Examples From the Bible

> When Jared had lived **162** years, he became the father of Enoch. After he became the father of Enoch, Jared lived **800** years. He became the father of more sons and daughters. Jared lived **962** years, and then he died. (Genesis 5:18-20 ULT)

The numbers 162, 800, and 962 are exact numbers and should be translated with something as close to those numbers as possible.

> Our sister, may you be the mother of **thousands of ten thousands.** (Genesis 24:60b ULT)

This is a rounded number. It does not say exactly how many descendants she should have, but it was a huge number of them.

Translation Strategies

(1) Write numbers using numerals.
(2) Write numbers using your language’s words or the Gateway Language words for those numbers.
(3) Write numbers using words, and put the numerals in parentheses after them.
(4) Combine words for large numbers.
(5) Use a very general expression for very large rounded numbers and write the numeral in parentheses afterward.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

We will use the following verse in our examples:

> Now, see, at great effort I have prepared for Yahweh’s house **100,000** talents of gold, **1,000,000** talents of silver, and bronze and iron in large quantities. (1 Chronicles 22:14a ULT)

(1) Write numbers using numerals.

> > I have prepared for Yahweh’s house **100,000** talents of gold, **1,000,000** talents of silver, and bronze and iron in large quantities.

(2) Write numbers using your language’s words or the Gateway Language words for those numbers.

> > I have prepared for Yahweh’s house **one hundred thousand** talents of gold, **one million** talents of silver, and bronze and iron in large quantities.

(3) Write numbers using words, and put the numerals in parenthesis after them.

> I have prepared for Yahweh's house one **hundred thousand (100,000)** talents of gold, **one million (1,000,000)** talents of silver, and bronze and iron in large quantities.

(4) Combine words for large numbers.

> I have prepared for Yahweh's house **one hundred thousand** talents of gold, **a thousand thousand** talents of silver, and bronze and iron in large quantities.

(5) Use a very general expression for very large rounded numbers and write the numeral in parentheses afterward.

> I have prepared for Yahweh's house **a great amount of gold (100,000 talents)**, **ten times that amount of silver (1,000,000 talents)**, and bronze and iron in large quantities.

Consistency

Be consistent in your translations. Decide how the numbers will be translated, using numbers or numerals. There are different ways of being consistent.

- Use words to represent numbers all of the time. (You might have very long words.)
- Use numerals to represent numbers all of the time.
- Use words to represent the numbers that your language has words for and use numerals for the numbers that your language does not have words for.
- Use words for low numbers and numerals for high numbers.
- Use words for numbers that require few words and numerals for numbers that require more than a few words.
- Use words to represent numbers, and write the numerals in parentheses after them.

Consistency in the ULT and UST

The *unfoldingWord® Literal Text* (ULT) and the *unfoldingWord® Simplified Text* (UST) use words for the numbers one through ten and use numerals for all numbers above ten.

> When Adam had lived **130** years, he became the father of a son in his own likeness, after his image, and he called his name Seth. After Adam became the father of Seth, he lived **800** years. He became the father of more sons and daughters. Adam lived **930** years, and then he died. (Genesis 5:3-5 ULT)

Numbers References:

Numbers 1:46 Numbers 2:4 Numbers 2:9 Numbers 2:31 Numbers 2:32 Numbers 3:22 Numbers 3:28 Numbers 3:34 Numbers 3:39 Numbers 3:43 Numbers 3:46 Numbers 3:50 Numbers 4:36 Numbers 4:48 Numbers 7:85 Numbers 10:36 Numbers 11:21 Numbers 16:2 Numbers 16:17 Numbers 16:35 Numbers 16:49 Numbers 25:9 Numbers 26:7 Numbers 26:10 Numbers 26:51 Numbers 26:62 Numbers 31:4

Ordinal Numbers

Description

Ordinal numbers are used in the Bible mainly to tell the position of something in a list.

> And God has indeed appointed some in the church, **first** apostles, **second** prophets, **third** teachers, then miracles. (1 Corinthians 12:28a ULT)

This is a list of workers that God gave to the church in their order.

Ordinal Numbers in English

Most ordinal numbers in English simply have "-th" added to the end.

Numeral	Number	Ordinal Number
4	four	fourth
10	ten	tenth
100	one hundred	one hundredth
1,000	one thousand	one thousandth

Some ordinal numbers in English do not follow that pattern.

Numeral	Number	Ordinal Number
1	one	first
2	two	second
3	three	third
5	five	fifth
12	twelve	twelfth

Reason This Is a Translation Issue

Some languages do not have special numbers for showing the order of items in a list. There are different ways to deal with this.

Examples From the Bible

> The **first** lot went to Jehoiarib, the **second** to Jedaiah, the **third** to Harim, the **fourth** to Seorim … the **twenty-third** to Delaiah, and the **twenty-fourth** to Maaziah. (1 Chronicles 24:7-18 ULT)

The people cast lots and one went to each of these people in the order given.

> You must place in it four rows of precious stones. The **first** row must have a ruby, a topaz, and a garnet. The **second** row must have an emerald, a sapphire, and a diamond. The **third** row must have a jacinth, an agate, and an amethyst. The **fourth** row must have a beryl, and an onyx, and a jasper. They must be mounted in gold settings. (Exodus 28:17-20 ULT)

This describes four rows of stones. The first row is probably the top row, and the fourth row is probably the bottom row.

Translation Strategies

If your language has ordinal numbers and using them would give the right meaning, consider using them. If not, here are some strategies to consider:

(1) Use "one" with the first item and "another" or "the next" with the rest.
(2) Tell the total number of items and then list them or the things associated with them.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Tell the total number of items, and use "one" with the first item and "another" or "the next" with the rest.

> The first lot went to Jehoiarib, the second to Jedaiah, the third to Harim, the fourth to Seorim … the twenty-third to Delaiah, and the twenty-fourth to Maaziah. (1 Chronicles 24:7-18 ULT)
>
> > There were **24** lots. **One lot** went to Jehoiarib, **another** to Jedaiah, **another** to Harim … **another** to Delaiah, **and the last** went to Maaziah.
> >
> > There were **24** lots. **One lot** went to Jehoiarib, **the next** to Jedaiah, **the next** to Harim … **the next** to Delaiah, **and the last** went to Maaziah.

> A river went out of Eden to water the garden. From there it divided and became **four** rivers. The name of **the first** is Pishon. It is the one which flows throughout the whole land of Havilah, where there is gold. The gold of that land is good. There is also bdellium and the onyx stone there. The name of **the second** river is Gihon. This one flows throughout the whole land of Cush. The name of **the third** river is Tigris, which flows east of Asshur. **The fourth** river is the Euphrates. (Genesis 2:10-14 ULT)

> > A river went out of Eden to water the garden. From there it divided and became **four** rivers. The name of **one** is Pishon. It is the one which flows throughout the whole land of Havilah, where there is gold. The gold of that land is good. There is also bdellium and the onyx stone there. The name of **the next** river is Gihon. This one flows throughout the whole land of Cush. The name of **the next** river is Tigris, which flows east of Asshur. The **last** river is the Euphrates.

(2) Tell the total number of items and then list them or the things associated with them.

> The **first** lot went to Jehoiarib, the **second** to Jedaiah, the **third** to Harim, the **fourth** to Seorim … the **twenty-third** to Delaiah, and the **twenty-fourth** to Maaziah. (1 Chronicles 24:7-18 ULT)

> > They cast **24** lots. The lots went to Jerhoiarib, Jedaiah, Harim, Seorim … Delaiah, and Maaziah.

Numbers References:

Numbers 1:1 Numbers 1:1 Numbers 1:18 Numbers 2:9 Numbers 2:31 Numbers 6:9 Numbers 6:10 Numbers 7:12 Numbers 7:18 Numbers 7:24 Numbers 8:8 Numbers 9:1 Numbers 9:3 Numbers 9:5 Numbers 9:5 Numbers 9:11 Numbers 9:11 Numbers 10:6 Numbers 10:11 Numbers 10:11 Numbers 10:13 Numbers 11:26 Numbers 11:26 Numbers 15:20 Numbers 15:21 Numbers 28:16 Numbers 29:1 Numbers 33:38

Unusual Uses of the Plural

The biblical languages sometimes use plural forms to refer to single objects, ideas, or people.

Description

Using a plural form to refer to something singular is done to show an intensified feeling about the object, idea, or person, or to show that an object or idea is extraordinary in some way. Also, sometimes a person refers to himself or herself with a plural pronoun. If the person is a king or a leader in a high position, this is to show that the person is very important and represents many people. If the person is writing a letter, such as Paul in the New Testament, this is to do the opposite. It is to avoid referring directly to himself, to avoid any sense that he is boasting or drawing attention to himself.

Reason This Is a Translation Issue

Many languages do not use plural forms to refer to single objects, ideas, or people. In these languages, doing so would be both wrong and confusing. Instead, they need to use a singular form and express any intended intensification in another way.

Examples From the Bible

> The tents of robbers prosper, and securities {are} to the provokers of God (Job 12:6 ULT)

Job is using the plural form **securities** to indicate that these provokers of God experience security to a supreme extent.

> Now you had cast me deep into the heart of the seas (Jonah 2:3 ULT)

Jonah refers to the sea using the plural **seas** to intensify the idea of either the sea's vastness or activity.

> The letter that you sent to **us** has been carefully read aloud before me. (Ezra 4:18 ULT)

Artaxerxes, the king of Persia, refers to himself as **us** in response to a letter sent to him.

> …through whom [Jesus] **we** received grace and apostleship for obedience of faith among all the Gentiles (Romans 1:5 ULT)

Since this letter is from Paul alone, it is likely that he is using the plural **we** to refer to himself.

Translation Strategies

If a plural form would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider using it. If not, consider these strategies.

(1) Use a singular form instead of the plural.
(2) If the plural is used to intensify the meaning, use a singular form with another word that intensifies it such as "very" or "great" or "many."
(3) If the plural is used to intensify or emphasize the meaning, use one of your language's ways of doing that.

Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Use a singular form instead of the plural.

> The letter that you sent to **us** has been carefully read aloud before me. (Ezra 4:18 ULT)

The letter that you sent to **me** has been carefully read aloud before me.

> …through whom [Jesus] **we** received grace and apostleship for obedience of faith among all the Gentiles (Romans 1:5 ULT)

…through whom [Jesus] **I** received grace and apostleship for obedience of faith among all the Gentiles

(2) If the plural is used to intensify or emphasize the meaning, use a singular form with another word that intensifies it such as "very" or "great" or "many."

> The tents of robbers prosper, and **securities {are}** to the provokers of God (Job 12:6 ULT)

The tents of robbers prosper, and **great security {is}** to the provokers of God

> Now you had cast me deep into the heart of the **seas** (Jonah 2:3 ULT)

Now you had cast me deep into the heart of the **great sea**

(3) If the plural is used to intensify or emphasize the meaning, use one of your language's ways of doing that.

> The tents of robbers prosper, and **securities {are}** to the provokers of God (Job 12:6 ULT)

The tents of robbers prosper, and the provokers of God **enjoy complete security**

> Now you had cast me deep into the heart of the **seas** (Jonah 2:3 ULT)

Now you had cast me deep into the heart of the **raging sea**

Numbers References:

Numbers 27:13

Symbolic Action

Description

A symbolic action is something that someone does in order to express a certain idea. For example, in some cultures people nod their heads up and down to mean “yes” or turn their heads from side to side to mean “no.” Symbolic actions do not mean the same things in all cultures. In the Bible, sometimes people perform symbolic actions and sometimes they only refer to the symbolic action.

Examples of symbolic actions

- In some cultures people shake hands when they meet to show that they are willing to be friendly.
- In some cultures people bow when they meet to show respect to each other.

Reason This Is a Translation Issue

An action may have a meaning in one culture and a different meaning or no meaning at all in another culture. For example, in some cultures raising the eyebrows means “I am surprised” or “What did you say?” In other cultures it means “yes.”

In the Bible, people did things that had certain meanings in their culture. When we read the Bible, we might not understand what someone meant if we interpret the action based on what it means in our own culture today.

You (the translator) need to understand what people in the Bible meant when they used symbolic actions. If an action does not mean the same thing in your own culture, then you need to figure out how to translate what the action meant.

Examples From the Bible

> And behold, a man came whose name was Jairus, and he was a ruler of the synagogue. And **falling at the feet of Jesus**, he begged him to come to his house. (Luke 8:41 ULT)

Meaning of symbolic action: He did this to show great respect to Jesus.

> Look, I am standing at the door and am knocking. If anyone hears my voice and opens the door, I will come into him and will eat with him, and he with me. (Revelation 3:20 ULT)

Meaning of symbolic action: When people wanted someone to welcome them into their home, they stood at the door and knocked on it.

Translation Strategies

If people would correctly understand what a symbolic action meant to the people in the Bible, consider using it. If not, here are some strategies for translating it.

(1) Tell what the person did and why he did it.
(2) Do not tell what the person did, but tell what he meant.
(3) Use an action from your own culture that has the same meaning. Do this only in poetry, parables, and sermons. Do not do this when there actually was a person who did a specific action.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Tell what the person did and why he did it.

> And **falling at the feet of Jesus** (Luke 8:41 ULT)
>
> > Jairus fell down at Jesus’ feet in order to show that he greatly respected him.

> Look, I am **standing at the door and am knocking**. (Revelation 3:20 ULT)
>
> > Look, I stand at the door and knock on it, asking you to let me in.

(2) Do not tell what the person did, but tell what he meant.

> And **falling at the feet of Jesus** (Luke 8:41 ULT)
>
> > Jairus showed Jesus great respect.

> Look, I am **standing at the door and am knocking**. (Revelation 3:20 ULT)
>
> > Look, I stand at the door and ask you to let me in.

(3) Use an action from your own culture that has the same meaning.

> And **falling at the feet of Jesus** (Luke 8:41 ULT) — Since Jairus actually did this, you should not substitute an action from your own culture.

> Look, I am **standing at the door and am knocking**. (Revelation 3:20 ULT) — Jesus was not standing at a real door. Rather he was speaking about wanting to have a relationship with people. So in cultures where it is polite to clear one's throat when wanting to be let into a house, you could use that.
>
> > Look, I stand at the door and clear my throat.

Numbers References:

Numbers 5:25 Numbers 8:7 Numbers 8:10 Numbers 8:12 Numbers 12:14 Numbers 14:5 Numbers 14:6 Numbers 14:30 Numbers 16:4 Numbers 16:22 Numbers 16:45 Numbers 24:10 Numbers 25:2 Numbers 27:18 Numbers 28:3

Irregular Use of Tenses

Description

Normally, languages indicate when an event happens by marking it as past, present, or future (or some subset of those categories) through using different verb tenses. But sometimes speakers use those verb tenses in other ways to draw special attention to what they are saying. This article will discuss three ways that this happens in the Bible.

Past For Future

In the Bible, sometimes the past tense is used to refer to things that will happen in the future. This is a figure of speech that is used in prophecy to show that the event will certainly happen. It is sometimes called the "predictive past" or "prophetic perfect."

> Therefore my people have gone into captivity for lack of understanding; their honored leaders go hungry, and their common people have nothing to drink. (Isaiah 5:13 ULT)

In the example above, the people of Israel had not yet gone into captivity, but God spoke of their going into captivity as if it had already happened because he had decided that they certainly would go into captivity.

Reason This Is a Translation Issue:

Speakers of languages that do not use the past tense in prophecy to refer to future events may think that these are events that have already happened.

Examples From the Bible

> Now Jericho was tightly closed because of the sons of Israel. No one went out and no one came in. Yahweh said to Joshua, "See, I have delivered Jericho and its king and its powerful soldiers into your hand." (Joshua 6:1-2 ULT)

> For to us a child has been born, to us a son has been given; and the rule will be on his shoulder. (Isaiah 9:6a ULT)

In the examples above, God spoke of things that would happen in the future as if they had already happened.

> But even Enoch, the seventh from Adam, prophesied about them, saying, “Look! The Lord came with thousands and thousands of his holy ones.” (Jude 1:14 ULT)

Enoch was speaking of something that would happen far in the future, but he used the past tense when he said, “the Lord came.”

Present For Past

In the Bible, sometimes the present tense is used to refer to events that happened in the past. This is a figure of speech that makes these events more vivid or prominent for the reader. The effect can be to draw the reader into the story because these events are told as though they are happening now. The reader, however, knows that the events happened in the past. This is sometimes called the “historical present.”

> Now the mother-in-law of Simon was lying down, being sick with a fever, and immediately they speak to him concerning her. (Mark 1:30 ULT)

In the example above, Mark had been narrating events that happened in the past, using the past tense. But when he came to the part about the disciples speaking to Jesus about Simon’s mother-in-law, he changed from past tense to present tense.

Reason This Is a Translation Issue:

Speakers of languages that do not use the present tense to refer to past events may think that these events are happening now or that the Bible translation makes no sense.

Examples From the Bible

> And Simon and the ones with him searched for him 37 and found him and say to him, “Everyone is seeking you.” 38 And he says to them, “Let us go elsewhere, (Mark 1:36-38 ULT)

As in the above example, the historical present is often used to make direct speech stand out from the narrative.

> And he enters into Capernaum, and immediately on the Sabbaths, having entered into the synagogue, he began to teach. (Mark 1:21 ULT)

As in the above example, the historical present sometimes serves to set the scene for a new set of events. By using the historical present in this way, the writer draws the reader into the scene, and then relates the events using the past tense.

Present For Future

In the Bible, sometimes the present tense is used for a future event. Usually, this is to communicate that the event will happen very soon. Also, like the predictive past, this can communicate that the event is sure to happen or that the speaker is fully committed to making the event happen. This is sometimes called the “imminent future.”

> And Moses said, “Thus says Yahweh: ‘About the middle of the night I am going out in the midst of Egypt, (Exodus 11:4 ULT)

In the example above, Yahweh uses the present tense for something that he will do soon.

Reason This Is a Translation Issue:

Speakers of languages that do not use the present tense to refer to future events may think that these events are happening at the time of speaking or writing or that the Bible translation is confusing or wrong.

Examples From the Bible

> For behold me, raising up the Chaldeans, that fierce and impetuous nation… (Habakkuk 1:6 ULT)

> Therefore, remember from where you have fallen and repent and do the first works. But if not, I am coming to you and I will remove your lampstand from its place—if you do not repent. (Revelation 2:5 ULT)

In the examples above, God speaks of a future event as though he is doing it in the present. This is a way of emphasizing the certainty of the event.

> Therefore my people have gone into captivity for lack of understanding; their honored leaders go hungry, and their common people have nothing to drink. (Isaiah 5:13 ULT)

In the example above, the present tense continues the sense of the predictive past, communicating future events that are sure to happen.

Translation Strategies

If the tense that is used in the Literal Translation would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider using it. If not, here are some other options.

(1) Use the future tense to refer to future events.
(2) Use the past tense to refer to past events.
(3) Use the tense that your language commonly uses to communicate the time of the event.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Use the future tense to refer to future events.

> For to us a child **has been born**, to us a son **has been given**. (Isaiah 9:6a ULT)

> > For to us a child **will be born**, to us a son **will be given**.

> Yahweh said to Joshua, "See, **I have delivered** Jericho and its king and its powerful soldiers into your hand." (Joshua 6:2 ULT)

> > Yahweh said to Joshua, "See, **I will deliver** Jericho and its king and its powerful soldiers into your hand."

> And Moses said, "Thus says Yahweh: 'About the middle of the night **I am going out** in the midst of Egypt, (Exodus 11:4 ULT)

> > And Moses said, "Thus says Yahweh: 'About the middle of the night **I will go out** in the midst of Egypt,

(2) Use the past tense to refer to past events.

> And Simon and the ones with him searched for him and found him and **say** to him, "Everyone is seeking you." And he **says** to them, "Let us go elsewhere, (Mark 1:36-38 ULT)

> > And Simon and the ones with him searched for him and found him and **said** to him, "Everyone is seeking you." And he **said** to them, "Let us go elsewhere,

> And he **enters** into Capernaum, and immediately on the Sabbaths, having entered into the synagogue, he began to teach. (Mark 1:21 ULT)

> > And he **entered** into Capernaum, and immediately on the Sabbaths, having entered into the synagogue, he began to teach.

(3) Use the tense that your language commonly uses to communicate the time of the event.

> Yahweh said to Joshua, "See, **I have delivered** Jericho and its king and its powerful soldiers into your hand." (Joshua 6:2 ULT)

> > Yahweh said to Joshua, "See, **I am delivering** Jericho and its king and its powerful soldiers into your hand." Or: Yahweh said to Joshua, "See, **I am about to deliver** Jericho and its king and its powerful soldiers into your hand."

> And Moses said, "Thus says Yahweh: 'About the middle of the night **I am going out** in the midst of Egypt, (Exodus 11:4 ULT)

> And Moses said, “Thus says Yahweh: ‘About the middle of the night **I will be going out** in the midst of Egypt,
> Or: And Moses said, “Thus says Yahweh: ‘About the middle of the night **I shall certainly go out** in the midst of Egypt,

Numbers References:

Numbers 9:15 Numbers 10:36 Numbers 13:2 Numbers 15:2

Textual Variants

Description

Thousands of years ago, people wrote the books of the Bible. Other people then copied them by hand and translated them. They did this work very carefully, and over the years many people made thousands of copies. However, people who looked at them later saw that there were small differences between them. Some copiers accidentally left out some words, or some mistook one word for another that looked like it. Occasionally, they added words or even whole sentences, either by accident or because they wanted to explain something. Modern Bibles are translations of the old copies. Some modern Bibles include some of these sentences that were added. In the ULT, these added sentences are usually written in footnotes.

Bible scholars have read many old copies and compared them with each other. For each place in the Bible where there was a difference, they have figured out which wordings are most likely correct. The translators of the ULT based the ULT New Testament on wordings that scholars say are most likely correct. The ULT Old Testament is based on the Westminster Leningrad Codex, which is considered to be the best representative of the ancient copies. Because people who use the ULT may have access to Bibles that are based on other copies, the ULT translators have sometimes included information about some of the differences between them, either in the ULT footnotes or in the unfoldingWord® Translation Notes.

Translators are encouraged to translate the text in the ULT and to write about added sentences in footnotes, as is done in the ULT. However, if the local church really wants those sentences to be included in the main text, translators may put them in the text and include a footnote about them.

Examples From the Bible

Matthew 18:10-11 ULT has a footnote about verse 11.

> [10] See that you do not despise one of these little ones. For I say to you that in heaven their angels always look on the face of my Father who is in heaven. [11] [1]
>
> [1] Many authorities, some ancient, insert v. 11: **For the Son of Man came to save that which was lost.**

John 7:53-8:11 is not in the best earliest copies. It has been included in the ULT, but it is marked off with square brackets ([ ]) at the beginning and end, and there is a footnote after verse 11.

> 53 [Then everyone went to his own house … 11 She said, “No one, Lord.” Jesus said, “Neither do I condemn you. Go and sin no more.”] [2]
>
> [2] Some ancient manuscripts include John 7:53-8:11

Psalm 100:3 ULT follows the Westminster Leningrad Codex. It says:

> Know that Yahweh, he {is} God; he, he made us, **and not we**,

There are some other ancient copies that say:

> Know that Yahweh, he {is} God; he, he made us, **and we are his**,

There is an unfoldingWord® Translation Note at that place to tell the translator about this other reading and that either one is an acceptable choice.

Translation Strategies

When there is a textual variant, you may choose to follow the ULT or another version that you have access to.

(1) Translate the verses as they are in the ULT and include a footnote about the alternate reading such as the one that the ULT provides or one in the unfoldingWord® Translation Notes.

(2) Translate the verses as another version has them, and change the footnote so that it fits this situation.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

The translation strategies are applied to Mark 7:14-16 ULT, which has a footnote about verse 16.

> [14] He called the crowd again and said to them, “Listen to me, all of you, and understand. [15] There is nothing from outside the man that can defile him when it enters into him. But the things that come out of the man are the things that defile the man.” [16] [1]
>
> [1] Some ancient manuscripts include verse 16: **If any man has ears to hear, let him hear.**

(1) Translate the verses as they are in the ULT and include the footnote that the ULT provides.

> [14] He called the crowd again and said to them, “Listen to me, all of you, and understand. [15] There is nothing from outside the man that can defile him when it enters into him. But the things that come out of the man are the things that defile the man.” [16] [1]
>
> [1] Some ancient manuscripts include verse 16: **If any man has ears to hear, let him hear.**

(2) Translate the verses as another version has them, and change the footnote so that it fits this situation.

> [14] He called the crowd again and said to them, “Listen to me, all of you, and understand. [15]There is nothing from outside the man that can defile him when it enters into him. But the things that come out of the man are the things that defile the man. [16] If any man has ears to hear, let him hear.” [1]
>
> > [1] Some ancient manuscripts do not include verse 16.

Numbers References:

Numbers 2:14 Numbers 33:8

Copy or Borrow Words

Description

Sometimes the Bible includes things that are not part of your culture and for which your language may not have a word. The Bible also includes people and places for which you may not have names.

When that happens you can “borrow” the word from the Bible in a familiar language and use it in your translation in your own language. This means that you basically copy it from the other language. This page tells how to “borrow” words. (There are also other ways to translate words for things that are not in your language. See Translate Unknowns.)

Examples From the Bible

> Seeing one fig tree along the roadside, he went to it. (Matthew 21:19a ULT)

If there are no fig trees where your language is spoken, there might not be a name for this kind of tree in your language.

> Above him were the **seraphim**; each one had six wings; with two each covered his face, and with two he covered his feet, and with two he flew. (Isaiah 6:2 ULT)

Your language might not have a name for this kind of creature.

> The declaration of the word of Yahweh to Israel by the hand of **Malachi**. (Malachi 1:1 ULT)

Malachi might not be a name that people who speak your language use.

Translation Strategies

There are several things to be aware of when borrowing words from another language.

- Different languages use different scripts, such as the Hebrew, Greek, Latin, Cyrillic, Devanagari, and Korean scripts. These scripts use different shapes to represent the letters in their alphabets.

- Languages that use the same script might pronounce the letters in that script differently. For example, when speaking German, people pronounce the letter “j” the same way that people pronounce the letter “y” when speaking English.

- Languages do not all have the same sounds or combinations of sounds. For example, many languages do not have the soft “th” sound in the English word “think,” and some languages cannot start a word with a combination of sounds like “st” as in “stop.”

There are several ways to borrow a word.

(1) If your language uses a different script from the language you are translating from, you can simply substitute each letter shape with the corresponding letter shape of the script of your language.
(2) You can spell the word as the Other Language spells it, and pronounce it the way your language normally pronounces those letters.
(3) You can pronounce the word similarly to the way the Other Language does, and adjust the spelling to fit the rules of your language.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) If your language uses a different script from the language you are translating from, you can simply substitute each letter shape with the corresponding letter shape of the script of your language.

> צְפַנְיָה — A man’s name in Hebrew letters.
>
> > “Zephaniah” — The same name in Roman letters

(2) You can spell the word as the Other Language spells it, and pronounce it the way your language normally pronounces those letters.

> Zephaniah — This is a man’s name.
>
> > “Zephaniah” — The name as it is spelled in English, but you can pronounce it according to the rules of your language.

(3) You can pronounce the word similarly to the way the Other Language does, and adjust the spelling to fit the rules of your language.

> Zephaniah — If your language does not have the “z,” you could use “s.” If your writing system does not use “ph” you could use “f.” Depending on how you pronounce the “i” you could spell it with “i” or “ai” or “ay.”
>
> > “Sefania”
> >
> > “Sefanaia”
> >
> > “Sefanaya”

Numbers References:

Numbers 20:1 Numbers 33:36 Numbers 34:3

Translate Unknowns

While working to translate the Bible, you (the translator) might find yourself asking: "How do I translate words like lion, fig tree, mountain, priest, or temple when people in my culture have never seen these things and we do not have a word for them?"

Description

Unknowns are things that occur in the source text that are not known to the people of your culture. The unfoldingWord® Translation Words pages and the unfoldingWord® Translation Notes will help you understand what they are. After you understand them, you will need to find ways to refer to those things so that people who read your translation will understand what they are.

> They said to him, "We have nothing here except five loaves of **bread** and two fish." (Matthew 14:17 ULT)

Bread is a particular food made by mixing finely crushed grains with oil, and then cooking the mixture so that it is dry. (Grains are the seeds of a kind of grass.) In some cultures people do not have bread and do not know what it is.

Reason This Is a Translation Issue

- Readers may not know some of the things that are in the Bible because those things are not part of their own culture.
- Readers may have difficulty understanding a text if they do not know some of the things that are mentioned in it.

Translation Principles

- Use words that are already part of your language if possible.
- Keep expressions short if possible.
- Represent God's commands and historical facts accurately.

Examples From the Bible

> So I will turn Jerusalem into piles of ruins, a hideout for **jackals**. (Jeremiah 9:11a ULT)

Jackals are wild animals like dogs that live in only a few parts of the world. So they are not known in many places.

> Beware of false prophets, who come to you in sheep's clothing, but inwardly they are ravenous **wolves**. (Matthew 7:15 ULT)

If wolves do not live where the translation will be read, the readers may not understand that they are fierce, wild animals like dogs that attack and eat sheep.

> They offered him wine mixed with **myrrh**, but he did not drink it. (Mark 15:23 ULT)

People may not know what myrrh is and that it was used as a medicine.

> … to him who made **great lights** … (Psalm 136:7a ULT)

Some languages have terms for things that give light, like the sun and fire, but they have no general term for lights.

> Your sins … will be white like **snow**. (Isaiah 1:18b ULT)

People in many parts of the world have not seen snow, but they may have seen it in pictures.

Translation Strategies

Here are ways you might translate a term that is not known in your language:

(1) Use a phrase that describes what the unknown item is, or what is important about the unknown item for the verse being translated.
(2) Substitute something similar from your language if doing so does not falsely represent a historical fact.
(3) Copy the word from another language, and add a general word or descriptive phrase

to help people understand it.
(4) Use a word that is more general in meaning.
(5) Use a word or phrase that is more specific in meaning.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Use a phrase that describes what the unknown item is, or what is important about the unknown item for the verse being translated.

> Beware of false prophets, who come to you in sheep's clothing, but are inwardly they are **ravenous wolves**. (Matthew 7:15 ULT)
>
> > Beware of false prophets, who come to you in sheep's clothing, but **inwardly they are very hungry and dangerous animals**.

"Ravenous wolves" is part of a metaphor here, so the reader needs to know that they are very dangerous to sheep in order to understand this metaphor. (If sheep are also unknown, then you will need to also use one of the translation strategies to translate sheep, or change the metaphor to something else, using a translation strategy for metaphors. See Translating Metaphors.)

> "We have nothing here except five **loaves of bread** and two fish." (Matthew 14:17 ULT)
>
> > We have nothing here except five **loaves of baked grain seeds** and two fish.

(2) Substitute something similar from your language if doing so does not falsely represent a historical fact.

> Your sins … will be white like **snow.** (Isaiah 1:18b ULT) This verse is not about snow. It uses snow in a figure of speech to help people understand how white something will be.
>
> > Your sins … will be white like **milk**.
> >
> > Your sins … will be white like **the moon**.

(3) Copy the word from another language, and add a general word or descriptive phrase to help people understand it.

> Then they tried to give Jesus wine that was mixed with **myrrh**. But he refused to drink it. (Mark 15:23 ULT) — People may understand better what myrrh is if it is used with the general word "medicine."
>
> > Then they tried to give Jesus wine that was mixed with **a medicine called myrrh**. But he refused to drink it.

> "We have nothing here except five **loaves of bread** and two fish." (Matthew 14:17 ULT) — People may understand better what bread is if it is used with a phrase that tells what it is made of (seeds) and how it is prepared (crushed and baked).
>
> > We have nothing here except five loaves of **baked crushed seed bread** and two fish.

(4) Use a word that is more general in meaning.

> I will turn Jerusalem into piles of ruins, a hideout for **jackals** (Jeremiah 9:11a ULT)
>
> > I will turn Jerusalem into piles of ruins, a hideout for **wild dogs**

> "We have nothing here except five **loaves of bread** and two fish." (Matthew 14:17 ULT)
>
> > We have nothing here except five **loaves of baked food** and two fish.

(5) Use a word or phrase that is more specific in meaning.

> … to him who made **great lights** … (Psalm 136:7a ULT)
>
> > to him who made **the sun and the moon**

Numbers References:

Numbers 1:1 Numbers 1:52 Numbers 2:2 Numbers 2:3 Numbers 2:10 Numbers 2:17 Numbers 2:31 Numbers 2:34 Numbers 3:36 Numbers 3:36 Numbers 3:36 Numbers 3:37 Numbers 4:6 Numbers 4:7 Numbers 4:7 Numbers 4:8 Numbers 4:9 Numbers 4:14 Numbers 4:25 Numbers 4:31 Numbers 4:32 Numbers 5:21 Numbers 5:22 Numbers 5:27 Numbers 6:3 Numbers 6:3 Numbers 6:5 Numbers 6:15 Numbers 6:15 Numbers 6:17 Numbers 6:19 Numbers 6:19 Numbers 6:19 Numbers 7:3 Numbers 7:6 Numbers 7:13 Numbers 7:13 Numbers 7:14 Numbers 7:84 Numbers 7:86 Numbers 8:4 Numbers 8:4 Numbers 8:7 Numbers 8:19 Numbers 9:11 Numbers 10:2 Numbers 10:5 Numbers 10:6 Numbers 10:7 Numbers 10:9 Numbers 10:14 Numbers 10:18 Numbers 11:5 Numbers 11:7 Numbers 11:7 Numbers 11:8 Numbers 11:8 Numbers 11:16 Numbers 11:31 Numbers 13:33 Numbers 15:22 Numbers 15:38 Numbers 16:6 Numbers 16:17 Numbers 16:37 Numbers 16:38 Numbers 16:38 Numbers 16:39 Numbers 18:4 Numbers 18:7 Numbers 18:7 Numbers 18:14 Numbers 18:16 Numbers 19:6 Numbers 19:6 Numbers 19:9 Numbers 19:18 Numbers 21:6 Numbers 21:14 Numbers 21:29 Numbers 22:7 Numbers 26:61 Numbers 28:2 Numbers 28:5 Numbers 29:35 Numbers 32:16 Numbers 33:15 Numbers 33:52 Numbers 35:12 Numbers 35:15 Numbers 36:4

Verse Bridges

Description

In some cases, you will see in the unfoldingWord® Simplified Text (UST) that two or more verse numbers are combined, such as 17-18. This is called a verse bridge. This means that the information in the verses was rearranged so that the story or message could be more easily understood.

> 29 These were the clans of the Horites: Lotan, Shobal, Zibeon, and Anah, 30 Dishon, Ezer, Dishan: these are clans of the Horites, according to their clan lists in the land of Seir. (Genesis 36:29-30 ULT)

> 29-30 The people groups who were descendants of Hor lived in Seir land. The names of the people groups are Lotan, Shobal, Zibeon, Anah, Dishon, Ezer, and Dishan. (Genesis 36:29-30 UST)

In the ULT text, verses 29 and 30 are separate, and the information about the people living in Seir is at the end of verse 30. In the UST text, the verses are joined, and the information about them living in Seir is at the beginning. For many languages, this is a more logical order of information.

Examples From the Bible

Where the UST has a verse bridge, the ULT will have separate verses.

> 4-5 Yahweh our God will bless you in the land that he is giving to you. If you obey Yahweh our God and obey all the commandments that I am giving to you today, there will not be any poor people among you. (Deuteronomy 15:4-5 UST)

> [4] However, there should be no poor among you (for Yahweh will surely bless you in the land that he gives you as an inheritance to possess), [5] if only you diligently listen to the voice of Yahweh your God, to keep all these commandments that I am commanding you today. (Deuteronomy 15:4-5 ULT)

> [16-17] But Yahweh said to him, “I will not permit you to eat the fruit of the tree that will enable you to know what actions are good to do and what actions are evil to do. If you eat any fruit from that tree, on the day you eat it you will surely die. But I will permit you to eat the fruit of any of the other trees in the park.” (Genesis 2:16-17 UST)

> [16] Yahweh God commanded the man, saying, “From every tree in the garden you may freely eat. [17] But from the tree of the knowledge of good and evil you may not eat, for on the day that you eat from it, you will surely die.” (Genesis 2:16-17 ULT)

Translation Strategies

Order the information in a way that will be clear to your readers. If the order of information is clear as it is in the ULT, then use that order. But if the order is confusing or gives the wrong meaning, then change the order so that it is more clear.

(1) If you put information from one verse before information from an earlier verse, then combine the verses and put a hyphen between the two verse numbers.

See how to mark verses in translationStudio.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) If information from one verse is put before information from an earlier verse, then combine the verses and put the verse numbers before the first verse with a hyphen between them.

> 2 You must select three cities for yourself in the middle of your land that Yahweh your God is giving you to possess. 3 You must build a road and divide the borders of your land into three parts, the land that Yahweh your God is causing you to inherit, so that everyone who kills another person may flee there. (Deuteronomy 19:2-3 ULT)

> 2-3 You must divide into three parts the land that he is giving to you. Then select a city in each part. You must make good roads in order that people can get to those cities easily. Someone who kills another person can escape to one of those cities to be safe. (Deuteronomy 19:2-3 UST)

Numbers References:

Numbers 11:8-9

Background Information

Description

When people tell a story, they normally tell the events in the order that they happened. This sequence of events makes up the storyline. The storyline is full of action verbs that move the story along in time. But sometimes a writer may take a break from the storyline and give some information to help his listeners understand the story better. This type of information is called background information. The background information might be about things that happened before the events he has already told about, or it might explain something in the story, or it might be about something that would happen much later in the story.

Example — The bolded phrases in the story below are all background information.

Peter and John went on a hunting trip because **their village was going to have a feast the next day**. **Peter was the best hunter in the village. He once killed three wild pigs in one day!** They walked for hours through low bushes until they heard a wild pig. The pig ran, but they managed to shoot the pig and kill it. Then they tied up its legs with some rope **they had brought with them** and carried it home on a pole. When they brought it to the village, Peter's cousin saw the pig and realized that it was his own pig. Peter had mistakenly killed his cousin's pig.

Background information often tells about something that had happened earlier or something that would happen much later. Examples of these are: "their village was going to have a feast the next day," "He once killed three wild pigs in one day," and "that they had brought with them."

Often background information uses "be" verbs like "was" and "were," rather than action verbs. Examples of these are "their village was going to have a feast the next day," and "Peter **was** the best hunter in the village."

Background information can also be marked with words that tell the reader that this information is not part of the event line of the story. In this story, some of these words are "because," "once," and "had."

A writer may use background information:

- to help their listeners be interested in the story
- to help their listeners understand something in the story
- to help the listeners understand why something is important in the story
- to tell the setting of a story

> - Setting includes:
> - where the story takes place
> - when the story takes place
> - who is present when the story begins
> - what is happening when the story begins

Reasons This Is a Translation Issue

- Languages have different ways of marking background information and storyline information.
- You (the translator) need to know the order of the events in the Bible, which information is background information, and which is storyline information.
- You will need to translate the story in a way that marks the background information in a way that your own readers will understand the order of events, which information is background information, and which is storyline information.

Examples From the Bible

> Hagar gave birth to Abram's son, and Abram named his son, whom Hagar bore, Ishmael. Abram **was 86 years old** when Hagar bore Ishmael to Abram. (Genesis 16:15-16 ULT)

The first sentence tells about two events. Hagar gave birth and Abraham named his son. The second sentence is background information about how old Abram was when those things happened.

> And Jesus himself **was beginning about 30 years old**. He **was the son (as it was assumed)** of Joseph, of Heli, (Luke 3:23 ULT)

The verses before this tell about when Jesus was baptized. This sentence introduces a section of background information about Jesus' age and ancestors (Luke 3:23-38). The story resumes in chapter 4 where it tells about Jesus going to the wilderness.

> Then **it happened on a Sabbath** that he **was going through the grain fields**, and his disciples **were picking and eating the heads of grain**, **rubbing them in their hands**. But some of the Pharisees said … (Luke 6:1-2a ULT)

These verses give the setting of the story. The events took place in a grain field on the Sabbath day. Jesus, his disciples, and some Pharisees were there, and Jesus' disciples were picking heads of grain and eating them. The main action in the story starts with the phrase, "But some of the Pharisees said …."

Translation Strategies

To keep translations clear and natural you will need to study how people tell stories in your language. Observe how your language marks background information. You may need to write down some stories in order to study this. Observe what kinds of verbs your language uses for background information and what kinds of words or other markers signal that something is background information. Do these same things when you translate, so that your translation is clear and natural and people can understand it easily.

(1) Use your language's way of showing that certain information is background information.
(2) Reorder the information so that earlier events are mentioned first. (This is not always possible when the background information is very long.)

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Use your language's way of showing that certain information is background information. The examples below explain how this was done in the ULT English translations.

> **And** Jesus himself **was** beginning about 30 years old. He **was** the son **(as it was assumed)** of Joseph, of Heli. (Luke 3:23 ULT)

As here, English sometimes uses the word "and" to show that there is some kind of change in the story. The verb "was" shows that it is background information. A set of parentheses is also a way to mark background information. Here, "as it was assumed" gives background information to the phrase, "He was the son." People assumed that Joseph was Jesus' father, although his true father was God.

> Therefore, also exhorting many other things, he preached the good news to the people. But Herod the tetrarch, having been rebuked by him concerning Herodias, the wife of his brother, and **concerning all the evil things that Herod had done**, added even this to them all: He locked John up in prison. (Luke 3:18-20 ULT)

The bolded phrase happened before John rebuked Herod. In English, the helping verb "had" in "had done" shows that Herod did those things before John rebuked him.

(2) Reorder the information so that earlier events are mentioned first.

> Hagar gave birth to Abram's son, and Abram named his son, whom Hagar bore, Ishmael. **Abram was 86 years old when Hagar bore Ishmael to Abram**. (Genesis 16:16 ULT)

> "**When Abram was 86 years old**, Hagar gave birth to his son, and Abram named his son Ishmael."

> Therefore, also exhorting many other things, he preached the good news to the people. But Herod the tetrarch, having been rebuked by him concerning Herodias, the wife of his brother, and **concerning all the evil things that Herod had done**, added even this to them all: He locked John up in prison. (Luke 3:18-20 ULT)

The translation below reorders John's rebuke and Herod's actions.

> "Now Herod the tetrarch married his brother's wife, Herodias, and **he did many other evil things**, so John rebuked him. But then Herod did another very evil thing. He had John locked up in prison."

Numbers References:

Numbers 11:7 Numbers 12:3 Numbers 13:20 Numbers 13:22 Numbers 13:33 Numbers 18:16 Numbers 20:2 Numbers 20:13 Numbers 21:13 Numbers 21:16 Numbers 21:24 Numbers 21:26 Numbers 21:26 Numbers 22:4 Numbers 22:7 Numbers 22:22 Numbers 26:9 Numbers 26:19 Numbers 26:58 Numbers 27:14 Numbers 31:53 Numbers 33:36 Numbers 33:40

End of Story

Description

There are different types of information that may be given at the end of a story. Often this is background information. This background information is different from the actions that make up the main part of the story. A book of the Bible is often made up of many smaller stories that are part of the larger story of the book itself. For example, the story of Jesus' birth is a smaller story in the larger story of the book of Luke. Each of these stories, whether large or small, can have background information at the end of it.

The following are purposes for end of story information:

- to summarize the story
- to give a conclusion about what the story means or what is important about it
- to connect a smaller story to the larger story it is a part of
- to tell the reader what happens to a specific character after the main part of the story ends
- to tell on-going action that continues after the main part of the story ends
- to tell what happens after the story as a result of the events that happened in the story itself

Reasons This Is a Translation Issue

Different languages have different ways of presenting these kinds of information. If you (the translator) do not use your language's ways of doing this, readers may not know:

- that this information is ending the story
- what the purpose of the information is
- how the information is related to the story

Translation Strategies

- Translate the particular kind of information at the end of a story the way your language expresses that kind of information.

- Translate it so that people will understand how it relates to the story it is part of.
- If possible, translate the end of the story in a way that people will know where that story ends and the next begins.

Examples From the Bible

- To summarize the story

> Then the rest of the men should follow, some on planks, and some on other things from the ship. **In this way it happened that all of us were brought safely to the land.** (Acts 27:44 ULT)

- To give a conclusion about what the story means or what is important about it

> Many of those who practiced magical arts brought their books together and burned them in the sight of everyone. Then they counted the value of them, and found it was 50,000 pieces of silver. **So the word of the Lord was spreading and prevailing with power.** (Acts 19:19-20 ULT)

- To tell the reader what happens to a specific character after the main part of the story ends

> And Mary said, "My soul magnifies the Lord, and my spirit rejoiced in God my savior." **And Mary stayed with her about three months and then returned to her house.** (Luke 1:46-47, 56 ULT)

- To tell on-going action that continues after the main part of the story ends

> All who those who heard it were amazed concerning the things that were spoken to them by the shepherds. **But Mary kept all the things, pondering them in her heart.** (Luke 2:18-19 ULT)

- To tell what happens after the story as a result of the events that happened in the story itself

> "Woe to you, experts in the Jewish law, because you have taken away the key of knowledge; you do not enter in yourselves, and you hinder those who are entering." **After he went from there, the scribes and the Pharisees began to fiercely oppose him and argued against him about many things, lying in wait to trap him in something from his mouth.** (Luke 11:52-54 ULT)

Numbers References:

Numbers 1:54 Numbers 2:34 Numbers 26:63 Numbers 36:13

Foreground Information

Description

When people tell a story, make an argument, or make a request, sometimes they need to tell their listeners that something that they have said or are about to say is the most important part of the story or argument or request. That type of information is called **foreground information**. It is the information that is most important for the listeners to understand or act on. People will often use a specific word or phrase to signal that this part is foreground information.

Examples

The bolded phrases in the examples below signal that what follows is foreground information. That is, what follows these phrases is the most important part of a story or argument or the specific request that someone has been leading up to by providing other information.

We've worked hard on this rose garden, fertilizing and watering the soil and pruning the branches. The bushes are beautiful and healthy, and we thought everything was fine. **But listen to this.** I just spotted two Japanese beetles on one of the bushes. We need to spray the bushes right away to kill those beetles and keep any more from coming and destroying the buds and blossoms.

Our community projects went pretty well last year, but I think they could have gone better. I've recognized that you are good at organizing people to work together. **So here is what I was hoping you would do.** Would you take a look at each of our projects and suggest ways that we could carry them out even better?

Reasons This Is A translation Issue

- Languages have different ways of signaling what is foreground information.
- You (the translator) need to be able to recognize which information in the Bible is foreground information so that you can signal it correctly in your language.
- You will need to translate biblical stories, arguments, and requests in a way that enables your own readers to recognize what information in them is foreground information.

Examples From the Bible

Ezra 5:7–17 presents a letter that Persian officials responsible for the area of Judea sent to the Persian emperor Darius. In that letter, those officials report that the Jews were rebuilding Yahweh's temple and that a previous emperor, Cyrus, had given them permission. The Persian officials doubt this, so then they write:

> "**And now,** if it is good to the king, let a search be made in the house of the treasures of the king which is there in Babylon, if it is that a decree was set by Cyrus the king to build this house of God in Jerusalem. And let him send to us the will of the king concerning this." (Ezra 5:17 ULT)

Most of this letter provides background information to help Darius understand why the officials are making their request. The expression "And now" signals that what follows is their specific request.

In 1 Corinthians 7:1–24, Paul addresses the Corinthians' belief that it was more spiritual not to be married than to be married. He discusses the advantages and disadvantages of being married and of being single. He uses other situations in life as illustrations. He then says,

> "**Brothers,** each one in that which he was called, let him remain with God in this" (1 Corinthians 7:24 ULT).

Paul uses the expression "Brothers" to signal that what follows is the essential point of this argument: if people are already married, they should remain married, since it is not more spiritual to be single.

In Joshua 7, the Israelites attack the small city of Ai, but they are defeated. Yahweh tells Joshua that this happened because one of the Israelites sinned against him by taking plunder from the city of Jericho, which he had forbidden. Yahweh identifies a man

named Achan as the one who sinned. When Joshua confronts him, Achan confesses. He describes how he found a valuable garment and some silver and gold in Jericho and took them. He then says,

> "**And behold,** they are hidden in the earth in the midst of my tent" (Joshua 7:21 ULT).

Achan uses the expression "And behold" to signal that what follows is the main point of the story that is his confession: he kept the plunder and hid it, showing that he knew that it was wrong to take it.

Translation Strategies

To keep your translation clear and natural, you will need to study how people tell stories and make arguments and requests in your language. Observe how speakers of your language mark foreground information. You may need to write down some stories, arguments, and requests in order to study this. Observe what kinds of words, phrases, or other markers in your language signal that something is foreground information. Do these same things when you translate so that your translation is clear and natural and people can understand it easily.

(1) Use your language's way of showing that certain information is foreground information. (2) Reorder the information as appropriate, so that the foreground information comes at the most natural place for your language.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Use your language's way of showing that certain information is foreground information.

> "**And now,** if it is good to the king, let a search be made in the house of the treasures of the king which is there in Babylon," (Ezra 5:17 ULT)

> "**Accordingly,** if it is good to the king, let a search be made in the house of the treasures of the king which is there in Babylon," (Ezra 5:17) Or "**We suggest that,** if it is good to the king, let a search be made in the house of the treasures of the king which is there in Babylon," (Ezra 5:17)

> "**Brothers,** each one in that which he was called, let him remain with God in this" (1 Corinthians 7:24 ULT).

> "**So then, brothers**, each one in that which he was called, let him remain with God in this" (1 Corinthians 7:24). Or "**Therefore, my fellow believers,** each one in that which he was called, let him remain with God in this" (1 Corinthians 7:24).

> "**And behold,** they are hidden in the earth in the midst of my tent" (Joshua 7:21 ULT).

> "**So look,** they are hidden in the earth in the midst of my tent" (Joshua 7:21). Or "**And now you will find that** they are hidden in the earth in the midst of my tent" (Joshua 7:21).

(2) Reorder the information as appropriate, so that the foreground information comes at the most natural place for your language.

> "**And now,** if it is good to the king, let a search be made in the house of the treasures of the king which is there in Babylon, if it is that a decree was set by Cyrus the king to build this house of God in Jerusalem. And let him send to us the will of the king concerning this." (Ezra 5:17 ULT).

> "If it is good to the king, let a search be made in the house of the treasures of the king which is there in Babylon, if it is that a decree was set by Cyrus the king to build this house of God in Jerusalem. And let him send to us the will of the king concerning this. **This is our request.**" (Ezra 5:17 ULT).

In James 4:11–12, James first states his main point, signaled as foreground by the term "brothers," and he then gives reasons for it. (In this instance, the term "brothers" follows the foreground information.)

> "Do not speak against one another, **brothers.** The one speaking against a brother or judging his brother speaks against the law and judges the law. But if you judge the law, you are not a doer of the law, but a judge. There is one lawgiver and judge, the one being able to save and to destroy. But who are you, the one judging your neighbor?" (James 4:11–12 ULT)

In some languages, it may be clearer or more natural for the main point to come after the reasons. It might also be clearer for the expression that signals foreground information to precede that information.

The one speaking against a brother or judging his brother speaks against the law and judges the law. But if you judge the law, you are not a doer of the law, but a judge. There is one lawgiver and judge, the one being able to save and to destroy. But who are you, the one judging your neighbor? **Brothers,** do not speak against one another. (James 4:11–12, reordered)

Numbers References:

Numbers 31:16

Introduction of a New Event

Description

When people tell a story, they tell about an event or a series of events. Often they put certain information at the beginning of the story, such as who the story is about, when it happened, and where it happened. This information that the writer gives before the events of the story begin is called the setting of the story. Some new events in a story also have a setting because they might involve new people, new times, and new places. In some languages, people also tell if they saw the event or heard about it from someone else.

When your people tell about events, what information do they give at the beginning? Is there a certain order that they put it in? In your translation, you will need to follow the way your language introduces new information at the beginning of a story or a new event rather than the way the source language did that. In this way your translation will sound natural and communicate clearly in your language.

Examples From the Bible

> **In the days of Herod**, king of Judea, **there was a certain priest named Zechariah**, from the division of Abijah. And **his wife was** from the daughters of Aaron, and her name was Elizabeth. (Luke 1:5 ULT)

The verses above introduce a story about Zechariah. The first bolded phrase tells when it happened, and the next two bolded phrases introduce the main people. The next two verses go on to explain that Zechariah and Elizabeth were old and did not have any children. All of this is the setting. Then the phrase "And it happened that" in Luke 1:8 helps to introduce the first event in this story:

> **And it happened that** in his performing as priest before God, in the order of his division, according to the custom of the priesthood, he came up by lot to enter into the temple of the Lord to burn incense. (Luke 1:8-9 ULT)

> **The birth of Jesus Christ happened in the following way.** His mother, Mary, was engaged to marry Joseph, but before they came together, she was found to be pregnant by the Holy Spirit. (Matthew 1:18 ULT)

The bolded sentence above makes it explicit that a story about Jesus is being introduced. The story will tell about how the birth of Jesus happened.

> **Now after Jesus was born in Bethlehem of Judea in the days of Herod the king**, behold, learned men from the east arrived in Jerusalem. (Matthew 2:1 ULT)

The bolded phrase above shows that the events concerning the learned men happened **after** Jesus was born.

> **Now in those days** John the Baptist came preaching in the wilderness of Judea. (Matthew 3:1-22 ULT)

The bolded phrase above shows that John the Baptist came preaching around the time of the previous events. It is probably very general and refers to when Jesus lived in Nazareth.

> **Then** Jesus came from Galilee to the Jordan River to John, to be baptized by him. (Matthew 3:13 ULT)

The word "then" shows that Jesus came to the Jordan River some time after the events in the previous verses.

> Now there was **a man from the Pharisees whose name was Nicodemus, a Jewish leader**. This man came to Jesus at night. (John 3:1-2a ULT)

The author first introduced the new person and then told about what he did and when he did it. In some languages, it might be more natural to tell about the time first.

> 6 Noah was 600 years old when the flood came upon the earth. 7 Noah, his sons, his wife, and his sons' wives went into the ark together because of the waters of the flood. (Genesis 7:6-7 ULT)

Verse 6 is a statement of the events that happen in the rest of chapter 7. Chapter 6 already told about how God told Noah that there would be a flood, and how Noah prepared for it. Chapter 7 verse 6 introduces the part of the story that tells about Noah and his family and the animals going into the ship, the rain starting, and the rain flooding the earth. Some languages might need to make it clear that this verse simply introduces the event, or move this verse after verse 7. Verse 6 is not one of the events of the story. The people went into the ship before the flood came.

Translation Strategies

If the information given at the beginning of a new event is clear and natural to your readers, consider translating it as it is in the ULT or UST. If not, consider one of these strategies:

(1) Put the information that introduces the event in the order that your people put it.
(2) If readers would expect certain information but it is not in the Bible, consider using an indefinite word or phrase to fill in that information, such as: "another time" or "someone."
(3) If the introduction is a summary of the whole event, use your language's way of showing that it is a summary.
(4) If it would be strange in the target language to give a summary of the event at the beginning, indicate that the event would actually happen later in the story.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Put the information that introduces the event in the order that your people put it.

> Now there was **a man from the Pharisees whose name was Nicodemus, a Jewish leader**. This man came to Jesus at night. (John 3:1-2a ULT)
>
> > There was a **man whose name was Nicodemus. He was a Pharisee and a member of the Jewish Council**. One night he came to Jesus.
>
> > One night **a man named Nicodemus, who was a Pharisee and a member of the Jewish Council**, came to Jesus.

> As he passed by, **he saw Levi the son of Alpheus, sitting** at the tax collector's tent, and he said to him … (Mark 2:14a ULT)
>
> > As he passed by, **Levi the son of Alpheus was sitting** at the tax collector's tent. Jesus saw him and and said to him …
>
> > As he passed by, **there was a man sitting** at the tax collector's tent. His name was Levi, and he was the son of Alpheus. Jesus saw him and said to him …
>
> > As he passed by, **there was a tax collector** sitting at the tax collector's tent. His name was Levi, and he was the son of Alpheus. Jesus saw him and said to him …

(2) If readers would expect certain information, but it is not in the Bible, consider using an indefinite word or phrase such as "another time," or "someone."

> Noah was 600 years old when the flood came upon the earth. (Genesis 7:6 ULT) — If people expect to be told something about when the new event happened, the phrase "after that" can help them see that it happened after the events already mentioned.
>
> > **After that**, when Noah was 600 years old, the flood came upon the earth.

> **Again he began** to teach beside the sea. (Mark 4:1a ULT) — In chapter 3 Jesus was teaching at someone's house. Readers may need to be told that this new event happened at another time, or that Jesus actually went to the sea.
>
> > **Another time** Jesus began to teach people again beside the sea.
>
> > Jesus went to the sea and **began to teach people again** there.

(3) If the introduction is a summary of the whole event, use your language's way of showing that it is a summary.

> Noah was 600 years old when the flood came upon the earth. (Genesis 7:6 ULT)
>
> > **Now this is what happened when** Noah was 600 years old and the flood came upon the earth.
>
> > **This part tells about what happened when** the flood came upon the earth. It happened when Noah was 600 years old.

(4) If it would be strange in the target language to give a summary of the event at the beginning, show that the event will actually happen later in the story.

> Noah was 600 years old when the flood came upon the earth. Noah, his sons, his wife, and his sons' wives went into the ark together because of the waters of the flood. (Genesis 7:6-7 ULT)
>
> > **Now this is what happened when** Noah was 600 years old. Noah, his sons, his wife, and his sons' wives went into the ark together because **God had said that the waters of the flood would come**.

Numbers References:

Numbers 3:1 Numbers 3:5 Numbers 10:11 Numbers 17:8 Numbers 20:1 Numbers 20:14 Numbers 20:22 Numbers 21:4 Numbers 21:10 Numbers 21:17 Numbers 21:21 Numbers 21:33 Numbers 22:1 Numbers 22:21 Numbers 22:36 Numbers 22:41 Numbers 24:1 Numbers 24:20 Numbers 24:21 Numbers 24:25 Numbers 25:1 Numbers 25:6 Numbers 26:1 Numbers 33:5 Numbers 33:37 Numbers 33:41

Oath Formulas

An oath is a solemn promise that someone makes to another person to do something or to solemnly testify that something is true. The oath includes the idea that a bad thing will happen if the person making the oath does not do the thing promised or if what the person says is not true.

Description

There are two types of oath in the Bible. We can call the first type a “Promise” oath, and the second type a “Truth” oath.

Promise Oath

In this type of oath, the person saying it is promising to do something. As a guarantee that the person taking the oath will do what he promises, the person calls on God to witness the oath and to punish him severely if he does not do the thing promised. A complete Promise oath has four parts, but some of them are often left unspoken and only implied:

1. Calling on God to witness the oath and judge the person making it
2. Making the promise (may be implied as the opposite of the violation)
3. Telling what would be a violation of the oath (may be implied as the opposite of the promise)
4. Saying what punishment God would do if the person violates the oath (often implied)

Truth Oath

In this type of oath, the person saying it is affirming that what he is saying is true, and he guarantees that it is true by naming the life of God. Sometimes the person will not name God directly but will instead name something holy that is associated with God, such as the temple. In some situations, a person might name a revered person, such as a king. The implication is that if the person’s statement proves to be false, that person will lose any relationship to God or to the revered person.

These oaths have three parts, but the third part is implied and not stated:

1. Naming something holy, usually the life of God or of someone who is revered.
2. Making the statement.
3. Implied: The speaker and hearers of the oath understand that the speaker forfeits his relationship to God or to the revered person if his statement is false.

Reasons This Is a Translation Issue:

People in some cultures may not be familiar with the practice of taking oaths, and so they may not understand what the people in the Bible are doing. In many languages, people would not take an oath the way that people did in the Bible, and so they might not recognize that the person is taking an oath. In the Old Testament, people often did not speak one or more parts of the oath, leaving those parts implied. The part that was most often left unspoken was the part that would tell what would happen if they break the oath. People believed that spoken words have power, and that speaking the part about punishment might cause the punishment to happen, so they often left that part to be understood silently. Because of these things, people might think that the person in the Bible is not making a real oath or they may not understand what the verse is talking about at all.

Examples From the Bible

Promise Oath

> "I raise my hand to Yahweh, God Most High, the possessor of heaven and earth, if from a thread even to the strap of a sandal, or if I take from anything that {belongs} to you, so that you will not say, 'I made Abram rich.' (Genesis 14:22-23 ULT)

In the verse above, Abram describes a symbolic action (raising his hand to Yahweh) to signal that he is taking an oath and calling on Yahweh as witness and judge. He says what would violate his oath (thus promising to do the opposite). Then he leaves out the part that would describe how Yahweh would punish him if he fails to do what he is promising.

> May Yahweh do thus to me, and thus may he add, if death separates between me and between you. (Ruth 1:17 ULT)

Ruth calls on Yahweh and includes the part about Yahweh punishing her, says what the violation would be (thus promising to do the opposite), but does not say what the punishment would be.

> And Saul said, "Thus may God do and thus may he add, for dying you will die, Jonathan." (1 Samuel 14:44 ULT)

Saul takes an oath that Jonathan will die, but does not specifically say whom God would punish, what the punishment would be, or what the person would do that would violate the oath and bring about God's punishment.

Truth Oath

> But indeed, the life of Yahweh and the life of yourself, that between me and between death is like a step!" (1 Samuel 20:3)

Here David uses a truth oath to convince Jonathan that Saul does indeed want to kill David. David says this because Jonathan had been trying to assure David that he had nothing to fear from Saul. But Jonathan knows that David holds both Yahweh's and Jonathan's life as sacred, and so this oath convinces Jonathan that David truly believes what he is saying.

> The life of your soul, my lord, I {am} the woman having stationed herself with you in this {place} to pray to Yahweh. (1 Samuel 1:26 ULT)

Hannah is speaking to the priest Eli. She demonstrates that she holds the priest's life as sacred by swearing by it that what she is saying is true.

And Elijah said, "The life of Yahweh of armies, before whom I stand, that I will appear before him today." (1 Kings 18:15 ULT)

Elijah uses this oath to convince Obadiah to announce his arrival to Ahab. Obadiah knows that Elijah would never break his relationship to Yahweh.

Combination oath

> The life of Pharaoh, if you leave from this {place} without your youngest brother coming here. (Genesis 42:15)

Joseph is speaking to his brothers as an Egyptian official, and so he swears by the life of Pharaoh rather than by the life of the God of the Hebrews. Joseph combines the two types of oaths here by using a conditional "if" statement (part 3 of the "Promise" oath). He leaves unstated the "then" part of the oath which would be either a punishment from Pharoah (as with a Promise oath) or a breaking of relationship with Pharaoh (as with a "Truth" oath) if this conditional statement proves true.

Translation Strategies

If people who speak your language would recognize the oath as it is in the ULT, consider translating it in its current form. If not, consider using the following strategies.

(1) Add in the missing parts so that people recognize it as an oath.
(2) If oaths are unfamiliar, add a short explanation of what an oath is.
(3) Put the oath into a form that would be natural in your language.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Add in the missing parts so that people recognize it as an oath.

> "I raise my hand to Yahweh, God Most High, the possessor of heaven and earth, if from a thread even to the strap of a sandal, or if I take from anything that {belongs} to you, so that you will not say, 'I made Abram rich.' (Genesis 14:22-23 ULT)

"I raise my hand to Yahweh, God Most High, the possessor of heaven and earth, **and ask him to punish me severely** if from a thread even to the strap of a sandal, or if I take from anything that {belongs} to you, so that you will not say, 'I made Abram rich.'

> And Saul said, "Thus may God do and thus may he add, for dying you will die, Jonathan." (1 Samuel 14:44 ULT)

And Saul said, "May God **punish me severely** and may he add **even more punishment if I do not kill you**, for dying you will die, Jonathan."

> But indeed, the life of Yahweh and the life of yourself, that between me and between death is like a step! (1 Samuel 20:3)

But indeed, **I swear by** Yahweh's life and **by** the life of yourself that **it is true that** between me and death is like a step!

> The life of Pharaoh, if you leave from this {place} without your youngest brother coming here. (Genesis 42:15)

I swear by the life of Pharaoh, if you leave from this {place} without your youngest brother coming here, **may Pharaoh punish me severely**.

(2) If oaths are unfamiliar, add a short explanation of what an oath is.

> May Yahweh do thus to me, and thus may he add, if death separates between me and between you. (Ruth 1:17 ULT)

Then Ruth called on Yahweh to enforce her promise: "May Yahweh do thus to me, and thus may he add, if death separates between me and between you."

> But indeed, the life of Yahweh and the life of yourself, that between me and between death is like a step! (1 Samuel 20:3)

Then David made a statement to Jonathan to convince him that he truly believed that he was in danger: "But indeed, **I forfeit my relationship to** Yahweh and **to you** yourself **if it is not true** that between me and death is like a step!"

(3) Put the oath into a form that would be natural in your language.

> "I raise my hand to Yahweh, God Most High, the possessor of heaven and earth, if from a thread even to the strap of a sandal, or if I take from anything that {belongs} to you, so that you will not say, 'I made Abram rich.' (Genesis 14:22-23 ULT)

"**I solemnly swear before** Yahweh, God Most High, the possessor of heaven and earth, **that I will not take** from a thread even to the strap of a sandal, or from anything that {belongs} to you, **so help me God**, so that you will not say, 'I made Abram rich.'

> May Yahweh do thus to me, and thus may he add, if death separates between me and between you. (Ruth 1:17 ULT)

May Yahweh **strike me dead right where I stand** if death separates between me and between you.

> But indeed, the life of Yahweh and the life of yourself, that between me and between death is like a step! (1 Samuel 20:3)

But indeed, **before** Yahweh and **before you** yourself, **I swear** that between me and death is like a step!

Numbers References:

Numbers 14:21 Numbers 14:23 Numbers 14:28 Numbers 14:28 Numbers 14:30 Numbers 14:35 Numbers 32:11

Introduction of New and Old Participants

Description

The first time that people or things are mentioned in a story, they are **new participants**. After that, whenever they are mentioned, they are **old participants**.

> Now **there was a man from the Pharisees whose name was Nicodemus** … **This man** came to Jesus at night … Jesus replied and said to **him** … (John 3:1, 2a, 3a)

The first bolded phrase introduces Nicodemus as a new participant. After being introduced, he is then referred to as "This man" and "him" when he has become an old participant.

Reason This Is a Translation Issue

In order to make your translation clear and natural, it is necessary to refer to the participants in such a way that people will know if they are new participants or participants that they have already read about. Different languages have different ways of doing this. You must follow the way that your language does this, not the way that the source language does this.

Examples From the Bible

New Participants

Often the most important new participant is introduced with a phrase that says that he existed, such as "There was a man," as in the example below. The phrase "There was" tells us that this man existed. The word "a" in "a man" tells us that the author is speaking about him for the first time. The rest of the sentence tells where this man was from, who is family was, and what his name was.

> **Now there was a man** from Zorah, of the families of the Danites, and his name was Manoah. (Judges 13:2a ULT)

A new participant who is not the most important participant is often introduced in relation to the more important person who was already introduced. In the example below, Manoah's wife is simply referred to as "his wife." This phrase shows her relationship to him.

> Now there was one man from Zorah, of the families of the Danites, and his name was Manoah. **His wife** was barren and she had never given birth. (Judges 13:2 ULT)

Sometimes a new participant is introduced simply by name because the author assumes that the readers know who the person is. In the first verse of 1 Kings, the author assumes that his readers know who King David is, so there is no need to explain who he is.

> Now King David was old, he had advanced in the days, and they covered him with the garments, but it was not warm enough for him. (1 Kings 1:1 ULT)

Old Participants

A person who has already been brought into the story can be referred to with a pronoun after that. In the example below, Manoah is referred to with the pronoun "his," and his wife is referred to with the pronoun "she."

> **His wife** was barren and **she** had never given birth. (Judges 13:2 ULT)

Old participants can also be referred to in other ways, depending on what is happening in the story. In the example below, the story is about bearing a son, and Manoah's wife is referred to by the noun phrase "the wife."

> The angel of Yahweh appeared to **the wife** and he said to her … (Judges 13:3a ULT)

If the old participant has not been mentioned for a while, or if there could be confusion between participants, the author may use the participant's name again. In the example below, Manoah is referred to by his name, which the author has not used since verse 2.

> Then **Manoah** prayed to Yahweh. (Judges 13:8a ULT)

Some languages place an affix on the verb that tells something about the subject. In some of those languages, people do not always use noun phrases or pronouns for old participants when they are the subject of the sentence. The marker on the verb gives enough information for the listener to understand who the subject is. (See Verbs.)

Translation Strategies

(1) If the participant is new, use one of your language's ways of introducing new participants.
(2) If it is not clear to whom a pronoun refers, use a noun phrase or name.
(3) If an old participant is referred to by name or a noun phrase, and people wonder if this is another new participant, try using a pronoun instead. If a pronoun is not needed because people would understand it clearly from the context, then leave out the pronoun.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) If the participant is new, use one of your language's ways of introducing new participants.

> Then Joseph, who was called Barnabas by the apostles (which is translated as Son of Encouragement), a Levite from Cyprus by birth … (Acts 4:36-37 ULT)
> — Starting the sentence with Joseph's name when he has not been introduced yet might be confusing in some languages.
>
> > There was a man from Cyprus who was a Levite. His name was Joseph, and he was given the name Barnabas by the apostles (that is, being interpreted, Son of Encouragement). There was a Levite from Cyprus whose name was Joseph. The apostles gave him the name Barnabas, which means Son of encouragement.

(2) If it is not clear who a pronoun refers to, use a noun phrase or name.

> And it happened that when he was praying in a certain place, when he stopped, one of his disciples said to him, “Lord, teach us to pray just as John also taught his disciples.” (Luke 11:1 ULT) — Since this is the first verse in a chapter, readers might wonder who “he” refers to.
>
> > It happened when **Jesus** finished praying in a certain place, that one of his disciples said, “Lord, teach us to pray just as John taught his disciples.”

(3) If an old participant is referred to by name or a noun phrase, and people wonder if this is another new participant, try using a pronoun instead. If a pronoun is not needed because people would understand it clearly from the context, then leave out the pronoun.

> Joseph’s master took Joseph and put him in prison, in the place where all the king’s prisoners were put, and Joseph stayed there. (Genesis 39:20) — Since Joseph is the main person in the story, some languages might prefer the pronoun.
>
> > Joseph’s master took **him** and put **him** in prison, in the place where all the king’s prisoners were put, and **he** stayed there in the prison.

Numbers References:

Numbers 21:1 Numbers 21:33 Numbers 22:2
Numbers 22:5 Numbers 22:8 Numbers 22:22
Numbers 25:6 Numbers 25:6 Numbers 25:7
Numbers 26:33 Numbers 27:1 Numbers 32:33

Poetry

Description

Poetry is one of the ways that people use the words and sounds of their language to make their speech and writing more beautiful and to express strong emotion. Through poetry, people can communicate deeper emotion than they can through simple non-poetic forms. Poetry gives more weight and elegance to statements of truth, such as proverbs, and is also easier to remember than ordinary speech.

In poetry we commonly find:

- many figures of speech such as Apostrophe
- arrangements of clauses into particular patterns such as:
  - parallel lines (See Parallelism)
  - acrostics (beginning lines with successive letters of the alphabet)
  - chiasms (in which the first line relates to the last line, the second to the next-to-last line, etc.):

> You should not give what is holy to the dogs,
>
> > and should not throw your pearls in front of the pigs.
> >
> > Otherwise they will trample them under their feet,
>
> and having turned, they might tear you to pieces. (Matt 7:6 ULT)

- repetition of some or all of a line:

> Praise him, all his angels; praise him, all his hosts. Praise him, sun and moon; praise him, all you shining stars. (Psalm 148:2-3 ULT)

- lines of similar length:

> Listen to my call to you,
>
> Yahweh; think about my groanings.
>
> Listen to the sound of my call, my King and my God,
>
> for it is to you that I pray. (Psalm 5:1-2 ULT)

- the same sound used at the end or at the beginning of two or more lines:

> "Twinkle, twinkle little **star**. How I wonder what you **are**." (from an English rhyme)

- the same sound repeated many times:

> "Peter, Peter, pumpkin eater" (from an English rhyme)

- The same root word used as both a verb and as a noun:

> Your old men will **dream dreams** (Joel 2:28 ULT)

> Yahweh,…**light lightning** and scatter them (Psalm 144:5-6 ULT)

We also find:

- old words and expressions
- dramatic imagery
- different use of grammar — including:
  - incomplete sentences
  - lack of connective words

Some places to look for poetry in your language

1. Songs, particularly old songs or songs used in children's games
2. Religious ceremony or chants of priests or witch doctors
3. Prayers, blessings, and curses
4. Old legends

Elegant or fancy speech

Elegant or fancy speech is similar to poetry in that it uses beautiful language, but it does not use all of the language's features of poetry, and it does not use them as much as poetry does. Popular speakers in the language often use elegant speech, and this is probably the easiest source of text to study to find out what makes speech elegant in your language.

Reasons This Is a Translation Issue:

- Different languages use poetry for different things. If a poetic form would not communicate the same meaning in your language, you may need to write it without the poetry.
- Different languages use different poetic devices. A poetic device that conveys elegance or emotion in a biblical language may be confusing or misunderstood in another language.
- In some languages, using poetry for a particular part of the Bible would make it much more powerful.

Examples From the Bible

The Bible uses poetry for songs, teaching, and prophecy. Almost all of the books of the Old Testament have poetry in them and many of the books are completely made up of poetry.

> … for you saw my affliction; you knew the distress of my soul. (Psalm 31:7b ULT)

This example of Parallelism has two lines that mean the same thing.

> Yahweh, judge the nations; vindicate me, Yahweh, because I am righteous and innocent, Most High. (Psalm 7:8 ULT)

This example of parallelism shows the contrast between what David wants God to do to him and what he wants God to do to the unrighteous nations. (See Parallelism.)

> Keep your servant also from arrogant sins; let them not rule over me. (Psalm 19:13a ULT)

This example of personification speaks of sins as if they could rule over a person. (See Personification.)

> Oh, give thanks to Yahweh; for he is good,
>
> for his covenant faithfulness endures forever.
>
> Oh, give thanks to the God of gods,
>
> for his covenant faithfulness endures forever.
>
> Oh, give thanks to the Lord of lords,
>
> for his covenant faithfulness endures forever.

(Psalm 136:1-3 ULT)

This example repeats the phrases "give thanks" and "his covenant faithfulness endures forever."

Translation Strategies

If the style of poetry that is used in the source text would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider using it. If not, here are some other ways of translating it.

(1) Translate the poetry using one of your styles of poetry.
(2) Translate the poetry using your style of elegant speech.
(3) Translate the poetry using your style of ordinary speech.

If you use poetry it may be more beautiful.

If you use ordinary speech it may be more clear.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

> Blessed is the man who does not walk in the advice of the wicked, or stand in the pathway with sinners, or sit in the assembly of mockers. But his delight is in the law of Yahweh, and on his law he meditates day and night. (Psalm 1:1-2 ULT)

The following are examples of how people might translate Psalm 1:1-2.

(1) Translate the poetry using one of your styles of poetry. (The style in this example has words that sound similar at the end of each line.)

> "Happy is the person not encouraged **to sin**, Disrespect for God he will not **begin**, To those who laugh at God he is **no kin.** God is his constant **delight**, He does what God says **is right**, He thinks of it all day **and night**."

(2) Translate the poetry using your style of elegant speech.

> This is the kind of person who is truly blessed: the one who does not follow the advice of wicked people nor stop along the road to speak with sinners nor join the gathering of those who mock God. Rather, he takes great joy in Yahweh's law, and he meditates on it day and night.

(3) Translate the poetry using your style of ordinary speech.

> The people who do not listen to the advice of bad people are really happy. They do not spend time with people who continually do evil things or join with those who do not respect God. Instead, they love to obey Yahweh's law, and they think about it all the time.

Numbers References:

Numbers 1:53 Numbers 3:7 Numbers 3:8
Numbers 4:23 Numbers 4:23 Numbers 4:30
Numbers 4:47 Numbers 5:6 Numbers 5:12
Numbers 5:27 Numbers 5:28 Numbers 6:2
Numbers 6:9 Numbers 6:14 Numbers 6:21
Numbers 7:5 Numbers 7:10 Numbers 7:11
Numbers 7:12 Numbers 7:19 Numbers 8:11
Numbers 8:11 Numbers 8:13 Numbers 8:19
Numbers 8:19 Numbers 8:22 Numbers 8:24
Numbers 8:26 Numbers 9:7 Numbers 9:13
Numbers 9:19 Numbers 9:23 Numbers 10:7
Numbers 10:9 Numbers 11:4 Numbers 11:33
Numbers 14:15 Numbers 14:27 Numbers 16:9
Numbers 16:30 Numbers 17:5 Numbers 21:1
Numbers 21:2 Numbers 23:10 Numbers 30:2
Numbers 31:2

Politeness

Description

People say certain things, or say things in a certain way, in order to communicate that they respect the people to whom they are speaking. We can refer to this as speaking politely. The ways of speaking politely are generally agreed on by those who share a culture. People also use polite ways of speaking to avoid offending others. This can be especially important if the person being addressed has an influential or powerful position.

Reasons This Is a Translation Issue:

Every language has ways to communicate politeness to other speakers of that language, but different languages do not communicate politeness in the same ways. A phrase that is polite in one language may be offensive in another language, or it may simply be confusing. Translators need to recognize politeness in the Bible and communicate the same polite meaning using the appropriate form of politeness in the target language.

Examples From the Bible

> **do not trouble yourself** (Luke 7:6 ULT)

The centurion sent friends to give Jesus this polite message that Jesus should not come to his house.

> **I ask you, have me excused** (Luke 14:18 ULT)

In this culture, this was a polite formula for declining a social invitation.

> **May I find favor in your eyes, my lord**, since you have comforted me, and since you have spoken to the heart of **your female servant**. (Ruth 2:13 ULT)

Ruth uses several phrases of politeness as she talks to Boaz. **May I find favor in your eyes** is an idiomatic phrase that communicates that Boaz is in a high position, **my lord** is an honorific form of address, and she refers to herself humbly as **your female servant** even though she is not actually one of his servants.

> **Please** let **a little** water be brought… Let me also bring **a bit** of bread (Genesis 18:4-5 ULT)

Abraham describes his generosity as something small in order to be polite. This was a way to communicate to his guests that they were not imposing on him at all. Abraham also uses a word translated as "please" to make his request more polite.

> Then he brought him outside and said, "**Please** look at the heavens and count the stars…" (Genesis 15:5)

In the above example, God is speaking to Abram, inviting him to look at the stars. He also uses the word translated as "please." God has no need to be polite, but this communicates respect for Abram.

Honorifics

A specific category of politeness is the way that people address other people who are important, powerful, or worthy of honor in other ways. We can refer to this form of politeness as using honorific language. Honorific language can be in the form of special titles or, in some languages, special forms of the words used.

> to the **most excellent** Governor Felix (Acts 23:26 ULT)

The expression **most excellent** was an honorific title by which people addressed Roman government officials.

> **O king, live forever!** (Daniel 5:10 ULT)

This was the polite and respectful way to address the king before saying anything else to him.

Politeness under other categories

People often use language that is non-standard or figurative to communicate politeness. In these cases, there will be a Translation Note under the category of the figure of speech rather than under the

category of politeness. The Note will discuss the issue of the figurative speech and then also mention that this is being used to be polite. For example, the following verses will have Translation Notes under the categories given rather than under politeness.

Metaphor

> Men, **brothers and fathers**, hear my defense to you now. (Acts 22:1 ULT)

Paul is using the word **brothers** to refer to his fellow Israelites. He is using the word **fathers** to refer either to Jewish leaders who may be present or to Jewish men who are older than he is. In both cases he is speaking respectfully.

Idiom

> **I beg of you**, about whom is the prophet saying this…? (Acts 8:34 ULT)

The Ethiopian official is using an idiomatic expression as a polite way to introduce a request.

Symbolic action

> **And having fallen down**, they worshiped him (Matt 2:11 ULT)

The act of kneeling down before someone showed deep respect for the person.

Speaking of oneself in the third person

> please do not pass by **your servant**. (Gen 18:3 ULT)

Abraham refers to himself as **your servant** here in order to show respect to his guests.

Euphemism

> And having said this, **he fell asleep**. (Acts 7:60 ULT)

Luke is describing the death of Stephen when he says **he fell asleep**. He is using this polite way of referring to something unpleasant to avoid offending his readers.

Other Uses of the Imperative

> **You pray to the Lord for me**, so that nothing of which you have spoken may come upon me. (Acts 8:24 ULT)

The verb **pray** is an imperative, but it communicates a polite request rather than a command.

Rhetorical question

> **Lord, are you not concerned that my sister has left me alone to serve**? (Luke 10:40 ULT)

Martha is complaining that Jesus is allowing Mary to sit listening to him when there is so much work to do. But Martha respects Jesus, so she uses the question form to make her complaint more polite.

Translation Strategies

If the phrase used in the ULT would be natural and be a polite expression in your language, consider using it. If not, use the strategy below.

(1) Use a phrase that would be both natural and polite in your language for this situation.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Use a phrase that would be both natural and polite in your language for this situation.

> **do not trouble yourself** (Luke 7:6 ULT)

I do not want you to go out of your way
or
Please do not bother

> **I ask you, have me excused** (Luke 14:18 ULT)

Please accept my apology for not being able to attend

> **May I find favor in your eyes, my lord**, since you have comforted me, and since you have spoken to the heart of **your female servant**. (Ruth 2:13 ULT)

You are too kind to me, good sir; you have comforted me and you have spoken to my heart **even though I am not worthy of it**.

> Please let **a little** water be brought… Let me also bring **a bit** of bread (Genesis 18:4-5 ULT)

I have **plenty** of water… I also have **plenty** of food

> "**Please** look at the heavens and count the stars…" (Genesis 15:5)

"Look up at the heavens, **if you will**, and count the stars…"

> **O king, live forever!** (Daniel 5:10 ULT)

Your majesty, **I wish you well**!

> **I beg of you**, about whom is the prophet saying this…? (Acts 8:34 ULT)

Please tell me, about whom is the prophet saying this…?

> **You pray to the Lord for me**, so that nothing of which you have spoken may come upon me. (Acts 8:24 ULT)

Please pray to the Lord for me so that nothing of which you have spoken may come upon me.
or
I ask you to pray to the Lord for me so that nothing of which you have spoken may come upon me.

> **Lord, are you not concerned that my sister has left me alone to serve**? (Luke 10:40 ULT)

Lord, it seems as if you do not care that my sister has left me alone to serve.

Numbers References:

Numbers 11:28 Numbers 12:11 Numbers 12:11 Numbers 12:13

Pronouns — When to Use Them

Description

When we talk or write, we use pronouns to refer to people or things without always having to repeat the noun or name. Usually, the first time we refer to someone in a story, we use a descriptive phrase or a name. The next time we might refer to that person with a simple noun or by name. After that we might refer to him simply with a pronoun as long as we think that our listeners will be able to understand easily to whom the pronoun refers.

> Now there was **a man from the Pharisees whose name was Nicodemus, a Jewish leader**. **This man** came to Jesus at night. Jesus replied and said to **him** … (John 3:1, 2a, 3a ULT)

In John 3, Nicodemus is first referred to with noun phrases and his name. Then he is referred to with the noun phrase "this man." Then he is referred to with the pronoun "him."

Each language has its rules and exceptions to this usual way of referring to people and things.

- In some languages, the first time something is referred to in a paragraph or chapter, it is referred to with a noun rather than a pronoun.
- The main character is the person whom a story is about. In some languages, after a main character is introduced in a story, he is usually referred to with a pronoun. Some languages have special pronouns that refer only to the main character.
- In some languages, marking on the verb helps people know who the subject is. (See Verbs.) In some of these languages, listeners rely on this marking to help them understand who the subject is. Speakers will use a pronoun, noun phrase, or proper name only when they want either to emphasize or to clarify who the subject is.

Reasons This Is a Translation Issue

- If translators use a pronoun at the wrong time for their language, readers might not know about whom the writer is talking.
- If translators too frequently refer to a main character by name, listeners of some languages might not realize that the person is a main character, or they might think that there is a new character with the same name.
- If translators use pronouns, nouns, or names at the wrong time, people might think that there is some special emphasis on the person or thing to which it refers.

Examples From the Bible

The example below occurs at the beginning of a chapter. In some languages it might not be clear to whom the pronouns refer.

> Then Jesus entered into the synagogue again, and there was a man who had a withered hand. Some people watched **him** closely to see if **he** would heal **him** on the Sabbath so that they might accuse **him**. (Mark 3:1-2 ULT)

In the example below, two men are named in the first sentence. It might not be clear whom "he" in the second sentence refers to.

> Now after some days had passed, **King Agrippa** and Bernice came down to Caesarea to pay their respects to **Festus**. After **he** had been there for many days, Festus presented to the king the things concerning Paul. (Acts 25:13-14)

Jesus is the main character of the book of Matthew, but in the verses below he is referred to four times by name. This may lead speakers of some languages to think that Jesus is not the main character. Or it might lead them to think that there is more than one person named Jesus in this story. Or it might lead them to think that there is some kind of emphasis on him, even though there is no emphasis.

> At that time **Jesus** went on the Sabbath day through the grainfields. **His** disciples were hungry and began to pluck heads of grain and eat them. But when the Pharisees saw that, they said to **Jesus**, "See, your disciples do what is unlawful to do on the Sabbath." But **Jesus** said to them, "Have you never read what David did, when he was hungry, and the men who were with him?" Then **Jesus** left from there and went into their synagogue. (Matthew 12:1-3,9 ULT)

Translation Strategies

(1) If it would not be clear to your readers to whom or to what a pronoun refers, use a name or a noun.
(2) If repeating a noun or name would lead people to think that a main character is not a main character, or that the writer is talking about more than one person with that name, or that there is some kind of emphasis on someone when there is no emphasis, use a pronoun instead.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) If it would not be clear to your readers to whom or to what a pronoun refers, use a name or a noun.

> Again **he** walked into the synagogue, and a man with a withered hand was there. Some Pharisees watched **him** to see if **he** would heal the man on the Sabbath. (Mark 3:1-2)
>
> > Again **Jesus** walked into the synagogue, and a man with a withered hand was there. Some Pharisees watched **Jesus** to see if **he** would heal the man on the Sabbath.

(2) If repeating a noun or name would lead people to think that a main character is not a main character, or that the writer is talking about more than one person with that name, or that there is some kind of emphasis on someone when there is no emphasis, use a pronoun instead.

> At that time **Jesus** went on the Sabbath day through the grainfields. **His** disciples were hungry and began to pluck heads of grain and eat them. But when the Pharisees saw that, they said to **Jesus**, “See, your disciples do what is unlawful to do on the Sabbath.” But **Jesus** said to them, “Have you never read what David did, when he was hungry, and the men who were with him?” Then **Jesus** left from there and went into their synagogue. (Matthew 12:1-3,9 ULT)

This may be translated as:

> At that time **Jesus** went on the Sabbath day through the grainfields. **His** disciples were hungry and began to pluck heads of grain and eat them. But when the Pharisees saw that, they said to **him**, “See, your disciples do what is unlawful to do on the Sabbath.” But **he** said to them, “Have you never read what David did, when he was hungry, and the men who were with him?” Then **he** left from there and went into their synagogue.

Numbers References:

Numbers 1:18 Numbers 2:4 Numbers 2:5 Numbers 2:17 Numbers 2:33 Numbers 3:6 Numbers 3:12 Numbers 3:26 Numbers 3:31 Numbers 3:31 Numbers 3:40 Numbers 4:6 Numbers 4:19 Numbers 4:20 Numbers 4:26 Numbers 4:49 Numbers 4:49 Numbers 5:3 Numbers 5:6 Numbers 5:7 Numbers 5:8 Numbers 5:10 Numbers 5:13 Numbers 6:13 Numbers 6:15 Numbers 6:16 Numbers 6:17 Numbers 6:20 Numbers 6:27 Numbers 7:89 Numbers 7:89 Numbers 8:22 Numbers 9:7 Numbers 9:11 Numbers 9:12 Numbers 10:3 Numbers 10:6 Numbers 10:8 Numbers 10:14 Numbers 10:18 Numbers 10:21 Numbers 11:3 Numbers 11:4 Numbers 11:4 Numbers 11:12 Numbers 11:14 Numbers 11:17 Numbers 11:21 Numbers 11:32 Numbers 11:34 Numbers 12:7 Numbers 13:2 Numbers 13:17 Numbers 13:18 Numbers 13:19 Numbers 13:24 Numbers 13:25 Numbers 13:26 Numbers 13:27 Numbers 13:30 Numbers 13:31 Numbers 14:9 Numbers 14:10 Numbers 14:11 Numbers 14:12 Numbers 14:22 Numbers 14:32 Numbers 14:35 Numbers 14:36 Numbers 14:41 Numbers 15:13 Numbers 15:25 Numbers 15:34 Numbers 16:28 Numbers 16:31 Numbers 16:38 Numbers 16:38 Numbers 16:39 Numbers 16:40 Numbers 16:41 Numbers 18:6 Numbers 18:8 Numbers 18:23 Numbers 18:23 Numbers 19:3 Numbers 19:5 Numbers 19:12 Numbers 19:17 Numbers 19:17 Numbers 19:18 Numbers 19:19 Numbers 19:19 Numbers 20:1 Numbers 20:2 Numbers 20:4 Numbers 20:6 Numbers 20:8 Numbers 20:9 Numbers 20:10 Numbers 20:12 Numbers 20:12 Numbers 20:13 Numbers 20:14 Numbers 20:16 Numbers 20:18 Numbers 20:19 Numbers 20:19 Numbers 20:20 Numbers 20:21 Numbers 20:22 Numbers 20:24 Numbers 20:27 Numbers 20:29 Numbers 21:1 Numbers 21:2 Numbers 21:3 Numbers 21:4 Numbers 21:5 Numbers 21:6 Numbers 21:7 Numbers 21:9 Numbers 21:22 Numbers 21:23 Numbers 21:26 Numbers 21:29 Numbers 21:30 Numbers 21:30 Numbers 21:32 Numbers 21:35 Numbers 22:5 Numbers 22:5 Numbers 22:11 Numbers 22:15 Numbers 22:22 Numbers 22:25 Numbers 22:41 Numbers 23:4 Numbers 23:6 Numbers 23:6 Numbers 23:13 Numbers 23:14 Numbers 23:16 Numbers 23:17 Numbers 23:17 Numbers 23:20 Numbers 23:21 Numbers 23:22 Numbers 24:2 Numbers 24:5 Numbers 24:7 Numbers 24:8 Numbers 24:8 Numbers 24:9 Numbers 24:14 Numbers 24:17 Numbers 24:18 Numbers 24:19 Numbers 24:22 Numbers 24:23 Numbers 24:24 Numbers 25:2 Numbers 25:6 Numbers 25:8 Numbers 25:15 Numbers 25:18

Numbers 26:3 Numbers 26:10 Numbers 26:53 Numbers 26:59 Numbers 26:59 Numbers 27:3 Numbers 27:11 Numbers 27:19 Numbers 27:21 Numbers 28:7 Numbers 28:23 Numbers 28:31 Numbers 29:6 Numbers 29:11 Numbers 29:19 Numbers 29:39 Numbers 31:10 Numbers 31:10 Numbers 31:11 Numbers 31:12 Numbers 31:13 Numbers 31:16 Numbers 32:6 Numbers 32:9 Numbers 32:17 Numbers 32:21 Numbers 32:32 Numbers 32:41 Numbers 33:54 Numbers 34:29 Numbers 35:2 Numbers 35:16 Numbers 35:25 Numbers 35:30

Quotations and Quote Margins

Description

When saying that someone said something, we often tell who spoke, whom they spoke to, and what they said. The information about who spoke and whom they spoke to is called the quote margin. What the person said is the quotation. (This is also called a quote.) In some languages the quote margin may come first, last, or even in between two parts of the quotation.

The quote margins are bolded below.

- **She said**, “The food is ready. Come and eat.”
- “The food is ready. Come and eat,” **she said**.
- “The food is ready,” **she said.** “Come and eat.”

Also in some languages, the quote margin may have more than one verb meaning “said.”

> But his mother **answered** and **said**, “No. Rather, he will be called John.” (Luke 1:60 ULT)

When writing that someone said something, some languages put the quote (what was said) in quotation marks called inverted commas (“ ”). Some languages use other symbols around the quotation, such as these angle quote marks (« »), or something else.

Reasons This Is a Translation Issue

- Translators need to put the quote margin where it is most clear and natural in their language.
- Translators need to decide whether they want the quote margin to have one or two verbs meaning “said.”
- Translators need to decide which marks to use around the quotation.

Examples From the Bible

Quote margin before the quote

> **Then Zechariah said to the angel**, "How will I know this? For I am an old man and my wife is advanced in her days." (Luke 1:18 ULT)

> Then tax collectors also came to be baptized, and **they said to him**, "Teacher, what should we do?" (Luke 3:12 ULT)

> So **he said to them**, "Collect nothing more than what you have been ordered." (Luke 3:13 ULT)

Quote margin after the quote

> Yahweh relented concerning this. "It will not happen," **he said**. (Amos 7:3 ULT)

Quote margin between two parts of the quote

> "I will hide my face from them," **he said,** "and I will see what their end will be; for they are a perverse generation, children who are unfaithful." (Deuteronomy 32:20 ULT)

> For look, days are coming—**this is Yahweh's declaration**—when I will restore the fortunes of my people, Israel and Judah. (Jeremiah 30:3a ULT)

Translation Strategies

(1) Decide where to put the quote margin.
(2) Decide whether to use one or two words meaning "said."

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Decide where to put the quote margin.

> **He said**, "Therefore, those among you who are leaders should go down with us. If there is something wrong with the man, let them accuse him." (Acts 25:5 ULT)

> "Therefore, those who can should go there with us," **he said**. "If there is something wrong with the man, you should accuse him."

> "Therefore, those who can should go there with us. If there is something wrong with the man, you should accuse him," **he said**.

> "Therefore, those who can," **he said**, "should go there with us. If there is something wrong with the man, you should accuse him."

(2) Decide whether to use one or two words meaning "said."

> But his mother **answered and said**, "No. Rather, he will be called John." (Luke 1:60 ULT)

> But his mother **replied**, "No. Rather, he will be called John."

> But his mother **said**, "No. Rather, he will be called John."

> But his mother **answered** like this. "No. Rather, he will be called John," she **said**.

Numbers References:

Numbers 1:1 Numbers 2:1 Numbers 3:5
Numbers 4:1 Numbers 5:1 Numbers 5:12
Numbers 6:1 Numbers 6:2 Numbers 7:4
Numbers 8:1 Numbers 8:2 Numbers 9:1
Numbers 10:1 Numbers 11:12 Numbers 11:13
Numbers 11:27 Numbers 11:28 Numbers
12:13 Numbers 13:1 Numbers 13:27 Numbers
14:7 Numbers 14:15 Numbers 15:1 Numbers
15:2 Numbers 15:18 Numbers 15:38 Numbers
16:5 Numbers 17:1 Numbers 18:1 Numbers
18:8 Numbers 18:20 Numbers 18:25 Numbers
18:25 Numbers 19:1 Numbers 20:3 Numbers
20:14 Numbers 21:2 Numbers 21:5 Numbers
21:7 Numbers 21:14 Numbers 21:16 Numbers
21:17 Numbers 21:21 Numbers 21:27
Numbers 21:34 Numbers 22:5 Numbers 23:12
Numbers 23:26 Numbers 24:3 Numbers 24:10
Numbers 24:15 Numbers 24:20 Numbers
24:21 Numbers 24:23 Numbers 25:10
Numbers 25:16 Numbers 26:1 Numbers 26:4
Numbers 28:1 Numbers 32:2 Numbers 33:51
Numbers 34:1 Numbers 34:2 Numbers 35:9

Appendix: Translation Words

Almighty

Definition:

The term “Almighty” literally means “all-powerful.” In the Bible, this term always refers to God.

- The titles “the Almighty” or “the Almighty One” refer to God and reveal that he has complete power and authority over everything.
- This term is also used to describe God in the titles “Almighty God” and “God Almighty” and “Lord Almighty” and “Lord God Almighty.”

Translation Suggestions:

- This term could also be translated as “All-powerful” or “Completely Powerful One” or “God, who is completely powerful.”
- Ways to translate the phrase “Lord God Almighty” could include “God, the Powerful Ruler” or “Powerful Sovereign God” or “Mighty God who is Master over everything.”

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: God, lord)

Bible References:

- Exodus 6:2-5
- Genesis 17:1
- Genesis 35:11-13
- Job 8:3
- Numbers 24:15-16
- Revelation 1:7-8
- Ruth 1:19-21

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H7706, G38410

Numbers References:

Numbers 24:4 Numbers 24:16

altar

Definition:

An altar was a raised structure on which the Israelites burned animals and grains as offerings to God.

- During Bible times, simple altars were often made by forming a mound of packed-down dirt or by carefully placing large stones to form a stable pile.
- Some special box-shaped altars were made of wood overlaid with metals such as gold, brass, or bronze.
- Other people groups living near the Israelites also built altars to offer sacrifices to their gods.

(See also: altar of incense, false god, grain offering, sacrifice)

Bible References:

- Genesis 8:20
- Genesis 22:9
- James 2:21
- Luke 11:49-51
- Matthew 5:23
- Matthew 23:19

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **3:14** After Noah got off the boat, he built an **altar** and sacrificed some of each kind of animal which could be used for a sacrifice.
- **5:8** When they reached the place of sacrifice, Abraham tied up his son Isaac and laid him on an **altar**.
- **13:9** A priest would kill the animal and burn it on the **altar**.
- **16:6** He (Gideon) built a new altar dedicated to God near where the **altar** to the idol used to be and made a sacrifice to God on it.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0741, H2025, H4056, H4196, G10410, G23790

Numbers References:

Numbers 3:26 Numbers 3:31 Numbers 4:11
Numbers 4:13 Numbers 4:14 Numbers 4:26
Numbers 5:25 Numbers 5:26 Numbers 7:1
Numbers 7:10 Numbers 7:11 Numbers 7:84
Numbers 7:88 Numbers 16:38 Numbers 16:39
Numbers 16:46 Numbers 18:3 Numbers 18:5
Numbers 18:7 Numbers 18:17 Numbers 23:1
Numbers 23:4 Numbers 23:4 Numbers 23:14
Numbers 23:14

amen, truly

Definition:

The term “amen” is a word used to emphasize or call attention to what a person has said. It is often used at the end of a prayer. Sometimes it is translated as “truly.”

- When used at the end of a prayer, “amen” communicates agreement with the prayer or expresses a desire that the prayer be fulfilled.
- In his teaching, Jesus used “amen” to emphasize the truth of what he said. He often followed that by “and I say to you” to introduce another teaching that related to the previous teaching.
- When Jesus uses “amen” this way, some English versions (and the ULT) translate this as “verily” or “truly.”
- Another word meaning “truly” is sometimes translated as “surely” or “certainly” and is also used to emphasize what the speaker is saying.

Translation Suggestions:

- Consider whether the target language has a special word or phrase that is used to emphasize something that has been said.
- When used at the end of a prayer or to confirm something, “amen” could be translated as “let it be so” or “may this happen” or “that is true.”
- When Jesus says, “truly I tell you,” this could also be translated as “Yes, I tell you sincerely” or “That is true, and I also tell you.”
- The phrase “truly, truly I tell you” could be translated as “I tell you this very sincerely” or “I tell you this very earnestly” or “what I am telling you is true.”

(See also: fulfill, true)

Bible References:

- Deuteronomy 27:15
- John 5:19
- Jude 1:24-25
- Matthew 26:33-35
- Philemon 1:23-25
- Revelation 22:20-21

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0543, G02810

Numbers References:

Numbers 5:22 Numbers 22:37

angel, archangel

Definition:

An angel is a powerful spirit being whom God created. Angels exist to serve God by doing whatever he tells them to do. The term "archangel" refers to the angel who rules or leads all the other angels.

- The word "angel" literally means "messenger."
- The term "archangel" literally means "chief messenger." The only angel referred to in the Bible as an "archangel" is Michael.
- In the Bible, angels gave messages to people from God. These messages included instructions about what God wanted the people to do.
- Angels also told people about events that were going to happen in the future or events that had already happened.
- Angels have God's authority as his representatives and sometimes in the Bible they spoke as if God himself was speaking.
- Other ways that angels serve God are by protecting and strengthening people.
- A special phrase, "angel of Yahweh," has more than one possible meaning: (1) It may mean "angel who represents Yahweh" or "messenger who serves Yahweh." (2) It may refer to Yahweh himself, who looked like an angel as he talked to a person. Either one of these meanings would explain the angel's use of "I" as if Yahweh himself was talking.

Translation Suggestions:

- Ways to translate "angel" could include "messenger from God" or "God's heavenly servant" or "God's spirit messenger."
- The term "archangel" could be translated as "chief angel" or "head ruling angel" or "leader of the angels."
- Also consider how these terms are translated in a national language or another local language.
- The phrase "angel of Yahweh" should be translated using the words for "angel" and "Yahweh." This will allow for different interpretations of that phrase. Possible translations could include "angel from Yahweh" or "angel sent by Yahweh" or "Yahweh, who looked like an angel."

(See also: How to Translate Unknowns)

(See also: chief, head, messenger, Michael, ruler, servant)

Bible References:

- 2 Samuel 24:16
- Acts 10:3-6
- Acts 12:23
- Colossians 2:18-19
- Genesis 48:16
- Luke 2:13
- Mark 8:38
- Matthew 13:50
- Revelation 1:20
- Zechariah 1:9

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **2:12** God placed large, powerful **angels** at the entrance to the garden to keep anyone from eating the fruit of the tree of life.
- **22:3** The **angel** responded to Zechariah, "I was sent by God to bring you this good news."
- **23:6** Suddenly, a shining **angel** appeared to them (the shepherds), and they were terrified. The **angel** said, "Do not be afraid, because I have some good news for you."
- **23:7** Suddenly, the skies were filled with **angels** praising God.
- **25:8** Then **angels** came and took care of Jesus.
- **38:12** Jesus was very troubled and his sweat was like drops of blood. God sent an **angel** to strengthen him.
- **38:15** "I could ask the Father for an army of **angels** to defend me."

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0047, H0430, H4397, H4398, H8136, G00320, G07430, G24650

Numbers References:

Numbers 22:22 Numbers 22:23 Numbers 22:24 Numbers 22:25 Numbers 22:26 Numbers 22:27 Numbers 22:32 Numbers 22:34 Numbers 22:35

anoint, anointed, anointing

Definition:

The term “anoint” means to rub or pour oil on a person or object. In biblical times, there were several reasons for anointing someone with oil. Often this was a Symbolic Action, representing God empowering that person with the Holy Spirit for special service to him.

- In the Old Testament, priests, kings, and prophets were anointed with oil to set them apart for special service to God.
- Objects such as altars or the tabernacle were also anointed with oil to show that they were to be used to worship and glorify God.
- In the New Testament, sick people were anointed with oil for their healing.
- Sometimes the oil was mixed with spices, giving it a sweet, perfumed smell.
- The New Testament records two times that Jesus was anointed with perfumed oil by a woman, as an act of worship.
- People prepared dead bodies for burial by anointing them with perfumed oils and spices.
- In the New Testament, receiving the Holy Spirit is described as anointing.
- The titles “Messiah” (Hebrew) and “Christ” (Greek) mean “the Anointed (One).”
- Jesus the Messiah is the one who was chosen and anointed as a Prophet, High Priest, and King.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, the term “anoint” could be translated as “pour/put oil on” or “consecrate by pouring oil on” or “consecrate” or “appoint.”
- Depending on the context, to “be anointed” could be translated as “be consecrated with oil” or “be appointed” or “be consecrated” or “be given the Holy Spirit.”
- A phrase like “the anointed priest,” could be translated as “the priest who was consecrated with oil” or “the priest who was set apart by the pouring on of oil.”

(See also: Christ, consecrate, high priest, King of the Jews, priest, prophet)

Bible References:

- 1 John 2:20
- 1 John 2:27
- 2 Corinthians 1:21
- 1 Samuel 16:2-3
- Acts 4:27-28
- Amos 6:5-6
- Exodus 29:5-7
- James 5:13-15

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0047, H0430, H1101, H1878, H3323, H4397, H4398, H4473, H4886, H4888, H4899, H5480, H8136, G00320, G02180, G07430, G14720, G20250, G34620, G55450, G55480

Numbers References:

Numbers 3:3 Numbers 4:16 Numbers 6:15 Numbers 7:1 Numbers 7:10 Numbers 7:84 Numbers 7:88 Numbers 35:25

appoint, appointed

Definition:

The terms "appoint" and "appointed" refer to choosing someone to fulfill a specific task or role.

- To "be appointed" can also refer to being "chosen" to receive something, as in "appointed to eternal life." That people were "appointed to eternal life" means they were chosen to receive eternal life.
- The phrase "appointed time" refers to God's "chosen time" or "planned time" for something to happen.
- The word "appoint" may also mean to "command" or "assign" someone to do something.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, ways to translate "appoint" could include "choose" or "assign" or "formally choose" or "designate."
- The term "appointed" could be translated as "assigned" or "planned" or "specifically chose."
- The phrase "be appointed" could also be translated as "be chosen."

Bible References:

- 1 Samuel 8:11
- Acts 3:20
- Acts 6:2
- Acts 13:48
- Genesis 41:33-34
- Numbers 3:9-10

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0561, H0977, H2163, H2296, H2706, H2708, H2710, H3198, H3245, H3259, H3677, H3983, H4150, H4151, H4152, H4483, H4487, H4662, H5324, H5344, H5414, H5567, H5975, H6310, H6485, H6565, H6635, H6680, H6923, H6942, H6966, H7760, H7896, G03220, G06060, G12990, G13030, G19350, G25250, G27490, G42870, G42960, G43840, G49290, G50210, G50870

Numbers References:

Numbers 1:50 Numbers 4:19 Numbers 11:17
Numbers 24:21 Numbers 28:2 Numbers 29:39

ark of the covenant, ark of Yahweh, box, Box of the Testimony, Box of the Covenant of Yahweh

Definition:

These terms refer to a special wooden chest, overlaid with gold, that contained the two stone tablets on which the Ten Commandments were written. It also contained Aaron's staff and a jar of manna.

- The term "ark" here could be translated as "box" or "chest" or "container."
- The objects in this chest reminded the Israelites of God's covenant with them.
- The ark of the covenant was located in the "most holy place."
- God's presence was above the ark of the covenant in the most holy place of the tabernacle, where he spoke to Moses on behalf of the Israelites.
- During the time that the ark of the covenant was in the most holy place of the temple, the high priest was the only one who could approach the ark, once a year on the Day of Atonement.
- Many English versions translate the term "covenant decrees" literally as "testimony." This refers to the fact that the Ten Commandments were a testimony or witness to God's covenant with his people. It is also translated as "covenant law."

(See also: ark, covenant, atonement, holy place, testimony)

Bible References:

- 1 Samuel 6:15
- Exodus 25:10-11
- Hebrews 9:5
- Judges 20:27
- Numbers 7:89
- Revelation 11:19

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0727, H1285, H3068

Numbers References:

Numbers 3:31 Numbers 4:5 Numbers 7:89 Numbers 10:33 Numbers 10:35 Numbers 14:44 Numbers 17:10

atonement, atone, atoned

Definition:

The terms “atone” and “atonement” refer to how God provided a sacrifice to pay for people’s sins and to appease his wrath for sin.

- In Old Testament times, God allowed temporary atonement to be made for the sins of the Israelites by the offering of a blood sacrifice, which involved killing an animal.
- As recorded in the New Testament, Christ’s death on the cross is the only true and permanent atonement for sin.
- When Jesus died, he took the punishment that people deserve because of their sin. He paid the atonement price with his sacrificial death.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “atone” could be translated by a word or phrase that means “pay for” or “provide payment for” or “cause someone’s sins to be forgiven” or “make amends for a crime.”
- Ways to translate “atonement” could include “payment” or “sacrifice to pay for sin” or “providing the means of forgiveness.”
- Make sure the translation of this term does not refer to payment of money.

(See also: atonement lid, forgive, propitiation, reconcile, redeem)

Bible References:

- Ezekiel 43:25-27
- Ezekiel 45:18-20
- Leviticus 4:20
- Numbers 5:8
- Numbers 28:22

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H3722, H3725, G26430

Numbers References:

Numbers 5:8 Numbers 6:11 Numbers 8:12 Numbers 8:19 Numbers 8:21 Numbers 15:25 Numbers 15:28 Numbers 15:28 Numbers 16:46 Numbers 16:47 Numbers 25:13 Numbers 28:22 Numbers 28:30 Numbers 29:5 Numbers 29:11 Numbers 31:50

atonement lid

Definition:

The “atonement lid” was a slab of gold that was used to cover the top of the ark of the covenant. In many English translations, it is also referred to as an “atonement cover.”

- The atonement lid was about 115 centimeters in length and 70 centimeters in width.
- Above the atonement lid were two gold cherubim with their wings touching.
- Yahweh said that he would meet with the Israelites above the atonement lid, under the outstretched wings of the cherubim. Only the high priest was permitted to meet with Yahweh in this way, as the representative of the people.
- Sometimes this atonement lid has been referred to as a “mercy seat” because it communicates God’s mercy in coming down to redeem sinful human beings.

Translation Suggestions:

- Other ways to translate this term could include “ark covering where God promises to redeem” or “place where God atones” or “lid of ark where God forgives and restores.”
- Can also mean “place of propitiation.”
- Compare this term with how you translated “atonement,” “propitiation,” and “redemption.”

(See also: ark of the covenant, atonement, cherubim, propitiation, redeem)

Bible References:

- Exodus 25:17
- Exodus 30:6
- Exodus 40:17-20
- Leviticus 16:1-2
- Numbers 7:89

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H3727, G24350

Numbers References:

Numbers 7:89

believe, believer, belief, unbeliever, unbelief

Definition:

The terms “believe” and “believe in” are closely related, but have slightly different meanings:

1. believe

- To believe something is to accept or trust that it is true.
- To believe someone is to acknowledge that what that person has said is true.

2. believe in

- To “believe in” someone means to “trust in” that person. It means to trust that the person is who he says he is, that he always speaks the truth, and that he will do what he has promised to do.
- When a person truly believes in something, he will act in such a way that shows that belief.
- The phrase “have faith in” usually has the same meaning as “believe in.”
- To “believe in Jesus” means to believe that he is the Son of God, that he is God himself who also became human and who died as a sacrifice to pay for our sins. It means to trust him as Savior and live in a way that honors him.

3. believer

In the Bible, the term “believer” refers to someone who believes in and relies on Jesus Christ as Savior.

- The term “believer” literally means “person who believes.”
- The term “Christian” eventually came to be the main title for believers because it indicates that they believe in Christ and obey his teachings.

4. unbelief

The term "unbelief" refers to not believing something or someone.

- In the Bible, "unbelief" refers to not believing in or not trusting in Jesus as one's Savior.
- A person who does not believe in Jesus is called an "unbeliever."

Translation Suggestions:

- To "believe" could be translated as to "know to be true" or "know to be right."
- To "believe in" could be translated as "trust completely" or "trust and obey" or "completely rely on and follow."
- Some translations may prefer to say "believer in Jesus" or "believer in Christ."
- This term could also be translated by a word or phrase that means "person who trusts in Jesus" or "someone who knows Jesus and lives for him."
- Other ways to translate "believer" could be "follower of Jesus" or "person who knows and obeys Jesus."
- The term "believer" is a general term for any believer in Christ, while "disciple" and "apostle" were used more specifically for people who knew Jesus while he was alive. It is best to translate these terms in different ways, in order to keep them distinct.
- Other ways to translate "unbelief" could include "lack of faith" or "not believing."
- The term "unbeliever" could be translated as "person who does not believe in Jesus" or "someone who does not trust in Jesus as Savior."

(See also: believe, apostle, Christian, disciple, faith, trust)

Bible References:

- Genesis 15:6
- Genesis 45:26
- Job 9:16-18
- Habakkuk 1:5-7
- Mark 6:4-6
- Mark 1:14-15
- Luke 9:41
- John 1:12
- Acts 6:5
- Acts 9:42
- Acts 28:23-24
- Romans 3:3
- 1 Corinthians 6:1
- 1 Corinthians 9:5
- 2 Corinthians 6:15
- Hebrews 3:12
- 1 John 3:23

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **3:4** Noah warned the people about the coming flood and told them to turn to God, but they did not **believe** him.
- **4:8** Abram **believed** God's promise. God declared that Abram was righteous because he **believed** God's promise.
- **11:2** God provided a way to save the firstborn of anyone who **believed in** him.
- **11:6** But the Egyptians did not **believe** God or obey his commands.
- **37:5** Jesus replied, "I am the Resurrection and the Life. Whoever **believes in** me will live, even though he dies. Everyone who **believes in** me will never die. Do you **believe** this?"
- **43:1** After Jesus returned to heaven, the disciples stayed in Jerusalem as Jesus had commanded them to do. The **believers** there constantly gathered together to pray.
- **43:3** While the **believers** were all together, suddenly the house where they were was filled with a sound like a strong wind. Then something that looked like flames of fire appeared over the heads of all the **believers**.
- **43:13** Every day, more people became **believers**.
- **46:6** That day many people in Jerusalem started persecuting the followers of Jesus, so the **believers** fled to other places. But in spite of this, they preached about Jesus everywhere they went.
- **46:1** Saul was the young man who guarded the robes of the men who killed Stephen. He did not believe in Jesus, so he persecuted the **believers**.

- **46:9** Some **believers** who fled from the persecution in Jerusalem went far away to the city of Antioch and preached about Jesus.
- **46:9** It was at Antioch that **believers** in Jesus were first called “Christians.”
- **47:14** They also wrote many letters to encourage and teach the **believers** in the churches.

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0539, H0540, G05430, G05440, G05690, G05700, G05710, G39820, G41000, G41020, G41030, G41350

Numbers References:

Numbers 20:12

blasphemy, blaspheme, blasphemous

Definition:

In the Bible, the term “blasphemy” refers to speaking in a way that shows a deep disrespect for God or people. To “blaspheme” someone is to speak against that person so that others think something false or bad about him.

- Most often, to blaspheme God means to slander or insult him by saying things that are not true about him or by behaving in an immoral way that dishonors him.
- It is blasphemy for a human being to claim to be God or to claim that there is a God other than the one true God.
- Some English versions translate this term as “slander” when it refers to blaspheming people.

Translation Suggestions:

- To “blaspheme” can be translated as to “say evil things against” or to “dishonor God” or to “slander.”
- Ways to translate “blasphemy” could include “speaking wrongly about others” or “slander” or “spreading false rumors.”

(See also: dishonor, slander)

Bible References:

- 1 Timothy 1:12-14
- Acts 6:11
- Acts 26:9-11
- James 2:5-7
- John 10:32-33
- Luke 12:10
- Mark 14:64
- Matthew 12:31
- Matthew 26:65
- Psalms 74:10

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1288, H1442, H2778, H5006, H5007, H5344, G09870, G09880, G09890

Numbers References:

Numbers 15:30

bless, blessed, blessing

Definition:

To “bless” someone or something means to cause good and beneficial things to happen to the person or thing that is being blessed.

- Blessing someone also means expressing a desire for positive and beneficial things to happen to that person.
- In Bible times, a father would often pronounce a formal blessing on his children.
- When people “bless” God or express a desire that God be blessed, this means they are praising him.
- The term “bless” is sometimes used for consecrating food before it is eaten, or for thanking and praising God for the food.

Translation Suggestions:

- To “bless” could also be translated as to “provide abundantly for” or to “be very kind and favorable toward.”
- “God has brought great blessing to” could be translated as “God has given many good things to” or “God has provided abundantly for” or “God has caused many good things to happen to”.
- “He is blessed” could be translated as “he will greatly benefit” or “he will experience good things” or “God will cause him to flourish.”
- “Blessed is the person who” could be translated as “How good it is for the person who.”
- Expressions like “blessed be the Lord” could be translated as “May the Lord be praised” or “Praise the Lord” or “I praise the Lord.”
- In the context of blessing food, this could be translated as “thanked God for the food” or “praised God for giving them food” or “consecrated the food by praising God for it.”

(See also: praise)

Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 10:16
- Acts 13:34

- Ephesians 1:3
- Genesis 14:20
- Isaiah 44:3
- James 1:25
- Luke 6:20
- Matthew 26:26
- Nehemiah 9:5
- Romans 4:9

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **1:7** God saw that it was good and he **blessed** them.
- **1:15** God made Adam and Eve in his own image. He **blessed** them and told them, "Have many children and grandchildren and fill the earth."
- **1:16** So God rested from all he had been doing. He **blessed** the seventh day and made it holy, because on this day he rested from his work.
- **4:4** "I will make your name great. I will **bless** those who **bless** you and curse those who curse you. All families on earth will be **blessed** because of you."
- **4:7** Melchizedek **blessed** Abram and said, "May God Most High who owns heaven and earth **bless** Abram."
- **7:3** Isaac wanted to give his **blessing** to Esau.
- **8:5** Even in prison, Joseph remained faithful to God, and God **blessed** him.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0833, H0835, H1288, H1289, H1293, G17570, G21270, G21280, G21290, G31060, G31070, G31080, G60500

Numbers References:

Numbers 6:23 Numbers 6:24 Numbers 6:27 Numbers 22:6 Numbers 22:6 Numbers 22:12 Numbers 23:11 Numbers 23:11 Numbers 23:20 Numbers 23:20 Numbers 23:25 Numbers 23:25 Numbers 24:1 Numbers 24:9 Numbers 24:9 Numbers 24:10 Numbers 24:10

bind, bond, bound

Definition:

The term "bind" means to tie something or fasten it securely. Something that is tied or joined together is called a "bond." The term "bound" is the past tense of this term.

- To be "bound" means to have something tied or wrapped around something else.
- In a figurative sense, a person can be "bound" to a vow, which means he is "required to fulfill" what he promised to do.
- The term "bonds" refers to anything that binds, confines, or imprisons someone. It usually refers to physical chains, fetters or ropes that keep a person from being free to move.
- In Bible times, bonds such as ropes or chains were used to attach prisoners to the wall or floor of a stone prison.
- The term "bind" can also be used to talk about wrapping cloth around a wound to help it heal.
- A dead person would be "bound" with cloth in preparation for burial.
- The term "bond" is used figuratively to refer to something, such as sin, that controls or enslaves someone.
- A bond can also be a close relationship between people in which they support each other emotionally, spiritually and physically. This applies to the bond of marriage.
- For example, a husband and wife are "bound" or tied to each other. It is a bond that God does not want broken.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term "bind" could also be translated as "tie" or "tie up" or "wrap (around)."
- Figuratively, it could be translated as to "restrain" or to "prevent" or to "keep from (something)."
- A special use of "bind" in Matthew 16 and 18 means "forbid" or "not permit."
- The term "bonds" could be translated as "chains" or "ropes" or "shackles."

- Figuratively the term “bond” could be translated as “knot” or “connection” or “close relationship.”
- The phrase “bond of peace” means “being in harmony, which brings people in closer relationship to each other” or “the tying together that peace brings.”
- To “bind up” could be translated as “wrap around” or “put a bandage on.”
- To “bind” oneself with a vow could be translated as “promise to fulfill a vow” or “commit to fulfill a vow.”
- Depending on the context, the term “bound” could also be translated as “tied” or “tied up” or “chained” or “obligated (to fulfill)” or “required to do.”

(See also: fulfill, peace, prison, servant, vow)

Bible References:

- Leviticus 8:7

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0247, H0481, H0519, H0615, H0631, H0632, H0640, H1366, H1367, H1379, H2280, H2706, H3256, H3533, H3729, H4147, H4148, H4205, H4562, H5650, H5656, H5659, H6029, H6123, H6616, H6696, H6872, H6887, H7194, H7405, H7573, H7576, H8198, H8244, H8379, G02540, G03310, G03320, G11950, G11960, G11980, G11990, G12100, G13970, G13980, G14010, G14020, G26110, G26150, G37340, G37840, G38140, G40190, G40290, G43850, G48860, G48870, G52650

Numbers References:

Numbers 30:4 Numbers 30:4 Numbers 30:4 Numbers 30:4 Numbers 30:5 Numbers 30:5 Numbers 30:6 Numbers 30:8 Numbers 30:9 Numbers 30:10 Numbers 30:10 Numbers 30:11 Numbers 30:11 Numbers 30:12 Numbers 30:13 Numbers 30:14

call, called, call out, called out

Definition:

The terms “call” and “call out,” in this sense, mean to speak loudly.

- To “call out” to someone means to shout, to announce, or to proclaim. It can also mean to ask someone for help, especially God.
- In some contexts the terms “call” and “call out” mean to loudly ask for help.

Translation Suggestions:

- The expression “call out to you” could be translated as “ask you for help” or “pray to you urgently.”
- To “call out” could be translated as “say loudly” or “shout” or “say with a loud voice.” Make sure the translation of this does not sound like the person is angry.

(See also: pray, cry, call to summon, call name)

Bible References:

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0559, H2199, H4744, H6817, H7121, H7123, H7769, H7773, G01540, G03630, G14580, G15280, G19410, G19510, G20280, G20460, G25640, G28210, G28220, G28400, G29190, G30040, G31060, G33330, G33430, G36030, G36860, G36870, G43160, G43410, G43770, G47790, G48670, G54550, G55370, G55810

Numbers References:

Numbers 24:10

call, called

Definition:

The terms “call” and “called,” in this sense, mean to name a place, person, or being. When referring to a person or thing the terms “call” and “called” can refer either to initially giving someone or something a name for the first time or to saying that thing or persons pre-existing name or title.

- The Bible sometimes uses these terms in the context of naming someone. For example, “His name is called John,” means “He is named John” or “His name is John.”
- To be “called by the name of” means that someone is given the name of someone else. God says that he has called his people by his name.

Translation Suggestions:

- “You must call his name” can also be translated as “you must name him.”
- “His name is called” could also be translated as “his name is” or “he is named.”
- The expression “you are called by my name” could be translated as “I have given you my name, showing that you belong to me.”
- You could translates Jesus’ words “You call me ‘Teacher’ and ‘Lord,’” as “You address me as ‘Teacher’ and ‘Lord,’” or something similar to show that the word “call” in this context means to “address” someone by a specific name or title.

(See also: call to summon)

Bible References:

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H7121, G25640, G30040, G55810

Numbers References:

Numbers 11:3 Numbers 11:34 Numbers 13:24 Numbers 21:3 Numbers 32:38 Numbers 32:41 Numbers 32:42

call, called

Definition:

The term “call,” in this sense, means to summon a person or being.

- Often in the Bible, “call” has a meaning of “summon” or “command to come” or “request to come.”
- Depending on context the phrase “call upon” can be translated as “summon” or “request help from” or “request to come.”
- God calls people to come to him and be his people. This is their “calling.”
- When God “calls” people, it means that God has appointed or chosen people to be his children, to be his servants and proclaimers of his message of salvation through Jesus.
- The expression, “I have called you by name” means that God has specifically chosen that person.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “call” could be translated by a word that means “summon,” which includes the idea of being intentional or purposeful in calling.
- When the Bible says that God has “called” us to be his servants, this could be translated as “specially chose us” or “appointed us” to be his servants.
- The expression “your calling” could be translated as “your purpose” or “God’s purpose for you” or “God’s special work for you.”
- When God says, “I have called you by name,” this could be translated as “I know you and have chosen you.”
- To “call on the name of the Lord” could be translated as “seek the Lord and depend on him” or “trust in the Lord and obey him.”
- To “call for” something could be translated by “demand” or “ask for” or “command.”

(See also: call to speak loudly, call name)

Bible References:

Word Data:

- Strong's: H7121, G25640, G28210, G43410, G47790, G54550

Numbers References:

Numbers 1:16 Numbers 16:2 Numbers 16:12 Numbers 22:37 Numbers 25:2 Numbers 26:9

confess, confession

Definition:

To confess means to admit or assert that something is true. A "confession" is a statement or admission that something is true.

- The term "confess" can refer to boldly stating the truth about God. It can also refer to admitting that we have sinned.
- The Bible says that if people confess their sins to God, he will forgive them.
- James the apostle wrote in his letter that when believers confess their sins to each other, this brings spiritual healing.
- The apostle Paul wrote to the Philippians that someday everyone will confess or declare that Jesus is Lord.
- Paul also said that if people confess that Jesus is Lord and believe that God raised him from the dead, they will be saved.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, ways to translate "confess" could include, "admit" or "testify" or "declare" or "acknowledge" or "affirm."
- Different ways to translate "confession" could be, "declaration" or "testimony" or "statement about what we believe" or "admitting sin."

(See also: faith, testimony)

Bible References:

- 1 John 1:8-10
- 2 John 1:7-8
- James 5:16
- Leviticus 5:5-6
- Matthew 3:4-6
- Nehemiah 1:6-7
- Philippians 2:9-11
- Psalms 38:17-18

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3034, H8426, G18430, G36700, G36710

Numbers References:

Numbers 5:7

consecrate, consecrated, consecration

Definition:

To consecrate means to dedicate something or someone to serve God. The person or object that is consecrated is considered holy and set apart for God.

- The meaning of this term is similar to "sanctify" or to "make holy," but with the added meaning of formally setting apart someone for service to God.
- Things that were consecrated to God included animals to be sacrificed, the altar of burnt offering, and the tabernacle.
- People who were consecrated to God included the priests, the people of Israel, and the oldest male child.
- Sometimes the word "consecrate" has a meaning that is similar to "purify," especially when it pertains to preparing people or things for God's service so that they will be cleansed and acceptable to him.

Translation Suggestions:

- Ways to translate "consecrate" could include, "set apart for God's service" or "purify for service to God."
- Also consider how the terms "holy" and "sanctify" are translated.

(See also: holy, pure, sanctify)

Bible References:

- 1 Timothy 4:3-5
- 2 Chronicles 13:8-9
- Ezekiel 44:19

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2763, H3027, H4390, H4394, H5144, H5145, H6942, H6944, G14570, G50480

Numbers References:

Numbers 3:13 Numbers 6:11 Numbers 7:1 Numbers 8:17 Numbers 11:18 Numbers 20:12 Numbers 27:14

covenant

Definition:

In the Bible, the term "covenant" refers to a formal, binding agreement between two parties that one or both parties must fulfill.

- This agreement can be between individuals, between groups of people, or between God and people.
- When people make a covenant with each other, they promise that they will do something, and they must do it.
- Examples of human covenants include marriage covenants, business agreements, and treaties between countries.
- Throughout the Bible, God made several different covenants with his people.
- In some of the covenants, God promised to fulfill his part without conditions. For example, when God established his covenant with mankind promising to never destroy the earth again with a worldwide flood, this promise had no conditions for people to fulfill.
- In other covenants, God promised to fulfill his part only if the people obeyed him and fulfilled their part of the covenant.

The term "new covenant" refers to the commitment or agreement God made with his people through the sacrifice of his Son, Jesus.

- God's "new covenant" was explained in the part of the Bible called the "New Testament."
- This new covenant is in contrast to the "old" or "former" covenant that God had made with the Israelites in Old Testament times.
- The new covenant is better than the old one because it is based on the sacrifice of Jesus, which completely atoned for people's sins forever. The sacrifices made under the old covenant did not do this.
- God writes the new covenant on the hearts those who become believers in Jesus. This causes them to want to obey God and to begin to live holy lives.
- The new covenant will be completely fulfilled in the end times when God establishes his reign on earth. Everything will once again be very good, as it was when God first created the world.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, ways to translate this term could include, "binding agreement" or "formal commitment" or "pledge" or "contract."
- Some languages may have different words for covenant depending on whether one party or both parties have made a promise they must keep. If the covenant is one-sided, it could be translated as "promise" or "pledge."
- Make sure the translation of this term does not sound like people proposed the covenant. In all cases of covenants between God and people, it was God who initiated the covenant.
- The term "new covenant" could be translated as "new formal agreement" or "new pact" or "new contract."
- The word "new" in these expressions has the meaning of "fresh" or "new kind of" or "another."

(See also: covenant, promise)

Bible References:

- Genesis 9:12
- Genesis 17:7
- Genesis 31:44
- Exodus 34:10-11
- Joshua 24:24-26
- 2 Samuel 23:5
- 2 Kings 18:11-12
- Mark 14:24
- Luke 1:73
- Luke 22:20
- Acts 7:8
- 1 Corinthians 11:25-26
- 2 Corinthians 3:6
- Galatians 3:17-18
- Hebrews 12:24

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **4:9** Then God made a **covenant** with Abram. A **covenant** is an agreement between two parties.
- **5:4** “I will make Ishmael a great nation, too, but my **covenant** will be with Isaac.”
- **6:4** After a long time, Abraham died and all of the promises that God had made to him in the **covenant** were passed on to Isaac.
- **7:10** “The **covenant** promises God had promised to Abraham and then to Isaac now passed on to Jacob.”
- **13:2** God said to Moses and the people of Israel, “If you will obey my voice and keep my **covenant**, you will be my prized possession, a kingdom of priests, and a holy nation.”
- **13:4** Then God gave them the **covenant** and said, “I am Yahweh, your God, who saved you from slavery in Egypt. Do not worship other gods.”
- **15:13** Then Joshua reminded the people of their obligation to obey the **covenant** that God had made with the Israelites at Sinai.
- **21:5** Through the prophet Jeremiah, God promised that he would make a **New Covenant**, but not like the covenant God made with Israel at Sinai. In the **New Covenant**, God would write his law on the people’s hearts, the people would know God personally, they would be his people, and God would forgive their sins. The Messiah would start the **New Covenant**.
- **21:14** Through the Messiah’s death and resurrection, God would accomplish his plan to save sinners and start the **New Covenant**.
- **38:5** Then Jesus took a cup and said, “Drink this. It is my blood of the **New Covenant** that is poured out for the forgiveness of sins. Do this to remember me every time you drink it.”
- **48:11** But God has now made a **New Covenant** that is available to everyone. Because of this **New Covenant**, anyone from any people group can become part of God’s people by believing in Jesus.

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1285, H2319, H3772, G08020, G12420, G49340

Numbers References:

Numbers 18:19 Numbers 25:12 Numbers 25:13

covenant faithfulness, covenant loyalty, covenant love

Definition:

In biblical times, the term translated as "covenant faithfulness" was used to describe the kind of faithfulness, loyalty, kindness, and love that was both expected and demonstrated between people who were closely related to one another, either by marriage or by blood. This same term is used often in the Bible to describe the way God relates to his people, especially his commitment to fulfill the promises that he made to them.

- The way this term is translated can depend on how each of the individual terms "covenant" and "faithfulness" are translated.
- Other ways to translate this term might include: "faithful love;" "loyal, committed love;" or "loving dependability."

(See also: covenant, faithful, grace, Israel, people of God, promise)

Bible References:

- Ezra 3:11
- Numbers 14:18

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2617

Numbers References:

Numbers 14:18 Numbers 14:19

curse, cursed, cursing

Definition:

The term "curse" means to cause negative things to happen to the person or thing that is being cursed.

- A curse can be a statement that harm will happen to someone or something.
- To curse someone can also be an expression of desire that bad things will happen to them.
- It can also refer to the punishment or other negative things that someone causes to happen to someone.

Translation Suggestions:

- This term could be translated as "cause bad things to happen to" or "declare that something bad will happen to" or "swear to cause evil things to happen to."
- In the context of God sending curses on his disobedient people, it could be translated as "punish by allowing bad things to happen."
- The term "cursed" when used to describe people could be translated as "(this person) will experience much trouble."
- The phrase "cursed be" could be translated as "May (this person) experience great difficulties."
- The phrase, "Cursed is the ground" could be translated as "The soil will not be very fertile."
- However, if the target language has the phrase "cursed be" and it has the same meaning, then it is good to keep the same phrase.

(See also: bless)

Bible References:

- 1 Samuel 14:24-26
- 2 Peter 2:12-14
- Galatians 3:10
- Galatians 3:14
- Genesis 3:14
- Genesis 3:17
- James 3:10
- Numbers 22:6
- Psalms 109:28

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **2:9** God said to the snake, “You are **cursed**!”
- **2:11** “Now the ground is **cursed**, and you will need to work hard to grow food.”
- **4:4** “I will bless those who bless you and **curse** those who **curse** you.”
- **39:7** Then Peter vowed, saying, “May God **curse** me if I know this man!”
- **50:16** Because Adam and Eve disobeyed God and brought sin into this world, God **cursed** it and decided to destroy it.

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0422, H0423, H0779, H1288, H2763, H2764, H3994, H5344, H6895, H7043, H7045, H7621, H8381, G03310, G03320, G06850, G19440, G25510, G26520, G26530, G26710, G26720, G60350

Numbers References:

Numbers 5:18 Numbers 5:19 Numbers 5:21 Numbers 5:22 Numbers 5:23 Numbers 5:24 Numbers 5:27 Numbers 22:6 Numbers 22:6 Numbers 22:6 Numbers 22:11 Numbers 22:12 Numbers 22:17 Numbers 23:7 Numbers 23:11 Numbers 23:13 Numbers 23:25 Numbers 23:25 Numbers 23:27 Numbers 24:9 Numbers 24:9 Numbers 24:10

dominion

Definition:

The term “dominion” refers to power, control, or authority over people, animals, or land.

- Jesus Christ is said to have dominion over all the earth, as prophet, priest, and king.
- Satan’s dominion has been defeated forever by Jesus Christ’s death on the cross.
- At creation, God said that man is to have dominion over fish, birds, and all creatures on the earth.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, other ways to translate this term could include “authority” or “power” or “control.”
- The phrase “have dominion over” could be translated as “rule over” or “manage.”

(See also: authority, power)

Bible References:

- 1 Peter 5:10-11
- Colossians 1:13
- Jude 1:25

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1166, H4474, H4475, H4896, H4910, H4915, H7287, H7300, H7980, H7985, G26340, G29040, G29610, G29630

Numbers References:

Numbers 24:19

chosen, choose, chosen people, Chosen One, elect

Definition:

The term “the elect” literally means “chosen ones” or “chosen people” and refers to those whom God has appointed or selected to be his people. “Chosen One” or “Chosen One of God” is a title that refers to Jesus, who is the chosen Messiah.

- The term “choose” means to select something or someone or to decide something. It is often used to refer to God appointing people to belong to him and to serve him.
- To be “chosen” means to be “selected” or “appointed” to be or do something.
- God chose people to be holy, to be set apart by him for the purpose of bearing good spiritual fruit. That is why they are called “the chosen (ones)” or “the elect.”
- The term “chosen one” is sometimes used in the Bible to refer to certain people such as Moses and King David whom God had appointed as leaders over his people. It is also used to refer to the nation of Israel as God’s chosen people.
- The phrase “the elect” is an older term that literally means “the chosen ones” or “the chosen people.” This phrase in the original language is plural when referring to believers in Christ.
- In older English Bible versions, the term “elect” is used in both the Old and New Testaments to translate the word for “chosen one(s).” More modern versions use “elect” only in the New Testament, to refer to people who have been saved by God through faith in Jesus. Elsewhere in the Bible text, they translate this word more literally as “chosen ones.”

Translation Suggestions:

- It is best to translate “elect” with a word or phrase that means “chosen ones” or “chosen people.” This could also be translated as “people whom God chose” or “the ones God appointed to be his people.”
- The phrase “who were chosen” could also be translated as “who were appointed” or “who were selected” or “whom God chose.”
- “I chose you” could be translated as “I appointed you” or “I selected you.”
- In reference to Jesus, “Chosen One” could also be translated as “God’s chosen One” or “God’s specially appointed Messiah” or “the One God appointed (to save people).”

(See also: appoint, Christ)

Bible References:

- 2 John 1:1
- Colossians 3:12
- Ephesians 1:3-4
- Isaiah 65:22-23
- Luke 18:7
- Matthew 24:19-22
- Romans 8:33

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0970, H0972, H0977, H1262, H1305, H4005, H6901, G01380, G01400, G15860, G15880, G15890, G19510, G37240, G44000, G44010, G47580, G48990, G55000

Numbers References:

Numbers 16:5 Numbers 17:5

eternity, everlasting, eternal, forever

Definition:

The terms “everlasting” and “eternal” have very similar meanings and refer to something that will always exist or that lasts forever.

- The term “eternity” refers to a state of being that has no beginning or end. It can also refer to life that never ends.
- After this present life on earth, humans will spend eternity either in heaven with God or in hell apart from God.
- The terms “eternal life” and “everlasting life” are used in the New Testament to refer to living forever with God in heaven.

The term “forever” refers to never-ending time.

- The phrase “forever and ever” has the idea of time that never ends and expresses what eternity or eternal life is like. It emphasizes that something will always happen or exist. It refers to time that never ends.
- God said that David’s throne would last “forever.” This is referred to the fact that David’s descendant Jesus will reign as king forever.

Translation Suggestions:

- Other ways to translate “eternal” or “everlasting” could include “unending” or “never stopping” or “always continuing.”

- The terms “eternal life” and “everlasting life” could also be translated as “life that never ends” or “life that continues without stopping” or “the raising up of our bodies to live forever.”

- Depending on the context, different ways to translate “eternity” could include “existing outside of time” or “unending life” or “life in heaven.”

- Also consider how this word is translated in a Bible translation in a local or national language. (See: How to Translate Unknowns)

- “Forever” could also be translated by “always” or “never ending.”

- The phrase “will last forever” could also be translated as “always exist” or “will never stop” or “will always continue.”

- The emphatic phrase “forever and ever” could also be translated as “for always and always” or “not ever ending” or “which never, ever ends.”

- David’s throne lasting forever could be translated as “David’s descendant will reign forever” or “a descendant of David will always be reigning.”

(See also: David, reign, life)

Bible References:

- Genesis 17:8
- Genesis 48:4
- Exodus 15:17
- 2 Samuel 3:28-30
- 1 Kings 2:32-33
- Job 4:20-21
- Psalms 21:4
- Isaiah 9:6-7
- Isaiah 40:27-28
- Daniel 7:18
- Luke 18:18
- Acts 13:46
- Romans 5:21
- Hebrews 6:19-20
- Hebrews 10:11-14
- 1 John 1:2
- 1 John 5:12
- Revelation 1:4-6
- Revelation 22:3-5

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **27:1** One day, an expert in the Jewish law came to Jesus to test him, saying, “Teacher, what must I do to inherit **eternal life**?”
- **28:1** One day, a rich young ruler came up to Jesus and asked him, “Good Teacher, what must I do to have **eternal life**?” Jesus said to him, “Why do you ask me about what is good? There is only One who is good, and that is God. But if you want to have **eternal life**, obey God’s laws.”

- **28:10** Jesus answered, “Everyone who has left houses, brothers, sisters, father, mother, children, or property for my name’s sake, will receive 100 times more and will also receive **eternal life**.”

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H3117, H4481, H5331, H5703, H5705, H5769, H5865, H5957, H6924, G01260, G01650, G01660, G13360

Numbers References:

Numbers 10:8 Numbers 15:15 Numbers 18:8 Numbers 18:8 Numbers 18:11 Numbers 18:19 Numbers 18:23 Numbers 19:10 Numbers 19:21 Numbers 25:13

evil, wicked, wickedness, unpleasant

Definition:

In the Bible, the term “evil” can refer either to the concept of moral wickedness or emotional unpleasantness. The context will usually make it clear which meaning is intended in the specific instance of the term.

- While “evil” may describe a person’s character, “wicked” may refer more to a person’s behavior. However, both terms are very similar in meaning.
- The term “wickedness” refers to the state of being that exists when people do wicked things.
- The results of evil are clearly shown in how people mistreat others by killing, stealing, slandering and being cruel and unkind.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, the terms “evil” and “wicked” can be translated as “bad” or “sinful” or “immoral.”
- Other ways to translate these could include “not good” or “not righteous” or “not moral.”
- Make sure the words or phrases that are used to translate these terms fit the context that is natural in the target language.

(See also: disobey, sin, good, righteous, demon)

Bible References:

- 1 Samuel 24:11
- 1 Timothy 6:10
- 3 John 1:10
- Genesis 2:17
- Genesis 6:5-6
- Job 1:1
- Job 8:20
- Judges 9:57
- Luke 6:22-23
- Matthew 7:11-12
- Proverbs 3:7
- Psalms 22:16-17

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **2:4** "God just knows that as soon as you eat it, you will be like God and will understand good and **evil** like he does."
- **3:1** After a long time, many people were living in the world. They had become very **wicked** and violent.
- **3:2** But Noah found favor with God. He was a righteous man living among **wicked** people.
- **4:2** God saw that if they all kept working together to do **evil**, they could do many more sinful things.
- **8:12** "You tried to do **evil** when you sold me as a slave, but God used the **evil** for good!"
- **14:2** They (Canaanites) worshiped false gods and did many **evil** things.
- **17:1** But then he (Saul) became a **wicked** man who did not obey God, so God chose a different man who would one day be king in his place.
- **18:11** In the new kingdom of Israel, all the kings were **evil**.
- **29:8** The king was so angry that he threw the **wicked** servant into prison until he could pay back all of his debt.
- **45:2** They said, "We heard him (Stephen) speak **evil** things about Moses and God!"
- **50:17** He (Jesus) will wipe away every tear and there will be no more suffering, sadness, crying, **evil**, pain, or death.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0205, H0605, H1100, H1681, H1942, H2154, H2162, H2254, H2617, H3399, H3415, H4209, H4849, H5753, H5766, H5767, H5999, H6001, H6090, H7451, H7455, H7489, H7561, H7562, H7563, H7564, G00920, G01130, G04590, G09320, G09870, G09880, G14260, G25490, G25510, G25540, G25550, G25560, G25570, G25590, G25600, G26350, G26360, G41510, G41890, G41900, G41910, G53370

Numbers References:

Numbers 11:1 Numbers 11:10 Numbers 11:11 Numbers 11:15 Numbers 13:19 Numbers 14:27 Numbers 14:35 Numbers 14:37 Numbers 16:15 Numbers 16:26 Numbers 20:5 Numbers 20:15 Numbers 22:34 Numbers 24:13 Numbers 32:13 Numbers 35:23 Numbers 35:31

exalt, exalted, exaltation

Definition:

To exalt is to highly praise and honor someone. It can also mean to put someone in a high position.

- In the Bible, the term "exalt" is most often used for exalting God.
- When a person exalts himself, it means he is thinking about himself in a proud or arrogant way.

Translation Suggestions:

- Ways to translate "exalt" could include "highly praise" or "honor greatly" or "extol" or "speak highly of."
- In some contexts it could be translated by a word or phrase that means "put in a higher position" or "give more honor to" or "talk about proudly."
- "Do not exalt yourself" could also be translated as "Do not think of yourself too highly" or "Do not brag about yourself."
- "Those that exalt themselves" could also be translated as "Those who think proudly about themselves" or "Those who boast about themselves."

(See also: praise, worship, glory, boast, proud)

Bible References:

- 1 Peter 5:5-7
- 2 Samuel 22:47
- Acts 5:31
- Philippians 2:9-11
- Psalms 18:46

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1361, H4984, H5375, H5549, H5927, H7311, H7426, H7682, G18690, G52290, G52510, G53110, G53120

Numbers References:

Numbers 24:7 Numbers 31:28

faithful, faithfulness, trustworthy

Definition:

To be "faithful" to God means to consistently live according to God's teachings. It means to be loyal to him by obeying him. The state or condition of being faithful is "faithfulness."

- A person who is faithful can be trusted to always keep his promises and to always fulfill his responsibilities to other people.
- A faithful person perseveres in doing a task, even when it is long and difficult.
- Faithfulness to God is the consistent practice of doing what God wants us to do.

Translation Suggestions:

- In many contexts, "faithful" can be translated as "loyal" or "dedicated" or "dependable."
- In other contexts, "faithful" can be translated by a word or phrase that means "continuing to believe" or "persevering in believing and obeying God."
- Ways that "faithfulness" could be translated could include "persevering in believing" or "loyalty" or "trustworthiness" or "believing and obeying God."

(See also: believe, faith, believe)

Bible References:

- Genesis 24:49
- Leviticus 26:40
- Numbers 12:7
- Joshua 2:14
- Judges 2:16-17
- 1 Samuel 2:9
- Psalm 12:1
- Proverbs 11:12-13
- Isaiah 1:26
- Jeremiah 9:7-9
- Hosea 5:7
- Luke 12:46
- Luke 16:10
- Colossians 1:7
- 1 Thessalonians 5:24
- 3 John 1:5

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **8:5** Even in prison, Joseph remained **faithful** to God, and God blessed him.
- **14:12** Even so, God was still **faithful** to His promises to Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob.
- **15:13** The people promised to remain **faithful** to God and follow his laws.
- **17:9** David ruled with justice and **faithfulness** for many years, and God blessed him. However, toward the end of his life he sinned terribly against God.
- **35:12** "The older son said to his father, 'All these years I have worked **faithfully** for you!'"
- **49:17** But God is **faithful** and says that if you confess your sins, he will forgive you.
- **50:4** "If you remain **faithful** to me to the end, then God will save you."

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0529, H0530, H0539, H0540, H0571, H0898, H2181, H4603, H4604, H4820, G05690, G05710, G41030

Numbers References:

Numbers 12:7 Numbers 14:11

faithless, unfaithful, unfaithfulness

Definition:

The term "faithless" means to not have faith or to not believe.

- This word is used to describe people who do not believe in God. Their lack of belief is seen by the immoral way they act.
- The prophet Jeremiah accused Israel of being faithless and disobedient to God.
- They worshiped idols and followed other ungodly customs of people groups who did not worship or obey God.

The term "unfaithful" describes people who do not do what God has commanded them to do. The condition or practice of being unfaithful is "unfaithfulness."

- The people of Israel were called "unfaithful" when they began to worship idols and when they disobeyed God in other ways.
- In marriage, someone who commits adultery is "unfaithful" to his or her spouse.
- God used the term "unfaithfulness" to describe Israel's disobedient behavior. They were not obeying God or honoring him.

Translation Suggestions

- Depending on the context, the term "faithless" could be translated as "unfaithful" or "unbelieving" or "disobedient to God" or "not believing."
- The term "faithlessness" could be translated as "unbelief" or "unfaithfulness" or "rebellion against God."
- The phrase "the unfaithful" could be translated as "people who are not faithful (to God)" or "unfaithful people" or "those who disobey God" or "people who rebel against God."
- In some languages, the term "unfaithful" is related to the word for "unbelief."

(See also: How to Translate Names)

(See also: believe, faithful, disobey, adultery)

Bible References:

- Ezekiel 43:6-8
- Ezra 9:1-2
- Jeremiah 2:19
- Proverbs 2:22
- Revelation 21:7-8

Word Data:

- Strong's: G05710

Numbers References:

Numbers 5:6 Numbers 5:6 Numbers 5:12
Numbers 5:27 Numbers 5:27 Numbers 31:16

god, false god, goddess, idol, idolater, idolatrous, idolatry

Definition:

A false god is something that people worship instead of the one true God. The term "goddess" refers specifically to a female false god.

- These false gods or goddesses do not exist. Yahweh is the only God.
- People sometimes make objects into idols to worship as symbols of their false gods.
- In the Bible, God's people frequently turned away from obeying him in order to worship false gods.
- Demons often deceive people into believing that the false gods and idols they worship have power.
- Baal, Dagon, and Molech were three of the many false gods that were worshiped by people in Bible times.
- Asherah and Artemis (Diana) were two of the goddesses that ancient peoples worshiped.

An idol is an object that people make so they can worship it. Something is described as "idolatrous" if it involves giving honor to something other than the one true God.

- People make idols to represent the false gods that they worship.
- These false gods do not exist; there is no God besides Yahweh.
- Sometimes demons work through an idol to make it seem like it has power, even though it does not.
- Idols are often made of valuable materials like gold, silver, bronze, or expensive wood.
- An "idolatrous kingdom" means a "kingdom of people who worship idols" or a "kingdom of people who worship earthly things."
- The term "idolatrous figure" is another word for a "carved image" or an "idol."

Translation Suggestions:

- There may already be a word for "god" or "false god" in the language or in a nearby language.
- The term "idol" could be used to refer to false gods.
- In English, a lower case "g" is used to refer to false gods, and upper case "G" is used to refer to the one true God. Other languages also do that.
- Another option would be to use a completely different word to refer to the false gods.
- Some languages may add a word to specify whether the false god is described as male or female.

(See also: God, Asherah, Baal, Molech, demon, image, kingdom, worship)

Bible References:

- Genesis 35:2
- Exodus 32:1
- Psalms 31:6
- Psalms 81:8-10
- Isaiah 44:20
- Acts 7:41
- Acts 7:43
- Acts 15:20
- Acts 19:27
- Romans 2:22
- Galatians 4:8-9
- Galatians 5:19-21
- Colossians 3:5
- 1 Thessalonians 1:9

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **10:2** Through these plagues, God showed Pharaoh that he is more powerful than Pharaoh and all of Egypt's **gods**.
- **13:4** Then God gave them the covenant and said, "I am Yahweh, your God, who saved you from slavery in Egypt. Do not worship other **gods**."
- **14:2** They (Canaanites) worshiped false **gods** and did many evil things.
- **16:1** The Israelites began to worship the Canaanite **gods** instead of Yahweh, the true God.
- **18:13** But most of Judah's kings were evil, corrupt, and they worshiped idols. Some of the kings even sacrificed their children to false **gods**.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0205, H0367, H0410, H0426, H0430, H0457, H1322, H1544, H1892, H2553, H3649, H4656, H4906, H5236, H5566, H6089, H6090, H6091, H6456, H6459, H6673, H6736, H6754, H7723, H8163, H8251, H8267, H8441, H8655, G14930, G14940, G14950, G14960, G14970, G22990, G27120

Numbers References:

Numbers 25:2 Numbers 33:4

favor, favorable, favoritism

Definition:

The term “favor” generally means approval. Someone who favors another person regards that person positively and approves of them.

- Jesus grew up “in favor with” God and men. This means that both God and others approved of his character and behavior.
- The expression “find favor” with someone means that someone is approved of by that person.
- When a king shows favor to someone, it often means that he approves of that person’s request and grants it.
- A “favor” can also be a gesture or action towards or for another person for their benefit.
- The term “favoritism” means an attitude of acting favorably toward some people but not others. It means the inclination to pick one person over another or one thing over another because the person or item is preferred. Generally, favoritism is considered unfair.

Translation Suggestions:

- Other ways to translate the term “favor” could include “approval” or “blessing” or “benefit.”
- The “favorable year of Yahweh” could be translated as “the year (or time) when Yahweh will bring great blessing.”
- The term “favoritism” could be translated as “partiality” or “being prejudiced” or “unjust treatment.” This word is related to the word “favorite,” which means to prefer above all others.

Bible References:

- 1 Samuel 2:25-26
- 2 Chronicles 19:7
- 2 Corinthians 1:11
- Acts 24:27
- Genesis 41:16
- Genesis 47:25
- Genesis 50:5

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0995, H1156, H1293, H1779, H1921, H2580, H2603, H2896, H5278, H5375, H5414, H5922, H6213, H6437, H6440, H7521, H7522, H7965, G11840, G36850, G43800, G43820, G54850, G54860

Numbers References:

Numbers 11:11 Numbers 11:15 Numbers 32:5

fear, afraid, frighten

Definition:

The terms “fear” often refers to the unpleasant emotion a person feels when experiencing a potential threat to their safety or well-being. In the Bible, however, the term “fear” can also mean an attitude of worship, respect, awe, or obedience toward another person, usually someone powerful such as God or a king.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, the term “fear” can be translated in various ways. Some possibilities include: “be afraid;” “deeply respect,” or “deep respect;” “revere,” or “reverence;” or perhaps “be in awe of.”
- The sentence “The fear of God fell on all of them” might be translated in various ways. Some possibilities include: “Suddenly they all felt a deep awe and respect for God;” or “Immediately, they all felt very amazed and revered God deeply;” or “Right then, they all felt very afraid of God (because of his great power).”
- The phrase “fear Yahweh” could be translated as “reverence Yahweh” or “deeply respect Yahweh.”
- The phrase “fear not” could also be translated as “do not be afraid” or “stop being afraid.”

(See also: awe, Yahweh, Lord, marvel, power)

Bible References:

- 1 John 4:18
- Acts 2:43
- Acts 19:15-17
- Genesis 50:21
- Isaiah 11:3-5
- Job 6:14
- Jonah 1:9
- Luke 12:5
- Matthew 10:28
- Proverbs 10:24-25

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0367, H0926, H1204, H1481, H1672, H1674, H1763, H2119, H2296, H2727, H2729, H2730, H2731, H2844, H2849, H2865, H3016, H3025, H3068, H3372, H3373, H3374, H4032, H4034, H4035, H4116, H4172, H6206, H6342, H6343, H6345, H6427, H7264, H7267, H7297, H7374, H7461, H7493, H8175, G08700, G11670, G11680, G11690, G16300, G17190, G21240, G21250, G29620, G53980, G53990, G54000, G54010

Numbers References:

Numbers 12:8 Numbers 14:9 Numbers 14:9 Numbers 21:34 Numbers 22:3

forgive, forgiven, forgiveness, pardon, pardoned

Definition:

To forgive someone means to not hold a grudge against that person even though they did something hurtful. “Forgiveness” is the act of forgiving someone.

- Forgiving someone often means not punishing that person for something he has done wrong.
- This term can be used figuratively to mean “cancel,” as in the expression “forgive a debt.”
- When people confess their sins, God forgives them based on Jesus’ sacrificial death on the cross.
- Jesus taught his disciples to forgive others as he has forgiven them.

The term “pardon” means to forgive and not punish someone for his sin.

- This word has the same meaning as “forgive” but may also include the meaning of a formal decision to not punish someone who is guilty.
- In a court of law, a judge can pardon a person found guilty of a crime.
- Even though we are guilty of sin, Jesus Christ pardoned us from being punished in hell, based on his sacrificial death on the cross.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, “forgive” could be translated as “pardon” or “cancel” or “release” or “not hold against” (someone).
- The term “forgiveness” could be translated by a word or phrase that means “practice of not resenting” or “declaring (someone) as not guilty” or “the act of pardoning.”
- If the language has a word for a formal decision to forgive, that word could be used to translate “pardon.”

(See also: guilt)

Bible References:

- Genesis 50:17
- Numbers 14:17-19
- Deuteronomy 29:20-21
- Joshua 24:19-20
- 2 Kings 5:17-19
- Psalms 25:11
- Psalms 25:17-19
- Isaiah 55:6-7
- Isaiah 40:2
- Luke 5:21
- Acts 8:22
- Ephesians 4:31-32
- Colossians 3:12-14
- 1 John 2:12

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **7:10** But Esau had already **forgiven** Jacob, and they were happy to see each other again.
- **13:15** Then Moses climbed the mountain again and prayed that God would **forgive** the people. God listened to Moses and **forgave** them.
- **17:13** David repented of his sin and God **forgave** him.
- **21:5** In the New Covenant, God would write his law on the people’s hearts, the people would know God personally, they would be his people, and God would **forgive** their sins.
- **29:1** One day Peter asked Jesus, “Master, how many times should I **forgive** my brother when he sins against me?”
- **29:8** I **forgave** your debt because you begged me.
- **38:5** Then Jesus took a cup and said, “Drink this. It is my blood of the New Covenant that is poured out for the **forgiveness** of sins.”

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H5546, H5547, H3722, H5375, H5545, H5547, H7521, G85900, G86300, G54830

Numbers References:

Numbers 14:19 Numbers 14:20 Numbers 15:25 Numbers 15:26 Numbers 15:28 Numbers 30:5 Numbers 30:8 Numbers 30:12

fulfill, fulfilled, carried out

Definition:

The term "fulfill" means to complete or accomplish something that was expected.

- When a prophecy is fulfilled, it means that God causes to happen what was predicted in the prophecy.
- If a person fulfills a promise or a vow, it means that he does what he has promised to do.
- To fulfill a responsibility means to do the task that was assigned or required.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, "fulfill" could be translated as "accomplish" or "complete" or "cause to happen" or "obey" or "perform."
- The phrase "has been fulfilled" could also be translated as "has come true" or "has happened" or "has taken place."
- Ways to translate "fulfill," as in "fulfill your ministry," could include "complete" or "perform" or "practice" or "serve other people as God has called you to do."

(See also: prophet, Christ, minister, call)

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 2:27
- Acts 3:17-18
- Leviticus 22:17-19
- Luke 4:21
- Matthew 1:22-23
- Matthew 5:17
- Psalms 116:12-15

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **24:4** John **fulfilled** what the prophets said, "See I send my messenger ahead of you, who will prepare your way."
- **40:3** The soldiers gambled for Jesus' clothing. When they did this, they **fulfilled** a prophecy that said, "They divided my garments among them, and gambled for my clothing."
- **42:7** Jesus said, "I told you that everything written about me in God's word must be **fulfilled**."
- **43:5** "This **fulfills** the prophecy made by the prophet Joel in which God said, 'In the last days, I will pour out my Spirit.'"
- **43:7** "This **fulfills** the prophecy which says, 'You will not let your Holy One rot in the grave.'"
- **44:5** "Although you did not understand what you were doing, God used your actions to **fulfill** the prophecies that the Messiah would suffer and die."

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1214, H5487, G10960, G41380

Numbers References:

Numbers 6:5 Numbers 6:13

glory, glorious, glorify

Definition:

The term "glory" is a general term for a family of concepts including value, worth, importance, honor, splendor, or majesty. The term "glorify" means to ascribe glory to someone or something, or to show or tell how glorious something or someone is.

- In the Bible, the term "glory" is especially used to describe God, who is more valuable, more worthy, more important, more honorable, more splendid, and more majestic than anyone or anything in the universe. Everything about his character reveals his glory.
- People can glorify God by telling about the wonderful things he has done. They can also glorify God by living in accordance with God's character, because doing so shows to others his value, worth, importance, honor, splendor, and majesty.
- The expression to "glory in" means to boast about or take pride in something.

Old Testament

- The specific phrase "the glory of Yahweh" in the Old Testament usually refers to some perceptible manifestation of Yahweh's presence in a particular location.

New Testament

- God the Father will glorify God the Son by revealing to all people the full extent of how glorious Jesus is.
- Everyone who believes in Christ will be glorified with him. This use of the term "glorify" carries a unique meaning. It means that when people who believe in Christ are raised to life, they will be changed physically to be like Jesus as he appeared after his resurrection.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, different ways to translate "glory" could include "splendor" or "majesty" or "awesome greatness" or "extreme value."
- The term "glorious" could be translated as "full of glory" or "extremely valuable" or "brightly shining" or "awesomely majestic."
- The expression "give glory to God" could be translated as "honor God's greatness" or "praise God because of his splendor" or "tell others how great God is."
- The expression "glory in" could also be translated as "praise" or "take pride in" or "boast about" or "take pleasure in."
- "Glorify" could also be translated as "give glory to" or "bring glory to" or "cause to appear great."
- The phrase "glorify God" could also be translated as "praise God" or "talk about God's greatness" or "show how great God is" or "honor God (by obeying him)."
- The term "be glorified" could also be translated as "be shown to be very great" or "be praised" or "be exalted."

(See also: honor, majesty, exalt, obey, praise)

Bible References:

- Exodus 24:17
- Numbers 14:9-10
- Isaiah 35:2
- Luke 18:43
- Luke 2:9
- John 12:28
- Acts 3:13-14
- Acts 7:1-3
- Romans 8:17
- 1 Corinthians 6:19-20
- Philippians 2:14-16
- Philippians 4:19
- Colossians 3:1-4
- 1 Thessalonians 2:5
- James 2:1-4
- 1 Peter 4:15-16
- Revelation 15:4

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **23:7** Suddenly, the skies were filled with angels praising God, saying, "**Glory** to God in heaven and peace on earth to the people he favors!"
- **25:6** Then Satan showed Jesus all the kingdoms of the world and all their **glory** and said, "I will give you all this if you bow down and worship me."

- **37:1** When Jesus heard this news, he said, “This sickness will not end in death, but it is for the **glory** of God.”
- **37:8** Jesus responded, “Did I not tell you that you would see God’s **glory** if you believe in me?”

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0117, H0142, H0155, H0215, H1342, H1921, H1926, H1935, H1984, H3367, H3513, H3519, H3520, H6286, H6643, H7623, H8597, G13910, G13920, G17400, G17410, G27440, G48880

Numbers References:

Numbers 14:10 Numbers 14:21 Numbers 14:22 Numbers 16:19 Numbers 16:42 Numbers 20:6

God

Definition:

In the Bible, the term “God” refers to the eternal being who created the universe out of nothing. God exists as Father, Son, and Holy Spirit. God’s personal name is “Yahweh.”

- God has always existed; he existed before anything else existed, and he will continue to exist forever.
- He is the only true God and has authority over everything in the universe.
- God is perfectly righteous, infinitely wise, holy, sinless, just, merciful, and loving.
- He is a covenant-keeping God, who always fulfills his promises.
- People were created to worship God and he is the only one they should worship.
- God revealed his name as “Yahweh,” which means “he is” or “I am” or “the One who (always) exists.”
- The Bible also teaches about false “gods,” which are nonliving idols that people wrongly worship.

Translation Suggestions:

- Ways to translate “God” could include “Deity” or “Creator” or “Supreme Being” or “Supreme Creator” or “Infinite Sovereign Lord” or “Eternal Supreme Being.”
- Consider how God is referred to in a local or national language. There may also already be a word for “God” in the language being translated. If so, it is important to make sure that this word fits the characteristics of the one true God as described above.
- Many languages capitalize the first letter of the word for the one true God, to distinguish it from the word for a false god. Another way to make this distinction would be to use different terms for “God” and “god.” NOTE: In the biblical text, when a person who does not worship Yahweh speaks about Yahweh and uses the word “god,” it is acceptable to render the term without a capital letter in reference to Yahweh (see Jonah 1:6, 3:9).

- The phrase "I will be their God and they will be my people" could also be translated as "I, God, will rule over these people and they will worship me."

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: create, false god, God the Father, Holy Spirit, false god, Son of God, Yahweh)

Bible References:

- 1 John 1:7
- 1 Samuel 10:7-8
- 1 Timothy 4:10
- Colossians 1:16
- Deuteronomy 29:14-16
- Ezra 3:1-2
- Genesis 1:2
- Hosea 4:11-12
- Isaiah 36:6-7
- James 2:20
- Jeremiah 5:5
- John 1:3
- Joshua 3:9-11
- Lamentations 3:43
- Micah 4:5
- Philippians 2:6
- Proverbs 24:12
- Psalms 47:9

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **1:1** **God** created the universe and everything in it in six days.
- **1:15** **God** made man and woman in his own image.
- **5:3** "I am **God** Almighty. I will make a covenant with you."
- **9:14** **God** said, "I AM WHO I AM. Tell them, 'I AM has sent me to you.' Also tell them, 'I am Yahweh, the **God** of your ancestors Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob. This is my name forever.'"
- **10:2** Through these plagues, **God** showed Pharaoh that he is more powerful than Pharaoh and all of Egypt's gods.
- **16:1** The Israelites began to worship the Canaanite gods instead of Yahweh, the true **God**.
- **22:7** "You, my son, will be called the prophet of the **Most High God** who will prepare the people to receive the Messiah!"
- **24:9** There is only one **God**. But John heard **God** the Father speak, and saw Jesus the Son and the Holy Spirit when he baptized Jesus.
- **25:7** "Worship only the Lord your **God** and only serve him."
- **28:1** "There is only one who is good, and that is **God**."
- **49:9** But **God** loved everyone in the world so much that he gave his only Son so that whoever believes in Jesus will not be punished for his sins, but will live with **God** forever.
- **50:16** But some day **God** will create a new heaven and a new earth that will be perfect.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0136, H0305, H0410, H0426, H0430, H0433, H2486, H2623, H3068, H3069, H3863, H4136, H6697, G01120, G05160, G09320, G09350, G10960, G11400, G20980, G21240, G21280, G21500, G21520, G21530, G22990, G23040, G23050, G23120, G23130, G23140, G23150, G23160, G23170, G23180, G23190, G23200, G33610, G37850, G41510, G52070, G53770, G54630, G55370, G55380

Numbers References:

Numbers 6:7 Numbers 10:9 Numbers 10:10 Numbers 10:10 Numbers 12:13 Numbers 15:40 Numbers 15:41 Numbers 15:41 Numbers 16:9 Numbers 16:22 Numbers 21:5 Numbers 22:9 Numbers 22:10 Numbers 22:12 Numbers 22:18 Numbers 22:20 Numbers 22:22 Numbers 22:38 Numbers 23:4 Numbers 23:8 Numbers 23:19 Numbers 23:21 Numbers 23:22 Numbers 23:23 Numbers 23:27 Numbers 24:2 Numbers 24:4 Numbers 24:8 Numbers 24:16 Numbers 24:23 Numbers 25:2 Numbers 25:13 Numbers 27:16

God the Father, heavenly Father, Father

Definition:

The terms "God the Father" and "heavenly Father" refer to Yahweh, the one true God. Another term with the same meaning is "Father," used most often when Jesus was referring to him.

- God exists as God the Father, God the Son, and God the Holy Spirit. Each one is fully God, and yet they are only one God. This is a mystery that mere humans cannot fully understand.
- God the Father sent God the Son (Jesus) into the world and he sends the Holy Spirit to his people.
- Anyone who believes in God the Son becomes a child of God the Father, and God the Holy Spirit comes to live in that person. This is another mystery that human beings cannot fully understand.

Translation Suggestions:

- In translating the phrase "God the Father," it is best to translate "Father" with the same word that the language naturally uses to refer to a human father.
- The term "heavenly Father" could be translated by "Father who lives in heaven" or "Father God who lives in heaven" or "God our Father from heaven."
- Usually "Father" is capitalized when it, refers to God.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: ancestor, God, heaven, Holy Spirit, Jesus, Son of God)

Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 8:4-6
- 1 John 2:1
- 1 John 2:23
- 1 John 3:1
- Colossians 1:1-3
- Ephesians 5:18-21
- Luke 10:22
- Matthew 5:16
- Matthew 23:9

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **24:9** There is only one God. But John heard **God the Father** speak, and saw Jesus the Son and the Holy Spirit when he baptized Jesus.
- **29:9** Then Jesus said, "This is what my **heavenly Father** will do to every one of you if you do not forgive your brother from your heart."
- **37:9** Then Jesus looked up to heaven and said, "**Father**, thank you for hearing me."
- **40:7** Then Jesus cried out, "It is finished! **Father**, I give my spirit into your hands."
- **42:10** "So go, make disciples of all people groups by baptizing them in the name of **the Father**, the Son, and the Holy Spirit and by teaching them to obey everything I have commanded you."
- **43:8** "Jesus is now exalted to the right hand of **God the Father**."
- **50:10** "Then the righteous ones will shine like the sun in the kingdom of **God their Father**."

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0001, H0002, G39620

Numbers References:

Numbers 11:12

good, right, pleasant, better, best, goodness

Definition:

The term “good” generally refers to a positive evaluation of the quality of something or someone, often in a moral or emotional sense. However, the term conveys various nuances throughout the Bible depending on the context.

- Something that is “good” could be emotionally pleasant, morally right, excellent, helpful, suitable, or profitable.
- In the Bible, the general meaning of “good” is often contrasted with “evil.”

Translation Suggestions:

- The general term for “good” in the target language should be used wherever this general meaning is accurate and natural, especially in contexts where it is contrasted to evil.
- Depending on the context, other ways to translate this term could include “kind” or “excellent” or “pleasing to God” or “righteous” or “morally upright” or “profitable.”
- “Good land” could be translated as “fertile land” or “productive land”; a “good crop” could be translated as a “plentiful harvest” or “large amount of crops.”
- The phrase “do good to” means to do something that benefits others and could be translated as “be kind to” or “help” or “benefit” someone or “cause someone to prosper.”
- To “do good on the Sabbath” means to “do things that help others on the Sabbath.”
- Depending on the context, ways to translate the term “goodness” could include “blessing” or “kindness” or “moral perfection” or “righteousness” or “purity.”

(See also: righteous, prosper, evil)

Bible References:

- Galatians 5:22-24
- Genesis 1:12
- Genesis 2:9
- Genesis 2:17
- James 3:13
- Romans 2:4

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **1:4** God saw that what he had created was **good**.
- **1:11** God planted the tree of the knowledge of **good** and evil.
- **1:12** Then God said, “It is not **good** for man to be alone.”
- **2:4** “God just knows that as soon as you eat it, you will be like God and will understand **good** and evil like he does.”
- **8:12** “You tried to do evil when you sold me as a slave, but God used the evil for **good**!”
- **14:15** Joshua was a **good** leader because he trusted and obeyed God.
- **18:13** Some of these kings were **good** men who ruled justly and worshiped God.
- **28:1** “**Good** teacher, what must I do to have eternal life?” Jesus said to him, “Why do you call me ‘**good**?’ There is only one who is **good**, and that is God.”

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0117, H0145, H0155, H0202, H0239, H0410, H1580, H1926, H1935, H2532, H2617, H2623, H2869, H2895, H2896, H2898, H3190, H3191, H3276, H3474, H3788, H3966, H4261, H4399, H5232, H5750, H6287, H6643, H6743, H7075, H7368, H7399, H7443, H7999, H8231, H8232, H8233, H8389, H8458, G00140, G00150, G00180, G00190, G05150, G07440, G08650, G09790, G13800, G20950, G20970, G21060, G21070, G21080, G21090, G21140, G21150, G21330, G21400, G21620, G21630, G21740, G22930, G25650, G25670, G25700, G25730, G28870, G29860, G31400, G36170, G37760, G41470, G46320, G46740, G48510, G52230, G52240, G53580, G55420, G55430, G55440

Numbers References:

Numbers 10:29 Numbers 10:32 Numbers 13:19 Numbers 14:3 Numbers 14:7 Numbers 23:27 Numbers 24:1 Numbers 24:5 Numbers 24:13 Numbers 36:6

guilt, guilty

Definition:

The term “guilt” refers to the fact of having sinned or committed a crime.

- To “be guilty” means to have done something morally wrong, that is, to have disobeyed God.
- The opposite of “guilty” is “innocent.”

Translation Suggestions:

- Some languages might translate “guilt” as “the weight of sin” or “the counting of sins.”
- Ways to translate to “be guilty” could include a word or phrase that means, to “be at fault” or “having done something morally wrong” or “having committed a sin.”

(See also: innocent, iniquity, punish, sin)

Bible References:

- Exodus 28:36-38
- Isaiah 6:7
- James 2:10-11
- John 19:4
- Jonah 1:14

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **39:2** They brought many witnesses who lied about him (Jesus). However, their statements did not agree with each other, so the Jewish leaders could not prove he was **guilty** of anything.
- **39:11** After speaking with Jesus, Pilate went out to the crowd and said, “I find no **guilt** in this man.” But the Jewish leaders and the crowd shouted, “Crucify him!” Pilate replied, “He is not **guilty**.” But they shouted even louder. Then Pilate said a third time, “He is not **guilty**!”
- **40:4** Jesus was crucified between two robbers. One of them mocked Jesus, but the other said, “Do you not fear God? We are **guilty**, but this man is innocent.”
- **49:10** Because of your sin, you are **guilty** and deserve to die.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0816, H0817, H0818, H5352, H5355, H7563, G03380, G17770, G37840, G52670

Numbers References:

Numbers 5:6 Numbers 5:7

Hades, Sheol

Definition:

The terms "Hades" (in Greek) and "Sheol" (in Hebrew) are proper names for the place where the spirits of dead people would go after they had died.

- In these ancient cultures, people thought of this as an underground dwelling place where the spirits of dead people existed in a shadowy, semi-conscious form.
- Although these terms are place names, in the Bible they often mean the same thing as "death" or "the grave."
- Throughout most of biblical history, "Sheol" and "Hades" refer to a neutral place where all of the dead go to await judgment, both the righteous and the unrighteous. In the New Testament, however, "Hades" begins to be seen as a place for only the unrighteous, in contrast with "Abraham's side" (Luke 16:22) or "paradise" (Luke 23:43), which describe the place for the righteous.

Translation Suggestions

- Both "Sheol" and "Hades" can be translated in various ways, depending on the context. Some possibilities include: "place of the dead," "place for dead spirits," "the underworld," "the pit," "the grave," or "death."
- Some translations keep the proper names "Sheol" and "Hades," spelling them to fit the sound patterns of the language of translation. (See: How to Translate Unknowns).
- A phrase could also be added to each term to explain it. Examples of doing this are, "Sheol, place where dead people are" and "Hades, place of death."

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Unknowns)

(See also: death, heaven, hell, tomb)

Bible References:

- Acts 2:31
- Genesis 44:29

- Jonah 2:2
- Luke 10:15
- Luke 16:23
- Matthew 11:23
- Matthew 16:18
- Revelation 1:18

Word Data:

- Strong's: H7585, G00860

Numbers References:

Numbers 16:30 Numbers 16:33

holy, holiness, unholy, sacred

Definition:

The terms "holy" and "holiness" refer to the character of God that is totally set apart and separated from everything that is sinful and imperfect.

- Only God is absolutely holy. He makes people and things holy.
- A person who is holy belongs to God and has been set apart for the purpose of serving God and bringing him glory.
- An object that God has declared to be holy is one that he has set apart for his glory and use, such as an altar that is for the purpose of offering sacrifices to him.
- People cannot approach him unless he allows them to, because he is holy and they are merely human beings, sinful and imperfect.
- In the Old Testament, God set apart the priests as holy for special service to him. They had to be ceremonially cleansed from sin in order to approach God.
- God also set apart as holy certain places and things that belonged to him or in which he revealed himself, such as his temple.

Literally, the term "unholy" means "not holy." It describes someone or something that does not honor God.

- This word is used to describe someone who dishonors God by rebelling against him.
- A thing that is called "unholy" could be described as being common, profane or unclean. It does not belong to God.

The term "sacred" describes something that relates to worshiping God or to the pagan worship of false gods.

- In the Old Testament, the term "sacred" was often said to describe the stone pillars and other objects used in the worship of false gods. This could also be translated as "religious."

- "Sacred songs" and "sacred music" refer to music that was sung or played for God's glory. This could be translated as "music for worshiping Yahweh" or "songs that praise God."
- The phrase "sacred duties" referred to the "religious duties" or "rituals" that a priest performed to lead people in worshiping God. It could also refer to the rituals performed by a pagan priest to worship a false god

Translation Suggestions:

- Ways to translate "holy" might include "set apart for God" or "belonging to God" or "completely pure" or "perfectly sinless" or "separated from sin."

- To "make holy" is often translated as "sanctify" in English. It could also be translated as "set apart (someone) for God's glory."

- Ways to translate "unholy" could include "not holy" or "not belonging to God" or "not honoring to God" or "not godly."

- In some contexts, "unholy" could be translated as "unclean."

(See also: Holy Spirit, consecrate, sanctify, set apart)

Bible References:

- Genesis 28:22
- 2 Kings 3:2
- Lamentations 4:1
- Ezekiel 20:18-20
- Matthew 7:6
- Mark 8:38
- Acts 7:33
- Acts 11:8
- Romans 1:2
- 2 Corinthians 12:3-5
- Colossians 1:22
- 1 Thessalonians 3:13
- 1 Thessalonians 4:7
- 2 Timothy 3:15

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **1:16** He (God) blessed the seventh day and made it **holy**, because on this day he rested from his work.
- **9:12** "You are standing on **holy** ground."
- **13:2** "If you will obey me and keep my covenant, you will be my prized possession, a kingdom of priests, and a **holy** nation."
- **13:5** "Always be sure to keep the Sabbath day **holy**."
- **22:5** "So the baby will be **holy**, the Son of God."
- **50:2** As we wait for Jesus to return, God wants us to live in a way that is **holy** and that honors him.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0430, H2455, H2623, H4676, H4720, H6918, H6922, H6942, H6944, H6948, G00370, G00380, G00400, G00400, G00410, G00420, G04620, G18590, G21500, G24120, G24130, G28390, G37410, G37420

Numbers References:

Numbers 4:4 Numbers 4:4 Numbers 4:19 Numbers 4:19 Numbers 5:9 Numbers 5:10 Numbers 5:17 Numbers 6:5 Numbers 6:8 Numbers 6:20 Numbers 7:9 Numbers 7:19 Numbers 7:25 Numbers 7:31 Numbers 7:49 Numbers 8:19 Numbers 15:40 Numbers 16:3 Numbers 16:37 Numbers 16:38 Numbers 18:8 Numbers 18:9 Numbers 18:9 Numbers 18:9 Numbers 18:9 Numbers 18:10 Numbers 18:10 Numbers 18:17 Numbers 18:19 Numbers 18:32 Numbers 20:13 Numbers 28:18 Numbers 28:25 Numbers 28:26 Numbers 29:1 Numbers 29:7

Holy One

Definition:

The term “Holy One” is a title in the Bible that almost always refers to God.

- In the Old Testament, this title often occurs in the phrase “Holy One of Israel.”
- In the New Testament, Jesus is also referred to as the “Holy One.”
- The term “holy one” is sometimes used in the Bible to refer to an angel.

Translation Suggestions:

- The literal term is “the Holy” (with “One” being implied.) Many languages (like English) will translate this with the implied noun included (such as “One” or “God”).
- This term could also be translated as “God, who is holy” or “the Set Apart One.”
- The phrase “the Holy One of Israel” could be translated as “the Holy God whom Israel worships” or “the Holy One who rules Israel.”
- It is best to translate this term using the same word or phrase that is used to translate “holy.”

(See also: holy, God)

Bible References:

- 1 John 2:20
- 2 Kings 19:22
- Acts 2:27
- Acts 3:13-14
- Isaiah 5:15-17
- Isaiah 41:14
- Luke 4:33-34

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H2623, H0376, H6918, G00400, G37410

Numbers References:

Numbers 16:5 Numbers 16:7

holy place

Definition:

In the Bible, the terms “the holy place” and “the most holy place” refer to the two parts of the tabernacle or temple building.

- The “holy place” was the first room, and it contained the altar of incense and the table with the special “bread of the presence” on it.
- The “most holy place” was the second, innermost room, and it contained the ark of the covenant.
- A thick, heavy curtain separated the outer room from the inner room.
- The high priest was the only one who was permitted to go into the most holy place.
- Sometimes “holy place” refers to both the building and courtyard areas of either the temple or tabernacle. It could also refer generally to any place that is set apart for God.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “holy place” could also be translated as “room set apart for God” or “special room for meeting God” or “place reserved for God.”
- The term “most holy place” could be translated as “room that is the most set apart for God” or “most special room for meeting God.”
- Depending on the context, ways to translate the general expression “a holy place” could include “a consecrated place” or “a place that God has set apart” or “a place in the temple complex, which is holy” or “a courtyard of God’s holy temple.”

(See also: altar of incense, ark of the covenant, bread, consecrate, courtyard, curtain, holy, set apart, tabernacle, temple)

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 6:16-18
- Acts 6:12-15
- Exodus 26:33
- Exodus 31:10-11
- Ezekiel 41:1

- Ezra 9:8-9
- Hebrews 9:1-2
- Leviticus 16:18
- Matthew 24:15-18
- Revelation 15:5

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1964, H4720, H4725, H5116, H6918, H6944, G00400, G00400, G34850, G51170

Numbers References:

Numbers 3:28 Numbers 3:31 Numbers 3:32
Numbers 3:38 Numbers 3:47 Numbers 3:50
Numbers 4:12 Numbers 4:15 Numbers 4:16
Numbers 4:20 Numbers 7:13 Numbers 7:37
Numbers 7:43 Numbers 7:55 Numbers 7:61
Numbers 7:67 Numbers 7:73 Numbers 7:79
Numbers 7:85 Numbers 7:86 Numbers 18:1
Numbers 18:3 Numbers 18:5 Numbers 18:16
Numbers 19:20 Numbers 28:7 Numbers 31:6
Numbers 35:25

Holy Spirit, Spirit of God, Spirit of the Lord, Spirit

Definition:

These terms all refer to the Holy Spirit, who is God. The one true God exists eternally as the Father, the Son, and the Holy Spirit.

- The Holy Spirit is also referred to as "the Spirit" and "Spirit of Yahweh" and "Spirit of truth."
- Because the Holy Spirit is God, he is absolutely holy, infinitely pure, and morally perfect in all his nature and in everything he does.
- Along with the Father and the Son, the Holy Spirit was active in creating the world.
- When God's Son, Jesus, returned to heaven, God sent the Holy Spirit to his people to lead them, teach them, comfort them, and enable them to do God's will.
- The Holy Spirit guided Jesus and he guides those who believe in Jesus.

Translation Suggestions:

- This term could simply be translated with the words used to translate "holy" and "spirit."
- Ways to translate this term could also include "Pure Spirit" or "Spirit who is Holy" or "God the Spirit."

(See also: holy, spirit, God, Lord, God the Father, Son of God, gift)

Bible References:

- 1 Samuel 10:10
- 1 Thessalonians 4:7-8
- Acts 8:17
- Galatians 5:25
- Genesis 1:1-2
- Isaiah 63:10
- Job 33:4
- Matthew 12:31
- Matthew 28:18-19
- Psalms 51:10-11

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **1:1** But **God's Spirit** was there over the water.
- **24:8** When Jesus came up out of the water after being baptized, **the Spirit of God** appeared in the form of a dove and came down and rested on him.
- **26:1** After overcoming Satan's temptations, Jesus returned in the power of **the Holy Spirit** to the region of Galilee where he lived.
- **26:3** Jesus read, "God has given me **his Spirit** so that I can proclaim good news to the poor, freedom to captives, recovery of sight for the blind, and release to the oppressed."
- **42:10** "So go, make disciples of all people groups by baptizing them in the name of the Father, the Son, and **the Holy Spirit** and by teaching them to obey everything I have commanded you."
- **43:3** They were all filled with the **Holy Spirit** and they began to speak in other languages.
- **43:8** "And Jesus has sent the **Holy Spirit** just as he promised he would do. The **Holy Spirit** is causing the things that you are are now seeing and hearing."
- **43:11** Peter answered them, "Every one of you should repent and be baptized in the name of Jesus Christ so that God will forgive your sins. Then he will also give you the gift of the **Holy Spirit**."
- **45:1** He (Stephen) had a good reputation and was full of the **Holy Spirit** and of wisdom.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3068, H6944, H7307, G00400, G41510

Numbers References:

Numbers 11:17 Numbers 11:25 Numbers 11:26 Numbers 24:2

honor

Definition:

The terms "honor" and "to honor" refer to giving someone respect, esteem, or reverence.

- Honor is usually given to someone who is of higher status and importance, such as a king or God.
- God instructs Christians to honor others.
- Children are instructed to honor their parents in ways that include respecting them and obeying them.
- The terms "honor" and "glory" are often used together, especially when referring to Jesus. These may be two different ways of referring to the same thing.
- Ways of honoring God include thanking and praising him, and showing him respect by obeying him and living in a way that shows how great he is.

Translation Suggestions:

- Other ways to translate "honor" could include "respect" or "esteem" or "high regard."
- The term to "honor" could be translated as to "show special respect to" or to "cause to be praised" or to "show high regard for" or to "highly value."

(See also: dishonor, glory, praise)

Bible References:

- 1 Samuel 2:8
- Acts 19:17
- John 4:44
- John 12:26
- Mark 6:4
- Matthew 15:6

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1420, H1921, H1922, H1923, H1926, H1927, H1935, H2082, H2142, H3366, H3367, H3368, H3372, H3373, H3374, H3444, H3513, H3519, H3655, H3678, H5081, H5375, H5457, H6213, H6286, H6437, H6942, H6944, H6965, H7236, H7613, H7812, H8597, H8416, G08200, G13910, G13920, G17840, G21510, G25700, G31700, G44110, G45860, G50910, G50920, G50930, G53990

Numbers References:

Numbers 22:15 Numbers 22:17 Numbers 22:17 Numbers 22:37 Numbers 24:11 Numbers 24:11 Numbers 24:11

house of God, your house, his house, Yahweh's house, a house for my name, the house for my name, the house, a house, a house of Yahweh

Short Title: house of God, Yahweh's house, house of Yahweh

Definition:

In the Bible, the phrases "house of God" (God's house) and "house of Yahweh (Yahweh's house)" refer to a place where God is worshiped.

- This term is also used more specifically to refer to the tabernacle or the temple.
- The terms "house of God" and "house of Yahweh" refer to the tabernacle or temple. These expressions can also refer generally to a central place where Yahweh was worshipped.
- The Bible often uses the phrases "your house" and "his house" to refer to the temple of Yahweh.
- The phrases "the house for my name," "a house for my name," and "a house of Yahweh" all refer to the temple of Yahweh.
- In some contexts, such as in 1 Chronicles 17:25 and 29:16, the phrase "a house" refers to the temple of Yahweh.
- In some contexts, such as in 1 Kings 8:44 and 2 Chronicles 6:4, the phrase "the house" refers to the temple of Yahweh.

Translation Suggestions:

- When referring to a place of worship, this term could be translated as "a house for worshiping God" or "a place for worshiping God."
- If it is referring to the temple or tabernacle, this could be translated as "the temple (or tabernacle) where God is worshiped" (or "where God is present" or "where God meets with his people").
- The word "house" may be important to use in the translation in order to communicate that God "dwells" there, that is, his spirit is in that place to meet with his people and to be worshiped by them.

- The phrase “house of Yahweh” could be translated as “Yahweh’s temple” or “place where Yahweh is worshiped” or “place where Yahweh meets with his people” or “where Yahweh dwells.” The phrase “house of God” could be translated in a similar way.

(See also: people of God, tabernacle, temple)

Bible References:

- 1 Timothy 3:14-15
- 2 Chronicles 23:8-9
- Ezra 5:13
- Genesis 28:17
- Judges 18:30-31
- Mark 2:26
- Matthew 12:4

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0426, H0430, H1004, H1005, H3068, G23160, G36240

Numbers References:

Numbers 12:7

humble, humbled, humility

Definition:

The term “humble” describes a person who does not think of himself as better than others. He is not proud or arrogant. Humility is the quality of being humble.

- To be humble before God means to understand one’s weakness and imperfection in comparison with his greatness, wisdom and perfection.
- When a person humbles himself, he puts himself in a position of lower importance.
- Humility is caring about the needs of others more than one’s own needs.
- Humility also means serving with a modest attitude when using one’s gifts and abilities.
- The phrase “be humble” could be translated as “do not be prideful.”
- “Humble yourself before God” could be translated as “Submit your will to God, recognizing his greatness.”

(See also: proud)

Bible References:

- James 1:21
- James 3:13
- James 4:10
- Luke 14:11
- Luke 18:14
- Matthew 18:4
- Matthew 23:12

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **17:2** David was a **humble** and righteous man who trusted and obeyed God.
- **34:10** “God will **humble** everyone who is proud, and he will lift up whoever **humbles** himself.”

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1792, H3665, H6031, H6035, H6038, H6041, H6800, H6819, H7511, H7807, H7812, H8213, H8214, H8215, H8217, H8467, G08580, G42360, G42390, G42400, G50110, G50120, G50130, G53910

Numbers References:

Numbers 29:7 Numbers 30:13

I am Yahweh

Definition:

The statement "I am Yahweh" is used to mark out a command, historical event, promise, or prophecy as something that is particularly important, as something that happened by Yahweh's power, or as something that will happen regardless of circumstances. This certainty is based on Yahweh's character and strength as the all-powerful ruler over all things. At the same time, the statement is used to give Yahweh's people understanding of who he is and what his name means. By reflecting on the command, historical event, promise, or prophecy so marked, the listener will understand more of who Yahweh is. Leviticus 11:44-45 makes it clear that by adhering to the holiness laws that follow, the people will become holy like Yahweh. There are four primary ways or forms in which this statement occurs:

1. As "I am Yahweh" or "I am Yahweh your God"
2. As the statement "[someone] will know that I am Yahweh" (often followed by "when [I do something]"). This is the most common use.
3. Followed by an example of what he is going to do or has done that validates his character and power
4. Followed by an attribute

These uses can be combined, such as in Leviticus 19:2

- 19:36, and 20:24.

Translation Suggestions:

- As much as possible, translate this statement fairly literally. This will probably not be difficult for the second and third forms above.
- Ezekiel 20:5 and Hebrews 6:13 indicate that in at least some instances (Genesis 28:13
- Exodus 6:2

- 6:6
- 6:8, etc.), “I am Yahweh” should be viewed as an oath formula. In these instances (primarily form one above) you may need to include an explanatory comment in your translation.
  - If Yahweh is making a promise, you may need to make this explicit, using an example such as: “I am Yahweh who swears to you.”
  - In Leviticus especially, the statement appears connected to many commands and you may need to make this explicit with a statement, such as: “I am Yahweh who commands this.” You could also use a slightly longer statement, such as: “I am Yahweh, and I bind you to this with an oath.” However, a statement this long may be tedious, so you could consider only using it the first (and possibly the last) time that “I am Yahweh” occurs in a series.
- Some languages will use “the Lord” in place of Yahweh; see Yahweh for more.

(See also: Lord

- Lord Yahweh
- Yahweh)

Bible References:

- Exodus 6:2
- Exodus 6:6
- Exodus 6:8
- Exodus 12:12
- Leviticus 18-26 throughout
- Numbers 3:13
- Exodus 7:17
- Exodus 8:18
- 14:4
- 1 Kings 20:13
- 1 Kings 20:28
- Ezekiel 6:7
- Ezekiel 6:13
- Ezekiel 12:15
- Ezekiel 28:22
- Exodus 6:6
- Exodus 20:2
- Leviticus 20:24
- Ezekiel 6:7 throughout
- Ezekiel 6:13
- Ezekiel 12:15
- Ezekiel 17:24
- 20:5-7
- Hosea 12:10
- Hosea 13:4
- Zechariah 10:6
- Psalm 81:11
- Isaiah 44:24
- Exodus 15:26
- Exodus 20:5
- Deuteronomy 5:9
- Isaiah 43:3
- Isaiah 43:15
- Jeremiah 9:23

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0589, H3068, H3069, H3070, H3071, H3072, H3073, H3074, G06380, G33780

Numbers References:

Numbers 3:13 Numbers 3:41 Numbers 3:45 Numbers 10:10 Numbers 15:41

inherit, inheritance, heir

Definition:

The term “inherit” refers to receiving something valuable from a parent after a parent dies. The term can also refer to receiving something valuable from some other person because of a special relationship with that person. An “inheritance” is the things that are received, and an “heir” is a person who receives an inheritance.

- A physical inheritance that is received may be money, land, or other kinds of property.
- God promised Abraham and his descendants that they would inherit the land of Canaan, that it would belong to them forever.

Translation Suggestions:

- As always, consider first whether there are already terms in the target language for the concept of an heir or an inheritance, and use those terms.
- Depending on the context, other ways that the term “inherit” could be translated might include “receive” or “possess” or “come into possession of.”
- Ways to translate “inheritance” could include “promised gift” or “secure possession.”
- The term “heir” could be translated with a word or phrase that means “privileged child who receives the father’s possessions.”
- The term “heritage” could be translated as “inherited blessings.”

(See also: heir, Canaan, Promised Land, possess)

Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 6:9
- 1 Peter 1:4
- 2 Samuel 21:3
- Acts 7:4-5
- Deuteronomy 20:16
- Galatians 5:21
- Genesis 15:7
- Hebrews 9:15
- Jeremiah 2:7
- Luke 15:11
- Matthew 19:29
- Psalm 79:1

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **4:6** When Abram arrived in Canaan God said, “Look all around you. I will give to you and your descendants all the land that you can see as an **inheritance**.”
- **27:1** One day, an expert in the Jewish law came to Jesus to test him, saying, “Teacher, what must I do to **inherit** eternal life?”
- **35:3** “There was a man who had two sons. The younger son told his father, ‘Father, I want my **inheritance** now!’ So the father divided his property between the two sons.”

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H2490, H2506, H3423, H3425, H4181, H5157, H5159, G28160, G28170, G28190, G28200

Numbers References:

Numbers 13:30 Numbers 16:14 Numbers 18:20 Numbers 18:20 Numbers 18:21 Numbers 18:23 Numbers 18:23 Numbers 18:24 Numbers 18:24 Numbers 18:26 Numbers 21:35 Numbers 26:53 Numbers 26:54 Numbers 26:54 Numbers 26:54 Numbers 26:55 Numbers 26:56 Numbers 26:62 Numbers 27:7 Numbers 27:7 Numbers 27:8 Numbers 27:11 Numbers 27:11 Numbers 32:19 Numbers 32:19 Numbers 32:32 Numbers 33:54 Numbers 33:54 Numbers 33:54 Numbers 33:54 Numbers 34:2 Numbers 34:13 Numbers 34:14 Numbers 34:15 Numbers 34:17 Numbers 34:18 Numbers 34:29 Numbers 35:2 Numbers 35:8 Numbers 35:8 Numbers 36:2 Numbers 36:2 Numbers 36:3 Numbers 36:3 Numbers 36:3 Numbers 36:3 Numbers 36:4 Numbers 36:7 Numbers 36:7 Numbers 36:8 Numbers 36:8 Numbers 36:9 Numbers 36:12

iniquity

Definition:

The term “iniquity” is a word that is very similar in meaning to the term “sin,” but may more specifically refer to conscious acts of wrongdoing or great wickedness.

- The word “iniquity” literally means a twisting or distorting (of the law). It refers to major injustice.
- Iniquity could be described as deliberate, harmful actions against other people.
- Other definitions of iniquity include “perversity” and “depravity,” which are both words that describe conditions of terrible sin.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “iniquity” could be translated as “wickedness” or “perverse actions” or “harmful acts.”
- Often, “iniquity” occurs in the same text as the word “sin” and “transgression” so it is important to have different ways of translating these terms.

(See also: sin, transgress, trespass)

Bible References:

- Daniel 9:13
- Exodus 34:5-7
- Genesis 15:14-16
- Genesis 44:16
- Habakkuk 2:12
- Matthew 13:41
- Matthew 23:27-28
- Micah 3:10

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0205, H1942, H5753, H5758, H5766, H5771, H5932, H5999, H7562, G00920, G00930, G04580, G38920, G41890

Numbers References:

Numbers 5:15 Numbers 5:31 Numbers 5:31 Numbers 14:18 Numbers 14:19 Numbers 14:34 Numbers 15:31 Numbers 18:1 Numbers 18:1 Numbers 18:23 Numbers 23:21 Numbers 30:15

innocent

Definition:

The term “innocent” means to not be guilty of a crime or other wrongdoing. It can also refer more generally to people who are not involved in evil things.

- A person accused of doing something wrong is innocent if he has not committed that wrong.
- Sometimes the term “innocent” is used to refer to people who have done nothing wrong to deserve the bad treatment they are receiving, as in an enemy army attacking “innocent people.”
- In the Bible, “blood” can represent “killing,” so “innocent blood” refers to “killing people who did not deserve to die.”

Translation Suggestions:

- In most contexts, the term “innocent” can be translated as “not guilty” or “not responsible” or “not to blame” for something.
- When referring in general to innocent people, this term could be translated as “who have done nothing wrong” or “who are not involved in evil.”
- “To shed innocent blood” can be translated as “to kill people who did not deserve to die.”

(See also: guilt)

Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 4:4
- 1 Samuel 19:5
- Acts 20:26
- Exodus 23:7
- Jeremiah 22:17
- Job 9:23
- Romans 16:18

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **8:6** After two years, Joseph was still in prison, even though he was **innocent**.
- **40:4** One of them mocked Jesus, but the other said, “Do you have no fear of God? We are guilty, but this man is **innocent**.”
- **40:8** When the soldier guarding Jesus saw everything that happened, he said, “Certainly, this man was **innocent**. He was the Son of God.”

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H2136, H2600, H2643, H5352, H5355, H5356, G01210

Numbers References:

Numbers 32:22

Israel, Israelites

Definition:

The term “Israel” is the name that God gave to Jacob. Often it refers to the nation that is descended from him.

- The name Israel probably means “He struggles with God.”
- The descendants of Jacob became known as the “sons of Israel” or the “people of Israel” or the “nation of Israel” or the “Israelites.”
- God formed his covenant with the people of Israel. They were his chosen people.
- The nation of Israel consisted of twelve tribes.
- Soon after King Solomon died, Israel was divided into two kingdoms: the southern kingdom, called “Judah,” and the northern kingdom, called “Israel.”
- Often the term “Israel” can be translated as “the people of Israel” or “the nation of Israel,” depending on the context.

(See also: Jacob, kingdom of Israel, Judah, nation, twelve tribes of Israel)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 10:1
- 1 Kings 8:2
- Acts 2:36
- Acts 7:24
- Acts 13:23
- John 1:49-51
- Luke 24:21
- Mark 12:29
- Matthew 2:6
- Matthew 27:9
- Philippians 3:4-5

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **8:15** The descendants of the twelve sons became the twelve tribes of **Israel**.
- **9:3** The Egyptians forced the **Israelites** to build many buildings and even whole cities.
- **9:5** A certain **Israelite** woman gave birth to a baby boy.
- **10:1** They said, “This is what the God of **Israel** says, ‘Let my people go!’”
- **14:12** But despite all this, the people of __Israel __ complained and grumbled against God and against Moses.
- **15:9** God fought for **Israel** that day. He caused the Amorites to be confused and he sent large hailstones that killed many of the Amorites.
- **15:12** After this battle, God gave each tribe of __Israel __ its own section of the Promised Land. Then God gave **Israel** peace along all its borders.
- **16:16** So God punished __Israel __ again for worshiping idols.
- **43:6** “Men of **Israel**, Jesus was a man who did many mighty signs and wonders by the power of God, as you have seen and already know.”

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H3478, H3479, H3481, H3482, G09350, G24740, G24750

Numbers References:

Numbers 1:2 Numbers 1:3 Numbers 1:16 Numbers 1:20 Numbers 1:44 Numbers 1:45 Numbers 1:45 Numbers 1:49 Numbers 1:52 Numbers 1:53 Numbers 1:54 Numbers 2:2 Numbers 2:32 Numbers 2:33 Numbers 2:34 Numbers 3:8 Numbers 3:9 Numbers 3:12 Numbers 3:12 Numbers 3:13 Numbers 3:38 Numbers 3:40 Numbers 3:41 Numbers 3:41 Numbers 3:42 Numbers 3:45 Numbers 3:46 Numbers 3:50 Numbers 4:46 Numbers 5:2 Numbers 5:4 Numbers 5:6 Numbers 5:9 Numbers 5:12 Numbers 6:2 Numbers 6:23 Numbers 6:27 Numbers 7:2 Numbers 7:84 Numbers 8:6 Numbers 8:9 Numbers 8:10 Numbers 8:11 Numbers 8:14 Numbers 8:16 Numbers 8:17 Numbers 8:18 Numbers 8:19 Numbers 8:20 Numbers 9:2 Numbers 9:4 Numbers 9:5 Numbers 9:7 Numbers 9:10 Numbers 9:17 Numbers 9:18 Numbers 9:19 Numbers 9:22 Numbers 10:4 Numbers 10:12 Numbers 10:28 Numbers 10:29 Numbers 10:36 Numbers 11:4 Numbers 11:16 Numbers 11:30 Numbers 13:2 Numbers 13:3 Numbers 13:24 Numbers 13:26 Numbers 13:32 Numbers 14:2 Numbers 14:5 Numbers 14:7 Numbers 14:10 Numbers 14:27 Numbers 14:39 Numbers 15:2 Numbers 15:18 Numbers 15:25 Numbers 15:26 Numbers 15:29 Numbers 15:32 Numbers 15:38 Numbers 16:2 Numbers 16:9 Numbers 16:25 Numbers 16:34 Numbers 16:38 Numbers 16:40 Numbers 16:41 Numbers 17:2 Numbers 17:5 Numbers 17:6 Numbers 17:9 Numbers 17:12 Numbers 18:5 Numbers 18:6 Numbers 18:8 Numbers 18:11 Numbers 18:14 Numbers 18:19 Numbers 18:20 Numbers 18:21 Numbers 18:22 Numbers 18:23 Numbers 18:24 Numbers 18:24 Numbers 18:26 Numbers 18:28 Numbers 18:32 Numbers 19:2 Numbers 19:9 Numbers 19:10 Numbers 19:13 Numbers 20:1 Numbers 20:12 Numbers 20:13 Numbers 20:14 Numbers 20:19 Numbers 20:21 Numbers 20:22 Numbers 20:24 Numbers 21:1 Numbers 21:1 Numbers 21:2 Numbers 21:3 Numbers 21:6 Numbers 21:10 Numbers 21:17 Numbers 21:21 Numbers 21:23 Numbers 21:24 Numbers 21:25 Numbers 22:1 Numbers 22:2 Numbers 22:3 Numbers 23:7 Numbers 23:10 Numbers 23:21 Numbers 23:23 Numbers 23:23 Numbers 24:1 Numbers 24:2 Numbers 24:5 Numbers 24:17 Numbers 24:18 Numbers 25:1 Numbers 25:3 Numbers 25:3 Numbers 25:4 Numbers 25:5 Numbers 25:6 Numbers 25:6 Numbers 25:8 Numbers 25:8 Numbers 25:8 Numbers 25:11 Numbers 25:11 Numbers 25:13 Numbers 25:14 Numbers 26:2 Numbers 26:2 Numbers 26:4 Numbers 26:5 Numbers 26:51 Numbers 26:62 Numbers 26:62 Numbers 26:63 Numbers 26:64 Numbers 27:8 Numbers 27:11 Numbers 27:20 Numbers 27:21 Numbers 28:2 Numbers 30:1 Numbers 31:2 Numbers 31:4 Numbers 31:5 Numbers 31:9 Numbers 31:12 Numbers 31:16 Numbers 31:30 Numbers 31:42 Numbers 31:54 Numbers 32:4 Numbers 32:7 Numbers 32:9 Numbers 32:13 Numbers 32:14 Numbers 32:17 Numbers 32:22 Numbers 32:28 Numbers 33:1 Numbers 33:3 Numbers 33:5 Numbers 33:38 Numbers 33:40 Numbers 33:51 Numbers 34:2 Numbers 34:13 Numbers 34:29 Numbers 35:2 Numbers 35:8 Numbers 35:10 Numbers 35:15 Numbers 35:34 Numbers 36:1 Numbers 36:2 Numbers 36:3 Numbers 36:4 Numbers 36:5 Numbers 36:7 Numbers 36:8 Numbers 36:8 Numbers 36:9 Numbers 36:13

jealous, jealousy

Definition:

The terms “jealous” and “jealousy” in this sense refer to a strong desire to protect the purity of a relationship. They can also refer to a strong desire to keep possession of something or someone (See Numbers 11:29).

- The term “jealous” is used to describe the angry feeling that a person has toward their spouse when they suspect that their spouse has been unfaithful in their marriage (See Numbers 5:14).
- The terms “jealous” and “jealousy” are often used to describe God’s strong desire that his covenant people love him, remain spiritually faithful to him, and keep him foremost in their affections.
- When used in the Bible, these terms often refer to God’s strong desire for his people to remain pure and unstained by sin.
- God is “jealous” for his glory, desiring that he be treated with honor and reverence.

Translation Suggestions:

- Ways to translate “jealous” could include “strong protective desire” or “possessive desire.”
- The term “jealousy” could be translated as “strong protective feeling” or “possessive feeling.”
- When talking about God, make sure the translation of these terms does not give a negative meaning of being resentful or envious of someone else.

(See also: envy)

Bible References:

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H7065, H7067, H7068, H7072, G22050, G22060, G38630

Numbers References:

Numbers 5:14 Numbers 5:14 Numbers 5:15 Numbers 5:18 Numbers 5:25 Numbers 5:29 Numbers 5:30 Numbers 5:30 Numbers 25:11 Numbers 25:11 Numbers 25:11 Numbers 25:13

judge, judgment

Definition:

The terms “judge” and “judgment” often refer to making a decision about whether or not something is good, wise, or right. However, these terms can also refer to actions performed by a person as the result of a decision, usually in the context of deciding that something is bad, wrong, or evil.

- The terms “judge” and “judgment” can also mean “to cause harm to” (usually because God has decided a person or nation’s actions are wicked).
- The “judgment of God” often refers to his decision to condemn something or someone as sinful.
- God’s judgment usually includes punishing people for their sin.
- The term “judge” can also mean “condemn.” God instructs his people not to judge each other in this way.
- Another meaning is “arbitrate between” or “judge between,” as in deciding which person is right in a dispute between them.
- In some contexts, God’s “judgments” are what he has decided is right and just. They are similar to his decrees, laws, or precepts.
- “Judgment” can refer to wise decision-making ability. A person who lacks “judgment” does not have the wisdom to make wise decisions.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, ways to translate to “judge” could include to “decide” or to “condemn” or to “punish” or to “decree.”
- The term “judgment” could be translated as “punishment” or “decision” or “verdict” or “decree” or “condemnation.”
- In some contexts, the phrase “in the judgment” could also be translated as “on judgment day” or “during the time when God judges people.”

(See also: decree, judge, judgment day, just, law, law)

Bible References:

- 1 John 4:17
- 1 Kings 3:9
- Acts 10:42-43
- Isaiah 3:14
- James 2:4
- Luke 6:37
- Micah 3:9-11
- Psalm 54:1

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **19:16** The prophets warned the people that if they did not stop doing evil and start obeying God, then God would **judge** them as guilty, and he would punish them.
- **21:8** A king is someone who rules over a kingdom and **judges** the people. The Messiah would come would be the perfect king who would sit on the throne of his ancestor David. He would reign over the whole world forever, and who would always **judge** honestly and make the right decisions.
- **39:4** The high priest tore his clothes in anger and shouted to the other religious leaders, “We do not need any more witnesses! You have heard him say that he is the Son of God. What is your **judgment**?”
- **50:14** But God will **judge** everyone who does not believe in Jesus. He will throw them into hell, where they will weep and grind their teeth in anguish forever.

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0148, H0430, H1777, H1778, H1779, H1780, H1781, H1782, H2940, H4055, H4941, H6414, H6415, H6416, H6417, H6419, H6485, H8196, H8199, H8201, G01440, G03500, G09680, G11060, G12520, G13410, G13450, G13480, G13490, G29170, G29190, G29200, G29220, G29230, G42320

Numbers References:

Numbers 9:3 Numbers 25:5 Numbers 27:5 Numbers 27:11 Numbers 27:21 Numbers 33:4 Numbers 35:12 Numbers 35:24 Numbers 35:29

just, justice, unjust, injustice, justify, justification

Definition:

"Just" and "justice" refer to treating people fairly according to God's laws. Human laws that reflect God's standard of right behavior toward others are also just.

- To be "just" is to act in a fair and right way toward others. It also implies honesty and integrity to do what is morally right in God's eyes.
- To act "justly" means to treat people in a way that is right, good, and proper according to God's laws.
- To receive "justice" means to be treated fairly under the law, either being protected by the law or being punished for breaking the law.
- Sometimes the term "just" has the broader meaning of "righteous" or "following God's laws."

The terms "unjust" and "unjustly" refer to treating people in an unfair and often harmful manner.

- An "injustice" is something bad that is done to someone that the person did not deserve. It refers to treating people unfairly.
- Injustice also means that some people are treated badly while others are treated well.
- Someone who is acting in an unjust way is being "partial" or "prejudiced" because he is not treating people equally.

The terms "justify" and "justification" refer to causing a guilty person to be righteous. Only God can truly justify people.

- When God justifies people, he forgives their sins and makes it as though they have no sin. He justifies sinners who repent and trust in Jesus to save them from their sins.
- "Justification" refers to what God does when he forgives a person's sins and declares that person to be righteous in his sight.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, other ways to translate "just" could include "morally right" or "fair."
- The term "justice" could be translated as "fair treatment" or "deserved consequences."
- To "act justly" could be translated as "treat fairly" or "behave in a just way."
- In some contexts, "just" could be translated as "righteous" or "upright."
- Depending on the context, "unjust" could also be translated as "unfair" or "partial" or "unrighteous."
- The phrase "the unjust" could be translated as "the unjust ones" or "unjust people" or "people who treat others unfairly" or "unrighteous people" or "people who disobey God."
- The term "unjustly" could be translated as "in an unfair manner" or "wrongly" or "unfairly."
- Ways to translate "injustice" could include, "wrong treatment" or "unfair treatment" or "acting unfairly." (See: abstractnouns)
- Other ways to translate "justify" could include "declare (someone) to be righteous" or "cause (someone) to be righteous."
- The term "justification" could be translated as "being declared righteous" or "becoming righteous" or "causing people to be righteous."
- The phrase "resulting in justification" could be translated as "so that God justified many people" or "which resulted in God causing people to be righteous."
- The phrase "for our justification" could be translated as "in order that we could be made righteous by God."

(See also: forgive, guilt, judge, righteous, righteous)

Bible References:

- Genesis 44:16
- 1 Chronicles 18:14
- Isaiah 4:3-4
- Jeremiah 22:3
- Ezekiel 18:16-17
- Micah 3:8
- Matthew 5:43-45
- Matthew 11:19
- Matthew 23:23-24
- Luke 18:3
- Luke 18:8
- Luke 18:13-14
- Luke 21:20-22
- Luke 23:41
- Acts 13:38-39
- Acts 28:4
- Romans 4:1-3
- Galatians 3:6-9
- Galatians 3:11
- Galatians 5:3-4
- Titus 3:6-7
- Hebrews 6:10
- James 2:24
- Revelation 15:3-4

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **17:9** David ruled with **justice** and faithfulness for many years, and God blessed him.
- **18:13** Some of these kings (of Judah) were good men who ruled **justly** and worshiped God.
- **19:16** They (the prophets) all told the people to stop worshiping idols and to start showing **justice** and mercy to others.
- **50:17** Jesus will rule his kingdom with peace and **justice**, and he will be with his people forever.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0205, H2555, H3477, H4941, H5765, H5766, H5767, H6662, H6663, H6664, H6666, H8003, H8264, H8636, G00910, G00930, G00940, G13420, G13440, G13450, G13460, G13470, G17380

Numbers References:

Numbers 23:10

lamb, Lamb of God

Definition:

The term “lamb” refers to a young sheep. Sheep are four-legged animals with thick, woolly hair, used for sacrifices to God. Jesus is called the “Lamb of God” because he was sacrificed to pay for people’s sins.

- These animals are easily led astray and need protecting. God compares human beings to sheep.
- God instructed his people to sacrifice physically perfect sheep and lambs to him.
- Jesus is called the “Lamb of God” who was sacrificed to pay for people’s sins. He was a perfect, unblemished sacrifice because he was completely without sin.

Translation Suggestions:

- If sheep are known in the language area, the name for their young should be used to translate the terms “lamb” and “Lamb of God.”
- “Lamb of God” could be translated as “God’s (sacrificial) Lamb,” or “Lamb sacrificed to God” or “(sacrificial) Lamb from God.”
- If sheep are not known, this term could be translated as “a young sheep” with a footnote that describes what sheep are like. The note could also compare sheep and lambs to an animal from that area that lives in herds, that is timid and defenseless, and that often wanders away.
- Also consider how this term is translated in a Bible translation of a nearby local or national language.

(See: How to Translate Unknowns)

(See also: sheep, shepherd)

Bible References:

- 2 Samuel 12:3
- Ezra 8:35-36
- Isaiah 66:3
- Jeremiah 11:19
- John 1:29
- John 1:36
- Leviticus 14:21-23
- Leviticus 17:1-4
- Luke 10:3
- Revelation 15:3-4

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **5:7** As Abraham and Isaac walked to the place of the sacrifice Isaac asked, “Father, we have wood for the sacrifice, but where is the **lamb**?”
- **11:2** God provided a way to save the firstborn son of anyone who believed in him. Each family had to choose a perfect **lamb** or goat and kill it.
- **24:6** The next day, Jesus came to be baptized by John. When John saw him, he said, “Look! There is the **Lamb of God** who will take away the sin of the world.”
- **45:8** He read, “They led him like a **lamb** to be killed, and as a **lamb** is silent, he did not say a word.”
- **48:8** When God told Abraham to offer his son, Isaac, as a sacrifice, God provided a **lamb** for the sacrifice instead of his son, Isaac. We all deserve to die for our sins! But God provided Jesus, the **Lamb** of God, as a sacrifice to die in our place.
- **48:9** When God sent the last plague on Egypt, he told each Israelite family to kill a perfect **lamb** and spread its blood around the tops and sides of their door frames.

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H7716, G07210, G23160

Numbers References:

Numbers 6:12 Numbers 6:14 Numbers 7:15 Numbers 7:17 Numbers 7:21 Numbers 7:23 Numbers 7:27 Numbers 7:29 Numbers 7:33 Numbers 7:35 Numbers 7:39 Numbers 7:41 Numbers 7:45 Numbers 7:47 Numbers 7:51 Numbers 7:53 Numbers 7:57 Numbers 7:59 Numbers 7:63 Numbers 7:65 Numbers 7:69 Numbers 7:71 Numbers 7:75 Numbers 7:77 Numbers 7:81 Numbers 7:83 Numbers 7:87 Numbers 7:88 Numbers 15:5 Numbers 15:11 Numbers 28:3 Numbers 28:4 Numbers 28:4 Numbers 28:7 Numbers 28:8 Numbers 28:9 Numbers 28:11 Numbers 28:13 Numbers 28:14 Numbers 28:19 Numbers 28:21 Numbers 28:21 Numbers 29:2 Numbers 29:4 Numbers 29:4 Numbers 29:17 Numbers 29:18

law, law of Moses, law of Yahweh, law of God

Definition:

Most simply, the term “law” refers to a rule or instruction that should be followed. In the Bible, the term “law” is often used generally to refer to anything and everything God wants his people to obey and do. The specific term “law of Moses” refers to the commandments and instructions that God gave Moses for the Israelites to obey.

- Depending on the context, the “law” can refer to:
  - the Ten Commandments that God wrote on stone tablets for the Israelites
  - all the laws given to Moses
  - the first five books of the Old Testament
  - the entire Old Testament (also referred to as “scriptures” in the New Testament).
  - all of God’s instructions and will
- The phrase “the Law and the Prophets” is used in the New Testament to refer to the Hebrew scriptures (or “Old Testament”)

Translation Suggestions:

- These terms could be translated using the plural, “laws,” since they refer to many instructions.
- The term “law of Moses” could be translated as “the laws that God told Moses to give to the Israelites.”
- Depending on the context, “the law of Moses” could also be translated as “the law that God told to Moses” or “God’s laws that Moses wrote down” or “the laws that God told Moses to give to the Israelites.”
- Ways to translate “the law” or “law of God” or “God’s laws” could include “laws from God” or “God’s commands” or “laws that God gave” or “everything that God commands” or “all of God’s instructions.”
- The phrase “law of Yahweh” could also be translated as “Yahweh’s laws” or “laws that Yahweh said to obey” or “laws from Yahweh” or “things Yahweh commanded.”

(See also: instruct, Moses, Ten Commandments, lawful, Yahweh)

Bible References:

- Acts 15:6
- Daniel 9:13
- Exodus 28:42-43
- Ezra 7:25-26
- Galatians 2:15
- Luke 24:44
- Matthew 5:18
- Nehemiah 10:29
- Romans 3:20

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **13:7** God also gave many other **laws** and rules to follow. If the people obeyed these **laws**, God promised that he would bless and protect them. If they disobeyed them, God would punish them.
- **13:9** Anyone who disobeyed **God’s law** could bring an animal to the altar in front of the Tent of Meeting as a sacrifice to God.
- **15:13** Then Joshua reminded the people of their obligation to obey the covenant that God had made with the Israelites at Sinai. The people promised to remain faithful to God and follow **his laws**.
- **16:1** After Joshua died, the Israelites disobeyed God and did not drive out the rest of the Canaanites or obey **God’s laws**.
- **21:5** In the New Covenant, God would write **his law** on the people’s hearts, the people would know God personally, they would be his people, and God would forgive their sins.
- **27:1** Jesus answered, “What is written in **God’s law**?”
- **28:1** Jesus said to him, “Why do you call me ‘good?’ There is only one who is good, and that is God. But if you want to have eternal life, obey **God’s laws**.”

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0430, H1881, H1882, H2706, H2710, H3068, H4687, H4872, H4941, H8451, G23160, G35510, G35650

Numbers References:

Numbers 5:29 Numbers 5:30 Numbers 6:13 Numbers 6:21 Numbers 6:21 Numbers 15:16 Numbers 15:29 Numbers 19:2 Numbers 19:14

lord, Lord, master, sir

Definition:

In the Bible, the term "lord" generally refers to someone who has ownership or authority over other people. In the Bible, however, the term is used to address many different kinds of people, including God.

- This word is sometimes translated as "master" when addressing Jesus or when referring to someone who owns slaves.
- Some English versions translate this as "sir" in contexts where someone is politely addressing someone of higher status.

When "Lord" is capitalized, it is a title that refers to God. (Note, however, that when it is used as a form of addressing someone or it occurs at the beginning of a sentence it may be capitalized and have the meaning of "sir" or "master.")

- In the Old Testament, this term is also used in expressions such as "Lord God Almighty" or "Lord Yahweh" or "Yahweh our Lord."

- In the New Testament, the apostles used this term in expressions such as "Lord Jesus" and "Lord Jesus Christ," which communicate that Jesus is God.

- The term "Lord" in the New Testament is also used alone as a direct reference to God, especially in quotations from the Old Testament. For example, the Old Testament text has "Blessed is he who comes in the name of Yahweh" and the New Testament text has "Blessed is he who comes in the name of the Lord."

- In the ULT and UST, the title "Lord" is only used to translate the actual Hebrew and Greek words that mean "Lord." It is never used as a translation of God's name (Yahweh), as is done in many translations.

- Some languages translate "Lord" as "Master" or "Ruler" or some other term that communicates ownership or supreme rule.

- In the appropriate contexts, many translations capitalize the first letter of this term to make it clear to the reader that this is a title referring to God.

- For places in the New Testament where there is a quote from the Old Testament, the term "Lord God" could be used to make it clear that this is a reference to God.

Translation Suggestions:

- This term can be translated with the equivalent of "master" when it refers to a person who owns slaves. It can also be used by a servant to address the person he works for.
- When it refers to Jesus, if the context shows that the speaker sees him as a religious teacher, it can be translated with a respectful address for a religious teacher, such as "master."
- If the person addressing Jesus does not know him, "lord" could be translated with a respectful form of address such as "sir." This translation would also be used for other contexts in which a polite form of address to a man is called for.
- When referring to God the Father or to Jesus, this term is considered a title, written as "Lord" (capitalized) in English.

(See also: God, Jesus, ruler, Yahweh)

Bible References:

- Genesis 39:2
- Joshua 3:9-11
- Psalms 86:15-17
- Jeremiah 27:4
- Lamentations 2:2
- Ezekiel 18:29
- Daniel 9:9
- Daniel 9:17-19
- Malachi 3:1
- Matthew 7:21-23
- Luke 1:30-33
- Luke 16:13
- Romans 6:23
- Ephesians 6:9
- Philippians 2:9-11
- Colossians 3:23
- Hebrews 12:14
- James 2:1
- 1 Peter 1:3
- Jude 1:5
- Revelation 15:4

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **25:5** But Jesus replied to Satan by quoting from the Scriptures. He said, "In God's word, he commands his people, 'Do not test the **Lord** your God.'"
- **25:7** Jesus replied, "Get away from me, Satan! In God's word he commands his people, 'Worship only the **Lord** your God and only serve him.'"
- **26:3** This is the year of the **Lord's** favor.
- **27:2** The law expert replied that God's law says, "Love the **Lord** your God with all your heart, soul, strength, and mind."
- **31:5** Then Peter said to Jesus, "**Master**, if it is you, command me to come to you on the water"
- **43:9** "But know for certain that God has caused Jesus to become both **Lord** and Messiah!"
- **47:3** By means of this demon she predicted the future for people, she made a lot of money for her **masters** as a fortuneteller.
- **47:11** Paul answered, "Believe in Jesus, the **Master**, and you and your family will be saved."

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0113, H0136, H1167, H1376, H4756, H7980, H8323, G02030, G06340, G09620, G12030, G29620

Numbers References:

Numbers 11:28 Numbers 12:11 Numbers 14:17 Numbers 16:13 Numbers 32:25 Numbers 36:2 Numbers 36:2

manna

Definition:

Manna was a white, grain-like food that God provided for the Israelites to eat during the 40 years of living in the wilderness after they left Egypt.

- Manna looked like white flakes which appeared each morning on the ground under the dew. It tasted sweet, like honey.
- The Israelites gathered the manna flakes every day except on the Sabbath.
- On the day before the Sabbath, God told the Israelites to gather twice the amount of manna so they would not have to gather it on their day of rest.
- The word "manna" means "what is it?"
- In the Bible, manna is also referred to as "bread from heaven" and "grain from heaven."

Translation Suggestions

- Other ways to translate this term could include "thin white flakes of food" or "food from heaven."
- Also consider how this term is translated in a Bible translation in a local or national language. (See: How to Translate Unknowns)

(See also: bread, desert, grain, heaven, Sabbath)

Bible References:

- Deuteronomy 8:3
- Exodus 16:27
- Hebrews 9:3-5
- John 6:30-31
- Joshua 5:12

Word Data:

- Strong's: H4478, G31310

Numbers References:

Numbers 11:6 Numbers 11:7 Numbers 11:9

to minister, ministry

Definition:

In the Bible, the term "ministry" refers to serving others by teaching them about God and caring for their spiritual needs.

- In the Old Testament, the priests would "minister" to God in the temple by offering sacrifices to him.
- Their "ministry" also included taking care of the temple and offering prayers to God on behalf of the people.
- The job of "ministering" to people can include serving them spiritually by teaching them about God.
- It can also refer to serving people in physical ways, such as caring for the sick and providing food for the poor.

Translation Suggestions:

- In the context of ministering to people, to "minister" could also be translated as to "serve" or to "care for" or to "meet the needs of."
- When referring to ministering in the temple, the term "minister" could be translated as "serve God in the temple" or "offer sacrifices to God for the people."
- In the context of ministering to God, this could be translated as to "serve" or to "work for God."
- The phrase "ministered to" could also be translated as "took care of" or "provided for" or "helped."

(See also: serve, sacrifice)

Bible References:

- 2 Samuel 20:23-26
- Acts 6:4
- Acts 21:17-19

Word Data:

- Strong's: H6399, H8120, H8334, H8335, G12470, G12480, G12490, G20230, G20380, G24180, G30080, G30090, G30100, G30110, G39300, G52560, G52570, G55240

Numbers References:

Numbers 4:9 Numbers 4:12 Numbers 16:9

miracle, wonder, sign

Definition:

A “miracle” is something amazing that is not possible unless God causes it to happen.

- Examples of miracles that Jesus did include calming a storm and healing a blind man.
- Miracles are sometimes called “wonders” because they cause people to be filled with wonder or amazement.
- The term “wonder” can also refer more generally to amazing displays of God’s power, such as when he created the heavens and the earth.
- Miracles can also be called “signs” because they are used as indicators or evidence that God is the all-powerful one who has complete authority over the universe.
- Some miracles were God’s acts of redemption, such as when he rescued the Israelites from being slaves in Egypt and when he protected Daniel from being hurt by lions.
- Other wonders were God’s acts of judgment, such as when he sent a worldwide flood in Noah’s time and when he brought terrible plagues on the land of Egypt during the time of Moses.
- Many of God’s miracles were the physical healings of sick people or bringing dead people back to life.
- God’s power was shown in Jesus when he healed people, calmed storms, walked on water, and raised people from the dead. These were all miracles.
- God also enabled the prophets and the apostles to perform miracles of healing and other things that were only possible through God’s power.

Translation Suggestions:

- Possible translations of “miracles” or “wonders” could include “impossible things that God does” or “powerful works of God” or “amazing acts of God.”

- The frequent expression “signs and wonders” could be translated as “proofs and miracles” or “miraculous works that prove God’s power” or “amazing miracles that show how great God is.”
- Note that this meaning of a miraculous sign is different from a sign that gives proof or evidence for something. The two can be related.

(See also: power, prophet, apostle, sign)

Bible References:

- 2 Thessalonians 2:8-10
- Acts 4:17
- Acts 4:22
- Daniel 4:1-3
- Deuteronomy 13:1
- Exodus 3:19-22
- John 2:11
- Matthew 13:58

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **16:8** Gideon asked God for two **signs** so he could be sure that God would use him to save Israel.
- **19:14** God did many **miracles** through Elisha.
- **37:10** Many of the Jews believed in Jesus because of this **miracle**.
- **43:6** “Men of Israel, Jesus was a man who did many mighty **signs** and **wonders** by the power of God, as you have seen and already know.”
- **49:2** Jesus did many **miracles** that prove he is God. He walked on water, calmed storms, healed many sick people, drove out demons, raised the dead to life, and turned five loaves of bread and two small fish into enough food for over 5,000 people.

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0226, H0852, H2368, H2858, H4150, H4159, H4864, H5251, H5824, H5953, H6381, H6382, H6383, H6395, H6725, H7560, H7583, H8047, H8074, H8539, H8540, G08800, G12130, G12290, G14110, G15690, G17180, G17700, G18390, G22850, G22960, G22970, G31670, G39020, G45910, G45920, G50590

Numbers References:

Numbers 6:2 Numbers 14:11

Most High

Definition:

The term “Most High” is a title for God. It refers to his greatness or authority. This title emphasizes God’s supreme authority and power over all creation.

- The meaning of this term is similar to the meaning of “Sovereign” or “Supreme.”
- The word “high” in this title does not refer to physical height or distance. It refers to greatness.

Translation Suggestions:

- This term can also be translated as “Most High God” or “Most Supreme being” or “God Most High” or “Greatest One” or “Supreme One” or “God, who is Greater than all.”
- If a word like “high” is used, make sure it does not refer to being physically high or tall.

(See also: God)

Bible References:

- Acts 7:47-50
- Acts 16:16-18
- Daniel 4:17-18
- Deuteronomy 32:7-8
- Genesis 14:17-18
- Hebrews 7:1-3
- Hosea 7:16
- Lamentations 3:35
- Luke 1:32

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H5945, G53100

Numbers References:

Numbers 24:16

Nazirite, Nazirite vow

Definition:

The term “Nazirite” refers to a person who has taken a “Nazirite vow.” Mostly men took this vow, but women could also take it.

- A person who took the Nazirite vow agreed to not have any food or drink made from grapes for period that had been agreed upon for the fulfillment of the vow. During this period he was also not to get his hair cut and not go near a dead body.
- When the required length of time had passed, and the vow had been fulfilled, the Nazirite would go to the priest and provide an offering. This would include the cutting and burning of his hair. All other restrictions would also be removed.
- Samson is a well-known man in the Old Testament who was under the Nazirite vow.
- The angel announcing John the Baptist’s birth told Zechariah that his son would not drink strong drink, which may indicate that John was under the Nazirite vow.
- According to a passage in the book of Acts the apostle Paul may also have at one time taken this vow, according to one passage in the book of Acts.

(Translation suggestions: Translate Names)

(See also: John (the Baptist), sacrifice, Samson, vow, Zechariah (OT))

Bible References:

- Acts 18:18-19
- Amos 2:11-12
- Judges 13:5
- Numbers 6:1-4

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H5139

Numbers References:

Numbers 6:2 Numbers 6:13 Numbers 6:18
Numbers 6:19 Numbers 6:20 Numbers 6:21

parable

Definition:

The term “parable” usually refers to a short story or object lesson that is used to explain or teach a moral truth.

- Jesus used parables to teach his disciples. Although he also told parables to the crowds of people, he did not always explain the parable.
- A parable could be used to reveal truth to his disciples while hiding that truth from people like the Pharisees who did not believe in Jesus.
- The prophet Nathan told David a parable to show the king his terrible sin.
- The story of the Good Samaritan is an example of a parable that is a story. Jesus’ comparison of old and new wineskins is an example of a parable that was an object lesson to help the disciples understand Jesus’ teachings.

(See also: Samaria)

Bible References:

- Luke 5:36
- Luke 6:39
- Luke 8:4
- Luke 8:9-10
- Mark 4:1
- Matthew 13:3
- Matthew 13:10
- Matthew 13:13

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1819, H4912, G38500, G39420

Numbers References:

Numbers 21:27

Passover

Definition:

The “Passover” is the name of a religious festival that the Jews celebrate every year, to remember how God rescued their ancestors, the Israelites, from slavery in Egypt.

- The name of this festival comes from the fact that God “passed over” the houses of the Israelites and did not kill their sons when he killed the firstborn sons of the Egyptians.
- The Passover celebration includes a special meal of a perfect lamb that they have killed and roasted, as well as bread made without yeast. These foods remind them of the meal that the Israelites ate the night before they escaped from Egypt.
- God told the Israelites to eat this meal every year in order to remember and celebrate how God “passed over” their houses and how he set them free from slavery in Egypt.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “Passover” could be translated by combining the words “pass” and “over” or another combination of words that has this meaning.
- It is helpful if the name of this festival has a clear connection to the words used to explain what the angel of the Lord did in passing by the houses of the Israelites and sparing their sons.

Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 5:7
- 2 Chronicles 30:13-15
- 2 Kings 23:23
- Deuteronomy 16:2
- Exodus 12:26-28
- Ezra 6:21-22
- John 13:1
- Joshua 5:10-11
- Leviticus 23:4-6
- Numbers 9:3

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **12:14** God commanded the Israelites to remember his victory over the Egyptians and their deliverance from slavery by celebrating the **Passover** every year.
- **38:1** Every year, the Jews celebrated the **Passover**. This was a celebration of how God had saved their ancestors from slavery in Egypt many centuries earlier.
- **38:4** Jesus celebrated the **Passover** with his disciples.
- **48:9** When God saw the blood, he passed over their houses and did not kill their firstborn sons. This event is called the **Passover**.
- **48:10** Jesus is our **Passover** Lamb. He was perfect and sinless and was killed at the time of the **Passover** celebration.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H6453, G39570

Numbers References:

Numbers 9:2 Numbers 9:4 Numbers 9:5
Numbers 9:6 Numbers 9:10 Numbers 9:12
Numbers 9:13 Numbers 9:14 Numbers 9:14
Numbers 28:16 Numbers 33:3

perish

Definition:

The term "perish" means to die or be destroyed, usually as the result of violence or disaster. In the New Testament, it often has the spiritual meaning of being lost or separated from the people of God.

Spiritual Meaning of "Perish:"

- People who are "perishing" are those who have refused to trust in Jesus for their salvation.
- Those who "perish" will not live eternally with God in heaven. Instead, they will live eternally in hell under God's punishment.
- Everyone will die physically, but only those who do not trust in Jesus for their salvation will perish eternally.
- When "perish" is used in a spiritual sense, make sure that your translation expresses this differently than dying physically.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, ways to translate this term could include "be lost from God's people," "die eternally," "be punished in hell," or "be destroyed."
- Try to use a term or expression that does not only mean "die physically" or "cease to exist."

(See also: death, everlasting)

Bible References:

- 1 Peter 1:23
- 2 Corinthians 2:16-17
- 2 Thessalonians 2:10
- Jeremiah 18:18
- Psalms 49:18-20
- Zechariah 9:5-7
- Zechariah 13:8

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0006, H0007, H0008, H1478, H1820, H1826, H5486, H5595, H6544, H8045, G05990, G06220, G06840, G08530, G13110, G27040, G48810, G53560

Numbers References:

Numbers 16:33 Numbers 17:12 Numbers 17:12 Numbers 21:29 Numbers 21:30

pray, prayer

Definition:

The terms “pray” and “prayer” refer to talking with God. These terms are also used to refer to people trying to talk to a false god.

- People can pray silently, talking to God with their thoughts, or they can pray aloud, speaking to God with their voice. Sometimes prayers are written down, such as when David wrote his prayers in the Book of Psalms.
- Prayer can include asking God for mercy, for help with a problem, and for wisdom in making decisions.
- Often people ask God to heal people who are sick or who need his help in other ways.
- People also thank and praise God when they are praying to him.
- Praying includes confessing our sins to God and asking him to forgive us.
- Talking to God is sometimes called “communing” with him as our spirit communicates with his spirit, sharing our emotions and enjoying his presence.
- This term could be translated as “talking to God” or “communicating with God.” The translation of this term should be able to include praying that is silent.

(See also: false god, forgive, praise)

Bible References:

- 1 Thessalonians 3:9
- Acts 8:24
- Acts 14:26
- Colossians 4:4
- John 17:9
- Luke 11:1
- Matthew 5:43-45
- Matthew 14:22-24

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **6:5** Isaac **prayed** for Rebekah, and God allowed her to get pregnant with twins.
- **13:12** But Moses **prayed** for them, and God listened to his **prayer** and did not destroy them.

- **19:8** Then the prophets of Baal **prayed** to Baal, “Hear us, O Baal!”
- **21:7** Priests also **prayed** to God for the people.
- **38:11** Jesus told his disciples to **pray** that they would not enter into temptation.
- **43:13** The disciples continually listened to the teaching of the apostles, spent time together, ate together, and **prayed** with each other.
- **49:18** God tells you to **pray**, to study his word, to worship him with other Christians, and to tell others what he has done for you.

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0559, H0577, H1156, H2470, H3863, H3908, H4994, H6279, H6293, H6419, H6739, H7592, H7878, H7879, H7881, H8034, H8605, G01540, G11620, G11890, G17830, G20650, G21710, G21720, G38700, G43350, G43360

Numbers References:

Numbers 11:2 Numbers 21:7 Numbers 21:7

priest, priesthood

Definition:

In the Bible, a priest was someone who was chosen to offer sacrifices to God on behalf of God’s people. The “priesthood” was the name for the office or condition of being a priest.

- In the Old Testament, God chose Aaron and his descendants to be his priests for the people of Israel.
- The “priesthood” was a right and a responsibility that was passed down from father to son in the Levite clan.
- The Israelite priests had the responsibility of offering the people’s sacrifices to God, along with other duties in the temple.
- Priests also offered regular prayers to God on behalf of his people and performed other religious rites.
- The priests pronounced formal blessings on people and taught them God’s laws.
- In Jesus’ time, there were different levels of priests, including the chief priests and the high priest.
- Jesus is our “great high priest” who intercedes for us in God’s presence. He offered himself as the ultimate sacrifice for sin. This means that the sacrifices made by human priests are no longer needed.
- In the New Testament, every believer in Jesus is called a “priest” who can come directly to God in prayer to intercede for himself and other people.
- In ancient times, there were also pagan priests who presented offerings to false gods such as Baal.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, the term “priest” could be translated as “sacrifice person” or “God’s intermediary” or “sacrificial mediator” or “person God appoints to represent him.”
- The translation of “priest” should be different from the translation of “mediator.”

- Some translations may prefer to always say something like “Israelite priest” or “Jewish priest” or “Yahweh’s priest” or “priest of Baal” to make it clear that this does not refer to a modern-day type of priest.
- The term used to translate “priest” should be different from the terms for “chief priest” and “high priest” and “Levite” and “prophet.”

(See also: Aaron, high priest, mediator, sacrifice)

Bible References:

- 2 Chronicles 6:41
- Genesis 14:17-18
- Genesis 47:22
- John 1:19-21
- Luke 10:31
- Mark 1:44
- Mark 2:25-26
- Matthew 8:4
- Matthew 12:4
- Micah 3:9-11
- Nehemiah 10:28-29
- Nehemiah 10:34-36
- Revelation 1:6

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **4:7** “Melchizedek, the **priest** of God Most High”
- **13:9** Anyone who disobeyed God’s law could bring an animal to the altar in front of the Tent of Meeting as a sacrifice to God. A **priest** would kill the animal and burn it on the altar. The blood of the animal that was sacrificed covered the person’s sin and made that person clean in God’s sight. God chose Moses’ brother, Aaron, and Aaron’s descendants to be his **priests**.
- **19:7** So the **priests** of Baal prepared a sacrifice but did not light the fire.
- **21:7** An Israelite **priest** was someone who made sacrifices to God on behalf of the people as a substitute for the punishment of their sins. **Priests** also prayed to God for the people.

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H3547, H3548, H3549, H3550, G07480, G07490, G24050, G24060, G24070, G24090, G24200

Numbers References:

Numbers 3:3 Numbers 3:3 Numbers 3:4 Numbers 3:6 Numbers 3:10 Numbers 3:32 Numbers 4:16 Numbers 4:28 Numbers 4:33 Numbers 5:8 Numbers 5:9 Numbers 5:10 Numbers 5:15 Numbers 5:16 Numbers 5:17 Numbers 5:18 Numbers 5:18 Numbers 5:19 Numbers 5:21 Numbers 5:23 Numbers 5:25 Numbers 5:26 Numbers 5:30 Numbers 6:10 Numbers 6:11 Numbers 6:16 Numbers 6:17 Numbers 6:19 Numbers 6:20 Numbers 7:8 Numbers 10:8 Numbers 15:25 Numbers 15:28 Numbers 16:10 Numbers 16:37 Numbers 16:39 Numbers 18:1 Numbers 18:7 Numbers 18:7 Numbers 18:28 Numbers 19:3 Numbers 19:4 Numbers 19:6 Numbers 19:7 Numbers 25:7 Numbers 25:11 Numbers 25:13 Numbers 26:1 Numbers 26:3 Numbers 26:63 Numbers 26:64 Numbers 27:2 Numbers 27:19 Numbers 27:21 Numbers 31:6 Numbers 31:12 Numbers 31:13 Numbers 31:26 Numbers 31:29 Numbers 31:51 Numbers 31:54 Numbers 32:2 Numbers 32:28 Numbers 33:38 Numbers 34:17 Numbers 35:25 Numbers 35:32

prophet, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess

Definition:

A “prophet” is a man who speaks God’s messages to people. A woman who does this is called a “prophetess.”

- Often prophets warned people to turn away from their sins and obey God.
- A “prophecy” is the message that the prophet speaks. To “prophesy” means to speak God’s messages.
- Often the message of a prophecy was about something that would happen in the future.
- Many prophecies in the Old Testament have already been fulfilled.
- In the Bible the collection of books written by prophets are sometimes referred to as “the prophets.”
- For example the phrase, “the law and the prophets” is a way of referring to all the Hebrew scriptures, which are also known as the “Old Testament.”
- An older term for a prophet was “seer” or “someone who sees.”
- Sometimes the term “seer” refers to a false prophet or to someone who practices divination.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “prophet” could be translated as “God’s spokesman” or “man who speaks for God” or “man who speaks God’s messages.”
- A “seer” could be translated as “person who sees visions” or “man who sees the future from God.”
- The term “prophetess” could be translated as “spokeswoman for God” or “woman who speaks for God” or “woman who speaks God’s messages.”
- Ways to translate “prophecy” could include, “message from God” or “prophet message.”
- The term “prophesy” could be translated as “speak words from God” or “tell God’s message.”
- The figurative expression, “law and the prophets” could also be translated as “the books of the law and of the prophets” or “everything written about God and his people, including God’s laws and what his prophets preached.” (See: synecdoche)
- When referring to a prophet (or seer) of a false god, it may be necessary to translate this as “false prophet (seer)” or “prophet (seer) of a false god” or “prophet of Baal,” for example.

(See also: Baal, divination, false god, false prophet, fulfill, law, vision)

Bible References:

- 1 Thessalonians 2:14-16
- Acts 3:25
- John 1:43-45
- Malachi 4:4-6
- Matthew 1:23
- Matthew 2:18
- Matthew 5:17
- Psalm 51:1

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **12:12** When the Israelites saw that the Egyptians were dead, they trusted in God and believed that Moses was a **prophet** of God.
- **17:13** God was very angry about what David had done, so he sent the **prophet** Nathan to tell David how evil his sin was.
- **19:1** Throughout the history of the Israelites, God sent them **prophets**. The **prophets** heard messages from God and then told the people God’s messages.
- **19:6** All the people of the entire kingdom of Israel, including the 450 **prophets** of Baal, came to Mount Carmel.
- **19:17** Most of the time, the people did not obey God. They often mistreated the **prophets** and sometimes even killed them.
- **21:9** The **prophet** Isaiah **prophesied** that the Messiah would be born from a virgin.
- **43:5** “This fulfills the **prophecy** made by the **prophet** Joel in which God said, ‘In the last days, I will pour out my Spirit.’”
- **43:7** “This fulfills the **prophecy** which says, ‘You will not let your Holy One rot in the grave.’”

- **48:12** Moses was a great **prophet** who proclaimed the word of God. But Jesus is the greatest **prophet** of all. He is the Word of God.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2372, H2374, H4853, H5012, H5013, H5016, H5017, H5029, H5030, H5031, H5197, G24950, G43940, G43950, G43960, G43970, G43980, G55780

Numbers References:

Numbers 11:25 Numbers 11:26 Numbers 11:27 Numbers 11:29 Numbers 12:6

pure, purify, purification

Definition:

To be "pure" means to have no flaw or to have nothing mixed in that is not supposed to be there. To purify something is to cleanse it and remove anything that contaminates or pollutes it.

- In regard to Old Testament laws, "purify" and "purification" refer mainly to the cleansing from things that make an object or a person ritually unclean, such as disease, body fluids, or childbirth.
- The Old Testament also had laws telling people how to be purified from sin, usually by the sacrifice of an animal. This was only temporary and the sacrifices had to be repeated over and over again.
- In the New Testament, to be purified often refers to being cleansed from sin.
- The only way that people can be completely and permanently purified from sin is through repenting and receiving God's forgiveness, through trusting in Jesus and his sacrifice.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term "purify" could be translated as "make pure" or "cleanse" or "cleanse from all contamination" or "get rid of all sin."
- A phrase such as "when the time for their purification was over" could be translated as "when they had purified themselves by waiting the required number of days."
- The phrase "provided purification for sins" could be translated as "provided a way for people to be completely cleansed from their sin."
- Other ways to translate "purification" could include "cleansing" or "spiritual washing" or "becoming ritually clean."

(See also: atonement, clean, spirit)

Bible References:

- 1 Timothy 1:5
- Exodus 31:6-9
- Hebrews 9:13-15
- James 4:8

- Luke 2:22
- Revelation 14:4

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1249, H1252, H1253, H1305, H1865, H2134, H2135, H2141, H2212, H2398, H2403, H2561, H2889, H2890, H2891, H2892, H2893, H3795, H3800, H4795, H5343, H5462, H6337, H6884, H6942, H8562, G00480, G00490, G00530, G00540, G15060, G25110, G25120, G25130, G25140

Numbers References:

Numbers 6:9 Numbers 8:6 Numbers 8:7 Numbers 8:15 Numbers 8:21 Numbers 19:12 Numbers 19:12 Numbers 19:19 Numbers 19:19 Numbers 19:20 Numbers 31:19 Numbers 31:20 Numbers 31:23 Numbers 31:23

ransom, ransomed

Definition:

The term "ransom" refers to a sum of money or other payment that is demanded or paid for the release of a person who is held captive.

- As a verb, to "ransom" means to make a payment or to do something self-sacrificially in order to rescue someone who has been captured, enslaved or imprisoned. This meaning of "buy back" is similar to the meaning of "redeem."
- Jesus allowed himself to be killed as a ransom to free sinful people from their enslavement to sin. This act of God buying back his people through paying the penalty of their sin is also called "redemption" in the Bible.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term to "ransom" could also be translated as to "pay to release" or to "pay a price to free" or to "buy back."
- The phrase to "pay a ransom" could be translated as to "pay the price (of freedom)" or to "pay the penalty (to free people)" or to "make the required payment."
- The noun "ransom" could be translated as "a buying back" or "a penalty paid" or "the price paid" (to free or buy back people or land).
- The terms a "ransom" and a "redemption" have the same meaning in English but are sometimes used slightly differently. Other languages may have only one term for this concept.
- Make sure this is translated differently from "atonement."

(See also: atonement, redeem)

Bible References:

- 1 Timothy 2:6
- Isaiah 43:3
- Job 6:23
- Leviticus 19:20
- Matthew 20:28
- Psalms 49:7

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1350, H3724, H6299, H6306, G04870, G30830

Numbers References:

Numbers 3:46 Numbers 3:48 Numbers 3:49 Numbers 3:49 Numbers 3:51 Numbers 35:31 Numbers 35:32

redeem, redeemer, redemption

Definition:

The term "redeem" refers to buying back something or someone that has been previously owned or held captive. A "redeemer" is someone who redeems something or someone.

- God gave laws to the Israelites about how to redeem people or things. For example, someone could redeem a person who was in slavery by paying the price so that the slave could go free. The word "ransom" also refers to this practice.
- If someone's land had been sold, a relative of that person could "redeem" or "buy back" that land so that it would stay in the family.
- These practices show how God redeems people who are in slavery to sin. When he died on the cross, Jesus paid the full price for people's sins and redeemed all those who trust in him for salvation. People who have been redeemed by God are set free from sin and its punishment.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, the term "redeem" could also be translated as "buy back" or "pay to free (someone)" or "ransom."
- The term "redemption" could be translated as "ransom" or "freedom payment" or "buying back."
- The words "ransom" and "redeem" have basically the same meaning, so some languages may have only one term to translate both these words. The word "ransom," however, can also mean the payment necessary to "redeem" something or someone. The term "redeem" never refers to the actual payment itself.

(See also: free, ransom)

Bible References:

- Colossians 1:13-14
- Ephesians 1:7-8
- Ephesians 5:16

- Galatians 3:13-14
- Galatians 4:5
- Luke 2:38
- Ruth 2:20

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1350, H1353, H6299, H6302, H6304, H6306, H6561, H7069, G00590, G06290, G18050, G30840, G30850

Numbers References:

Numbers 5:8 Numbers 18:15 Numbers 18:15 Numbers 18:16 Numbers 18:16 Numbers 18:17 Numbers 35:12 Numbers 35:19 Numbers 35:21 Numbers 35:24 Numbers 35:25 Numbers 35:27 Numbers 35:27

restore, restoration

Definition:

The terms "restore" and "restoration" refer to causing something to return to its original place or condition.

- When a diseased body part is restored, this means it has been "healed."
- A broken relationship that is restored has been "reconciled." God restores sinful people and brings them back to himself.
- If people have been restored to their home country, they have been "brought back" or "returned" to that country.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, ways to translate "restore" could include "renew" or "repay" or "return" or "heal" or "bring back."
- Other expressions for this term could be "make new" or "make like new again."
- When property is "restored," it has been "repaired" or "replaced" or "given back" to its owner.
- Depending on the context, "restoration" could be translated as "renewal" or "healing" or "reconciliation."

Bible References:

- 2 Kings 5:10
- Acts 3:21
- Acts 15:15-18
- Isaiah 49:5-6
- Jeremiah 15:19-21
- Lamentations 5:22
- Leviticus 6:5-7
- Luke 19:8
- Matthew 12:13
- Psalm 80:1-3

Word Data:

- Strong's: H7725, H7999, H8421, G06000, G26750

Numbers References:

Numbers 5:8 Numbers 8:25 Numbers 14:3 Numbers 17:10 Numbers 18:9 Numbers 22:34 Numbers 23:5 Numbers 23:16 Numbers 23:20 Numbers 25:11 Numbers 32:22 Numbers 35:32

Sabbath

Definition:

The term “Sabbath” refers to the seventh day of the week, which God commanded the Israelites to set apart as a day of rest and doing no work.

- After God finished creating the world in six days, he rested on the seventh day. In the same way, God commanded the Israelites to set aside the seventh day as a special day to rest and worship him.
- The command to “keep the Sabbath holy” is one of the ten commandments that God wrote on the stone tablets that he gave Moses for the Israelites.
- Following the Jewish system of counting days, the Sabbath begins on Friday at sundown and lasts until Saturday at sundown.
- Sometimes in the Bible the Sabbath is called “Sabbath day” rather than only the Sabbath.

Translation Suggestions:

- This could also be translated as “resting day” or “day for resting” or “day of not working” or “God’s day of rest.”
- Some translations capitalize this term to show that it is a special day, as in “Sabbath Day” or “Resting Day.”
- Consider how this term is translated in a local or national language.

(See also: How to Translate Unknowns)

(See also: rest)

Bible References:

- 2 Chronicles 31:2-3
- Acts 13:26-27
- Exodus 31:14
- Isaiah 56:6-7
- Lamentations 2:6
- Leviticus 19:3
- Luke 13:14
- Mark 2:27
- Matthew 12:2
- Nehemiah 10:32-33

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **13:5** "Always be sure to keep the **Sabbath day** holy. That is, do all your work in six days, for the seventh day is a day for you to rest and to honor me."
- **26:2** Jesus went to the town of Nazareth where he had lived during his childhood. On the **Sabbath**, he went to the place of worship.
- **41:3** The day after Jesus was buried was a **Sabbath** day, and the Jews were not permitted to go to the tomb on that day.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H4868, H7676, H7677, G43150, G45210

Numbers References:

Numbers 15:32 Numbers 28:9 Numbers 28:10 Numbers 28:10

sanctuary

Definition:

The term "sanctuary" literally means "holy place" and refers to a place that God has made sacred and holy. It also can refer to a place that provides protection and safety.

- In the Old Testament, the term "sanctuary" was often used to refer to the tabernacle or temple building where the "holy place" and "most holy place" were located.
- God referred to the sanctuary as the place where he lived among his people, the Israelites.
- He also called himself a "sanctuary" or safe place for his people where they can find protection.

Translation Suggestions:

- This term has a basic meaning of "holy place" or "place that is set apart."
- Depending on the context, the term "sanctuary" could be translated as "holy place" or "sacred building" or "God's holy dwelling place" or "holy place of protection" or "sacred place of safety."
- The phrase "shekel of the sanctuary" could be translated as "kind of shekel given for the tabernacle" or "shekel used in paying the tax to take care of the temple."
- Note: Be careful that the translation of this term does not refer to a worship room in a modern-day church.

(See also: holy, Holy Spirit, holy, set apart, tabernacle, tax, temple)

Bible References:

- Amos 7:13
- Exodus 25:3-7
- Ezekiel 25:3
- Hebrews 8:1-2
- Luke 11:49-51
- Numbers 18:1
- Psalms 78:69

Word Data:

- Strong's: H4720, H6944, G00400

Numbers References:

Numbers 10:21 Numbers 18:29

save, saved, safe, salvation, rescue

Definition:

The term "save" refers to keeping someone from experiencing something bad or harmful. To "be safe" means to be protected from harm or danger.

- In a physical sense, people can be saved or rescued from harm, danger, or death.
- In a spiritual sense, if a person has been "saved," then God, through Jesus' death on the cross, has forgiven him and rescued him from being punished in hell for his sin.
- People can save or rescue people from danger, but only God can save people from being punished eternally for their sins.

The term "salvation" refers to being saved or rescued from evil and danger.

- In the Bible, "salvation" usually refers to the spiritual and eternal deliverance granted by God to those who repent of their sins and believe in Jesus.
- The Bible also talks about God saving or delivering his people from their physical enemies.

Translation Suggestions:

- Ways to translate "save" could include "deliver" or "keep from harm" or "take out of harm's way" or "keep from dying."

- In the expression "whoever would save his life," the term "save" could also be translated as "preserve" or "protect."

- The term "safe" could be translated as "protected from danger" or "in a place where nothing can harm."

- The term "salvation" could also be translated using words related to "save" or "rescue," as in "God's saving people (from being punished for their sins)" or "God's rescuing his people (from their enemies)."

- "God is my salvation" could be translated as "God is the one who saves me."
- "You will draw water from the wells of salvation" could be translated as "You will be refreshed as with water because God is rescuing you."

(See also: cross, deliver, punish, sin, Savior)

Bible References:

- Genesis 49:18
- Genesis 47:25-26
- Psalms 80:3
- Jeremiah 16:19-21
- Micah 6:3-5
- Luke 2:30
- Luke 8:36-37
- Acts 4:12
- Acts 28:28
- Acts 2:21
- Romans 1:16
- Romans 10:10
- Ephesians 6:17
- Philippians 1:28
- 1 Timothy 1:15-17
- Revelation 19:1-2

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **9:8** Moses tried to **save** his fellow Israelite.
- **11:2** God provided a way to **save** the firstborn son of anyone who believed in him.
- **12:5** Moses told the Israelites, "Stop being afraid! God will fight for you today and **save** you."
- **12:13** The Israelites sang many songs to celebrate their new freedom and to praise God because he **saved** them from the Egyptian army.
- **16:17** This pattern repeated many times: the Israelites would sin, God would punish them, they would repent, and God would send a deliverer to **save** them.
- **44:8** "You crucified Jesus, but God raised him to life again! You rejected him, but there is no other way to be **saved** except through the power of Jesus!"
- **47:11** The jailer trembled as he came to Paul and Silas and asked, "What must I do to be **saved**?" Paul answered, "Believe in Jesus, the Master, and you and your family will be **saved**."
- **49:12** Good works cannot **save** you.
- **49:13** God will **save** everyone who believes in Jesus and receives him as their Master. But he will not **save** anyone who does not believe in him.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0983, H2421, H2502, H3444, H3467, H3468, H4190, H4422, H4931, H5338, H6308, H6403, H7682, H7951, H7965, H8104, H8199, H8668, G08030, G08040, G08060, G12950, G15080, G49820, G49910, G49920, G51980

Numbers References:

Numbers 10:9

sign, proof, reminder

Definition:

The term “sign” usually refers an object, event, or action that communicates a special meaning.

- In the Bible, signs are sometimes given in connection to a promise or covenant that God has made:
  - The book of Genesis describes the rainbow God created in the sky as a sign (or reminder) to himself that he has promised he will never again destroy all life with a worldwide flood.
  - In the book of Genesis, God commanded the Israelites to circumcise their sons as a sign (or indicator) of the fact that he had made his covenant with them.
- Signs can reveal or point to something:
  - The book of Luke describes that an angel gave shepherds a sign that would help them know which baby in Bethlehem was the newborn Messiah.
  - Judas kissed Jesus as a sign to the religious leaders that Jesus was the one they should arrest.
- Signs can prove that something is true:
  - The book of Exodus describes the plagues that destroyed Egypt as signs that showed who Yahweh was and proved that he was greater than Pharaoh and the Egyptian gods.
  - The book of Acts describes the miracles performed by the prophets and apostles as signs that proved they were speaking God’s message.
  - The book of John describes the miracles that Jesus performed as signs that proved he was truly the Messiah.

Translation Suggestions:

- The frequent expression “signs and wonders” could be translated as “proofs and miracles” or “miraculous works that prove God’s power” or “amazing miracles that show how great God is.”
- Depending on its context, “sign” could also be translated as “signal” or “symbol” or “mark” or “evidence” or “proof” or “gesture.”
- To “make signs with the hands” could also be translated as “motion with the hands” or “gesture with the hands” or “make gestures.”
- In some languages, there may be one word for a “sign” that proves something and a different word for a “sign” that is a miracle.

(See also: miracle, apostle, Christ, covenant, circumcise)

Bible References:

- Acts 2:18-19
- Exodus 4:8-9
- Exodus 31:12-15
- Genesis 1:14
- Genesis 9:12
- John 2:18
- Luke 2:12
- Mark 8:12
- Psalms 89:5-6

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0226, H0852, H2368, H2858, H4150, H4159, H4864, H5251, H5824, H6161, H6725, H6734, H7560, G03640, G08800, G12130, G12290, G17180, G17300, G17320, G17700, G39020, G41020, G45910, G45920, G49530, G49730, G52800

Numbers References:

Numbers 2:2 Numbers 14:22 Numbers 16:38 Numbers 17:10 Numbers 26:10

sin, sinful, sinner, sinning

Definition:

The term "sin" refers to actions, thoughts, and words that are against God's will and laws. Sin can also refer to not doing something that God wants us to do.

- Sin includes anything we do that does not obey or please God, even things that other people do not know about.
- Thoughts and actions that disobey God's will are called "sinful."
- Because Adam sinned, all human beings are born with a "sinful nature," a nature that that controls them and causes them to sin.
- A "sinner" is someone who sins, so every human being is a sinner.
- Sometimes the word "sinners" was used by religious people like the Pharisees to refer to people who did not keep the law as well as the Pharisees thought they should.
- The term "sinner" was also used for people who were considered to be worse sinners than other people. For example, this label was given to tax collectors and prostitutes.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term "sin" could be translated with a word or phrase that means "disobedience to God" or "going against God's will" or "evil behavior and thoughts" or "wrongdoing."
- To "sin" could also be translated as to "disobey God" or to "do wrong."
- Depending on the context "sinful" could be translated as "full of wrongdoing" or "wicked" or "immoral" or "evil" or "rebelling against God."
- Depending on the context the term "sinner" could be translated with a word or phrase that means "person who sins" or "person who does wrong things" or "person who disobeys God" or "person who disobeys the law."
- The term "sinners" could be translated by a word or phrase that means "very sinful people" or "people considered to be very sinful" or "immoral people."
- Ways to translate "tax collectors and sinners" could include "people who collect money for the government, and other very sinful people" or "very sinful people, including (even) tax collectors."
- Make sure the translation of this term can include sinful behavior and thoughts, even those that other people do not see or know about.
- The term "sin" should be general, and different from the terms for "wickedness" and "evil."

(See also: disobey, evil, flesh, tax collector)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 9:1-3
- 1 John 1:10
- 1 John 2:2
- 2 Samuel 7:12-14
- Acts 3:19
- Daniel 9:24
- Genesis 4:7
- Hebrews 12:2
- Isaiah 53:11
- Jeremiah 18:23
- Leviticus 4:14
- Luke 15:18
- Matthew 12:31
- Romans 6:23
- Romans 8:4

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **3:15** God said, "I promise I will never again curse the ground because of the evil things people do, or destroy the world by causing a flood, even though people are **sinful** from the time they are children."
- **13:12** God was very angry with them because of their **sin** and planned to destroy them.
- **20:1** The kingdoms of Israel and Judah both **sinned** against God. They broke the covenant that God made with them at Sinai.
- **21:13** The prophets also said that the Messiah would be perfect, having no **sin**. He would die to receive the punishment for other people's **sin**.

- **35:1** One day, Jesus was teaching many tax collectors and other **sinners** who had gathered to hear him.
- **38:5** Then Jesus took a cup and said, "Drink this. It is my blood of the New Covenant that is poured out for the forgiveness of **sins**."
- **43:11** Peter answered them, "Every one of you should repent and be baptized in the name of Jesus Christ so that God will forgive your **sins**."
- **48:8** We all deserve to die for our **sins**!
- **49:17** Even though you are a Christian, you will still be tempted to **sin**. But God is faithful and says that if you confess your **sins**, he will forgive you. He will give you strength to fight against **sin**.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0817, H0819, H2398, H2399, H2400, H2401, H2402, H2403, H2408, H2409, H5771, H6588, H7683, H7686, G02640, G02650, G02660, G02680, G03610, G37810, G39000, G42580

Numbers References:

Numbers 5:6 Numbers 5:7 Numbers 6:11 Numbers 6:16 Numbers 8:7 Numbers 8:12 Numbers 9:13 Numbers 12:11 Numbers 12:11 Numbers 14:40 Numbers 15:27 Numbers 15:28 Numbers 16:22 Numbers 16:26 Numbers 16:38 Numbers 18:22 Numbers 18:32 Numbers 19:9 Numbers 21:7 Numbers 22:34 Numbers 27:3 Numbers 32:14 Numbers 32:23 Numbers 32:23

soul, self

Definition:

The term "soul" can either refer generally to the non-physical part of a person or refer specifically to a person's awareness of themselves as a person distinct from others.

- In the Bible, the terms "soul" and "spirit" may be two different concepts, or they may be two terms that refer to the same concept.
- When a person dies, his soul leaves his body.
- In contrast to the body, the "soul" can be spoken of as the part of a person that "relates to God."

Translation Suggestions:

- The term "soul" could also be translated as "inner self" or "inner person."
- In some contexts, "my soul" could be translated as "I" or "me."
- Usually the phrase "the soul" can be translated as "the person" or "he" or "him," depending on the context.
- Some languages might only have one word for the concepts "soul" and "spirit."
- In Hebrews 4:12, the figurative phrase "dividing soul and spirit" could mean "deeply discerning or exposing the inner person."

(See also: spirit)

Bible References:

- 2 Peter 2:8
- Acts 2:27-28
- Acts 2:41
- Genesis 49:6
- Isaiah 53:10-11
- James 1:21
- Jeremiah 6:16-19
- Jonah 2:7-8
- Luke 1:47
- Matthew 22:37
- Psalms 19:7
- Revelation 20:4

Word Data:

- Strong's: H5082, H5315, H5397, G55900

Numbers References:

Numbers 21:4 Numbers 21:5 Numbers 29:7 Numbers 30:13

spirit, wind, breath

Definition:

The term "spirit" refers to the non-physical part of a person which cannot be seen. In biblical times, the concept of a person's spirit was closely related to the concept of a person's breath. The term can also refer to wind, that is, the movement of air in the natural world.

- The term "spirit" can refer to a being that does not have a physical body, such as an evil spirit.
- In general, the term "spiritual" describes things in the non-physical world.
- The term "spirit of" can also mean "having the characteristics of," such as in "spirit of wisdom" or "in the spirit of Elijah." Sometimes the Bible applies this term in the context of a person's attitude or emotional state, such as "spirit of fear" and "spirit of jealousy."
- Jesus said that God is a spirit.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, some ways to translate "spirit" might include "non-physical being" or "inside part" or "inner being."
- In some contexts, the term "spirit" could be translated as "evil spirit" or "evil spirit being."
- Sometimes the term "spirit" is used to express the feelings of a person, as in "my spirit was grieved in my inmost being." This could also be translated as "I felt grieved in my spirit" or "I felt deeply grieved."
- The phrase "spirit of" could be translated as "character of" or "influence of" or "attitude of" or "thinking (that is) characterized by."
- Depending on the context, "spiritual" could be translated as "non-physical" or "from the Holy Spirit" or "God's" or "part of the non-physical world."
- The phrase "spiritual maturity" could be translated as "godly behavior that shows obedience to the Holy Spirit."

- The term “spiritual gift” could be translated as “special ability that the Holy Spirit gives.”
- Sometimes this term can be translated as “wind” when referring to the simple movement of air or “breath” when referring to air movement caused by living beings.

(See also: soul, Holy Spirit, demon, breath)

Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 5:5
- 1 John 4:3
- 1 Thessalonians 5:23
- Acts 5:9
- Colossians 1:9
- Ephesians 4:23
- Genesis 7:21-22
- Genesis 8:1
- Isaiah 4:4
- Mark 1:23-26
- Matthew 26:41
- Philippians 1:27

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **13:3** Three days later, after the people had prepared themselves **spiritually**, God came down on top of Mount Sinai with thunder, lightning, smoke, and a loud trumpet blast.
- **40:7** Then Jesus cried out, “It is finished! Father, I give my **spirit** into your hands.” Then he bowed his head and gave up his **spirit**.
- **45:5** As Stephen was dying, he cried out, “Jesus, receive my **spirit**.”
- **48:7** All the people groups are blessed through him, because everyone who believes in Jesus is saved from sin, and becomes a **spiritual** descendant of Abraham.

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0178, H1172, H5397, H7307, H7308, G41510, G41520, G41530, G53260, G54270

Numbers References:

Numbers 5:14 Numbers 5:30 Numbers 11:29 Numbers 11:31 Numbers 14:24 Numbers 16:22 Numbers 27:16 Numbers 27:18

stone, stoning

Definition:

A stone is a small rock. To “stone” someone is to throw stones and larger rocks at that person with the intention of killing him. A “stoning” is an event in which someone was stoned.

- In ancient times, stoning was a common method of executing people as punishment for crimes they had committed.
- God commanded the Israelite leaders to stone people for certain sins, such as adultery.
- In the New Testament, Jesus forgave a woman caught in adultery and stopped people from stoning her.
- Stephen, who was the first person in the Bible to be killed for testifying about Jesus, was stoned to death.
- In the city of Lystra, the apostle Paul was stoned, but he did not die from his wounds.

(See also: adultery, commit, crime, death, Lystra, testimony)

Bible References:

- Acts 7:57-58
- Acts 7:59-60
- Acts 14:5
- Acts 14:19-20
- John 8:4-6
- Luke 13:34
- Luke 20:6
- Matthew 23:37-39

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0068, H0069, H0810, H1382, H1496, H1530, H2106, H2672, H2687, H2789, H4676, H4678, H5553, H5601, H5619, H6344, H6443, H6697, H6864, H6872, H7275, H7671, H8068, G26420, G29910, G30340, G30350, G30360, G30370, G40740, G43480, G55860

Numbers References:

Numbers 14:10 Numbers 15:35 Numbers 15:35 Numbers 15:36 Numbers 35:17 Numbers 35:23

tabernacle

Definition:

The tabernacle was a special tent-like structure where the Israelites worshiped God during the 40 years they traveled around in the desert.

- God had given the Israelites detailed instructions for building this large tent, which had two rooms and was surrounded by an enclosed courtyard.
- Each time the Israelites moved to a different place in the desert to live, the priests would take the tabernacle apart and carry it to their next campsite. Then they would set it up again in the center of their new camp.
- The tabernacle was constructed of wood frames hung with curtains made of cloth, goat hair, and animal skins. The courtyard surrounding it was enclosed with more curtains.
- The two sections of the tabernacle were the Holy Place (where the altar for burning incense was located) and the Most Holy Place (where the ark of the covenant was kept).
- The courtyard of the tabernacle had an altar for burning animal sacrifices and a special washbasin for ritual cleansing.
- The Israelites stopped using the tabernacle when the temple was built in Jerusalem by Solomon.

Translation Suggestions:

- The word “tabernacle” means “dwelling place.” Other ways to translate it could include, “sacred tent” or “tent where God was” or “God’s tent.”
- Make sure that the translation of this term is different from the translation of “temple.”

(See also: altar, altar of incense, ark of the covenant, temple, tent of meeting)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 21:30
- 2 Chronicles 1:2-5
- Acts 7:43

- Acts 7:45
- Exodus 38:21
- Joshua 22:19-20
- Leviticus 10:16-18

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0168, H4908, H5520, H5521, H5522, H7900, G46330, G46340, G46360, G46380

Numbers References:

Numbers 1:50 Numbers 1:50 Numbers 1:50
Numbers 1:51 Numbers 1:51 Numbers 1:53
Numbers 1:53 Numbers 3:7 Numbers 3:8
Numbers 3:23 Numbers 3:25 Numbers 3:26
Numbers 3:29 Numbers 3:35 Numbers 3:36
Numbers 3:38 Numbers 4:16 Numbers 4:25
Numbers 4:26 Numbers 4:31 Numbers 5:17
Numbers 7:1 Numbers 7:3 Numbers 9:15
Numbers 9:15 Numbers 9:18 Numbers 9:19
Numbers 9:20 Numbers 9:22 Numbers 10:11
Numbers 10:17 Numbers 10:21 Numbers 16:9
Numbers 16:27 Numbers 17:7 Numbers 17:13
Numbers 19:13 Numbers 31:30

temple, house, house of God

Definition:

A temple is a building dedicated to the worship of a specific diety where that diety was thought to dwell. Nations around Israel had temples dedicated to their various gods. The temple in Israel was a building surrounded by walled courtyards where the Israelites came to pray and to offer sacrifices to God. It was located on Mount Moriah in the city of Jerusalem.

- Often the term "temple" referred to the whole temple complex, including the courtyards that surrounded the main building. Sometimes it referred only to the building.
- The temple building had two rooms, the Holy Place and the Most Holy Place.
- God referred to the temple as his dwelling place.
- King Solomon built the first temple during his reign. It was supposed to be the permanent place of worship in Jerusalem.

Translation Suggestions:

- Usually when the text says that people were "in the temple," it is referring to the courtyards outside the building. This could be translated as "in the temple courtyards" or "in the temple complex."
- Where it refers specifically to the building itself, some translations translate "temple" as "temple building," to make it the reference clear.
- Ways to translate "temple" could include, "God's holy house" or "sacred worship place."
- Often in the Bible, the temple is referred to as "the house of Yahweh" or "the house of God."

(See also: sacrifice, Solomon, Babylon, Holy Spirit, tabernacle, courtyard, Zion, house)

Bible References:

- Acts 3:2
- Acts 3:8
- Ezekiel 45:18-20
- Luke 19:46

- Nehemiah 10:28
- Psalm 79:1-3

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **17:6** David wanted to build a **temple** where all the Israelites could worship God and offer him sacrifices.
- **18:2** In Jerusalem, Solomon built the **Temple** for which his father David had planned and gathered materials. Instead of at the Tent of Meeting, people now worshiped God and offered sacrifices to him at the **Temple**. God came and was present in the **Temple**, and he lived there with his people.
- **20:7** They (Babylonians) captured the city of Jerusalem, destroyed the **Temple**, and took away all the treasures.
- **20:13** When the people arrived in Jerusalem, they rebuilt the **Temple** and the wall around the city.
- **25:4** Then Satan took Jesus to the highest point on the **Temple** and said, "If you are the Son of God, throw yourself down, for it is written, 'God will command his angels to carry you so your foot does not hit a stone.'"
- **40:7** When he died, there was an earthquake and the large curtain that separated the people from the presence of God in the **Temple** was torn in two, from the top to the bottom.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1004, H1964, H1965, G14930, G24110, G34850

Numbers References:

Numbers 18:11

testimony, testify, witness, eyewitness, evidence

Definition:

When a person gives "testimony" he makes a statement about something he knows, claiming that the statement is true. To "testify" is to give "testimony."

- In some places in the Old Testament, "Testimony" refers specifically to the tablets of stone on which Yahweh wrote his ten commandments. From that use it came to refer to God's law more broadly.
- Often a person "testifies" about something he has experienced directly.
- A witness who gives "false testimony" does not tell the truth about what happened.
- Sometimes the term "testimony" refers to a prophecy that a prophet has stated.
- In the New Testament, this term was often used to refer to how Jesus' followers testified about the events of Jesus' life, death, and resurrection.

The term "witness" refers to a person who has personally experienced something that happened. Usually a witness is also someone who testifies about what they know is true. The term "eyewitness" emphasizes that the person was actually there and saw what happened.

- To "witness" something means to see it happen.
- At a trial, a witness "gives witness" or "bears witness." This has the same meaning as "testify."
- Witnesses are expected to tell the truth about what they have seen or heard.
- A witness who does not tell the truth about what happened is called a "false witness." He is said to "give false witness" or to "bear false witness."
- The expression "be a witness between" means that something or someone will be evidence that a contract has been made. The witness will make sure each person does what he has promised to do.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term "testify" or "give testimony" could also be translated as "tell the facts" or "tell what was seen or heard" or "tell from personal experience" or "give evidence" or "tell what happened."
- Ways to translate "testimony" could include, "report of what happened" or "statement of what is true" or "evidence" or "what has been said" or "prophecy."
- Ways to translate "Testimony" could include, "the stone slabs on which I wrote my commands" or "God's law" or "God's commands" or "the record of the agreement between Yahweh and Israel."
- The phrase, "as a testimony to them" could be translated as to "show them what is true" or to "prove to them what is true."
- The phrase, "as a testimony against them" could be translated as "which will show them their sin" or "exposing their hypocrisy" or "which will prove that they are wrong."
- To "give false testimony" could be translated as "say false things about" or "state things that are not true."
- The term "witness" or "eyewitness" could be translated with a word or phrase that means "person seeing it" or "the one who saw it happen" or "those who saw and heard (those things)."
- Something that is "a witness" could be translated as "guarantee" or "sign of our promise" or "something that testifies that this is true."
- The phrase "you will be my witnesses" could also be translated as "you will tell other people about me" or "you will teach people the truth that I taught you" or "you will tell people what you have seen me do and heard me teach."
- To "witness to" could be translated as to "tell what was seen" or to "testify" or to "state what happened."
- To "witness" something could be translated as to "see something" or to "experience something happen."

(See also: ark of the covenant, guilt, judge, prophet, true)

Bible References:

- Deuteronomy 31:28
- Micah 6:3
- Matthew 26:60
- Mark 1:44
- John 1:7
- John 3:33
- Acts 4:32-33
- Acts 7:44
- Acts 13:31
- Romans 1:9
- 1 Thessalonians 2:10-12
- 1 Timothy 5:19-20
- 2 Timothy 1:8
- 2 Peter 1:16-18
- 1 John 5:6-8
- 3 John 1:12
- Revelation 12:11

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **39:2** Inside the house, the Jewish leaders put Jesus on trial. They brought many **false witnesses** who lied about him.
- **39:4** The high priest tore his clothes in anger and shouted, "We do not need any more **witnesses**. You have heard him say that he is the Son of God. What is your judgment?"
- **42:8** "It was also written in the scriptures that my disciples will proclaim that everyone should repent in order to receive forgiveness for their sins. They will do this starting in Jerusalem, and then go to all people groups everywhere. You are **witnesses** of these things."
- **43:7** "We are **witnesses** to the fact that God raised Jesus to life again."

Word Data:

- Strong's: H5707, H5713, H5715, H5749, H6030, H8584, G02670, G12630, G19570, G26490, G31400, G31410, G31420, G31430, G31440, G43030, G48280, G49010, G55750, G55760, G55770, G60200

Numbers References:

Numbers 1:50 Numbers 1:53 Numbers 1:53
Numbers 5:13 Numbers 9:15 Numbers 10:11
Numbers 17:4 Numbers 18:2 Numbers 35:30
Numbers 35:30 Numbers 35:30

transgress, transgression

Definition:

The term “transgress” means to cross a line or to violate a boundary. The term is often used figuratively, meaning to break a command, rule, or moral code.

- This term is very similar to the word “trespass,” but is generally used more often to describe violations against God than against other people.
- To “transgress” can also be described as to “cross a line,” that is, to go beyond a limit or boundary that has been set for the good of the person and others.

Translation Suggestions:

- To “transgress” could be translated as to “sin” or to “disobey” or to “rebel.”
- If a verse or passage uses two terms that mean “sin” or “transgress” or “trespass,” it is important, if possible, to use different ways to translate these terms. When the Bible uses two or more terms with similar meanings in the same context, usually its purpose is to emphasize what is being said or to show its importance.

(See: parallelism)

(See also: disobey, sin, trespass, iniquity)

Bible References:

- 1 Thessalonians 4:6
- Daniel 9:24-25
- Galatians 3:19-20
- Galatians 6:1-2
- Numbers 14:17-19
- Psalm 32:1

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0898, H4603, H4604, H6586, H6588, G04580, G04590, G38450, G38470, G38480, G39280

Numbers References:

Numbers 14:18

unleavened bread

Definition:

The term “unleavened bread” refers to bread that is made without yeast or other leavening. This kind of bread is flat because it has no leaven to make it rise.

- When God freed the Israelites from slavery in Egypt, he told them to flee Egypt quickly without waiting for their bread to rise. So they ate unleavened bread with their meal. Since then unleavened bread is used in their yearly Passover celebrations to remind them of that time.
- Since leaven sometimes is used as a picture of sin, “unleavened bread” represents the removal of sin from a person’s life in order to live in a way that honors God.

Translation Suggestions:

- Other ways to translate this term could include “bread with no yeast” or “flat bread that did not rise.”
- Make sure the translation of this term is consistent with how you translate the term “yeast, leaven.”
- In some contexts, the term “unleavened bread” refers to the “Feast of Unleavened Bread” and can be translated that way.

(See also: bread, Egypt, feast, Passover, servant, sin, yeast)

Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 5:6-8
- 2 Chronicles 30:13-15
- Acts 12:3
- Exodus 23:14-15
- Ezra 6:21-22
- Genesis 19:1-3
- Judges 6:21
- Leviticus 8:1-3
- Luke 22:1

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H4682, G01060

Numbers References:

Numbers 6:15 Numbers 6:17 Numbers 6:19
Numbers 9:11 Numbers 28:17

woe

Definition:

The term “woe” refers to a feeling of great distress. It also gives a warning that someone will experience severe trouble.

- The expression “woe to” is followed by a warning to people that they will experience suffering as punishment for their sins.
- In several places in the Bible, the word “woe” is repeated, to emphasize an especially terrible judgment.
- A person who says “woe is me” or “woe to me” is expressing sorrow about severe suffering.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, the term “woe” could also be translated as “great sorrow” or “sadness” or “calamity” or “disaster.”
- Other ways to translate the expression “Woe to (name of city)” could include, “How terrible it will be for (name of city)” or “The people in (that city) will be severely punished” or “Those people will suffer greatly.”
- The expression, “Woe is me!” or “Woe to me!” could be translated as “How sad I am!” or “I am so sad!” or “How terrible this is for me!”
- The expression “Woe to you” could also be translated as “You will suffer terribly” or “You will experience terrible troubles.”

Bible References:

- Ezekiel 13:17-18
- Habakkuk 2:12
- Isaiah 31:1-2
- Jeremiah 45:1-3
- Jude 1:9-11
- Luke 6:24
- Luke 17:1-2
- Matthew 23:23

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0188, H0190, H0337, H0480, H1929, H1945, H1958, G37590

Numbers References:

Numbers 21:29 Numbers 24:23

word of God, word of Yahweh, word of the Lord, word of truth, scripture

Definition:

In the Bible, the term "word of God" refers to anything that God has communicated to people. This includes spoken and written messages. Jesus is also called "the Word of God."

- The term "scriptures" means "writings." It is only used in the New Testament and refers to the Hebrew scriptures, which is the Old Testament. These writings were God's message that he had told people to write down so that many years in the future people could still read it.
- The related terms "word of Yahweh" and "word of the Lord" often refer to a specific message from God that was given to a prophet or other person in the Bible.
- Sometimes this term occurs as simply "the word" or "my word" or "your word" (when talking about God's word).
- In the New Testament, Jesus is called "the Word" and "the Word of God." These titles mean that Jesus fully reveals who God is, because he is God himself.

The term "word of truth" is another way of referring to "God's word," which is his message or teaching. It does not refer to just one word.

- God's word of truth includes everything that God has taught people about himself, his creation, and his plan of salvation through Jesus.
- This term emphasizes the fact that what God has told us is true, faithful, and real.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, other ways to translate this term could include "the message of Yahweh" or "God's message" or "the teachings from God."
- It may be more natural in some languages to make this term plural and say "God's words" or "the words of Yahweh."
- The expression "the word of Yahweh came" is often used to introduce something that God told his prophets or his people. This could be translated as "Yahweh spoke this message" or "Yahweh spoke these words."
- The term "scripture" or "scriptures" could be translated as "the writings" or "the written message from God." This term should be translated differently from the translation of the term "word."
- When "word" occurs alone and it refers to God's word, it could be translated as "the message" or "God's word" or "the teachings." Also consider the alternate translations suggested above.
- When the Bible refers to Jesus as "the Word," this term could be translated as "the Message" or "the Truth."
- "Word of truth" could be translated as "God's true message" or "God's word, which is true."
- It is important for the translation of this term to include the meaning of being true.

(See also: prophet, true, Yahweh)

Bible References:

- Genesis 15:1
- 1 Kings 13:1
- Jeremiah 36:1-3
- Luke 8:11
- John 5:39
- Acts 6:2
- Acts 12:24
- Romans 1:2
- 2 Corinthians 6:7
- Ephesians 1:13
- 2 Timothy 3:16
- James 1:18
- James 2:8-9

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **25:7** In **God's word** he commands his people, "Worship only the Lord your God and only serve him."
- **33:6** So Jesus explained, "The seed is the **word of God**."

- **42:3** Then Jesus explained to them what **God's word** says about the Messiah.
- **42:7** Jesus said, "I told you that everything written about me in **God's word** must be fulfilled." Then he opened their minds so they could understand **God's word**.
- **45:10** Philip also used other **scriptures** to tell him the good news of Jesus.
- **48:12** But Jesus is the greatest prophet of all. He is the **Word of God**.
- **49:18** God tells you to pray, to study his **word**, to worship him with other Christians, and to tell others what he has done for you.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0561, H0565, H1697, H3068, G30560, G44870

Numbers References:

Numbers 15:31

prostrate, bow down, worship

Definition:

To "prostrate" oneself means to lie flat on the ground, usually in submission to a person of authority such as a king or some other powerful person. This same term can also mean to "worship," referring to the actions of honoring, praising, and obeying God.

- This term often means literally "bow down" or "prostrate oneself" to humbly honor someone.
- We worship God when we serve and honor him, by praising him and obeying him.
- When the Israelites worshiped God, it often included sacrificing an animal on an altar.
- This term can be used both of people who worship Yahweh as the One True God and others who worship false gods.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term "worship" could be translated as "bow down to" or "honor and serve" or "honor and obey."
- In some contexts, it could also be translated as "humbly praise" or "give honor and praise."

(See also: bow, fear, sacrifice, praise, honor)

Bible References:

- Colossians 2:18-19
- Deuteronomy 29:18
- Exodus 3:11-12
- Luke 4:7
- Matthew 2:2
- Matthew 2:8

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **13:4** Then God gave them the covenant and said, "I am Yahweh, your God, who saved you from slavery in Egypt. Do not **worship** other gods."
- **14:2** The Canaanites did not **worship** or obey God. They **worshiped** false gods and did many evil things.

- **17:6** David wanted to build a temple where all the Israelites could **worship** God and offer him sacrifices.
- **18:12** All of the kings and most of the people of the kingdom of Israel **worshiped** idols.
- **25:7** Jesus replied, “Get away from me, Satan! In God’s word he commands his people, ‘**Worship** only the Lord your God and only serve him.’”
- **26:2** On the Sabbath, he (Jesus) went to the place of **worship**.
- **47:1** There they met a woman named Lydia who was a merchant. She loved and **worshiped** God.
- **49:18** God tells you to pray, to study his word, to **worship** him with other Christians, and to tell others what he has done for you.

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H5457, H5647, H6087, H7812, G13910, G14790, G21510, G23180, G23230, G23560, G30000, G35110, G43520, G43530, G45730, G45740, G45760

Numbers References:

Numbers 22:31 Numbers 25:2

wrath, fury

Definition:

Wrath is an intense anger that is sometimes long-lasting. The Bible describes both people and God as experiencing intense anger. When speaking about God’s “wrath,” make sure the word or phrase used to translate this term does not refer to a sinful fit of rage (which might be true of a human person).

- In the Bible, “wrath” often refers to God’s righteous judgment of sin and punishment of people who rebel against him.
- The “wrath of God” can also refer to his judgment and punishment for sin.
- God’s wrath is the righteous penalty for those who do not repent of their sin.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, other ways this term could be translated include “intense anger” or “righteous judgment” or “anger.”
- God’s wrath is just and holy. When talking about God’s wrath, make sure the word or phrase used to translate this term does not refer to a sinful human rage.

(See also: judge, sin)

Bible References:

- 1 Thessalonians 1:8-10
- 1 Timothy 2:8-10
- Luke 3:7
- Luke 21:23
- Matthew 3:7
- Revelation 14:10
- Romans 1:18
- Romans 5:9

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0639, H2197, H2528, H2534, H2740, H3707, H3708, H5678, H7107, H7109, H7110, H7265, H7267, G23720, G37090, G39490, G39500

Numbers References:

Numbers 1:53 Numbers 16:46 Numbers 18:5 Numbers 25:11

Yahweh, Yah

Definition:

The term “Yahweh” is God’s personal name in the Old Testament. The specific origin of this name is unknown, but it is probably derived from the Hebrew verb meaning, “to be.”

- Following tradition, many Bible versions use the term “LORD” or “the LORD” to represent “Yahweh.” This tradition resulted from the fact that historically, the Jewish people became afraid of mispronouncing Yahweh’s name and started saying “Lord” every time the term “Yahweh” appeared in the text. Modern Bibles write “LORD” with all capital letters to show that this represents God’s personal name and to distinguish it from “Lord” which is a different Hebrew word.
- The ULT and UST texts always translate this term as “Yahweh,” in agreement with the Hebrew text of the Old Testament.
- The term “Yahweh” never occurs in the original text of the New Testament; only the Greek term for “Lord” is used, even when quoting the Old Testament.
- In the Old Testament, when God spoke about himself, he would often use his name instead of a pronoun.
- “Yah” is a shortened form of the name Yahweh that occurs in poetry and praise (e.g. Hallelujah = “Praise Yah”), and in some Hebrew names (e.g. Zechariah = “Yah remembers”).

Translation Suggestions:

- “Yahweh” could be translated by a word or phrase that means “I am” or “existing one” or “the one who is” or “he who is present.”
- This name could also be written in a way that is similar to how “Yahweh” is spelled, or how it sounds in your language.

- Some church denominations prefer not to use the term “Yahweh” and instead use the traditional rendering, “LORD.” An important consideration is that this may be confusing when read aloud because it will sound the same as the title “Lord.” Some languages may have an affix or other grammatical marker that could be added to distinguish “LORD” as a name (Yahweh) from “Lord” as a title.
- In most cases it is good to keep the name Yahweh where it occurs in the text, but some translations may decide to use only a pronoun in some places to make the text more natural and clear.
- An introduction of a quote from Yahweh could be something like, “This is what Yahweh says.”

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: God, Lord)

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 21:20
- 1 Samuel 16:7
- Daniel 9:3
- Ezekiel 17:24
- Genesis 2:4
- Genesis 4:3-5
- Genesis 28:13
- Hosea 11:12
- Isaiah 10:4
- Isaiah 38:8
- Job 12:10
- Joshua 1:9
- Lamentations 1:5
- Leviticus 25:35
- Malachi 3:4
- Micah 2:5
- Micah 6:5
- Numbers 8:11
- Psalm 124:3
- Ruth 1:21
- Zechariah 14:5

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **9:14** God said, “I AM WHO I AM. Tell them, ‘I AM has sent me to you.’ Also tell them, ‘I am **Yahweh**, the God of your ancestors Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob. This is my name forever.’”
- **13:4** Then God gave them the covenant and said, “I am **Yahweh**, your God, who saved you from slavery in Egypt. Do not worship other gods.”
- **13:5** “Do not make idols or worship them, for I, **Yahweh**, am a jealous God.”
- **16:1** The Israelites began to worship the Canaanite gods instead of **Yahweh**, the true God.
- **19:10** Then Elijah prayed, “O **Yahweh**, God of Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob, show us today that you are the God of Israel and that I am your servant.”

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H3050, H3068, H3069

Numbers References:

Numbers 1:1 Numbers 1:48 Numbers 1:54
Numbers 2:1 Numbers 2:33 Numbers 2:34
Numbers 3:1 Numbers 3:4 Numbers 3:4
Numbers 3:5 Numbers 3:13 Numbers 3:16
Numbers 3:39 Numbers 3:40 Numbers 3:41
Numbers 3:42 Numbers 3:45 Numbers 3:51
Numbers 3:51 Numbers 4:1 Numbers 4:37
Numbers 4:41 Numbers 4:45 Numbers 4:49
Numbers 5:1 Numbers 5:4 Numbers 5:6
Numbers 5:8 Numbers 5:16 Numbers 5:18
Numbers 5:21 Numbers 5:25 Numbers 5:30
Numbers 6:1 Numbers 6:2 Numbers 6:5
Numbers 6:6 Numbers 6:8 Numbers 6:12
Numbers 6:14 Numbers 6:16 Numbers 6:17
Numbers 6:20 Numbers 6:21 Numbers 6:24
Numbers 6:25 Numbers 6:26 Numbers 7:3
Numbers 7:4 Numbers 7:11 Numbers 8:1
Numbers 8:3 Numbers 8:4 Numbers 8:10
Numbers 8:11 Numbers 8:12 Numbers 8:13
Numbers 8:20 Numbers 8:21 Numbers 8:22
Numbers 9:1 Numbers 9:5 Numbers 9:7
Numbers 9:8 Numbers 9:10 Numbers 9:13
Numbers 9:14 Numbers 9:18 Numbers 9:19
Numbers 9:20 Numbers 9:23 Numbers 10:1
Numbers 10:9 Numbers 10:13 Numbers 10:29
Numbers 10:29 Numbers 10:32 Numbers 10:33 Numbers 10:34 Numbers 10:35
Numbers 10:36 Numbers 11:1 Numbers 11:2
Numbers 11:3 Numbers 11:10 Numbers 11:11
Numbers 11:16 Numbers 11:18 Numbers 11:18 Numbers 11:20 Numbers 11:23
Numbers 11:24 Numbers 11:25 Numbers 11:29 Numbers 11:31 Numbers 11:33
Numbers 12:2 Numbers 12:4 Numbers 12:5
Numbers 12:6 Numbers 12:8 Numbers 12:9
Numbers 12:13 Numbers 12:14 Numbers 13:1
Numbers 13:3 Numbers 14:3 Numbers 14:8
Numbers 14:9 Numbers 14:9 Numbers 14:10
Numbers 14:11 Numbers 14:13 Numbers 14:14 Numbers 14:16 Numbers 14:18
Numbers 14:20 Numbers 14:21 Numbers 14:28 Numbers 14:35 Numbers 14:37
Numbers 14:40 Numbers 14:41 Numbers 14:42 Numbers 14:43 Numbers 14:43
Numbers 14:44 Numbers 15:1 Numbers 15:3
Numbers 15:3 Numbers 15:4 Numbers 15:7
Numbers 15:8 Numbers 15:10 Numbers 15:13
Numbers 15:14 Numbers 15:15 Numbers 15:19 Numbers 15:21 Numbers 15:22
Numbers 15:23 Numbers 15:24 Numbers 15:25 Numbers 15:28 Numbers 15:30
Numbers 15:31 Numbers 15:35 Numbers 15:36 Numbers 15:37 Numbers 15:39
Numbers 16:3 Numbers 16:5 Numbers 16:7
Numbers 16:9 Numbers 16:11 Numbers 16:15
Numbers 16:16 Numbers 16:17 Numbers 16:19 Numbers 16:28 Numbers 16:29
Numbers 16:30 Numbers 16:30 Numbers 16:35 Numbers 16:38 Numbers 16:40
Numbers 16:41 Numbers 16:42 Numbers 16:46 Numbers 17:1 Numbers 17:7 Numbers 17:9 Numbers 17:10 Numbers 17:11 Numbers 17:13 Numbers 18:1 Numbers 18:6 Numbers 18:8 Numbers 18:12 Numbers 18:13 Numbers 18:15 Numbers 18:17 Numbers 18:19
Numbers 18:19 Numbers 18:20 Numbers 18:24 Numbers 18:25 Numbers 18:26
Numbers 18:28 Numbers 18:29 Numbers 19:1
Numbers 19:2 Numbers 19:13 Numbers 19:20
Numbers 20:3 Numbers 20:4 Numbers 20:6
Numbers 20:9 Numbers 20:12 Numbers 20:13
Numbers 20:16 Numbers 20:23 Numbers 20:27 Numbers 21:2 Numbers 21:3 Numbers 21:6 Numbers 21:7 Numbers 21:8 Numbers 21:14 Numbers 21:16 Numbers 21:34
Numbers 22:8 Numbers 22:13 Numbers 22:18
Numbers 22:19 Numbers 22:22 Numbers 22:23 Numbers 22:24 Numbers 22:25
Numbers 22:26 Numbers 22:27 Numbers 22:28 Numbers 22:31 Numbers 22:32
Numbers 22:34 Numbers 22:35 Numbers 23:3
Numbers 23:5 Numbers 23:8 Numbers 23:12
Numbers 23:16 Numbers 23:17 Numbers 23:21 Numbers 23:26 Numbers 24:1 Numbers 24:6 Numbers 24:11 Numbers 24:13 Numbers 24:13 Numbers 25:3 Numbers 25:4 Numbers 25:4 Numbers 25:4 Numbers 25:10 Numbers 25:16 Numbers 26:1 Numbers 26:4 Numbers 26:9 Numbers 26:61 Numbers 26:65 Numbers 27:3 Numbers 27:5 Numbers 27:11 Numbers 27:16 Numbers 27:17 Numbers 27:18
Numbers 27:21 Numbers 27:23 Numbers 28:1
Numbers 28:3 Numbers 28:6 Numbers 28:7
Numbers 28:8 Numbers 28:11 Numbers 28:13
Numbers 28:15 Numbers 28:16 Numbers 28:19 Numbers 28:24 Numbers 28:26
Numbers 29:2 Numbers 29:6 Numbers 29:39
Numbers 30:1 Numbers 30:2 Numbers 30:3
Numbers 30:5 Numbers 30:8 Numbers 30:12
Numbers 30:16 Numbers 31:3 Numbers 31:16
Numbers 31:16 Numbers 31:28 Numbers 31:29 Numbers 31:30 Numbers 31:50
Numbers 31:50 Numbers 31:54 Numbers 32:4
Numbers 32:7 Numbers 32:9 Numbers 32:10
Numbers 32:12 Numbers 32:13 Numbers 32:13 Numbers 32:14 Numbers 32:20
Numbers 32:21 Numbers 32:22 Numbers 32:22 Numbers 32:22 Numbers 32:23
Numbers 32:32 Numbers 33:2 Numbers 33:4
Numbers 33:4 Numbers 33:38 Numbers 33:50
Numbers 34:1 Numbers 34:13 Numbers 34:29
Numbers 35:1 Numbers 35:9 Numbers 35:34
Numbers 36:2 Numbers 36:2 Numbers 36:5
Numbers 36:6 Numbers 36:13

Aaron

Definition:

Aaron was Moses' older brother. God chose Aaron to be the first high priest for the people of Israel.

- Aaron helped Moses speak to Pharaoh about letting the Israelites go free.
- While the Israelites were traveling through the desert, Aaron sinned by making an idol for the people to worship.
- God also appointed Aaron and his descendants to be the priest priests for the people of Israel.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: priest, Moses, Israel)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 23:14
- Acts 7:38-40
- Exodus 28:1-3
- Luke 1:5
- Numbers 16:45

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **9:15** God warned Moses and **Aaron** that Pharaoh would be stubborn.
- **10:5** Pharaoh called Moses and **Aaron** and told them that if they stopped the plague, the Israelites could leave Egypt.
- **13:9** God chose Moses' brother, **Aaron**, and Aaron's descendants to be his priests.
- **13:11** So they (the Israelites) brought gold to **Aaron** and asked him to form it into an idol for them!
- **14:7** They (the Israelites) became angry with Moses and **Aaron** and said, "Oh, why did you bring us to this horrible place?"

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0175, G00020

Numbers References:

Numbers 1:3 Numbers 1:17 Numbers 1:44 Numbers 2:1 Numbers 3:1 Numbers 3:3 Numbers 3:4 Numbers 3:6 Numbers 3:9 Numbers 3:10 Numbers 3:32 Numbers 3:38 Numbers 3:39 Numbers 3:48 Numbers 3:51 Numbers 4:1 Numbers 4:5 Numbers 4:15 Numbers 4:16 Numbers 4:19 Numbers 4:27 Numbers 4:28 Numbers 4:33 Numbers 4:34 Numbers 4:37 Numbers 4:41 Numbers 4:45 Numbers 4:46 Numbers 6:23 Numbers 7:8 Numbers 8:2 Numbers 8:3 Numbers 8:11 Numbers 8:13 Numbers 8:19 Numbers 8:20 Numbers 8:21 Numbers 8:22 Numbers 9:6 Numbers 10:8 Numbers 12:1 Numbers 12:4 Numbers 12:5 Numbers 12:10 Numbers 12:11 Numbers 13:26 Numbers 14:2 Numbers 14:5 Numbers 15:33 Numbers 16:3 Numbers 16:11 Numbers 16:16 Numbers 16:17 Numbers 16:18 Numbers 16:37 Numbers 16:40 Numbers 16:41 Numbers 16:42 Numbers 16:43 Numbers 16:46 Numbers 16:47 Numbers 16:50 Numbers 17:3 Numbers 17:6 Numbers 17:8 Numbers 17:10 Numbers 18:1 Numbers 18:8 Numbers 18:20 Numbers 18:28 Numbers 19:1 Numbers 20:2 Numbers 20:6 Numbers 20:8 Numbers 20:10 Numbers 20:12 Numbers 20:23 Numbers 20:24 Numbers 20:26 Numbers 20:29 Numbers 25:7 Numbers 25:11 Numbers 26:1 Numbers 26:9 Numbers 26:59 Numbers 26:60 Numbers 26:64 Numbers 27:13 Numbers 33:1 Numbers 33:38 Numbers 33:39

Abraham, Abram

Definition:

Abram was a Chaldean man from the city of Ur who was chosen by God to be the forefather of the Israelites. God changed his name to “Abraham.”

- The name “Abram” means “exalted father.”
- “Abraham” means “father of many.”
- God promised Abraham that he would have many descendants, who would become a great nation.
- Abraham believed God and obeyed him. God led Abraham to move from Chaldea to the land of Canaan.
- Abraham and his wife Sarah, when they were very old and living in the land of Canaan, had a son, Isaac.

(Translation suggestions: Translate Names)

(See also: Canaan, Chaldea, Sarah, Isaac)

Bible References:

- Galatians 3:8
- Genesis 11:29-30
- Genesis 21:4
- Genesis 22:2
- James 2:23
- Matthew 1:2

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **4:6** When **Abram** arrived in Canaan, God said, “Look all around you. I will give to you and your descendants all the land that you can see as an inheritance.”
- **5:4** Then God changed **Abram**’s name to **Abraham**, which means “father of many.”
- **5:5** About a year later, when **Abraham** was 100 years old and Sarah was 90, Sarah gave birth to Abraham’s son.
- **5:6** When Isaac was a young man, God tested **Abraham’s** faith by saying, “Take Isaac, your only son, and kill him as a sacrifice to me.”
- **6:1** When **Abraham** was very old and his son, Isaac, had grown to be a man, **Abraham** sent one of his servants back to the land where his relatives lived to find a wife for his son, Isaac.
- **6:4** After a long time, **Abraham** died and all of the promises that God had made to him in the covenant were passed on to Isaac.
- **21:2** God promised **Abraham** that through him all people groups of the world would receive a blessing.

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0087, H0085, G00110

Numbers References:

Numbers 32:11

Amalek, Amalekite

Definition:

The Amalekites were a nomadic people group who lived throughout the southern part of Canaan, from the Negeb desert to the country of Arabia. This people group was descended from Amalek, the grandson of Esau.

- The Amalekites were bitter enemies of Israel from the time when Israel first came to live in Canaan.
- Sometimes the term "Amalek" is used figuratively to refer to all the Amalekites. (See: synecdoche)
- In one battle against the Amalekites, when Moses held up his hands, the Israelites were winning. When he got tired and his hands came down, they started losing. So Aaron and Hur helped Moses keep his hands up until the Israelite army had defeated the Amalekites.
- Both King Saul and King David led military expeditions against the Amalekites.
- After one victory over the Amalekites, Saul disobeyed God by keeping some of the plunder and by not killing the Amalekite king as God had commanded him to do.

(Translation suggestions: Translate Names)

(See also: Arabia, David, Esau, Negeb, Saul (OT))

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 4:43
- 2 Samuel 1:8
- Exodus 17:10
- Numbers 14:23-25

Word Data:

- Strong's: H6002, H6003

Numbers References:

Numbers 13:29 Numbers 14:25 Numbers 14:43 Numbers 14:45 Numbers 24:20 Numbers 24:20

Ammon, Ammonite

Definition:

The "people of Ammon" or the "Ammonites" were a people group that lived on the east side of the Jordan River across from the Israelites.

- The book of Genesis reports that the Ammonite nation was descended from Ben-ammi, who was the son of Lot by his younger daughter.
- The term "Ammonitess" refers specifically to a female Ammonite. This could also be translated as "Ammonite woman."
- At one point, the Ammonites hired a prophet named Balaam to curse Israel, but God did not allow him to do it.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: curse, Jordan River, Lot)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 19:1-3
- Ezekiel 25:2
- Genesis 19:38
- Joshua 12:1-2
- Judges 11:27
- Zephaniah 2:8

Word Data:

- Strong's: H5983, H5984, H5985

Numbers References:

Numbers 21:24

Amorite

Definition:

The Amorites were a powerful group of people who inhabited the land of Canaan and lived on both sides of the Jordan River.

- Their name means “high one,” which may refer to the mountainous regions where they lived or to the fact that they were known to be very tall.
- The book of Genesis reports that the Amorites were descended from Canaan, the grandson of Noah.
- The city of Ai was inhabited by Amorites.
- God refers to the “sin of the Amorites,” which included their worship of false gods and the sinful practices associated.
- Joshua led the Israelites in destroying the Amorites, as God had commanded them to do.

Bible References:

- Amos 2:9
- Ezekiel 16:3
- Genesis 10:16
- Genesis 15:14-16
- Joshua 9:10

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **15:7** Sometime later, the kings of another people group in Canaan, the **Amorites**, heard that the Gibeonites had made a peace treaty with the Israelites, so they combined their armies into one large army and attacked Gibeon.
- **15:8** In the early morning they surprised the **Amorite** armies and attacked them.
- **15:9** God fought for Israel that day. He caused the **Amorites** to be confused and he sent large hailstones that killed many of the **Amorites**.
- **15:10** God also caused the sun to stay in one place in the sky so that Israel would have enough time to completely defeat the **Amorites**.

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0567

Numbers References:

Numbers 13:29 Numbers 21:13 Numbers 21:21 Numbers 21:25 Numbers 21:26 Numbers 21:29 Numbers 21:32 Numbers 21:34 Numbers 22:2 Numbers 32:33 Numbers 32:39

Anak, Anakites

Definition:

Anak is the name of a man whose father was Arba and whose descendents were called "Anakites" or "the Anakim" or "the Anak."

- The Anakites were a very tall people.
- The Anakites are a people group who lived in the land that Yahweh promised to give to the Israelites. The Israelites eventually conquered and dispossessed them.
- Anak had three sons or descendants who were named Ahiman, Sheshai, and Talmai.
- The name "Anak" is an English transliteration of the Hebrew word for Anak.

(See also: Hebron)

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

Bible References:

Word Data:

- Strong's: H6062

Numbers References:

Numbers 13:22 Numbers 13:28 Numbers 13:33

Asher

Definition:

Asher was Jacob's eighth son. He was Zilpah's second son. His descendants became one of the tribes of Israel.

- The tribe descended from him was known as the "tribe of Asher" or "Asher."
- His name sounds similar to a Hebrew word meaning "blessed, happy."
- The tribe of Asher settled in the northwest corner of Canaan, on the Mediterannean Sea. When used as the name of a region of land, the term "Asher" refers to the land given to the tribe of Asher.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: twelve tribes of Israel, Jacob, Zilpah)

Bible References:

- Genesis 30:13
- 1 Chronicles 2:1-2
- 1 Kings 4:16
- Ezekiel 48:1-3
- Luke 2:36-38

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0836

Numbers References:

Numbers 2:27 Numbers 2:27 Numbers 7:72 Numbers 26:46

Assyria, Assyrian, Assyrian Empire

Definition:

Assyria was a powerful nation during the time the Israelites were living in the land of Canaan. The Assyrian Empire was a group of nations ruled by an Assyrian king.

- The nation of Assyria was located in a region that is now the northern part of Iraq.
- The Assyrians fought against Israel at different times in their history.
- In the year 722 BC, the Assyrians completely conquered the kingdom of Israel and forced many of the Israelites to move to Assyria.
- The remaining Israelites intermarried with foreigners that the Assyrians had brought into Israel from Samaria. The descendants of those people who intermarried were later called the Samaritans.

(See also: Samaria)

Bible References:

- Genesis 10:11
- Genesis 25:17-18
- Isaiah 7:16-17
- Jeremiah 50:17
- Micah 7:11-13

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **20:2** So God punished both kingdoms by allowing their enemies to destroy them. The kingdom of Israel was destroyed by the **Assyrian Empire**, a powerful, cruel nation. The **Assyrians** killed many people in the kingdom of Israel, took away everything of value, and burned much of the country.
- **20:3** The **Assyrians** gathered all the leaders, the rich people, and the people with skills and took them to **Assyria**.
- **20:4** Then the **Assyrians** brought foreigners to live in the land where the kingdom of Israel had been.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0804, H1121

Numbers References:

Numbers 24:22 Numbers 24:24

Baal

Definition:

"Baal" means "lord" or "master" and was the name of the primary false god that was worshiped by the Canaanites.

- There were also local false gods that had "Baal" as part of their names, such as "Baal of Peor." Sometimes all these gods together are referred to as "the Baals."
- Some people had names that included the word "Baal" in them.
- The worship of Baal included evil practices such as sacrificing children and using prostitutes.
- At different time periods throughout their history, the Israelites also became deeply involved in Baal worship, following the example of the pagan nations around them.
- During the reign of King Ahab, God's prophet Elijah set up a test to prove to the people that Baal does not exist and that Yahweh is the only true God. As a result, the prophets of Baal were destroyed and the people started worshiping Yahweh again.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: Ahab, Asherah, Elijah, false god, prostitute, Yahweh)

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 16:31
- 1 Samuel 7:3-4
- Jeremiah 2:7-8
- Judges 2:11
- Numbers 22:41

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **19:2** Ahab was an evil man who encouraged people to worship a false god named **Baal**.
- **19:6** All the people of the entire kingdom of Israel, including the 450 prophets of **Baal**, came to Mount Carmel. Elijah said to the people, "How long will you keep changing your mind? If Yahweh is God, serve him! If **Baal** is God, serve him!"
- **19:7** Then Elijah said to the prophets of **Baal**, "Kill a bull and prepare it as a sacrifice, but do not light the fire."
- **19:8** Then the prophets of **Baal** prayed to **Baal**, "Hear us, O **Baal**!"
- **19:12** So the people captured the prophets of **Baal**. Then Elijah took them away from there and killed them.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1120, G08960

Numbers References:

Numbers 21:19 Numbers 22:41 Numbers 25:3 Numbers 25:5 Numbers 32:38 Numbers 33:7

Balaam

Definition:

Balaam was a pagan prophet whom King Balak hired to curse Israel while they were camped at the Jordan River in northern Moab, preparing to enter the land of Canaan.

- Balaam was from the city of Pethor, which was located in the region around the Euphrates River, about 400 miles away from the land of Moab.
- The Midianite king, Balak, was afraid of the strength and numbers of the Israelites, so he hired Balaam to curse them.
- As Balaam was traveling toward Israel, an angel of God stood in his path so that Balaam's donkey stopped. God also gave the donkey the ability to speak to Balaam.
- God did not allow Balaam to curse the Israelites and commanded him to bless them instead.
- Later however, Balaam still brought evil on the Israelites when he influenced them to worship the false god Baal-peor.

(Translation suggestions: Translate Names)

(See also: bless, Canaan, curse, donkey, Euphrates River, Jordan River, Midian, Moab, Peor)

Bible References:

- 2 Peter 2:16
- Deuteronomy 23:3-4
- Joshua 13:22-23
- Numbers 22:5
- Revelation 2:14

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1109, G09030

Numbers References:

Numbers 22:5 Numbers 22:7 Numbers 22:8 Numbers 22:9 Numbers 22:10 Numbers 22:12 Numbers 22:13 Numbers 22:16 Numbers 22:18 Numbers 22:20 Numbers 22:21 Numbers 22:23 Numbers 22:25 Numbers 22:27 Numbers 22:28 Numbers 22:29 Numbers 22:30 Numbers 22:31 Numbers 22:34 Numbers 22:35 Numbers 22:36 Numbers 22:37 Numbers 22:38 Numbers 22:39 Numbers 22:40 Numbers 22:41 Numbers 23:1 Numbers 23:3 Numbers 23:4 Numbers 23:5 Numbers 23:11 Numbers 23:16 Numbers 23:25 Numbers 23:26 Numbers 23:27 Numbers 23:28 Numbers 24:1 Numbers 24:2 Numbers 24:3 Numbers 24:10 Numbers 24:10 Numbers 24:12 Numbers 24:15 Numbers 24:25 Numbers 31:8 Numbers 31:16

Bashan

Definition:

Bashan was a region of land east of the Sea of Galilee. It covered an area that is now part of Syria and the Golan Heights.

- An Old Testament city of refuge called "Golan" was located in the region of Bashan.
- Bashan was a very fertile region known for its oak trees and pasturing animals.
- Genesis 14 records that Bashan was the site of a war between several kings and their nations.
- During Israel's wanderings in the desert after their escape from Egypt, they took possession of part of the region of Bashan.
- Years later, King Solomon obtained supplies from that region.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: Egypt, oak, Sea of Galilee, Syria)

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 4:13
- Amos 4:1
- Jeremiah 22:20-21
- Joshua 9:10

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1316

Numbers References:

Numbers 21:33 Numbers 32:33

Benjamin, Benjaminite

Definition:

Benjamin was Jacob's twelfth son. He was Rachel's second son. His descendants became one of the tribes of Israel.

- The tribe descended from him was known as the "tribe of Benjamin" or "Benjamin" or the "Benjaminites."
- In Hebrew, the name Benjamin means "son of my right hand."
- The tribe of Benjamin settled just northwest of the Dead Sea, north of Jerusalem.
- The phrase "the land of Benjamin" refers to the territory that Yahweh gave to the descendants of Benjamin to live in.
- King Saul was from the tribe of Benjamin.
- The apostle Paul was from the tribe of Benjamin.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: twelve tribes of Israel, Jacob, Rachel)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 2:1-2
- 1 Kings 2:8
- Acts 13:21-22
- Genesis 35:18
- Genesis 42:4
- Genesis 42:35-36
- Philippians 3:4-5

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1144, G09580

Numbers References:

Numbers 2:22 Numbers 2:22 Numbers 7:60

Cain

Definition:

Cain and his younger brother Abel were the first sons of Adam and Eve mentioned in the Bible.

- Cain was a farmer who produced food crops while Abel was a sheep herder.
- Cain killed his brother Abel in a fit of jealousy because God had accepted Abel's sacrifice but had not accepted Cain's sacrifice.
- As punishment, God sent him away from Eden and told him that the land would no longer yield crops for him.
- God put a mark on Cain's forehead as a sign that God would protect him from being killed by other people as he wandered.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: Adam, sacrifice)

Bible References:

- 1 John 3:12
- Genesis 4:2
- Genesis 4:9
- Genesis 4:15
- Hebrews 11:4
- Jude 1:11

Word Data:

- Strong's: H7014, G25350

Numbers References:

Numbers 24:22

Caleb

Definition:

Caleb was one of the twelve Israelite spies whom Moses sent to explore the land of Canaan.

- He and Joshua told the people to trust God to help them defeat the Canaanites.
- Joshua and Caleb were the only men of their generation who were allowed to enter the Promised Land of Canaan.
- Caleb requested that the land of Hebron be given to him and his family. He knew that God would help him defeat the people who lived there.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: Hebron, Joshua)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 4:13
- Joshua 14:6-7
- Judges 1:12
- Numbers 32:10-12

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **14:4** When the Israelites reached the edge of Canaan, Moses chose twelve men, one from each tribe of Israel. He gave the men instructions to go and spy on the land to see what it was like.
- **14:6** Immediately **Caleb** and Joshua, the other two spies, said, "It is true that the people of Canaan are tall and strong, but we can certainly defeat them! God will fight for us!"
- **14:8** "Except for Joshua and **Caleb**, everyone who is twenty years old or older will die there and never enter the Promised Land."

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3612, H3614

Numbers References:

Numbers 13:30 Numbers 14:6 Numbers 14:24 Numbers 14:30 Numbers 14:38 Numbers 26:65 Numbers 32:12 Numbers 34:19

Canaan, Canaanite

Definition:

Canaan was the son of Ham, who was one of Noah's sons. The Canaanites were the descendants of Canaan.

- The term "Canaan" or the "land of Canaan" also referred to an area of land between the Jordan River and the Mediterranean Sea. It extended south to the border of Egypt and north to the border of Syria.
- This land was inhabited by the Canaanites, as well as several other people groups.
- God promised to give the land of Canaan to Abraham and his descendants, the Israelites.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: Ham, Promised Land)

Bible References:

- Acts 13:19-20
- Exodus 3:7-8
- Genesis 9:18
- Genesis 10:19-20
- Genesis 13:7
- Genesis 47:2

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **4:5** He (Abram) took his wife, Sarai, together with all his servants and everything he owned and went to the land God showed him, the land of **Canaan**.
- **4:6** When Abram arrived in **Canaan** God said, "Look all around you. I will give to you and your descendants all the land that you can see as an inheritance."
- **4:9** "I give the land of **Canaan** to your descendants."
- **5:3** "I will give you and your descendants the land of **Canaan** as their possession and I will be their God forever."
- **7:8** After twenty years away from his home in **Canaan**, Jacob returned there with his family, his servants, and all his herds of animals.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3667, H3669, G54780

Numbers References:

Numbers 13:2 Numbers 13:17 Numbers 13:29 Numbers 14:25 Numbers 14:43 Numbers 14:45 Numbers 21:1 Numbers 21:3 Numbers 26:19 Numbers 32:30 Numbers 32:32 Numbers 33:40 Numbers 33:40 Numbers 33:51 Numbers 34:2 Numbers 34:2 Numbers 34:29 Numbers 35:10 Numbers 35:14

Dan

Definition:

Dan was Jacob's fifth son. He was Bilhah's first son. His descendants became one of the tribes of Israel.

- His name sounds similar to the Hebrew word for "judge."
- The tribe of Dan settled in the northern part of Canaan. When used as the name of a region of land, the term "Dan" refers to the land given to the tribe of Dan.
- "Dan" was also the name an Israelite city located about 60 miles north of Jerusalem. In the Old Testament times, the city of Dan served as a landmark for the northern boundary of the country of Israel, opposite the city of Beersheba as a landmark for the southern boundary.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: twelve tribes of Israel, Jacob, Bilhah)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 12:35
- 1 Kings 4:25
- Exodus 1:1-5
- Genesis 14:14
- Genesis 30:6

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1835, H1839, H2051

Numbers References:

Numbers 2:25 Numbers 2:25 Numbers 2:31 Numbers 7:66 Numbers 10:25

Edom, Edomite, Idumea

Definition:

Edom was another name for Esau. The region where he lived also became known as "Edom" and later, "Idumea." The "Edomites" were his descendants.

- The region of Edom changed locations over time. It was mostly located to the south of Israel and eventually extended into southern Judah.
- During New Testament times, Edom covered the southern half of the province of Judea. The Greeks called it "Idumea."
- The name "Edom" means "red," which may refer to the fact that Esau was covered with red hair when he was born. Or it may refer to the red lentil stew that Esau traded his birthright for.
- In the Old Testament, the country of Edom is often mentioned as an enemy of Israel.
- The entire book of Obadiah is about the destruction of Edom. Other Old Testament prophets also spoke negative prophecies against Edom.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: adversary, birthright, Esau, Obadiah, prophet)

Bible References:

- Genesis 25:30
- Genesis 32:3
- Genesis 36:1
- Isaiah 11:14-15
- Joshua 11:16-17
- Obadiah 1:2

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0123, H0130, H8165, G24010

Numbers References:

Numbers 20:14 Numbers 20:18 Numbers 20:20 Numbers 20:21 Numbers 20:23 Numbers 21:4 Numbers 24:18 Numbers 33:37 Numbers 34:3

Egypt, Egyptian

Definition:

Egypt is a country in the northeast part of Africa, to the southwest of the land of Canaan. An Egyptian is a person who is from the country of Egypt.

- In ancient times, Egypt was a powerful and wealthy country.
- Ancient Egypt was divided into two parts, Lower Egypt (northern part where the Nile River flowed downward into the sea) and Upper Egypt (southern part). In the Old Testament, these parts are referred to as "Egypt" and "Pathros" in the original language text.
- Several times when there was little food in Canaan, Israel's patriarchs traveled to Egypt to buy food for their families.
- For several hundred years, the Israelites were slaves in Egypt.
- Joseph and Mary went down to Egypt with the young child Jesus, to escape from Herod the Great.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: Herod the Great, Joseph (NT), Nile River, patriarchs)

Bible References:

- 1 Samuel 4:7-9
- Acts 7:10
- Exodus 3:7
- Genesis 41:29
- Genesis 41:57
- Matthew 2:15

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **8:4** The slave traders took Joseph to **Egypt**. **Egypt** was a large, powerful country located along the Nile River.
- **8:8** Pharaoh was so impressed with Joseph that he appointed him to be the second most powerful man in all of **Egypt**!
- **8:11** So Jacob sent his older sons to __Egypt __ to buy food.

- **8:14** Even though Jacob was an old man, he moved to **Egypt** with all of his family, and they all lived there.
- **9:1** After Joseph died, all of his relatives stayed in **Egypt**.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H4713, H4714, G01240, G01250

Numbers References:

Numbers 1:1 Numbers 3:13 Numbers 8:17 Numbers 9:1 Numbers 11:5 Numbers 11:18 Numbers 11:20 Numbers 13:22 Numbers 14:2 Numbers 14:3 Numbers 14:4 Numbers 14:13 Numbers 14:19 Numbers 14:22 Numbers 15:41 Numbers 20:5 Numbers 20:15 Numbers 20:15 Numbers 20:16 Numbers 21:5 Numbers 22:5 Numbers 22:11 Numbers 23:22 Numbers 24:8 Numbers 26:4 Numbers 26:59 Numbers 32:11 Numbers 33:1 Numbers 33:3 Numbers 33:3 Numbers 33:4 Numbers 33:38

Eleazar

Definition:

Eleazar was the name of several men in the Bible.

1. Eleazar was the third son of Moses' brother Aaron. After Aaron died, Eleazar became the high priest in Israel.
2. Eleazar was also the name of one of David's "mighty men."
3. Another Eleazar was one of Jesus' ancestors.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: Aaron, high priest, David, mighty)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 24:3
- Judges 20:27-28
- Numbers 26:1-2
- Numbers 34:16-18

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0499, G16480

Numbers References:

Numbers 3:4 Numbers 3:32 Numbers 4:16 Numbers 16:37 Numbers 16:39 Numbers 19:3 Numbers 19:4 Numbers 20:26 Numbers 25:7 Numbers 25:11 Numbers 26:1 Numbers 26:3 Numbers 26:60 Numbers 26:63 Numbers 27:2 Numbers 27:19 Numbers 27:21 Numbers 31:6 Numbers 31:12 Numbers 31:13 Numbers 31:26 Numbers 31:29 Numbers 31:51 Numbers 31:54 Numbers 32:2 Numbers 32:28 Numbers 34:17

Enoch

Definition:

Enoch was the name of two men in the Old Testament.

- One man named Enoch was descended from Seth. He was the great grandfather of Noah.
- This Enoch had a close relationship with God and when he was 365 years old, God took him to heaven while he was still alive.
- A different man named Enoch was a son of Cain.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: Cain, Seth)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 1:3
- Genesis 5:18-20
- Genesis 5:24
- Jude 1:14
- Luke 3:36-38

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2585, G18020

Numbers References:

Numbers 26:5

Ephraim, Ephraimite

Definition:

Ephraim was the younger son of Joseph. His descendants, the Ephraimites, formed one of the tribes of Israel.

- The name Ephraim sounds like the Hebrew word meaning "to make fruitful."
- The tribe of Ephraim was one of the ten tribes located in the northern part of Israel.
- Sometimes the name Ephraim is used in the Bible to refer to the whole northern kingdom of Israel (similar to how the name Judah is sometimes used to refer to the whole southern kingdom of Israel).

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: Joseph, Manasseh, kingdom of Israel, twelve tribes of Israel)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 6:66-69
- 2 Chronicles 13:4-5
- Ezekiel 37:16
- Genesis 41:52
- Genesis 48:1-2
- John 11:54

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0669, H0673, G21870

Numbers References:

Numbers 2:18 Numbers 2:18 Numbers 2:24 Numbers 7:48 Numbers 10:22 Numbers 13:8 Numbers 26:28

Euphrates River, the River

Definition:

The Euphrates is the name of one of the four rivers that flowed through the Garden of Eden. It is the river that is most often mentioned in the Bible.

- The modern day river named Euphrates is located in the Middle East and is the longest and most important river in Asia.
- Together with the Tigris River, the Euphrates borders a region of land known as Mesopotamia.
- The ancient city of Ur where Abraham came from was at the mouth of the Euphrates River.
- This river was one of the boundaries of the land that God promised to give to Abraham (Genesis 15:18).
- Sometimes the Euphrates is simply called "the River."

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 5:7-9
- 2 Chronicles 9:25-26
- Exodus 23:30-33
- Genesis 2:13-14
- Isaiah 7:20

Word Data:

- Strong's: H5104, H6578, G21660

Numbers References:

Numbers 22:5

Gad

Definition:

Gad was Jacob's seventh son. He was Zilpah's first son. His descendants became one of the tribes of Israel.

- The tribe descended from him was known as the "tribe of Gad" or "Gad" or "Gad."
- The name Gad is similar to the Hebrew word for "good fortune."
- The tribe of Gad settled on the eastern side of the Jordan River between the Sea of Galilee and the Dead Sea. This was to the north of Reuben and south of half of the tribe of Manasseh. When used as the name of a region of land, the term "Gad" refers to the land given to the tribe of Gad.
- Another man in the Bible named Gad was a prophet who confronted King David for his sin of taking a census of the Israelite people.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: twelve tribes of Israel, Jacob, Zilpah)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 5:18
- Exodus 1:1-5
- Genesis 30:11
- Joshua 1:12
- Joshua 21:38

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1410, H1425, G10450

Numbers References:

Numbers 2:14 Numbers 2:14 Numbers 7:42 Numbers 32:1 Numbers 32:2 Numbers 32:6 Numbers 32:25 Numbers 32:33

Gilead, Gileadite

Definition:

Gilead was the name of a mountainous region east of the Jordan river where the Israelite tribes of Gad, Reuben, and Manasseh lived.

- This region was also referred to as the "hill country of Gilead" or "Mount Gilead."
- "Gilead" was also the name of several men in the Old Testament. One of these men was the grandson of Manasseh. Another Gilead was the father of Jephthah.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: Gad, Jephthah, Manasseh, Reuben, twelve tribes of Israel)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 2:22
- 1 Samuel 11:1
- Amos 1:3
- Deuteronomy 2:36-37
- Genesis 31:21
- Genesis 37:25-26

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1568, H1569

Numbers References:

Numbers 27:1 Numbers 32:1 Numbers 32:26 Numbers 32:39 Numbers 36:1

Hamath, Hamathites, Lebo Hamath, Hamath Rabbah

Definition:

Hamath was an important city in northern Syria, north of the land of Canaan. The Hamathites were descendants of Noah's son Canaan.

- The name "Lebo Hamath" probably refers to a mountain pass near the city of Hamath.
- Some versions translate "Lebo Hamath" as "entrance to Hamath."
- Sometimes called "Hamath Rabbah" which means "great Hamath."
- King David defeated enemies of King Tou of Hamath, causing them to be on good terms.
- Hamath was one of Solomon's storehouse cities where provisions were kept.
- The land of Hamath was where King Zedekiah was killed by King Nebuchadnezzar and where King Jehoahaz was captured by an Egyptian pharaoh.
- The term "Hamathite" could also be translated as "person from Hamath."

(Translation suggestions: Translate Names)

(See also: Babylon, Canaan, Nebuchadnezzar, Syria, Zedekiah)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 18:3-4
- 2 Samuel 8:9
- Amos 6:1-2
- Ezekiel 47:15-17

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2574, H2577

Numbers References:

Numbers 13:21

Hebron, Kiriath Arba

Definition:

Hebron was a city located in the high, rocky hills about 20 miles south of Jerusalem.

- The city was built around 2000 BC during the time of Abram. It was mentioned many times in the historical accounts given in the Old Testament.
- Hebron had a very important role in King David's life. Several of his sons, including Absalom, were born there.
- The city was destroyed around AD 70 by the Romans.
- The city of Hebron was formerly called Kiriath Arba (see Joshua 14:15 and Joshua 15:54).
- The city of Hebron, formerly called Kiriath Arba, was probably founded by Arba, the father of Anak and may have been originally named Kiriath Arba to honor Arba because Joshua 14:15 records that Arba "was a great man among the Anakites."
- The name "Hebron" is an English transliteration of the Hebrew word for Hebron.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: Anak, Absalom)

Bible References:

- 2 Samuel 2:10-11
- Genesis 13:18
- Genesis 23:1-2
- Genesis 35:27
- Genesis 37:12-14
- Judges 1:10
- Numbers 13:22

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2275, H2276

Numbers References:

Numbers 3:19 Numbers 13:22 Numbers 13:22

Heshbon

Definition:

In Bible times, Heshbon was a major city of Moab. It was the capital city of king Sihon before the Israelites conquered it and began living in it.

(Translation suggestions: Translate Names)

(See also: Moab, Sihon)

Bible References:

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2809

Numbers References:

Numbers 21:25 Numbers 21:26 Numbers 21:27 Numbers 21:28 Numbers 21:30 Numbers 21:34 Numbers 32:3

Hittite

Definition:

The Hittites were descendants of Ham through his son Canaan. They became a large empire located in what is now Turkey and northern Palestine.

- Abraham bought a piece of property from Ephron the Hittite so that he could bury his deceased wife Sarah in a cave there. Eventually Abraham and several of his descendants were also buried in that cave.
- Esau's parents were grieved when he married two Hittite women.
- One of David's mighty men was named Uriah the Hittite.
- Some of the foreign women that Solomon married were Hittites. These foreign women turned Solomon's heart away from God because of the false gods they worshiped.
- The Hittites were often a threat to the Israelites, both physically and spiritually.

(See also: descendant, Esau, foreigner, Ham, mighty, Solomon, Uriah)

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 9:20-21
- Exodus 3:7-8
- Genesis 23:11
- Genesis 25:10
- Joshua 1:4-5
- Nehemiah 9:8
- Numbers 13:27-29

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2850

Numbers References:

Numbers 13:29

Hoshea

Definition:

Hoshea was the name of a king of Israel and several other men in the Old Testament.

- Hoshea son of Elah was a king of Israel for nine years during part of the reigns of Ahaz and Hezekiah, kings of Judah.
- Joshua son of Nun was formerly named Hoshea. Moses changed Hoshea's name to Joshua before sending him and eleven other men to spy out the land of the Canaanites.
- After Moses died, Joshua led the people of Israel to take possession of the land of Canaan.
- A different man named Hoshea was a son of Azaziah and was one of the leaders of the Ephraimites.

(Translation suggestions: Translate Names)

(See also: Ahaz, Canaan, Ephraim, Hezekiah, Joshua, Moses)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 27:20
- 2 Kings 15:30
- 2 Kings 17:3
- 2 Kings 18:1
- 2 Kings 18:9

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1954

Numbers References:

Numbers 13:8 Numbers 13:16

Isaac

Definition:

Isaac was the only son of Abraham and Sarah. God had promised to give them a son even though they were very old.

- The name "Isaac" means "he laughs." When God told Abraham that Sarah would give birth to a son, Abraham laughed because they were both very old. Some time later, Sarah also laughed when she heard this news.
- But God fulfilled his promise and Isaac was born to Abraham and Sarah in their old age.
- God told Abraham that the covenant he had made with Abraham would also be for Isaac and his descendants forever.
- When Isaac was a youth, God tested Abraham's faith by commanding him to sacrifice Isaac.
- Isaac's son Jacob had twelve sons whose descendants later became the twelve tribes of the nation of Israel.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: Abraham, descendant, eternity, fulfill, Jacob, Sarah, twelve tribes of Israel)

Bible References:

- Galatians 4:28-29
- Genesis 25:9-11
- Genesis 25:19
- Genesis 26:1
- Genesis 26:8
- Genesis 28:1-2
- Genesis 31:18
- Matthew 8:11-13
- Matthew 22:32

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **5:4** "Your wife, Sarai, will have a son—he will be the son of promise. Name him **Isaac**."
- **5:6** When **Isaac** was a young man, God tested Abraham's faith by saying, "Take **Isaac**, your only son, and kill him as a sacrifice to me."
- **5:9** God had provided the ram to be the sacrifice instead of **Isaac**.
- **6:1** When Abraham was very old and his son, **Isaac**, had grown to be a man, Abraham sent one of his servants back to the land where his relatives lived to find a wife for his son, **Isaac.**
- **6:5** **Isaac** prayed for Rebekah, and God allowed her to get pregnant with twins.
- **7:10** Then **Isaac** died, and Jacob and Esau buried him. The covenant promises God had promised to Abraham and then to **Isaac** now passed on to Jacob.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3327, H3446, G24640

Numbers References:

Numbers 32:11

Issachar

Definition:

Issachar was Jacob's ninth son. He was Leah's fifth son. His descendants became one of the tribes of Israel.

- The tribe descended from him was known as the "tribe of Issachar" or "Issachar."
- The meaning of the name is unknown, but it is similar to a Hebrew word meaning "reward, hire."
- The tribe of Issachar settled in central Canaan, southwest of the Sea of Galilee. Issachar's land was bordered by the lands of Naphtali, Zebulun, Manasseh, and Gad.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: twelve tribes of Israel, Jacob, Leah)

Bible References:

- Genesis 30:18
- Exodus 1:1-5
- Ezekiel 48:23-26
- Joshua 17:10

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3485, G24660

Numbers References:

Numbers 2:5 Numbers 2:5 Numbers 7:18 Numbers 26:23

Jacob, Israel

Definition:

Jacob was the younger twin son of Isaac by Rebekah. God changed his name to "Israel." His descendants became the nation of Israel.

- Jacob is the last of the three patriarchs of the Israelite nation: Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob. The descendants of Jacob's twelve sons became the twelve tribes of Israel.
- The name Jacob is similar to the Hebrew word meaning "heel." As Jacob was being born, he was holding onto the heel of his twin brother Esau. In the Old Testament times, the heel was a body part associated both with attack and with the rear part of a person's body. The Hebrew name Jacob was probably associated with the idea of attacking someone from behind.
- Many years later, God changed Jacob's name to "Israel," which probably means "He struggles with God."
- The name Jacob is often used to represent the nation of Israel.
- Jacob married Laban's two daughters, Leah and Rachel, as well as each of their servants, Zilpah and Bilhah. These four women mothered the twelve sons who became the ancestral fathers of the twelve tribes of Israel.
- In the New Testament, a different man named Jacob is listed as being Joseph's father in Matthew's genealogy.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: Israel, twelve tribes of Israel, Leah, Rachel, Zilpah, Bilhah, deceive, Esau, Isaac, Rebekah, Laban)

Bible References:

- Acts 7:11
- Acts 7:46
- Genesis 25:26
- Genesis 29:1-3
- Genesis 32:1-2
- John 4:4-5
- Matthew 8:11-13
- Matthew 22:32

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **7:1** As the boys grew up, Rebekah loved **Jacob**, but Isaac loved Esau. **Jacob** loved to stay at home, but Esau loved to hunt.
- **7:7** **Jacob** lived there for many years, and during that time he married and had twelve sons and a daughter. God made him very wealthy.
- **7:8** After twenty years away from his home in Canaan, **Jacob** returned there with his family, his servants, and all his herds of animals.
- **7:10** The covenant promises God had promised to Abraham and then to Isaac now passed on to **Jacob**.
- **8:1** Many years later, when **Jacob** was an old man, he sent his favorite son, Joseph, to check on his brothers who were taking care of the herds.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3290, G23840

Numbers References:

Numbers 23:7 Numbers 23:10 Numbers 23:21 Numbers 23:23 Numbers 23:23 Numbers 24:5 Numbers 24:17 Numbers 24:19 Numbers 32:11

Jebus, Jebusite

Definition:

The Jebusites were a people group living in the land of Canaan. They were descended from Ham's son Canaan.

- The Jebusites lived in the city of Jebus, and its name was later changed to Jerusalem when King David conquered it.
- Melchizedek, the king of Salem, was probably of Jebusite origin.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: Canaan, Ham, Jerusalem, Melchizedek)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 1:14
- 1 Kings 9:20-21
- Exodus 3:7-8
- Genesis 10:16
- Joshua 3:9-11
- Judges 1:20-21

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2982, H2983

Numbers References:

Numbers 13:29

Jericho

Definition:

Jericho was a powerful city in the land of Canaan. It was located just west of the Jordan River and just north of the Salt Sea.

- As all Canaanites did, the people of Jericho worshiped false gods.
- Jericho was the first city in the land of Canaan that God told the Israelites to conquer.
- When Joshua led the Israelites against Jericho, God did a great miracle to help them defeat the city.

(See also: Canaan, Jordan River, Joshua, miracle, Salt Sea)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 6:78
- Joshua 2:1-3
- Joshua 7:2-3
- Luke 18:35
- Mark 10:46-48
- Matthew 20:29-31
- Numbers 22:1

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **15:1** Joshua sent two spies to the Canaanite city of **Jericho**.
- **15:3** After the people crossed the Jordan River, God told Joshua how to attack the powerful city of **Jericho**.
- **15:5** Then the walls around **Jericho** fell down! The Israelites destroyed everything in the city as God had commanded.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3405, G24100

Numbers References:

Numbers 22:1 Numbers 26:3 Numbers 26:63 Numbers 31:12 Numbers 33:48 Numbers 33:50 Numbers 34:15 Numbers 35:1 Numbers 36:13

Jethro, Reuel

Definition:

The names "Jethro" and "Reuel" both refer to the father of Moses' wife, Zipporah. There were also two other men named "Reuel" in the Old Testament.

- When Moses was a shepherd in the land of Midian, he married the daughter of a Midianite man named Reuel.
- Later on Reuel is referred to as "Jethro, the priest of Midian." It could be that "Reuel" was his clan name.
- When God spoke to Moses from a flaming bush, Moses was tending Jethro's sheep,
- Some time later, after God had rescued the Israelites from Egypt, Jethro came out to the Israelites in the wilderness and gave Moses good advice about judging the affairs of the people.
- He believed in God when he heard about all the miracles God had done for the Israelites in Egypt.
- One of Esau's sons was named Reuel.
- Another man named Reuel is mentioned in the genealogy of the Israelites who returned to resettle in Judah after their captivity in Babylon had ended.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: captive, clan, desert, Egypt, Esau, miracle, Moses, desert)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 1:34-37
- Exodus 2:18-20
- Exodus 3:1-3
- Exodus 18:3
- Numbers 10:29

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3503, H7467

Numbers References:

Numbers 2:14 Numbers 10:29

Jordan River, Jordan

Definition:

The Jordan River is a river that flows from north to south, and forms the eastern boundary of the land that was called Canaan.

- Today, the Jordan River separates Israel on its west from Jordan on its east.
- The Jordan River flows through the Sea of Galilee and then empties into the Dead Sea.
- When Joshua led the Israelites into Canaan, they had to cross the Jordan River. It was too deep to cross normally, but God miraculously stopped the river from flowing so they could walk across the river bed.
- Often in the Bible the Jordan River is referred to as “the Jordan.”

(See also: Canaan, Salt Sea, Sea of Galilee)

Bible References:

- Genesis 32:9-10
- John 1:26-28
- John 3:25-26
- Luke 3:3
- Matthew 3:6
- Matthew 3:13-15
- Matthew 4:14-16
- Matthew 19:1-2

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **15:2** The Israelites had to cross the **Jordan River** to enter into the Promised Land.
- **15:3** After the people crossed the **Jordan River**, God told Joshua how to attack the powerful city of Jericho.
- **19:14** Elisha told him (Naaman) to dip himself seven times in the **Jordan River**.

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H3383, G24460

Numbers References:

Numbers 13:29 Numbers 22:1 Numbers 26:3 Numbers 26:63 Numbers 31:12 Numbers 32:5 Numbers 32:19 Numbers 32:19 Numbers 32:21 Numbers 32:32 Numbers 33:48 Numbers 33:50 Numbers 33:51 Numbers 34:15 Numbers 35:1 Numbers 35:10 Numbers 35:14 Numbers 36:13

Joseph (OT)

Definition:

Joseph was Jacob's eleventh son. He was Rachel's first son. The descendants of his two sons Ephraim and Manasseh became two of the tribes of Israel.

- The Hebrew name Joseph is similar to both the Hebrew word meaning "to add, increase" and the Hebrew word meaning "to gather, take away."
- A large portion of the book of Genesis is dedicated to the story of Joseph, how he remained faithful to God throughout his many difficulties and forgave his brothers who had sold him to be a slave in Egypt.
- Eventually God raised Joseph to the second highest place of power in Egypt and used him to save the people of Egypt and the surrounding nations in a time when there was little food. Joseph helped save his own family from starving and brought them to live with him in Egypt.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: twelve tribes of Israel, Ephraim, Manasseh, Jacob, Rachel)

Bible References:

- Genesis 30:22-24
- Genesis 33:1-3
- Genesis 37:1-2
- Genesis 37:23-24
- Genesis 41:55-57
- John 4:4-5

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **8:2** **Joseph's** brothers hated him because their father loved him most and because Joseph had dreamed that he would be their ruler.
- **8:4** The slave traders took **Joseph** to Egypt.
- **8:5** Even in prison, **Joseph** remained faithful to God, and God blessed him.
- **8:7** God had given **Joseph** the ability to interpret dreams, so Pharaoh had Joseph brought to him from the prison.
- **8:9** **Joseph** told the people to store up large amounts of food during the seven years of good harvests.
- **9:2** The Egyptians no longer remembered **Joseph** and all he had done to help them.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3084, H3130, G25000, G25010

Numbers References:

Numbers 13:11 Numbers 26:28 Numbers 27:1 Numbers 32:33 Numbers 36:1 Numbers 36:5 Numbers 36:12

Joshua

Definition:

There were several Israelite men named Joshua in the Bible. The most well-known is Joshua son of Nun who was Moses' helper and who later became an important leader of God's people.

- Joshua was one of the twelve spies whom Moses sent to explore the Promised Land.
- Along with Caleb, Joshua urged the Israelite people to obey God's command to enter the Promised Land and defeat the Canaanites.
- Many years later, after Moses died, God appointed Joshua to lead the people of Israel into the Promised Land.
- In the first and most famous battle against the Canaanites, Joshua led the Israelites to defeat the city of Jericho.
- The Old Testament book of Joshua tells how Joshua led the Israelites in taking control of the Promised Land and how he assigned each tribe of Israel a part of the land to live on.
- Joshua son of Jehozadak is mentioned in the books of Haggai and Zechariah; he was a high priest who helped rebuild the walls of Jerusalem.
- There are several other men named Joshua mentioned in the genealogies and elsewhere in the Bible.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: Canaan, Haggai, Jericho, Moses, Promised Land, Zechariah (OT))

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 7:25-27
- Deuteronomy 3:21
- Exodus 17:10
- Joshua 1:3
- Numbers 27:19

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **14:4** When the Israelites reached the edge of Canaan, Moses chose twelve men, one from each tribe of Israel. He gave the men instructions to go and spy on the land to see what it was like.
- **14:6** Immediately Caleb and **Joshua**, the other two spies, said, "It is true that the people of Canaan are tall and strong, but we can certainly defeat them!"
- **14:8** "Except for **Joshua** and Caleb, everyone who is twenty years old or older will die there and never enter the Promised Land."
- **14:14** Moses was now very old, so God chose **Joshua** to help him lead the people.
- **14:15** **Joshua** was a good leader because he trusted and obeyed God.
- **15:3** After the people crossed the Jordan River, God told **Joshua** how to attack the powerful city of Jericho.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3091, G24240

Numbers References:

Numbers 11:28 Numbers 13:16 Numbers 14:6 Numbers 14:30 Numbers 14:38 Numbers 26:65 Numbers 27:18 Numbers 32:12 Numbers 32:28 Numbers 34:17

Judah

Definition:

Judah was Jacob's fourth son. He was Leah's fourth son. His descendants became one of the tribes of Israel.

- The tribe descended from him was known as the "tribe of Judah" or "Judah."
- His name sounds similar to the Hebrew word meaning "praise."
- The tribe of Judah settled in the southern part of Canaan, including the mountainous area to the south of the city of Jerusalem. When used as the name of a region of land, the term "Judah" refers to the land given to the tribe of Judah.
- In the Old Testament, the name Judah is sometimes used to refer to the whole southern kingdom of Israel (similar to how the name Ephraim is sometimes used to refer to the whole northern kingdom).
- King David, King Solomon, and all the kings of the southern kingdom were descendants of Judah. Jesus, too, was a descendant of Judah.
- The words "Jew" and "Judea" come from the name "Judah."

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: twelve tribes of Israel, Judah (kingdom), Jew, Judea, Jacob, Leah)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 2:1-2
- 1 Kings 1:9
- Genesis 29:35
- Genesis 38:2
- Luke 3:33
- Ruth 1:2

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3063

Numbers References:

Numbers 26:19 Numbers 34:19

Judea, Judah

Definition:

The term "Judea" refers to an area of land in ancient Israel. It is sometimes used in a narrow sense and other times in a broad sense.

- Sometimes "Judea" is used in a narrow sense to refer only to the province located in the southern part of ancient Israel just west of the Dead Sea. Some translations call this province "Judah."
- Other times "Judea" has a broad sense and refers to all the provinces of ancient Israel, including Galilee, Samaria, Perea, Idumea and Judea (Judah).
- If translators want to make the distinction clear, the broad sense of Judea could be translated as "Judea Country" and the narrow sense could be translated as "Judea Province," or "Judah Province" since this is the part of ancient Israel where the tribe of Judah had originally lived.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: Galilee, Edom, Judah, Judah, Samaria)

Bible References:

- 1 Thessalonians 2:14
- Acts 2:9
- Acts 9:32
- Acts 12:19
- John 3:22-24
- Luke 1:5
- Luke 4:44
- Luke 5:17
- Mark 10:1-4
- Matthew 2:1
- Matthew 2:5
- Matthew 2:22-23
- Matthew 3:1-3
- Matthew 19:1

Word Data:

- Strong's: G24530

Numbers References:

Numbers 2:3 Numbers 2:3 Numbers 2:9 Numbers 7:12 Numbers 10:14

Kadesh, Kadesh Barnea, Meribah Kadesh

Definition:

The names Kadesh, Kadesh Barnea, and Meribah Kadesh all refer to an important city in Israel's history which was located in the southern part of Israel, near the region of Edom.

- The city of Kadesh was an oasis, a place where there was water and fertile soil in the middle of a desert named Zin.
- Moses sent twelve spies into the land of Canaan from Kadesh Barnea.
- Israel also encamped at Kadesh during the wandering in the wilderness.
- Kadesh Barnea was where Miriam died.
- It was at Meribah Kadesh where Moses disobeyed God and hit a rock to get water for the Israelites, instead of speaking to it as God had told him to do.
- The name "kadesh" comes from the Hebrew word meaning "holy" or "set apart."

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: desert, Edom, holy)

Bible References:

- Ezekiel 48:28
- Genesis 14:7-9
- Genesis 16:14
- Genesis 20:1-3
- Joshua 10:40-41
- Numbers 20:1

Word Data:

- Strong's: H4809, H6946, H6947

Numbers References:

Numbers 13:26 Numbers 20:1 Numbers 20:14 Numbers 20:16 Numbers 20:22 Numbers 27:14 Numbers 32:8 Numbers 33:36 Numbers 33:37

Korah, Korahite

Definition:

Korah was the name of three men in the Old Testament.

1. Korah was a descendant of Levi and so served in the tabernacle as a priest. He became jealous of Moses and Aaron and led a group of men to rebel against them.
2. One of the sons of Esau was named Korah. He became a leader in his community.
3. A third man named Korah is listed as a descendant of Judah.

(See also: Aaron, authority, Caleb, descendant, Esau, Judah, priest)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 1:34-37
- Numbers 16:1-3
- Numbers 16:25-27
- Psalm 42:1-2

Word Data:

- Strong's: H7141

Numbers References:

Numbers 16:1 Numbers 16:5 Numbers 16:6 Numbers 16:8 Numbers 16:16 Numbers 16:19 Numbers 16:24 Numbers 16:27 Numbers 16:32 Numbers 16:40 Numbers 16:49 Numbers 26:9 Numbers 26:10 Numbers 26:11 Numbers 26:58 Numbers 27:3

Levi, Levite

Definition:

Levi was Jacob's third son. He was Leah's third son. His descendants became one of the tribes of Israel.

- The tribe descended from him was known as the "tribe of Levi" or the "Levites."
- The name Levi is similar to the Hebrew word for "join to."
- Unlike the other tribes, the tribe of Levi did not inherit a unified area of land in Canaan. Instead, they inherited various cities scattered throughout the regions belonging to the other tribes.
- The tribe of Levi was responsible for taking care of the tabernacle (and later, the temple) and conducting religious rituals, including offering sacrifices and prayers for the Israelite people.
- In the Old Testament, it is not always clear whether the term "Levite" refers generally to a descendant of Levi or specifically to a person who served in the temple helping the priests.
- The Old Testament law prescribed that all priests were to be chosen from the tribe of Levi. The Levite priests were set apart and dedicated for the special work of serving God in the temple.
- Two other men named "Levi" were ancestors of Jesus. Their names are listed in the genealogy in the gospel of Luke.
- Jesus' disciple Matthew was also called Levi.

(See also: twelve tribes of Israel, priest, sacrifice, temple, Jacob, Leah, Matthew)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 2:1-2
- 1 Kings 8:3-5
- Acts 4:36-37
- Genesis 29:34
- John 1:19-21
- Luke 10:32

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3878, H3879, H3881, G30170, G30180, G30190, G30200

Numbers References:

Numbers 1:47 Numbers 1:49 Numbers 1:50 Numbers 1:51 Numbers 1:51 Numbers 1:53 Numbers 1:53 Numbers 2:17 Numbers 2:33 Numbers 3:6 Numbers 3:9 Numbers 3:12 Numbers 3:12 Numbers 3:15 Numbers 3:20 Numbers 3:32 Numbers 3:39 Numbers 3:41 Numbers 3:41 Numbers 3:45 Numbers 3:45 Numbers 3:45 Numbers 3:46 Numbers 3:49 Numbers 4:2 Numbers 4:18 Numbers 4:46 Numbers 7:5 Numbers 7:6 Numbers 8:6 Numbers 8:9 Numbers 8:10 Numbers 8:11 Numbers 8:12 Numbers 8:13 Numbers 8:14 Numbers 8:15 Numbers 8:18 Numbers 8:19 Numbers 8:20 Numbers 8:21 Numbers 8:22 Numbers 8:24 Numbers 8:26 Numbers 16:1 Numbers 16:7 Numbers 16:8 Numbers 16:10 Numbers 17:3 Numbers 17:8 Numbers 18:2 Numbers 18:6 Numbers 18:21 Numbers 18:23 Numbers 18:24 Numbers 18:26 Numbers 18:30 Numbers 26:57 Numbers 26:58 Numbers 26:59 Numbers 26:59 Numbers 31:30 Numbers 35:2 Numbers 35:2 Numbers 35:4 Numbers 35:6 Numbers 35:7 Numbers 35:8

Manasseh

Definition:

Manasseh was the older son of Joseph. His descendants became one of the tribes of Israel.

- The name Manasseh is similar to the the Hebrew word meaning “to forget.”
- The tribe of Manasseh was often called the “half-tribe of Manasseh” because only part of the tribe settled in the land of Canaan, on the west side of the Jordan River. The other part of the tribe settled on the east side of the Jordan.
- One of the kings of Judah was also named Manasseh. King Manasseh was an evil king who sacrificed his own children as burnt offerings to false gods.
- God punished King Manasseh by allowing him to be captured by an enemy army. Manasseh turned back to God and destroyed the altars where idols were worshiped.
- Three other men named Manasseh are mentioned in the Old Testament. One of them was the grandfather of some Danites who were priests for false gods. The other two were men who lived during the time of Ezra and were required to divorce their pagan wives, who had influenced them to worship false gods.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: Joseph, Ephraim, twelve tribes of Israel)

Bible References:

- 2 Chronicles 15:9
- Deuteronomy 3:12-13
- Genesis 41:51
- Genesis 48:1-2
- Judges 1:27-28

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H4519, H4520, G31280

Numbers References:

Numbers 1:34 Numbers 2:20 Numbers 2:20 Numbers 7:54 Numbers 13:11 Numbers 26:28 Numbers 27:1 Numbers 27:1 Numbers 32:33 Numbers 32:39 Numbers 32:41 Numbers 34:14 Numbers 36:1 Numbers 36:12

Midian, Midianite

Definition:

Midian was a son of Abraham and his wife Keturah. It is also the name of a people group and region located in the northern Arabian Desert to the south of the land of Canaan. The people of that group were called "Midianites."

- When Moses first left Egypt, he went to the region of Midian where he met the daughters of Jethro and helped them water their flocks. Later Moses married one of Jethro's daughters.
- Joseph was taken to Egypt by a group of Midianite slave traders.
- Many years later the Midianites attacked and raided the Israelites in the land of Canaan. Gideon led the Israelites in defeating them.
- Many of the modern-day Arabian tribes are descendants of this group.

(See also Arabia, Egypt, flock, Gideon, Jethro, Moses)

Bible References:

- Acts 7:30
- Exodus 2:16
- Genesis 25:1-4
- Genesis 36:34-36
- Genesis 37:28
- Judges 7:1

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **16:3** But then the people forgot about God and started worshiping idols again. So God allowed the **Midianites**, a nearby enemy people group, to defeat them.
- **16:4** The Israelites were so scared, they hid in caves so the **Midianites** would not find them.
- **16:11** The man's friend said, "This dream means that Gideon's army will defeat the **Midianite** army!"
- **16:14** God confused the **Midianites**, so that they started attacking and killing each other.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H4080, H4084, H4092

Numbers References:

Numbers 10:29 Numbers 22:4 Numbers 22:7 Numbers 25:15 Numbers 25:18 Numbers 31:2 Numbers 31:3 Numbers 31:3 Numbers 31:8 Numbers 31:8 Numbers 31:9

Miriam

Definition:

Miriam was the older sister of Aaron and Moses.

- When she was young, Miriam was instructed by her mother to watch over her baby brother Moses who was in a basket among the reeds of the Nile River. When the pharaoh's daughter found the baby and needed someone to take care of him for her, Miriam brought her mother to do it.
- Miriam led the Israelites in a dance of joy and thanksgiving after they had escaped from the Egyptians by crossing the Red Sea.
- Years later as the Israelites were wandering in the desert, Miriam and Aaron began speaking badly about Moses because he had married a Cushite woman.
- Because of her rebellion in speaking against Moses, God caused Miriam to become sick with leprosy. But later God healed her when Moses interceded for her.

(Translation suggestions: Translate Names)

(See also: Aaron, Cush, intercede, Moses, Nile River, Pharaoh, rebel)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 6:1-3
- Deuteronomy 24:8-9
- Micah 6:4
- Numbers 12:2
- Numbers 20:1

Word Data:

- Strong's: H4813

Numbers References:

Numbers 12:1 Numbers 12:4 Numbers 12:5 Numbers 12:10 Numbers 12:10 Numbers 12:15 Numbers 20:1 Numbers 26:59

Moab, Moabite

Definition:

The term "Moab" refers to a people group that lived to the east of the Salt Sea. The book of Genesis describes this people group as the descendents of a man named "Moab," who was the son of Lot's elder daughter.

- In the book of Ruth, Elimelek and his family went to live in Moab because of the famine around Bethlehem.
- Ruth is called a "Moabite woman" because she was born in the country of Moab and was from that people group.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: Bethlehem, Judea, Lot, Ruth, Salt Sea)

Bible References:

- Genesis 19:37
- Genesis 36:34-36
- Ruth 1:1-2
- Ruth 1:22

Word Data:

- Strong's: H4124, H4125

Numbers References:

Numbers 21:11 Numbers 21:13 Numbers 21:15 Numbers 21:20 Numbers 21:26 Numbers 21:28 Numbers 21:29 Numbers 22:1 Numbers 22:3 Numbers 22:3 Numbers 22:4 Numbers 22:7 Numbers 22:8 Numbers 22:10 Numbers 22:21 Numbers 22:36 Numbers 23:6 Numbers 23:7 Numbers 23:17 Numbers 24:17 Numbers 25:1 Numbers 26:3 Numbers 26:63 Numbers 31:12 Numbers 33:48 Numbers 33:50 Numbers 35:1 Numbers 36:13

Moses

Definition:

Moses was a prophet and leader of the Israelite people for over 40 years. He was the leader of the Israelite people when they came out of Egypt, as described in the book of Exodus.

- When Moses was a baby, Moses' parents put him in a basket in the reeds of the Nile River to hide him from the Egyptian Pharaoh. Moses' sister Miriam watched over him there. Moses' life was spared when the pharaoh's daughter found him and took him to the palace to raise him as her son.
- God chose Moses to free the Israelites from slavery in Egypt and to lead them to the Promised Land.
- After the Israelites' escape from Egypt and while they were wandering in the desert, God gave Moses two stone tablets with the Ten Commandments written on them.
- Near the end of his life, Moses saw the Promised Land, but did not get to live in it, because he disobeyed God.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: Miriam, Promised Land, Ten Commandments)

Bible References:

- Acts 7:21
- Acts 7:30
- Exodus 2:10
- Exodus 9:1
- Matthew 17:4
- Romans 5:14

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **9:12** One day while **Moses** was taking care of his sheep, he saw a bush that was on fire.
- **12:5** **Moses** told the Israelites, "Stop being afraid! God will fight for you today and save you."

- **12:7** God told **Moses** to raise his hand over the sea and divide the waters.
- **12:12** When the Israelites saw that the Egyptians were dead, they trusted in God and believed that Moses was a prophet of God.
- **13:7** Then God wrote these Ten Commandments on two stone tablets and gave them to **Moses**.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H4872, H4873, G34750

Numbers References:

Numbers 1:1 Numbers 1:17 Numbers 1:44 Numbers 1:48 Numbers 1:54 Numbers 2:1 Numbers 2:33 Numbers 2:34 Numbers 3:1 Numbers 3:1 Numbers 3:5 Numbers 3:16 Numbers 3:38 Numbers 3:39 Numbers 3:40 Numbers 3:42 Numbers 3:49 Numbers 3:51 Numbers 3:51 Numbers 4:1 Numbers 4:34 Numbers 4:37 Numbers 4:41 Numbers 4:45 Numbers 4:45 Numbers 4:46 Numbers 4:49 Numbers 5:1 Numbers 5:4 Numbers 6:1 Numbers 7:1 Numbers 7:4 Numbers 7:6 Numbers 7:11 Numbers 7:89 Numbers 8:1 Numbers 8:3 Numbers 8:4 Numbers 8:20 Numbers 8:20 Numbers 8:22 Numbers 9:1 Numbers 9:4 Numbers 9:5 Numbers 9:6 Numbers 9:8 Numbers 9:23 Numbers 10:1 Numbers 10:13 Numbers 10:29 Numbers 10:35 Numbers 11:2 Numbers 11:10 Numbers 11:10 Numbers 11:11 Numbers 11:16 Numbers 11:21 Numbers 11:23 Numbers 11:24 Numbers 11:27 Numbers 11:28 Numbers 11:28 Numbers 11:29 Numbers 11:30 Numbers 12:1 Numbers 12:2 Numbers 12:3 Numbers 12:4 Numbers 12:7 Numbers 12:8 Numbers 12:11 Numbers 12:13 Numbers 12:14 Numbers 13:1 Numbers 13:3 Numbers 13:16 Numbers 13:17 Numbers 13:26 Numbers 13:30 Numbers 14:2 Numbers 14:5 Numbers 14:11 Numbers 14:13 Numbers 14:36 Numbers 14:39 Numbers 14:41 Numbers 14:44 Numbers 15:1 Numbers 15:22 Numbers 15:23 Numbers 15:33 Numbers 15:35 Numbers 15:36 Numbers 15:37 Numbers 16:2 Numbers 16:3 Numbers 16:4 Numbers 16:8 Numbers 16:12 Numbers 16:15 Numbers 16:16 Numbers 16:18 Numbers 16:25 Numbers 16:28 Numbers 16:40 Numbers 16:41 Numbers 16:42 Numbers 16:43 Numbers 16:46 Numbers 16:47 Numbers 16:50 Numbers 17:1 Numbers 17:6 Numbers 17:7 Numbers 17:8 Numbers 17:9 Numbers 17:10 Numbers 17:11 Numbers 17:12 Numbers 18:25 Numbers 19:1 Numbers 20:2 Numbers 20:3 Numbers 20:6 Numbers 20:9 Numbers 20:10 Numbers 20:11 Numbers 20:12 Numbers 20:14 Numbers 20:23 Numbers 20:27 Numbers 21:5 Numbers 21:7 Numbers 21:7 Numbers 21:8 Numbers 21:9 Numbers 21:16 Numbers 21:32 Numbers 21:34 Numbers 25:4 Numbers 25:5 Numbers 25:6 Numbers 25:10 Numbers 25:16 Numbers 26:1 Numbers 26:3 Numbers 26:4 Numbers 26:9 Numbers 26:59 Numbers 26:63 Numbers 26:64 Numbers 27:2 Numbers 27:5 Numbers 27:11 Numbers 27:18 Numbers 27:23 Numbers 28:1 Numbers 30:1 Numbers 30:16 Numbers 31:3 Numbers 31:6 Numbers 31:12 Numbers 31:13 Numbers 31:14 Numbers 31:15 Numbers 31:42 Numbers 31:49

Numbers 31:51 Numbers 31:54 Numbers 32:2
Numbers 32:6 Numbers 32:20 Numbers 32:25
Numbers 32:28 Numbers 32:33 Numbers 33:1
Numbers 33:2 Numbers 33:50 Numbers 34:1
Numbers 34:13 Numbers 35:1 Numbers 35:9
Numbers 36:1 Numbers 36:5 Numbers 36:13

Naphtali

Definition:

Naphtali was Jacob's sixth son. He was Bilhah's second son. His descendants became one of the tribes of Israel.

- The tribe descended from him was known as the "tribe of Naphtali" or "Naphtali" or "Naphtalites."
- The name Naphtali is similar to the Hebrew word meaning "to twist, wrestle."
- The tribe of Naphtali settled in the northern part of Canaan, between the tribes of Manassah and Asher. Its eastern border was on the western shoreline of the Sea of Chinnereth. When used as the name of a region of land, the term "Naphtali" refers to the land given to the tribe of Naphtali.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: twelve tribes of Israel, Jacob, Bilhah)

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 4:15
- Deuteronomy 27:13-14
- Ezekiel 48:1-3
- Genesis 30:8
- Judges 1:33
- Matthew 4:13

Word Data:

- Strong's: H5321, G35080

Numbers References:

Numbers 1:15 Numbers 1:42 Numbers 2:29
Numbers 2:29 Numbers 7:78 Numbers 34:28

Negeb, Negev

Definition:

The Negeb is a desert region in the southern part of Israel, southwest of the Salt Sea.

- The original word means “the South,” and some English versions translate it this way.
- It could be that the “South” is not located where the Negeb Desert is today.
- When Abraham lived in the city of Kadesh, he was in the Negeb or southern region.
- Isaac was living in the Negeb when Rebekah traveled to meet him and become his wife.
- The Jewish tribes of Judah and Simeon lived in this southern region.
- The largest city in the Negeb region was Beersheba.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: Abraham, Beersheba, Israel, Judah, Kadesh, Salt Sea, Simeon)

Bible References:

- Genesis 12:9
- Genesis 20:1-3
- Genesis 24:62
- Joshua 3:14-16
- Numbers 13:17-20

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H5045, H6160

Numbers References:

Numbers 13:17 Numbers 13:22 Numbers 13:29 Numbers 21:1 Numbers 33:40

Nephils, Nephilim, Nephilites

Definition:

The term “Nephils” is the name for a group of people who is mentioned in two passages in the Bible. Once in Genesis 6:4, before the flood, and twice in Numbers 13:33, after the flood. The “Nephils” are called “Nephilim” or “Nephilites.” The Nephils were a physically large people that had a reputation for being mighty warriors.

English translations have chosen to either transliterate the original language (Hebrew) word as “Nephilim” or transliterate the first part of the word "Nephil" and then add the English plural ending “ites” resulting in “Nephilites.” You may desire to do translisterate this term in your translation as well.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names, Copy or Borrow Words)

Bible References:

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H6062, H7497

Numbers References:

Numbers 13:33 Numbers 13:33

Og

Definition:

Og is the name of a man who was an Amorite king who ruled over the land of Bashan.

- The Israelites conquered Og and his people and land.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: Amorite, Bashan)

Bible References:

Word Data:

- Strong's: H5747

Numbers References:

Numbers 21:33 Numbers 32:33

Paran

Definition:

Paran was a desert or wilderness area east of Egypt and south of the land of Canaan. There was also a Mount Paran, which may have been another name for Mount Sinai.

- The slave Hagar and her son Ishmael went to live in the wilderness of Paran after Sarah ordered Abraham to send them away.
- When Moses led the Israelites out of Egypt, they passed through the wilderness of Paran.
- It was from Kadesh-Barnea in the wilderness of Paran that Moses sent twelve men to spy out the land of Canaan and bring back a report.
- The wilderness of Zin was north of Paran and the wilderness of Sin was south of Paran.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: Canaan, desert, Egypt, Kadesh, Sinai)

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 11:18
- 1 Samuel 25:1
- Genesis 21:19-21
- Numbers 10:11-13
- Numbers 13:3-4

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0364, H6290

Numbers References:

Numbers 10:12 Numbers 13:3 Numbers 13:26

Peor, Mount Peor, Baal Peor

Definition:

The terms “Peor” and “Mount Peor” refer to a mountain located northeast of the Salt Sea, in the region of Moab.

- The name “Beth Peor” was the name of a city, probably located on that mountain or near it. This was where Moses died after God showed him the Promised Land.
- “Baal Peor” was a false god of the Moabites that they worshiped at Mount Peor. The Israelites also started worshiping this idol and God punished them for it.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: Baal, false god, Moab, Salt Sea, worship)

Bible References:

- Numbers 23:28-30
- Numbers 31:16-17
- Psalms 106:28-29

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1047, H1187, H6465

Numbers References:

Numbers 23:28 Numbers 25:3 Numbers 25:5 Numbers 25:18 Numbers 31:16

Phinehas

Definition:

Phineas was the name of two men in the Old Testament.

- One of Aaron’s grandsons was a priest named Phinehas, who strongly opposed the worship of false gods in Israel.
- Phineas saved the Israelites from a plague that Yahweh had sent to punish them for marrying Midianite women and worshiping their false gods.
- On several occasions Phinehas went with the Israelite army to destroy the Midianites.
- The other Phinehas mentioned in the Old Testament was one of the evil sons of Eli the priest during the time of the prophet Samuel.
- Phinehas and his brother Hophni were both killed when the Philistines attacked Israel and stole the Ark of the Covenant.

(Translation suggestions: Translate Names)

(See also: ark of the covenant, Jordan River, Midian, Philistines, Samuel)

Bible References:

- 1 Samuel 4:4
- Ezra 8:2
- Joshua 22:13-14
- Numbers 25:6-7

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H6372

Numbers References:

Numbers 25:7 Numbers 25:11 Numbers 31:6

Sea of Reeds, Red Sea

Definition:

The "Sea of Reeds" was the name of a body of water located between Egypt and Arabia. It is now called the "Red Sea."

- The Red Sea is long and narrow. It is larger than a lake or river, but much smaller than an ocean.
- The Israelites had to cross the Red Sea when they were fleeing from Egypt. God performed a miracle and caused the waters of the sea to divide so that the people could walk across on dry land.
- The land of Canaan was north of this sea.
- This could also be translated as "Reed Sea."

(See also: Arabia**.** Canaan, Egypt)

Bible References:

- Acts 7:35-37
- Exodus 13:17-18
- Joshua 4:22-24
- Numbers 14:23-25

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **12:4** When the Israelites saw the Egyptian army coming, they realized they were trapped between Pharaoh's army and the **Red Sea**.
- **12:5** Then God told Moses, "Tell the people to move toward the **Red Sea**."
- **13:1** After God led the Israelites through the **Red Sea**, he led them through the wilderness to a mountain called Sinai.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3220, H5488, G20630, G22810

Numbers References:

Numbers 14:25 Numbers 21:4 Numbers 33:8 Numbers 33:10

Reuben

Definition:

Reuben was Jacob's first son. He was Leah's first son. His descendants became one of the tribes of Israel.

- The tribe descended from him was known as the tribe of Reuben or the Reubenites.
- In Hebrew, the name Reuben means "Look, a son!"
- The tribe of Reuben settled on the eastern side of the Jordan River along with the tribe of Gad and half the tribe of Manasseh.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: twelve tribes of Israel, Jacob, Leah)

Bible References:

- Genesis 29:32
- Genesis 35:21-22
- Genesis 42:22
- Genesis 42:37

Word Data:

- Strong's: H7205, H7206, G45020

Numbers References:

Numbers 1:5 Numbers 1:20 Numbers 2:10 Numbers 2:10 Numbers 2:16 Numbers 7:30 Numbers 10:18 Numbers 13:4 Numbers 16:1 Numbers 26:5 Numbers 26:5 Numbers 32:1 Numbers 32:2 Numbers 32:6 Numbers 32:25 Numbers 32:33

Salt Sea, eastern sea

Definition:

The Salt Sea (also called the Dead Sea) was located between southern Israel on its west and Moab on its east.

- The Jordan River flows south into the Salt Sea.
- Because it is smaller than most seas, it is more the size of a lake.
- This sea has such a high concentration of minerals (or “salts”) that nothing can live in its waters. Its lack of plants and animals is the cause of the name “Dead Sea.”
- In the Old Testament, this sea is also called the “Sea of Arabah” and the “Sea of Negeb” because of its location near the regions of Arabah and Negeb.

(Translation suggestions: Translate Names)

(See also: Ammon, Arabah, Jordan River, Moab, Negeb)

Bible References:

- 2 Chronicles 20:1-2
- Deuteronomy 3:17
- Joshua 3:14-16
- Numbers 34:1-3

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H3220, H4417

Numbers References:

Numbers 34:3

Seir, sons of Seir, Mount Seir, mountains of Seir, land of Seir

Definition:

Seir is the name of a man who was a descendant of Esau (Gen 36:20). The Bible calls Seir’s descendants “the sons of Seir.”

- The region where the descendants of Seir lived is sometimes called “the land of Seir” and sometimes called “Seir.” It is located within the land of Edom, south-east of the land of Israel.
- The Bible calls a mountain range in Edom “the mountains of Seir.”
- Joshua 15:10 also mentions a mountain in the land of Judah called “Mount Seir.”
- Eventually, Edom completely absorbed the land of Seir and "Seir," "Mount Seir," and "the mountains of Seir" became synonomous with "Edom."
- The context and/or the modifying word or words will indicate whether “Seir” refers to the person, his descendants, the land of Seir, the mountain Seir, the mountain range by that name, or is another name for the country of Edom.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: Edom)

Bible References:

Genesis 36:20 2 Chronicles 25:11,14 Ezekiel 25:8

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H2022, H8165

Numbers References:

Numbers 24:18

Seth

Definition:

In the book of Genesis, Seth was the third son of Adam and Eve.

- Eve said that Seth was given to her in place of her son Abel, who was murdered by his brother Cain.
- Noah was one of Seth's descendants, so everyone who has lived since the time of the Flood is also a descendant of Seth.
- Seth and his family were the first people to "call on the name of the Lord."

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: Abel, Cain, call, descendant, ancestor, flood, Noah)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 1:1
- Luke 3:36-38
- Numbers 24:17

Word Data:

- Strong's: H8352, G45890

Numbers References:

Numbers 24:17

Sihon

Definition:

Sihon is the name of a man who was an Amorite king who ruled over the land of Heshbon.

- The Israelites conquered Sihon and his people and land.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: Amorite, Heshbon)

Bible References:

Word Data:

- Strong's: H5511

Numbers References:

Numbers 21:21 Numbers 21:23 Numbers 21:26 Numbers 21:27 Numbers 21:29 Numbers 21:34 Numbers 32:33

Simeon

Definition:

Simeon was Jacob's second son. He was Leah's second son. His descendants became one of the tribes of Israel.

- The tribe descended from him was known as the "tribe of Simeon."
- The name Simeon is similar to the Hebrew word meaning "to hear."
- The tribe of Simeon occupied part of the southernmost territory in the promised land of Canaan. Its land was entirely surrounded by the land that belonged to Judah. When used as the name of a region of land, the term "Simeon" refers to the land given to the tribe of Simeon.
- When Joseph and Mary brought the baby Jesus to the temple in Jerusalem to dedicate him to God, an elderly man named Simeon praised God for allowing him to see the Messiah.
- Another man named Simeon is mentioned in Luke's geneology of Jesus.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: twelve tribes of Israel, Jacob, Leah)

Bible References:

- Genesis 29:33
- Genesis 34:25
- Genesis 42:35-36
- Genesis 43:21-23
- Luke 2:25

Word Data:

- Strong's: H8095, H8099, G48260

Numbers References:

Numbers 1:22 Numbers 2:12 Numbers 2:12 Numbers 7:36

Sinai, Horeb

Definition:

Mount Sinai, also called Mount Horeb, is a mountain that was probably located in the southern part of what is now called the Sinai Peninsula, but the exact location of this mountain is not known.

- It is the place where God revealed his covenant to the Israelites and gave Moses the stone tablets on which he had written the ten commandments.
- It is also called the "mountain of God."
- It was also the place where God later told Moses to strike a rock to provide water for the Israelites as they were wandering in the desert.
- It was the place where Moses saw the burning bush when he was tending sheep.
- It is possible that "Horeb" was the actual name of the mountain and that "Mount Sinai" simply means "mountain of Sinai," referring to the fact that Mount Horeb was located in the desert of Sinai.

(See also: desert, Ten Commandments covenant, Israel, Moses, Sinai)

Bible References:

- Acts 7:29-30
- Exodus 16:1-3
- Galatians 4:24
- Leviticus 27:34
- Numbers 1:17-19
- 1 Kings 8:9-11
- 2 Chronicles 5:9-10
- Deuteronomy 1:2
- Exodus 3:1-3
- Psalms 106:19

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **13:1** After God led the Israelites through the Red Sea, he led them through the wilderness to a mountain called **Sinai**.
- **13:3** Three days later, after the people had prepared themselves spiritually, God came down on top of **Mount Sinai** with thunder, lightning, smoke, and a loud trumpet blast.

- **13:11** For many days, Moses was on top of **Mount Sinai** talking with God.
- **15:13** Then Joshua reminded the people of their obligation to obey the covenant that God had made with the Israelites at **Sinai**.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2722, H5514, G37350, G46140

Numbers References:

Numbers 1:1 Numbers 3:1 Numbers 3:4 Numbers 9:1 Numbers 9:5 Numbers 10:12 Numbers 26:64 Numbers 28:6 Numbers 33:15 Numbers 33:16

Succoth

Definition:

Succoth was the name of two Old Testament cities. The word, "succoth" (or "sukkoth") means "shelters."

- One city called Succoth was located on the east side of the Jordan River.
- Jacob stayed at Succoth with his family and flocks, building shelters for them there.
- Hundreds of years later, Gideon and his exhausted men stopped at Succoth as they were chasing the Midianites, but the people there refused to give them any food.
- The other city called Succoth was located on the northern border of Egypt and was a place where the Israelites stopped after they crossed the Red Sea as they were escaping from slavery in Egypt.

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 7:46
- Exodus 12:37-40
- Joshua 13:27-28
- Judges 8:4-5

Word Data:

- Strong's: H5523, H5524

Numbers References:

Numbers 33:5 Numbers 33:6

the sea, the Great Sea, the western sea

Definition:

In the Bible, the "Great Sea" or "western sea" refers to what is now called the "Mediterranean Sea," which was the largest body of water known to the people of Bible times.

- The Mediterranean Sea is bordered by: Israel (east), Europe (north and west), and Africa (south).
- This sea was very important in ancient times for trade and travel since it bordered so many countries. Cities and people groups located on the coast of this sea were very prosperous because of how easy it was to access goods from other countries by boat.
- Since the Great Sea was located to the west of Israel, it was sometimes referred to as the "western sea."

(Translation suggestions: Translate Names)

(See also: Israel, people group, prosper)

Bible References:

- Ezekiel 47:15-17
- Ezekiel 47:18-20
- Joshua 15:3-4
- Numbers 13:27-29

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0314, H1419, H3220

Numbers References:

Numbers 11:22 Numbers 11:31 Numbers 13:29 Numbers 34:6 Numbers 34:11

Tirzah

Definition:

Tirzah was an important Canaanite city that was conquered by the Israelites. It was also the name of a daughter of Gilead, a descendant of Manasseh.

- The city Tirzah was located in the region occupied by the tribe of Manasseh. It is thought that the city was about 10 miles north of the city of Shechem.
- Years later, Tirzah became a temporary capital city of the northern kingdom of Israel, during the reigns of four kings of Israel.
- Tirzah was also the name of one of Manasseh's granddaughters. They asked to be given a portion of the land since their father had died and he had no sons to inherit it as would normally be the custom.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: Canaan, inherit, kingdom of Israel, Manasseh, Shechem)

Bible References:

- Numbers 27:1
- Numbers 36:11
- Song of Songs 6:4

Word Data:

- Strong's: H8656

Numbers References:

Numbers 26:33 Numbers 27:1 Numbers 36:11

Zebulun

Definition:

Zebulun was Jacob's tenth son. He was Leah's sixth son. His descendants became one of the tribes of Israel.

- The tribe descended from him was known as the "tribe of Zebulun" or "Zebulun."
- The meaning of the name Zebulun is unknown, but it is similar to a Hebrew word probably meaning "to honor" or "to dwell."
- The tribe of Zebulun settled in northwest Canaan, bordered by the lands of Naphtali, Issachar, Manasseh, and Asher.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: twelve tribes of Israel, Jacob, Leah)

Bible References:

- Exodus 1:1-5
- Genesis 30:20
- Isaiah 9:1
- Judges 4:10
- Matthew 4:13
- Matthew 4:16

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2074, H2075, G21940

Numbers References:

Numbers 2:7 Numbers 2:7 Numbers 7:24

adversary, enemy

Definition:

An "adversary" is a person (or group of people) who is opposed to someone else. The term "enemy" has a similar meaning.

- Your adversary can be a person who tries to oppose or harm another person.
- When two nations fight, each can be called an "adversary" of the other.
- In the Bible, the devil is referred to as an "adversary" and an "enemy."
- The term "adversary" may be translated as "opponent" or "enemy," but it suggests a stronger form of opposition.

(See also: Satan)

Bible References:

- 1 Timothy 5:14
- Isaiah 9:11
- Job 6:23
- Lamentations 4:12
- Luke 12:59
- Matthew 13:25

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0341, H6146, H6887, H6862, H6965, H7790, H7854, H8130, H8324, G04760, G04800, G21890, G21900, G52270

Numbers References:

Numbers 10:9 Numbers 10:9 Numbers 10:35 Numbers 14:42 Numbers 22:22 Numbers 22:32 Numbers 23:11 Numbers 24:8 Numbers 24:10 Numbers 24:18 Numbers 32:21 Numbers 35:23

afflict, affliction, distress

Definition:

The term “afflict” means to cause someone distress or suffering. An “affliction” is the disease, emotional grief, or other disaster that results from this.

- Sometimes God afflicted his people with sickness or other hardships with the intention for them to repent of their sins and turn back to him.
- God caused afflictions or plagues to come on the people of Egypt because their king refused to obey God.
- To “be afflicted with” means to suffer from some kind of distress, such as a disease, persecution, or emotional grief.
- In some Old Testament contexts, the idea of “afflicting oneself” or “afflicting one’s soul” means to abstain from eating food.

Translation Suggestions:

- To “afflict” someone could be translated as “cause someone to experience troubles” or “cause someone to suffer” or “cause suffering to come.”
- A phrase like “afflict someone with leprosy” could be translated as “cause someone to be sick with leprosy.”
- When a disease or disaster is sent to “afflict” people or animals, this could be translated as “cause suffering to.”
- Depending on the context, the term “affliction” could be translated as “calamity” or “sickness” or “suffering” or “great distress.”
- The phrase “afflicted with” could also be translated as “suffering from” or “sick with.”

(See also: leprosy, plague, suffer)

Bible References:

- 2 Thessalonians 1:6
- Amos 5:12
- Colossians 1:24
- Exodus 22:22-24
- Genesis 12:17-20
- Genesis 15:12-13
- Genesis 29:32

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0205, H3013, H3905, H3906, H6031, H6039, H6040, H6041, H6862, H6869, H6887, H7451, H7489, G23460, G23470, G38040

Numbers References:

Numbers 24:24 Numbers 24:24

age, aged, old, old age, years old

Definition:

In this sense, the term “age” refers to the number of years a person has lived. In the Bible the terms “aged” and “old” are both used to describe someone who has lived a for many years.

Translation Suggestions:

- The phrase “at a very old age” could be translated as “at many years old” or “when he was very old” or “when he had lived a very long time.”
- The term “aged” could also be translated as “old” or “very old” depending on context.

Bible References:

Word Data:

- Strong’s: G01650, G01660

Numbers References:

Numbers 19:4 Numbers 24:10

age, era, time

Definition:

Used in this sense the term “age” refers to a time period.

- Other words used to express an extended period of time include “era” and “season.”
- Jesus refers to “this age” as the present time when evil, sin, and disobedience toward God fill the earth.
- There will be a future age when righteousness will reign in a new heaven and a new earth.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, the term “age” could be translated as “era” or “time period” or “time.”
- The phrase “this present evil age” means “during this time right now when people are very evil.”
- The phrase “end of the age” (used in Jesus’ words in Matthew 28:20) means “end of this period of history” or “end of this present age” and refers to the end of this present age at Jesus’ second coming.

Bible References:

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H2165, H6256, H6471, G21190, G21210, G22350, G25400, G35680, G41830, G42180, G44550, G51190, G55500, G55510, G56100

Numbers References:

Numbers 9:2 Numbers 9:3 Numbers 9:7 Numbers 9:13 Numbers 10:10 Numbers 15:3 Numbers 22:4 Numbers 22:28 Numbers 22:32 Numbers 22:33 Numbers 23:23

alarm, alarmed

Definition:

An alarm is something that warns people about something that could harm them. To "be alarmed" is to be very worried and frightened about something dangerous or threatening.

- King Jehoshapat was alarmed when he heard that the Moabites were planning to attack the kingdom of Judah.
- Jesus told his disciples not to be alarmed when they hear about disasters happening in the last days.
- The expression "sound an alarm" means to give a warning. In ancient times, a person could sound an alarm by making a noise.

Translation Suggestions

- To "alarm someone" means to "cause someone to worry" or to "worry someone."
- To "be alarmed" could be translated as "be worried" or "be frightened" or "be very concerned."
- The expression "sound an alarm" could be translated by "publicly warn" or "announce that danger is coming" or "blow a trumpet to warn about danger."

(See also: Jehoshaphat, Moab)

Bible References:

- Daniel 11:44-45
- Jeremiah 4:19-20
- Numbers 10:9

Word Data:

- Strong's: H7321, H8643

Numbers References:

Numbers 10:5 Numbers 10:6 Numbers 10:7
Numbers 10:9 Numbers 31:6

assembly, assemble, congregation, meeting, gather, community

Definition:

The term "assembly" usually refers to a group of people who come together for some reason, often to discuss problems, give advice, or make decisions. An assembly can be a group that is organized in an official and somewhat permanent way, or it can be a group of people who come together temporarily for a specific purpose or occasion.

Old Testament

- In the Old Testament there was a special kind of assembly called a "sacred assembly" in which the people of Israel would gather to worship Yahweh.
- Sometimes the term "assembly" referred to the Israelites in general, as a group.

New Testament

- In the New Testament, an assembly of 70 Jewish leaders in major cities such as Jerusalem would meet to judge legal matters and to settle disputes between people. This assembly was known as the "Sanhedrin" or the "Council."

Translation Suggestions

- Depending on the context, "assembly" could also be translated as "special gathering" or "congregation" or "council" or "army" or "large group."
- When the term "assembly" refers generally to the Israelites as a whole, it could also be translated as "community" or "people of Israel."
- The phrase, "all the assembly" could be translated as "all the people" or "the whole group of Israelites" or "everyone." (See: hyperbole)
- A large gathering of enemy soldiers was sometimes also referred to as an "assembly." This could be translated as "army."

(See also: council)

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 8:14
- Acts 7:38
- Ezra 10:12-13
- Hebrews 12:22-24
- Leviticus 4:20-21
- Nehemiah 8:1-3

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0622, H1481, H2199, H3259, H4150, H4186, H4744, H5475, H5712, H6116, H6908, H6950, H6951, H6952, G15770, G38310, G48630, G48640, G48710, G49050

Numbers References:

Numbers 1:2 Numbers 1:16 Numbers 1:18 Numbers 1:18 Numbers 1:53 Numbers 3:7 Numbers 4:34 Numbers 8:9 Numbers 8:9 Numbers 8:20 Numbers 10:2 Numbers 10:2 Numbers 10:3 Numbers 10:7 Numbers 10:7 Numbers 10:25 Numbers 11:16 Numbers 11:24 Numbers 11:30 Numbers 12:14 Numbers 12:15 Numbers 13:26 Numbers 13:26 Numbers 14:1 Numbers 14:2 Numbers 14:5 Numbers 14:5 Numbers 14:7 Numbers 14:10 Numbers 14:27 Numbers 14:35 Numbers 14:36 Numbers 15:15 Numbers 15:24 Numbers 15:25 Numbers 15:26 Numbers 15:32 Numbers 15:33 Numbers 15:33 Numbers 15:35 Numbers 15:36 Numbers 16:2 Numbers 16:2 Numbers 16:3 Numbers 16:3 Numbers 16:3 Numbers 16:5 Numbers 16:6 Numbers 16:9 Numbers 16:11 Numbers 16:16 Numbers 16:19 Numbers 16:19 Numbers 16:21 Numbers 16:22 Numbers 16:24 Numbers 16:26 Numbers 16:33 Numbers 16:40 Numbers 16:41 Numbers 16:42 Numbers 16:42 Numbers 16:45 Numbers 16:46 Numbers 16:47 Numbers 19:9 Numbers 19:9 Numbers 19:10 Numbers 19:20 Numbers 20:1 Numbers 20:2 Numbers 20:2 Numbers 20:4 Numbers 20:6 Numbers 20:8 Numbers 20:8 Numbers 20:10 Numbers 20:10 Numbers 20:11 Numbers 20:12 Numbers 20:22 Numbers 20:24 Numbers 20:26 Numbers 20:29 Numbers 21:16 Numbers 21:23 Numbers 22:4 Numbers 25:6 Numbers 25:7 Numbers 26:2 Numbers 26:9 Numbers 26:9 Numbers 26:10 Numbers 27:2 Numbers 27:3 Numbers 27:3 Numbers 27:13 Numbers 27:13 Numbers 27:14 Numbers 27:16 Numbers 27:17 Numbers 27:19 Numbers 27:20 Numbers 27:21 Numbers 28:18 Numbers 28:25 Numbers 28:26 Numbers 29:1 Numbers 29:7 Numbers 29:35 Numbers 31:2 Numbers 31:12 Numbers 31:13 Numbers 31:16 Numbers 31:26 Numbers 31:27 Numbers 32:2 Numbers 32:4 Numbers 35:12 Numbers 35:19 Numbers 35:21 Numbers 35:24 Numbers 35:25 Numbers 35:25

avenge, avenger, revenge, vengeance

Definition:

To “avenge” or “take revenge” or “execute vengeance” is to punish someone in order to pay him back for the harm he did. The act of avenging or taking revenge is “vengeance.”

- Usually “avenge” implies an intent to see justice done or to right a wrong,
- When referring to people, the expression “take revenge” or “get revenge” usually involves wanting to get back at the person who did the harm.
- When God “takes vengeance” or “executes vengeance,” he is acting in righteousness because he is punishing sin and rebellion.

Translation Suggestions:

- The expression to “avenge” could also be translated as to “right a wrong” or to “get justice for.”
- When referring to human beings, to “take revenge” could be translated as “pay back” or “hurt in order to punish” or “get back at.”
- Depending on the context, “vengeance” could be translated as “punishment” or “punishment of sin” or “payment for wrongs done.” If a word meaning “retaliation” is used, this would apply to human beings only.
- When God says, “take my vengeance,” this could be translated by “punish them for wrongs done against me” or “cause bad things to happen because they have sinned against me.”
- When referring to God’s vengeance, make sure it is clear that God is right in his punishment of sin.

(See also: punish, just, righteous)

Bible References:

- 1 Samuel 24:12-13
- Ezekiel 25:15
- Isaiah 47:3-5
- Leviticus 19:17-18
- Psalms 18:47
- Romans 12:19

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1350, H3467, H5358, H5359, H5360, H8199, G15560, G15570, G15580, G37090

Numbers References:

Numbers 31:2 Numbers 31:2 Numbers 31:3

barley

Definition:

The term “barley” refers to a kind of grain that is used to make bread.

- The barley plant has a long stalk with a head at the top where the seeds or grains grow.
- Barley does well in warmer weather so it is often harvested in spring or summer.
- When barley is threshed, the edible seeds are separated from the worthless chaff.
- Barley grain is ground up into flour, which is then mixed with water or oil to make bread.
- If barley is not known, this could be translated as “grain called barley” or “barley grain.”

(See also: How to Translate Unknowns)

(See also: grain, thresh, wheat)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 11:12-14
- Job 31:40
- Judges 7:14
- Numbers 5:15
- Revelation 6:6

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H8184, G29150, G29160

Numbers References:

Numbers 5:15

barren, dry

Definition:

To be “barren” means to not be fertile or fruitful.

- Soil or land that is barren is not able to produce any plants.
- A woman who is barren is one who is physically unable to conceive or bear a child.

Translation Suggestions:

- When “barren” is used to refer to land, it could be translated as “not fertile” or “unfruitful” or “without plants.”
- When it is referring to a barren woman, it could be translated as “childless” or “not able to bear children” or “unable to conceive a child.”

Bible References:

- 1 Samuel 2:5
- Galatians 4:27
- Genesis 11:30
- Job 3:7

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H4420, H6115, H6135, H6723, H7921, G06920, G47230

Numbers References:

Numbers 6:3 Numbers 11:6

bear, bearer, bore, borne, produce, produced

Definition:

Used in this sense, the term “bear” means to “produce” or “give birth to.”

- A common expression in the Bible is “bear fruit,” which means “produce fruit”
- When speaking of a woman who will bear a child, this means “give birth to” a child
- Depending on context, this term could be translated as “produce” or “give birth to.”

(Translation suggestions: fruit)

Bible References:

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H3205, H3209, H3211, H5375, G01420, G03990, G04300, G09410, G10800, G41600, G47220, G50410, G50880, G53420, G54090

Numbers References:

Numbers 11:12 Numbers 13:22 Numbers 13:28 Numbers 18:30 Numbers 26:59 Numbers 26:59 Numbers 26:60

bear, bears, bore, borne, bearer, bearing, carry

Definition:

Used in this sense, the term “bear” means to carry something.

- To “bear a burden” means to carry something heavy.
- The term “burden bearers” refers to men who carry heavy things and could be translated as “burden carriers” or “carriers.”
- The term “armor bearer” could be translated as “armor carrier.”
- The phrase “bearer of news” could be translated as “carrier of news.”
- Depending on context, this term could be translated as “carry” or “bring.”

(See also: strength)

Bible References:

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H5375

Numbers References:

Numbers 1:50 Numbers 4:10 Numbers 4:12 Numbers 4:15 Numbers 4:19 Numbers 4:25 Numbers 7:9 Numbers 10:17 Numbers 10:21 Numbers 11:12 Numbers 11:12 Numbers 11:14 Numbers 11:17 Numbers 11:17 Numbers 13:23 Numbers 13:23

bear, bore, borne

Definition:

Used in this sense, the term “bear” means to “be responsible for” something or to “be held responsible for” something.

- The statement that “a son will not bear the iniquity of his father” means that he “will not be held responsible for” or “will not be punished for” his father’s sins.
- Depending on context, this term could be translated as “be responsible for” or “be held responsible for.”

(See also: iniquity)

Bible References:

Word Data:

- Strong’s:

Numbers References:

Numbers 18:23

beast

Definition:

In the Bible, the term “beast” is often just another way of saying “animal.”

- A wild beast is a type of animal that lives freely in the forest or fields and has not been trained by people.
- A domestic beast is an animal that lives with people and is kept for food or for performing work, such as plowing fields. Often the term “livestock” is used to refer to this kind of animal.
- The Old Testament book of Daniel and the New Testament book of Revelation describe visions which have beasts that represent evil powers and authorities that oppose God. (See: Metaphor)
- Some of these beasts are described as having strange features, such as several heads and many horns. They often have power and authority, indicating that they may represent countries, nations, or other political powers.
- Ways to translate this could include “creature” or “created thing” or “animal” or “wild animal,” depending on the context.

(See also: authority, Daniel, livestock, nation, power, reveal, Beelzebul)

Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 15:32
- 1 Samuel 17:44
- 2 Chronicles 25:18
- Jeremiah 16:1-4
- Leviticus 7:21
- Psalms 49:12-13

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0338, H0929, H1165, H2123, H2416, H2423, H2874, H3753, H4806, H7409, G22260, G23410, G23420, G29340, G49680, G50740

Numbers References:

Numbers 32:26

day

Definition:

The term “day” generally refers to the time it takes for the alternating periods of light and darkness in the sky to complete one cycle (that is, 24 hours). However, in the Bible the same term is often used to refer to a shorter period of time (such as the time between sunrise and sunset) or a longer period of time that is often not specified.

- “Day” is sometimes used in contrast to “night.” In these cases, the term refers to the period of time when the sky is light.
- The term may also refer to a specific point in time, such as “today.”
- Sometimes the term “day” is used figuratively to refer to a longer period of time, such as the “day of Yahweh” or “last days.” Some languages will use a different expression to translate these figurative uses or will translate “day” non-figuratively.

Translation Suggestions:

- It is best to translate this term literally as “day” or “daytime” using the word in your language that refers to the part of the day when there is light.
- Other translations of “day” could include “daytime,” “time,” “season,” “occasion” or “event,” depending on the context.

(See also: time, judgment day, last day)

Bible References:

- Acts 20:6
- Daniel 10:4
- Ezra 6:15
- Ezra 6:19
- Matthew 9:15

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H3117, H3118, H6242, G22500

Numbers References:

Numbers 6:5 Numbers 6:12 Numbers 7:11 Numbers 9:21 Numbers 11:19 Numbers 11:32 Numbers 13:20 Numbers 14:14 Numbers 16:41 Numbers 17:8 Numbers 28:3 Numbers 28:24 Numbers 33:3

hour, moment

Definition:

The term “hour” is often used in the Bible to tell what time of day a certain event took place. It is also used figuratively to mean “time” or “moment.”

- The Jews counted daylight hours starting at sunrise (around 6 AM). For example, “the ninth hour” meant “around three in the afternoon.”
- Nighttime hours were counted starting at sunset (around 6 PM). For example, “the third hour of the night” meant “around nine in the evening” in our present-day system.
- Since references to time in the Bible will not correspond exactly to the present-day time system, phrases such as “around nine” or “about six o’clock” could be used.
- Some translations might add phrases like “in the evening” or “in the morning” or “in the afternoon” to make it clear what time of day is being talked about.
- The phrase, “in that hour” could be translated as “at that time” or “in that moment.”
- Referring to Jesus, the expression “his hour had come” could be translated as “the time had come for him to” or “the appointed time for him had come.”

Bible References:

- Acts 2:15
- John 4:51-52
- Luke 23:44
- Matthew 20:3

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H8160, G56100

Numbers References:

Numbers 16:21 Numbers 16:45

month, monthly

Definition:

The term “month” refers to a period of time lasting about four weeks. The number of days in each month varies depending on whether a lunar or solar calendar is used.

- In the lunar calendar, the length of each month is based on the amount of time it takes for the moon to go around the earth, about twenty-nine days. In this system there are twelve or thirteen months in a year. Despite the year being twelve or thirteen months, the first month is always called the same name even though it may be a different season.
- The “new moon,” or beginning phase of the moon with its sliver of light, marks the beginning of each month in the lunar calendar.
- All the names of months referred to in the Bible are those of the lunar calendar since this was the system used by the Israelites. Modern Jews still use this calendar for religious purposes.
- The modern-day solar calendar is based on how long it takes the earth to go around the sun (about 365 days). In this system, the year is always divided up into twelve months, with the length of each month ranging from twenty-eight to thirty-one days.

Bible References:

- 1 Samuel 20:34
- Acts 18:9-11
- Hebrews 11:23
- Numbers 10:10

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H2320, H3391, H3393, G33760

Numbers References:

Numbers 1:1 Numbers 1:18 Numbers 3:15 Numbers 3:22 Numbers 3:28 Numbers 3:34 Numbers 3:39 Numbers 9:1 Numbers 9:3 Numbers 9:5 Numbers 9:11 Numbers 9:22 Numbers 10:10 Numbers 10:11 Numbers 11:20 Numbers 18:16 Numbers 20:1 Numbers 26:62 Numbers 28:11 Numbers 28:14 Numbers 28:14 Numbers 28:14 Numbers 28:16 Numbers 28:16 Numbers 28:17 Numbers 29:1 Numbers 29:1 Numbers 29:6 Numbers 29:7 Numbers 33:3 Numbers 33:3 Numbers 33:38 Numbers 33:38

week

Definition:

The term “week” literally refers to a period of time lasting seven days.

- In the Jewish system of counting time, a week begins at sunset on Saturday and ends at sunset the following Saturday.
- In the Bible, the term “week” is sometimes used figuratively to refer to a group of seven units of time, such as seven years.
- The “Festival of Weeks” is a celebration of harvest that takes place seven weeks after Passover. It is also called “Pentecost.”

(See also: Pentecost)

Bible References:

- Acts 20:7-8
- Deuteronomy 16:9
- Leviticus 23:15-16

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H7620, G45210

Numbers References:

Numbers 28:26

year

Definition:

When used literally, the term “year” in the Bible refers to a period of time lasting 354 days. This is according to the lunar calendar system which is based on the time it takes for the moon to go around the earth.

- A year in the modern-day solar calendar lasts 365 days divided into twelve months, based on the amount of time it takes for the earth to travel around the sun.
- In both calendar systems a year has twelve months. But an extra thirteenth month is sometimes added to the year in the lunar calendar to make up for the fact that a lunar year is eleven days less than a solar year. This helps keep the two calendars more in line with each other.
- In the Bible, the term “year” is also used in a figurative sense to refer to a general time when a special event takes place. Examples of this include, “the year of Yahweh” or “in the year of drought” or “the favorable year of the Lord.” In these contexts, “year” could be translated as “time” or “season” or “time period.”

(See also: month)

Bible References:

- 2 Kings 23:31
- Acts 19:8-10
- Daniel 8:1
- Exodus 12:2

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H3117, H7620, H7657, H8140, H8141, G17630, G20940

Numbers References:

Numbers 1:1 Numbers 1:3 Numbers 1:18 Numbers 1:20 Numbers 1:22 Numbers 1:34 Numbers 1:42 Numbers 1:45 Numbers 4:3 Numbers 4:23 Numbers 4:30 Numbers 4:35 Numbers 4:39 Numbers 4:43 Numbers 4:47 Numbers 6:12 Numbers 6:14 Numbers 7:15 Numbers 7:17 Numbers 7:21 Numbers 7:23 Numbers 7:27 Numbers 7:29 Numbers 8:24 Numbers 8:25 Numbers 9:1 Numbers 10:11 Numbers 13:22 Numbers 14:29 Numbers 14:33 Numbers 15:27 Numbers 26:2 Numbers 26:4 Numbers 28:3 Numbers 28:9 Numbers 28:11 Numbers 28:14 Numbers 28:19 Numbers 29:2 Numbers 29:17 Numbers 32:11 Numbers 32:13 Numbers 33:38 Numbers 33:39

blemish, unblemished, defect

Definition:

The term “blemish” refers to a physical defect or imperfection on an animal or person. It can also refer to spiritual imperfections and faults in people.

- For certain sacrifices, God instructed the Israelites to offer an animal with no blemishes or defects.
- This is a picture of how Jesus Christ was the perfect sacrifice, without any sin.
- Believers in Christ have been cleansed from their sin by his blood and are considered to be without blemish.
- Ways to translate this term could include “defect” or “imperfection” or “sin,” depending on the context.

(See also: believe, clean, sacrifice, sin)

Bible References:

- 1 Peter 1:19
- 2 Peter 2:13
- Deuteronomy 15:19-21
- Numbers 6:13-15
- Song of Songs 4:7

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H3971, H8400, H8549, G34700

Numbers References:

Numbers 19:2

bow, bow down, kneel, bend, bend the knee

Definition:

To bow means to bend over to humbly express respect and honor toward someone. To “bow down” means to bend over or kneel down very low, often with face and hands toward the ground.

- Other expressions include “bow the knee” (meaning to kneel) and “bow the head” (meaning to bend the head forward in humble respect or in sorrow).
- Bowing down can also be a sign of distress or mourning. Someone who is “bowed down” has been brought to a low position of humility.
- Often a person will bow in the presence of someone who is of higher status or greater importance, such as kings and other rulers.
- Bowing down before God is an expression of worship to him.
- In the Bible, people bowed down to Jesus when they realized from his miracles and teaching that he had come from God.
- The Bible says that when Jesus comes back someday, everyone will bow the knee to worship him.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, this term could be translated with a word or phrase that means “bend forward” or “bend the head” or “kneel.”
- The term “bow down” could be translated as “kneel down” or “prostrate oneself.”
- Some languages will have more than one way of translating this term, depending on the context.

(See also: humble, worship)

Bible References:

- 2 Kings 5:18
- Exodus 20:5
- Genesis 24:26
- Genesis 44:14
- Isaiah 44:19

- Luke 24:5
- Matthew 2:11
- Revelation 3:9

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0086, H3721, H3766, H5753, H5791, H6915, H7743, H7812, H7817, G11200, G25780, G28270, G40980

Numbers References:

Numbers 22:31 Numbers 24:9

bread

Definition:

Bread is a food made from flour mixed with water and oil to form a dough. The dough is then shaped into a loaf and baked.

- When the term "loaf" occurs by itself, it means "loaf of bread."
- Bread dough is usually made with something that makes it rise, such as yeast. However, bread can also be made without yeast so that it does not rise. This is called "unleavened bread" in the Bible. The ancient Israelites ate "unleavened bread" during the passover meal.
- Since bread was the main food for many people in biblical times, this term is also used in the Bible to refer to food in general. (See: Synecdoche) Many times the term "bread" can be translated more generally as "food."
- The phrase "bread of the presence" refers to twelve loaves of bread that were placed on a golden table in the tabernacle or temple building as a sacrifice to God. These loaves represented the twelve tribes of Israel and were only for the priests to eat. This could be translated as "bread showing that God lived among them."
- The term "bread from heaven" refers to the special white food called "manna" that God provided for the Israelites when they were wandering through the desert. Jesus also called himself the "bread that came down from heaven" and the "bread of life."

(See also: Passover, tabernacle, temple, unleavened bread, yeast)

Bible References:

- Acts 2:46
- Acts 27:35
- Exodus 16:15
- Luke 9:13
- Mark 6:38
- Matthew 4:4
- Matthew 11:18

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2557, H3899, H4635, H4682, G01060, G07400, G42860

Numbers References:

Numbers 4:7 Numbers 14:9 Numbers 15:19
Numbers 21:5 Numbers 28:2 Numbers 28:24

bronze

Definition:

The term "bronze" refers to a kind of metal that is made from melting together the metals, copper and tin. It has a dark brown color, slightly red.

- Bronze resists water corrosion and is a good conductor of heat.
- In ancient times, bronze was used for making tools, weapons, artwork, altars, cooking pots, and soldiers' armor, among other things.
- Many building materials for the tabernacle and temple were made of bronze.
- Idols of false gods were also often made of bronze metal.
- Bronze objects were made by first melting the bronze metal into a liquid and then pouring it into molds. This process was called "casting."

(See also: How to Translate Unknowns)

(See also: armor, tabernacle, temple)

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 7:16
- 1 Samuel 17:37-38
- Daniel 2:44-45
- Exodus 25:3-7
- Revelation 1:15

Word Data:

- Strong's: H5153, H5154, H5174, H5178, G54700, G54740, G54750

Numbers References:

Numbers 16:39 Numbers 21:9

burnt offering, offering by fire

Definition:

A “burnt offering” was a type of sacrifice to God that was burnt up by fire on an altar. It was offered to make atonement for the sins of the people. This was also called an “offering by fire.”

- Animals used for this offering were usually sheep or goats, but oxen and birds were also used.
- Except for the skin, the entire animal was burned up in this offering. The skin or hide was given to the priest.
- God commanded the Jewish people to offer burnt offerings two times every day.

(See also: altar, atonement, ox, priest, sacrifice)

Bible References:

- Exodus 40:5-7
- Genesis 8:20
- Genesis 22:1-3
- Leviticus 3:5
- Mark 12:33

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0801, H5930, H7133, H8548, G36460

Numbers References:

Numbers 6:11 Numbers 6:14 Numbers 6:16 Numbers 7:15 Numbers 7:21 Numbers 7:27 Numbers 7:33 Numbers 7:39 Numbers 7:45 Numbers 7:51 Numbers 7:57 Numbers 7:63 Numbers 7:69 Numbers 7:75 Numbers 7:81 Numbers 7:87 Numbers 8:12 Numbers 10:10 Numbers 15:3 Numbers 15:5 Numbers 15:8 Numbers 15:24 Numbers 23:3 Numbers 23:6 Numbers 23:17 Numbers 28:3 Numbers 28:6 Numbers 28:10 Numbers 28:10 Numbers 28:11 Numbers 28:13 Numbers 28:14 Numbers 28:15 Numbers 28:19 Numbers 28:23 Numbers 28:23 Numbers 28:24 Numbers 28:31 Numbers 29:2 Numbers 29:6 Numbers 29:6 Numbers 29:11 Numbers 29:19

bury, buried, burial

Definition:

The term “bury” refers to putting an object (usually a dead body) into a hole or other burial place and then covering it with dirt or stones, etc. The term “burial” is the act of burying something, or it can be used to describe a place where something has been buried.

- Often people bury a dead body by placing it into a deep hole in the ground and then covering it with dirt.
- Sometimes the dead body is placed in a box-like structure, such as a coffin, before burying it.
- In Bible times, dead people were often buried in a cave or similar place. After Jesus died, his body was wrapped in cloths and placed in a stone tomb that was sealed with a large boulder.
- The terms “burial place” or “burial room” or “burial chamber” or “burial cave” always refer to a place where a dead body is buried.
- Other things can also be buried, such as when Achan buried silver and other things that he had stolen from Jericho.
- The phrase “buried his face” usually means “covered his face with his hands.”
- Sometimes the word “hide” can mean “bury” as when Achan hid things in the ground that he had stolen from Jericho. This meant he buried them in the ground.

(See also: Jericho, tomb)

Bible References:

- 2 Kings 9:9-10
- Genesis 35:4-5
- Jeremiah 25:33
- Luke 16:22
- Matthew 27:7
- Psalm 79:1-3

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H6900, H6912, H6913, G17790, G17800, G22900, G49160, G50270

Numbers References:

Numbers 11:34 Numbers 20:1 Numbers 33:4

captive, captivate, captivity, catch

Definition:

The terms “captive” and “captivity” refer to people who have been captured and forced to live somewhere they do not want to live, such as in a foreign country.

- The Israelites from the kingdom of Judah were held captive in the kingdom of Babylonia for 70 years.
- Captives are often required to work for the people or nation that captured them.
- Daniel and Nehemiah were Israelite captives who worked for the Babylonian king.
- The expression to “take captive” is another way of talking about capturing someone.
- The expression, “carry you away captive” could also be translated as “force you to live as captives” or “take you away to another country as prisoners.”
- In a figurative sense, the apostle Paul tells Christians to “take captive” every thought and make it obedient to Christ.
- He also talks about how a person can be “taken captive” by sin, which means he is “controlled by” sin.

Translation Suggestions

- Depending on the context, to be “held captive” could also be translated by, “not allowed to be free” or “kept in prison” or “forced to live in a foreign country.”
- The expression, “led captive” or “taken captive” could be translated as “captured” or “imprisoned” or “forced to go to a foreign land.”
- The term “captives” could also be translated as “people who were captured” or “enslaved people.”
- Depending on the context, “captivity” could also be translated as “imprisonment” or “exile” or “forced stay in a foreign country.”

(See also: Babylon, exile, prison, seize)

Bible References:

- 2 Corinthians 10:5

- Isaiah 20:4
- Jeremiah 43:3
- Luke 4:18

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1123, H1473, H1540, H1546, H1547, H7617, H7622, H7628, H7633, H7686, G01610, G01620, G01630, G01640, G22210

Numbers References:

Numbers 21:1 Numbers 21:1 Numbers 21:29 Numbers 24:22 Numbers 31:9 Numbers 31:12 Numbers 31:19 Numbers 31:26

cast out, driving out, throw out

Definition:

To "cast out" or "drive out" someone or something means to force that person or thing to go away.

- The term "cast" means the same thing as "throw." To cast a net means to throw the net into the water.
- In a figurative sense, "cast out" or "cast away" someone can mean to reject that person and send him away.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, other ways to translate this could include, "force out" or "send away" or "get rid of."
- To "cast out demons" could be translated as "cause the demons to leave" or "drive the evil spirits out" or "expel the demons" or "command the demon to come out."
- To "cast out" someone from a synagog or church could be translated as "banish them" or "put them out."

(See also: demon, demon-possessed, lots)

Bible References:

- Acts 7:17-19
- Mark 3:13-16
- Mark 9:29
- Matthew 7:21-23
- Matthew 9:32-34
- Matthew 12:24
- Matthew 17:19-21

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1272, H1644, H1920, H3423, H7971, H7993, G15440

Numbers References:

Numbers 22:6

cedar, cedarwood

Definition:

The term “cedar” refers to a large fir tree which normally has reddish-brown wood. Like other firs, it has cones and needle-like leaves.

- The Old Testament often mentions cedar trees in connection with Lebanon, where they grew plentifully.
- Cedar wood was used in the construction of the Jerusalem temple.
- It was also used for sacrifices and purification offerings.

(See also: fir, pure, sacrifice, temple)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 14:1-2
- 1 Kings 7:1-2
- Isaiah 2:13
- Zechariah 11:2

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0730

Numbers References:

Numbers 19:6 Numbers 24:6

cherub, cherubs

Definition:

The term “cherub” and "cherubs"(the plural form is often transliterated as “cherubim” in English versions), refer to a special type of heavenly being that God created. The Bible describes cherubs as having wings and flames.

- The cherubs display the glory and power of God and seem to be guardians of sacred things.
- After Adam and Eve sinned, God placed cherubs with flaming swords at the east side of the Garden of Eden so that people could no longer get to the tree of life.
- God commanded the Israelites to carve two cherubs facing each other, with their wings touching, over the atonement lid of the ark of the covenant.
- He also told them to weave pictures of the cherubs into the curtains of the tabernacle.
- In some passages, these creatures are also described as having four faces: of a man, a lion, an ox, and an eagle.
- Cherubs are sometimes thought of as being angels, but the Bible does not clearly state that.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “cherubs” could be translated as “creatures with wings” or “guardians with wings” or “winged spiritual guardians” or “holy, winged guardians.”
- A “cherub” should be translated as the singular of cherubs, as in, “creature with wings” or “winged spiritual guardian,” for example.
- Make sure that the translation of this term is different from the translation of “angel.”
- Also consider how this term is translated or written in a Bible translation in a local or national language. (See: How to Translate Unknowns)

(See also: angel)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 13:6

- 1 Kings 6:23-26
- Exodus 25:15-18
- Ezekiel 9:3
- Genesis 3:22-24

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3742, G55020

Numbers References:

Numbers 7:89

chief, leader

Definition:

The term "chief" refers to the most powerful or most important leader of a particular group.

- Examples of this include, "chief musician," "chief priest," and "chief tax collector." and "chief ruler."
- It can also be used for the head of a specific family, as in Genesis 36 where certain men are named as "chiefs" of their family clans. In this context, the term "chief" could also be translated as "leader" or "head father."
- When used to describe a noun, this term could be translated as "leading" or "ruling," as in "leading musician" or "ruling priest."

(See also: head, chief priests, priest, tax collector)

Bible References:

- Daniel 1:11-13
- Ezekiel 26:15-16
- Luke 19:2
- Psalm 4:1

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0047, H0441, H5057, H5387, H5632, H6496, H7218, H7225, H7227, H7229, H7262, H8269, H8334, G07490, G07500, G07540, G44100, G44130, G55060

Numbers References:

Numbers 1:16 Numbers 1:44 Numbers 2:3 Numbers 2:5 Numbers 2:7 Numbers 2:10 Numbers 2:12 Numbers 2:14 Numbers 2:18 Numbers 2:20 Numbers 2:22 Numbers 2:25 Numbers 2:27 Numbers 2:29 Numbers 3:24 Numbers 3:30 Numbers 3:32 Numbers 3:35 Numbers 4:34 Numbers 4:46 Numbers 7:2 Numbers 7:2 Numbers 7:3 Numbers 7:10 Numbers 7:11 Numbers 7:24 Numbers 7:30 Numbers 7:36 Numbers 7:42 Numbers 7:48 Numbers 7:54 Numbers 7:60 Numbers 7:66 Numbers 7:72 Numbers 7:78 Numbers 7:84 Numbers 10:4 Numbers 13:2 Numbers 16:2 Numbers 17:2 Numbers 17:6 Numbers 17:6 Numbers 25:14 Numbers 25:18 Numbers 31:13 Numbers 32:2 Numbers 34:18 Numbers 34:18 Numbers 34:28 Numbers 36:1

clan

Definition:

The term “clan” refers to a group of extended family members who come from a common ancestor.

- In the Old Testament, the Israelites were counted according to their clans, or family groups.
- Clans were normally named after their most well-known ancestor.
- Individual people were sometimes referred to by the name of their clan. An example of this is when Moses’ father-in-law Jethro is sometimes called by his clan name, Reuel.
- The term “clan” might also be translated as “family group” or “extended family” or “relatives.”

(See also: family, Jethro, tribe)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 6:33-35
- Genesis 10:2-5
- Genesis 36:15-16
- Genesis 36:29-30
- Genesis 36:40
- Joshua 15:20
- Numbers 3:38-39

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0001, H0441, H1004, H4940

Numbers References:

Numbers 1:2 Numbers 1:18 Numbers 1:20 Numbers 1:22 Numbers 1:34 Numbers 1:42 Numbers 2:34 Numbers 3:15 Numbers 3:19 Numbers 3:20 Numbers 3:20 Numbers 3:21 Numbers 3:21 Numbers 3:21 Numbers 3:23 Numbers 3:27 Numbers 3:27 Numbers 3:27 Numbers 3:27 Numbers 3:27 Numbers 3:29 Numbers 3:30 Numbers 3:33 Numbers 3:33 Numbers 3:33 Numbers 3:35 Numbers 3:39 Numbers 4:2 Numbers 4:22 Numbers 4:24 Numbers 4:28 Numbers 4:29 Numbers 4:33 Numbers 4:34 Numbers 4:36 Numbers 4:37 Numbers 4:38 Numbers 4:40 Numbers 4:44 Numbers 4:45 Numbers 4:46 Numbers 11:10 Numbers 26:5 Numbers 26:5 Numbers 26:7 Numbers 26:23 Numbers 26:23 Numbers 26:23 Numbers 26:28 Numbers 26:57 Numbers 26:57 Numbers 26:57 Numbers 26:57 Numbers 26:58 Numbers 26:58 Numbers 26:58 Numbers 26:58 Numbers 26:58 Numbers 26:58 Numbers 26:58 Numbers 27:1 Numbers 27:4 Numbers 27:11 Numbers 33:54 Numbers 36:1 Numbers 36:1 Numbers 36:6 Numbers 36:8 Numbers 36:12 Numbers 36:12

conceive, conceived, conception

Definition:

Used in this sense, the terms “conceive” and “conception” usually refer to a woman becoming pregnant with a child. It can also be used for animals that become pregnant.

- The phrase “conceive a child” could be translated as “become pregnant” or some other term that is an acceptable way of referring to this.
- The related term “conception” could be translated as “beginning of a pregnancy” or “moment of becoming pregnant.”
- Depending on context, the term “conceived” could be translated as “became pregnant” or “became pregnant with.”

(See also: create, womb)

Bible References:

- Genesis 21:1-4
- Hosea 2:4-5
- Job 15:35
- Luke 1:24-25
- Luke 2:21

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H2029, H2030, H2032, H2232, H2254, H2803, H3179, G10800, G17220, G28450, G48150

Numbers References:

Numbers 11:12

consume, devour

Definition:

The term “consume” literally means to use up something. It has several figurative meanings.

- In the Bible, the word “consume” often refers to destroying things or people.
- A fire is said to consume things, which means it destroys them by burning them up.
- God is described as a “consuming fire,” which is a description of his anger against sin. His anger results in terrible punishment for sinners who do not repent.
- To consume food means to eat or drink something.
- The phrase, “consume the land” could be translated as “destroy the land.”

Translation Suggestions

- In the context of consuming the land or people, this term could be translated as “destroy.”
- When fire is referred to, “consume” could be translated as “burn up.”
- The burning bush that Moses saw “was not consumed” which could be translated as “did not get burned up” or “did not burn up.”
- When referring to eating, “consume” could be translated as “eat” or “devour.”
- If someone’s strength is “consumed,” it means his strength is “used up” or “gone.”
- The expression, “God is a consuming fire” could be translated as “God is like a fire that burns things up” or “God is angry against sin and will destroy sinners like a fire.”

(See also: devour, wrath)

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 18:38-40
- Deuteronomy 7:16
- Jeremiah 3:23-25
- Job 7:9
- Numbers 11:1-3

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0398, H0402, H1086, H1104, H1197, H2628, H3615, H3617, H3857, H4529, H5595, H8046, H8552, G03550, G26180, G26540, G27190, G53150

Numbers References:

Numbers 16:35 Numbers 21:28 Numbers 25:11 Numbers 28:17

advice, advise, advisor, counsel, counselor, counsels

Definition:

The terms “counsel” and “advice” have the same meaning and refer to helping someone decide wisely about what to do in a certain situation. A wise “counselor” or “advisor” is someone who gives advice or counsel that will help a person make right choices.

- Kings often have official advisors or counselors to help them decide important matters that affect the people they are ruling.
- Sometimes the advice or counsel that is given is not good. Evil advisors may urge a king to take action or make a decree that will harm him or his people.
- Depending on the context, “advice” or “counsel” could also be translated as “help in deciding” or “warnings” or “exhortations” or “guidance.”
- The action, to “counsel” could be translated as to “advise” or to “make suggestions” or to “exhort.”
- Note that “counsel” is a different word than “council,” which refers to a group of people.

(See also: exhort, Holy Spirit, wise)

Bible References:

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1697, H1847, H1875, H1884, H1907, H3272, H3289, H3982, H4156, H4431, H5475, H5779, H6440, H6963, H6098, H7592, H8458, G10110, G10120, G11060, G48230, G48250

Numbers References:

Numbers 24:14

court, courtyard

Definition:

The terms “court” and “courtyard” refer to an enclosed area that is open to the sky and surrounded by walls.

- The tabernacle was surrounded by one courtyard which was enclosed by walls made of thick, cloth curtains.
- The temple complex had three inner courtyards: one for the priests, one for Jewish men, and one for Jewish women.
- These inner courtyards were surrounded by a low stone wall that separated them from an outer courtyard where Gentiles were permitted to worship.
- The king's court can refer to the physical location where legal and political matters were handled. It can also refer to the people who supported the king and carried out his decrees.
- The courtyard of a house was an open area in the middle of the house.

Translation Suggestions:

- The terms “court” and “courtyard” could be translated as “enclosed space” or “walled-in land” or “walled-in space” or “tabernacle grounds” or “temple grounds” or “temple enclosure” depending on the context.
- If it would be natural in your language the term used for a king’s court could also be used to refer to Yahweh’s court.

(See also: Gentile,tabernacle, temple)

Bible References:

- 2 Kings 20:4-5
- Exodus 27:9
- Jeremiah 19:14-15
- Luke 22:55
- Matthew 26:69-70
- Numbers 3:26
- Psalms 65:4

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1004, H1508, H2691, H5835, H7339, H8651, G08330, G42590

Numbers References:

Numbers 3:26 Numbers 3:26 Numbers 3:37
Numbers 4:26 Numbers 4:32

cow, bull, calf, cattle, heifer, ox

Definition:

The terms “cow,” “bull,” “heifer,” “ox,” and “cattle” all refer to a kind of large, four-legged bovine animal that eats grass.

- The female of this kind of animal is called a “cow,” the male is a “bull,” and their offspring is a “calf.”
- In the Bible, cattle were among the “clean” animals that the people could eat and use for sacrifice. They were primarily raised for their meat and milk.

A “heifer” is an adult female cow that has not yet given birth to a calf.

An “ox” is a type of cattle that is specifically trained to do agricultural work. The plural of this term is “oxen.” Usually oxen are male and have been castrated.

- Throughout the Bible, oxen were depicted as animals tied together by a yoke to pull a cart or a plow.
- Having oxen work together under a yoke was such a common occurrence in the Bible that the phrase to “be under a yoke” became a metaphor for hard work and labor.
- A bull is also a male type of cattle, but it has not been castrated and has not been trained as a work animal.

(See also: How to Translate Unknowns)

(See also: yoke)

Bible References:

- Genesis 15:9-11
- Exodus 24:5-6
- Numbers 19:1-2
- Deuteronomy 21:3-4
- 1 Samuel 1:24-25
- 1 Samuel 15:3
- 1 Samuel 16:2-3
- 1 Kings 1:9
- 2 Chronicles 11:15
- 2 Chronicles 15:10-11
- Matthew 22:4
- Luke 13:15

- Luke 14:5
- Hebrews 9:13

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0047, H0441, H0504, H0929, H1165, H1241, H4399, H4735, H4806, H5695, H5697, H6499, H6510, H6629, H7214, H7716, H7794, H7921, H8377, H8450, G10160, G11510, G23530, G29340, G34470, G34480, G41650, G50220

Numbers References:

Numbers 7:3 Numbers 7:3 Numbers 7:6 Numbers 7:7 Numbers 7:15 Numbers 7:15 Numbers 7:17 Numbers 7:21 Numbers 7:21 Numbers 7:23 Numbers 7:27 Numbers 7:27 Numbers 7:29 Numbers 7:33 Numbers 7:33 Numbers 7:35 Numbers 7:39 Numbers 7:39 Numbers 7:41 Numbers 7:45 Numbers 7:45 Numbers 7:47 Numbers 7:51 Numbers 7:51 Numbers 7:53 Numbers 7:57 Numbers 7:57 Numbers 7:59 Numbers 7:63 Numbers 7:63 Numbers 7:65 Numbers 7:69 Numbers 7:69 Numbers 7:71 Numbers 7:75 Numbers 7:75 Numbers 7:77 Numbers 7:81 Numbers 7:81 Numbers 7:83 Numbers 7:87 Numbers 7:87 Numbers 7:88 Numbers 7:88 Numbers 8:8 Numbers 8:8 Numbers 8:8 Numbers 8:8 Numbers 11:22 Numbers 15:3 Numbers 15:8 Numbers 15:9 Numbers 15:11 Numbers 15:24 Numbers 15:24 Numbers 18:17 Numbers 19:2 Numbers 19:5 Numbers 19:6 Numbers 19:9 Numbers 19:10 Numbers 22:4 Numbers 22:40 Numbers 23:1 Numbers 23:4 Numbers 23:14 Numbers 23:22 Numbers 24:8 Numbers 28:11 Numbers 28:11 Numbers 28:14 Numbers 28:19 Numbers 28:19 Numbers 28:20 Numbers 29:2 Numbers 29:2 Numbers 29:3 Numbers 29:17 Numbers 29:17 Numbers 29:18 Numbers 31:28 Numbers 31:30

create, created, creation, creator

Definition:

The term "create" means to make something or to cause something to be. Whatever is created is called a "creation." God is called the "Creator" because he caused everything in the entire universe to come into existence.

- When this term is used to refer to God creating the world, it means he made it out of nothing.
- When human beings "create" something, it means they made it out of things that already existed.
- Sometimes "create" is used in a figurative way to describe something abstract, such as creating peace, or creating a pure heart in someone.
- The term "creation" can refer to the very beginning of the world when God first created everything. It can also be used to refer generally to everything that God created. Sometimes the word "creation" refers more specifically to just the people in the world.

Translation Suggestions:

- Some languages may have to directly say that God created the world "out of nothing" to make sure this meaning is clear.
- The phrase, "since the creation of the world" means "since the time when God created the world."
- A similar phrase, "at the beginning of creation" could be translated as "when God created the world at the beginning of time," or "when the world was first created."
- To preach the good news to "all creation" means to preach the good news to "all people everywhere on earth."
- The phrase "Let all creation rejoice" means "Let everything that God created rejoice."
- Depending on the context, "create" could be translated as "make" or "cause to be" or "make out of nothing."

- The term “the Creator” could be translated as “the One who created everything” or “God, who made the whole world.”
- Phrases like “your Creator” could be translated as “God, who created you.”

(See also: God, good news, world)

Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 11:9-10
- 1 Peter 4:17-19
- Colossians 1:15
- Galatians 6:15
- Genesis 1:1
- Genesis 14:19-20

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H3335, H4639, H6213, H6385, H7069, G20410, G26020, G26750, G29360, G29370, G29390, G41600, G54800

Numbers References:

Numbers 16:30 Numbers 16:30

cry, cry out, outcry

Definition:

The terms “cry” or “cry out” usually mean to say something loudly or urgently. Someone can “cry out” in pain, distress, anger, or fear, often with the intent of asking for help.

- The phrase “cry out” can mean to shout or to call out with the intent of asking for help.
- The terms “cry” or “cry out” can also mean to pray.
- This term could also be translated as “exclaim loudly” or “urgently ask for help,” depending on the context.
- An expression such as, “I cry out to you” could be translated as “I call to you for help” or “I urgently ask you for help.”

(See also: call speak loudly, plead, pray)

Bible References:

- Job 27:9
- Mark 5:5-6
- Mark 6:48-50
- Psalm 22:1-2

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1058, H2199, H2201, H6030, H6463, H6670, H6682, H6817, H6818, H6873, H6963, H7121, H7123, H7321, H7440, H7442, H7723, H7737, H7768, H7771, H7775, H8663, G03100, G03490, G08630, G09940, G09950, G19160, G20190, G27990, G28050, G28960, G29050, G29060, G29290, G43770, G54550

Numbers References:

Numbers 12:13 Numbers 20:16

curtain

Definition:

In the Bible, the term “curtain” refers to a very thick, heavy piece of material used in the making of the tabernacle and the temple.

- The tabernacle was built using four layers of curtains for the top and sides. These curtain coverings were made of cloth or animal skins.
- Cloth curtains were also used to form a wall surrounding the tabernacle courtyard. These curtains were made out of “linen” which was a kind of cloth made out of the flax plant.
- In both the tabernacle and temple building, a thick cloth curtain hung between the holy place and the most holy place. It was this curtain that was miraculously torn into two parts when Jesus died.

Translation Suggestions:

- Since modern-day curtains are very different from the curtains used in the Bible, it may be more clear to use a different word or to add words that describe the curtains.
- Depending on the context, ways to translate this term could include, “curtain covering” or “covering” or “piece of thick cloth” or “animal skin covering” or “hanging piece of cloth.”

(See also: holy place, tabernacle, temple)

Bible References:

- Hebrews 10:20
- Leviticus 4:17
- Luke 23:45
- Matthew 27:51
- Numbers 4:5

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1852, H3407, H4539, H6532, H7050, G26650

Numbers References:

Numbers 3:25 Numbers 3:26 Numbers 3:26
Numbers 3:31 Numbers 4:5 Numbers 4:25
Numbers 4:25 Numbers 4:26 Numbers 4:26

deceive, lie, deception, illusion

Definition:

The term “deceive” means to cause someone to believe something that is not true, often by telling a “lie.” The act of deceiving someone is called “lying,” “deceit,” or “deception.”

- Someone who causes others to believe something false is a “deceiver.” For example, Satan is called a “deceiver.” The evil spirits that he controls are also deceivers.
- To “lie” is to say something that is not true.
- A person, action, or message that is not truthful can be described as “deceptive.”
- The terms “deceit” and “deception” have the same meaning, but there are some small differences in how they are used.
- The descriptive terms “deceitful” and “deceptive” have the same meaning and are used in the same contexts.

Translation Suggestions:

- Other ways to translate “deceive” could include “lie to” or “cause to have a false belief” or “cause someone to think something that is not true.”
- The term “deceived” could also be translated as “caused to think something false” or “lied to” or “tricked” or “fooled” or “misled.”
- “Deceiver” could be translated as “liar” or “one who misleads” or “someone who deceives.”
- Depending on the context, the terms “deception” or “deceit” could be translated with a word or phrase that means “falsehood” or “lying” or “trickery” or “dishonesty.”
- The terms “deceptive” or “deceitful” could be translated as “untruthful” or “misleading” or “lying” to describe a person who speaks or acts in a way that causes other people to believe things that are not true.

(See also: true)

Bible References:

- 1 John 1:8
- 1 Timothy 2:14
- 2 Thessalonians 2:3-4
- Genesis 3:12-13
- Genesis 31:26-28
- Leviticus 19:11-12
- Matthew 27:64
- Micah 6:11

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0898, H2048, H3577, H3584, H3868, H4123, H4820, H4860, H5230, H5377, H5558, H6121, H6231, H6601, H7411, H7423, H7683, H7686, H7952, H8267, H8496, H8582, H8591, H8649, G05380, G05390, G13860, G13870, G13880, G18180, G38840, G41050, G41060, G41080, G54220, G54230

Numbers References:

Numbers 23:19 Numbers 25:18 Numbers 25:18

declare, proclaim, announce

Definition:

The terms “declare” and “declaration” refer to making a formal or public statement, often to emphasize something. Other terms with similar meaning include “proclaim,” “proclamation,” “announce,” and “announcement.”

- A “declaration” not only emphasizes the importance of what is being proclaimed, but it also calls attention to the one making the declaration.
- For example, in the Old Testament, a message from God is often preceded by “the declaration of Yahweh” or “this is what Yahweh declares.” This expression emphasizes that it is Yahweh himself who is saying this. The fact that the message comes from Yahweh shows how important that message is.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, “declare” could also be translated as “proclaim” or “publicly state” or “strongly say” or “emphatically state.”
- The term “declaration” could also be translated as “statement” or “proclamation.”
- The phrase “this is Yahweh’s declaration” could be translated as “this is what Yahweh declares” or “this is what Yahweh says.”

(See also: preach, decree)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 16:24
- 1 Corinthians 15:31-32
- 1 Samuel 24:17-18
- Amos 2:16
- Ezekiel 5:11-12
- Matthew 7:21-23

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0262, H0559, H0816, H0874, H1696, H3045, H4853, H5002, H5042, H5046, H5608, H6567, H7121, H7561, H7878, H8085, G03120, G05180, G06690, G12290, G13440, G15550, G17180, G18340, G20970, G25110, G26050, G26070, G31400, G36700, G37240, G38220, G38700, G39550, G42960

Numbers References:

Numbers 12:5 Numbers 13:16 Numbers 15:34 Numbers 24:15 Numbers 24:15

dedicate, dedication, established, devoted

Definition:

To dedicate is to set apart or commit something for a special purpose or function.

- David dedicated his gold and silver to the Lord.
- Often the word "dedication" refers to a formal event or ceremony to set apart something for a special purpose.
- The dedication of the altar included offering a sacrifice to God.
- Nehemiah led the Israelites in a dedication of Jerusalem's repaired walls with a renewed promise to serve only Yahweh and to take care of his city. This event included giving thanks to God with musical instruments and singing.
- The term "dedicate" could also be translated as "specially assign a special purpose" or "commit something to be used for a specific use" or "commit someone to do a special task."
- The terms "devote" and "devoted" often refer to something that is completely destroyed as a way of dedicating it to Yahweh.

(See also: commit)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 15:11-12
- 1 Corinthians 6:9-11
- 1 Kings 7:51
- 1 Timothy 4:5
- 2 Chronicles 2:4-5
- John 17:18-19
- Luke 2:22-24

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2596, H2597, H2598, H2764, H4394, H6942, H6944, G14560, G14570

Numbers References:

Numbers 7:10 Numbers 7:11 Numbers 7:84 Numbers 7:88 Numbers 18:14 Numbers 21:2 Numbers 21:3 Numbers 21:27

delight

Definition:

The term "delight" means great pleasure or great joy.

- To "delight in" something means to "to take pleasure in" or "take joy in" or "be happy about" it. If a person "delights in" something, it means that he enjoys it very much.
- When something is very agreeable or pleasing it is called "delightful."
- The expression "my delight is in the law of Yahweh" could be translated as "the law of Yahweh gives me great joy" or "I love to obey the laws of Yahweh" or "I am happy when I obey Yahweh's commands."
- The phrases "take no delight in" and "have no delight in" could be translated as "not at all pleased by" or "not happy about."
- The phrase "delight himself in" means "he enjoys doing" something or "he is very happy about" something or someone.
- The term "delights" refers to things that a person enjoys. This could be translated as "pleasures" or "things that give joy."
- An expression such as "I delight to do your will" could also be translated as "I enjoy doing your will" or "I am very happy when I obey you."

Bible References:

- Proverbs 8:30
- Psalm 1:2
- Psalms 119:69-70
- Song of Songs 1:3

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1523, H2530, H2531, H2532, H2654, H2655, H2656, H2836, H4574, H5276, H5727, H5730, H6026, H6027, H7306, H7381, H7521, H7522, H8057, H8173, H8191, H8588, H8597

Numbers References:

Numbers 14:8

deliver, deliverer, deliverance, delivered

Definition:

To “deliver” someone means to rescue that person. The term “deliverer” refers to someone who rescues or frees people from slavery, oppression, or other dangers. The term “deliverance” refers to what happens when someone rescues or frees people from slavery, oppression, or other dangers.

- In the Old Testament, God appointed deliverers to protect the Israelites by leading them in battle against other people groups who came to attack them.
- These deliverers were also called “judges” and the Old Testament book of Judges records the time in history when these judges were governing Israel.
- God is also called a “deliverer.” Throughout the history of Israel, he delivered or rescued his people from their enemies.

Translation Suggestions:

- In the context of helping people escape from their enemies, the term “deliver” can be translated as “rescue” or “liberate” or “save.”
- When the term “deliverer” refers to the judges who led Israel, it could also be translated as “judge” or “leader.”

(See also: judge, save)

Bible References:

- 2 Corinthians 1:10
- Acts 7:35
- Galatians 1:4
- Judges 10:12

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **16:3** Then God provided a **deliverer** who rescued them from their enemies and brought peace to the land.
- **16:16** They (Israel) finally asked God for help again, and God sent them another **deliverer**.
- **16:17** Over many years, God sent many **deliverers** who saved the Israelites from their enemies.

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1350, H2020, H2502, H3205, H3444, H3467, H4042, H4422, H4672, H5337, H5414, H5462, H6299, H6403, H6413, H6475, H6561, H7725, H7804, H8199, G03250, G05250, G06290, G10800, G13250, G15600, G16590, G18070, G19290, G26730, G30860, G38600, G45060, G49910, G50880, G54830

Numbers References:

Numbers 35:25

descend, descendant

Definition:

A “descendant” is someone who is a direct blood relative of someone else further back in history.

- For example, Abraham was a descendant of Noah.
- A person’s descendants are his children, grandchildren, great-great-grandchildren, and so on. Jacob’s descendants were the twelve tribes of Israel.
- The phrase “descended from” is another way of saying “a descendant of” as in “Abraham was descended from Noah.” This could also be translated as “from the family line of.”

(See also: Abraham, ancestor, Jacob, Noah, twelve tribes of Israel)

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 9:4-5
- Acts 13:23
- Deuteronomy 2:20-22
- Genesis 10:1
- Genesis 28:12-13

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **2:9** “The woman’s **descendant** will crush your head, and you will wound his heel.”
- **4:9** “I give the land of Canaan to your **descendants**.”
- **5:10** “Your **descendants** will be more than the stars in the sky.”
- **17:7** “Someone from your family will always rule as king over Israel, and the Messiah will be one of your **descendants**!”
- **18:13** The kings of Judah were **descendants** of David.
- **21:4** God promised King David that the Messiah would be one of David’s own **descendants**.
- **48:13** God promised David that the Messiah would be one of his **descendants**. Jesus, the Messiah, was that special **descendant** of David.

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0319, H1004, H1121, H1323, H1755, H2232, H2233, H3205, H3211, H3318, H3409, H4294, H5220, H6849, H7611, H8435, G10740, G10850, G46900

Numbers References:

Numbers 4:29

desert, wilderness

Definition:

A desert, or wilderness, is a dry, barren place where very few plants and trees can grow.

- A desert is a land area with a dry climate and few plants or animals.
- Because of the harsh conditions, very few people can live in the desert, so it is also referred to as "wilderness."
- "Wilderness" conveys the meaning of being remote, desolate and isolated from people.
- This word can also be translated as "deserted place" or "remote place" or "uninhabited place."

Bible References:

- Acts 13:16-18
- Acts 21:38
- Exodus 4:27-28
- Genesis 37:21-22
- John 3:14
- Luke 1:80
- Luke 9:12-14
- Mark 1:3
- Matthew 4:1
- Matthew 11:8

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0776, H2723, H3293, H3452, H4057, H6160, H6723, H6728, H6921, H8047, H8414, G20470, G20480

Numbers References:

Numbers 1:1 Numbers 3:4 Numbers 9:1 Numbers 9:5 Numbers 10:12 Numbers 10:31 Numbers 12:16 Numbers 13:3 Numbers 13:21 Numbers 13:26 Numbers 14:2 Numbers 14:16 Numbers 14:25 Numbers 14:29 Numbers 14:32 Numbers 14:33 Numbers 14:33 Numbers 14:35 Numbers 15:32 Numbers 16:13 Numbers 20:1 Numbers 20:4 Numbers 21:5 Numbers 21:11 Numbers 21:13 Numbers 21:18 Numbers 21:23 Numbers 24:1 Numbers 26:64 Numbers 26:65 Numbers 27:3 Numbers 27:14 Numbers 27:14 Numbers 32:13 Numbers 32:15 Numbers 33:6 Numbers 33:8 Numbers 33:8 Numbers 33:15 Numbers 33:16 Numbers 33:36 Numbers 34:3

desolate, desolated, desolation, deserted, desolator

Definition:

The terms "desolate" and "desolation," when used to refer to a place or location, refer to the state or condition of being ruined and left fully or partially uninhabited. The term "desolate," when referring to a person or group of people, describes a state or condition of ruin, loneliness, and grief.

- If a field where crops are growing is made desolate, it means that something has destroyed the crops, such as insects or an invading army.
- A "desolate region" refers to an area of land that is partially deserted or abandoned and therefore has few people living there.
- If a city is "made desolate" it means that its buildings and goods have been destroyed or stolen, and its people have been killed or captured. The city becomes "empty" and "ruined." This is similar to the meaning of "devastate" or "devastated," but with more emphasis on the emptiness.
- A "desolate land" or "wilderness" was often where outcasts (such as lepers) and dangerous animals lived.
- Depending on the context, this term, when referring to a city or region, could be translated as "ruined" or "destroyed" or "laid waste" or "abandoned" or "deserted."
- Depending on the context, this term, when referring to a person or people group, could be translated as "lonely and outcast" or "deserted."
- A "desolator" is one who causes desolation.

(See also: desert, devastate, ruin, waste)

Bible References:

- 2 Kings 22:19
- Acts 1:20
- Daniel 9:17-19
- Lamentations 3:11
- Luke 11:17

- Matthew 12:25

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0490, H0816, H0910, H1565, H2717, H2720, H2721, H2723, H3173, H3341, H3456, H3582, H4875, H4923, H5352, H5800, H7582, H7701, H7722, H8047, H8074, H8076, H8077, G20480, G20490, G20500, G34430

Numbers References:

Numbers 21:30

destroy, destruction, annihilate

Definition:

The term "destroy" means to completely make an end to something, so that it no longer exists.

- The term "destroyer" means "a person who destroys."
- This term is often used in the Old Testament as a general reference to anyone who destroys other people, such as an invading army.
- When God sent the angel to kill all the firstborn males in Egypt, that angel was referred to as "the destroyer of the firstborn." This could be translated as "the one (or angel) who killed the firstborn males."
- In the book of Revelation about the end times, Satan or some other evil spirit is called "the Destroyer." He is the "one who destroys" because his purpose is to destroy and ruin everything God created.

(See also: angel, Egypt, firstborn, Passover)

Bible References:

- Exodus 12:23
- Hebrews 11:28
- Jeremiah 6:26
- Judges 16:24

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0006, H0007, H0622, H0398, H1104, H1197, H1820, H1826, H1942, H2000, H2015, H2026, H2040, H2254, H2255, H2717, H2718, H2763, H2764, H3238, H3341, H3381, H3423, H3582, H3615, H3617, H3772, H3807, H4191, H4229, H4591, H4658, H4889, H5218, H5221, H5307, H5362, H5420, H5422, H5428, H5595, H5642, H6365, H6789, H6979, H7665, H7667, H7703, H7722, H7760, H7843, H7921, H8045, H8074, H8077, H8316, H8552, G03550, G03960, G06220, G08530, G13110, G18420, G20490, G25060, G25070, G26470, G26730, G27040, G30890, G36450, G41990, G53510, G53560

Numbers References:

Numbers 21:2 Numbers 21:3 Numbers 24:17 Numbers 24:19 Numbers 24:20 Numbers 24:24 Numbers 32:15 Numbers 33:52 Numbers 33:52 Numbers 33:52

devour

Definition:

The term “devour” means to eat or consume in an aggressive manner.

- Using this word in a figurative sense, Paul warned believers to not devour one another, meaning to not attack or destroy each other with words or actions (Galatians 5:15).
- Also in a figurative sense, the term “devour” is often used with a meaning of “completely destroy” as when talking about nations devouring each other or a fire devouring buildings and people.
- This term could also be translated as “completely consume” or “totally destroy.”

(See also: consume)

Bible References:

- 1 Peter 5:8
- Amos 1:10
- Exodus 24:17
- Ezekiel 16:20
- Luke 15:30
- Matthew 23:13-15
- Psalms 21:9

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0398, H0399, H0400, H0402, H1104, H1105, H3216, H3615, H3857, H3898, H7462, H7602, G20680, G26660, G27190, G53150

Numbers References:

Numbers 23:24 Numbers 24:8 Numbers 25:2

disperse, dispersion, scatter, distributed

Definition:

The terms “disperse” and “dispersion” refer to the scattering of people or things into many different directions.

- In the Old Testament, God talks about “dispersing” people, causing them to have to separate and live in different places apart from each other. He did this to punish them for their sin. Perhaps being dispersed would help them repent and start worshiping God again.
- The term “dispersion” is used in the New Testament to refer to Christians who had to leave their homes and move to many different locations to escape persecution.
- The phrase “the dispersion” could be translated as “believers in many different places” or “the people who moved away to live in different nations.”
- The term “disperse” could be translated as “send away into many different places” or “scatter abroad” or “cause to move away to live in different countries.”

(See also: believe, persecute, captive, exile)

Bible References:

- 1 Peter 1:1
- Ezekiel 12:15
- Ezekiel 30:23
- Psalms 18:14

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H2219, H5310, H6327, H6340, H6504, H8600, G12870, G12900, G46500

Numbers References:

Numbers 10:35

divination, diviner, soothsaying, soothsayer

Definition:

The terms “divination” and “soothsaying” refer to the practice of trying to get information from spirits in the supernatural world. A person who does this is sometimes called a “diviner” or “soothsayer.”

- In Old Testament times, God commanded the Israelites to not practice divination or soothsaying.
- God did permit his people to seek information from him using the Urim and Thummim, which were stones that he had designated to be used by the high priest for that purpose. But he did not allow his people to seek information through the help of evil spirits.
- Pagan diviners used different methods of trying to find out information from the spirit world. Sometimes they would examine the inside parts of a dead animal or throw animal bones on the ground, looking for patterns that they would interpret as messages from their false gods.
- In the New Testament, Jesus and the apostles also rejected divination, sorcery, witchcraft, and magic. All these practices involve using the power of evil spirits and are condemned by God.

(See also: apostle, false god, magic, sorcery)

Bible References:

- 1 Samuel 6:1-2
- Acts 16:16
- Ezekiel 12:24-25
- Genesis 44:5
- Jeremiah 27:9-11

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1870, H4738, H5172, H6049, H7080, H7081, G44360

Numbers References:

Numbers 22:7 Numbers 23:23

doctrine, teaching, belief, beliefs, instruction, knowledge

Definition:

The word “doctrine” literally means “teaching.” It usually refers to religious teaching.

- In the context of Christian teachings, “doctrine” refers to all teachings about God—Father, Son and Holy Spirit—including all his character qualities and everything he has done.
- It also refers to everything God teaches Christians about how to live holy lives that bring glory to him.
- The word “doctrine” is sometimes also used to refer to false or worldly religious teachings that come from human beings. The context makes the meaning clear.
- This term could also be translated as “teaching.”

(See also: teach)

Bible References:

- 1 Timothy 1:3
- 2 Timothy 3:16-17
- Mark 7:6-7
- Matthew 15:7-9

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H3948, G13190, G13220, G20850

Numbers References:

Numbers 24:16

donkey, mule

Definition:

A donkey is a four-legged work animal, similar to a horse, but smaller and with longer ears.

- A mule is the sterile offspring of a male donkey and a female horse.
- Mules are very strong animals and so they are valuable work animals.
- Both donkeys and mules are used for carrying burdens and people when traveling.
- In Bible times, kings would ride a donkey in times of peace, rather than a horse, which was used for times of war.
- Jesus rode into Jerusalem on a young donkey a week before he was crucified there.

(See also: How to Translate Unknowns)

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 1:32-34
- 1 Samuel 9:4
- 2 Kings 4:21-22
- Deuteronomy 5:12-14
- Luke 13:15
- Matthew 21:2

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0860, H2543, H3222, H5895, H6167, H6501, H6505, H6506, G36780, G36880, G52680

Numbers References:

Numbers 16:15 Numbers 22:21 Numbers 22:23 Numbers 22:25 Numbers 22:27 Numbers 22:28 Numbers 22:29 Numbers 22:30 Numbers 22:32 Numbers 22:33 Numbers 31:28 Numbers 31:30

dove, pigeon, turtledove

Definition:

Doves and pigeons are two kinds of small, gray-brown birds that look similar. A dove is often thought of as being lighter in color, almost white.

- Some languages have two different names for them, while others use the same name for both.
- Doves and pigeons were used in sacrifices to God, especially for people who could not afford to buy a larger animal.
- A dove brought the leaf of an olive tree to Noah when the flood waters were going down.
- Doves sometimes symbolize purity, innocence, or peace.
- If doves or pigeons are not known in the language area where the translation is being done, this term could be translated as “a small grayish brown bird called a dove” or “a small gray or brown bird, similar to a (name of local bird)”.
- If both a dove and a pigeon are referred to in the same verse, it is best to use two different words for these birds, if possible.
- A turtledove is a type of dove mentioned in Genesis 15:9, Song of Songs 2:12, and Leviticus 12:6.

(See also: How to Translate Unknowns)

(See also: olive, innocent, pure)

Bible References:

- Genesis 8:9
- Luke 2:22-24
- Mark 1:10
- Matthew 3:16
- Matthew 21:12-14

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1469, H1686, H3123, H8449, G40580

Numbers References:

Numbers 6:10 Numbers 6:10

dream

Definition:

A dream is something that people see or experience in their minds while they are sleeping.

- Dreams often seem like they are really happening, but they are not.
- Sometimes God causes people to dream about something so they can learn from it. He may also speak directly to people in their dreams.
- In the Bible, God gave special dreams to certain people to give them a message, often about something that would happen in the future.
- A dream is different from a vision. Dreams happen while a person is asleep, but visions usually happen when a person is awake.

(See also: vision)

Bible References:

- Acts 2:16-17
- Daniel 1:17-18
- Daniel 2:1
- Genesis 37:6
- Genesis 40:4-5
- Matthew 2:13
- Matthew 2:19-21

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **8:2** Joseph’s brothers hated him because their father loved him most and because Joseph had **dreamed** that he would be their ruler.
- **8:6** One night, the Pharaoh, which is what the Egyptians called their kings, had two **dreams** that disturbed him greatly. None of his advisors could tell him the meaning of the **dreams**.
- **8:7** God had given Joseph the ability to interpret **dreams**, so Pharaoh had Joseph brought to him from the prison. Joseph interpreted the **dreams** for him and said, “God is going to send seven years of plentiful harvests followed by seven years of famine.”

- **16:11** So that night, Gideon went down to the camp and heard a Midianite soldier telling his friend about something he had **dreamed**. The man's friend said, "This **dream** means that Gideon's army will defeat the Midianite army!"
- **23:1** He (Joseph) did not want to shame her (Mary), so he planned to quietly divorce her. Before he could do that, an angel came and spoke to him in a **dream**.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1957, H2472, H2492, H2493, G17970, G17980, G36770

Numbers References:

Numbers 12:6

drink offering

Definition:

A drink offering was a sacrifice to God that involved pouring wine on an altar. It was often offered together with a burnt offering and a grain offering.

- Paul refers to his life as being poured out like a drink offering. This means that he was totally dedicated to serving God and telling people about Jesus, even though he knew he would suffer and probably be killed because of that.
- Jesus' death on the cross was the ultimate drink offering, as his blood was poured out on the cross for our sins.

Translation Suggestions:

- Another way to translate this term could be "offering of grape wine."
- When Paul says he is being "poured out like an offering" this could also be translated as "I am completely committed to teaching God's message to people, just like an offering of wine is poured out completely on the altar."

(See also: burnt offering, grain offering)

Bible References:

- Exodus 25:29
- Ezekiel 45:16-17
- Genesis 35:14
- Jeremiah 7:16-18
- Numbers 5:15

Word Data:

- Strong's: H5257, H5261, H5262

Numbers References:

Numbers 4:7 Numbers 6:15 Numbers 6:17 Numbers 15:5 Numbers 15:7 Numbers 15:10 Numbers 15:24 Numbers 28:7 Numbers 28:7 Numbers 28:8 Numbers 28:9 Numbers 28:10 Numbers 28:14 Numbers 28:15 Numbers 28:24 Numbers 28:31 Numbers 29:6 Numbers 29:11 Numbers 29:18 Numbers 29:19 Numbers 29:39

drunk, drunkard

Definition:

The term “drunk” means to be intoxicated from drinking too much of an alcoholic beverage.

- A “drunkard” is a person who is often drunk. This kind of person could also be referred to as an “alcoholic.”
- The Bible tells believers not to be drunk with alcoholic drinks, but to be controlled by God’s Holy Spirit.
- The Bible teaches that drunkenness is unwise and influences a person to sin in other ways.
- Other ways to translate “drunk” could include “inebriated” or “intoxicated” or “having too much alcohol” or “filled with fermented drink.”

(See also: wine)

Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 5:11-13
- 1 Samuel 25:36
- Jeremiah 13:13
- Luke 7:34
- Luke 21:34
- Proverbs 23:19-21

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H5433, H7301, H7910, H7937, H7941, H7943, H8354, H8358, G31780, G31820, G31830, G31840, G36300, G36320

Numbers References:

Numbers 6:3

dung, manure

Definition:

The term “dung” refers to human or animal solid waste, and is also called feces or excrement. When used as fertilizer for enriching the soil, it is called “manure.”

- These terms can also be used figuratively to refer to something that is worthless or not important.
- Dried animal dung is often used for fuel.
- The expression “like dung on the ground” could be translated as “be scattered like worthless dung over the land.”
- The “Dung Gate” in the South Wall of Jerusalem was probably the gate where garbage and trash were taken out of the city.

(See also: gate)

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 14:10
- 2 Kings 6:25
- Isaiah 25:10
- Jeremiah 8:2

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0830, H1119, H1557, H1561, H1686, H1828, H6569, H6675, G28740

Numbers References:

Numbers 19:5

earth, land

Definition:

The term “earth” refers to the world on which human beings and other living things live. In the Bible, this term is sometimes translated as “land” when used in a general way to refer to the ground or the soil, or when used in a specific way to refer to a particular geographical area, usually a country or nation.

- In the Bible, the term “earth” is often paired with the term “heaven” as a way of indicating the abode of humankind on the earth in contrast with the abode of God in heaven.
- This term is usually translated “land” when paired with the name of a people group to denote the territory belonging to those people, such as “the land of Canaan.”
- The term “earthly” is sometimes used to refer to things that are physical and/or visible in contrast to things that are non-physical and/or invisible.

Translation Suggestions:

- This term can be translated by the word or phrase that the local language or nearby national languages use to refer to the planet earth on which we live.

- Depending on the context, “earth” could also be translated as “world” or “land” or “dirt” or “soil.”

- Ways to translate “earthly” could include “physical” or “things of this earth” or “visible.”

(See also: world, heaven)

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 1:38-40
- 2 Chronicles 2:11-12
- Daniel 4:35
- Luke 12:51
- Matthew 6:10
- Matthew 11:25
- Zechariah 6:5

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0127, H0772, H0776, H0778, H2789, H3007, H3335, H6083, H7494, G10930, G19190, G27090, G28860, G36250, G45780, G55170

Numbers References:

Numbers 1:1 Numbers 3:13 Numbers 9:1 Numbers 9:14 Numbers 10:9 Numbers 10:30 Numbers 11:31 Numbers 13:2 Numbers 13:16 Numbers 13:17 Numbers 13:18 Numbers 13:19 Numbers 13:20 Numbers 13:21 Numbers 13:25 Numbers 13:26 Numbers 13:27 Numbers 13:28 Numbers 13:29 Numbers 13:32 Numbers 14:2 Numbers 14:3 Numbers 14:6 Numbers 14:7 Numbers 14:7 Numbers 14:8 Numbers 14:9 Numbers 14:14 Numbers 14:16 Numbers 14:21 Numbers 14:23 Numbers 14:24 Numbers 14:30 Numbers 14:31 Numbers 14:34 Numbers 14:36 Numbers 14:37 Numbers 14:38 Numbers 15:2 Numbers 15:18 Numbers 15:19 Numbers 15:41 Numbers 16:13 Numbers 16:14 Numbers 16:32 Numbers 16:33 Numbers 16:34 Numbers 18:20 Numbers 20:12 Numbers 20:17 Numbers 20:23 Numbers 20:24 Numbers 21:4 Numbers 21:22 Numbers 21:24 Numbers 21:26 Numbers 21:34 Numbers 21:35 Numbers 22:5 Numbers 22:6 Numbers 22:11 Numbers 22:13 Numbers 26:4 Numbers 26:10 Numbers 26:19 Numbers 26:53 Numbers 26:55 Numbers 32:1 Numbers 32:1 Numbers 32:4 Numbers 32:4 Numbers 32:5 Numbers 32:7 Numbers 32:8 Numbers 32:9 Numbers 32:9 Numbers 32:17 Numbers 32:22 Numbers 32:22 Numbers 32:30 Numbers 32:32 Numbers 32:33 Numbers 32:33 Numbers 33:1 Numbers 33:37 Numbers 33:38 Numbers 33:40 Numbers 33:51 Numbers 33:52 Numbers 33:53 Numbers 33:53 Numbers 33:54 Numbers 33:55 Numbers 33:55 Numbers 34:2 Numbers 34:2 Numbers 34:2 Numbers 34:13 Numbers 34:17 Numbers 34:18 Numbers 34:29 Numbers 35:10 Numbers 35:14 Numbers 35:32 Numbers 35:33 Numbers 35:33 Numbers 35:34 Numbers 36:2

elder

Definition:

The term “elder” refers to people (in the Bible, usually men) who have grown old enough to become mature adults and leaders within a community and to be respected for their wisdom and experience.

- The term “elder” came from the fact that elders were originally older men who, because of their age and experience, had greater wisdom.
- In the Old Testament, the elders helped lead the Israelites in matters of justice and the Law of Moses.
- In the New Testament, Jewish “elders” continued to be leaders in their communities and also were judges for the people.
- In the early Christian churches, Christian “elders” gave spiritual leadership to the local assemblies of believers. Elders in these churches sometimes included young men who were spiritually mature.
- This term could be translated as “respected leaders” or “spiritually mature men leading the church.”

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 11:1-3
- 1 Timothy 3:1-3
- 1 Timothy 4:14
- Acts 5:19-21
- Acts 14:23
- Mark 11:28
- Matthew 21:23-24

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1419, H2205, H7868, G10870, G31870, G42440, G42450, G48500

Numbers References:

Numbers 11:16 Numbers 11:16 Numbers 11:24 Numbers 11:25 Numbers 11:30 Numbers 16:25 Numbers 22:4 Numbers 22:7

family, household

Definition:

The term “family” refers to a group of people who are related by blood and usually includes a father, mother, and their children. In the Bible, this term sometimes includes other close relatives such as grandparents, grandchildren, uncles and aunts.

- In biblical times, usually the oldest man was the major authority of a family.
- Family could also include servants, concubines, and even foreigners.
- Some languages may have a broader word such as “clan” or “household” that would fit better in contexts where more than just parents and children are being referred to.
- The New Testament often uses terms related to the concept of “family” to refer to the Church, meaning people who believe in Jesus.

(See also: clan, ancestor, house)

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 8:1-2
- 1 Samuel 18:18
- Exodus 1:21
- Joshua 2:12-13
- Luke 2:4

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0001, H0251, H0272, H0504, H1004, H1121, H2233, H2859, H2945, H3187, H4138, H4940, H5387, H5712, G10850, G36140, G36240, G39650

Numbers References:

Numbers 4:18 Numbers 4:41 Numbers 4:42 Numbers 16:27

festival, feast, celebrate

Definition:

In general, a festival is a celebration held by a community of people.

- The word for "festival" in the Old Testament literally means "appointed time."
- The festivals celebrated by the Israelites were specially appointed times or seasons that God had commanded them to observe.
- In some English translations, the word "feast" is used instead of festival because the celebrations included having a large meal together.
- There were several main festivals that the Israelites celebrated every year:
  - Passover
  - Festival of Unleavened Bread
  - Firstfruits
  - Festival of Weeks (Pentecost)
  - Festival of Trumpets
  - Day of Atonement
  - Festival of Shelters
- The purpose of these festivals was to thank God and to remember the amazing things he had done to rescue, protect, and provide for his people.

(See also: feast)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 23:31
- 2 Chronicles 8:13
- Exodus 5:1
- John 4:45
- Luke 22:1

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1974, H2166, H2282, H2287, H6213, H4150, G14560, G18580, G18590

Numbers References:

Numbers 28:17

fig

Definition:

A fig is a small, soft, sweet fruit that grows on trees. When ripe, this fruit can be a variety of colors, including brown, yellow, or purple.

- Fig trees can grow 6 meters in height and their large leaves provide pleasant shade. The fruit is about 3-5 centimeters long.
- Adam and Eve used the leaves from fig trees to make clothing for themselves after they had sinned.
- Figs can be eaten raw, cooked, or dried. People also chop them into small pieces and press them into cakes to eat later.
- In Bible times, figs were important as a source of food and income.
- The presence of fruitful fig trees is frequently mentioned in the Bible as a sign of prosperity.
- Several times Jesus used fig trees as an illustration to teach his disciples spiritual truths.

Bible References:

- Habakkuk 3:17
- James 3:12
- Luke 13:7
- Mark 11:14
- Matthew 7:17
- Matthew 21:18

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1061, H1690, H6291, H8384, G36530, G48080, G48100

Numbers References:

Numbers 13:23 Numbers 20:5

firstborn

Definition:

The term "firstborn" refers to an offspring of people or animals that is born first, before the other offspring are born.

- In the Bible, "firstborn" usually refers to the first male offspring that is born.
- In Bible times, the firstborn son was given a place of prominence and twice as much of his family inheritance as the other sons.
- Often it was the firstborn male of an animal that was sacrificed to God.
- This concept can also be used figuratively. For example, the nation of Israel is called God's firstborn son because God gave it special privileges over other nations.
- Jesus, the Son of God is called God's firstborn because of his importance and authority over everyone else.

Translation Suggestions:

- When "first-born" occurs in the text alone, it could also be translated as "firstborn male" or "firstborn son," since that is what is implied. (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)
- Other ways to translate this term could include "the son who was born first" or "the eldest son" or "the number one son."
- When used figuratively to refer to Jesus, this could be translated with a word or phrase that means "the son who has authority over everything" or "the Son who is first in honor."
- Caution: Make sure the translation of this term in reference to Jesus does not imply that he was created.

(See also: inherit, sacrifice, son)

Bible References:

- Colossians 1:15
- Genesis 4:3-5
- Genesis 29:26-27
- Genesis 43:33
- Luke 2:6-7
- Revelation 1:5

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1060, H1062, H1067, H1069, G44160, G52070

Numbers References:

Numbers 1:20 Numbers 3:12 Numbers 3:13 Numbers 3:13 Numbers 3:13 Numbers 3:40 Numbers 3:41 Numbers 3:41 Numbers 3:42 Numbers 3:43 Numbers 3:45 Numbers 3:46 Numbers 3:50 Numbers 8:16 Numbers 8:17 Numbers 8:17 Numbers 8:18 Numbers 18:15 Numbers 18:17 Numbers 18:17 Numbers 26:5 Numbers 33:4

firstfruit, firstfruits

Definition:

The term "firstfruits" refers to a portion of the first crop of fruits and vegetables that was reaped during each harvest season.

- The Israelites offered these first fruits to God as a sacrificial offering.
- This term is also used figuratively in the Bible to refer to a firstborn son as being the first fruits of the family. That is, because he was the first son to be born into that family, he was the one who carried on the family name and honor.
- Because Jesus rose from the dead, he is called the "firstfruits" of all believers in him, believers who have died but who will some day come back to life.
- Believers in Jesus are also called the "firstfruits" of all creation, indicating the special privilege and position of those whom Jesus redeemed and called to be his people.

Translation Suggestions:

- The literal use of this term could be translated as "first portion (of crops)" or "first part of the harvest."
- If possible, the figurative uses should be translated literally, to allow for different meanings in different contexts. This will also show the correlation between the literal meaning and the figurative uses.

(See also: firstborn)

Bible References:

- 2 Chronicles 31:4-5
- 2 Thessalonians 2:13
- Exodus 23:16-17
- James 1:18
- Jeremiah 2:3
- Psalms 105:36

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1061, H6529, H7225, G05360

Numbers References:

Numbers 13:20 Numbers 18:12 Numbers 18:13 Numbers 24:20 Numbers 28:26

flock, herd

Definition:

In the Bible, “flock” refers to a group of sheep or goats and “herd” refers to a group of cattle or pigs.

- Different languages may have different ways of naming groups of animals or birds.

Translation Suggestions

- Consider what terms are used in your language to refer to different groups of animals, and use the appropriate term for each kind of animal.
- If your language uses the same word to refer to both groups of sheep and cattle, then you may need to say “groups of sheep” where the Bible says only “flocks,” and “groups of cattle” where the Bible says only “herds.” Alternatively, if the Biblical context does not demand differentiation (if the text simply says “flocks and herds,” meaning all their domesticated animals) you may just use the one word once.

(See also: goat, cow, pig, sheep)

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 10:28-29
- 2 Chronicles 17:11
- Deuteronomy 14:22-23
- Luke 2:8-9
- Matthew 8:30
- Matthew 26:31

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0951, H1241, H2835, H4029, H4735, H4830, H5349, H5739, H6251, H6629, H7399, H7462, G00340, G41670, G41680

Numbers References:

Numbers 11:22 Numbers 31:28 Numbers 31:30 Numbers 31:32 Numbers 31:36 Numbers 32:16 Numbers 32:24

alien, foreigner, sojourn

Definition:

The term “foreigner” refers to a person living in a country that is not his own. Another name for a foreigner is an “alien.” To sojourn is to live temporarily as a foreigner.

- In the Old Testament, this term especially refers to anyone who came from a different people group than the people he was living among.
- A foreigner is also a person whose language and culture is different from those of a particular region.
- For example, when Naomi and her family moved to Moab, they were foreigners there. When Naomi and her daughter-in-law Ruth later moved to Israel, Ruth was called a “foreigner” there because she was not originally from Israel.
- A sojourner is another word for a temporary foreign resident.
- The apostle Paul told the Ephesians that before they knew Christ, they were “foreigners” to God’s covenant.
- Sometimes “foreigner” is translated as “stranger,” but it should not refer only to someone who is unfamiliar or unknown.

Bible References:

- 2 Chronicles 2:17
- Acts 7:29-30
- Deuteronomy 1:15-16
- Genesis 15:12-13
- Genesis 17:27
- Luke 17:18
- Matthew 17:24-25

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0312, H0628, H0776, H1471, H1481, H1616, H2114, H3937, H4033, H5236, H5237, H6154, H8453, G02410, G02450, G05260, G09150, G18540, G35810, G39270, G39410

Numbers References:

Numbers 9:14 Numbers 15:14 Numbers 15:15 Numbers 15:26 Numbers 18:4 Numbers 19:10 Numbers 35:15

sexual immorality, immorality, immoral, fornication

Definition:

The term “sexual immorality” refers to sexual activity that takes place outside the marriage relationship of a man and a woman. This is against God’s plan. Older English Bible versions call this “fornication.”

- This term can refer to any kind of sexual activity that is against God’s will, including homosexual acts and pornography.
- One type of sexual immorality is adultery, which is sexual activity specifically between a married person and someone who is not that person’s spouse.
- Another type of sexual immorality is “prostitution,” which involves being paid to have sex with someone.
- This term is also used figuratively to refer to Israel’s unfaithfulness to God when they worshiped false gods.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “sexual immorality” could be translated as “immorality” as long as the correct meaning of the term is understood.
- Other ways to translate this term could include “wrong sexual acts” or “sex outside of marriage.”
- This term should be translated in a different way from the term “adultery.”
- The translation of this term’s figurative uses should retain the literal term if possible since there is a common comparison in the Bible between unfaithfulness to God and unfaithfulness in the sexual relationship.

(See also: adultery, false god, prostitute, faithful)

Bible References:

- Acts 15:20
- Acts 21:25-26
- Colossians 3:5-8
- Ephesians 5:3
- Genesis 38:24-26

- Hosea 4:13-14
- Matthew 5:31-32
- Matthew 19:7-9

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2181, H8457, G16080, G42020, G42030

Numbers References:

Numbers 14:33 Numbers 15:39 Numbers 25:1

forsake, forsaken, leave

Definition:

The term "forsake" means to abandon someone or to give up something. Someone who has been "forsaken" has been deserted or abandoned by someone else.

- When people "forsake" God, they are being unfaithful to him by disobeying him.
- When God "forsakes" people, he has stopped helping them and allowed them to experience suffering in order to cause them to turn back to him.
- This term can also mean to forsake things, such as forsaking, or not following, God's teachings.
- The term "forsaken" can be used in the past tense, as in "he has forsaken you" or as in referring to someone who has "been forsaken."

Translation Suggestions:

- Other ways to translate this term could include "abandon" or "neglect" or "give up" or "go away from" or "leave behind," depending on the context.
- To "forsake" God's law could be translated "disobey God's law." This could also be translated as "abandon" or "give up on" or "stop obeying" his teachings or his laws.
- The phrase "be forsaken" can be translated as "be abandoned" or "be deserted."
- It more clearer to use different words to translate this term, depending on whether the text describes forsaking a thing or a person.

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 6:11-13
- Daniel 11:29-30
- Genesis 24:27
- Joshua 24:16-18
- Matthew 27:45-47
- Proverbs 27:9-10
- Psalms 71:18

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0488, H2308, H5203, H5428, H5800, H5805, H7503, G06460, G06570, G08630, G14590, G26410

Numbers References:

Numbers 9:12 Numbers 10:31

frankincense

Definition:

Frankincense is a fragrant spice made from tree resin. It is used to make perfumes and incense.

- In Bible times, frankincense was an important spice used to prepare dead bodies for burial.
- This spice is also valuable for its healing and calming qualities.
- When learned men came from an eastern country to visit baby Jesus in Bethlehem, frankincense was one of the three gifts they brought him.

(See also: Bethlehem, learned men)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 9:28-29
- Exodus 30:34-36
- Matthew 2:11-12
- Numbers 5:15

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3828, G30300

Numbers References:

Numbers 5:15

free, freed, freedom, freeman, freewill, liberty

Definition:

The terms “free” or “freedom” refer to not being in slavery, or any other kind of bondage. Another word for “freedom” is “liberty.”

- The expression to “set someone free” or to “free someone” means to provide a way for someone to no longer be in slavery or captivity.
- In the Bible, these terms are often used figuratively to refer to how a believer in Jesus is no longer under the power of sin.
- Having “liberty” or “freedom” can also refer to no longer being required to obey the Law of Moses, but instead being free to live by the teachings and guidance of the Holy Spirit.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “free” could be translated with a word or phrase that means “not bound” or “not enslaved” or “not in slavery” or “not in bondage.”
- The term “freedom” or “liberty” could be translated with a word or phrase that means “the state of being free” or “the condition of not being a slave” or “not being bound.”
- The expression to “set free” could be translated as to “cause to be free” or to “rescue from slavery” or to “release from bondage.”
- A person who has been “set free” has been “released” or “taken out of” bondage or slavery.

(See also: bind, enslave, servant)

Bible References:

- Galatians 4:26
- Galatians 5:1
- Isaiah 61:1
- Leviticus 25:10
- Romans 6:18

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1865, H2600, H2666, H2668, H2670, H3318, H4800, H5068, H5069, H5071, H5337, H5352, H5355, H5425, H5674, H5800, H6299, H6362, H7342, H7971, G04250, G05250, G05580, G06290, G06300, G08590, G13440, G14320, G16570, G16580, G16590, G18490, G30890, G39550, G45060, G54830

Numbers References:

Numbers 5:19 Numbers 5:28 Numbers 5:31

freewill offering

Definition:

A freewill offering was a type of sacrifice to God that was not required by the Law of Moses. It was a person's own choice to give this offering.

- If the freewill offering was an animal to be sacrificed, the animal was permitted to have slight defects since it was a voluntary offering.
- The Israelites ate the sacrificed animal as part of a celebration feast.
- When a freewill offering could be given, this was a cause of rejoicing for Israel since it showed that the harvest had been good so that the people had plenty of food.
- The book of Ezra describes a different type of freewill offering that was brought for rebuilding the temple. This offering consisted of gold and silver money, as well as bowls and other objects made of gold and silver.

(See also: burnt offering, Ezra, feast, grain offering, guilt offering, law, sin offering)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 29:6
- 2 Chronicles 35:7-9
- Deuteronomy 12:17
- Exodus 36:2-4
- Leviticus 7:15-16

Word Data:

- Strong's: H5068, H5071

Numbers References:

Numbers 15:3 Numbers 29:39

fruit, fruitful, unfruitful

Definition:

The term "fruit" refers to the part of a plant that can be eaten. Something that is "fruitful" produces a lot of fruit. Something that is "unfruitful" does not produce fruit.

- In general, the expression "fruit of" refers to anything that comes from or that is produced by something else. For example, the phrase "the fruit of every tree" refers to the fruit that comes from these trees.
- The expression "fruit of the land" refers generally to everything that the land produces for people to eat. This includes not only fruits such as grapes or dates, but also vegetables, nuts, and grains.

Translation Suggestions:

- When the term "fruit" refers to what a specific plant produces, the specific term for the fruit of that plant can be used, otherwise, use a general word for the edible things that plants produce, if possible. In many languages it may be more natural to use the plural "fruits" whenever it refers to more than one fruit.
- When used literally, the term "fruitful" could be translated as "producing much fruit."
- The expression "fruit of the land" could also be translated as "food that the land produces" or "food crops that are growing in that region."
- When used literally, the expression "will be more fruitful" could also be translated as "will produce more fruit."

(See also: descendant, grain, grape, Holy Spirit, vine, womb)

Bible References:

- Genesis 1:11
- Matthew 7:17

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0004, H1061, H1063, H1069, H2233, H2981, H3581, H3759, H3899, H3978, H4022, H5108, H6509, H6529, H7019, H8393, H8570, G10810, G25900, G25920, G25930, G37030, G50520, G53520

Numbers References:

Numbers 13:20 Numbers 13:26 Numbers 13:27

gate, gate bar, gatekeeper, gatepost, gateway

Definition:

The term "gate" refers to an access point in a fence, wall, or other kind of barrier that surrounds a house, property, city, etc.

- A city gate could be opened to allow people, animals, and cargo to travel in and out of the city.
- To protect the city, its walls and gates were thick and strong. Gates were closed and locked with a metal or wooden bar to prevent enemy soldiers from entering the city.
- A "bar" for a gate refers to a wood or metal bar that can be moved into place so that the doors of the gate cannot be opened from the outside.
- In Bible times, a city gate was often the social center for that town or city. It was a place where news of current events was exchanged between people, where business transactions occurred, and where civil judgments were made.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, other ways to translate "gate" could be "door" or "wall opening" or "barrier" or "entranceway."
- The phrase "bars of the gate" could be translated as "gate bolts" or "wooden beams to lock the gate" or "metal locking rods of the gate."

Bible References:

- Acts 9:24
- Acts 10:18
- Deuteronomy 21:18-19
- Genesis 19:1
- Genesis 24:60
- Matthew 7:13

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1817, H5592, H6607, H8179, G23740, G44390, G44400

Numbers References:

Numbers 4:26

generation

Definition:

The term “generation” in this sense refers to a group of descendants who are born to a set of parents. For example, if a certain couple is counted as the first generation, then their children are the second generation, their grandchildren are the third generation, etc. in their family line.

Translation Suggestions

- “Generations” could be translated as “descendants” or “descendant groups” or “children and their children.”
- The phrase “throughout your generations” could be translated as “for every one of your descendants” or “to your children and to every one after them”
- “A generation to come will serve him; they will tell the next generation about Yahweh” could be translated as “Many people in the future will serve Yahweh and will tell their children and grandchildren about him.”

(See also: descendant, ancestor)

Bible References:

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1755, H8435

Numbers References:

Numbers 1:20 Numbers 1:22 Numbers 1:34
Numbers 1:42 Numbers 3:1

generation

Definition:

The term “generation” in this sense refers to a period of time approximately equal to the lifetime of a person. This could be as long as 100 years. This period of time also came to be measured by the time between the adulthood of one person and the adulthood of his or her offspring, or a 30–40-year time span.

Translation Suggestions

- When referring to the past, “generations” could be translated as “during the times of our ancestors” or “when people lived before us.”
- When referring to the future, “generations” could be translated as “lifespans” or “times of people who will come afterwards” or “when our descendants are living.”
- The phrase “in his own generation” could be translated as “while he lived” or “during his time”
- The expression “from generation to generation” or “from one generation to the next” could be translated as “from the time of people living now and for always” or “as long as people live on the earth” or “from now to all future time periods” or “for all time.”

(See also: descendant, ancestor)

Bible References:

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1755, H8435, G01650, G10740

Numbers References:

Numbers 9:10 Numbers 10:8 Numbers 15:14 Numbers 15:15 Numbers 15:21 Numbers 15:23 Numbers 15:38 Numbers 18:23 Numbers 35:29

generation

Definition:

The term “generation” in this sense refers to people who are alive at the same time. These people generally share the same culture, experiences, and way of life.

Translation Suggestions

- The phrase “the generation of his fathers” could be translated as “his ancestors” or “those who have lived before him.”
- The phrase “this generation” or “people of this generation” could be translated as “the people living now” or “you people.”
- The phrase “future generations” could be translated as “those living after us” or “people living at a later time.”

Bible References:

Word Data:

- Strong’s:

Numbers References:

Numbers 32:13

goat, goatskin, scapegoat, kid

Definition:

A goat is a medium-sized, four-legged animal which is similar to a sheep and is raised primarily for its milk and meat. A baby goat is called a "kid."

- Like sheep, goats were important animals of sacrifice, especially at Passover.
- Although goats and sheep can be very similar, these are some ways that they are different:
  - Goats have coarse hair; sheep have wool.
  - The tail of a goat stands up; the tail of a sheep hangs down.
  - Sheep usually like to stay with their herd, but goats are more independent and tend to wander away from their herd.
- In Bible times, goats were often the main source of milk in Israel.
- Goat skins were used for tent coverings and to make bags for holding wine.
- In both the Old and New Testaments, the goat was used as a symbol for unrighteous people, perhaps because of its tendency to wander away from the one taking care of it.
- The Israelites also used goats as symbolic sin bearers. When one goat was sacrificed, the priest would lay his hands on a second, live goat, and send it into the desert as a symbol that the animal was bearing the people's sins.

(See also: flock, sacrifice, sheep, righteous, wine)

Bible References:

- Exodus 12:3-4
- Genesis 30:32
- Genesis 31:10
- Genesis 37:31
- Leviticus 3:12-14
- Matthew 25:33

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0689, H1423, H1429, H3277, H3629, H5795, H5796, H6260, H6629, H6842, H7716, H8163, H8166, H8495, G01220, G20550, G20560, G51310

Numbers References:

Numbers 7:16 Numbers 7:17 Numbers 7:22 Numbers 7:23 Numbers 7:28 Numbers 7:29 Numbers 7:34 Numbers 7:35 Numbers 7:40 Numbers 7:41 Numbers 7:46 Numbers 7:47 Numbers 7:52 Numbers 7:53 Numbers 7:58 Numbers 7:59 Numbers 7:64 Numbers 7:65 Numbers 7:70 Numbers 7:71 Numbers 7:76 Numbers 7:77 Numbers 7:82 Numbers 7:83 Numbers 7:87 Numbers 7:88 Numbers 15:11 Numbers 15:24 Numbers 15:27 Numbers 18:17 Numbers 28:15 Numbers 28:30 Numbers 29:5 Numbers 29:11 Numbers 29:19 Numbers 31:20

gold, golden

Definition:

Gold is a yellow, high quality metal that was used for making jewelry and religious objects. It was the most valuable metal in ancient times.

- In Bible times, many different kinds of objects were made out of solid gold or were covered with a thin layer of gold.
- These objects included earrings and other jewelry, and idols, altars, and other objects used in the tabernacle or temple, such as the ark of the covenant.
- In Old Testament times, gold was used as a means of exchange in buying and selling. It was weighed on a scale to determine its value.
- Later on, gold and other metals such as silver were used to make coins to use in buying and selling
- When referring to something that is not solid gold, but only has a thin covering of gold, the term “golden” or “gold-covered” or “gold-overlaid” could also be used.
- Sometimes an object is described as “gold-colored,” which means it has the yellow color of gold, but may not actually be made of gold.

(See also: altar, ark of the covenant, false god, silver, tabernacle, temple)

Bible References:

- 1 Peter 1:7
- 1 Timothy 2:8-10
- 2 Chronicles 1:15
- Acts 3:6
- Daniel 2:32

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1220, H1722, H2091, H2742, H3800, H5458, H6884, H6885, G55520, G55530, G55540, G55570

Numbers References:

Numbers 4:11 Numbers 7:14 Numbers 7:20 Numbers 7:26 Numbers 7:32 Numbers 7:38 Numbers 7:44 Numbers 7:50 Numbers 7:56 Numbers 7:62 Numbers 7:68 Numbers 7:74 Numbers 7:80 Numbers 7:84 Numbers 7:86 Numbers 7:86 Numbers 8:4 Numbers 22:18 Numbers 24:13 Numbers 31:50 Numbers 31:51 Numbers 31:54

grain, grainfields

Definition:

The term “grain” usually refers to the seed of a food plant such as wheat, barley, corn, millet, or rice. It can also refer to the whole plant.

- In the Bible, the main grains that are referred to are wheat and barley.
- A head of grain is the part of the plant that holds the grain.
- Note that some older Bible versions use the word “corn” to refer to grain in general. In modern English however, “corn” only refers to one type of grain.

(See also: head, wheat)

Bible References:

- Genesis 42:3
- Genesis 42:26-28
- Genesis 43:1-2
- Luke 6:2
- Mark 2:24
- Matthew 13:7-9
- Ruth 1:22

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1250, H1430, H1715, H2233, H2591, H3759, H3899, H7054, H7383, H7641, H7668, G02480, G25900, G34500, G46210, G47190

Numbers References:

Numbers 18:12 Numbers 18:27

grain offering

Definition:

A grain offering was a gift of wheat or barley flour offered to God, often after a burnt offering.

- The grain used for the grain offering had to be finely ground up. Sometimes it was cooked before being offered, but other times it was left uncooked.
- Oil and salt were added to the grain flour, but no yeast or honey was permitted.
- Part of the grain offering was burned up and part of it was eaten by the priests.

(See also: burnt offering, guilt offering, sacrifice, sin offering)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 23:27-29
- Exodus 29:41-42
- Judges 13:19
- Leviticus 2:2

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H4503, H8641

Numbers References:

Numbers 4:16 Numbers 5:15 Numbers 5:18 Numbers 5:25 Numbers 5:26 Numbers 6:15 Numbers 6:17 Numbers 7:13 Numbers 7:19 Numbers 7:37 Numbers 7:43 Numbers 7:49 Numbers 7:55 Numbers 7:61 Numbers 7:67 Numbers 7:73 Numbers 7:79 Numbers 7:87 Numbers 8:8 Numbers 15:4 Numbers 15:6 Numbers 15:9 Numbers 15:24 Numbers 16:15 Numbers 18:9 Numbers 28:5 Numbers 28:8 Numbers 28:9 Numbers 28:13 Numbers 28:20 Numbers 28:26 Numbers 28:31 Numbers 29:3 Numbers 29:6 Numbers 29:6 Numbers 29:11 Numbers 29:18 Numbers 29:19 Numbers 29:39

grape, grapevine

Definition:

A grape is a small, round, smooth-skinned berry fruit that grows in clusters on vines. The juice of grapes is used in making wine.

- There are different colors of grapes, such as light green, purple, or red.
- Individual grapes can be around one to three centimeters in size.
- People grow grapes in gardens called vineyards. These normally consist of long rows of vines.
- Grapes were a very important food during Bible times and having vineyards was a sign of wealth.
- In order to keep grapes from rotting, people would often dry them. Dried grapes are called “raisins” and they were used to make raisin cakes.
- Jesus told a parable about a grape vineyard to teach his disciples about God’s kingdom.

(See also: vine, vineyard, wine)

Bible References:

- Deuteronomy 23:24
- Hosea 9:10
- Job 15:33
- Luke 6:43-44
- Matthew 7:15-17
- Matthew 21:33

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0811, H0891, H1154, H1155, H1210, H3196, H5955, H6025, H6528, G02880, G47180

Numbers References:

Numbers 6:3 Numbers 6:3 Numbers 13:20 Numbers 13:23 Numbers 13:24

guilt offering

Definition:

A guilt offering was an offering or sacrifice that God required an Israelite to make if he had accidentally done something wrong such as disrespect God or damage another person’s property.

- This offering involved the sacrifice of an animal and the payment of a fine, with silver or gold money.
- In addition, the person at fault was responsible to pay for any damage that was done.

(See also: burnt offering, grain offering, sacrifice, sin offering)

Bible References:

- 1 Samuel 6:3
- 2 Kings 12:16
- Leviticus 5:5-6
- Numbers 6:12

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0817

Numbers References:

Numbers 6:12 Numbers 18:9

hang, hung

Definition:

The term “hang” means to suspend something or someone above the ground.

- In modern times, death by hanging is usually done by tying a rope around a person’s neck and suspending him from an elevated object until he dies. This elevated object can be any number of things, such as a tree or a gallows, that is, a platform built specifically for the purpose of hanging a person in order to kill him.
- In biblical times, however, ancient cultures may not have killed people by hanging in precisely the same way. For example, Jesus died while hanging on a wooden cross (sometimes called a “tree”), but there was nothing around his neck. The soldiers suspended him by nailing his hands (or wrists) and his feet to the cross.
- Some ancient cultures “hung” a person by impaling him on a wooden pole in such a way that he was suspended above the ground so that he could not escape. The person would be left there until he died.
- For many references to death by “hanging” in the Bible, the specific means of death is unknown.

Bible References:

- 2 Samuel 17:23
- Acts 10:39
- Galatians 3:13
- Genesis 40:22
- Matthew 27:3-5

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H2614, H3363, H8518, G05190

Numbers References:

Numbers 25:4

harvest, reap

Definition:

The term “harvest” refers to the gather the ripe fruits, vegetables, seeds, or grains from the plants on which they were growing. The term “reap” means to harvest crops.

- The harvest time normally happens at the end of a growing season.
- The Israelites held a “Festival of Harvest” or “Festival of Ingathering” to celebrate the reaping of the food crops. God commanded them to offer the first fruits of these crops as a sacrifice to him.
- In biblical times, reapers usually harvested crops by hand, either pulling up the plants or cutting them with a sharp cutting tool.

Translation Suggestions:

- It is best to translate the concept with the word that is commonly used in the language to refer to the harvesting of crops.
- The event of harvesting could be translated as “time of gathering in” or “crop gathering time” or “fruit picking time.”
- The verb to “harvest” could be translated as to “gather in” or to “pick up” or to “collect.”

(See also: firstfruits, festival, good news)

Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 9:9-11
- 2 Samuel 21:7-9
- Galatians 6:9-10
- Isaiah 17:11
- James 5:7-8
- Leviticus 19:9
- Matthew 9:38
- Ruth 1:22
- Galatians 6:9-10
- Matthew 6:25-26
- Matthew 13:30
- Matthew 13:36-39
- Matthew 25:24

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2758, H4395, H4672 H7105, H7114, H7938, G02700, G23250, G23260, G23270

Numbers References:

Numbers 11:8 Numbers 11:22 Numbers 11:32

high place

Definition:

The term "high places" refers to the altars and shrines that were used for worshiping idols. They were usually built on higher ground, such as on a hill or mountainside.

- Many of the kings of Israel sinned against God by building altars to false gods on these high places. This led the people to become deeply involved in worshiping idols.
- It often happened that when a God-fearing king started ruling in Israel or Judah, often he would remove the high places or altars in order to stop the worship of these idols.
- However, some of these good kings were careless and did not remove the high places, which resulted in the entire nation of Israel would continue to worship idols.

Translation Suggestions:

- Other ways to translate this term could include "elevated places for idol worship" or "hilltop idol shrines" or "idol altar mounds."
- Make sure it is clear that this term refers to the idol altars, not just to the high place where those altars were located.

(See also: altar, false god, worship)

Bible References:

- 1 Samuel 9:12-13
- 2 Kings 16:4
- Amos 4:13
- Deuteronomy 33:29
- Ezekiel 6:1-3
- Habakkuk 3:19

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1116, H1181, H1354, H2073, H4791, H7311, H7413

Numbers References:

Numbers 21:28

honey, honeycomb

Definition:

"Honey" is the sweet, sticky, edible substance that honeybees make out of flower nectar. Honeycomb is the waxy frame where the bees store honey.

- Depending on the kind, honey can be yellowish or brownish in color.
- Honey can be found in the wild, such as in the hollow of a tree, or wherever bees make a nest. People also raise bees in hives in order to produce honey to eat or sell, but probably the honey mentioned in the Bible was wild honey.
- Three people that the Bible specifically mentions as eating wild honey were Jonathan, Samson, and John the Baptist.
- This term is often used figuratively to describe something that is sweet or very pleasurable. For example, God's words and decrees are said to be "sweeter than honey." (See also: Simile, Metaphor)
- Sometimes a person's words are described as seeming sweet like honey, but instead result in deceiving and harming others.

(See also: John (the Baptist), Jonathan, Philistines, Samson)

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 14:1-3
- Deuteronomy 6:3
- Exodus 13:3-5
- Joshua 5:6
- Proverbs 5:3

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1706, H3293, H3295, H5317, H6688, G31920

Numbers References:

Numbers 13:27 Numbers 14:8 Numbers 16:13 Numbers 16:14

horn, horned, shofar

Definition:

Horns are permanent, hard, pointed growths on the heads of many types of animals, including cattle, sheep, goats, and deer.

- The horn of a ram (male sheep) was made into a musical instrument called a "ram's horn" or "shofar," which was blown for special events such as religious festivals or to call men for battle.
- This term should be translated with a word that is different from the word that refers to a trumpet, which is usually made of metal.
- God told the Israelites to make a horn-shaped projection on each of the four corners of the incense and brazen altars. Although these projections were called "horns," they were not actually animal horns.
- The term "horn" was sometimes used to refer to a "flask" that was shaped like a horn and was used for holding water or oil. A flask of oil was used for anointing a king, as Samuel did with David.

(See also: authority, cow, deer, goat, power royal, sheep, trumpet)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 15:27-28
- 1 Kings 1:39
- 2 Samuel 22:3
- Jeremiah 17:1
- Psalms 22:21

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3104, H7160, H7161, H7162, H7782, G27680

Numbers References:

Numbers 23:22 Numbers 24:8

house

Definition:

The term “house” refers to a small building, shelter, or tent, usually the place where a family sleeps.

- When referring to a building where people live and sleep the term “house” could be translated as “dwelling place” or “dwelling structure” or with another term that expresses the meaning.

Bible References:

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1004, H1005, H1035, H1397, G36140, G36240

Numbers References:

Numbers 16:32 Numbers 25:14 Numbers 30:3 Numbers 30:10 Numbers 30:16

house, household, house of Israel, house of David

Definition:

The term “house,” in this sense, refers to “descendants.”

- The term “house,” in this sense, means “family” or “descendants,” and refers to all the people related to or descended from a particular person. For example, the phrase “house of David” refers to all the descendants of King David.
- The phrase “house of Israel” can refer generally to the entire nation of Israel or more specifically to the tribes of the northern kingdom of Israel.

Translation Suggestions

- Depending on the context, “house” could be translated as “household” or “people” or “family” or “descendants.”
- The phrase “house of David” could be translated as “clan of David” or “family of David” or “descendants of David.” Related expressions could be translated in a similar way.
- Different ways to translate “house of Israel” could include “people of Israel” or “Israel’s descendants” or “Israelites.”

(See also: descendant, house of David, kingdom of Israel)

Bible References:

Word Data:

- Strong’s:

Numbers References:

Numbers 1:2 Numbers 1:4 Numbers 1:18
Numbers 1:20 Numbers 1:22 Numbers 1:34
Numbers 1:42 Numbers 1:44 Numbers 1:45
Numbers 2:2 Numbers 2:32 Numbers 2:34
Numbers 3:15 Numbers 3:20 Numbers 3:24
Numbers 3:30 Numbers 3:35 Numbers 4:2
Numbers 4:22 Numbers 4:34 Numbers 4:38
Numbers 4:40 Numbers 4:42 Numbers 4:46
Numbers 7:2 Numbers 17:2 Numbers 17:3
Numbers 17:6 Numbers 17:8 Numbers 18:1
Numbers 20:29 Numbers 25:15 Numbers 26:2
Numbers 34:14 Numbers 34:14

household, house

Definition:

The term “household” refers to all the people who live together in a house, including family members and all their servants.

- Used in this sense, the term “house” means “household” and refers to all the people who live together in one house or in a multi-structure home compound (whether buildings or tents), including family members and all their servants.
- Managing a household would have involved directing the servants and also taking care of the property.

Translation Suggestions

- Depending on the context, “house” could be translated as “household” or “family.”
- Depending on the context, the phrase “your household” could be translated as “those who live in your house” or “your family.”

(See also: house dwelling structure, house descendants nation)

Bible References:

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1004, H1397, G36090, G36095, G36140, G36150, G36240

Numbers References:

Numbers 18:13 Numbers 18:31

image, carved image, cast metal image, figure, carved figure, statue

Definition:

These terms are all used to refer to idols that have been made for worshiping a false god. In the context of worshiping idols, the term "image" is a shortened form of "carved image."

- A "carved image" or "carved figure" is a wooden object that has been made to look like an animal, person, or thing.
- A "cast metal figure" is an object or statue created by melting metal and pouring it into a mold that is in the shape of an object, animal, or person.
- These wooden and metal objects were used in the worship of false gods.
- The term "image" when referring to an idol could either refer to a wooden or metal idol.

Translation Suggestions:

- When referring to an idol, the term "image" could also be translated as "statue" or "engraved idol" or "carved religious object."
- It may be more clear in some languages to always use a descriptive word with this term, such as "carved image" or "cast metal figure," even in places where only the term "image" or "figure" is in the original text.
- Make sure it is clear that this term is different than the term used to refer to being in the image of God.

(See also: false god, God, false god, image of God)

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 14:9-10
- Acts 7:43
- Isaiah 21:8-9
- Matthew 22:21
- Romans 1:23

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0457, H1544, H2553, H4541, H4676, H4853, H4906, H5257, H5262, H5566, H6091, H6456, H6459, H6754, H6755, H6816, H8403, H8544, H8655, G15040, G51790

Numbers References:

Numbers 33:52 Numbers 33:52

incense

Definition:

The term “incense” refers to a mixture of fragrant spices that is burned to produce smoke that has a pleasant smell.

- God told the Israelites to burn incense as an offering to him.
- The incense had to be made by mixing equal amounts of five specific spices exactly as God directed. This was a sacred incense, so they were not allowed to use it for any other purpose.
- The “altar of incense” was a special altar that was only used for burning incense.
- The incense was offered at least four times a day, at each hour of prayer. It was also offered every time a burnt offering was made.
- The burning of incense represents prayer and worship rising up to God from his people.
- Other ways to translate “incense” could include “fragrant spices” or “good-smelling plants.”

(See also: altar of incense, burnt offering, frankincense)

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 3:1-3
- 2 Chronicles 13:10-11
- 2 Kings 14:4
- Exodus 25:3-7
- Luke 1:10

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H2553, H3828, H4196, H4289, H5208, H6988, H6999, H7002, H7004, H7381, G23680, G23690, G23700, G23790, G30310

Numbers References:

Numbers 4:16 Numbers 7:14 Numbers 7:20 Numbers 7:26 Numbers 7:32 Numbers 7:38 Numbers 7:44 Numbers 7:50 Numbers 7:56 Numbers 7:62 Numbers 7:68 Numbers 7:74 Numbers 7:80 Numbers 7:86 Numbers 16:7 Numbers 16:17 Numbers 16:18 Numbers 16:40 Numbers 16:46 Numbers 16:47

iron

Definition:

Iron is a hard, slightly shiny metal that is used to make many things.

- In Bible times, iron was used to make coins, chains, furniture, tools, weapons, chariots, gates, nails and other things.
- Iron is a very strong metal.
- If your culture does not have iron you could translate this term with a general expression which describes it such as "hard metal" or "strong metal."
- If your culture does not have iron you could translate the phrase "an iron tool" as "a tool made of hard metal" or "a strong metal tool."

(See also: How to Translate Unknowns)

(See also: armor)

Bible References:

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1270

Numbers References:

Numbers 35:16

joy, joyful, rejoice, glad

Definition:

joy

The term "joy" refers to a feeling of delight or deep satisfaction. The related term "joyful" describes a person who feels very glad and is full of deep happiness.

- A person feels joy when he has a deep sense that what he is experiencing is very good.
- God is the one who gives true joy to people.
- Having joy does not depend on pleasant circumstances. God can give people joy even when very difficult things are happening in their lives.
- Sometimes places are described as joyful, such as houses or cities. This means that the people who live there are joyful.

rejoice

The term "rejoice" means to be full of joy and gladness.

- This term often refers to being very happy about the good things that God has done.
- It could be translated as "be very happy" or "be very glad" or "be full of joy."
- When Mary said "my soul rejoices in God my Savior," she meant "God my Savior has made me very happy" or "I feel so joyful because of what God my Savior has done for me."

Translation Suggestions:

- The term "joy" could also be translated as "gladness" or "delight" or "great happiness."
- The phrase, "be joyful" could be translated as "rejoice" or "be very glad" or it could be translated "be very happy in God's goodness."
- A person who is joyful could be described as "very happy" or "delighted" or "deeply glad."
- A phrase such as "make a joyful shout" could be translated as "shout in a way that shows you are very happy."

- A “joyful city” or “joyful house” could be translated as “city where joyful people live” or “house full of joyful people” or “city whose people are very happy.” (See: metonymy)

Bible References:

- Nehemiah 8:10
- Psalm 48:2
- Isaiah 56:6-7
- Jeremiah 15:15-16
- Matthew 2:9-10
- Luke 15:7
- Luke 19:37-38
- John 3:29
- Acts 16:32-34
- Romans 5:1-2
- Romans 15:30-32
- Galatians 5:23
- Philippians 4:10-13
- 1 Thessalonians 1:6-7
- 1 Thessalonians 5:16
- Philemon 1:4-7
- James 1:2
- 3 John 1:1-4

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **33:7** “The rocky ground is a person who hears God’s word and accepts it with **joy**.”
- **34:4** “The kingdom of God is also like hidden treasure that someone hid in a field.. Another man found the treasure and then buried it again. He was so filled with **joy**, that he went and sold everything he had and used the money to buy that field.”
- **41:7** The women were full of fear and great **joy**. They ran to tell the disciples the good news.

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1523, H1524, H1525, H2302, H2304, H2305, H2654, H2898, H4885, H5937, H5947, H5965, H5970, H6342, H6670, H7440, H7442, H7444, H7445, H7797, H7832, H8055, H8056, H8057, H8342, H8643, G00200, G00210, G21650, G21670, G27440, G46400, G47960, G49130, G54630, G54790

Numbers References:

Numbers 10:10

king, kingship

Definition:

In the Bible, the term “king” refers to a man who is the supreme ruler of a particular group of people or a particular region of land (or both).

- In biblical times, a king was usually chosen to rule on the basis of family relation to the previous king(s). When a king died, usually his oldest son became the next king.
- The Bible often refers to God is as a king who rules over the entire universe (in a general sense) and over his people (in a specific sense).
- The New Testament refers to Jesus as a king in various ways, including: “king of the Jews;” “king of Israel;” and “king of kings.”
- Depending on the context, the term “king” might also be translated as “supreme chief” or “sovereign ruler.”
- The phrase “king of kings” might be translated as “king who rules over all other kings” or “supreme ruler who has authority over all other rulers.”

(See also: authority, Herod Antipas, kingdom, kingdom of God)

Bible References:

- 1 Timothy 6:15-16
- 2 Kings 5:18
- 2 Samuel 5:3
- Acts 7:9-10
- Acts 13:22
- John 1:49-51
- Luke 1:5
- Luke 22:24-25
- Matthew 5:35
- Matthew 14:9

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **8:6** One night, the Pharaoh, which is what the Egyptians called their kings, had two dreams that disturbed him greatly.
- **16:1** The Israelites had no **king**, so everyone did what they thought was right for them.
- **16:18** Finally, the people asked God for a **king** like all the other nations had.
- **17:5** Eventually, Saul died in battle, and David became **king** of Israel. He was a good **king**, and the people loved him.
- **21:6** God’s prophets also said that the Messiah would be a prophet, a priest, and a **king**.
- **48:14** David was the **king** of Israel, but Jesus is the **king** of the entire universe!

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H4427, H4428, H4430, G09350, G09360

Numbers References:

Numbers 20:14 Numbers 20:17 Numbers 21:1 Numbers 21:21 Numbers 21:22 Numbers 21:26 Numbers 21:26 Numbers 21:29 Numbers 21:33 Numbers 21:34 Numbers 22:4 Numbers 22:10 Numbers 23:7 Numbers 23:21 Numbers 24:7 Numbers 31:8 Numbers 31:8 Numbers 32:33 Numbers 32:33 Numbers 33:40

kingdom

Definition:

A kingdom is a group of people ruled by a king. It also refers to the realm or political regions over which a king or other ruler has control and authority.

- A kingdom can be of any geographical size. A king might govern a nation or country or only one city.
- The term "kingdom" can also refer to a spiritual reign or authority, as in the term "kingdom of God."
- God is the ruler of all creation, but the term "kingdom of God" especially refers to his reign and authority over the people who have believed in Jesus and who have submitted to his authority.
- The Bible also talks about Satan having a "kingdom" in which he temporarily rules over many things on this earth. His kingdom is evil and is referred to as "darkness."

Translation Suggestions:

- When referring to a physical region that is ruled over by a king, the term "kingdom" could be translated as "country (ruled by a king)" or "king's territory" or "region ruled by a king."
- In a spiritual sense, "kingdom" could be translated as "ruling" or "reigning" or "controlling" or "governing."
- One way to translate "kingdom of priests" might be "spiritual priests who are ruled by God."
- The phrase "kingdom of light" could be translated as "God's reign that is good like light" or "when God, who is light, rules people" or "the light and goodness of God's kingdom." It is best to keep the word "light" in this expression since that is a very important term in the Bible.
- Note that the term "kingdom" is different from an empire, in which an emperor rules over several countries.

(See also: authority, king, kingdom of God, kingdom of Israel, Judah, Judah, priest)

Bible References:

- 1 Thessalonians 2:12
- 2 Timothy 4:17-18
- Colossians 1:13-14
- John 18:36
- Mark 3:24
- Matthew 4:7-9
- Matthew 13:19
- Matthew 16:28
- Revelation 1:9

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **13:2** God said to Moses and the people of Israel, "If you will obey me and keep my covenant, you will be my prized possession, a **kingdom** of priests, and a holy nation."
- **18:4** God was angry with Solomon and, as a punishment for Solomon's unfaithfulness, he promised to divide the nation of Israel in two **kingdoms** after Solomon's death.
- **18:7** Ten of the tribes of the nation of Israel rebelled against Rehoboam. Only two tribes remained faithful to him. These two tribes became the **kingdom** of Judah.
- **18:8** The other ten tribes of the nation of Israel that rebelled against Rehoboam appointed a man named Jeroboam to be their king. They set up their **kingdom** in the northern part of the land and were called the **kingdom** of Israel.
- **21:8** A king is someone who rules over a **kingdom** and judges the people.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H4410, H4437, H4438, H4467, H4468, H4474, H4475, G09320

Numbers References:

Numbers 24:7 Numbers 32:33 Numbers 32:33

know, knew, knowledge, known, unknown, distinguish

Definition:

Used in this sense the term “know” and “knowledge” mean generally to understand something. It can also mean to be aware of a fact. The expression “to make known” means to tell information.

- The term “knowledge” refers to information that people know. It can apply to knowing physical concepts or abstract concepts.
- To “know about” God means to understand facts about him because of what he has revealed to us.
- To “know the Law” means to be aware of what God has commanded or to understand what God has instructed in the laws he gave to Moses.
- Sometimes “knowledge” is used as a synonym for “wisdom,” which includes living in a way that is pleasing to God.
- The “knowledge of God” is sometimes used as a synonym for the “fear of Yahweh.”

Translation Suggestions

- Depending on the context, ways to translate “know” could include “understand” or “be familiar with” or “be aware of” or “be acquainted with.”
- In the context of understanding the difference between two things, the term is usually translated as “distinguish.” When used in this way, the term is often followed by the preposition “between.”
- The term “make known” could be translated as “cause people to know” or “reveal” or “tell about” or “explain.”
- To “know about” something could be translated as “be aware of” or “be familiar with.”
- The expression “know how to” means to understand the process or method of getting something done. It could also be translated as “be able to” or “have the skill to.”
- The term “knowledge” could also be translated as “what is known” or “wisdom” or “understanding,” depending on the context.
- Some languages have two different words for “know,” one for knowing facts and one for knowing a person and having a relationship with that person. The word for knowing facts should be used when translating this sense of the word “know.”

(See also: know-relationship, law, reveal, understand, wise)

Bible References:

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1844, H1847, H3045, H3046, H3318, G00500, G00560, G03190, G10970, G11070, G11080, G11100, G14920, G19210, G19220, G19870, G42670

Numbers References:

Numbers 10:31 Numbers 11:16 Numbers 12:6 Numbers 14:31 Numbers 14:34 Numbers 16:5 Numbers 16:28 Numbers 16:30 Numbers 20:14 Numbers 22:6 Numbers 22:19 Numbers 22:34 Numbers 24:16 Numbers 32:23

know, knew, knowledge, unknown

Definition:

Used in this sense the term “know” and “knowledge” and “knew” mean to be in relationship with a person.

- To “know” God means to have a relationship with him. This also applies to knowing people.
- Jesus said in Matthew 7:23 that on the day when he judges everyone, he will say to some people, “I never knew you.” By saying “I never knew you,” he means that he was never in a personal relationship with them.
- The “knowledge of God” is sometimes used as a synonym for the “fear of Yahweh.”
- When used of a man and a woman to “know” is often an euphemism that refers to having sexual intercourse.

Translation Suggestions

- Depending on the context, ways to translate this meaning of “know” could include “be acquainted with” or “be familiar with” or “be in relationship with.”
- Some languages have two different words for “know,” one for knowing facts and one for knowing a person and having a relationship with that person. The word for knowing a person and having a relationship with that person should be used when translating this sense of the word “know.”

(See also: know-information,reveal)

Bible References:

Word Data:

- Strong’s:

Numbers References:

Numbers 31:17 Numbers 31:18 Numbers 31:35

labor, labors, labored, laboring, laborer, work, hard work

Definition:

The term “labor” refers to doing hard work of any kind.

- In general, labor is any task which uses energy. It is often implied that the task is difficult.
- A laborer is a person who does any type of labor.
- Ways to translate “labor” could include “work” or “toil” or “hard work” or “difficult work” or to “work hard.”

(See also: hard)

Bible References:

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H3021, H4399, H4522, H4639, H5647, H5656, H5998, H6001, H6089, G20380, G20400, G20410, G28720, G28730

Numbers References:

Numbers 4:3 Numbers 8:4 Numbers 16:28 Numbers 28:18 Numbers 28:25 Numbers 28:26 Numbers 29:1 Numbers 29:7 Numbers 29:35 Numbers 31:20 Numbers 31:51

lamp

Definition:

The term “lamp” generally refers to something that produces light. The lamps used in Bible times were usually oil lamps.

The type of lamp that was used in Bible times is a small container with a fuel source, usually oil, that gives light when it burns.

- An ordinary oil lamp usually consisted of a common piece of pottery filled with olive oil, with a wick placed in the oil to burn.
- For some lamps, the pot or jar was oval, with one end pinched close together to hold the wick.
- An oil lamp could be carried or placed on a stand so that its light could fill a room or house.
- In scripture, lamps are used in several figurative ways as symbols of light and life.

(See also: lampstand, life, light)

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 11:36
- Exodus 25:3-7
- Luke 8:16-18
- Matthew 5:15
- Matthew 6:22
- Matthew 25:3

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H3940, H3974, H4501, H5215, H5216, G29850, G30880

Numbers References:

Numbers 4:9 Numbers 8:2 Numbers 8:3

lampstand

Definition:

In the Bible, the term “lampstand” refers to a structure on which a lamp is placed in order to provide light to a room.

- The lampstand would be tall enough so that the light of the lamp could shine throughout the room.
- The lampstand could be made of wood or metal and could hold one or more lamps.
- Ordinary lamps were made of clay, and lamps for special purposes, such as for the temple, were made of metal (such as bronze, silver, or gold.)
- The lamps were in the shape of a bowl with a raised lip on one side that held a wick. The lamps were filled with olive oil that soaked the wick and burned when the wick was lighted.
- In the Jerusalem temple there was a special gold lampstand that had seven branches for holding seven lamps.

Translation Suggestions

- This term could be also translated as “lamp pedestal” or “structure for holding a lamp” or “lamp holder.”
- For the temple lampstand, this could be translated as “seven-lamp lampstand” or “gold pedestal with seven lamps.”
- It would also be helpful in a translation to include pictures of a simple lampstand and a seven-branch lampstand in the relevant Bible passages.

(See also: bronze, gold, lamp, light, silver, temple)

Bible References:

- Daniel 5:5-6
- Exodus 37:17
- Mark 4:21-23
- Matthew 5:15-16
- Revelation 1:12-13
- Revelation 1:20

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H4501, G30870

Numbers References:

Numbers 3:31 Numbers 4:9 Numbers 8:2
Numbers 8:3 Numbers 8:4

skin disease, leper, leprosy

Definition:

The term “leprosy” is used in the Bible to refer to several different skin diseases. A “leper” is a person who has leprosy. The term “leprous” describes a person or body part that is infected with leprosy.

- Certain kinds of leprosy cause the skin to become discolored with white patches, as when Miriam and Naaman had leprosy.
- In modern times, leprosy often causes hands, feet, and other body parts to become damaged and deformed.
- According to the instructions that God gave to the Israelites, when a person had leprosy, he was considered “unclean” and had to stay away from other people so that they would not become infected with the disease.
- A leper would often call out “unclean” so that others would be warned not to come near him.
- Jesus healed many lepers, and also people who had other kinds of diseases.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “leprosy” in the Bible can be translated as “skin disease” or “dreaded skin disease.”
- Ways to translate “leprous” could include “full of leprosy” or “infected with skin disease” or “covered with skin sores.”

(See also: Miriam, Naaman, clean)

Bible References:

- Luke 5:13
- Luke 17:12
- Mark 1:40
- Mark 14:3
- Matthew 8:3
- Matthew 10:8-10
- Matthew 11:5

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H6879, H6883, G30140, G30150

Numbers References:

Numbers 5:2 Numbers 12:10

lion, lioness

Definition:

A lion is a large, cat-like, that has animal, with powerful teeth and claws for killing and tearing apart its prey.

- Lions have powerful bodies and great speed to catch their prey. Their fur is short and golden-brown.
- Male lions have a mane of hair that encircles their heads.
- Lions kill other animals to eat them and can be dangerous to human beings.
- When King David was a boy, he killed lions that tried to attack the sheep he was caring for.
- Samson also killed a lion, with his bare hands.

(See also: How to Translate Unknowns)

(See also: David, leopard, Samson, sheep)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 11:22-23
- 1 Kings 7:29
- Proverbs 19:12
- Psalms 17:12
- Revelation 5:5

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0738, H0739, H0744, H3715, H3833, H3918, H7826, H7830, G30230

Numbers References:

Numbers 23:24 Numbers 23:24 Numbers 24:9 Numbers 24:9

livestock, animals

Definition:

The term “livestock” refers to animals which are raised to provide food and other useful products. Some types of livestock are also trained as work animals.

- Kinds of livestock include sheep, cattle, goats, horses, and donkeys.
- In Biblical times, wealth was partly measured by how much livestock a person had.
- Livestock are used to produce items such as wool, milk, cheese, housing materials, and clothing.
- This term could also be translated as “farm animals.”

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: cow, ox, donkey, goat, horse, sheep)

Bible References:

- 2 Kings 3:15-17
- Genesis 30:29
- Joshua 1:14-15
- Nehemiah 9:36-37
- Numbers 3:41

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0929, H4399, H4735

Numbers References:

Numbers 3:13 Numbers 3:41 Numbers 3:41 Numbers 3:45 Numbers 3:45 Numbers 8:17 Numbers 15:11 Numbers 18:15 Numbers 20:4 Numbers 20:8 Numbers 20:11 Numbers 20:19 Numbers 31:9 Numbers 31:9 Numbers 31:11 Numbers 31:26 Numbers 31:30 Numbers 32:1 Numbers 32:1 Numbers 32:4 Numbers 32:4 Numbers 32:16 Numbers 32:26 Numbers 35:3

lots, casting lots

Definition:

In the Bible, a “lot” is a marked object(s) used as a way of making a fair and/or random decision, usually for the purpose of selecting a specific person within a group. “Casting lots” refers to the process of using “lots” to make a fair and/or random decision.

- In modern times, some cultures “draw” or “pull out” lots using a bunch of straws. Someone holds the straws so that no one can see how long they are. Each person pulls out a straw and the one who picks the longest (or shortest) straw is the one who is chosen.
- In biblical times, the objects cast (the “lots”) were probably small marked stones. It is unknown how the “lots” actually indicated a decision, but it probably involved dropping or throwing marked stones on the ground.
- The phrase “casting lots” can be translated as “tossing lots” or “throwing lots” or “rolling lots.” The translation of “cast” should not sound like the lots were being thrown a long distance.
- If a decision is made “by lot,” this could be translated as “by casting lots” or “by throwing lots,” etc.

(See also: Elizabeth, priest, Zechariah (OT), Zechariah (NT))

Bible References:

- Jonah 1:7
- Luke 1:8-10
- Luke 23:34
- Mark 15:22
- Matthew 27:35-37
- Psalms 22:18-19

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1486, H5307, G28190, G29750

Numbers References:

Numbers 26:55 Numbers 26:56 Numbers 33:54 Numbers 33:54 Numbers 34:13 Numbers 36:2 Numbers 36:3

memorial, memorial offering

Definition:

The term “memorial” refers to an action or object that causes someone or something to be remembered.

- This word is also used as an adjective to describe something that is to remind them of something, as in a “memorial offering,” a “memorial portion” of a sacrifice or “memorial stones.”
- In the Old Testament memorial offerings were made so the Israelites would remember what God had done for them.
- God told the Israelite priests to wear special clothing that had memorial stones. These stones had the names of the twelve tribes of Israel engraved on them. These were perhaps to remind them of God’s faithfulness to them.
- In the New Testament, God honored a man named Cornelius because of his charitable deeds for the poor. These deeds were said to be a “memorial” before God.

Translation Suggestions:

- This could also be translated as “lasting reminder.”
- A “memorial stone” could be translated as a “stone to remind them (of something).”

Bible References:

- Acts 10:4
- Exodus 12:12-14
- Isaiah 66:3
- Joshua 4:6-7
- Leviticus 23:23-25

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H2142, H2146, G34220

Numbers References:

Numbers 5:15 Numbers 5:18 Numbers 5:26 Numbers 31:54

messenger

Definition:

The term “messenger” refers to someone who is given a message to tell others.

- In ancient times, a messenger would be sent from the battlefield to tell people back in the city what was happening.
- An angel is a special kind of messenger whom God sends to give people messages. Some translations translate “angel” as “messenger.”
- John the Baptist was called a messenger who came before Jesus to announce the Messiah’s coming and to prepare people to receive him.
- Jesus’ apostles were his messengers to go share with other people the good news about the kingdom of God.

(See also: angel, apostle, John (the Baptist))

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 19:1-3
- 1 Samuel 6:21
- 2 Kings 1:1-2
- Luke 7:27
- Matthew 11:10

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1319, H4397, H4398, H5046, H5894, H6735, H6737, H7323, H7971, G00320, G06520

Numbers References:

Numbers 20:14 Numbers 20:16 Numbers 21:21 Numbers 22:5 Numbers 22:31 Numbers 24:12

might, mighty, mighty works

Definition:

The terms “mighty” and “might” refer to having great strength or power.

- Often the word “might” is another word for “strength.” When talking about God, it can mean “power.”
- The phrase “mighty men” often refers to men who are courageous and victorious in battle. David’s band of faithful men who helped protect and defend him were often called “mighty men.”
- God is also referred to as the “mighty one.”
- The phrase “mighty works” usually refers to the amazing things God does, especially miracles.
- This term is related to the term “almighty,” which is a common description for God, meaning that he has complete power.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, the term “mighty” could be translated as “powerful” or “amazing” or “very strong.”
- The phrase “his might” could be translated as “his strength” or “his power.”
- In Acts 7, Moses is described as a man who was “mighty in word and deed.” This could be translated as “Moses spoke powerful words from God and did miraculous things” or “Moses spoke God’s word powerfully and did many amazing things.”
- Depending on the context, “mighty works” could be translated as “amazing things that God does” or “miracles” or “God doing things with power.”
- The term “might” could also be translated as “power” or “great strength.”
- Do not confuse this term with the English word that is used to express a possibility, as in “It might rain.”

(See also: Almighty, miracle, power, strength)

Bible References:

- Acts 7:22
- Genesis 6:4
- Mark 9:38-39
- Matthew 11:23

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0046, H0047, H0117, H0202, H0386, H0410, H0430, H0533, H0650, H1219, H1368, H1369, H1396, H1397, H1419, H2220, H2389, H2428, H3201, H3524, H3581, H3966, H4101, H5794, H5797, H6099, H6105, H6108, H6184, H7227, H7580, H8623, H8624, G14110, G14150, G14980, G24780, G24790, G29000, G29040, G31670, G31730

Numbers References:

Numbers 13:18 Numbers 13:28 Numbers 21:24 Numbers 32:1

mind, mindful, remind, reminder, likeminded

Definition:

The term "mind" refers to the part of a person that thinks and makes decisions.

- The mind of each person is the total of his or her thoughts and reasoning.
- To "have the mind of Christ" means to be thinking and acting as Jesus Christ would think and act. It means being obedient to God the Father, obeying the teachings of Christ, being enabled to do this through the power of the Holy Spirit.
- To "change his mind" means someone made a different decision or had a different opinion than he had previously.

Translation Suggestions

- The term "mind" could also be translated as "thoughts" or "reasoning" or "thinking" or "understanding."
- The expression "keep in mind" could be translated as "remember" or "pay attention to this" or "be sure to know this."
- The expression "heart, soul, and mind" could also be translated as "what you feel, what you believe, and what you think about."
- The expression "call to mind" could be translated as "remember" or "think about."
- The expression "changed his mind and went" could also be translated as "decided differently and went" or "decided to go after all" or "changed his opinion and went."
- The expression "double-minded" could also be translated as "doubting" or "unable to decide" or "with conflicting thoughts."

(See also: believe, heart, soul)

Bible References:

- Luke 10:27
- Mark 6:51-52
- Matthew 21:29

- Matthew 22:37
- James 4:8

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3629, H3820, H3824, H5162, H7725, G12710, G13740, G33280, G35250, G35400, G35630, G49930, G55900

Numbers References:

Numbers 23:19

mourn, mourner, weeping

Definition:

The terms "mourn" and "mourning" refer to expressing deep grief, usually in response to the death of someone.

- In many cultures, mourning includes specific outward behaviors that show this sadness and grief.
- The Israelites and other people groups in ancient times expressed mourning through loud wailing and lamenting. They also wore rough clothing made of sackcloth and put ashes on themselves.
- Hired mourners, usually women, would loudly weep and wail from the time of death until well after the body was put in the tomb.
- The typical period of mourning was seven days, but could last as long as thirty days (as for Moses and Aaron) or seventy days (as for Jacob).
- The Bible also uses the term figuratively to talk about "mourning" because of sin. This refers to feeling deeply grieved because sin hurts God and people.

(See also: sackcloth, sin)

Bible References:

- 1 Samuel 15:34-35
- 2 Samuel 1:11
- Genesis 23:2
- Luke 7:31-32
- Matthew 11:17

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0056, H0057, H0060, H0205, H0578, H0584, H0585, H1058, H1065, H1068, H1671, H1897, H1899, H4553, H4798, H5092, H5098, H5110, H5594, H6937, H6941, H8386, G23540, G28750, G36020, G39960, G39970

Numbers References:

Numbers 11:10 Numbers 14:1 Numbers 14:39 Numbers 25:6

nation

Definition:

In the Bible, a nation is a large group of people who share a common identity and speak the same language. The people of a nation often have the same ancestors and share a common ethnicity.

- In the Bible, a nation could be a country with an extensive government structure and defined boundaries (such as Egypt or Ethiopia), but usually it is more general and refers to a people group.
- Nations in the Bible included the Israelites, the Philistines, the Assyrians, the Babylonians, the Canaanites, the Romans, and the Greeks, among many others.
- Sometimes the word "nation" was used figuratively to refer to the ancestor of a certain people group, as when Rebekah was told by God that her unborn sons were "nations" that would fight against each other. This could be translated as "the founders of two nations" or the "ancestors of two people groups."
- When used in the plural in a general way, the word translated as "nations" often referred to the people who were not Israelites, that is, to Gentiles, the people who do not worship Yahweh. The context usually makes the meaning clear.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, the word "nation" could also be translated as "people group" or "people" or "country."
- If a language has a term for "nation" that is distinct from these other terms, then that term can be used wherever it occurs in the Bible text, as long as it is natural and accurate in each context.
- The plural term "nations" can often be translated as "people groups."
- In certain contexts, this term could also be translated as "Gentiles" or "non-Jews."

(See also: Assyria, Babylon, Canaan, Gentile, Greek, people group, Philistines, Rome)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 14:15-17
- 2 Chronicles 15:6
- 2 Kings 17:11-12
- Acts 2:5
- Acts 13:19
- Acts 17:26
- Acts 26:4
- Daniel 3:4
- Genesis 10:2-5
- Genesis 27:29
- Genesis 35:11
- Genesis 49:10
- Luke 7:5
- Mark 13:7-8
- Matthew 21:43
- Romans 4:16-17

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0523, H0524, H0776, H1471, H3816, H4940, H5971, G02460, G10740, G10850, G14840

Numbers References:

Numbers 14:12 Numbers 14:15 Numbers 23:9 Numbers 24:8 Numbers 24:20

noble, nobleman, royal official

Definition:

The term “noble” refers to something that is excellent and of high quality. A “nobleman” is a person who belongs to a high political or social class. A man “of noble birth” is one who was born a nobleman.

- A nobleman was often an officer of the state, a close servant to the king.
- The term “nobleman” could also be translated by, “king’s official” or “government officer.”

Bible References:

- 2 Chronicles 23:20-21
- Daniel 4:36
- Ecclesiastes 10:17
- Luke 19:12
- Psalm 16:1-3

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0117, H1419, H2715, H3358, H3513, H5057, H5081, H6440, H6579, H7261, H8282, H8269, G09370, G21040

Numbers References:

Numbers 21:18

oath, vow, swear, swearing, swear by, sworn

Definition:

The term “oath” in the Bible refers to a formal promise, usually made in a legal or religious context, in which the person making the oath accepts some kind of accountability or punishment if he does not fulfill his promise. In the Bible, the term “swear” means to make an oath. A “vow” is a solemn promise or oath that a person makes to God.

- In a court of law, a witness often gives an oath to promise that whatever he says will be true and factual.
- In modern times, one meaning of the word “swear” is to use foul or vulgar language. This is never its meaning in the Bible.
- The term “swear by” means to use the name of something or someone as the basis or power on which the oath is made.
- Abraham and Abimelech swore an oath when they made a covenant together concerning the use of a well.
- Abraham told his servant to swear (formally promise) that he would find Isaac a wife from among Abraham’s relatives.
- God also made oaths in which he made promises to his people.
- If a person in ancient Israel made a vow to God, that person was obligated to fulfill the vow. The ancient Israelites believed that God might punish a person who did not fulfill a vow that he made.
- In ancient Israel, sometimes a person would ask God to protect him or provide for him in exchange for making the vow. However, the ancient Israelites did not believe that God was obligated to fulfill these requests.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, “an oath” could also be translated as “a pledge” or “a solemn promise.”
- To “swear” could be translated as to “formally promise” or to “pledge” or to “commit to do something.”

- Other ways to translate “swear by my name” could include “make a promise using my name to confirm it.”
- To “swear by heaven and earth” could be translated as to, “promise to do something, stating that heaven and earth will confirm it.”
- Make sure the translation of “swear” or “oath” does not refer to cursing. In the Bible it does not have that meaning.
- Depending on the context, the term “vow” can be translated as “solemn promise” or “solemn oath” or “promise made to God.”

(See also: Abimelech, covenant, promise)

Bible References:

- Genesis 21:23
- Genesis 24:3
- Genesis 31:51-53
- Genesis 47:31
- Luke 1:73
- Mark 6:26
- Matthew 5:36
- Matthew 14:6-7
- Matthew 26:72
- 1 Corinthians 7:27-28
- Acts 21:23
- Genesis 28:21
- Genesis 31:12-13
- Jonah 1:14-16
- Jonah 2:9-10
- Proverbs 7:14

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0422, H0423, H3027, H5375, H7621, H7650, G03320, G36600, G37270, G37280, H5087, H5088, G21710

Numbers References:

Numbers 5:19 Numbers 5:21 Numbers 6:2 Numbers 6:2 Numbers 6:5 Numbers 6:21 Numbers 6:21 Numbers 11:12 Numbers 14:16 Numbers 14:23 Numbers 15:3 Numbers 15:8 Numbers 21:2 Numbers 21:2 Numbers 29:39 Numbers 30:2 Numbers 30:2 Numbers 30:4 Numbers 30:4 Numbers 30:5 Numbers 30:6 Numbers 30:8 Numbers 30:9 Numbers 30:10 Numbers 30:10 Numbers 30:11 Numbers 30:12 Numbers 30:13 Numbers 30:13 Numbers 30:14 Numbers 32:10 Numbers 32:11

oil

Definition:

Oil is a thick, clear liquid that can be taken from certain plants. In Bible times, oil usually came from olives.

- Olive oil was used for cooking, anointing, sacrifice, lamps, and medicine.
- In ancient times, olive oil was highly prized, and the possession of oil was considered a measurement of wealth.
- Make sure the translation of this term refers to the kind of oil that can be used in cooking, not motor oil. Some languages have different words for these different kinds of oil.

(See also: olive, sacrifice)

Bible References:

- 2 Samuel 1:21
- Exodus 29:2
- Leviticus 5:11
- Leviticus 8:1-3
- Mark 6:12-13
- Matthew 25:7-9

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H2091, H3323, H4887, H6671, H7246, H8081, G16370, G34640

Numbers References:

Numbers 4:9 Numbers 4:16 Numbers 5:15 Numbers 6:15 Numbers 6:15 Numbers 7:13 Numbers 7:19 Numbers 7:25 Numbers 7:31 Numbers 7:37 Numbers 7:43 Numbers 7:49 Numbers 7:55 Numbers 7:61 Numbers 7:67 Numbers 7:73 Numbers 7:79 Numbers 8:8 Numbers 11:8 Numbers 15:4 Numbers 15:6 Numbers 15:9 Numbers 18:12 Numbers 28:5 Numbers 28:9 Numbers 28:13 Numbers 28:20 Numbers 29:3 Numbers 35:25

ordinance, regulation, requirement, strict law, custom

Definition:

An ordinance is a public regulation or law that gives rules or instructions for people to follow. This term is related to the term "ordain."

- Sometimes an ordinance is a custom that has become well established through years of practice.
- In the Bible, an ordinance was something that God commanded the Israelites to do. Sometimes he commanded them to do it forever.
- The term "ordinance" could be translated as "public decree" or "regulation" or "law," depending on the context.

(See also: command, decree, law, ordain, statute)

Bible References:

- Deuteronomy 4:13-14
- Exodus 27:20-21
- Leviticus 8:31-33
- Malachi 3:6-7

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2706, H4687, H4931, H4941

Numbers References:

Numbers 9:14 Numbers 15:24 Numbers 29:6 Numbers 29:18 Numbers 35:24 Numbers 36:13

palace, house

Definition:

The term "palace" refers to the building or house where a king lived, along with his family members and servants.

- The high priest also lived in a palace complex, as mentioned in the New Testament.
- Palaces were very ornate, with beautiful architecture and furnishings.
- The buildings and furnishings of a palace were constructed of stone or wood, and often were overlaid with expensive wood, gold, or ivory.
- Many other people also lived and worked in the palace complex, which usually included several buildings and courtyards.

(See also: courtyard, high priest, king)

Bible References:

- 2 Chronicles 28:7-8
- 2 Samuel 11:2-3
- Daniel 5:5-6
- Matthew 26:3-5
- Psalms 45:8

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0759, H1002, H1004, H1055, H1406, H1964, H1965, G08330, G09330, G42320

Numbers References:

Numbers 22:18 Numbers 24:13

palm

Definition:

The term “palm” refers to a type of tall tree with long, flexible, leafy branches extending from the top in a fan-like pattern.

- The palm tree in the Bible usually refers to a type of palm tree that produces a fruit called a “date.” The leaves have a feather-like pattern.
- Palm trees typically grow in places that have a hot, humid climate. Their leaves stay green all year long.
- As Jesus was entering Jerusalem riding on a donkey, the people laid palm branches on the ground in front of him.
- Palm branches signified peace and the celebration of a victory.

(See also: donkey, Jerusalem, peace)

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 6:29-30
- Ezekiel 40:14-16
- John 12:12-13
- Numbers 33:9

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H3712, H8558, H8560, H8561, G54040

Numbers References:

Numbers 4:7

peace, peaceful, peacemaker

Definition:

The term “peace” refers to a state of being or a feeling of having no conflict, anxiety, or fearfulness. A person who is “peaceful” feels calm and assured of being safe and secure.

- In the Old Testament, the term “peace” often means a general sense of a person’s welfare, wellness, or wholeness.
- “Peace” can also refer to a time when people groups or countries are not at war with each other. These people are said to have “peaceful relations.”
- To “make peace” with a person or a group of people means to take actions to cause fighting to stop.
- A “peacemaker” is someone who does and says things to influence people to live at peace with each other.
- To be “at peace” with other people means being in a state of not fighting against those people.
- A good or right relationship between God and people happens when God saves people from their sin. This is called having “peace with God.”
- The greeting “grace and peace” was used by the apostles in their letters to their fellow believers as a blessing.
- The term “peace” can also refer to being in a good relationship with other people or with God.

Bible References:

- 1 Thessalonians 5:1-3
- Acts 7:26
- Colossians 1:18-20
- Colossians 3:15
- Galatians 5:23
- Luke 7:50
- Luke 12:51
- Mark 4:39
- Matthew 5:9
- Matthew 10:13

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **15:6** God had commanded the Israelites not to make a **peace** treaty with any of the people groups in Canaan.
- **15:12** Then God gave Israel **peace** along all its borders.
- **16:3** Then God provided a deliverer who rescued them from their enemies and brought **peace** to the land.
- **21:13** He (Messiah) would die to receive the punishment for other people's sin. His punishment would bring **peace** between God and people.
- **48:14** David was the king of Israel, but Jesus is the king of the entire universe! He will come again and rule his kingdom with justice and **peace**, forever.
- **50:17** Jesus will rule his kingdom with **peace** and justice, and he will be with his people forever.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H5117, H7961, H7962, H7965, H7999, H8001, H8002, H8003, H8252, G02690, G15140, G15150, G15160, G15170, G15180, G22720

Numbers References:

Numbers 6:26 Numbers 25:12

peace offering

Definition:

A "peace offering" was one of several sacrificial offerings that God commanded the Israelites to make. It is sometimes called the "thanksgiving offering" or "fellowship offering."

- This offering involved sacrificing an animal that had no defects, sprinkling the animal's blood on the altar, and burning the animal's fat, as well as the rest of the animal separately.
- Added to this sacrifice was an offering of both unleavened and leavened bread, which was burned on top of the burnt offering.
- The priest and one who offered the sacrifice were permitted to share in eating the food that was offered.
- This offering symbolizes the fellowship of God with his people.

(See also: burnt offering, fellowship, fellowship offering, grain offering, priest, sacrifice, unleavened bread)

Bible References:

- 1 Samuel 13:8-10
- Ezekiel 45:16-17
- Joshua 8:30-32
- Leviticus 9:3-5
- Proverbs 7:13-15

Word Data:

- Strong's: H8002

Numbers References:

Numbers 6:14 Numbers 6:17 Numbers 6:18
Numbers 7:17 Numbers 7:23 Numbers 7:29
Numbers 7:35 Numbers 7:41 Numbers 7:47
Numbers 7:53 Numbers 7:59 Numbers 7:65
Numbers 7:71 Numbers 7:77 Numbers 7:83
Numbers 7:88 Numbers 10:10 Numbers 15:8
Numbers 29:39

perfect, complete

Definition:

In the New Testament, the term “perfect” means to be mature in our Christian life. To perfect something means to work at it until it is excellent and without flaws. Old Testament sacrifices needed to be “perfect” or “complete,” that is, without blemish.

- Being perfect and mature means that a Christian is obedient, not sinless.
- The term “perfect” also has the meaning of being “complete” or “whole.”
- The New Testament book of James states that persevering through trials will produce completeness and maturity in the believer.
- When Christians study the Bible and obey it, they will become more spiritually perfect and mature because they will be more like Christ in their character.

Translation Suggestions:

- This term could be translated as “without flaw” or “without error” or “flawless” or “without fault” or “not having any faults.”

(See also: blemish)

Bible References:

- Hebrews 12:2
- James 3:2
- Matthew 5:46-48
- Psalms 19:7-8

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H3632, H3634, H4359, H8003, H8503, H8537, H8549, H8552, G01990, G26750, G26760, G36470, G50460, G50470, G50480, G50500

Numbers References:

Numbers 6:14 Numbers 19:2 Numbers 28:3 Numbers 28:9 Numbers 28:11 Numbers 28:19 Numbers 28:31 Numbers 29:2 Numbers 29:17

column, pillar

Definition:

The term “pillar” usually refers to a large vertical structure that is used to hold up a roof or other part of a building. Another word for “pillar” is “column.”

- In Bible times, pillars used as support in buildings were normally carved from a single piece of stone.
- When Samson in the Old Testament was captured by the Philistines, he destroyed their pagan temple by pushing the supporting pillars and causing the temple to collapse.
- The word “pillar” sometimes refers to a large stone or boulder that is set up as a memorial to mark a grave or to mark the place where an important event happened.
- It can also refer to an idol that was made to worship a false god. It is another name for a “carved image” and could be translated as “statue.”
- The term “pillar” is used to refer to something that is shaped like a pillar, such as the “pillar of fire” that led the Israelites at night through the desert or the “pillar of salt” that Lot’s wife became after she looked back at the city.
- As a structure supporting a building, the term “pillar” or “column” could be translated as “upright stone support beam” or “supporting stone structure.”
- Other uses of “pillar” could be translated as “statue” or “pile” or “mound” or “monument” or “tall mass,” depending on the context.

(See also: foundation, false god, image)

Bible References:

- 2 Kings 18:4
- Exodus 13:21
- Exodus 33:9
- Genesis 31:45
- Proverbs 9:1-2

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0352, H0547, H2106, H2553, H3730, H4552, H4676, H4678, H4690, H5324, H5333, H5982, H8490, G47690

Numbers References:

Numbers 3:36 Numbers 3:37 Numbers 4:31 Numbers 4:32 Numbers 12:5 Numbers 14:14

plague

Definition:

Plagues are events which cause suffering or death to a large number of people. Often a plague is a disease that spreads quickly and causes many people to die before it can be stopped.

- Many plagues have natural causes, but some were sent by God to punish people for sin.
- In the time of Moses, God sent ten plagues against Egypt to force Pharaoh to let Israel leave Egypt. These plagues included water turning into blood, physical diseases, destruction of crops by insects and hail, three days of complete darkness, and death of the firstborn sons.
- This could also be translated as "widespread disasters" or "widespread disease," depending on the context.

(See also: hail, Israel, Moses, Pharaoh)

Bible References:

- 2 Samuel 24:13-14
- Exodus 9:14
- Genesis 12:17-20
- Luke 21:11
- Revelation 9:18

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1698, H4046, H4194, H4347, H5061, H5062, H5063, G30610, G41270

Numbers References:

Numbers 8:19 Numbers 14:12 Numbers 14:37 Numbers 16:46 Numbers 16:47 Numbers 16:48 Numbers 16:49 Numbers 16:50 Numbers 25:8 Numbers 25:9 Numbers 25:18 Numbers 26:1 Numbers 31:16

plea, plead, please, beg, implore

Definition:

The terms “plead” and “pleading” refer to urgently asking someone to do something. A “plea” is an urgent request.

- Pleading often implies that the person feels in very great need or strongly desires help.
- People can plead or make an urgent appeal to God for mercy or to ask him to grant something, either for themselves or someone else.
- Other ways to translate this could include “beg” or “implore” or “urgently ask.”
- The term “plea” could also be translated as “urgent request” or “strong urging.”
- Make sure it is clear in the context that this term does not refer to begging for money.

Bible References:

- 2 Corinthians 8:3-5
- Judges 6:31
- Luke 4:39
- Proverbs 18:17

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1777, H2603, H3198, H4941, H4994, H6279, H6293, H6664, H6419, H7378, H7379, H7775, H8199, H8467, H8469, G11890, G17930, G20650, G38700

Numbers References:

Numbers 11:15 Numbers 12:6 Numbers 12:11 Numbers 12:13 Numbers 14:17 Numbers 14:19 Numbers 15:3 Numbers 15:7 Numbers 15:10 Numbers 15:13 Numbers 15:14 Numbers 15:24 Numbers 16:8 Numbers 16:26 Numbers 18:17 Numbers 20:10 Numbers 20:17 Numbers 22:16 Numbers 22:17 Numbers 22:19 Numbers 23:27

plunder, plundered, spoil, spoils

Definition:

The terms “spoil” and “plunder,” when used as a noun, refer to things that are taken by force from a person or place, normally during a time of war. The verb “plunder” means to take things from a person or place, normally by force and during a time of war.

- When translating the verb “plunder” in the context of war you should use a different word than “steal” as “to steal” normally implies wrong doing and to “plunder”” something in war is not necessarily sinful.
- You could translate the verb “plunder” with a word such as “pillage” or with a descriptive phrase “take the goods of.”
- You could translate the term “spoil” with a descriptive phrase such as “plundered goods” or “plundered things.”
- Depending on context, you could translate the term “plunder” with a descriptive phrase such as “captured goods” or with some other descriptive phrase or with a term such as “spoil” or “spoils.”
- Your language may have a word for things that are taken by force and/or in a time of war.

Bible References:

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0957, H0962, H7998

Numbers References:

Numbers 14:3 Numbers 14:31 Numbers 31:9 Numbers 31:11 Numbers 31:11 Numbers 31:12 Numbers 31:12 Numbers 31:26 Numbers 31:27 Numbers 31:32 Numbers 31:32 Numbers 31:32 Numbers 31:53

pomegranate

Definition:

A pomegranate is a kind of fruit that has a thick, tough skin filled with many seeds that are covered with edible red pulp.

- The outer rind is reddish in color and the pulp surrounding the seeds is shiny and red.
- Pomegranates are very commonly grown in countries with a hot, dry climate, such as Egypt and Israel.
- Yahweh promised the Israelites that Canaan was a land with abundant water and fertile soil so that food was plentiful there, including pomegranates.
- The construction of Solomon's temple included bronze decorations in the shape of pomegranates.

(See also: bronze, Canaan, Egypt, Solomon, temple)

Bible References:

- 2 Kings 25:16-17
- Deuteronomy 8:7-8
- Jeremiah 52:22-23
- Numbers 13:23-24
- Numbers 20:5

Word Data:

- Strong's: H7416

Numbers References:

Numbers 13:23 Numbers 20:5

possess, possessed, possession, dispossess

Definition:

The terms "possess" and "possession" usually refer to owning something. They can also mean to gain control over something or occupy an area of land.

- In the Old Testament, this term is often used in the context of "possessing" or "taking possession of" an area of land.
- When Yahweh commanded the Israelites to "possess" the land of Canaan, it meant that they should go into the land and live there. This involved first conquering the Canaanite peoples who were living on that land.
- Yahweh told the Israelites that he had given them the land of Canaan as "their possession." This could also be translated as "their rightful place to live."
- The people of Israel were also called Yahweh's "special possession." This means that they belonged to him as his people whom he had specifically called to worship and serve him.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term "possess" could also be translated as "own" or "have" or "have charge over."
- The phrase "take possession of" could be translated as "take control of" or "occupy" or "live on," depending on the context.
- When referring to things that people own, "possessions" could be translated as "belongings" or "property" or "owned things" or "things they owned."
- When Yahweh calls the Israelites, "my special possession" this could also be translated as "my special people" or "people who belong to me" or "my people whom I love and rule."
- The sentence, "they will become their possession" when referring to land, means "they will occupy the land" or "the land will belong to them."

- The expression, “found in his possession” could be translated as “that he was holding” or “that he had with him.”
- The phrase “as your possession” could also be translated as “as something that belongs to you” or “as a place where your people will live.”
- The phrase, “in his possession” could be translated as “that he owned” or “which belonged to him.”

(See also: Canaan, worship, inherit)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 6:70
- 1 Kings 9:17-19
- Acts 2:45
- Deuteronomy 4:5-6
- Genesis 31:36-37
- Matthew 13:44

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0270, H0272, H0834, H2505, H2631, H3027, H3423, H3424, H3425, H3426, H4180, H4181, H4672, H4735, H4736, H5157, H5159, H5459, H7069, G11390, G21920, G26970, G27220, G29320, G29330, G29350, G40470, G52240, G55640

Numbers References:

Numbers 14:12 Numbers 14:24 Numbers 21:24 Numbers 21:32 Numbers 24:18 Numbers 24:18 Numbers 27:4 Numbers 27:7 Numbers 32:5 Numbers 32:21 Numbers 32:22 Numbers 32:30 Numbers 32:32 Numbers 32:39 Numbers 33:52 Numbers 33:53 Numbers 33:53 Numbers 33:55 Numbers 35:2 Numbers 35:8 Numbers 36:8 Numbers 36:8

prey, prey on

Definition:

The term “prey” refers to something that is hunted, usually an animal that is used for food.

- In a figurative sense, “prey” can refer to a person who is taken advantage of, abused, or oppressed by a more powerful person.
- To “prey on” people means to take advantage of them by oppressing them or stealing something from them.
- The term “prey” could also be translated as “hunted animal” or “hunted one” or “victim.”

(See also: oppress)

Bible References:

- Jeremiah 12:9
- Psalms 104:21

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0400, H0957, H0962, H2963, H2964, H5706, H5861, H7997, H7998

Numbers References:

Numbers 23:24

prince, princess, governor, provincial governor, official, nobleman, noblemen, nobility

Definition:

A "prince" is the son of a king. A "princess" is a daughter of a king.

- The term "prince" is often used figuratively to refer to a leader, ruler, or other powerful person.
- Because of Abraham's wealth and importance, he was referred to as a "prince" by the Hittites he was living among.
- In the book of Daniel, the term "prince" is used in the expressions "prince of Persia" and "prince of Greece," which in those contexts probably refer to powerful evil spirits who had authority over those regions.
- The archangel Michael is also referred to as a "prince" in the book of Daniel.
- Sometimes in the Bible Satan is referred to as "the prince of this world."
- Jesus is called the "Prince of Peace" and the "Prince of Life."
- In Acts 2:36, Jesus is referred to as "Lord and Christ" and in Acts 5:31 he is referred to as "Prince and Savior," showing the parallel meaning of "Lord" and "Prince."

Translation Suggestions:

- Ways to translate "prince" could include, "king's son" or "ruler" or "leader" or "chieftain" or "captain."
- When referring to angels, this could also be translated as "spirit ruler" or "leading angel."
- When referring to Satan or other evil spirits, this term could also be translated as "evil spirit ruler" or "powerful spirit leader" or "ruling spirit," depending on the context.

(See also: angel, authority, Christ, demon, lord, power, ruler, Satan, Savior, spirit)

Bible References:

- Acts 5:29-32
- Genesis 12:15
- Genesis 49:26
- Luke 1:52

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0001, H0117, H0324, H2831, H3548, H4502, H5057, H5081, H5139, H5257, H5387, H5633, H5993, H6579, H7261, H7333, H7786, H8269, H8282, H8323, G07470, G07580, G14130, G31750

Numbers References:

Numbers 21:18 Numbers 22:8 Numbers 22:13 Numbers 22:15 Numbers 22:21 Numbers 22:35 Numbers 22:40 Numbers 23:6 Numbers 23:17 Numbers 31:14 Numbers 31:14 Numbers 31:54

profane, profaned

Definition:

To profane something means to act in a way that defiles, pollutes, or disrespects something that is holy.

- A profane person is one who acts in a way that is unholy and dishonoring of God.
- The verb to "profane" could be translated as to "treat as unholy" or to "be irreverent toward" or to "dishonor."
- God told the Israelites that they "profaned" themselves with idols, meaning that the people were making themselves "unclean" or "dishonored" by this sin. They were also dishonoring God.
- Depending on the context, the adjective "profane" could be translated as "dishonoring" or "godless" or "unholy."

(See also: defile, holy, clean)

Bible References:

- 2 Timothy 2:16-18
- Ezekiel 20:9
- Malachi 1:10-12
- Matthew 12:5
- Numbers 18:30-32

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2455, H2490, H2491, H5234, H8610, G09520, G09530

Numbers References:

Numbers 18:32 Numbers 30:2

prosper, prosperity, prosperous

Definition:

The term "prosper" generally refers to living well, whether it be physically, morally, emotionally, etc. This term often expresses the idea of being wealthy or successful in life.

- The term "prosperous" often refers to success in owning money and property or in producing everything needed for people to live well.
- In the Bible, the term "prosperous" also includes good health and being blessed with children.
- A "prosperous" city or country is one that has many people, good production of food, and businesses that bring in plenty of money.
- The Bible teaches that a person will prosper spiritually when he obeys God's teachings. He will also experience the blessings of joy and peace. God does not always give people a lot of material wealth, but he will always prosper them spiritually as they follow his ways.
- Depending on the context, the term "prosper" could also be translated as "succeed spiritually" or "be blessed by God" or "experience good things" or "live well."
- The term "prosperous" could also be translated as "successful" or "wealthy" or "spiritually fruitful."
- "Prosperity" could also be translated as "well-being" or "wealth" or "success" or "abundant blessings."

(See also: bless, good, fruit, spirit)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 29:22-23
- Deuteronomy 23:6
- Job 36:11
- Leviticus 25:26-28
- Psalms 1:3

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1129, H1767, H1878, H1879, H2428, H2896, H2898, H3027, H3190, H3444, H3498, H3787, H4195, H5381, H6500, H6509, H6555, H6743, H6744, H7230, H7487, H7919, H7951, H7961, H7963, H7965

Numbers References:

Numbers 14:41 Numbers 31:9

prostrate

Definition:

The term "prostrate" means to be lying face down, stretched out on the ground.

- To "fall prostrate" or to "prostrate oneself" before someone means to suddenly bow down very low or in front of that person.
- Usually this position of being prostrate is a response that shows shock, amazement, and awe because of something miraculous that happened. It also shows honor and respect for the person being bowed to.
- Being prostrate also was a way to worship God. People often responded this way to Jesus in thanksgiving and worship when he did a miracle or to honor him as a great teacher.
- Depending on the context, ways to translate "prostrated" could include "bowed down low with the face to the ground" or "worshiped him by lying face down in front of him" or "bowed down low to the ground in amazement" or "worshiped."
- The phrase "will not prostrate ourselves" could be translated as "will not worship" or "will not lie face down in worship" or "will not bow down and worship."
- "Prostrate himself to" could also be translated as "worship" or "bow down in front of."

(See also: awe, bow)

Bible References:

- 2 Kings 17:36-38
- Genesis 43:28
- Revelation 19:3-4

Word Data:

- Strong's: H5307, H5457, H6440, H6915, H7812

Numbers References:

Numbers 14:5 Numbers 16:4 Numbers 16:22 Numbers 16:45 Numbers 20:6

punish, punished, punishment, unpunished

Definition:

The term “punish” means to cause someone to suffer a negative consequence for doing something wrong. The term “punishment” refers to the negative consequence that is given as a result of that wrong behavior.

- Often punishment is intended to motivate a person to stop sinning.
- God punished the Israelites when they disobeyed him, especially when they worshiped false gods. Because of their sin, God allowed their enemies to attack and capture them.
- God is righteous and just, so he has to punish sin. Every human being has sinned against God and deserves punishment.
- Jesus was punished for all the evil things that every person has ever done. He received each person’s punishment on himself even though he did nothing wrong and did not deserve that punishment.
- The expressions “go unpunished” and “leave unpunished” mean to decide not to punish people for their wrongdoing. God often allows sin to go unpunished as he waits for people to repent.

(See also: just, repent, righteous, sin)

Bible References:

- 1 John 4:18
- 2 Thessalonians 1:9
- Acts 4:21
- Acts 7:59-60
- Genesis 4:15
- Luke 23:16
- Matthew 25:46

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **13:7** God also gave many other laws and rules to follow. If the people obeyed these laws, God promised that he would bless and protect them. If they disobeyed them, God would **punish** them.
- **16:2** Because the Israelites kept disobeying God, he **punished** them by allowing their enemies to defeat them.
- **19:16** The prophets warned the people that if they did not stop doing evil and start obeying God, then God would judge them as guilty, and he would **punish** them.
- **48:6** Jesus was the perfect high priest because he took the **punishment** for every sin that anyone has ever committed.
- **48:10** When anyone believes in Jesus, the blood of Jesus takes away that person’s sin, and God’s **punishment** passes over him.
- **49:9** But God loved everyone in the world so much that he gave his only Son so that whoever believes in Jesus will not be **punished** for his sins, but will live with God forever.
- **49:11** Jesus never sinned, but he chose to be **punished** and die as the perfect sacrifice to take away your sins and the sins of every person in the world.

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H3027, H3256, H4148, H4941, H5221, H5414, H6031, H6064, H6213, H6485, H7999, H8011, H8199, G13490, G15560, G15570, G28490, G38110, G50970

Numbers References:

Numbers 14:18

purple

Definition:

The term “purple” is the name of a color that is a mixture of blue and red.

- In ancient times, purple was a rare and highly valuable color of dye that was used to dye the clothing of kings and other high officials.
- Because it was costly and time-consuming to produce this dye, purple clothing was considered a sign of wealth, distinction, and royalty.
- Purple was also one of the colors used for the curtains in the tabernacle and temple, and for the ephod worn by the priests.
- Purple dye was extracted from a kind of sea snail by either crushing or boiling the snails or by causing them to release the dye while still alive. This was an expensive process.
- Roman soldiers put a purple royal robe on Jesus before his crucifixion, to mock him for his claim to be King of the Jews.
- Lydia from the town of Philippi was a woman who made her living by selling purple cloth.

(Translation suggestions: Translate Names)

(See also: ephod, Philippi, royal, tabernacle, temple)

Bible References:

- 2 Chronicles 2:13-14
- Daniel 5:7
- Daniel 5:29-31
- Proverbs 31:22-23

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0710, H0711, H0713, G42090, G42100, G42110

Numbers References:

Numbers 4:13

rebel, rebellion, rebellious, rebelliousness

Definition:

The term “rebel” means to refuse to submit to someone’s authority. A “rebellious” person often disobeys and does evil things. This kind of person is called “a rebel.”

- A person is rebelling when he does something the authorities over him have told him not to do.
- A person can also rebel by refusing to do what the authorities have commanded him to do.
- Sometimes people rebel against their government or leader who is ruling over them.
- The term to “rebel” could also be translated as to “disobey” or to “revolt,” depending on the context.
- “Rebellious” could also be translated as “continually disobedient” or “refusing to obey.”
- The term “rebellion” means “refusal to obey” or “disobedience” or “law-breaking.”
- The phrase “the rebellion” or “a rebellion” can also refer to an organized group of people who publicly rebel against ruling authorities by breaking the law and attacking leaders and other people. Often they try to get other people to join them in rebelling.

(See also: authority, governor)

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 12:18-19
- 1 Samuel 12:14
- 1 Timothy 1:9-11
- 2 Chronicles 10:17-19
- Acts 21:38
- Luke 23:19

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **14:14** After the Israelites had wandered in the wilderness for forty years, all of them who had **rebelled** against God were dead.

- **18:7** Ten of the tribes of the nation of Israel **rebelled** against Rehoboam.
- **18:9** Jeroboam **rebelled** against God and caused the people to sin.
- **18:13** Most of the people of Judah also **rebelled** against God and worshiped other gods.
- **20:7** But after a few years, the king of Judah **rebelled** against Babylon.
- **45:3** Then he (Stephen) said, "You stubborn and **rebellious** people always reject the Holy Spirit, just as your ancestors always rejected God and killed his prophets."

Word Data:

- Strong's: H4775, H4776, H4777, H4779, H4780, H4784, H4805, H5327, H5627, H5637, H6586, H6588, H7846, G38930, G49550

Numbers References:

Numbers 14:9 Numbers 17:10 Numbers 20:10 Numbers 20:24 Numbers 27:14

receive, welcome, taken up, acceptance

Definition:

The term "receive" generally means to get or accept something that is given, offered, or presented.

- To "receive" can also mean to suffer or experience something, as in "he received punishment for what he did."
- There is also a special sense in which we can "receive" a person. For example, to "receive" guests or visitors means to welcome them and treat them with honor in order to build a relationship with them.
- To "receive the gift of the Holy Spirit" means we are given the Holy Spirit and welcome him to work in and through our lives.
- To "receive Jesus" means to accept God's offer of salvation through Jesus Christ.
- When a blind person "receives his sight" means that God has healed him and enabled him to see.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, "receive" could be translated as "accept" or "welcome" or "experience" or "be given."
- The expression "you will receive power" could be translated as "you will be given power" or "God will give you power" or "power will be given to you (by God)" or "God will cause the Holy Spirit to work powerfully in you."
- The phrase "received his sight" could be translated as "was able to see" or "became able to see again" or "was healed by God so that he was able to see."

(See also: Holy Spirit, Jesus, lord, save)

Bible References:

- 1 John 5:9
- 1 Thessalonians 1:6
- 1 Thessalonians 4:1
- Acts 8:15
- Jeremiah 32:33
- Luke 9:5

- Malachi 3:10-12
- Psalms 49:14-15

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **21:13** The prophets also said that the Messiah would be perfect, having no sin. He would die to **receive** the punishment for other people's sin. His punishment would bring peace between God and people.
- **45:5** As Stephen was dying, he cried out, "Jesus, **receive** my spirit."
- **49:6** He (Jesus) taught that some people will receive him and be saved, but others will not.
- **49:10** When Jesus died on the cross, he **received** your punishment.
- **49:13** God will save everyone who believes in Jesus and **receives** him as their Master.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3557, H3947, H6901, H6902, H8254, G03080, G03240, G03530, G03540, G05680, G05880, G06180, G11830, G12090, G15230, G16530, G19260, G28650, G29830, G30280, G33350, G33360, G35490, G38580, G38800, G43270, G43550, G43560, G46870, G52640, G55620

Numbers References:

Numbers 9:17

refuge, refugee, shelter, sheltered

Definition:

The term "refuge" refers to a place or condition of safety and protection. A "refugee" is someone who is seeking a safe place. A "shelter" refers to a place that can protect from weather or danger.

- In the Bible, God is often referred to as a refuge where his people can be safe, protected, and cared for.
- The term "city of refuge" in the Old Testament referred to one of several cities where a person who accidentally killed someone could go for protection from people who would attack them in revenge.
- A "shelter" is often a physical structure such as a building or roof that can provide protection to people or animals.
- Sometimes "shelter" means "protection," as when Lot said that his guests were "under the shelter" of his roof. He was saying that they should be safe because he was taking responsibility to protect them as members of his household.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term "refuge" could be translated as "safe place" or "place of protection."
- "Refugees" are people leaving their home to escape from a dangerous situation, and could be translated as "aliens," "homeless people," or "exiles."
- Depending on the context, the term "shelter" could be translated as "something that protects" or "protection" or "protected place."
- If it refers to a physical structure, "shelter" could also be translated as "protective building" or "house of safety."
- The phrase "into safe shelter" could be translated as "into a safe place" or "into a place that will protect."
- To "find shelter" or to "take shelter" or to "take refuge" could be translated as to "find a place of safety" or to "put oneself in a protected place."

Bible References:

- 2 Samuel 22:3-4
- Deuteronomy 32:37-38
- Isaiah 23:14
- Jeremiah 16:19
- Numbers 35:24-25
- Psalm 46:1
- Psalms 28:8

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2620, H4268, H4498, H4585, H4733, H4869

Numbers References:

Numbers 35:6 Numbers 35:11 Numbers 35:12 Numbers 35:14 Numbers 35:15 Numbers 35:25 Numbers 35:26 Numbers 35:27 Numbers 35:32

reject, rejected, rejection

Definition:

To "reject" someone or something means to refuse to accept that person or thing.

- The term "reject" can also mean to "refuse to believe in" something.
- To reject God also means to refuse to obey him.
- When the Israelites rejected Moses' leadership, it means that they were rebelling against his authority. They did not want to obey him.
- The Israelites showed that they were rejecting God when they worshiped false gods.
- The term "push away" is the literal meaning of this word. Other languages may have a similar expression that means to reject or refuse to believe someone or something.

Translation Suggestions

- Depending on the context, the term "reject" could also be translated by "not accept" or "stop helping" or "refuse to obey" or "stop obeying."
- In the expression "stone that the builders rejected," the term "rejected" could be translated as "refused to use" or "did not accept" or "threw away" or "got rid of as worthless."
- In the context of people who rejected God's commandments, rejected could be translated as "refused to obey" his commands or "stubbornly chose to not accept" God's laws.

(See also: command, disobey, obey, stiff-necked)

Bible References:

- Galatians 4:12-14
- Hosea 4:6-7
- Isaiah 41:9
- John 12:48-50
- Mark 7:9

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0947, H0959, H2186, H2310, H3988, H5006, H5034, H5186, H5203, H5307, H5541, H5800, G01140, G04830, G05500, G05790, G05800, G05930, G06830, G07200, G16090, G38680

Numbers References:

Numbers 11:20 Numbers 14:31 Numbers 16:30

report, reported, tell, reputation

Definition:

The term to "report" means to tell people about something that happened, often giving details about that event. A "report" is what is told, and can be spoken or written.

- "Report" could also be translated as "tell" or "explain" or "tell the details of."
- The expression "Report this to no one" could be translated as "Do not talk about this with anyone" or "Do not tell anyone about this."
- Ways to translate "a report" could include "an explanation" or "a story" or "a detailed account," depending on the context.

Bible References:

- Acts 5:22-23
- John 12:38
- Luke 5:15
- Luke 8:34-35
- Matthew 28:15

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1681, H1696, H1697, H5046, H7725, H8034, H8052, H8085, H8088, H8089, G01890, G01910, G03120, G05180, G09870, G12250, G13100, G18340, G20360, G21630, G30040, G30560, G31400, G33770

Numbers References:

Numbers 13:32 Numbers 14:36 Numbers 14:37

rule, reign, ruler, prefect, official, leader

Definition:

The term “ruler” is a general reference to a person who has authority over other people, such as a leader of a country, kingdom, or religious group. A ruler is one who “rules,” and his authority is his “rule.”

- In the Old Testament, a king was sometimes referred to generally as a “ruler,” as in the phrase “appointed him ruler over Israel.”
- God was referred to as the ultimate ruler, who rules over all other rulers.
- In the New Testament, the leader of a synagogue was called a “ruler.”
- Another type of ruler in the New Testament was a “governor.”
- Depending on the context, “ruler” could be translated as “leader” or “person who has authority over.”
- The action to “rule” means to “lead” to “have authority over.” It means the same thing as “reign” when it refers to the ruling of a king.

(See also: authority, governor, king, synagogue)

Bible References:

- Acts 3:17-18
- Acts 7:35-37
- Luke 12:11
- Luke 23:35
- Mark 10:42
- Matthew 9:32-34
- Matthew 20:25
- Titus 3:1

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0995, H1166, H1167, H1404, H2708, H2710, H3027, H3548, H3920, H4043, H4410, H4427, H4428, H4438, H4467, H4474, H4475, H4623, H4910, H4941, H5057, H5065, H5387, H5401, H5461, H5715, H6113, H6213, H6485, H6957, H7101, H7218, H7287, H7300, H7336, H7786, H7860, H7980, H7981, H7985, H7989, H7990, H8199, H8269, H8323, H8451, G07460, G07520, G07550, G07570, G07580, G09320, G09360, G10180, G12030, G12990, G17780, G17850, G18490, G22320, G22330, G25250, G25830, G28880, G29610, G35450, G38410, G41650, G41730, G42910

Numbers References:

Numbers 16:13 Numbers 27:2

sacrifice, offering

Definition:

In the Bible, the terms "sacrifice" and "offering" refer to special gifts given to God as an act of worshiping him. People also offered sacrifices to false gods.

sacrifice

- Sacrifices to God often involved the killing of an animal.
- Only the sacrifice of Jesus, God's perfect sinless Son, can completely cleanse people from sin; animal sacrifices could never do that.

offering

- The word "offering" generally refers to anything that is offered or given. The term "sacrifice" refers to something that is given or done at great cost to the giver.
- Offerings to God were specific things that he commanded the Israelites to give in order to express devotion and obedience to him.
- The names of the different offerings, such as "burnt offering" and "peace offering," indicated what kind of offering was being given.

Translation Suggestions

- The term "offering" could also be translated as "a gift to God" or "something given to God" or "something valuable that is presented to God."
- Depending on the context, the term "sacrifice" could also be translated as "something valuable given in worship" or "a special animal killed and presented to God."
- The action to "sacrifice" could be translated as to "give up something valuable" or to "kill an animal and give it to God."
- Another way to translate "present yourself as a living sacrifice" could be "as you live your life, offer yourself to God as completely as an animal is offered on an altar."

(See also: altar, burnt offering, drink offering, false god, fellowship offering, freewill offering peace offering, priest, sin offering, worship)

Bible References:

- 2 Timothy 4:6
- Acts 7:42
- Acts 21:25
- Genesis 4:3-5
- James 2:21-24
- Mark 1:43-44
- Mark 14:12
- Matthew 5:23

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **3:14** After Noah got off the boat, he built an altar and **sacrificed** some of each kind of animal which could be used for a **sacrifice**. God was happy with the **sacrifice** and blessed Noah and his family.
- **5:6** "Take Isaac, your only son, and kill him as a **sacrifice** to me." Again Abraham obeyed God and prepared to **sacrifice** his son.
- **5:9** God had provided the ram to be the **sacrifice** instead of Isaac.
- **13:9** Anyone who disobeyed God's law could bring an animal to the Tent of Meeting as a **sacrifice** to God. A priest would kill the animal and burn it on the altar. The blood of the animal that was **sacrificed** covered the person's sin and made that person clean in God's sight.
- **17:6** David wanted to build a temple where all the Israelites could worship God and offer him **sacrifices**.
- **48:6** Jesus is the Great High Priest. Unlike other priests, he offered himself as the only **sacrifice** that could to take away the sin of all the people in the world.
- **48:8** But God provided Jesus, the Lamb of God, as a **sacrifice** to die in our place.
- **49:11** Because Jesus **sacrificed** himself, God can forgive any sin, even terrible sins.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0801, H0817, H0819, H1685, H1890, H1974, H2076, H2077, H2281, H2282, H2398, H2401, H2402, H2403, H2409, H3632, H4394, H4503, H4504, H5066, H5068, H5071, H5257, H5258, H5261, H5262, H5927, H5928, H5930, H6453, H6944, H6999, H7133, H7311, H8002, H8426, H8548, H8573, H8641, G02660, G03340, G10490, G14350, G14940, G23780, G23800, G36460, G43760, G54850

Numbers References:

Numbers 5:15 Numbers 6:14 Numbers 6:17 Numbers 6:18 Numbers 6:20 Numbers 6:20 Numbers 6:21 Numbers 7:3 Numbers 7:10 Numbers 7:11 Numbers 7:12 Numbers 7:13 Numbers 7:17 Numbers 7:19 Numbers 7:23 Numbers 7:25 Numbers 7:25 Numbers 7:29 Numbers 7:31 Numbers 7:35 Numbers 7:37 Numbers 7:41 Numbers 7:43 Numbers 7:47 Numbers 7:49 Numbers 7:53 Numbers 7:55 Numbers 7:59 Numbers 7:61 Numbers 7:65 Numbers 7:67 Numbers 7:71 Numbers 7:73 Numbers 7:77 Numbers 7:79 Numbers 7:83 Numbers 7:88 Numbers 8:11 Numbers 8:15 Numbers 8:21 Numbers 9:7 Numbers 9:13 Numbers 10:10 Numbers 15:3 Numbers 15:4 Numbers 15:5 Numbers 15:8 Numbers 15:19 Numbers 15:20 Numbers 15:21 Numbers 15:25 Numbers 18:8 Numbers 18:9 Numbers 18:11 Numbers 18:11 Numbers 18:18 Numbers 18:19 Numbers 18:24 Numbers 18:28 Numbers 18:29 Numbers 22:40 Numbers 25:2 Numbers 28:2 Numbers 29:39 Numbers 31:29 Numbers 31:50

scepter

Definition:

The term "scepter" refers to an ornamental rod or staff held by a ruler, such as a king.

- Scepters were originally a branch of wood with carved decorations. Later scepters were also made of precious metals such as gold.
- The scepter was a symbol of royalty and authority and also symbolized the honor and dignity associated with a king.
- In the Old Testament, God was described as having a scepter of righteousness because God rules as king over his people.
- An Old Testament prophecy referred to the Messiah as a symbolic scepter that would come from Israel to rule over all nations.
- This could also be translated as "ruling rod" or "ruler's rod" or "king's rod."

(See also: authority, Christ, king, righteous)

Bible References:

- Amos 1:5
- Esther 4:11
- Genesis 49:10
- Hebrews 1:8
- Numbers 21:18
- Psalms 45:6

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2710, H4294, H7626, H8275, G44640

Numbers References:

Numbers 21:18 Numbers 24:17

seed

Definition:

A “seed” is the part of a plant that gets planted in the ground to reproduce more of the same kind of plant.

- The term “seed” can also refer to what a man plants into a woman that allows them to reproduce.
- Related to this, “seed” is also used to refer to a man‘s or woman‘s offspring or descendants.
- This word often has a plural meaning, referring to more than one seed grain or more than one descendant.
- In the parable of the farmer planting seeds, Jesus compared his seeds to the Word of God, which is planted in people’s hearts in order to produce good spiritual fruit.
- The apostle Paul also uses the term “seed” to refer to the Word of God.

Translation Suggestions:

- For the seed of a plant, use a general term that can apply to all plants, if possible.
- When “seed” refers to people who are of the same family line, it may be more clear to use the word “descendant” or “descendants” instead of “seed.” Some languages may have a word that means “children and grandchildren.”
- For a man or woman’s “seed,” consider how the target expresses this in a way that will not offend or embarrass people.

(See also: children, descendant)

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 18:32
- Genesis 1:11
- Jeremiah 2:21
- Matthew 13:8

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H2232, H2233, H3610, H6507, G46150, G46870, G46900, G47010, G47030

Numbers References:

Numbers 5:13 Numbers 5:28 Numbers 6:4 Numbers 11:7 Numbers 14:24 Numbers 16:40 Numbers 18:19 Numbers 20:5 Numbers 24:7 Numbers 25:13

seek, search, look for

Definition:

The term “seek” means to look for something or someone. In the past tense, the verb is “sought.” This term is sometimes used figuratively, meaning to “attempt” or “make an effort” to do something or to ask for something.

- To “seek” or “look for” an opportunity to do something can mean to “try to find a time” to do it.
- To “seek Yahweh” means to “spend time and energy getting to know Yahweh and learning to obey him.”
- To “seek protection” means to “try to find a person or place that will protect you from danger.”
- To “seek justice” means to “make an effort to see that people are treated justly or fairly.”
- To “seek the truth” means to “make an effort to find out what the truth is.”
- To “seek favor” means to “urgently ask for favor” or to “do things to cause someone to help you.”

(See also: just, true)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 10:14
- Acts 17:26-27
- Hebrews 11:6
- Luke 11:9
- Psalms 27:8

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0579, H1156, H1239, H1243, H1245, H1556, H1875, H2470, H2603, H2658, H2664, H3289, H7125, H7592, H7836, H8446, G03270, G15670, G19340, G20520, G22120

Numbers References:

Numbers 10:33 Numbers 16:10 Numbers 35:23

seize, seizure, capture

Definition:

The term “seize” means to take or capture someone or something by force. It can also mean to overpower and control someone.

- When a city was taken by means of military force, the soldiers would seize the valuable property of the people they had conquered.
- When used figuratively, a person can be described as being “seized with fear.” This means that the person was suddenly “overcome by fear.” If a person was “seized with fear” it could also be stated that the person “suddenly became very afraid.”
- In the context of labor pains that “seize” a woman, the meaning is that the pains are sudden and overpowering. This could be translated by saying that the pains “overcome” or “suddenly come upon” the woman.
- This term could also be translated as “take control of” or “suddenly take” or “grab.”
- The expression “seized and slept with her” could be translated as “forced himself on her” or “violated her” or “raped her.” Make sure the translation of this concept is acceptable.

(See: euphemism)

Bible References:

- Acts 16:19-21
- Exodus 15:14
- John 10:37-39
- Luke 8:29
- Matthew 26:48

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0270, H1497, H2388, H3027, H3920, H3947, H4672, H5377, H5860, H6031, H7760, H8610, G07240, G19490, G26380, G29020, G29830, G48150, G48840

Numbers References:

Numbers 21:32 Numbers 31:30 Numbers 32:39 Numbers 32:41 Numbers 32:42

serpent, snake, viper

Definition:

These terms all refer to a kind of reptile that has a long, thin body and large, fanged jaws, and that moves by slithering back and forth across the ground. The term “serpent” usually refers to a large snake and “viper” refers to a type of snake that has venom which it uses to poison its prey.

- This animal is also used figuratively to refer to a person who is evil, especially someone who is deceitful.
- Jesus called the religious leaders “offspring of vipers” because they pretended to be righteous but deceived people and treated them unfairly.
- In the garden of Eden, Satan took the form of a serpent when he talked to Eve and tempted her to disobey God.
- After the serpent tempted Eve to sin, and both Eve and her husband Adam did sin, God cursed the snake, saying that from then on, all snakes would slither along the ground, implying that before then they had had legs.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: curse, deceive, disobey, Eden, evil, prey, Satan, sin, tempt)

Bible References:

- Genesis 3:3
- Genesis 3:4-6
- Genesis 3:12-13
- Mark 16:17-18
- Matthew 3:7
- Matthew 23:33

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0660, H2119, H5175, H6620, H6848, H8314, H8577, G21910, G20620, G37890

Numbers References:

Numbers 21:6 Numbers 21:7 Numbers 21:9 Numbers 21:9

servant, serve, maidservant, young man, young women

Definition:

A “servant” refers to a person who works for (or obeys) another person, either by choice or by force. A servant was under his master’s direction. In the Bible, “servant” and “slave” are mostly interchangeable terms. The term “serve” generally means to do work for someone, and the concept can be applied in a wide variety of contexts.

- In the Bible the words “young man” or “young woman” often mean “servant” or “slave.” This meaning will be discerned from context. One indicator of this situation is if the possessive is used, eg. “her young women” which could be translated as “her servants” or “her slaves.”

Translation Suggestions

- The term “serve” can also be translated as “minister to” or “work for” or “take care of” or “obey,” depending on the context.
- To “serve God” can be translated as to “worship and obey God” or to “do the work that God has commanded.”
- In the Old Testament, God’s prophets and other people who worshiped God were often called his “servants.”
- In the New Testament, people who obeyed God through faith in Christ were often called his “servants.”
- To “serve tables” means to bring food to people who are sitting at tables, or more generally, to “distribute food.”
- In the context of a person serving guests, this term means “care for” or “serve food to” or “provide food for.” When Jesus told the disciples to “serve” the fish to the people, this could be translated as, “distribute” or “hand out” or “give.”
- People who teach others about God are said to serve both God and the ones they are teaching.
- The apostle Paul wrote to the Corinthian Christians about how they used to “serve” the old covenant. This refers to obeying the laws of Moses. Now they “serve” the new covenant. That is, because of Jesus’ sacrifice on the cross, believers in Jesus are enabled by the Holy Spirit to please God and live holy lives.
- Paul talks about their actions in terms of their “service” to either the old or new covenant. This could be translated as “serving” or “obeying” or “devotion to.”
- Often, when a person referred to himself as “your servant” he was showing respect to the person addressed. That person may have had higher social status, or the speaker may be showing humility. It did not mean that the person speaking was an actual servant.

(See also: enslave, works, obey, house, lord)

Bible References:

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **6:1** When Abraham was very old and his son, Isaac, had grown to be a man, Abraham sent one of his **servants** back to the land where his relatives lived to find a wife for his son, Isaac.
- **19:10** Then Elijah prayed, “O Yahweh, God of Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob, show us today that you are the God of Israel and that I am your **servant**.”
- **29:3** “Since the **servant** could not pay the debt, the king said, ‘Sell this man and his family as **slaves** to make payment on his debt.’”
- **35:6** “All my father’s **servants** have plenty to eat, and yet here I am starving.”
- **47:4** The **slave** girl kept yelling as they walked, “These men are servants of the Most High God.”
- **50:4** Jesus also said, “A **servant** is not greater than his master.”

Word Data:

- Strong’s for Servant: H0519, H5288, H5647, H5649, H5650, H5657, H7916, H8198, H8334, G12490, G14010, G14020, G23240, G34070, G34110, G36100, G38160, G49830, G52570

Strong's for Serve: H3547, H4929, H4931, H5647, H5656, H5673, H5975, H6213, H6399, H6402, H6440, H6633, H6635, H7272, H8104, H8120, H8199, H8278, H8334, G12470, G12480, G13980, G14020, G14380, G19830, G20640, G22120, G23230, G29990, G30000, G30090, G43370, G43420, G47540, G50870, G52560

Numbers References:

Numbers 1:50 Numbers 3:7 Numbers 3:8 Numbers 3:31 Numbers 4:14 Numbers 4:19 Numbers 4:23 Numbers 4:24 Numbers 4:26 Numbers 4:30 Numbers 4:35 Numbers 4:37 Numbers 4:39 Numbers 4:41 Numbers 4:43 Numbers 4:47 Numbers 7:5 Numbers 8:11 Numbers 8:15 Numbers 8:19 Numbers 8:22 Numbers 8:25 Numbers 8:26 Numbers 8:26 Numbers 11:11 Numbers 11:27 Numbers 11:28 Numbers 12:7 Numbers 14:24 Numbers 16:9 Numbers 18:4 Numbers 18:6 Numbers 18:7 Numbers 18:21 Numbers 18:23 Numbers 22:18 Numbers 22:22 Numbers 31:49 Numbers 32:4 Numbers 32:5 Numbers 32:25

shame, ashamed, disgrace, humiliate, reproach

Definition:

The term "shame" refers to the painful feeling of being disgraced or humiliated that a person feels when they do something that others consider dishonorable or improper.

- Something that is "shameful" is "improper" or "dishonorable."
- The term "ashamed" describes how a person feels when he has done something improper or dishonorable.
- The term "humiliate" means to cause someone to feel shamed or disgraced, usually publicly. The act of shaming someone is called "humiliation."
- To "reproach" someone means to criticize or disapprove of that person's character or behavior.
- The phrase "put to shame" means to defeat people or expose their actions so that they feel ashamed of themselves. The prophet Isaiah said that those who make and worship idols will be put to shame.
- The term "disgraceful" can be used to describe a sinful act or the person who did it. When a person does something sinful, it can cause him to be in a state of disgrace or dishonor.
- Sometimes a person who is doing good things is treated in a way that causes him disgrace or shame. For example, when Jesus was killed on a cross, this was a disgraceful way to die. Jesus had done nothing wrong to deserve this disgrace.
- When God humbles someone, it means that he is causing a prideful person to experience failure to help him overcome his pride. This is different from humiliating someone, which is often done in order to hurt that person.
- Saying that a person is "above reproach" or "beyond reproach" or "without reproach" means that this person behaves in a God-honoring way and there is little or nothing that could be said in criticism of him.

Translation Suggestions

- Ways to translate “disgrace” could include “shame” or “dishonor.”
- Ways to translate “disgraceful” could include “shameful” or “dishonoring.”
- To “humiliate” could also be translated as to “shame” or to “cause to feel shame” or to “embarrass.”
- Depending on the context, ways to translate “humiliation” could include “shame” or “degrading” or “disgrace.”
- The word “reproach” could also be translated as “accusation” or “shame” or “disgrace.”
- To “reproach” could also be translated as to “rebuke” or to “accuse” or to “criticize,” depending on the context.

(See also: dishonor, accuse, rebuke, false god, humble, Isaiah, worship)

Bible References:

- 1 Peter 3:15-17
- 2 Kings 2:17
- 2 Samuel 13:13
- Luke 20:11
- Mark 8:38
- Mark 12:4-5
- 1 Timothy 3:7
- Genesis 34:7
- Hebrews 11:26
- Lamentations 2:1-2
- Psalms 22:6
- Deuteronomy 21:14
- Ezra 9:5
- Proverbs 25:7-8
- Psalms 6:8-10
- Psalms 123:3
- 1 Timothy 5:7-8
- 1 Timothy 6:13-14
- Jeremiah 15:15-16
- Job 16:9-10
- Proverbs 18:3

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0937, H0954, H0955, H1317, H1322, H1421, H1442, H1984, H2490, H2616, H2617, H2659, H2778, H2781, H2865, H3001, H3637, H3639, H3640, H3971, H5007, H5034, H5039, H6030, H6031, H6172, H6256, H7022, H7034, H7036, H7043, H7511, H7817, H8103, H8213, H8216, H8217, H8589, G01520, G01530, G04100, G04220, G04230, G08080, G08180, G08190, G08210, G17880, G17910, G18700, G26170, G30590, G36790, G36800, G36810, G38560, G50140, G51950, G51960, G54840

Numbers References:

Numbers 12:14

ewe, ram, sheep, sheepfold, sheepshearer, sheepskin

Definition:

A "sheep" is a medium-sized animal with four legs that has wool all over its body. A male sheep is called a "ram." A female sheep is called a "ewe." The plural of "sheep" is also "sheep."

- A baby sheep is called a "lamb."
- The Israelites often used sheep for sacrifices, especially male sheep and young sheep.
- People eat meat from sheep and use their wool to make clothing and other things.
- Sheep are very trusting, weak, and timid. They are easily influenced to wander away. They need a shepherd to lead them, protect them, and provide them with food, water, and shelter.
- In the Bible, people are compared to sheep who have God as their shepherd.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Unknowns)

(See also: Israel, lamb, sacrifice, shepherd)

Bible References:

- Acts 8:32
- Genesis 30:32
- John 2:14
- Luke 15:5
- Mark 6:34
- Matthew 9:36
- Matthew 10:6
- Matthew 12:12
- Matthew 25:33

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **9:12** One day while Moses was taking care of his **sheep**, he saw a bush that was on fire.
- **17:2** David was a shepherd from the town of Bethlehem. At different times while he was watching his father's **sheep**, David had killed both a lion and a bear that had attacked the **sheep**.
- **30:3** To Jesus, these people were like **sheep** without a shepherd.
- **38:8** Jesus said, "All of you will all abandon me tonight. It is written, 'I will strike the shepherd and all the **sheep** will be scattered.'"

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0352, H1494, H1798, H2169, H3104, H3532, H3535, H3733, H3775, H5739, H5763, H6260, H6629, H6792, H7353, H7462, H7716, G41650, G42620, G42630

Numbers References:

Numbers 5:8 Numbers 6:14 Numbers 6:17 Numbers 6:19 Numbers 7:15 Numbers 7:17 Numbers 7:21 Numbers 7:23 Numbers 7:27 Numbers 7:29 Numbers 7:33 Numbers 7:35 Numbers 7:39 Numbers 7:41 Numbers 7:45 Numbers 7:47 Numbers 7:51 Numbers 7:53 Numbers 7:57 Numbers 7:59 Numbers 7:63 Numbers 7:65 Numbers 7:69 Numbers 7:71 Numbers 7:75 Numbers 7:77 Numbers 7:81 Numbers 7:83 Numbers 7:87 Numbers 7:88 Numbers 15:3 Numbers 15:6 Numbers 15:11 Numbers 18:17 Numbers 22:40 Numbers 23:1 Numbers 23:4 Numbers 23:14 Numbers 27:17 Numbers 28:11 Numbers 28:14 Numbers 28:19 Numbers 28:20 Numbers 29:2 Numbers 29:3 Numbers 29:17 Numbers 29:18

shepherd, herder, pastor

Definition:

A “shepherd” is a person who takes care of sheep. In the Old Testament, this word can also refer to a “herder” who takes care of other kinds of domestic livestock such as goats or cattle.

- As a verb, the term “shepherd” means to lead sheep (or other livestock) to places with good food and water, protect them from wild animals, keep them from getting lost and other duties necessary to keep livestock alive and healthy.
- In the Bible, this term is often used figuratively to refer to taking care of the needs of people (not only animals), both physical and spiritual.
- In the Old Testament, God was called the “shepherd” of his people because he took care of them. In the New Testament, Jesus called himself the “good shepherd,” and in other places Jesus is called the “great shepherd” of the Church.
- The term “shepherd” is also used in the New Testament to refer to a person who is a spiritual leader over other believers. The word translated as “pastor” is the same word that is translated as “shepherd.” Elders and overseers are also called shepherds.

Translation Suggestions

- The noun “shepherd” can be translated as “person who takes care of sheep” or “sheep tender” or “sheep caregiver.”
- When referring to someone who cares for livestock other than sheep, the term can be translated as “herder,” “tender of livestock” or “person who takes care of livestock.”
- When used as a verb, the term “shepherd” could be translated as “take care of sheep” or “watch over sheep.”
- In some contexts, the term “shepherd” could be translated as “leader” or “guide” or “caregiver.”
- When used figuratively, the noun “shepherd” could be translated in different ways, including “spiritual shepherd” or “spiritual leader” or “one who is like a shepherd” or “one who cares for his people like a shepherd cares for his sheep” or “one who leads his people like a shepherd guides his sheep” or “one who takes care of God’s sheep.”
- When used figuratively, the verb “shepherd” could be translated as to “take care of” or to “spiritually nourish” or to “guide and teach” or to “lead and take care of (like a shepherd cares for sheep).”

(See also: sheep, livestock, pastor)

Bible References:

- Genesis 13:7
- Genesis 49:24
- Luke 2:9
- Mark 6:34
- Mark 14:26-27
- Matthew 2:6
- Matthew 9:36
- Matthew 25:32
- Matthew 26:31

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **9:11** Moses became a **shepherd** in the wilderness far away from Egypt.to
- **17:2** David was a **shepherd** from the town of Bethlehem. At different times while he was watching his father’s sheep, David had killed both a lion and a bear that had attacked the sheep.
- **23:6** That night, there were some **shepherds** in a nearby field guarding their flocks.
- **23:8** The **shepherds** soon arrived at the place where Jesus was and they found him lying in a feeding trough, just as the angel had told them.
- **30:3** To Jesus, these people were like sheep without a **shepherd**.

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H6629, H7462, H7469, H7473, G07500, G41650, G41660

Numbers References:

Numbers 14:33 Numbers 27:17

silver

Definition:

Silver is a shiny, gray precious metal used to make coins, jewelry, containers, and ornaments.

- The various containers that are made from silver include silver cups and bowls, and other things used for cooking, eating, or serving.
- Silver and gold were used in the building of the tabernacle and the temple. The temple in Jerusalem had containers made of silver.
- In Bible times, a shekel was a unit of weight, and a purchase was often priced at a certain number of shekels of silver. By New Testament times there were silver coins of various weights that were measured in shekels.
- Joseph's brothers sold him as a slave for twenty shekels of silver.
- Judas was paid thirty silver coins for betraying Jesus.
- If your culture does not have silver you could translate this term as "precious metal"

(See also: tabernacle, temple)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 18:9-11
- 1 Samuel 2:36
- 2 Kings 25:13-15
- Acts 3:6
- Matthew 26:15

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3701, H3702, H7192, G06930, G06940, G06950, G06960, G14060

Numbers References:

Numbers 3:48 Numbers 3:49 Numbers 3:50
Numbers 3:51 Numbers 7:13 Numbers 7:19
Numbers 7:25 Numbers 7:31 Numbers 7:37
Numbers 7:43 Numbers 7:49 Numbers 7:49
Numbers 7:55 Numbers 7:61 Numbers 7:67
Numbers 7:73 Numbers 7:79 Numbers 7:84
Numbers 7:85 Numbers 10:2 Numbers 18:16
Numbers 22:18 Numbers 24:13

sin offering, purification offering

Definition:

The “sin offering” was one of several sacrifices that God required the Israelites to offer.

- This offering involved sacrificing a bull, burning its blood and fat on the altar, and taking the rest of the animal’s body and burning it on the ground outside the Israelite camp.
- The complete burning up of this animal sacrifice shows how holy God is and how terrible sin is.
- The Bible teaches that in order for there to be a cleansing from sin, blood must be shed to pay the cost for the sin that was committed.
- Animal sacrifices could not permanently bring about forgiveness of sin.
- Jesus’ death on the cross paid the penalty for sin, for all time. He was the perfect sin offering.

(See also: altar, cow, forgive, sacrifice, sin)

Bible References:

- 2 Chronicles 29:20-21
- Exodus 29:35-37
- Ezekiel 44:25-27
- Leviticus 5:11
- Numbers 7:15-17

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H2401, H2402, H2398, H2403

Numbers References:

Numbers 6:11 Numbers 6:14 Numbers 7:16 Numbers 7:22 Numbers 7:28 Numbers 7:34 Numbers 7:40 Numbers 7:46 Numbers 7:52 Numbers 7:58 Numbers 7:64 Numbers 7:70 Numbers 7:76 Numbers 7:82 Numbers 7:87 Numbers 8:8 Numbers 15:24 Numbers 15:25 Numbers 15:27 Numbers 18:9 Numbers 19:17 Numbers 28:15 Numbers 28:22 Numbers 29:5 Numbers 29:11 Numbers 29:11 Numbers 29:19

slay, slain, slaughter, kill, murder

Definition:

To “slay” a person or animal means to kill it. Often it means to kill it in a forceful or violent way. If a man has killed an animal he has “slain” it.

- When referring to an animal or to a large number of people, the term “slaughter” is another term that is often used.
- An act of slaughtering is also called a “slaughter.”
- The phrase “the slain” could also be translated as “the slain people” or “the people who were killed.”

(See also: slaughter)

Bible References:

- Ezekiel 28:23
- Isaiah 26:21

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H2026, H2076, H2491, H2717, H2763, H2873, H2874, H4191, H4194, H5221, H6991, H6992, H7523, H7819, G03370, G06150, G13150, G23800, G26950, G49680, G49690, G54070

Numbers References:

Numbers 11:15 Numbers 11:15 Numbers 14:15 Numbers 16:13 Numbers 16:41 Numbers 19:16 Numbers 19:18 Numbers 22:29 Numbers 22:33 Numbers 23:24 Numbers 25:5 Numbers 31:8 Numbers 31:8 Numbers 31:8 Numbers 31:17 Numbers 31:17 Numbers 31:19 Numbers 31:19 Numbers 35:6 Numbers 35:11 Numbers 35:12 Numbers 35:16 Numbers 35:16 Numbers 35:17 Numbers 35:17 Numbers 35:19 Numbers 35:19 Numbers 35:19 Numbers 35:21 Numbers 35:21 Numbers 35:21 Numbers 35:25 Numbers 35:26 Numbers 35:27 Numbers 35:27 Numbers 35:30 Numbers 35:30 Numbers 35:31

slaughter, slaughtered

Definition:

The term “slaughter” refers to killing a large number of animals or people, or to killing in a violent way. It can also refer to killing an animal for the purpose of eating it. The act of slaughtering is also called “slaughter.”

- When Abraham received three visitors at his tent in the desert, he ordered his servants to slaughter and cook a calf for his guests.
- The prophet Ezekiel prophesied that God would send his angel to slaughter all those who would not follow His word.
- 1 Samuel records a great slaughter in which 30,000 Israelites were killed by their enemies because of disobedience to God.
- “Weapons of slaughter” could be translated as “weapons for killing.”
- The expression “the slaughter was very great” could be translated as “a large number were killed” or “the number of deaths was very great” or “a terribly high number of people died.”
- Other ways to translate “slaughter” could include “kill” or “slay” or “killing.”

(See also: angel, cow, disobey, Ezekiel, servant, slay)

Bible References:

- Ezekiel 21:10-11
- Hebrews 7:1
- Isaiah 34:2
- Jeremiah 25:34

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H2026, H2027, H2028, H2076, H2491, H2873, H2874, H2878, H4046, H4293, H4347, H4660, H5221, H6993, H7524, H7819, H7821, G28710, G49670, G49690

Numbers References:

Numbers 11:22 Numbers 14:16 Numbers 19:3

snow

Definition:

The term “snow” refers to white flakes of frozen water that can fall from clouds in places where the air temperature is cold.

- Snow falls in places of higher elevation in Israel, but does not always stay on the ground very long before melting. The peaks of mountains tend to have snow that lasts longer. One example of a place mentioned in the Bible as having snow is Mount Lebanon.
- Something that is very white often has its color compared to the color of snow. For example, in the book of Revelation Jesus’ clothing and hair were described as being “white as snow.”
- The whiteness of snow also symbolizes purity and cleanliness. For example, the statement that our “sins will be as white as snow” means that God will completely cleanse his people from their sins.
- Some languages might refer to snow as “frozen rain” or “flakes of ice” or “frozen flakes.”
- “Snow water” refers to the water that comes from melted snow.

(See also: How to Translate Unknowns)

(Translation suggestions: Translate Names)

(See also: Lebanon, pure)

Bible References:

- Exodus 4:6
- Job 37:4-6
- Matthew 28:3
- Psalms 147:16
- Revelation 1:14

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H7949, H7950, H8517, G55100

Numbers References:

Numbers 12:10

sow, sower, plant, planted, replanted, transplanted

Definition:

To “sow” means to put seeds on top of or in the ground in order to grow plants. A “sower” is a person who sows or plants seeds. A “plant” is generally something that grows and is attached to the ground.

- One method of sowing or planting seeds during biblical times was to take handfuls of seeds and scatter them on the ground.
- Farmers would often plow the ground on which they had sown seeds after they had sown the seeds. The reason farmers would plow the ground after they had sown the seed is so that the seed would be covered with soil.
- Sometimes farmers may have plowed the field that they sowed seeds in both before and after sowing seeds.

Translations Suggestions

- The term to “sow” could also be translated as to “plant.” Make sure the word or phrase you use to translate this term refers to, or can include, planting seeds by scattering them because this is the method of sowing that Jesus was referring to in his parable in Matthew 13:3-23, Mark 4:2-20, and Luke 8:4-8 where he describes a sower who sowed seeds.
- Other ways to translate “sower” could include “planter” or “farmer” or “person who plants seeds.”
- In English, “sow” is only used for planting seeds, but the English word “plant” can be used for planting seeds as well as larger things, such as trees. Other languages may also use different words, depending on what is being planted.

(See also: harvest)

Bible References:

- Luke 8:5
- Matthew 6:25-26
- Matthew 13:4
- Matthew 13:19
- Matthew 25:24

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H2221, H2232, H2233, H2236, H4218, H4302, H5193, H7971, H8362, G46870, G47030, G54520

Numbers References:

Numbers 24:6

spear, spearmen

Definition:

A spear is a weapon with a long wooden handle and sharp metal blade on one end that is thrown a long distance.

- Spears were commonly used for war in biblical times. They are sometimes still used in present-day conflicts between certain people groups.
- A spear was used by a Roman soldier to pierce the side of Jesus while he hung on the cross.
- Sometimes people throw spears to catch fish or other prey to eat.
- Similar weapons are the "javelin" or "lance."
- Make sure that the translation of "spear" is different from the translation of "sword," which is a weapon that is used for thrusting or stabbing, not throwing. Also, a sword has a long blade with a handle, while a spear has a small blade on the end of a long shaft.

(See also: prey, Rome, sword, warrior)

Bible References:

- 1 Samuel 13:19-21
- 2 Samuel 21:19
- Nehemiah 4:12-14
- Psalm 35:3

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1265, H2595, H3591, H6767, H7013, H7420, G30570

Numbers References:

Numbers 25:7

splendor

Definition:

The term "splendor" refers to the extreme beauty and elegance that is often associated with wealth and a magnificent appearance.

- Often splendor is used to describe the wealth that a king has, or how he looks in his expensive, beautiful finery.
- The word "splendor" can also be used to describe the beauty of trees, mountains, and other things that God has created.
- Certain cities are said to have splendor because of o their natural resources, elaborate buildings and roads, and the wealth of their people, which includes rich clothing, gold, and silver.
- Depending on the context, this word could be translated as "magnificent beauty" or "amazing majesty" or "kingly greatness."

(See also: glory, king, majesty)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 16:27
- Exodus 28:1-3
- Ezekiel 28:7
- Luke 4:7
- Psalms 89:44-45
- Revelation 21:26-27

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1925, H1926, H1927, H1935, H2091, H2122, H2892, H3314, H3519, H6643, H7613, H8597

Numbers References:

Numbers 27:20

staff, clubs

Definition:

A staff is a long wooden stick or rod, often used as a walking stick.

- When Jacob was old, he used a staff to help him walk.
- God turned Moses' staff into a snake to show his power to Pharaoh.
- Shepherds also used a staff to help guide their sheep, or to rescue the sheep when they fell or wandered.
- The shepherd's staff had a hook on the end, so it differed from the shepherd's rod, which was straight and was used to kill wild animals that were trying to attack the sheep.

(See also: Pharaoh, power, sheep, shepherd)

Bible References:

- Exodus 4:1-3
- Exodus 7:9
- Luke 9:3
- Mark 6:7-9
- Matthew 10:8-10
- Matthew 27:29

Word Data:

- Strong's: H4132, H4294, H4731, H4938, H6086, H6418, H7626, G25630, G35860, G44640

Numbers References:

Numbers 17:2 Numbers 17:5 Numbers 17:6 Numbers 17:6 Numbers 17:7 Numbers 17:8 Numbers 17:9 Numbers 17:9 Numbers 17:10 Numbers 20:8 Numbers 20:11 Numbers 21:18

statute

Definition:

A statute is a specific written law that provides guidance for people to live by.

- The term "statute" is similar in meaning to "ordinance" and "command" and "law" and "decree." All these terms involve instructions and requirements that God gives to his people or rulers give to their people.
- King David said that he delighted himself in Yahweh's statutes.
- The term "statute" could also be translated as "specific command" or "special decree."

(See also: command, decree, law, ordinance, Yahweh)

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 11:11-13
- Deuteronomy 6:20-23
- Ezekiel 33:15
- Numbers 19:2

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2706, H2708, H7010, G13450

Numbers References:

Numbers 9:3 Numbers 9:12 Numbers 9:14 Numbers 9:14 Numbers 10:8 Numbers 15:15 Numbers 15:15 Numbers 15:16 Numbers 18:8 Numbers 18:11 Numbers 18:19 Numbers 18:23 Numbers 19:2 Numbers 19:10 Numbers 19:21 Numbers 27:11 Numbers 30:16 Numbers 35:29

strife, disputes, quarrel, arguing, conflict

Definition:

The term “strife” refers to physical or emotional conflict between people.

- A person who causes strife does things that result in strong disagreements between people and in hurt feelings.
- Sometimes the use of the word “strife” implies that strong emotions are involved, such as anger or bitterness.
- Other ways to translate this term could include “disagreement” or “dispute” or “conflict.”

Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 3:3-5
- Habakkuk 1:3
- Philippians 1:17
- Proverbs 17:1
- Psalms 55:8-9
- Romans 13:13

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1777, H1779, H4066, H4090, H4683, H4808, H7379, H7701, G04850, G20520, G20540, G30550, G31630, G53790

Numbers References:

Numbers 27:14

stronghold, fortification, fortress, citadel

Definition:

The terms “stronghold” and “fortress” both refer to places that are well protected against an attack by enemy soldiers. A “citadel” is a fortress inside a city. The term “fortified” describes a city or other place that has been made safe from attack.

- Often, strongholds and fortresses were manmade structures with defensive walls. They could also have been places with natural protective barriers such as rocky cliffs or high mountains.
- People fortified strongholds by building thick walls or other structures that made it difficult for an enemy to break through.
- “Stronghold” or “fortress” could be translated as “securely strong place” or “strongly protected place.”
- The term “fortified city” could be translated as “securely protected city” or “strongly built city.”
- Another figurative meaning for the term “stronghold” referred to something that someone wrongly trusted in for security, such as a false god or other thing that was worshiped instead of Yahweh. This could be translated as “false strongholds.”
- This term should be translated differently from “refuge,” which emphasizes safety more than the concept of being fortified.

(See also: false god, false god, refuge, Yahweh)

Bible References:

- 2 Corinthians 10:4
- 2 Kings 8:10-12
- 2 Samuel 5:8-10
- Acts 21:35
- Habakkuk 1:10-11

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0490, H0553, H0759, H1001, H1002, H1003, H1219, H1225, H2388, H4013, H4026, H4581, H4526, H4679, H4685, H4686, H4692, H4694, H4869, H5794, H5797, H5800, H6438, H6877, H7682, G37940, G39250

Numbers References:

Numbers 13:19 Numbers 32:17

sweep

Definition:

To "sweep" usually means to remove dirt by making broad, quick movements with a broom or brush. "Swept" is the past tense of "sweep." These words are also used figuratively.

- The term "sweep" is used figuratively to describe how an army attacks with swift, decisive, wide-reaching movements.
- For example, Isaiah prophesied that the Assyrians would "sweep through" the Kingdom of Judah. This means they would destroy Judah and capture its people.
- The term "sweep" can also be used to describe the manner in which rapidly flowing water pushes things and forces them away.
- When overwhelming, difficult things are happening to a person, it can be said that they are "sweeping over" him.

(See also: Assyria, Isaiah, Judah, prophet)

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 16:3
- Daniel 11:40-41
- Genesis 18:24
- Proverbs 21:7-8
- Psalms 90:5

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0622, H0857, H1640, H2498, H2894, H3261, H5500, H5595, H7857, G42160, G45630, G49510

Numbers References:

Numbers 32:14

sword, swordsmen

Definition:

A sword is a flat-bladed metal weapon used to cut or stab. It has a handle and a long, pointed blade with a very sharp cutting edge.

- In ancient times the length of a sword's blade was about 60 to 91 centimeters.
- Some swords have two sharp edges and are called "double-edged" or "two-edged" swords.
- Jesus' disciples had swords for self defense. With his sword, Peter cut off the ear of the high priest's servant.
- Both John the Baptist and the apostle James were beheaded with swords.

Translation Suggestions

- A sword is used as a metaphor for God's word. God's teachings in the Bible exposed people's innermost thoughts and convicted them of their sin. In a similar way, a sword cuts deeply, causing pain. (See: Metaphor)
- One way to translate this figurative use would be, "God's word is like a sword, which cuts deeply and exposes sin."
- Another figurative use of this term occurred in the book of Psalms, where the tongue or speech of a person was compared to a sword, which can injure people. This could be translated as "the tongue is like a sword that can badly injure someone."
- If swords are not known in your culture, this word could be translated with the name of another long-bladed weapon that is used to cut or stab.
- A sword could also be described as a "sharp weapon" or "long knife." Some translations could include a picture of a sword.

(See also: How to Translate Unknowns)

(See also: James (brother of Jesus), John (the Baptist), tongue, word of God)

Bible References:

- Acts 12:2
- Genesis 27:40
- Genesis 34:25
- Luke 2:33-35
- Luke 21:24
- Matthew 10:34
- Matthew 26:55
- Revelation 1:16

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0019, H1300, H2719, H4380, H6609, H7524, H7973, G31620, G45010

Numbers References:

Numbers 14:3 Numbers 14:43 Numbers 19:16 Numbers 20:18 Numbers 21:24 Numbers 22:23 Numbers 22:29 Numbers 22:31 Numbers 31:8

tent, tentmaker

Definition:

A tent is a portable shelter made of sturdy fabric that is draped over a structure of poles and attached to them.

- Tents can be small, with just enough space for a few people to sleep in, or they can be very large, with space for an entire family to sleep, cook, and live in.
- For many people, tents are used as permanent dwelling places. For example, during most of the time that Abraham's family lived in the land of Canaan, they dwelled in large tents constructed from sturdy cloth made of goat hair.
- The Israelites also lived in tents during their forty-year wanderings through the desert of Sinai.
- The tabernacle building was a kind of very large tent, with thick walls made of cloth curtains.
- When the apostle Paul traveled to different cities to share the gospel, he supported himself by making tents.
- The term "tents" is sometimes used figuratively to refer generally to where people live. This could also be translated as "homes" or "dwellings" or "houses" or even "bodies." (See: synecdoche)

(See also: Abraham, Canaan, curtain, Paul, Sinai, tabernacle, tent of meeting)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 5:10
- Daniel 11:45
- Exodus 16:18
- Genesis 12:9

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0167, H0168, H2583, H3407, H6898

Numbers References:

Numbers 9:15 Numbers 9:17 Numbers 11:10 Numbers 11:24 Numbers 11:26 Numbers 12:5 Numbers 12:10 Numbers 16:24 Numbers 16:26 Numbers 16:27 Numbers 17:8 Numbers 18:2 Numbers 18:3 Numbers 18:4 Numbers 19:14 Numbers 19:18 Numbers 24:5 Numbers 24:5 Numbers 25:8

tenth, tithe

Definition:

The terms “tenth” and “tithe” refer to “ten percent” or “one-out-of-ten portion” of one’s money, crops, livestock, or other possessions, which is given to God.

- In the Old Testament, God instructed the Israelites to set aside a tenth of their belongings to give as an offering of thanksgiving to him.
- This offering was used to support the Levite tribe of Israel who served the Israelites as priests and caretakers of the tabernacle and later, the temple.
- In the New Testament, God does not require giving a tithe, but instead he instructs believers to generously and cheerfully help people in need and support the work of Christian ministry.
- This could also be translated as “one-tenth” or “one out of ten.”

(See also: believe, Israel, Levite, livestock, Melchizedek, minister, sacrifice, tabernacle, temple)

Bible References:

- Genesis 14:19-20
- Genesis 28:20-22
- Hebrews 7:4-6
- Isaiah 6:13
- Luke 11:42
- Luke 18:11-12
- Matthew 23:23-24

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H4643, H6237, H6241, G05860, G11810, G11830

Numbers References:

Numbers 5:15 Numbers 15:4 Numbers 15:6 Numbers 15:9 Numbers 18:21 Numbers 18:24 Numbers 18:26 Numbers 18:26 Numbers 18:28 Numbers 28:5 Numbers 28:9 Numbers 28:13 Numbers 28:13 Numbers 28:20 Numbers 28:20 Numbers 28:21 Numbers 28:21 Numbers 29:3 Numbers 29:3 Numbers 29:4

tent of meeting

Definition:

The term “tent of meeting” refers to a tent which was a temporary place where God met with Moses before the tabernacle was built.

- The tent of meeting was set up outside the camp of the Israelites.
- When Moses went into the tent of meeting to meet with God, a pillar of cloud would stand at the entrance to the tent as a sign of God’s presence there.
- After the Israelites built the tabernacle, the temporary tent was no longer needed and the term “tent of meeting” was sometimes used to refer to the tabernacle.

(See also: Israel, Moses, pillar, tabernacle, tent)

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 2:28-29
- Joshua 19:51
- Leviticus 1:2
- Numbers 4:31-32

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **13:8** God gave the Israelites a detailed description of a tent he wanted them to make. It was called the **Tent of Meeting**, and it had two rooms, separated by a large curtain.
- **13:9** Anyone who disobeyed God’s law could bring an animal to the altar in front of the **Tent of Meeting** as a sacrifice to God.
- **14:8** God was very angry and came to the **Tent of Meeting**.
- **18:2** Instead of at the **Tent of Meeting**, people now worshiped God and offered sacrifices to him at the Temple.

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0168, H4150

Numbers References:

Numbers 1:1 Numbers 2:2 Numbers 2:17 Numbers 3:7 Numbers 3:8 Numbers 3:25 Numbers 3:25 Numbers 3:38 Numbers 4:3 Numbers 4:4 Numbers 4:15 Numbers 4:23 Numbers 4:25 Numbers 4:30 Numbers 4:31 Numbers 4:33 Numbers 4:35 Numbers 4:37 Numbers 4:39 Numbers 4:41 Numbers 4:43 Numbers 4:47 Numbers 6:10 Numbers 6:13 Numbers 6:18 Numbers 7:5 Numbers 7:89 Numbers 8:15 Numbers 8:19 Numbers 8:22 Numbers 8:24 Numbers 8:26 Numbers 10:3 Numbers 11:16 Numbers 14:10 Numbers 16:18 Numbers 16:19 Numbers 16:42 Numbers 16:43 Numbers 16:50 Numbers 17:4 Numbers 18:4 Numbers 18:6 Numbers 18:21 Numbers 18:22 Numbers 18:23 Numbers 18:31 Numbers 19:4 Numbers 20:6 Numbers 25:6 Numbers 27:2 Numbers 31:54

terror, terrorize, terrify, dread, panic

Definition:

The term “terror” refers to a feeling of extreme or intense fear. To “terrify” someone means to cause that person to feel very afraid.

- A “terror” is something or someone that causes great fear or dread. An example of a terror could be an attacking enemy army or a plague or disease that is widespread, killing many people.
- These terrors can be described as “terrifying.” This term could be translated as “fear-causing” or “terror-producing.”
- The judgment of God will someday cause terror in unrepentant people who reject his grace.
- The “terror of Yahweh” could be translated as “the terrifying presence of Yahweh” or “the dreaded judgment of Yahweh” or “when Yahweh causes great fear.”
- Ways to translate “terror” could also include “extreme fear” or “deep dread.”

(See also: adversary, fear, judge, plague, Yahweh)

Bible References:

- Deuteronomy 2:25
- Exodus 14:10
- Luke 21:9
- Mark 6:48-50

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0367, H0926, H0928, H1091, H1161, H1204, H1205, H1763, H2111, H2113, H2189, H2731, H2847, H2851, H2865, H3372, H3707, H4032, H4172, H4288, H4637, H6184, H6206, H6343, H6973, G16290, G16300, G22580, G44220, G44260, G54010

Numbers References:

Numbers 22:3

thorn, thorn bush, thistle

Definition:

Thorn bushes and thistles are plants that have prickly branches or flowers. These plants do not produce fruit or anything else that is useful.

- A “thorn” is a hard, sharp growth on the branch or stem of a plant. A “thornbush” is a type of small tree or shrub that has many thorns on its branches.
- A “thistle” is a plant with prickly stems and leaves. Often the flowers are purple.
- Thorn and thistle plants multiply quickly and can cause nearby plants or crops to not be able to grow. This is a picture of how sin keeps a person from producing good spiritual fruit.
- A crown made of twisted thorn branches was placed on Jesus’ head before he was crucified.
- If possible, these terms should be translated by the names of two different plants or bushes that are known in the language area.

(See also: crown, fruit, spirit)

Bible References:

- Hebrews 6:7-8
- Matthew 13:7
- Matthew 13:22
- Numbers 33:55

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0329, H1863, H2312, H2336, H4534, H5285, H5518, H5544, H6791, H6796, H6975, H7063, H7898, G01730, G01740, G46470, G51460

Numbers References:

Numbers 33:55

thresh

Definition:

The terms “thresh” and “threshing” refer to the first part of the process of separating grain from the rest of the plant.

- Threshing a crop loosens the grain from the stalk. Afterwards the grain is “winnowed” to completely separate the seed from all unwanted materials, leaving only the part the grain that can be eaten.
- In Bible times, a “threshing floor” was a large flat rock or an area of packed-down dirt, giving a hard, level surface to crush the grain stalks and remove the grain.
- A “threshing cart” or “threshing wheel” was sometimes used to crush the grain and help separate it from the straw and chaff.
- A “threshing sledge” or “threshing board” was also used for separating grain. It was made of wooden boards that had sharp metal spikes on the end.

(See also: chaff, grain, winnow)

Bible References:

- 2 Chronicles 3:1-3
- 2 Kings 13:7
- 2 Samuel 24:16
- Daniel 2:35
- Luke 3:17
- Matthew 3:12
- Ruth 3:1-2

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0212, H4173, H1637, H1758, H1786, H1869, H2251, G02480

Numbers References:

Numbers 15:20 Numbers 18:27 Numbers 18:30

grave, gravedigger, tomb, burial place

Definition:

The terms “tomb” and “grave” refer to a place where people put the body of a person who has died. A “burial place” is a more general term that also refers to this.

- The Jews sometimes used natural caves as tombs, and sometimes they dug caves into rock in the side of a hill.
- In New Testament times, it was common to roll a large, heavy stone in front of the opening of a tomb in order to close it.
- If the target language the word for a tomb can only refer to a hole in which the body is placed below the ground, other ways to translate this could include “cave” or “hole in the side of a hill.”
- The phrase “the grave” is often used generally and figuratively to refer to the condition of being dead or a place where the souls of dead people are.

(See also: bury, death)

Bible References:

- Acts 2:29-31
- Genesis 23:6
- Genesis 50:5
- John 19:41
- Luke 23:53
- Mark 5:1-2
- Matthew 27:53
- Romans 3:13

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **32:4** The man lived among the **tombs** in the area.
- **37:6** Jesus asked them, “Where have you put Lazarus?” They told him, “In the **tomb**. Come and see.”
- **37:7** The **tomb** was a cave with a stone rolled in front of its opening.
- **40:9** Then Joseph and Nicodemus, two Jewish leaders who believed Jesus was the Messiah, asked Pilate for Jesus’ body. They wrapped his body in cloth and placed it in a **tomb** cut out of rock. Then they rolled a large stone in front the **tomb** to block the opening.
- **41:4** He (the angel) rolled away the stone that was covering the entrance to the **tomb** and sat on it. The soldiers guarding the **tomb** were terrified and fell to the ground like dead men.
- **41:5** When the women arrived at the **tomb**, the angel told them, “Do not be afraid. Jesus is not here. He has risen from the dead, just like he said he would! Look in the **tomb** and see.” The women looked into the **tomb** and saw where Jesus’ body had been laid. His body was not there!

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1430, H6900, H6913, H7585, H7845, G34180, G34190, G50280

Numbers References:

Numbers 19:16 Numbers 19:18

tribe, tribal, tribesmen

Definition:

A tribe is a group of people who are descended from a common ancestor.

- People from the same tribe usually also share a common language and culture.
- In the Old Testament, God divided the people of Israel into twelve tribes. Each tribe was descended from a son or grandson of Jacob.
- A tribe is smaller than a nation, but larger than a clan.

(See also: clan, nation, people group, twelve tribes of Israel)

Bible References:

- 1 Samuel 10:19
- 2 Kings 17:16-18
- Genesis 25:16
- Genesis 49:17
- Luke 2:36-38

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0523, H4294, H7625, H7626, G14290, G54430

Numbers References:

Numbers 1:4 Numbers 1:16 Numbers 1:47 Numbers 1:49 Numbers 2:5 Numbers 2:7 Numbers 2:12 Numbers 2:14 Numbers 2:20 Numbers 2:22 Numbers 2:27 Numbers 2:29 Numbers 3:6 Numbers 4:18 Numbers 7:2 Numbers 7:12 Numbers 13:2 Numbers 13:4 Numbers 13:8 Numbers 13:11 Numbers 13:11 Numbers 18:2 Numbers 18:2 Numbers 24:2 Numbers 26:55 Numbers 30:1 Numbers 31:4 Numbers 31:4 Numbers 31:4 Numbers 31:5 Numbers 31:6 Numbers 32:28 Numbers 32:33 Numbers 33:54 Numbers 34:13 Numbers 34:13 Numbers 34:14 Numbers 34:14 Numbers 34:14 Numbers 34:15 Numbers 34:15 Numbers 34:18 Numbers 34:19 Numbers 34:28 Numbers 36:3 Numbers 36:3 Numbers 36:4 Numbers 36:5 Numbers 36:6 Numbers 36:7 Numbers 36:7 Numbers 36:8 Numbers 36:8 Numbers 36:9 Numbers 36:12

tribulation, distress, distresses, trouble

Definition:

The term "tribulation" refers to a time of hardship, suffering, and distress.

- It is explained in the New Testament that Christians will endure times of persecution and other kinds of tribulation because many people in this world are opposed to Jesus' teachings.
- The term "tribulation" could also be translated as "time of great suffering" or "deep distress" or "severe difficulties."

(See also: earth, teach, wrath)

Bible References:

- Mark 4:17
- Mark 13:19
- Matthew 13:20-21
- Matthew 24:9
- Matthew 24:29
- Romans 2:9

Word Data:

- Strong's: H6869, G23470, G44230

Numbers References:

Numbers 23:21

tribute, contribution

Definition:

The term “tribute” refers to a gift from one ruler to another ruler, for the purpose of protection and for good relations between their nations. A tribute can also be a payment that a ruler or government requires from the people, such as a toll or tax.

- In Bible times, traveling kings or rulers sometimes paid a tribute to the king of the region they were traveling through to make sure they would be protected and safe.
- Often the tribute would include things besides money, such as foods, spices, rich clothing, and expensive metals such as gold.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, “tribute” could be translated as “official gifts” or “special tax” or “required payment.”

(See also: gold, king, ruler, tax)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 18:1-2
- 2 Chronicles 9:22-24
- 2 Kings 17:3
- Luke 23:2

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1093, H4061, H4503, H4530, H4853, H6066, H7862, G54110

Numbers References:

Numbers 5:9 Numbers 6:20 Numbers 15:20 Numbers 18:26 Numbers 18:27

trouble, disturb, stir up, distress, hardship, calamity

Definition:

A “trouble” is an experience in life that is very difficult and distressing. To “trouble” someone means to “bother” that person or to cause him distress. To be “troubled” means to feel upset or distressed about something.

- Troubles can be physical, emotional, or spiritual things that hurt a person.
- In the Bible, often troubles are times of testing that God uses to help believers mature and grow in their faith.
- The Old Testament use of “trouble” also referred to judgment that came on people groups who were immoral and rejected God.

Translation Suggestions

- The term “trouble” or “troubles” could also be translated as “danger” or “painful things that happen” or “persecution” or “difficult experiences” or “distress.”
- The term “troubled” could be translated with a word or phrase that means “undergoing distress” or “feeling terrible distress” or “worried” or “anxious” or “distressed” or “terrified” or “disturbed.”
- “Do not trouble her” could also be translated as “do not bother her” or “do not criticize her.”
- The phrase “day of trouble” or “times of trouble” could also be translated as “when you experience distress” or “when difficult things happen to you” or “when God causes distressing things to happen.”
- Ways to translate “make trouble” or “bring trouble” could include “cause distressing things to happen” or “cause difficulties” or “make them experience very difficult things.”

(See also: afflict, persecute)

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 18:18-19
- 2 Chronicles 25:19
- Luke 24:38

- Matthew 24:6
- Matthew 26:36-38

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0205, H0926, H0927, H1204, H1607, H1644, H1804, H2000, H4103, H5916, H5999, H6031, H6040, H6470, H6696, H6862, H6869, H6887, H7264, H7267, H7451, H7489, H8513, G03870, G16130, G17760, G23460, G23470, G23500, G23600, G28730, G36360, G39260, G39300, G39860, G44230, G46600, G50150, G51820

Numbers References:

Numbers 20:14

trumpet, trumpeter

Definition:

The term "trumpet" refers to an instrument for producing music or for calling people to gather together for an announcement or meeting.

- A trumpet was commonly made from either metal, seashell, or an animal horn.
- Trumpets were most commonly blown to call people to come together for battle, and for Israel's public assemblies.
- The book of Revelation describes a scene in the end times in which angels blow their trumpets to signal the outpouring of the wrath of God on the earth.

(See also: angel, assembly, earth, horn, Israel, wrath)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 13:7-8
- 2 Kings 9:13
- Exodus 19:12-13
- Hebrews 12:19
- Matthew 6:2
- Matthew 24:31

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2689, H2690, H3104, H7782, H8619, H8643, G45360, G45370, G45380

Numbers References:

Numbers 10:2 Numbers 10:8 Numbers 10:9 Numbers 10:10 Numbers 31:6

veil, veiled, unveiled

Definition:

The term “veil” usually refers to a thin piece of cloth that is used as a head covering, to fully or partially cover the head or face.

- Moses covered his face with a veil after he had been in the presence of Yahweh, so that the brightness of his face would be hidden from the people.
- In the Bible, women wore a veil to cover their head, and often their face as well, when they were in public or in the presence of men.
- The veils that women in the Bible wore over their face may have been made of thin material which could be partly seen through and may have only covered part of the face so that the women’s eyes were not covered.
- The verb to “veil” means to cover something with a veil.
- In some English versions, the word “veil” is used to refer to the thick curtain that covered the entrance into the most holy place. But “curtain” is a better term in that context, since it refers to a heavy, thick piece of cloth.

Translation Suggestions

- The term “veil” could also be translated as “thin cloth covering” or “cloth covering” or “head covering” or “head covering.”
- In some cultures, there may already be a term for a veil for women. It may be necessary to find a different word when it is used for Moses.

(See also: Moses)

Bible References:

- 2 Corinthians 3:12-13
- 2 Corinthians 3:16
- Ezekiel 13:18
- Isaiah 47:1-2
- Song of Songs 4:3

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H4304, H4533, H4555, H6777, H6809, H7196, H7479, G03430, G25710, G25720

Numbers References:

Numbers 4:5 Numbers 18:7

vine

Definition:

The term “vine” refers to a plant that grows by trailing along the ground or by climbing trees and other structures. The word “vine” in the Bible is used only of fruit-bearing vines and usually refers to grape vines.

- In the Bible, the word “vine” almost always means “grapevine.”
- The branches of the grapevine are attached to the main stem which gives them water and other nutrients so that they can grow.
- Jesus called himself the “vine” and called his people the “branches.” In this context, the word “vine” could also be translated as “grapevine stem” or “grape plant stem.” (See: Metaphor)

(See also: grape, vineyard)

Bible References:

- Genesis 40:9
- Genesis 49:11
- John 15:1
- Luke 22:18
- Mark 12:3
- Matthew 21:35-37

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H5139, H1612, H8321, G02880, G02900, G10090, G10920

Numbers References:

Numbers 6:4 Numbers 20:5

vineyard

Definition:

A vineyard is a large garden area where grapevines are grown and grapes are cultivated.

- A vineyard often has a wall around it to protect the fruit from thieves and animals.
- God compared the people of Israel to a vineyard that did not bear good fruit. (See: Metaphor)
- Vineyard could be also translated as “grapevine garden” or “grape plantation.”

(See also: grape, Israel, vine)

Bible References:

- Genesis 9:20-21
- Luke 13:6
- Luke 20:15
- Matthew 20:2
- Matthew 21:40-41

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1612, H3754, H3755, H8284, G02900

Numbers References:

Numbers 16:14 Numbers 20:17 Numbers 21:22 Numbers 22:24

vision, envision

Definition:

The term “vision” refers to something that a person sees. It especially refers to something unusual or supernatural that God shows people in order to give them a message.

- Usually, visions are seen while the person is awake. However, sometimes a vision is something a person sees in a dream while asleep.
- God sends visions to tell people something that is very important. For example, Peter was shown a vision to tell him that God wanted him to welcome Gentiles.

Translation Suggestion

- The phrase “saw a vision” could be translated as “saw something unusual from God” or “God showed him something special.”
- Some languages may not have separate words for “vision” and “dream.” So a sentence such as “Daniel had dreams and visions in his mind” could be translated as something like “Daniel was dreaming while asleep and God caused him to see unusual things.”

(See also: dream)

Bible References:

- Acts 9:10-12
- Acts 10:3-6
- Acts 10:11
- Acts 12:9-10
- Luke 1:22
- Luke 24:23
- Matthew 17:9-10

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H2376, H2377, H2378, H2380, H2384, H4236, H4758, H4759, H7203, H7723, H8602, G37010, G37050, G37060

Numbers References:

Numbers 12:6 Numbers 24:4 Numbers 24:16

wadi

Definition:

The term “wadi” refers to a seasonal stream, seasonal river, or a valley that is a stream bed during part of the year.

- A “wadi” has water in it part of the year and is dry for part of the year.
- When a “wadi” has water in it, the amount of water that it has in it depends on what time of year it is and how much rain the area has received as well as how big the wadi is.

Translation Suggestions:

- Ways to translate “wadi” could include “seasonal stream” or “seasonal stream bed” or “river basin” or “river bed”

Bible References:

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H5158

Numbers References:

Numbers 13:23 Numbers 21:14 Numbers 21:15 Numbers 24:6 Numbers 32:9

waste, wasted, wasteland, becomes weak

Definition:

To waste something means to carelessly throw it away or to use it unwisely. Something that is a “wasteland” or a “waste” refers to land or a city that has been destroyed so that nothing lives in it anymore.

- The term “waste away” is an expression that means to become more and more sick or ruined. A person who is wasting away usually becomes very thin due to illness or lack of food.
- To “lay waste” to a city or land means to destroy it.
- Another word for a “wasteland” could be “desert” or “wilderness.” But a wasteland also implies that people used to live there and the land used to have trees and plants that produced food.

Bible References:

- Ezekiel 6:6
- Leviticus 26:39
- Matthew 26:8
- Revelation 18:15-17
- Zechariah 7:13-14

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0535, H1086, H1104, H1326, H2100, H2490, H2522, H2717, H2721, H2723, H3615, H3856, H4127, H4198, H4592, H4743, H5307, H5327, H7334, H7582, H7703, H7736, H7843, H8047, H8074, H8077, H8414, G06840, G12870, G20490, G26730

Numbers References:

Numbers 21:20 Numbers 23:28

watch, guard, take heed, beware

Definition:

The term “watch” means to look at something very closely and carefully. It also has several figurative meanings. A “watchman” was someone whose job was to guard a city by looking carefully all around him for any danger or threat to the people in the city.

- The command to “watch your life and doctrine closely” means to be careful to live wisely and to not believe false teachings.
- To “watch out” is a warning to be careful to avoid a danger or harmful influence.
- To “watch” or “keep watch” means to always be alert and on guard against sin and evil. It can also mean to “be ready.”
- To “keep watch over” or “keep close watch” can mean to guard, protect or take care of someone or something.
- Other ways of translating “watch” could include “pay close attention to” or “be diligent” or “be very careful” or “be on guard.”
- Other words for “watchman” are “sentry” or “guard.”

Bible References:

- 1 Thessalonians 5:6
- Hebrews 13:17
- Jeremiah 31:4-6
- Mark 8:15
- Mark 13:33-34
- Matthew 25:10-13

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0821, H2370, H4929, H4931, H5027, H5341, H6486, H6822, H6836, H6974, H7462, H7789, H7919, H8104, H8108, H8245, G00690, G09910, G11270, G14920, G23340, G28920, G35250, G37080, G39060, G43370, G46480, G50830, G54380

Numbers References:

Numbers 3:28 Numbers 3:32 Numbers 3:38
Numbers 9:23 Numbers 18:7 Numbers 23:12
Numbers 28:2 Numbers 31:30

cistern, well

Definition:

The terms “well” and “cistern” refer to two different kinds of sources for water in Bible times.

- A well is a deep hole dug into the ground so that underground water can flow into it.
- A cistern is a deep hole dug into rock that was used as a holding tank for collecting rain water.
- Cisterns were usually dug into rock and sealed with plaster to keep the water in. A “broken cistern” happened when the plaster became cracked so that the water leaked out.
- Cisterns were often located in the courtyard area of people’s homes to catch the rainwater that would run off the roof.
- Wells were often located where they could be accessed by several families or a whole community.
- Because water was very important for both people and livestock, the right to use a well was often a cause of strife and conflict.
- Both wells and cisterns were usually covered with a large stone to prevent anything falling in it. Often there was a rope with a bucket or pot attached to it to bring the water up to the surface.
- Sometimes a dry cistern was used as a place to imprison someone, such as happened to Joseph and Jeremiah.

Translation Suggestions:

- Ways to translate “well” could include “deep water hole” or “deep hole for spring water” or “deep hole for drawing water.”
- The term “cistern” could be translated as “stone water pit” or “deep and narrow pit for water” or “underground tank for holding water.”
- These terms are similar in meaning. The main difference is that a well continually receives water from underground springs, whereas a cistern is a holding tank for water that usually comes from rain.

(See also: Jeremiah, prison, strife)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 11:17
- 2 Samuel 17:17-18
- Genesis 16:14
- Luke 14:4-6
- Numbers 20:17

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0875, H0883, H0953, H1360, H4599, H4726, H4841, G40770, G54210

Numbers References:

Numbers 20:17 Numbers 21:16 Numbers 21:17 Numbers 21:22

wine, wineskin, new wine

Definition:

In the Bible, the term “wine” refers to a kind of fermented drink made from the juice of a fruit called grapes. Wine was stored in “wineskins,” which were containers made out of animal skin.

- The term “new wine” referred to grape juice that had just been taken from the grape and was not fermented yet. Sometimes the term “wine” also referred to unfermented grape juice.
- To make wine, grapes are crushed in a winepress so that the juice comes out. The juice eventually ferments and alcohol forms in it.
- In Bible times, wine was the normal drink with meals. It did not have as much alcohol as present-day wine has.
- Before wine was served for a meal, it was often mixed with water.
- A wineskin that was old and brittle would get cracks in it, which allowed the wine to leak out. New wineskins were soft and flexible, which meant they did not tear easily and could store the wine safely.
- If wine is unknown in your culture, it could be translated as “fermented grape juice” or “fermented drink made from a fruit called grapes” or “fermented fruit juice.” (See: How to Translate Unknowns)
- Ways to translate “wineskin” could include “bag for wine” or “animal skin wine bag” or “animal skin container for wine.”

(See also: grape, vine, vineyard, winepress)

Bible References:

- 1 Timothy 5:23
- Genesis 9:21
- Genesis 49:12
- John 2:3-5
- John 2:10
- Matthew 9:17
- Matthew 11:18

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H2561, H2562, H3196, H4469, H4997, H5435, H6025, H6071, H8492, G10980, G36310, G38200, G39430

Numbers References:

Numbers 6:3 Numbers 6:3 Numbers 6:4 Numbers 6:20 Numbers 15:5 Numbers 15:7 Numbers 15:10 Numbers 18:12 Numbers 28:14

winepress

Definition:

During Bible times, a "winepress" was a large container or open place where the juice of grapes was extracted in order to make wine.

- In Israel, winepresses were usually large, wide basins that were dug out of solid rock. Clusters of grapes were put on the flat bottom of the hole and people trampled the grapes with their feet to get the grape juice to flow out.
- Usually a winepress had two levels, with the grapes being trampled in the top level so that the juice would run down into the lower level where it could be collected.
- The term "winepress" is also used figuratively in the Bible as a picture of God's wrath being poured out on wicked people. (See: Metaphor)

(See also: grape, wrath)

Bible References:

- Isaiah 63:2
- Mark 12:1
- Matthew 21:33
- Revelation 14:20

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1660, H3342, H6333, G30250, G52760

Numbers References:

Numbers 18:27 Numbers 18:30

winnow, sift

Definition:

The terms "winnow" and "sift" mean to separate grain from unwanted materials. In the Bible, both words can also be used to refer to separating or dividing people.

- To "winnow" means to separate grain from the unwanted parts of the plant by tossing both the grain and chaff into the air, allowing the wind to blow the chaff away.
- The word "sift" refers to shaking the winnowed grain in a sieve to get rid of any remaining unwanted materials, such as dirt or stones.
- In the Old Testament, "winnow" and "sift" are used figuratively to describe hardship that separates the righteous people from the unrighteous people.
- Jesus also used the term "sift" in this figurative way when he was telling Simon Peter about how he and the other disciples would be tested in their faith.
- To translate these terms, use the words or phrases in the project language that refer to these activities; possible translations might be "shaking" or "fanning." If winnowing or sifting are not known, then these terms could be translated by a term that refers to a different method of separating grain from chaff or dirt, or by describing this process.

(See also: How to Translate Unknowns)

(See also: chaff, grain)

Bible References:

- Isaiah 21:10
- Luke 22:31
- Matthew 3:12
- Proverbs 20:8
- Ruth 3:2

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2219, H5128, H5130, G44250, G46170

Numbers References:

Numbers 16:37

womb

Definition:

The term “womb” refers to where a baby grows inside its mother.

- This is an older term that is sometimes used in order to be polite and less direct. (See: euphemism)
- A more modern term for womb is “uterus.”
- Some languages use a word like “belly” to refer to a woman’s womb or uterus.
- Use a word for this in the project language that is well-known, natural, and acceptable.

Bible References:

- Genesis 25:23
- Genesis 25:24-26
- Genesis 38:27-28
- Genesis 49:25
- Luke 2:21
- Luke 11:27
- Luke 23:29
- Matthew 19:12

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0990, H4578, H7356, H7358, G10640, G28360, G33880

Numbers References:

Numbers 3:12 Numbers 8:16 Numbers 12:12 Numbers 18:15

yoke, yoked, tied

Definition:

A yoke is a piece of wood or metal attached to two or more animals to connect them for the purpose of pulling a plow or a cart. There are also several figurative meanings for this term.

- The term “yoke” is used figuratively to refer to something that joins people for the purpose of working together, such as in serving Jesus.
- Paul used the term “yokefellow” to refer to someone who was serving Christ as he was. This could also be translated as “fellow worker” or “fellow servant” or “coworker.”
- The term “yoke” is also often used figuratively to refer to a heavy load that someone has to carry, such as when being oppressed by slavery or persecution.
- In most contexts, it is best to translate this term literally, using the local term for a yoke that is used for farming.
- Other ways to translate the figurative use of this term could be, “oppressive burden” or “heavy load” or “bond,” depending on the context.

(See also: bind, burden, oppress, persecute, servant)

Bible References:

- Acts 15:10
- Galatians 5:1
- Genesis 27:40
- Isaiah 9:4
- Jeremiah 27:4
- Matthew 11:30
- Philippians 4:3

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H3627, H4132, H4133, H5674, H5923, H6776, G20860, G22180

Numbers References:

Numbers 19:2 Numbers 25:3 Numbers 25:5